Workshop Manual
Audi A6 2011 ➤
Audi A6 China 2012 ➤
General body repairs, interior

Edition 10.2016

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Repair Group

00 - Technical data

68 - Interior equipment

69 - Passenger protection

70 - Trim, insulation

72 - Seat frames

74 - Seat - padding, covers

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2016 Audi AG, Ingolstadt

Contents

00 - Technical data 1

1 Safety precautions 1
1.1 Safety precautions when working on the high-voltage system 2
1.2 Safety precautions when working in the vicinity of high-voltage components 3
1.3 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system 3
1.4 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components 4
1.5 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components) 5
1.6 Additional safety regulations for side airbags 6
1.7 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags 6
1.8 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) 7
1.9 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version 7
1.10 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version 8
1.11 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident 9
1.12 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident 11
1.13 Accident in which no airbag was triggered 11
1.14 Checking seat belts 11
1.15 Checking belt 12
1.16 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action) 12
1.17 Visual inspection of belt buckle 13
1.18 Functional check of belt buckle 13
1.19 Checking guide fittings and latch plate 13
1.20 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident 14
1.21 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version) 14
1.22 Checking child seat anchors following an accident 14
1.23 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror 15

2 Notes on repairs 16
2.1 Contact corrosion 16
2.2 Routing and attaching lines and wiring 16

68 - Interior equipment 17

1 Shelves / trim panels 17
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - shelves/covers/trim panels 17
1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side) 19
1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim 20
1.4 Exploded view - glove box 21
1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side) 22
1.6 Removing and installing trim cover for dash panel insert 24
1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (top) 25
1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom) 26
1.9 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism 26
1.10 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove box opening mechanism 27
1.11 Removing and installing glove box 28
1.12 Removing and installing glove box lid 34
1.13 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid 35

2 Equipment 36
2.1 Exploded view - load guard 36
2.2 Exploded view - sun visors 38
2.3 Exploded view - sun blind 39
2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover 41

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5 Removing and installing load guard . . . 42
2.6 Removing and installing mounting for load guard . . . 42
2.7 Removing and installing bracket for load guard . . . 44
2.8 Removing and installing sun visor . . . 44
2.9 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor . . . 44
2.10 Removing and installing sun blind . . . 45
2.11 Removing and installing retainer for sun blind . . . 49
2.12 Removing and installing grab handle . . . 49
2.13 Removing and installing luggage compartment cover . . . 50

3 Centre console . . . 53
3.1 Exploded view - centre console . . . 53
3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear) . . . 60
3.3 Removing and installing centre console cover . . . 63
3.4 Removing and installing ashtray (front) . . . 63
3.5 Removing and installing ashtray trim (front) . . . 64
3.6 Removing and installing insert for centre console . . . 64
3.7 Removing and installing centre console storage box (front) . . . 65
3.8 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front) . . . 65
3.9 Removing and installing centre console . . . 66
3.10 Removing and installing cup holders . . . 68
3.11 Removing and installing bracket for centre console . . . 69

4 Centre armrest (front) . . . 70
4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front) . . . 70
4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front) . . . 71
4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section) . . . 72

5 Interior mirror . . . 73
5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror . . . 73
5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror . . . 74
5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off . . . 75
5.4 Switching compass display on and off . . . 76
5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone . . . 76
5.6 Calibrating digital compass . . . 76
5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles . . . 77
5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map . . . 77
5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror . . . 83

69 - Passenger protection . . . 85

1 Seat belts . . . 85
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points . . . 85
1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front) . . . 87
1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 89
1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 90
1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front) . . . 91
1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear) . . . 93
1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) . . . 96
1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 99
1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) . . . 111
1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (front) . . . 115
1.11 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) . . . 116
1.12 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear) . . . 117
1.13 Removing and installing belt height adjuster . . . 118
1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (front) . . . 119
1.15 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) . . . 121

2 Child seat anchors . . . 123

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front) . . . 123
2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear) . . . 124
2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front) . . . 126
2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear) . . . 126
3 Airbag system . . . 128
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system . . . 128
4 Airbag control unit . . . 130
4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit . . . 130
4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 . . . 130
5 Battery isolation igniter . . . 134
5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter . . . 134
5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter . . . 134
6 Airbag (driver side) . . . 139
6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side) . . . 139
6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters . . . 140
6.3 Renewing connector at airbag . . . 143
7 Airbag (front passenger side) . . . 145
7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side) . . . 145
7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters . . . 146
7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag . . . 149
8 Side airbags . . . 152
8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front) . . . 152
8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear) . . . 154
8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter . . . 156
8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter . . . 158
9 Curtain airbags . . . 163
9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag . . . 163
9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter . . . 165
10 Knee airbags . . . 172
10.1 Exploded view - knee airbag . . . 172
10.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter . . . 174
11 Crash sensors for airbags . . . 180
11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags . . . 180
11.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor G283 / G284 . . . 181
11.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 . . . 183
11.4 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (rear) G256 / G257 . . . 185
12 Seat position sensor . . . 189
12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor . . . 189
12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor . . . 189
13 Belt-fastened recognition system . . . 193
13.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) G128 . . . 193
14 Seat occupied recognition system . . . 197
14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system . . . 197
14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor . . . 200

70 - Trim, insulation . . . 204

1 Door trim (front) . . . 204
1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front) . . . 204
1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim . . . 208
1.3 Removing and installing bass loudspeaker trim . . . 208
1.4 Removing and installing trim panel . . . 209
1.5 Removing and installing door trim (front) . . . 210
1.6 Removing and installing armrest (front) . . . 214
1.7 Removing and installing switch trim . . . 214

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.8 Removing and installing trim for mirror cover . . . 214
1.9 Removing and installing interior door handle . . . 215
1.10 Removing and installing window frame trim . . . 215
2 Door trim (rear) . . . 217
2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear) . . . 217
2.2 Exploded view - sun blind for door window . . . 222
2.3 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim . . . 223
2.4 Removing and installing trim panel . . . 223
2.5 Removing and installing interior door handle . . . 224
2.6 Removing and installing door trim (rear) . . . 225
2.7 Removing and installing armrest (rear) . . . 227
2.8 Removing and installing window frame trim . . . 228
2.9 Removing and installing sun blind for door window . . . 229
2.10 Removing and installing retainer for sun blind . . . 230
2.11 Removing and installing ashtray (rear) . . . 230
3 Dash panel . . . 232
3.1 Exploded view - dash panel . . . 232
3.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side) . . . 238
3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover . . . 238
3.4 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel . . . 241
3.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim . . . 242
3.6 Removing and installing retaining frame for dash panel insert . . . 244
3.7 Removing and installing dash panel . . . 244
3.8 Removing and installing dash panel vents . . . 249
3.9 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre) . . . 251
3.10 Removing and installing defroster vent (side) . . . 252
4 Dash panel cross member . . . 253
4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member . . . 253
4.2 Removing and installing dash panel cross member . . . 255
4.3 Removing and installing mounting bracket . . . 260
4.4 Removing and installing brackets for glove box . . . 260
4.5 Removing and installing brackets/support for dash panel cross member . . . 261
5 Passenger compartment trim panels . . . 263
5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels . . . 263
5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim . . . 266
5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim . . . 268
5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim . . . 269
5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim . . . 270
5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim . . . 273
5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering . . . 275
5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf . . . 276
5.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim . . . 277
5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim . . . 279
5.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim . . . 281
5.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim . . . 285
5.13 Removing and installing D-pillar trim . . . 288
5.14 Removing and installing foot rest . . . 291
5.15 Removing and installing floor covering . . . 292
5.16 Removing and installing rear shelf . . . 293
5.17 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim . . . 295
6 Luggage compartment trim panels . . . 296
6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels . . . 296
6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim . . . 299
6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor . . . 305
6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom) . . . 311

The reproduction of this drawing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.5 Exploded view - lock carrier trim . . . 314
6.6 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) . . . 315
6.7 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top) . . . 319
6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim . . . 321
6.9 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor . . . 333
6.10 Removing and installing lock carrier trim . . . 335
6.11 Removing and installing bracket for warning triangle . . . 337
6.12 Removing and installing fastening ring . . . 337
6.13 Removing and installing retainer for luggage compartment floor covering . . . 338
6.14 Removing and installing frame for loading aid . . . 338
6.15 Removing and installing bag hook . . . 339
6.16 Removing and installing grip for luggage compartment floor (rear) . . . 339
6.17 Removing and installing retaining rail . . . 340
6.18 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well . . . 341
6.19 Removing and installing tail light cover . . . 342
6.20 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock . . . 342

7 Roof trim panels . . . 343
7.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim . . . 343
7.2 Exploded view - roof end trim . . . 345
7.3 Exploded view - moulded headliner . . . 346
7.4 Removing and installing roof end trim . . . 348
7.5 Removing and installing moulded headliner . . . 350
7.6 Attaching roof reinforcement to body . . . 355

72 - Seat frames . . . 358

1 Overview - seat versions . . . 358
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions . . . 358
1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand . . . 360

2 Front seats . . . 361
2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components . . . 361
2.2 Exploded view - front seat . . . 369
2.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest . . . 377
2.4 Exploded view - head restraint . . . 386
2.5 Exploded view - seat pan . . . 389
2.6 Removing and installing front seat . . . 415
2.7 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter . . . 423
2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjuster . . . 426
2.9 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit . . . 427
2.10 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit . . . 432
2.11 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit . . . 436
2.12 Removing and installing front seat backrest . . . 440
2.13 Removing and installing head restraint . . . 455
2.14 Removing and installing head restraint guide . . . 456
2.15 Dismantling and assembling seat pan . . . 458
2.16 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 . . . 502
2.17 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 . . . 502

3 Rear seats . . . 504
3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats . . . 504
3.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism . . . 509
3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide . . . 512
3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest . . . 515
3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest . . . 522
3.6 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats . . . 531
3.7 Removing and installing centre storage compartment . . . 535
3.8 Removing and installing lock cylinder . . . 538

Powered by autodata. Copies for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.9 Removing and installing head restraint . . . 540
3.10 Removing and installing head restraint guide . . . 543
3.11 Removing and installing rear seat backrest . . . 544
3.12 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism . . . 557
3.13 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest . . . 559
3.14 Removing and installing trim frame for load-through hatch . . . 562
3.15 Removing and installing flap for load-through hatch . . . 563
3.16 Removing and installing centre armrest . . . 564
4 Front seat pneumatic system . . . 578
4.1 Exploded view - pneumatic system . . . 578
4.2 Connection diagram - pneumatic system . . . 581
4.3 Exploded view - pneumatic system, compressor . . . 583
4.4 Exploded view - pneumatic system, backrest . . . 585
4.5 Exploded view - pneumatic system, massage mat . . . 587
4.6 Exploded view - pneumatic system, seat/backrest bolster adjusters . . . 589
4.7 Checking pneumatic system . . . 590
4.8 Severing and connecting pneumatic lines . . . 607
4.9 Servicing pneumatic lines . . . 608
4.10 Removing and installing compressor/control unit for multi-contour seat . . . 609
4.11 Removing and installing module carrier with lumbar support air cushions . . . 614
4.12 Removing and installing switch module 2 for front seat E667 / E668 . . . 616
4.13 Removing and installing valve block for multi-contour seat . . . 618
4.14 Removing and installing massage mat . . . 622
4.15 Removing and installing massage function button E670 / E671 . . . 624
4.16 Removing and installing seat bolster adjuster . . . 624
4.17 Removing and installing backrest bolster adjuster . . . 625
5 Rear seat pneumatic system . . . 627
5.1 Exploded view - pneumatic system . . . 627
5.2 Connection diagram - pneumatic system . . . 629
5.3 Exploded view - pneumatic system, module carrier/air cushion/lumbar support . . . 630
5.4 Exploded view - pneumatic system, massage mat . . . 631
5.5 Checking pneumatic system . . . 631
5.6 Severing and connecting pneumatic lines . . . 636
5.7 Servicing pneumatic lines . . . 637
5.8 Removing and installing compressor with control unit for multi-contour seat . . . 638
5.9 Removing and installing air cushion for lumbar support . . . 639
5.10 Removing and installing valve block 1 for lumbar support N479 / N481 . . . 640
5.11 Removing and installing module carrier . . . 641
5.12 Removing and installing massage mat . . . 643
5.13 Removing and installing valve block for massage mat . . . 644

74 - Seat - padding, covers . . . 646
1 Covers and padding on front seats . . . 646
1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding . . . 646
1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding . . . 651
1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding . . . 654
1.4 Overview - seat heating elements . . . 655
1.5 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding . . . 659
1.6 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding . . . 668
1.7 Separating seat pan cover and padding . . . 677
1.8 Separating backrest cover and padding . . . 679
1.9 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding . . . 681
1.10 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 . . . 683
1.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 . . . 685
2 Covers and padding on rear seats . . . 687

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding 687
2.2 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding 695
2.3 Overview - seat heating elements 696
2.4 Removing and installing cover and padding 700
2.5 Removing and installing intermediate padding - backrest with load-through hatch 707
2.6 Detaching cover from padding 708
2.7 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding 710
2.8 Removing and installing seat heating elements 711
2.9 Removing and installing backrest heating element 713

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Safety precautions

(ARL004827; Edition 10.2016)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “1.1 Safety precautions when working on the high-voltage system”, page 2

⇒ “1.2 Safety precautions when working in the vicinity of high-voltage components”, page 3

⇒ “1.3 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system”, page 3

⇒ “1.4 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components”, page 4

⇒ “1.5 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)”, page 5

⇒ “1.6 Additional safety regulations for side airbags”, page 6

⇒ “1.7 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags”, page 6

⇒ “1.8 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)”, page 7

⇒ “1.9 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version”, page 7

⇒ “1.10 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version”, page 8

⇒ “1.11 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident”, page 9

⇒ “1.12 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident”, page 11

⇒ “1.13 Accident in which no airbag was triggered”, page 11

⇒ “1.14 Checking seat belts”, page 11

⇒ “1.15 Checking belt”, page 12

⇒ “1.16 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)”, page 12

⇒ “1.17 Visual inspection of belt buckle”, page 13

⇒ “1.18 Functional check of belt buckle”, page 13

⇒ “1.19 Checking guide fittings and latch plate”, page 13

⇒ “1.20 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident”, page 14

⇒ “1.21 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)”, page 14

⇒ “1.22 Checking child seat anchors following an accident”, page 14

⇒ “1.23 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror”, page 15

1.1 Safety precautions when working on the high-voltage system

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

High voltage! Danger to life!

The voltage levels in the high-voltage system constitute a safety hazard. Danger of severe or fatal injuries from electric shock.

– Persons with life-sustaining or other electronic medical devices in or on their body must not perform any work on the high-voltage system. Such medical devices include internal anal-

gesic pumps, implanted defibrillators, pacemakers, insulin pumps and hearing aids.

– The high-voltage system may only be de-energised by a suitably qualified person.

Risk of injury - engine may start unexpectedly

It is difficult to tell when an electric or hybrid vehicle's drive system is active. If it is active, there is a risk of parts of the body and/or clothing being trapped or drawn in.

– Switch off ignition.

– Deposit the ignition key outside of the vehicle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Risk of damage to high-voltage wiring

Incorrect handling may result in damage to the insulation for high-voltage wires or high-voltage connectors.

– Do not support yourself on high-voltage cables or connectors.

– Never support tools or equipment on high-voltage wires and high-voltage connectors.

– High-voltage cables must not be excessively bent or kinked.

– Observe the coding of the high-voltage connectors when joining them up.

1.2 Safety precautions when working in the vicinity of high-voltage components

High voltage! Danger to life!

Voltage levels in the high-voltage system constitute a safety hazard; if high-voltage components or cables are damaged there is a danger of severe or fatal injuries from electric shock.

– Carry out a visual check of high-voltage components and high-voltage wiring.

– Never use cutting/forming tools or other sharp-edged implements.

– Never perform work using welding, brazing, thermal bonding or hot air.

1.3 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system

Risk of injury - engine may start unexpectedly

On vehicles with activated start/stop system, the engine may start automatically on demand. A message in the instrument cluster indicates whether the start/stop system is activated.

– To deactivate start/stop system: Switch off ignition.

1.4 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components

Note

Pyrotechnic components are:

- Airbag units
- Belt tensioners
- Belt force limiters (depending on equipment version)
- Battery isolation elements (depending on equipment version)

General notes

- Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- There are no specified intervals for renewing airbag units.
- Never perform tests with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- Only check pyrotechnic components when they are installed in the vehicle and always use suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems which have been approved by the manufacturer.
- When working on the airbag system (pyrotechnic components, the airbag control unit - J234- , wiring), always disconnect the battery earth strap with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Subsequently cover negative terminal.
- After disconnecting the battery, you must wait for 10 seconds.
- The battery must be connected with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Make sure there is no one in the vehicle. Exception: Vehicles in which the battery is in the passenger compartment.
- If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.
- Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching earthed metal components such as the door striker plate.
- Always wash your hands after handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system which have been triggered.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).
- Pyrotechnic components which have been dropped onto a hard surface or which show signs of damage must not be used.
- Pyrotechnic components should be installed immediately after removing them from their packaging.
- If the work is interrupted, the pyrotechnic component should again be placed in its packaging.
- The pyrotechnic component must never be left unattended.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- When connecting pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, there should be no-one in the vehicle other than the person performing the work.
- Pyrotechnic components must never be treated with grease, cleaning agents or similar.
- Always renew airbag unit if fabric is contaminated by oil, grease, paint, solvent or similar.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be exposed to temperatures higher than 100 °C even for brief periods of time.

Special notes for driver's and passenger's airbags

- Following removal, driver's and passenger's airbag units must be stored with the cushioned side facing upwards.

Always keep to the following sequence when renewing airbag units:

1 - Remove old airbag unit and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.

2 - Take new airbag unit out of packaging and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.

3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in packaging.

4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

Special notes for belt tensioners

- When removing and installing belt tensioners, proceed very carefully. If belt tensioner units are not handled correctly, there is a high danger and injury risk.
- Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must always be renewed.
- Never point the open end of a belt tensioner at another person.
- When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical components (including those of the three-point seat belt) must be secured properly. Should there not be enough space to connect the belt tensioner unit, the belt must be retracted completely before connecting the tensioner unit. In this case, there is no increased safety risk if you observe the safety precautions, i.e. most importantly the mechanic must disconnect the battery and discharge static electricity before connecting the belt tensioner unit.
- Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. These components must be handled in the same way as non-ignited components.

1.5 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)

- Storage must be in accordance with the statutory regulations of the countries in question.
- Transportation must be in accordance with the national and international guidelines which regulate the details of the packaging, marking, labelling and accompanying documents.
- Non-ignited pyrotechnic components must be disposed of in their original packaging and in accordance with national regulations. Please contact your importer if you require further information.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Only pyrotechnic components that have been triggered completely may be disposed of with commercial refuse.

WARNING

- *This does not apply to belt tensioners which are Wankel-powered. These must be treated in the same manner as non-ignited pyrotechnic components (for example air-bags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).*
- *Reason: The workshop does not have the means to check whether the Wankel-type belt tensioners have ignited fully (in all ignition stages).*

The reproduction of this document, for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.6 Additional safety regulations for side airbags

- We recommend using genuine seat covers (same as original equipment).
- It is NOT permissible to use seat covers or protective covers which have not been approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags.
- The backrest foam fill must not be cut away in the area of the side airbag.
- When installing, make sure seam for side airbag is straight.
- All upholstery clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- We recommend using only genuine upholstery clips (same as original equipment).
- When installing, all new upholstery clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- For safety reasons, the cover should always be renewed if it is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the area of the side airbag, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- Never repair backrest cover in area of side airbag (due to special thread and precisely defined seam).
- Always renew backrest padding after side airbags have been triggered.
- All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.
- If side airbag units are renewed, remove sticker with airbag number from new side airbag unit and stick it over old sticker on seat pan.
- Never pierce the seat cover fabric with upholstery needles or other sharp objects in the vicinity of the airbag, seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- and the seat occupied sensor mat.

1.7 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags

- Before carrying out any installation work always visually inspect trim for damage.
- Trim repairs (A-pillar trim (top), B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and D-pillar trim) are not permitted.
- When installing, make sure that trim panels are fitted securely.

- When carrying out repairs behind the curtain airbag, always remove the complete unit.
- When removing and installing curtain airbag units, proceed very carefully to prevent possible damage.
- After removal, store old curtain airbag units in their transport containers or on a clean, level surface (on a blanket).
- After performing body repairs in area of curtain airbag, check body for welding spatter, deformation and abrasion by comparing with opposite side.
- It is important that you hold the gas generator at all times when handling it (during transportation, removing and installing etc.) until it has been bolted on.
- Never twist, turn, knot, throw, pull, hang, pinch, press or clamp curtain airbag units.
- It might be possible to fold it, as long as you are careful not to damage it (and in particular its protective cover).

1.8 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)

The crash sensors for side airbags are very sensitive to pressure changes and must therefore be handled with great care. Please note the following:

- Always observe correct installation position: ONLY install in correct fitting location in door.
- Protect crash sensor from jolts and knocks. Crash sensors which have been dropped must NOT be used. Remove crash sensor to perform body repairs at door.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- The crash sensor is adapted to the air volume inside the door: If the door is deformed, causing the air volume in the door to be reduced, the function of the crash sensor will be impaired.
- Make sure the crash sensor is not badly soiled: Do not use compressed air near the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor against filings or drilling swarf (e.g. on service installation of door loudspeakers). Do not use cavity sealant or oil sprays near crash sensor.
- Protect against heat and cold: Protect crash sensor against heat, e.g. when painting or carrying out other body work. Crash sensors should never be exposed to temperatures of less than –40 °C (e.g. in non-air-conditioned aircraft cargo holds).
- The crash sensor must be protected against moisture, both during storage and when installing.

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor may not function correctly. Please note the following:

- Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.
- The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. Renew retaining clips if necessary.

1.9 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version

- Following any repair work on the front passenger seat during which the seat and/or backrest cover are/is disengaged, the

basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

- The mat for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- The mat must be renewed if it is damaged (service kit).
- The pressure hose for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- Make sure that the components of the seat occupied recognition system (service kit) do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and cannot be damaged by sharp objects.
- Make sure that the mat, the fleece and all covers are not creased when they are installed.
- Make sure that the seat padding and seat cover are in the correct installation position.
- Renew all staples/clips and make sure they are correctly positioned on the seat. Make sure the upholstery clips do not damage the seat occupied sensor (bonded on or stitched in); they should not be clipped into the sensor.
- The system's basic setting is only possible at temperatures between 0°C and + 40°C if airbag units 8.R and 9.* are installed, and only between 5°C and 35°C if airbag unit 10.* is installed.
- Make sure there are no objects lying on the seat before or while you are performing the basic setting.
- The use of loose seat covers - such as cushions or similar - impairs the function of the seat occupied recognition system and thus the function of the airbag system.
- The seat and all components of the seat occupied recognition system must be dry during installation. Moisture has a negative effect on the operation of the seat occupied recognition system. If necessary, allow the seat, seat padding, seat occupied sensor and seat cover to dry.
- Do NOT unplug the electrical connector between the seat occupied recognition control unit and the seat occupied sensor ⇒ page 197 .
- Do not pull at the electrical wire of the seat occupied sensor.
- Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat: The seat occupied sensor is bonded onto the seat padding/seat heating element on the replacement part (service kit). If necessary, make sure that the sensor is bonded on without any creases.
- Multi-contour seat: The seat occupied sensor with seat heating element is stitched into the seat cover on the replacement part (service kit). Only replace the seat cover. Take care not to kink the seat cover.

1.10 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version

- The basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must be performed whenever the airbag and/or front passenger's belt tensioner has/have been triggered ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- If the seat rail and/or seat pan has/have to be renewed after a crash due to deformation, the seat occupied sensor must be

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness, completeness or currentness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

renewed using the “seat occupied recognition service kit”. The “basic setting” for the seat occupied recognition control unit must then be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

1.11 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester

Note

- *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generation 8.* »not 8.R« for up to two side airbag and/or belt tensioner triggering operations.*
- *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generations 9.*, 10.* and 8.R for side airbags, driver's airbag, front passenger's airbag and/or belt tensioners which together have triggered not more than twice.*
- *After the third activation the fault display will show “Control unit defective”.*

Airbag control unit must be renewed:

- If driver's/front passenger's airbag has been triggered (except with airbag generations 9.*, 10.* and 8.R) ⇒ page 9
- After side airbags, driver's airbag, front passenger's airbag or belt tensioners have triggered three times
- If housing is damaged
- In the event of a tunnel deformation within 200 mm radius of control unit

Always renew the following:

- All triggered airbag units
- Battery isolation igniter - N253-

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Dash panel
- Supports for front passenger's airbag unit which have become deformed (must not be bent back into shape)
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If driver's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Return ring with slip ring
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If side airbag(s) has/have been triggered, also renew:

- Pressure sensors on the side on which the airbag was triggered
- Lateral acceleration sensors on the side on which airbag was triggered

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Cover
- Padding
- Folding rear seat backrest: side padding (if fitted)
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

Additionally:

- All automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered
- All automatic belt retractors with belt force limiters (depending on equipment version) which have been triggered
- Belt buckles for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened
- Belt height adjusters (manual and electrical) for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened

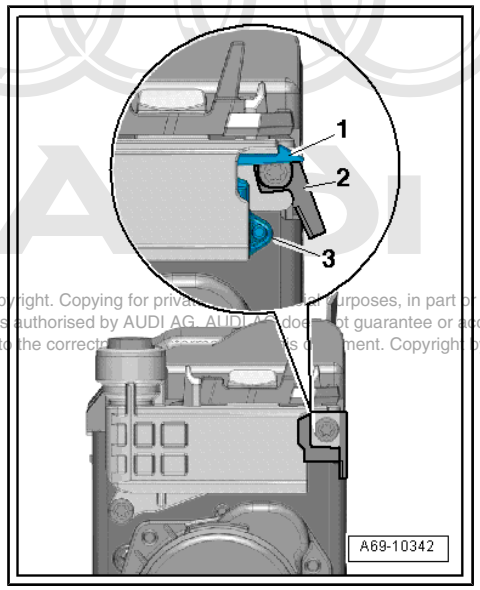
– If you suspect that belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) has/have been triggered, connect a vehicle diagnostic tester .

– In “15 - Airbag” of the »Guided Fault Finding« function, check whether there is an entry recording a crash in the airbag control unit.

– Check whether at the same time the fault “Resistance too high” is entered for belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s). Belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) which have been triggered must fulfil both conditions. Condition: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed.

Note

- *The fault “Resistance too high” can also be entered if there is an open circuit. In this case, there should usually be no crash entry.*
- *Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. In this case, observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*
- *Also observe the notes on checking seat belts ⇒ page 11 .*
- *Triggered belt force limiters can be identified by the following characteristics:*
- *The pin -1- and the lug -3- have come out of the housing of the belt force limiter on the automatic belt retractor.*
- *The tab -2- is no longer in a vertical position, but is facing outwards at an angle.*



– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

– In addition, the following must also be renewed if necessary (visual check): all damaged components

– After renewing airbag units or the control unit, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the appropriate Sales Centre or to the importer for registration.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private and commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.12 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident

It is essential to always renew all damaged mounting components - it is not permissible to »reshape« or rework damaged components.

The following components must be checked after an airbag has been triggered.

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered:

- Dash panel cross member; it must be possible to install front passenger's airbag unit and supports so that they are free of stress. Otherwise cross member must also be renewed.
- Check glove box for damage. Renew glove box if it is damaged.

If driver's airbag has been triggered:

- Steering wheel: Remove steering wheel and place it on a level surface (resting on rim). The full area of the rim must lie flat. If it does not, the steering wheel has to be renewed.
- Check steering wheel for smoke marks. Renew steering wheel if such marks are found.

1.13 Accident in which no airbag was triggered

- Pyrotechnic components do not have to be renewed if airbag warning lamp - K75- does not indicate a fault. The seat belts must be checked separately.

1.14 Checking seat belts

WARNING

A systematic check of the seat belt system must be carried out after every accident. If any damage is identified (see section on points to check), the customer must be informed that one or more of the seat belts have to be renewed.

Points to check:

- Checking belt ⇒ page 12
- Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action) ⇒ page 12
- Visual inspection of belt buckle ⇒ page 13 .
- Functional check of belt buckle ⇒ page 13 .
- Checking guide fittings and latch plate ⇒ page 13
- Checking securing components and anchorage points ⇒ page 14
- Checking child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific version ⇒ page 14

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

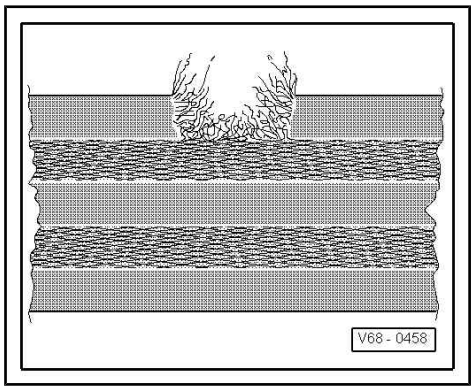
If customers decide not to have damaged seat belts renewed, this must be noted accordingly in the Service Schedule.

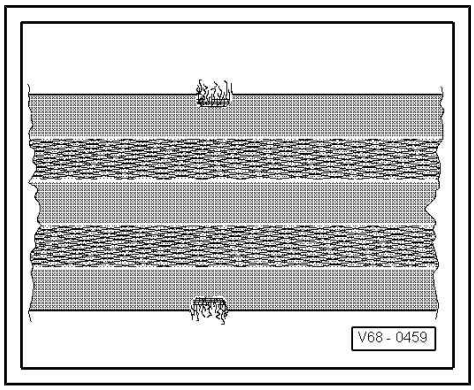
1.15 Checking belt

Procedure

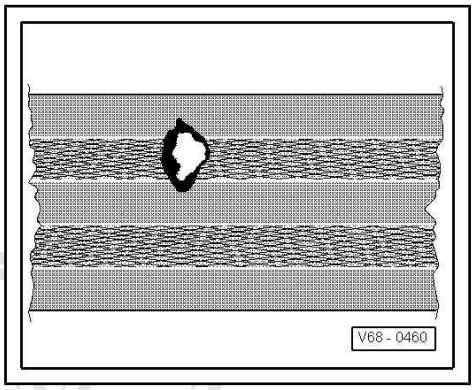
– Pull belt as far as it will go out of automatic belt retractor or lap belt adjuster.

– Inspect belt for dirt and, if necessary, wash it with mild soap solution ⇒ Owner's Manual .





- If the following type of damage (shown in illustrations 1 and 2) is identified on a vehicle following an accident you must renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.
- If damage as shown in illustrations 1, 2 or 3 is identified on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to only renew the damaged belt.
- 1 – Belt is cut, torn or chafed
- 2 – Frayed fabric at edge of belt
- 3 – Burn marks caused by cigarettes or similar



1.16 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.

♦ The first locking function is triggered by pulling the belt quickly out of the automatic belt retractor.

First check

– Pull belt out of automatic belt retractor in a sharp quick movement.

• No locking effect - renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- If you encounter difficulties when pulling belt out or retracting it, first check whether position of automatic belt retractor has changed.
- The second locking function is triggered if vehicle motion changes (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Second check

WARNING

For safety reasons, test drive must be performed on a road with no traffic to avoid putting other road users at risk.

– Fasten seat belt.

– Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then press foot brake firmly (emergency braking).

- If braking does not activate seat belt locking mechanism, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.17 Visual inspection of belt buckle

– Inspect belt buckle for cracks and fracturing.

- If you identify any damage, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.18 Functional check of belt buckle

Checking belt buckle

– Push latch plate into belt buckle until you hear it engage. Pull belt firmly to check whether locking mechanism has engaged.

- Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate does not engage properly in belt buckle in one or more of the tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

Checking release function

– Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle. Latch plate must be automatically ejected from belt buckle when belt is slack.

- Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate is not ejected in one or more of these tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

WARNING

Under no circumstances apply lubricant to belt buckle to eliminate noises or to stop buttons sticking.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.19 Checking guide fittings and latch plate

When a seat belt has been under strain in an accident the plastic-covered guides will show fine parallel scoring. (By contrast, a guide fitting which is worn because of frequent use will have a smoothly worn surface, but no scoring).

– Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in the plastic.

- If you identify any scoring and/or damage, renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.

1.20 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident

- Latch plate deformed (strained)
- Height adjustment not functioning
- Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) deformed or thread damaged

- If you identify any damage on these parts, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.
- Renew anchorage points.

Note

In the event of damage not resulting from an accident (for example wear) only the corresponding damaged part must be renewed.

1.21 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)

To check this function fit the complete belt assembly (including side panel trim).

Activating locking function of retractor mechanism:

- Pull out belt as far as it will go.

Correct function

- The belt should retract with an audible clicking sound.
- Once you stop the belt retracting any further, it should no longer be possible to pull the belt out.

Deactivating

- Allow the belt to retract as far as the last approx. 100 mm.
- The locking function of the retractor mechanism should be deactivated at the latest by the time the belt has been retracted as far as the last 100 mm. The belt then functions as "normal" again.

If child seat restraint function of seat belt is not operating properly, seat belt must be renewed.

1.22 Checking child seat anchors following an accident

Points to check:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- After an accident, child seat anchors must be checked for damage and deformation.
- Child seat anchors welded or bolted to body or seats/backrests must not be repaired or straightened.
- Child seat anchors bolted to the body or seats/backrests must be renewed if they are damaged or deformed.
- Bolts for securing child seat anchors must be renewed if retainer is damaged.

1.23 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

WARNING

- *The interior mirror glass consists of several layers and contains an electrolyte which gives the mirror its properties. Beware of liquid electrolyte escaping from a broken mirror.*
- *Liquid electrolyte can cause irritation to skin, eyes and respiratory organs.*
- *Should liquid electrolyte come into contact with the eyes or skin, rinse it out/off immediately with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, consult a doctor immediately.*

Caution

If liquid electrolyte escapes from a broken mirror glass it will damage all plastic surfaces with which it comes into contact. Make sure you clean away any leaked electrolyte immediately using clean water and a sponge.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Notes on repairs

⇒ “2.1 Contact corrosion”, page 16

⇒ “2.2 Routing and attaching lines and wiring”, page 16

2.1 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners (bolts, nuts, washers etc.) are used on the vehicle.

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

In addition, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Should you have any doubts whether certain parts can be re-used, use new parts ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Please note:

- We recommend using only genuine replacement parts: these have been fully tested and are compatible with aluminium.
- We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

2.2 Routing and attaching lines and wiring

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic lines or electrical wires. This ensures re-installation at the original location.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

68 – Interior equipment

1 Shelves / trim panels

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - shelves/covers/trim panels”, page 17

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 19

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 20

⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 21

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 22

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing trim cover for dash panel insert”, page 24

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)”, page 25

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)”, page 26

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism”, page 26

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove box opening mechanism”, page 27

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing glove box”, page 28

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing glove box lid”, page 34

⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid”, page 35

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - shelves/covers/trim panels

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Centre console

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 53

2 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 19

3 - Trim

- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 20

4 - Dash panel

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 232

5 - Cross member

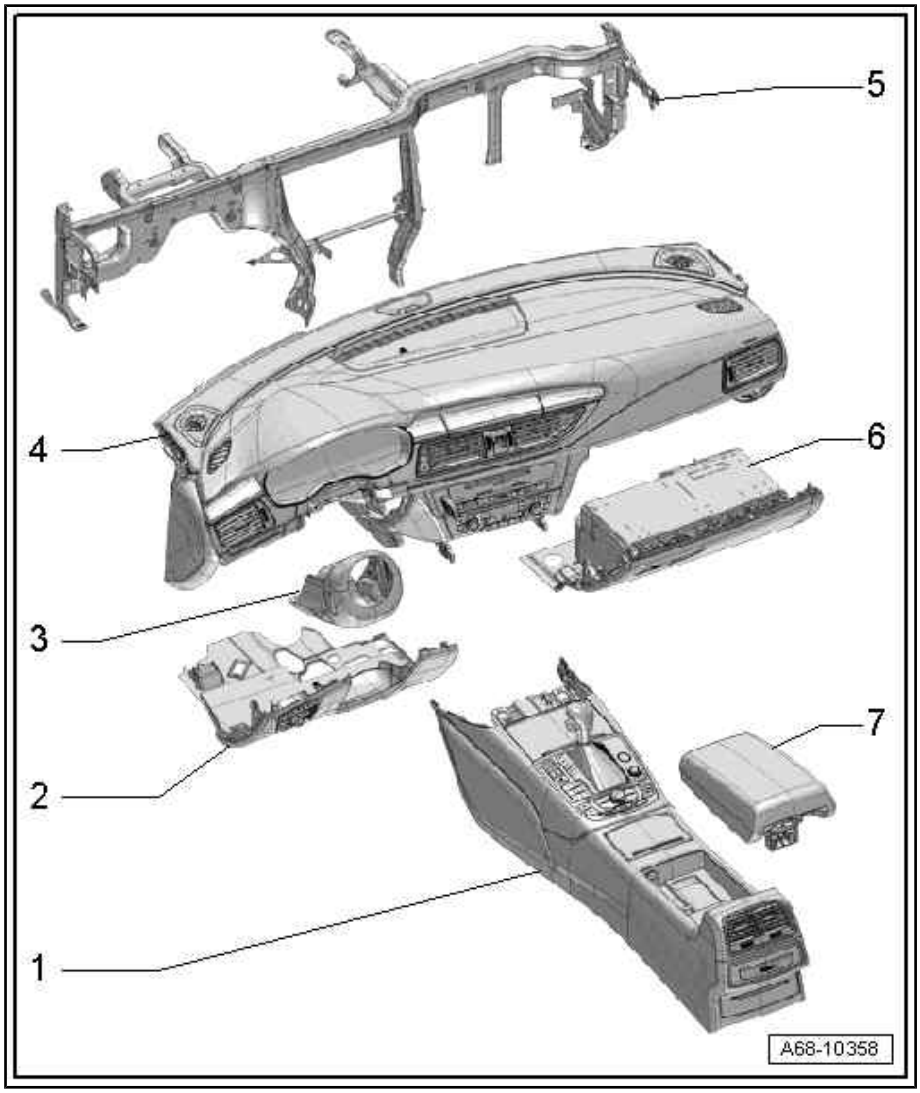
- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 253

6 - Glove box

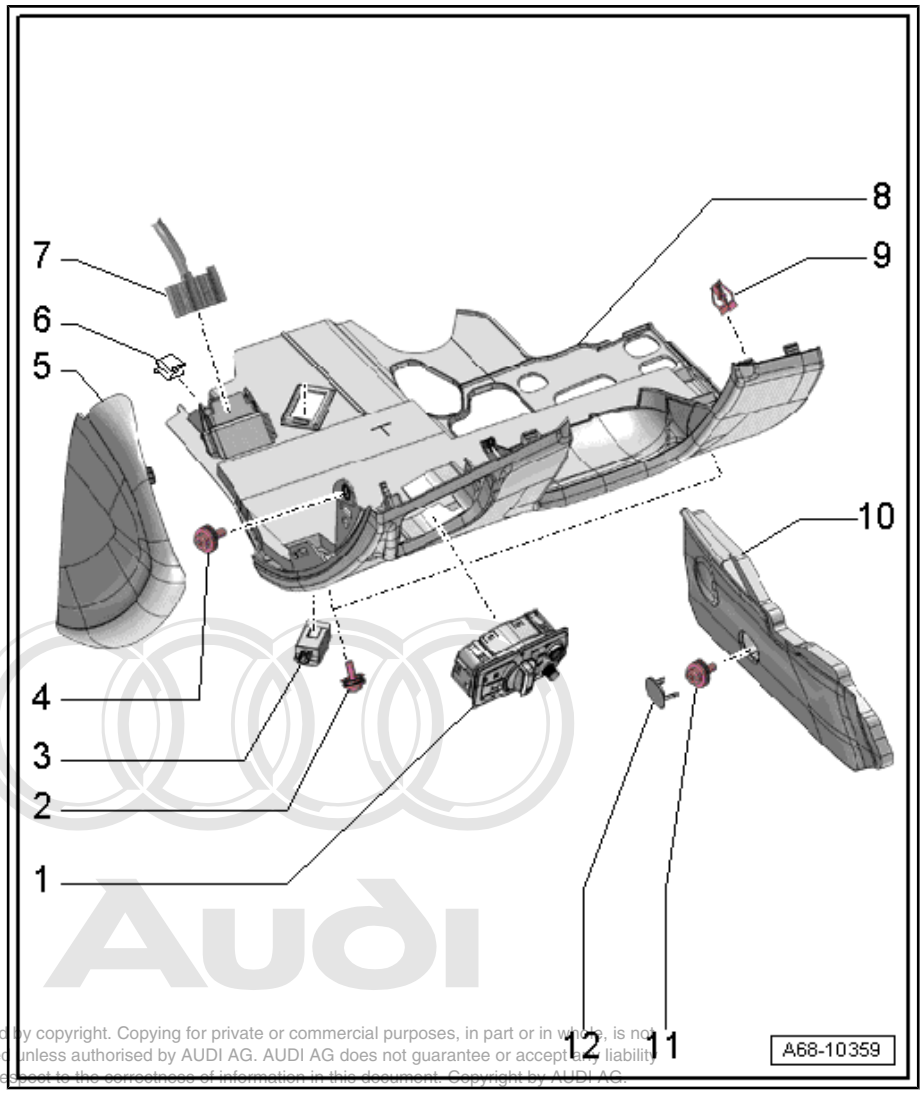
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 21

7 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 70



1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)



1 - Light switch - E1-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

3 - Front left footwell illumination bulb - L151-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing front footwell illumination bulb -L151- / -L152-

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

5 - Cover (side)

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 238

6 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in foot rest

7 - 16-pin connector - T16-

- ❑ Diagnostic connector

8 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 22

9 - Spring clip

- ❑ For dash panel cover (driver side)
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Different versions; for correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renew spring clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Press into dash panel in correct position

10 - Cover (bottom)

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 23
- ❑ Renew spring clips on air conditioning unit if damaged or deformed

11 - Bolt

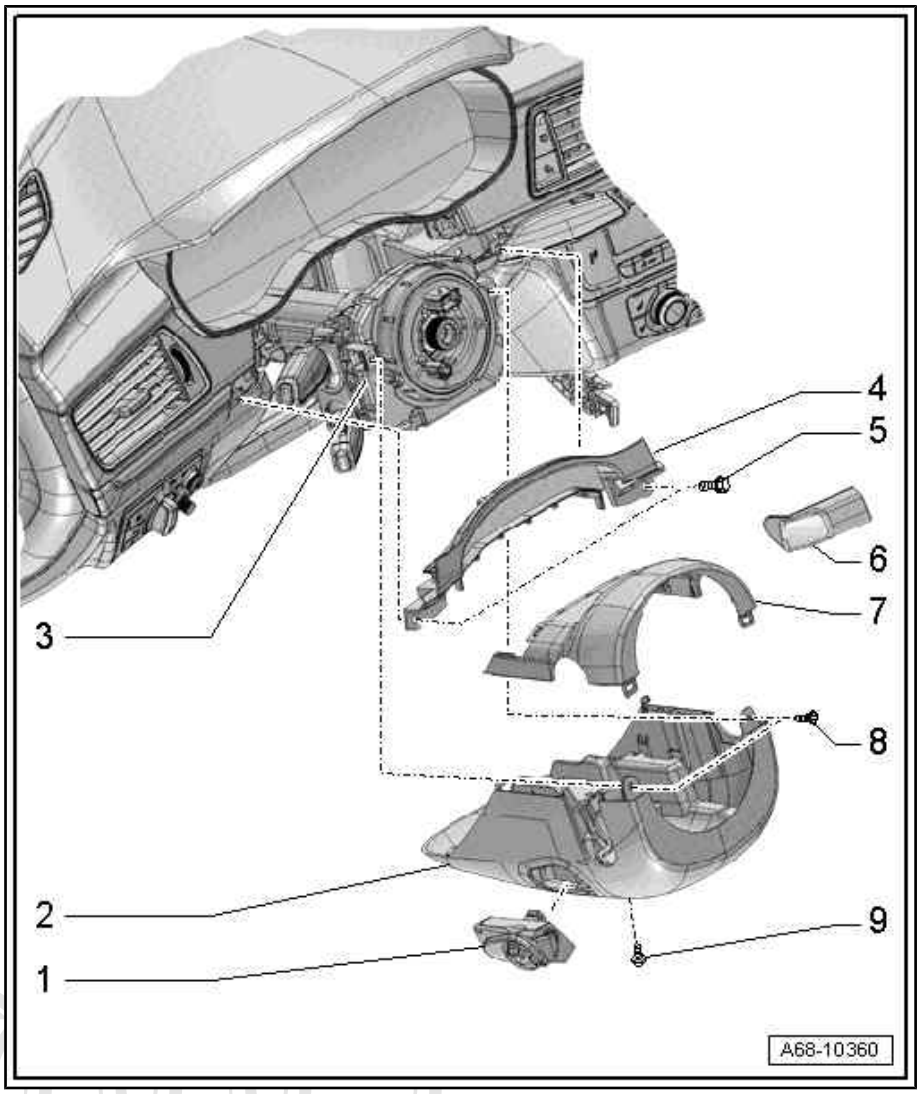
- ❑ 3 Nm

12 - Cap

- ❑ Press into cover

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim



1 - Steering column adjustment switch - E167-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing steering column adjustment switch - E167- / steering wheel heater button - E522-

2 - Trim (bottom)

- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 26

3 - Steering column switch module

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column switch module

4 - Trim cover

- ❑ For instrument cluster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

6 - Trim cover

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24

7 - Trim (top)

- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25

8 - Bolt

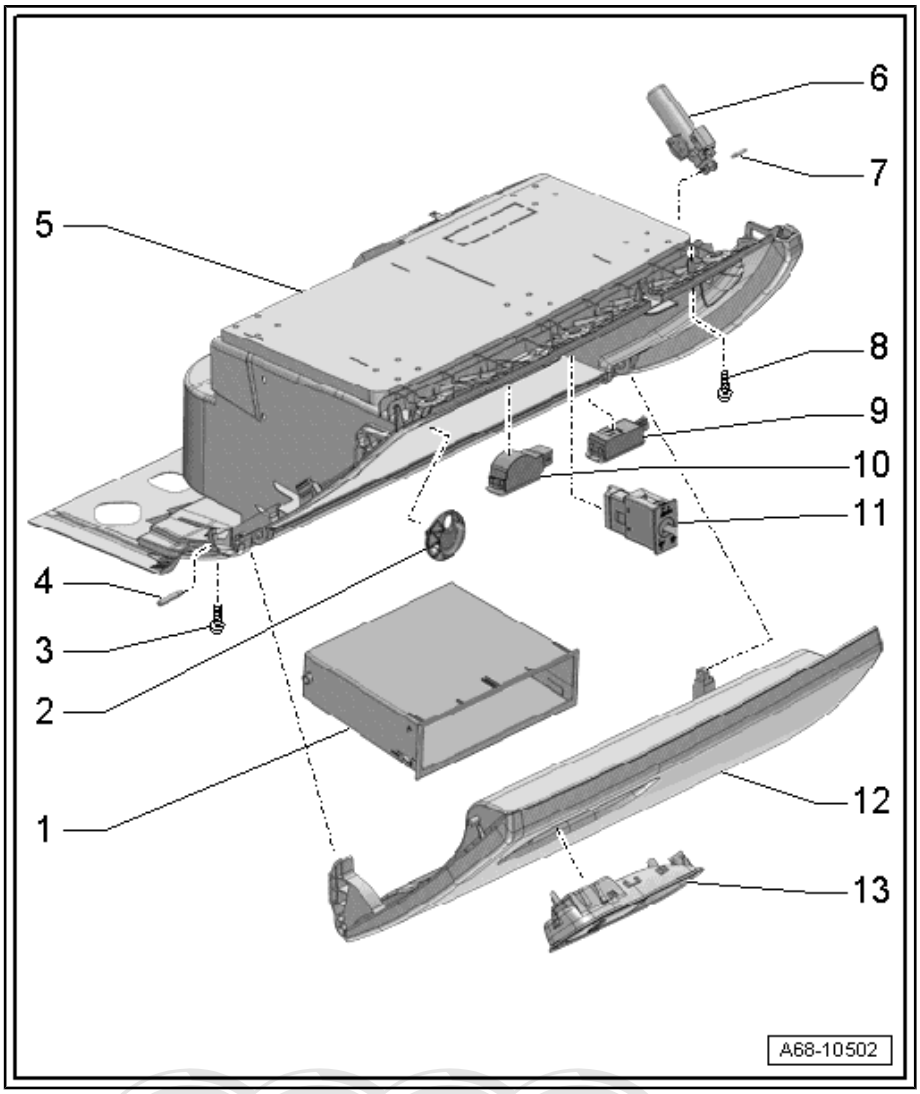
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Exploded view - glove box



1 - Storage box

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 34

2 - Cold-air vent/dummy cover

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x or 3x (depending on equipment version)
- ❑ 3x for country-specific version with knee airbag
- ❑ 3 Nm

4 - Hinge pin

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For glove box lid

5 - Glove box

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 28

6 - Cushioning element

- ❑ For glove box lid
- ❑ With glove box light switch - E26-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 35

7 - Hinge pin

- ❑ For cushioning element

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x for country-specific version without knee airbag
- ❑ 5x for country-specific version with knee airbag
- ❑ 3 Nm

9 - Front right footwell illumination bulb - L152-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing front footwell illumination bulb -L151- / -L152-

10 - Glove box light - W6-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing glove box light - W6-

11 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

- ❑ Depending on equipment version

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 149

12 - Glove box lid

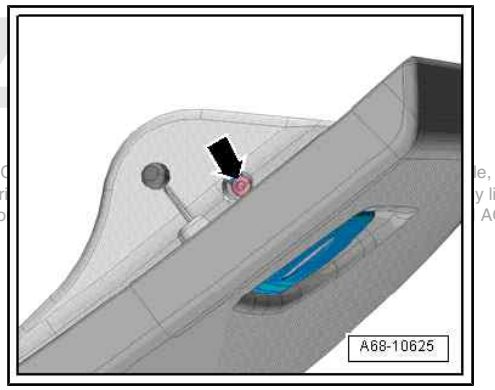
- ❑ Manually releasing the glove box lid ⇒ page 28
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 34

13 - Glove box opening mechanism

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 26
- ❑ Press into glove box lid until it engages audibly
- ❑ Country-specific version with knee airbag: additionally secured with bolt ⇒ page 22
- ❑ Removing and installing lock cylinder ⇒ page 27

Glove box opening mechanism with additional bolt - country-specific version with knee airbag

– Tighten bolt -arrow- to 1.8 Nm.



Protected by copyright. C
permitted unless author
with respect to the co
le, is not
y liability
AG.

1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)

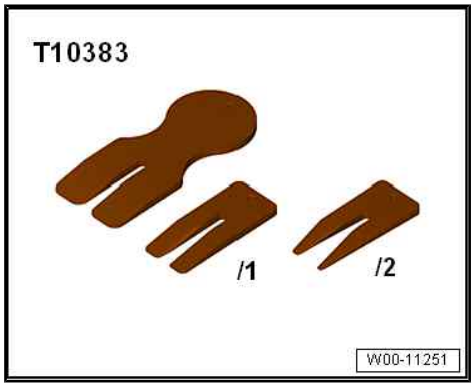
⇒ "1.5.1 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)", page 22

⇒ "1.5.2 Removing and installing footwell trim (front)", page 23

1.5.1 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



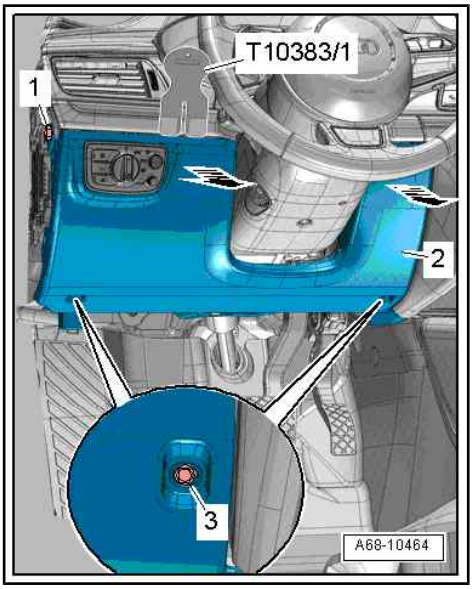
Removing

– Remove side dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 238 .

– Remove bolt -1- at side.

– Remove bolts -3- at bottom.

– Unclip top edge of dash panel cover (driver side) -2- from dash panel -arrows- using wedge - T10383/1- .



Note

Considerable force is required to unclip the cover from the dash panel.

– Pull dash panel cover (bottom) out of clip on foot rest.

– Unplug electrical connector for light switch.

– Unclip 16-pin connector - T16- (diagnostic connector).

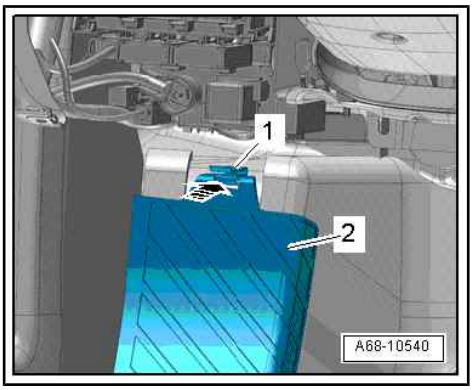
– Equipment version with footwell light: Unplug electrical connector.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert dash panel cover (bottom) in clip -1- on foot rest -2- -arrow-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 19

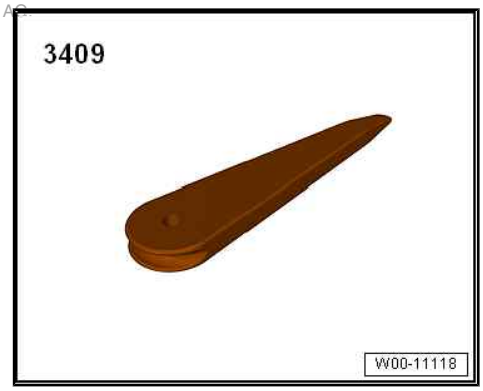


1.5.2 Removing and installing footwell trim (front)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

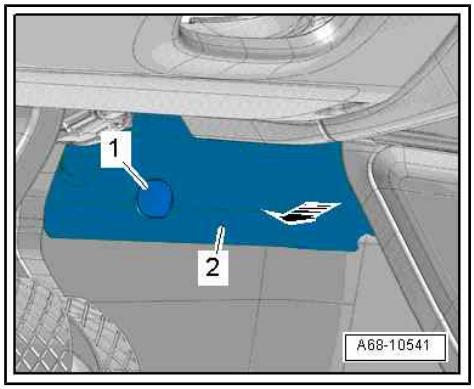


Removing

– Using screwdriver, prise off cap -1- and unscrew bolt for cover underneath cap.

– Unclip cover -2- -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Pull out cover downwards and detach.



Installing

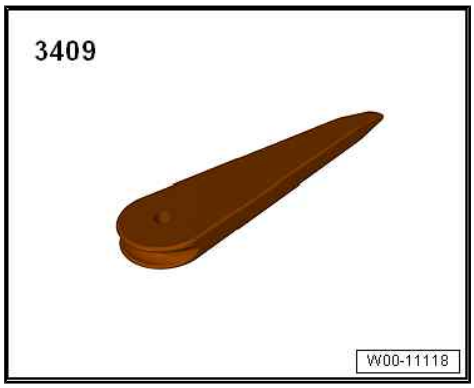
Install in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 19

1.6 Removing and installing trim cover for dash panel insert

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

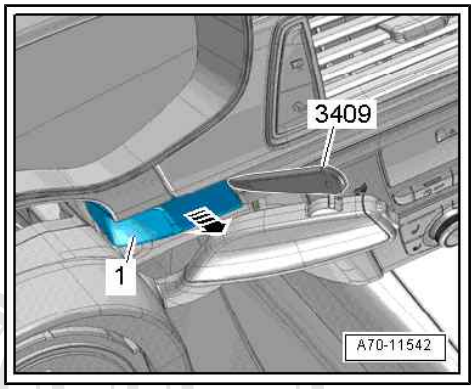


Removing

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Unclip trim cover -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow- and remove.

– Repeat procedure on opposite side of trim cover.

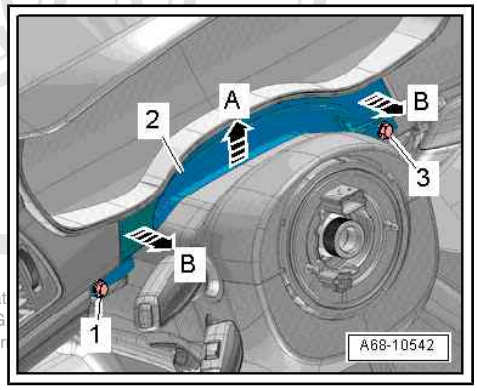


– Remove bolts -1- and -3-.

– Using a small flat screwdriver, carefully unclip trim cover -2- from trim (top) for steering column switch module -arrow A-.

– Unclip trim cover for instrument cluster from dash panel -arrows B- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Detach trim cover.



Installing

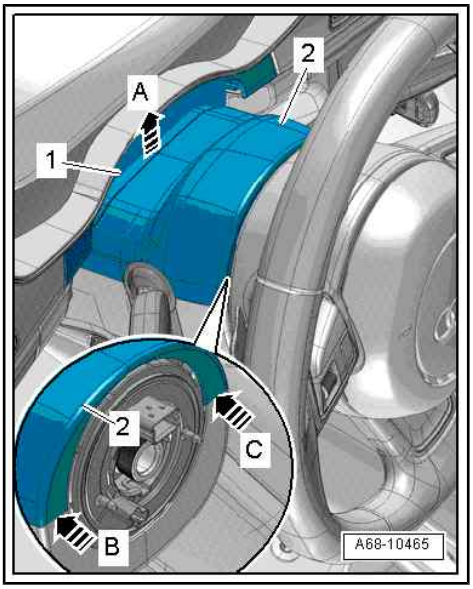
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Copyright by AUDI AG
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
whatsoever. For details see the last page of information

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 20

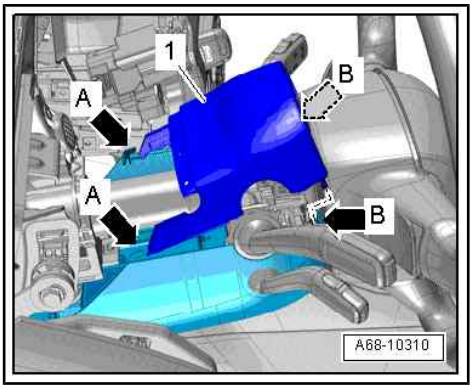
1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)

Removing



- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Using a small flat screwdriver, carefully unclip trim cover -1- -arrow A- from trim (top) -2- for steering column switch module.
- Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.
- Using a small flat screwdriver, carefully prise trim (top) off trim (bottom) for steering column switch module -arrow B-.
- Turn steering wheel back through 180° and repeat procedure on opposite side -arrow C-.
- Disengage trim (top) at trim (bottom) for steering column switch module and detach.

Installing



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

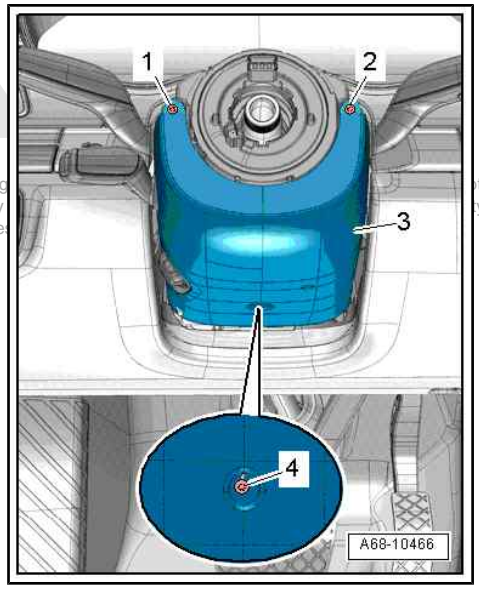
- Start by engaging trim (top) -1- in trim (bottom) -arrows A-.
- Make sure that lug on trim (bottom) engages in recess at retaining tab on trim (top) -arrows B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 20

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)

Removing



Note

For greater clarity the steering wheel is not shown in the illustration.

Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by with respect to the correctne

- Remove trim (top) for steering column switch module ⇒ page 25 .
- Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Turn steering wheel back through 180° and unscrew bolt -2- on opposite side.

Note

If bolts -1- and -2- are not accessible, steering wheel must be removed before performing remaining work steps ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .

- Unscrew bolt -4- and detach trim (bottom) -3- for steering column switch module.
- Unplug electrical connector and unclip cable retainer.

Installing

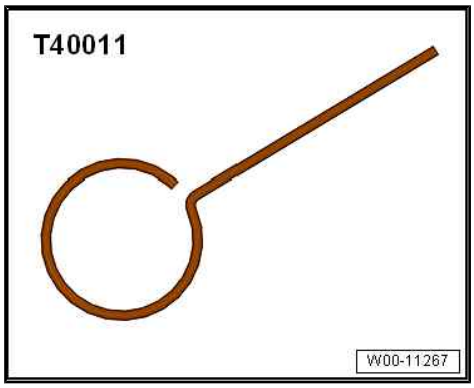
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim", page 20

1.9 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Locking pin - T40011-



Removing

Note

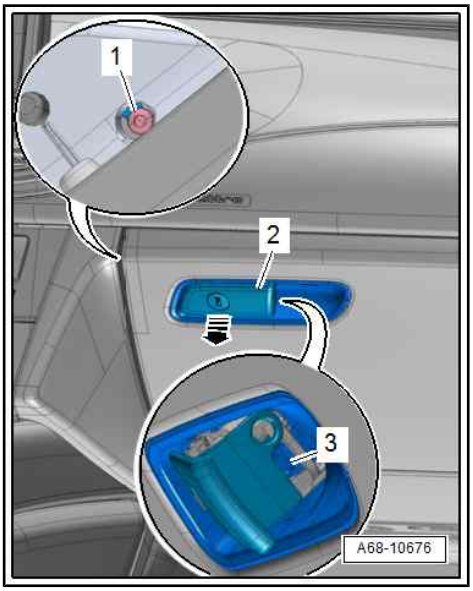
If the glove box lid cannot be opened in the normal way, you can release it manually ⇒ page 28 .

Vehicles with knee airbag:

– Open glove box and remove bolt -1-.

– Actuate glove box opening mechanism -2- and release retaining hook -3- on side of glove box opening mechanism using a screwdriver.

– Take glove box opening mechanism out of glove box lid -arrow-.

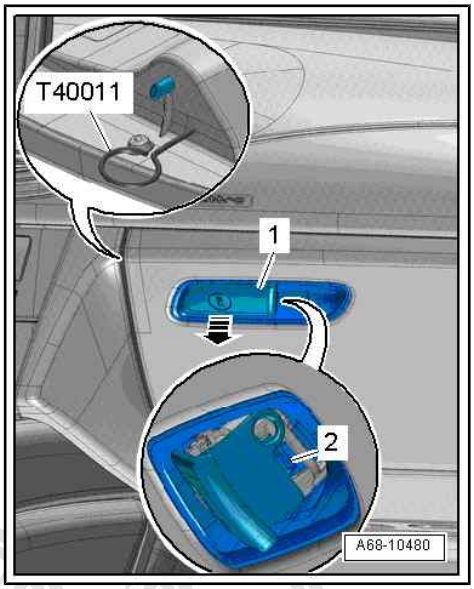


Vehicles without knee airbag:

– Actuate glove box opening mechanism -1- and release retaining hook -2- on side of glove box opening mechanism using a screwdriver.

– Insert locking pin - T40011- through opening in side of glove box lid and release retaining hook for glove box opening mechanism.

– Take glove box opening mechanism out of glove box lid -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 21

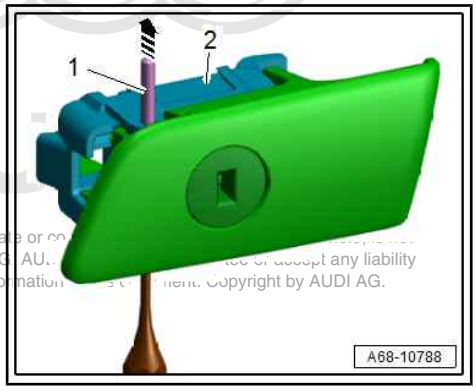
1.10 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove box opening mechanism

Removing

– Remove glove box opening mechanism ⇒ page 26 .

– Drive shaft -1- out of mounting hole in direction of -arrow- using a punch.

– Detach cover -2-.

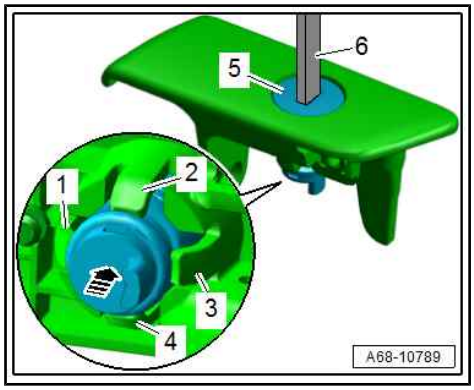


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU... any liability with respect to the correctness of information... Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to lock cylinder.

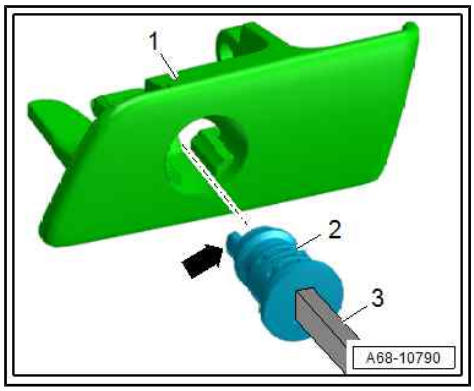
- *Only remove and install lock cylinder with key properly inserted; this will ensure that tumblers and springs do not fall out.*



– Insert key -6- into lock cylinder.

– Carefully release fasteners -1 ... 4- one after another using a small screwdriver, and at the same time press out lock cylinder -5- -arrow-.

Installing



– Insert key -3- into new lock cylinder -2-.

– Pull protective cap off new lock cylinder.

– Insert lock cylinder into glove box opening mechanism -1- until it engages (pay attention to correct installation position of lug).

• Lug -arrow- on lock cylinder should face towards left.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.11 Removing and installing glove box

⇒ “1.11.1 Manually releasing glove box lid”, page 28

⇒ “1.11.2 Removing and installing glove box”, page 29

⇒ “1.11.3 Removing and installing glove box - vehicles with knee airbag”, page 31

⇒ “1.11.4 Removing and installing storage compartment”, page 34

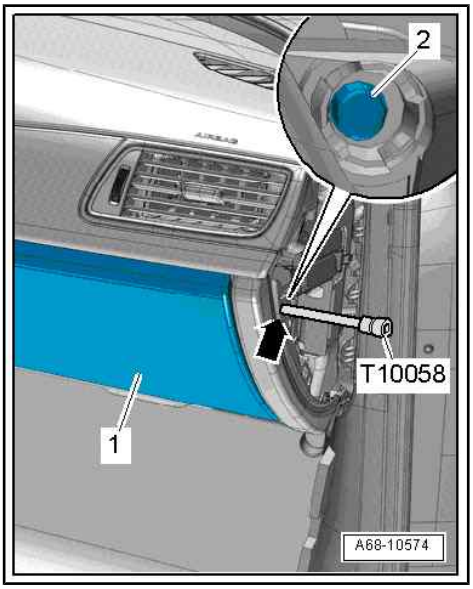
1.11.1 Manually releasing glove box lid

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Socket - T10058-



Procedure



– Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side) ⇒ page 238 .
– Insert socket - T10058- (or similar suitable tool with a length of 80 mm) through opening -arrow- in dash panel (passenger side).
– Open glove box lid -1- by pressing down locking pin -2-.

1.11.2 Removing and installing glove box

Removing

Note

If the glove box lid cannot be opened in the normal way, you can release it manually ⇒ page 28 .

WARNING

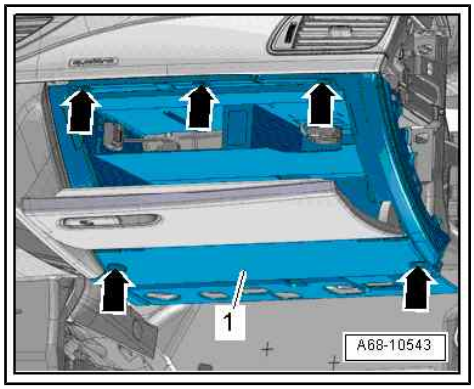
On equipment version with key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- , observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Equipment version with DVD/CD changer: Remove DVD/CD changer ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; DVD/CD changer .
– Equipment version with chip card reader control unit - J676- : Remove chip card reader control unit - J676- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Navigation system; Removing and installing chip card reader control unit .

– Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side) ⇒ page 238 .

– Open glove box lid and unscrew bolts -arrows- (depending on equipment version ⇒ page 21).



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Detach glove box -1- and pull it out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connector at main connector.

Installing

WARNING

- *On equipment version with key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- , observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Plug in electrical connector until it engages audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 21

1.11.3 Removing and installing glove box - vehicles with knee airbag

Removing

Note

If the glove box lid cannot be opened in the normal way, you can release it manually ⇒ page 28 .

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components* ⇒ page 4 .
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components* ⇒ page 5 .

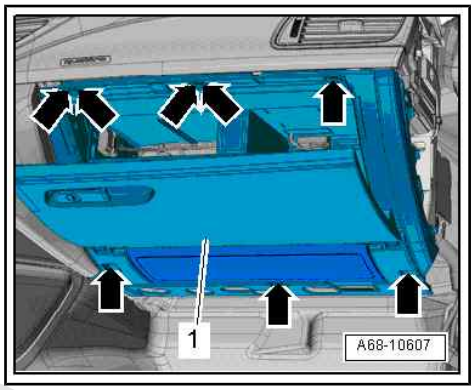
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Equipment version with DVD/CD changer: Remove DVD/CD changer ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; DVD/CD changer .

– Equipment version with chip card reader control unit - J676- : Remove chip card reader control unit - J676- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Navigation system; Removing and installing chip card reader control unit .

– Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side) ⇒ page 238 .

– Open glove box lid and unscrew bolts -arrows-.



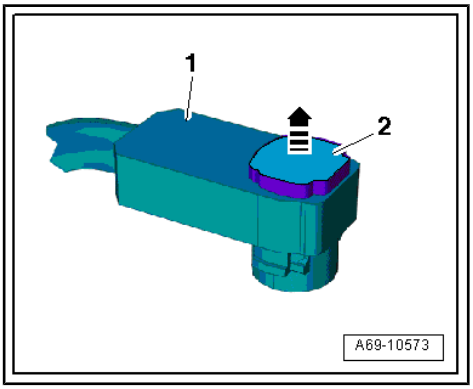
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Detach glove box -1- and pull it out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connector at main connector.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector (yellow) for knee airbag.
– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Detach glove box with knee airbag.



WARNING

Set down glove box with impact cushion for knee airbag facing upwards.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Plug in electrical connector until it engages audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

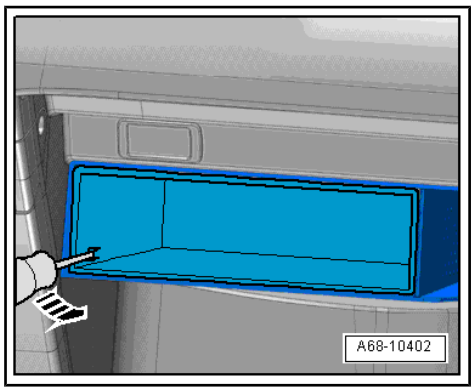
Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 21

1.11.4 Removing and installing storage compartment

Removing



Note

If the glove box lid cannot be opened in the normal way, you can release it manually ⇒ page 28 .

– Release retaining hooks (left and right) -arrow- using a screwdriver and pull storage compartment out of glove box.

Installing

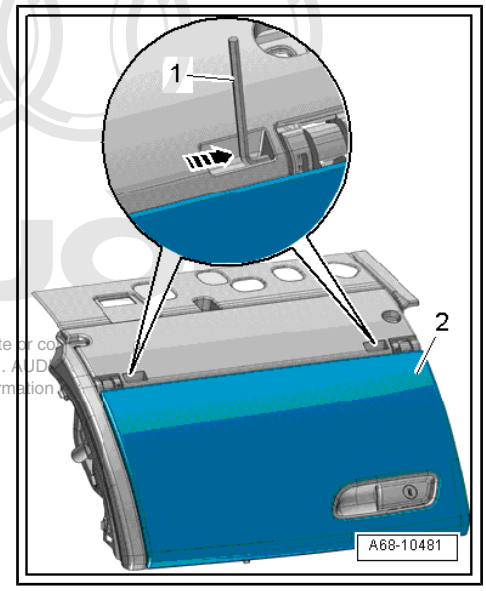
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 21

1.12 Removing and installing glove box lid

Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 28 .
– Pull hinge pin out of cushioning element ⇒ page 35 .
– Set down glove box with top resting on a soft surface.
– Use a 4 mm Allen key -item 1- (or another suitable tool) to knock out hinge pins (left and right) -arrow-.
– Detach lid -2- from glove box.



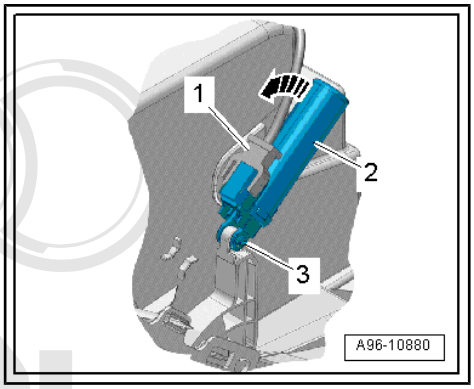
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co
with respect to the correctness of information

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 21

1.13 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid



Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 28 .
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Pull out hinge pin -3-.
– Release cushioning element -2- in anti-clockwise direction -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 21

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Equipment

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - load guard”, page 36

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - sun visors”, page 38

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - sun blind”, page 39

⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover”, page 41

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing load guard”, page 42

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing mounting for load guard”, page 42

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing bracket for load guard”, page 44

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing sun visor”, page 44

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor”, page 44

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing sun blind”, page 45

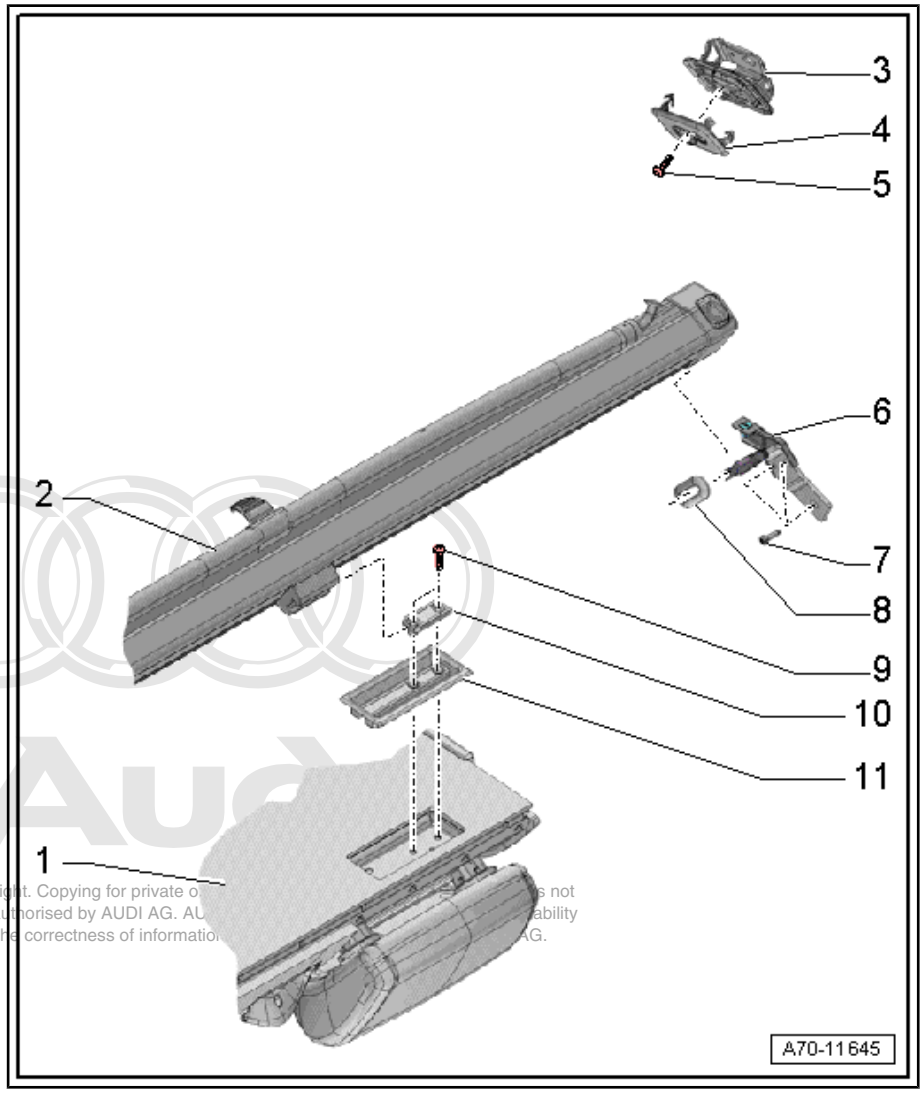
⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing retainer for sun blind”, page 49

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing grab handle”, page 49

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing luggage compartment cover”, page 50

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Exploded view - load guard



1 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)

2 - Load guard

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42
- ❑ Press in as far as stop

3 - Retainer

- ❑ For load guard
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42
- ❑ Position locating lug on retainer in bore in body

4 - Cover

- ❑ For retainer
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 9 Nm

6 - Bracket for load guard

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 44

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 6 Nm

8 - Rubber grommet

- ❑ For bracket for load guard
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Slide onto bracket and insert in trim

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 9 Nm

10 - Mounting for load guard

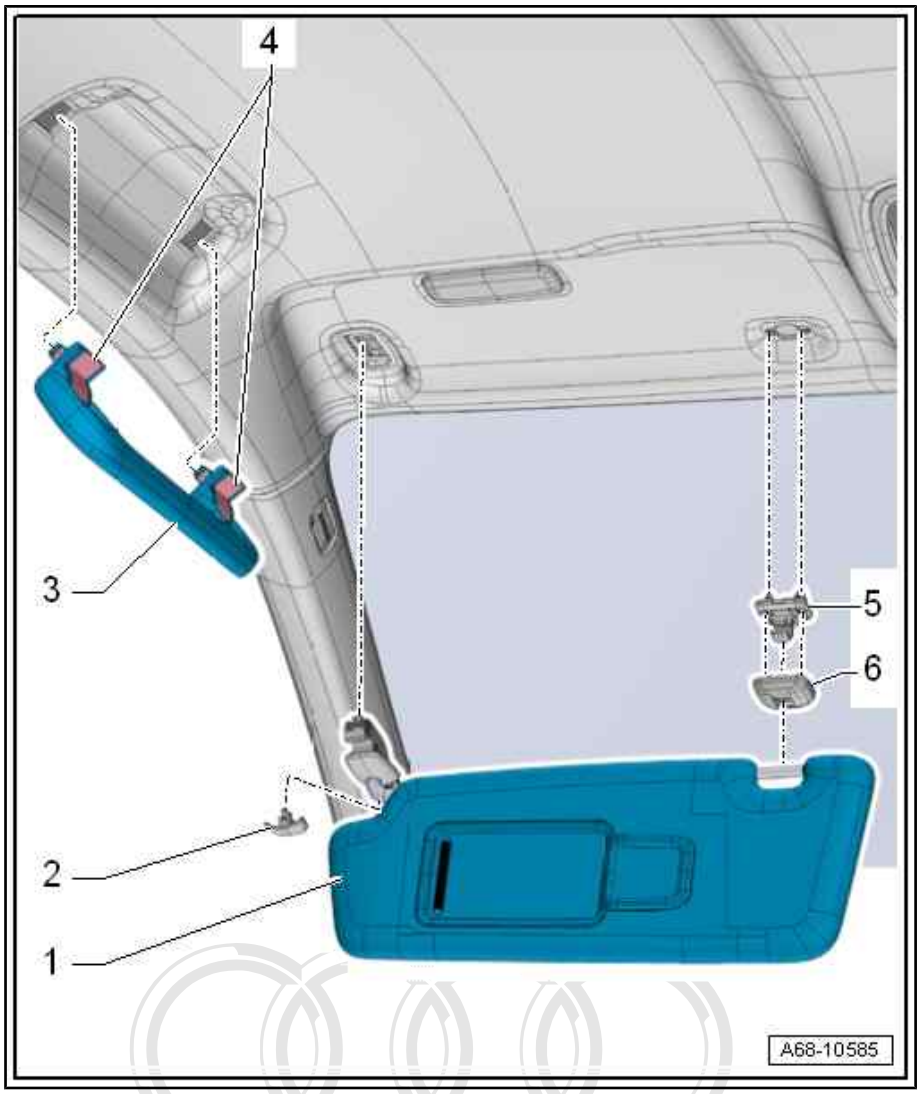
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42

11 - Guide

- ❑ For mounting at 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42

Protected by copyright. Copying for private o s not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU ability with respect to the correctness of informatio AG.

2.2 Exploded view - sun visors



1 - Sun visor

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 44
- ❑ Engage bracket for sun visor in body opening

2 - Expanding cap

- ❑ Clipped into sun visor
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

3 - Grab handle

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 49
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

4 - Expanding caps

> **Caution**
>
> *Unclip only as far as detent (do not pull out completely as silicone cushioning element and spring could fall out and handle would then have to be renewed).*

- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

5 - Centre bracket for sun visor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 44
- ❑ Take care not to damage fasteners when inserting them

6 - Expanding cap

- ❑ Clipped into centre bracket for sun visor

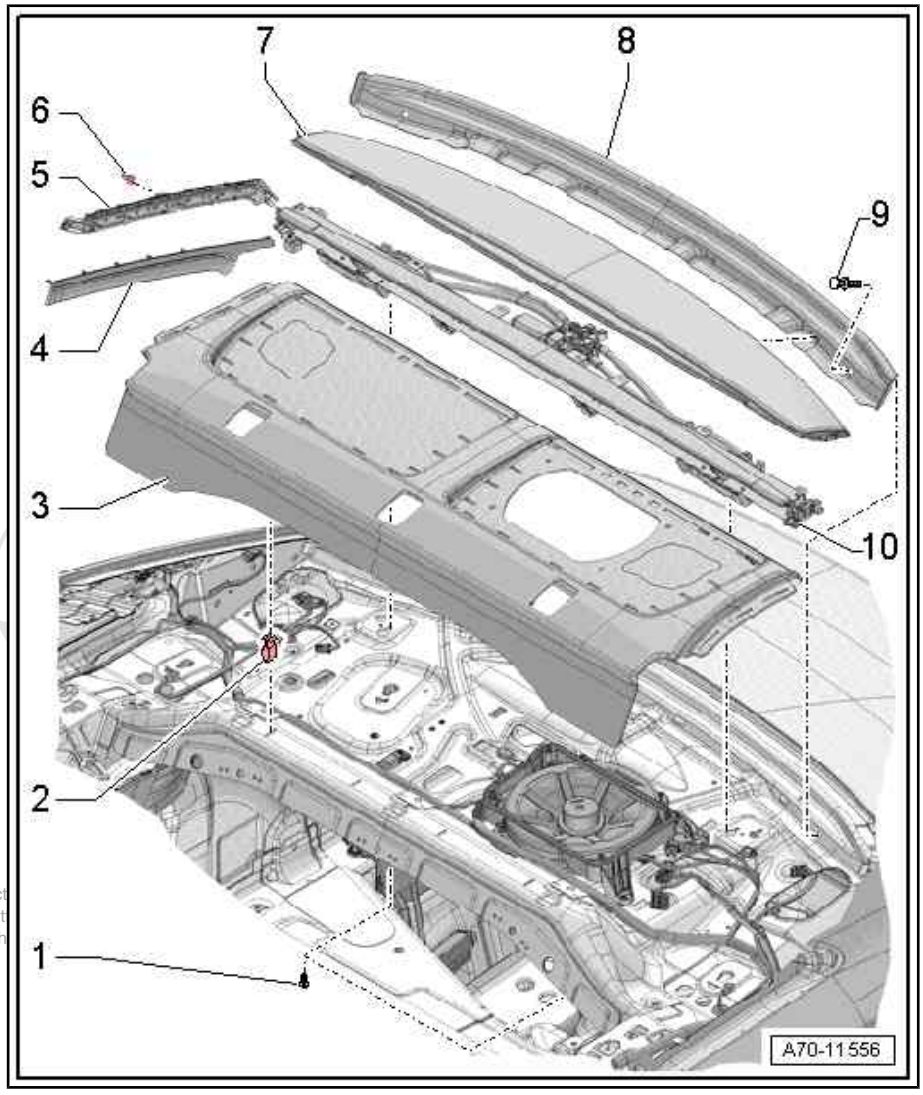
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Exploded view - sun blind

⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - sun blind, Saloon”, page 39

⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - sun blind, Avant”, page 40

2.3.1 Exploded view - sun blind, Saloon



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

2 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in front section of rear shelf
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in rear shelf for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Front section of rear shelf

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 293
- ❑ Clip in at sun blind and press on until it engages

4 - Trim

- ❑ For guide strip for sun blind
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288
- ❑ Engage in guide strip and press on until it engages

5 - Guide strip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.10.1 Removing and installing sun blind - Saloon”, page 45
- ❑ Clip in at sun blind and press on until it engages

6 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in guide strip
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Rear section of rear shelf

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 45
- ❑ Insert sun blind with rear shelf in rear window frame and tighten bolts

8 - Trim

- ❑ For rear window frame

9 - Fastener

- ❑ 2x

10 - Sun blind

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 45
- ❑ Clip into rear section of rear shelf
- ❑ Insert sun blind with rear shelf in rear window frame and tighten bolts

2.3.2 Exploded view - sun blind, Avant

1 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in sun blind mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 318
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - Sun blind

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim (bottom)

4 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in cover
- ❑ Remove any clips left in sun blind mounting points and insert in cover for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

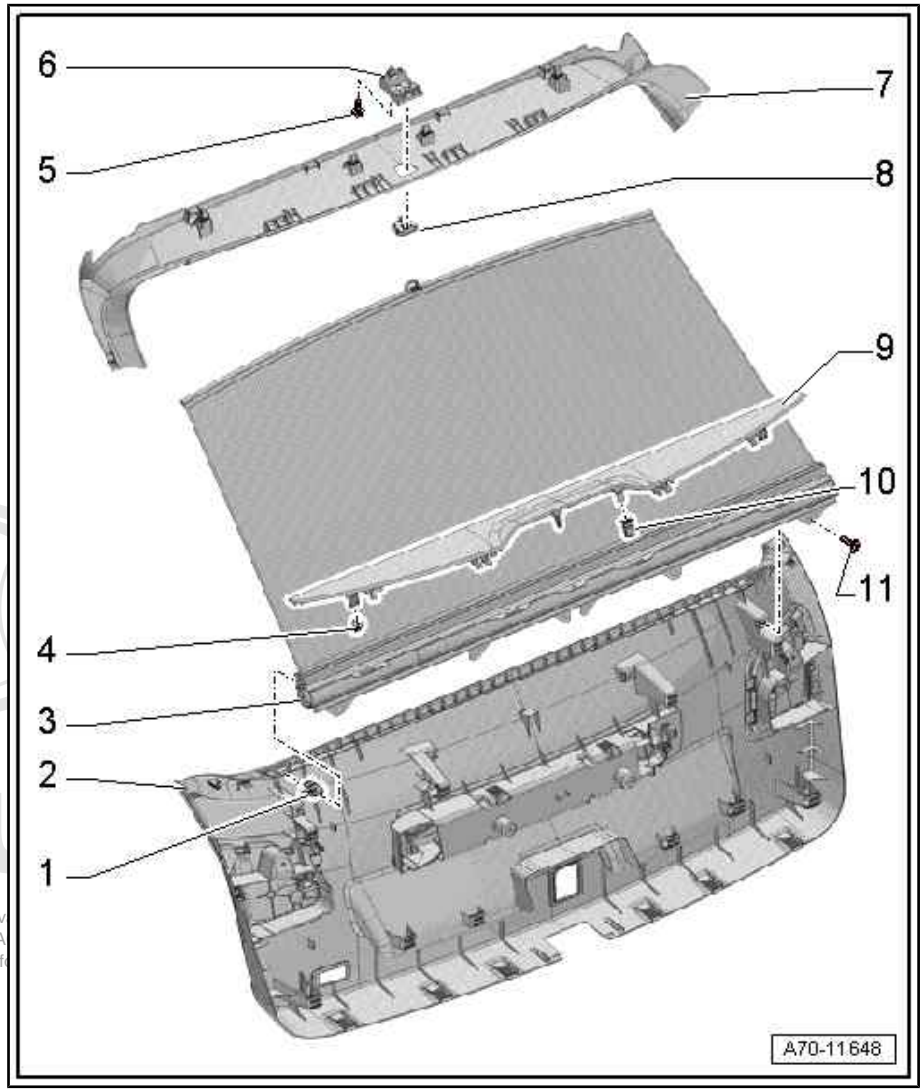
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Bracket for retainer

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 49



7 - Rear lid trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 319
- ❑ First insert behind side window frames of rear lid
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Retainer for sun blind

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 49
- ❑ Hook in at bracket and press on until it engages audibly

9 - Cover for sun blind

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

10 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in cover
- ❑ Remove any clips left in sun blind mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in cover for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 51

2 - Motor 1 for luggage compartment cover - V473- / motor 2 for luggage compartment cover - V474-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50
- ❑ Adjusting Bowden cable ⇒ page 51

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 51

4 - Guide rail for luggage compartment cover

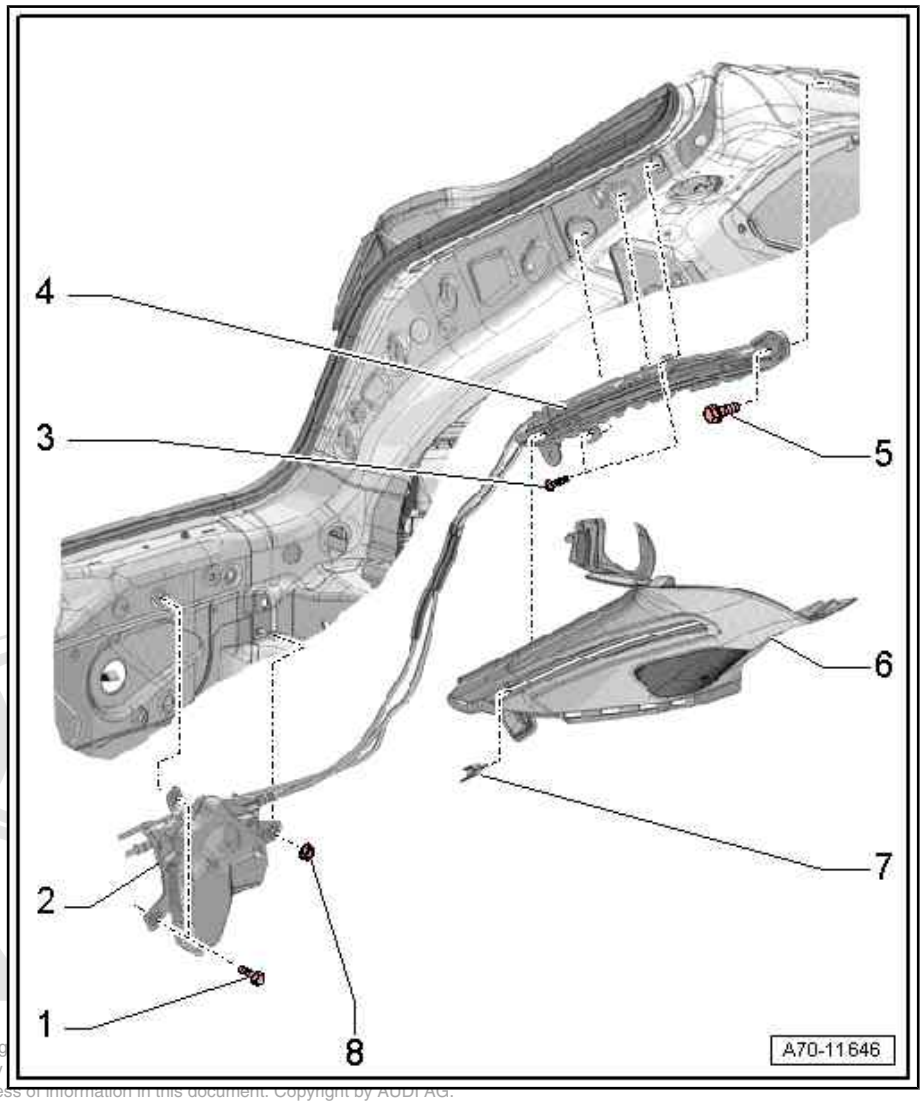
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50
- ❑ Adjusting Bowden cable ⇒ page 51

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 51

6 - D-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 290



Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 - Actuator

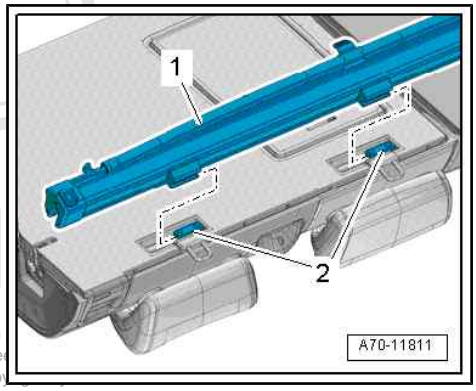
- ❑ For luggage compartment cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 290

- ❑ Clip into guide rail

8 - Nut

- ❑ 4.5 Nm
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 51

2.5 Removing and installing load guard



Removing

– Fold down both rear seat backrests.

– Pull load guard -1- out of mountings -2- at 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side) towards right and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert load guard -1- into guides on 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side) with mountings.

– Press load guard towards left into mountings -2- at 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side) as far as stop.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

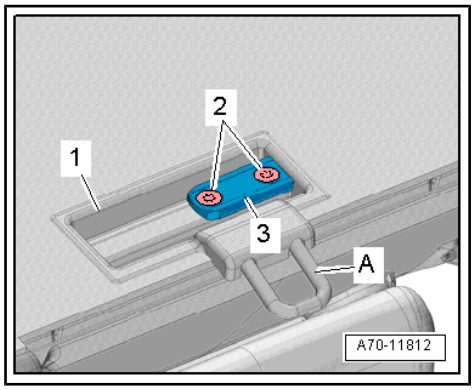
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - load guard”, page 36

2.6 Removing and installing mounting for load guard

⇒ “2.6.1 Removing and installing mounting for load guard”, page 42

⇒ “2.6.2 Removing and installing retainer for load guard”, page 42

2.6.1 Removing and installing mounting for load guard



Removing

– Fold down 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side).

– Remove load guard ⇒ page 42 .

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Detach mounting -3- with guide -1- for load guard.

– Equipment version with child seat anchor: Detach child seat anchor -A-.

Installing

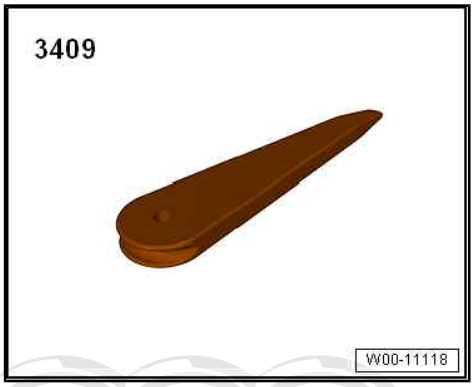
Install in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - load guard”, page 36

2.6.2 Removing and installing retainer for load guard

Special tools and workshop equipment required

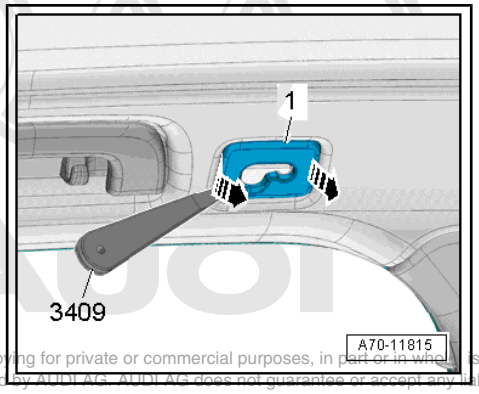
- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Unclip corners of cover -1- for retainer (rear) from retainer -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .

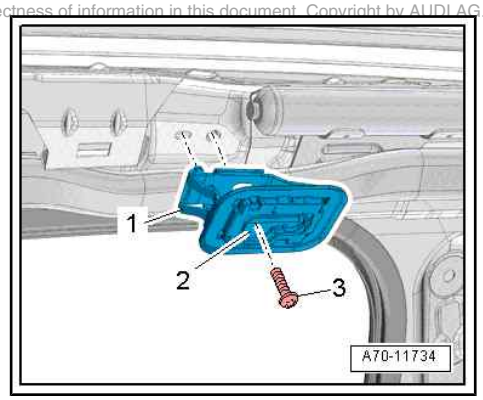
– Disengage cover from retainer and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 352 and lay it down on seats; headliner does not have to be removed.

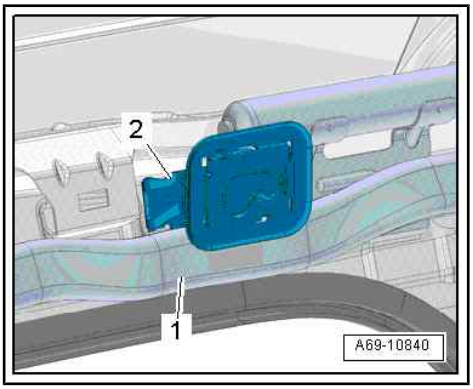
– Press flap -2- towards rear, unscrew bolt -3- behind flap and detach retainer -1- for load guard.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag -1- at front when fitting retainer -2-.*

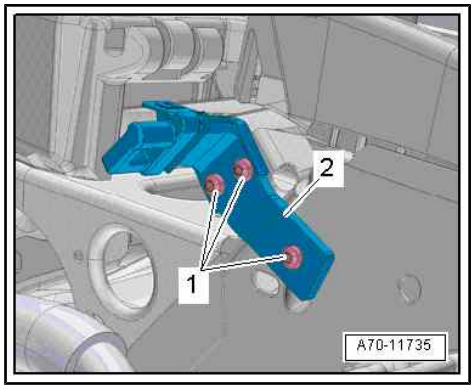


Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Push curtain airbag -1- beneath retainer -2- for load guard, as shown in illustration.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - load guard", page 36

2.7 Removing and installing bracket for load guard



Removing

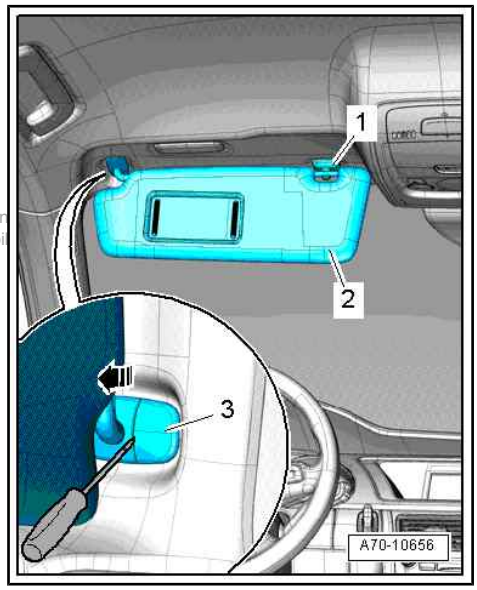
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 330 .
– Remove bolts -1-.
– Detach bracket -2- for load guard.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - load guard”, page 36

2.8 Removing and installing sun visor



Removing

– Disengage sun visor -2- from centre bracket -1-.
– Use a screwdriver to unclip expanding cap -3-.
– Remove bracket for sun visor downwards -arrow- from body opening.
– Unplug electrical connector and detach sun visor.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is n
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liabi
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

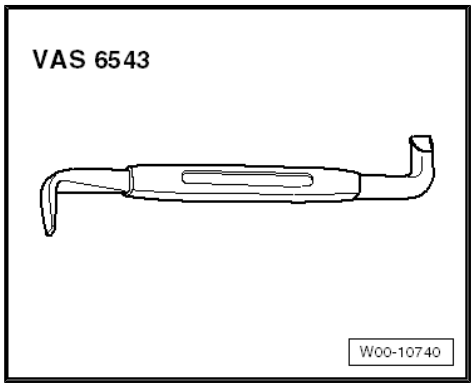
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - sun visors”, page 38

2.9 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

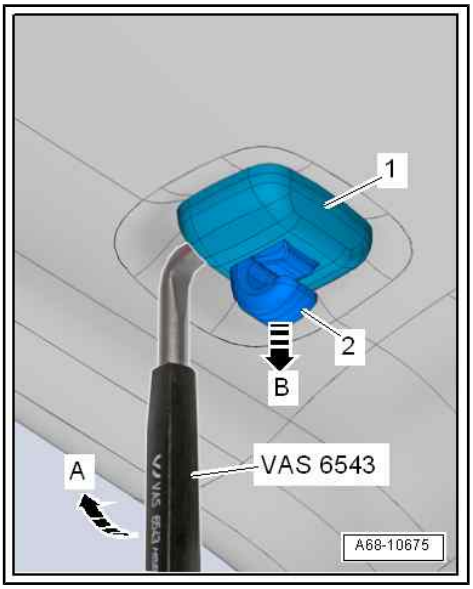
♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



Removing

– Disengage sun visor from centre bracket for sun visor and fold to the side.

– Unclip cover -1- for centre bracket for sun visor -arrow A-. To do so, slide angled screwdriver - VAS 6543- only approx. 1 mm under cap.



Note

Inserting angled screwdriver - VAS 6543- further would position it beneath centre bracket for sun visor. Cover can then not be prised off.

– Pull out centre bracket for sun visor -2- -arrow B-.

Installing

Install in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - sun visors”, page 38

2.10 Removing and installing sun blind

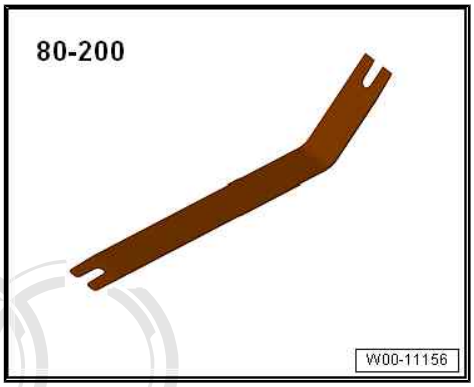
⇒ “2.10.1 Removing and installing sun blind - Saloon”, page 45

⇒ “2.10.2 Removing and installing sun blind - Avant”, page 47

2.10.1 Removing and installing sun blind - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-

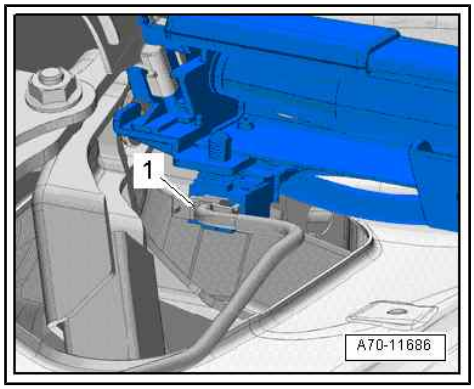


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove front section of rear shelf ⇒ page 293 .

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at sun blind.

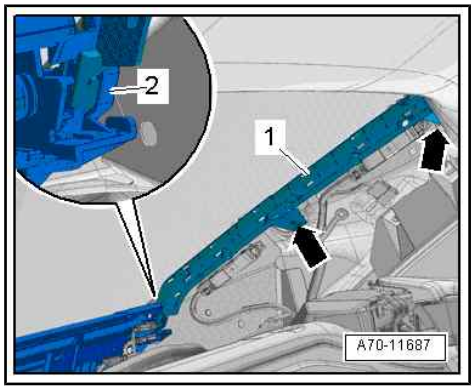


– Unclip guide strip -1- for sun blind using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows-.

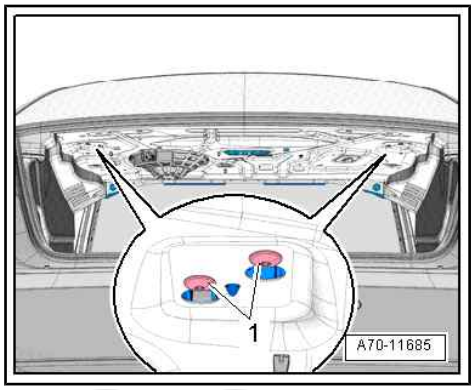
– Swivel top of guide strip slightly inwards and release retaining hook -2- using a screwdriver.

– Lift guide strip off connection piece at sun blind.

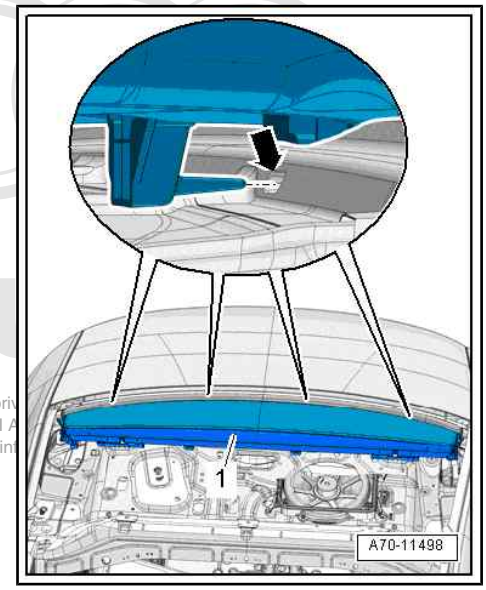
– Repeat procedure on opposite side of vehicle.



– Loosen bolts -1- for sun blind in luggage compartment several turns.

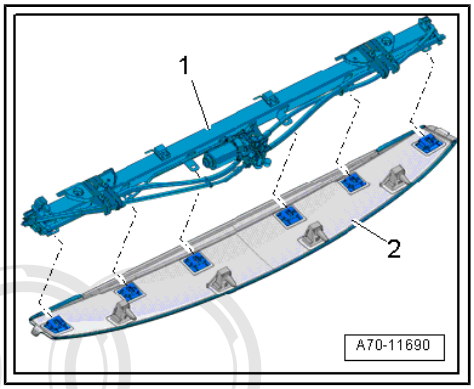


– Lift sun blind with rear shelf -1- slightly and pull it carefully out of mountings -arrow- on rear window frame.



Protected by copyright. Copying for priv
permitted unless authorised by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of in

– Detach sun blind -1- from rear section of rear shelf -2-; to do so, release catches with a screwdriver and pull off rear shelf.



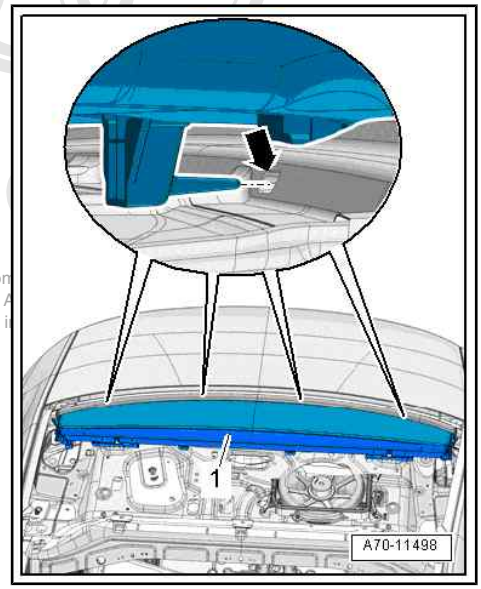
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– If removed previously, insert sun blind -1- in rear section of rear shelf -2- and press on until it engages.

– Insert sun blind with rear section of rear shelf -1- in rear window frame and tighten bolts.

• Pins on rear shelf must engage in mountings -arrow- in rear window frame.

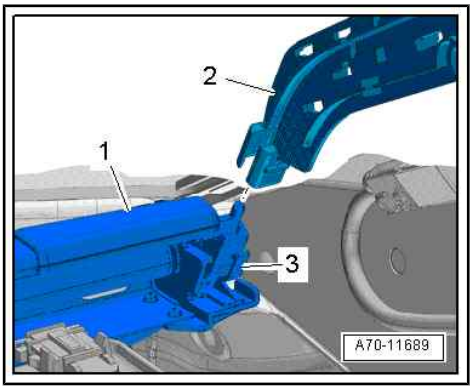


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information i

– Carefully insert guide strip -2- in connection piece of sun blind -1-.

• Guide groove for sun blind must be completely aligned with guide strip at connecting piece.

– Slide guide strip forwards until retaining clips -3- engage audibly in connection piece.

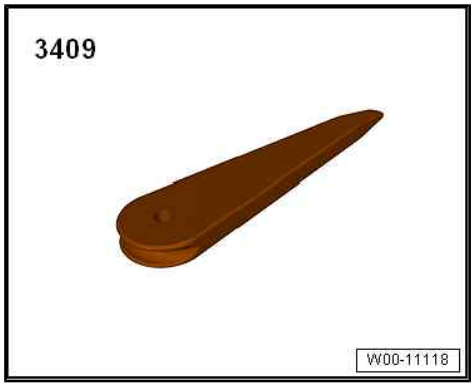


Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - sun blind, Saloon”, page 39

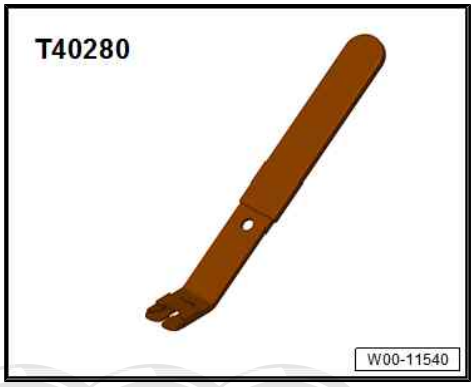
2.10.2 Removing and installing sun blind - Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



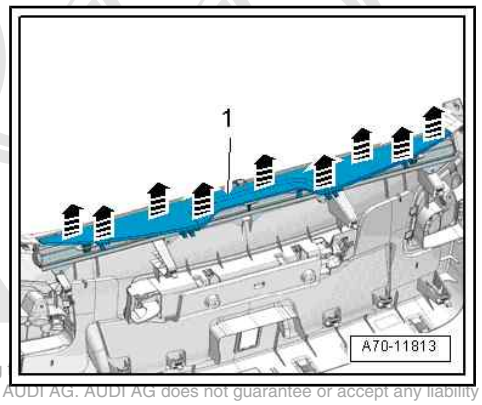
♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ page 318 .

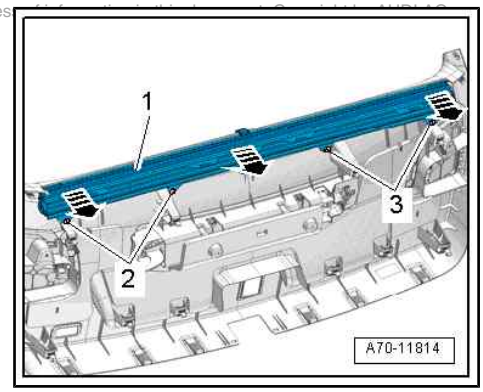
– Unclip cover -1- from sun blind -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness

– Remove bolts -2- and -3-.

– Pull sun blind -1- off rear lid trim (bottom) -arrows- and detach.



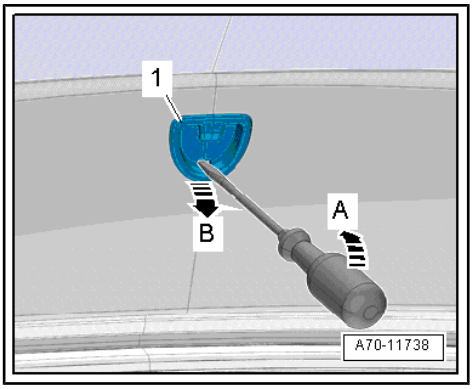
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ **“2.3.2 Exploded view - sun blind, Avant”, page 40**

2.11 Removing and installing retainer for sun blind

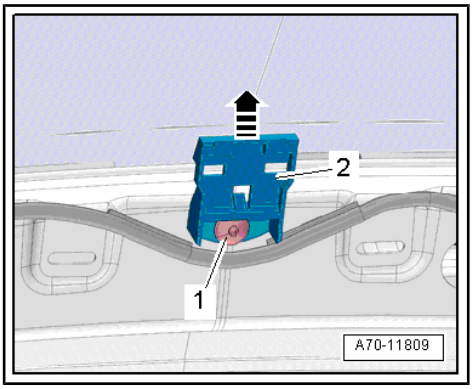
Removing



– Release retaining hook -arrow A- using a screwdriver.
– Disengage retainer -1- for sun blind (rear) at bracket and detach -arrow B-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove rear lid trim (top) ⇒ page 319 .



– Remove bolt -1-.
– Disengage bracket -2- for retainer for sun blind (rear) at rear window frame -arrow- and detach.

Installing

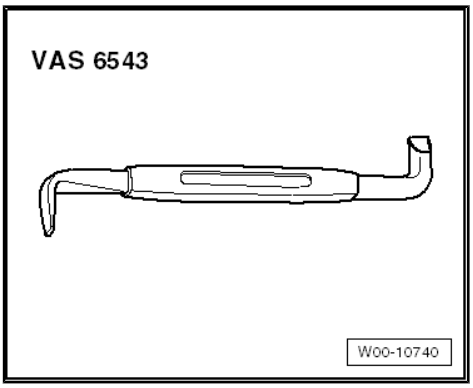
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - sun blind, Avant”, page 40

2.12 Removing and installing grab handle

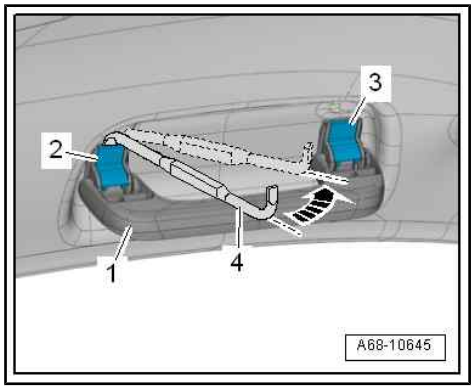
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



Removing

> **Caution**
>
> *Unclip expanding caps -2- and -3- only as far as detent (do not pull out completely as silicone cushioning element and spring could fall out and handle would then have to be renewed).*



– Insert angled screwdriver -4- in gap behind expanding cap -2-.
– Swivel angled screwdriver -arrow- until expanding cap engages audibly in detent.
– Repeat procedure on second expanding cap -3-.
– Pull grab handle -1- out of cut-out in body.
– Leave expanding caps in detent position in grab handle.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert grab handle in cut-out in body.
• There must not be a gap between the handle and the roof trim.
– Press in expanding caps.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - sun visors”, page 38

2.13 Removing and installing luggage compartment cover

⇒ “2.13.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment cover”, page 50

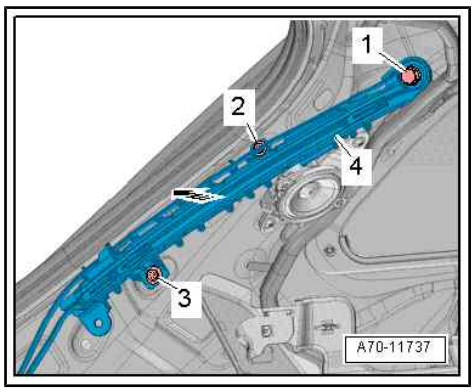
⇒ “2.13.2 Adjusting Bowden cables for luggage compartment cover”, page 51

2.13.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment cover

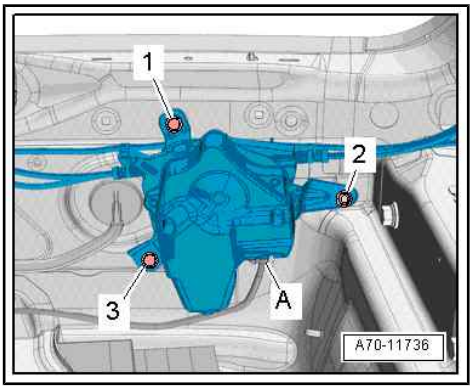
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove lining for luggage compartment cover ⇒ page 342 .
– Remove breakdown set/spare wheel.
– Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 290 .
– Unscrew bolts -1, 2 and 3- from guide rail (left and right).
– Unclip guide rail -4- from D-pillar -arrow-.



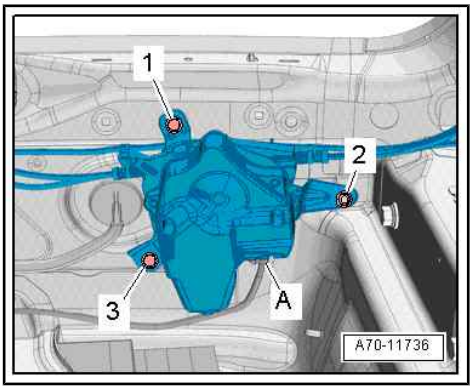
– Unplug electrical connector -A-.
– Remove bolts -1- and -3- and nut -2-.
– Unclip Bowden cables for motor for luggage compartment cover -V473- / -V474- from retainers.
– Take out motor for luggage compartment cover -V473- / -V474- .



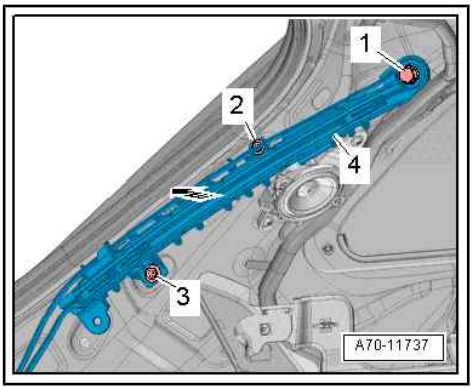
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Secure motor for luggage compartment cover -V473- / -V474- with bolts and nut, but do not tighten.
– Tighten bolts and nut in the sequence -1 ... 3- at motor for luggage compartment cover -V473- / -V474- .



– Plug in electrical connector -A-.
– Tighten bolts in the sequence -1 ... 3- at guide rail -4- (left and right).
– Clip in Bowden cables for motor for luggage compartment cover -V473- / -V474- at retainers.
– Adjust Bowden cables for motor for luggage compartment cover -V473- / -V474- ⇒ page 51 .



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover”, page 41

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. ©Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.13.2 Adjusting Bowden cables for luggage compartment cover

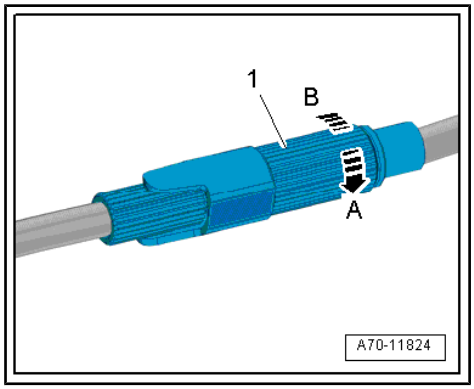
Procedure

– Take hold of handle to lift luggage compartment floor covering and fold it towards front.
– Remove insert/cover for spare wheel well.
– Equipment version with spare wheel: Take out spare wheel.

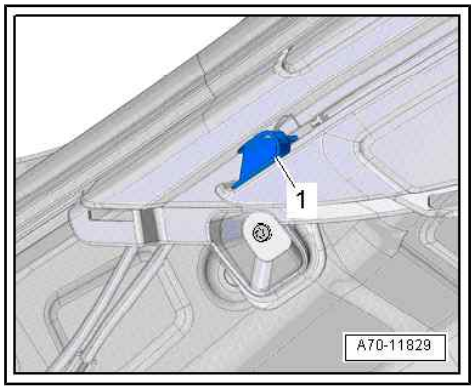
The following conditions must be met for the adjustment:

- Motor for luggage compartment cover -V473- / -V474- installed
- D-pillar trim with actuator for luggage compartment cover installed

– Adjust Bowden cable via Bowden cable adjuster.
– To adjust, turn upper part -1- in direction of -arrow A- or -arrow B-.



– Adjust Bowden cable so that the two actuators -1- for luggage compartment cover are parallel.
– After adjusting Bowden cables, check function of motor for luggage compartment cover -V473- / -V474- .
• Both actuators for luggage compartment cover must be parallel (top and bottom) at stop in guide of D-pillar trim.
– If actuators are not parallel, check routing of Bowden cables or repeat adjustment of Bowden cables.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Centre console

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 53

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)”, page 60

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing centre console cover”, page 63

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing ashtray (front)”, page 63

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing ashtray trim (front)”, page 64

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing insert for centre console”, page 64

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing centre console storage box (front)”, page 65

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front)”, page 65

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing centre console”, page 66

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing cup holders”, page 68

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing bracket for centre console”, page 69

3.1 Exploded view - centre console

Centre console ⇒ page 53

Attachments for centre console ⇒ page 55

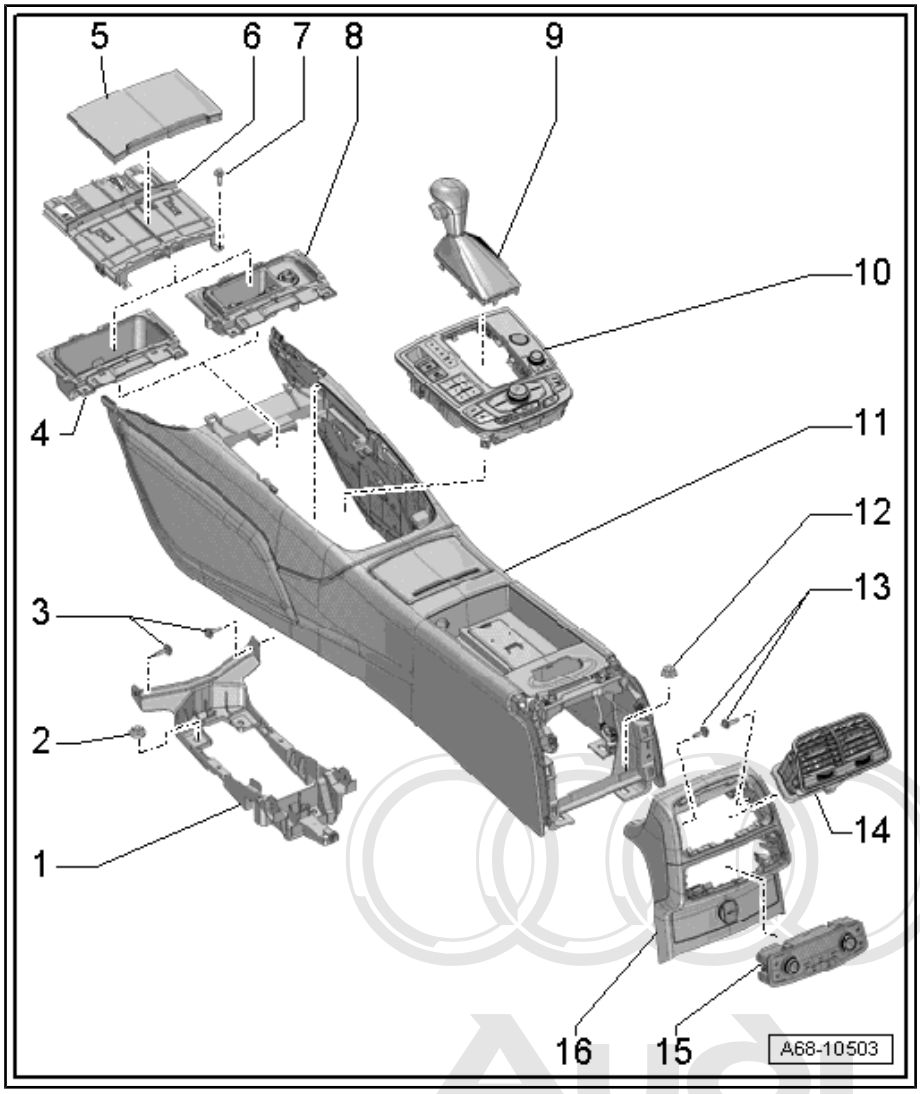
Storage compartment for centre console ⇒ page 56

Centre console trim (rear) ⇒ page 58

Cup holder with heater and cooling element in centre console - country-specific version ⇒ page 59

Centre console

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bracket

- For centre console
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 69

2 - Nut

- 4x
- Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Exploded view - gear knob and cover or ⇒ Rep. gr. 37 ; Selector mechanism; Exploded view - selector mechanism

3 - Bolt

- 4x
- 3 Nm

4 - Storage box

- Removing and installing ⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing ashtray (front)”, page 63

5 - Trim

- For ashtray/storage box (front)
- Engage trim at cover and press on so that it engages audibly
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 64

6 - Cover

- For ashtray/storage box (front)
- Removing and installing ⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing ashtray (front)”, page 63

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 - Bolt

- 2x
- 3 Nm

8 - Ashtray (front)

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 63

9 - Gear lever/selector lever

- Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing gear knob /⇒ Rep. gr. 37 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector lever handle

10 - Insert

- For centre console
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 64
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- Press on insert for centre console until it engages audibly
- Removing and installing multimedia system operating unit - E380- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing multimedia system operating unit - E380-

11 - Centre console

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 66

12 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ Tightening torque for equipment version with centre armrest ⇒ Item 10 (page 70)

13 - Bolts

- ❑ 3 Nm

14 - Vent (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.2.1 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)”, page 60
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in installation position and press in as far as stop

15 - Rear Climatronic operating and display unit - E265-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit

16 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 58

Attachments for centre console

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

2 - Cup holder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 68

3 - Trim

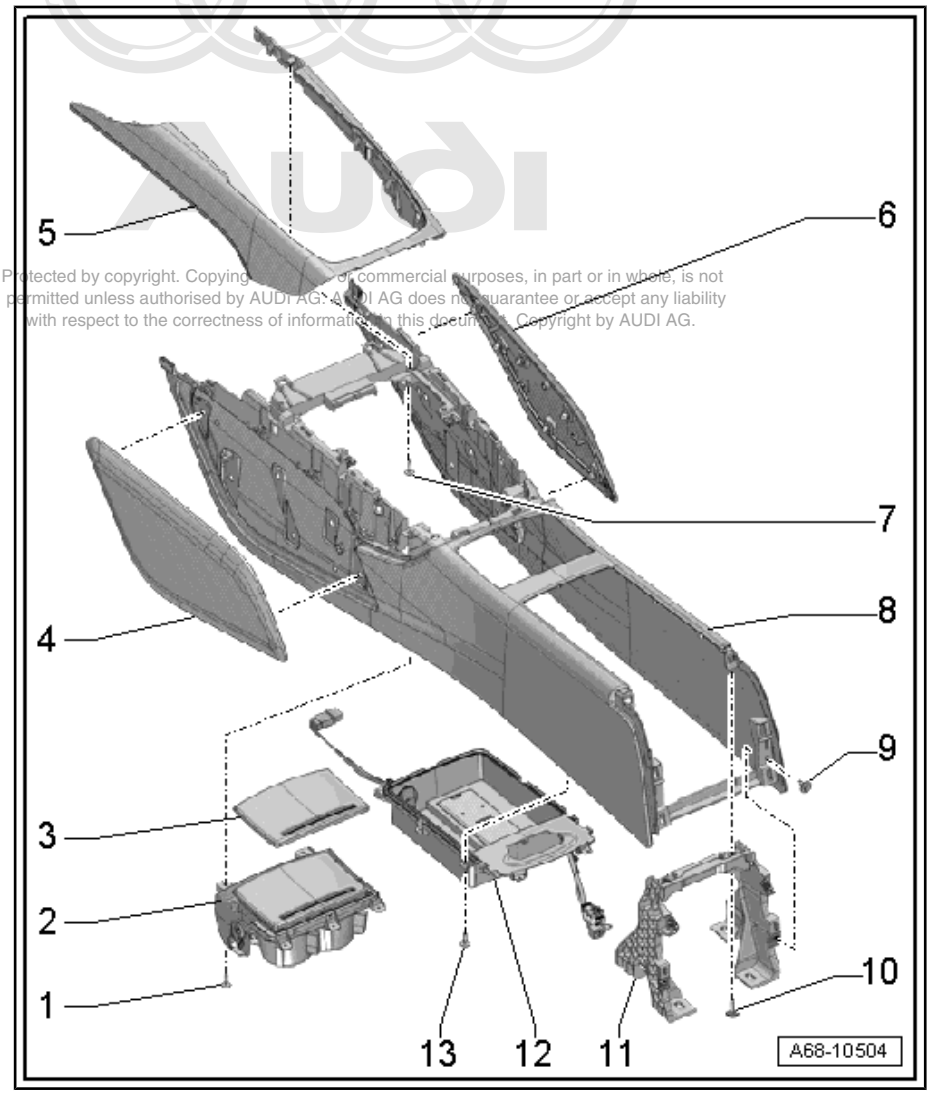
- ❑ For cup holder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.10.1 Removing and installing cup holder”, page 68
- ❑ Engage trim at cover and press on so that it engages audibly

4 - Side trim

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 65
- ❑ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Press on side trim until it engages audibly.

5 - Trim panel

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 63



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Side trim

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 65
- ❑ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Press on side trim until it engages audibly.

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 63

8 - Centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 66

Transmission by any means for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

11 - Bracket (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 69

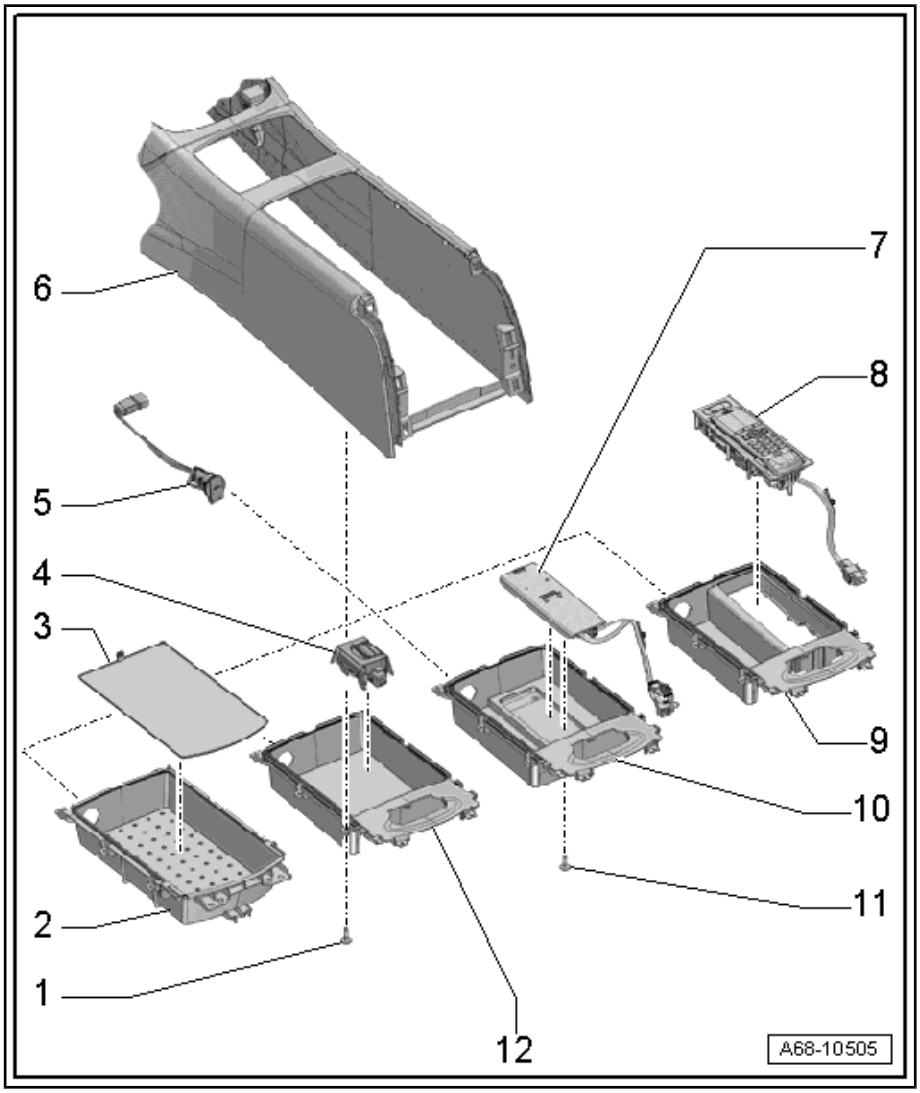
12 - Storage box

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 56

13 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 1 (page 57)

Centre console storage box



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

2 - Storage box

- ❑ For equipment version without centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 65

3 - Lining mat

4 - Connection for external audio sources - R199-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Connection for external multimedia devices

5 - 12 V socket - U5-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Cigarette lighter, socket; Exploded view - cigarette lighter, 12 V socket

6 - Centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 66

7 - Telephone bracket - R126-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ For mobile telephone - R54-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Telephone system; Removing and installing telephone bracket - R126-

8 - Telephone bracket - R126-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ For telephone handset - R37-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Telephone system; Removing and installing telephone bracket - R126-

9 - Storage compartment

- ❑ For equipment version with telephone bracket - R126- -item 8-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 65

10 - Storage box

- ❑ For equipment version with telephone bracket - R126- -item 7-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 65

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

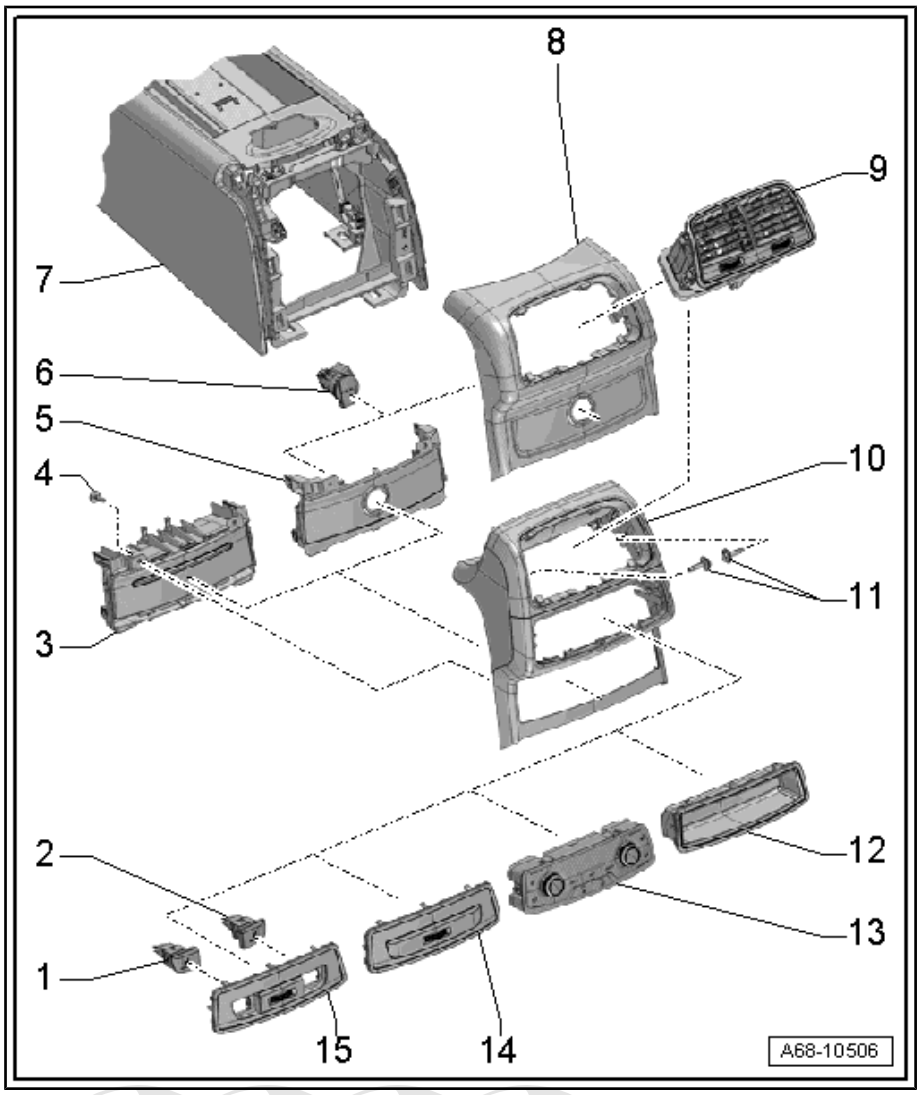
11 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Telephone system; Overview of fitting locations - telephone system

12 - Storage box

- ❑ For equipment version with connection for external audio sources - R199-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 65

Centre console trim (rear)



1 - Heated rear left seat switch with regulator - E128-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing heated rear seat switch with regulator -E128- / -E129-
- ❑ Press onto cover until it engages audibly

2 - Heated rear right seat switch with regulator - E129-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing heated rear seat switch with regulator -E128- / -E129-
- ❑ Press onto cover until it engages audibly

3 - Mounting

- ❑ For cigarette lighter and socket
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.2.1 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)”, page 60

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

5 - Trim

- ❑ For 12 V socket 2 - U18-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.2.1 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)”, page 60

6 - 12 V socket 2 - U18-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Cigarette lighter, socket; Exploded view - cigarette lighter, 12 V socket

7 - Centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 66

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Equipment version without centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 60

9 - Vent (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.2.1 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)”, page 60

- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in installation position and press in as far as stop

10 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Equipment version with centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 60

11 - Bolts

- ❑ 3 Nm

12 - Storage box

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ “3.2.2 Removing and installing trim for switches/controls/storage box”, page 62
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Press onto cover until it engages audibly

13 - Rear Climatronic operating and display unit - E265-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit

14 - Trim

- ❑ Equipment version with potentiometer for rear temperature selection - G538-
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ “3.2.2 Removing and installing trim for switches/controls/storage box”, page 62
- ❑ Press onto cover until it engages audibly

15 - Cover for switches

- ❑ Equipment version with potentiometer for rear temperature selection - G538-
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ “3.2.2 Removing and installing trim for switches/controls/storage box”, page 62
- ❑ Press onto cover until it engages audibly

Cup holder with heater and cooling element in centre console - country-specific version

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 60

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 10x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

3 - Cup holder with heater and cooling element - Z105-

- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 69

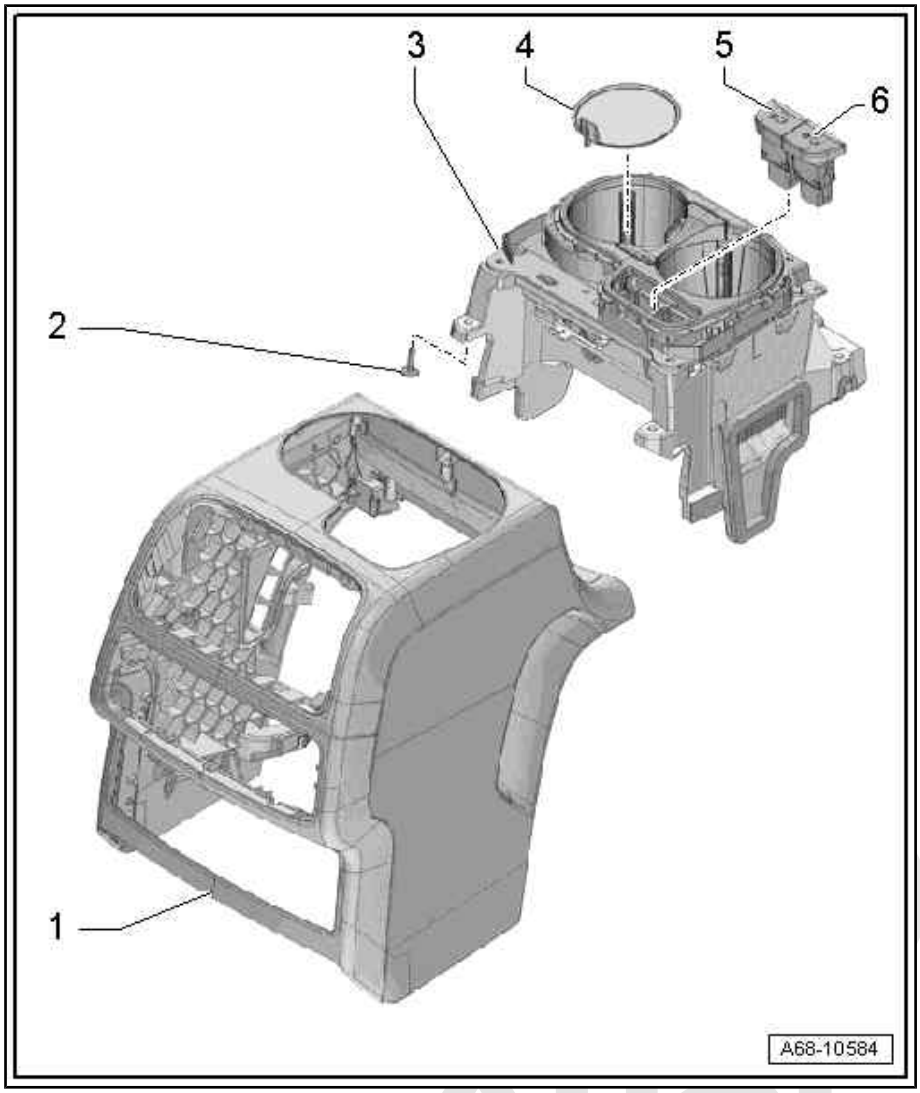
4 - Lining mat

5 - Button for cup holder with cooling element - E674-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in centre console

6 - Button for cup holder with heating element - E675-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in centre console



3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)

⇒ “3.2.1 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)”, page 60

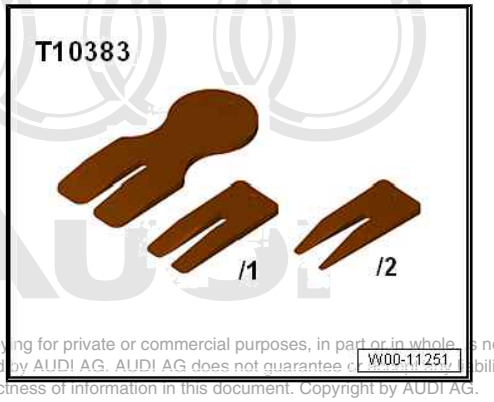
⇒ “3.2.2 Removing and installing trim for switches/controls/storage box”, page 62

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2.1 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)

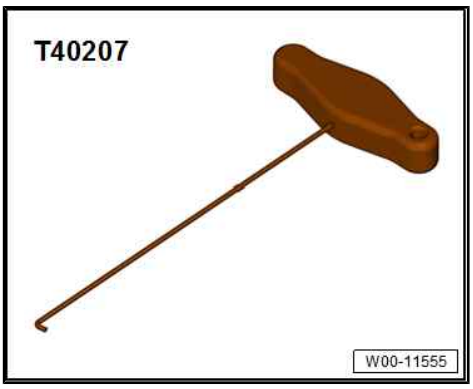
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Hook - T40207-

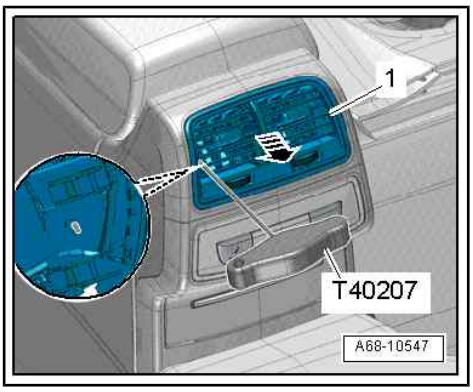


Removing

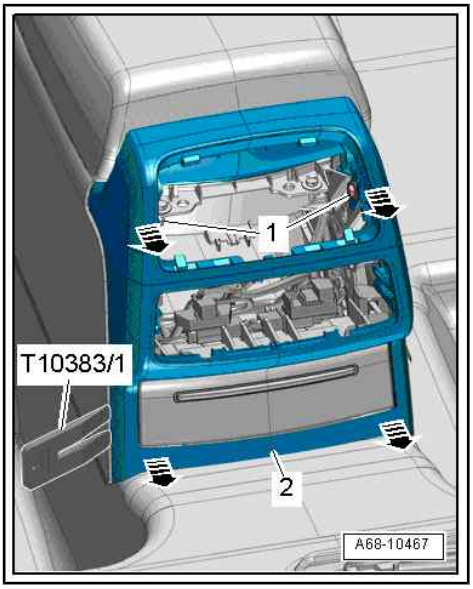
Note

A hole is provided on both sides of the vent for engaging the hook -T40207- .

– Carefully insert hook - T40207- between louvres and engage at side of vent.
– Working alternately on each side, carefully pull vent -1- out of opening -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector and detach vent.

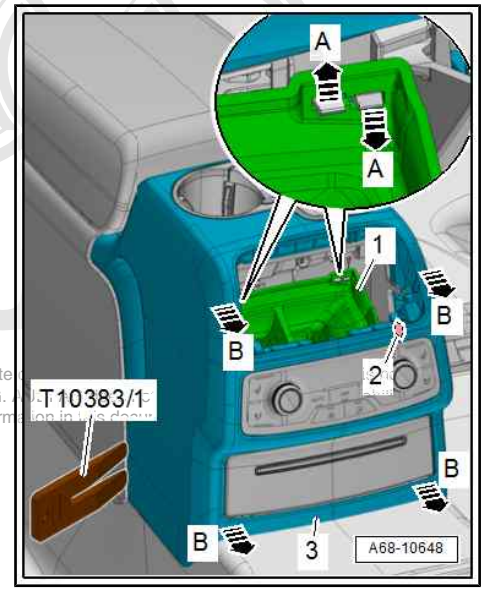


– Remove bolts -1-.
– Starting at top, carefully unclip sides of cover -2- with wedge -T10383/1- -arrows-.
– Detach cover from centre console towards rear.
– Unplug electrical connectors.



Country-specific version:

- Release catches -arrows A- and press air duct -1- downwards slightly.
- Unscrew bolt -2- (left and right).
- Starting at top, carefully unclip sides of cover -3- with wedge -T10383/1- -arrows B-.
- Detach cover from centre console towards rear.
- Unplug electrical connectors.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of inform

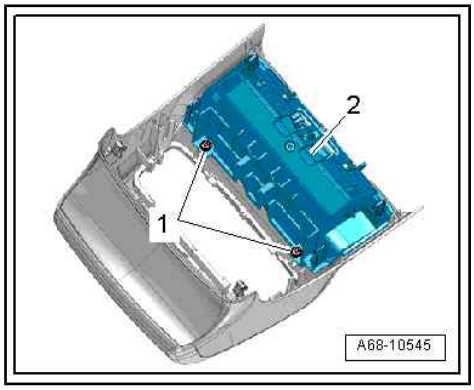
Removing mounting for cigarette lighter/socket

- Remove bolts -1-.
- Detach mounting -2- for cigarette lighter and socket from cover.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

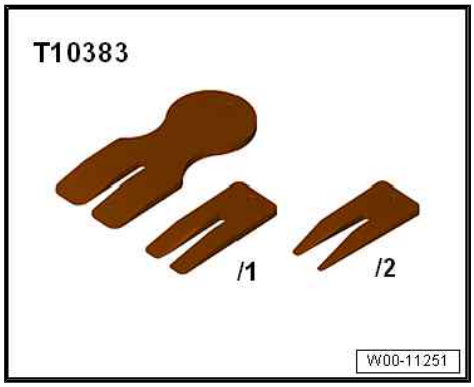
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 53



3.2.2 Removing and installing trim for switches/controls/storage box

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



Removing

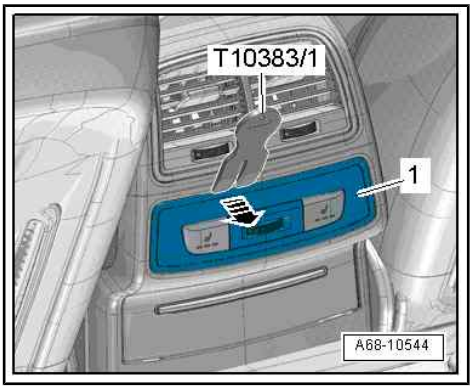
– Carefully unclip cover -1- from centre console using wedge - T10383/1- -arrow- and detach together with switches.

– Unplug electrical connector for switches/controls.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 53



3.3 Removing and installing centre console cover

Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 66 .

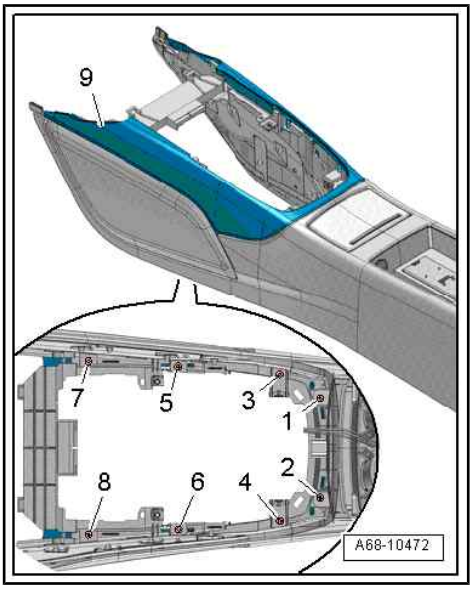
– Remove bolts -1 ... 8- and detach centre console cover -9-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Tighten bolts in sequence -1 ... 8-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 53



3.4 Removing and installing ashtray (front)

Removing

– Remove insert for centre console ⇒ page 64 .

– Remove Climatronic control unit - J255- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit .

– Remove bolts -1- and -5-.

– Take cover -4- out of retainers -2- to the rear.

– Take out ashtray/storage box -6- and unplug electrical connector for cigarette lighter.

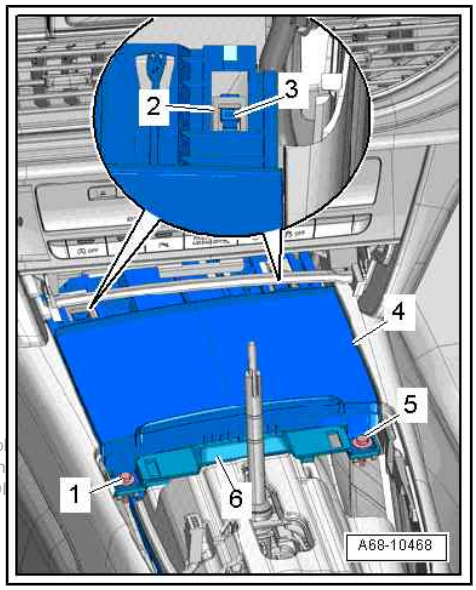
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert cover -4- at front with rubber grommet -3- in retainers -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 53

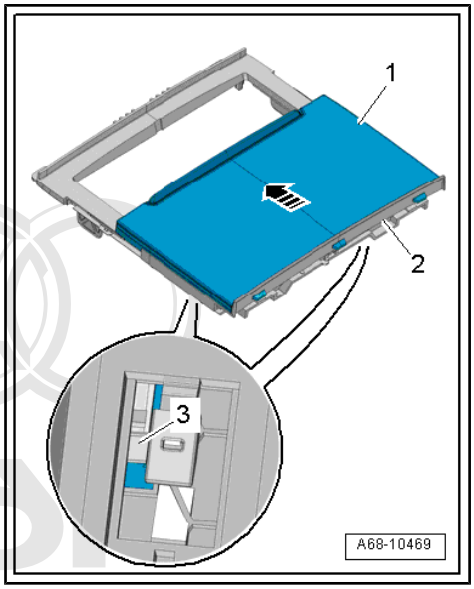


3.5 Removing and installing ashtray trim (front)

Removing

– Remove cover for ashtray/storage box (front) ⇒ page 63 .

– Open cover, lift fasteners -3- on underside with a small screwdriver and at the same time press trim -1- off cover -2- in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

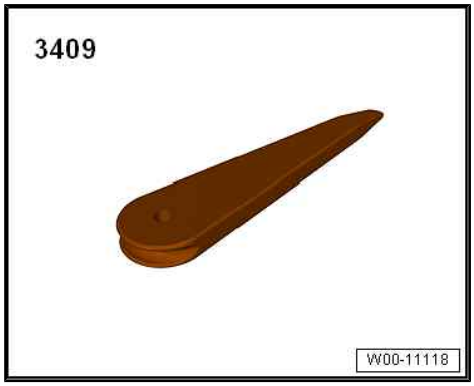
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 53

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.6 Removing and installing insert for centre console

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

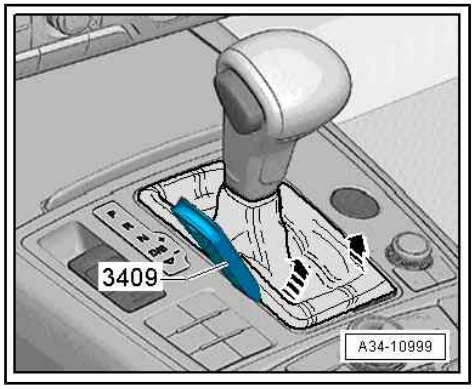


Removing

– Equipment version with selector lever: Move selector lever to “D/S”.

– Switch off ignition.

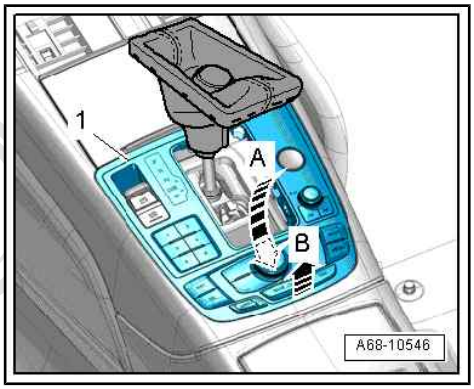
– Carefully prise out selector lever/gear lever boot at side -arrows- with your hand or removal wedge - 3409- and fold upwards.



– To protect surfaces from damage, use adhesive tape to mask centre console cover all around insert for centre console.

Caution

If too much force is applied when lifting insert for centre console, there is a risk of damaging catch on entry and start authorisation button - E408- as electrical wiring leading to button is relatively short. Carefully release and pull insert for centre console upwards.



– Reach beneath insert for centre console -arrow A- and carefully lift insert out of centre console -arrow B-.

– Unplug electrical connectors and carefully take out insert for centre console -1- by lifting over selector lever/gear lever.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 53

3.7 Removing and installing centre console storage box (front)

Removing

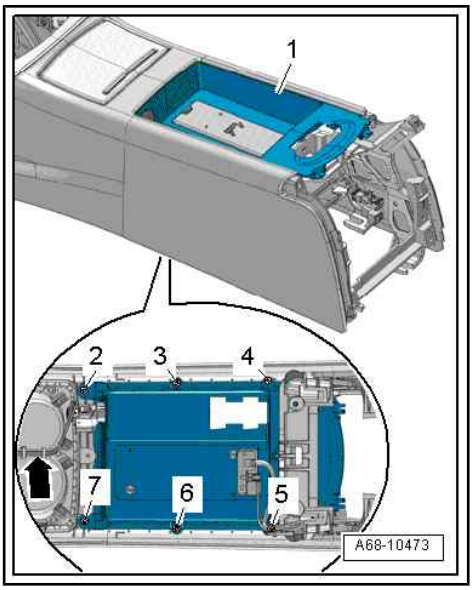
– Remove centre console ⇒ page 66 .

– Remove bracket (rear) for centre console ⇒ page 69 .

– Move electrical wiring -arrow- clear.

– Remove bolts -2 ... 7- and detach storage box -1- downwards.

– Equipment version with telephone bracket - R126- : Remove telephone bracket - R126- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Telephone system; Removing and installing telephone bracket - R126- .



Installing

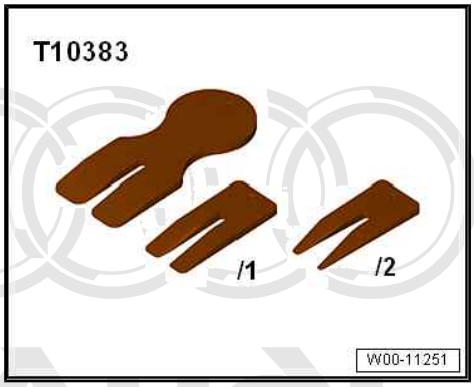
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 53

3.8 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

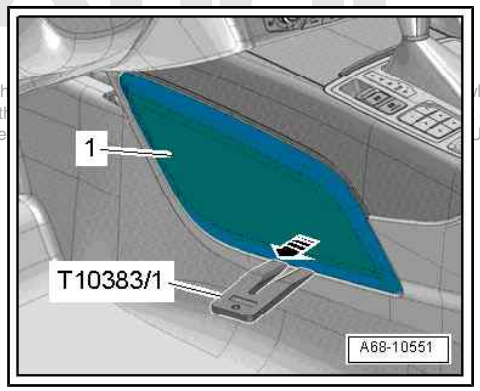
– Unclip trim -1- for centre console with wedge -T10383/1- -arrow- and detach.

Protected by copyrigh
permitted unless auth
with respect to the
whole, is not
any liability
UDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ **"3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 53**



3.9 Removing and installing centre console

Removing

– Remove insert for centre console ⇒ page 64 .

– Remove ashtray/storage box (front) ⇒ page 63 .

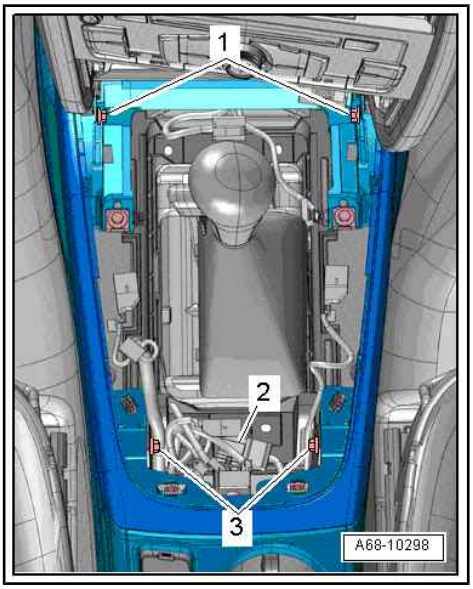
– Remove centre console trim (rear) ⇒ page 60 .

– Remove air duct for vent (rear) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

– Equipment version with telephone bracket - R126- : Unplug electrical connector and move wiring clear.

– Equipment version with connection for external audio sources - R199- : Remove connection for external audio sources - R199- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Connection for external multimedia devices .

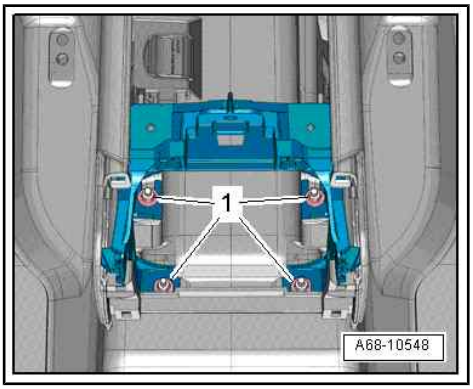
– Equipment version with background lighting: Unplug electrical connectors for background lighting and move wiring clear.
– Equipment version with 12 V socket: Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Remove bolts -1- and -3-.



– Unscrew nuts -1- at bracket for centre console.

Note

Equipment version without centre armrest: Remove 2 nuts.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Country-specific version:

– Pull air duct -1- off towards rear and remove.
– Unscrew nuts -arrow- at bracket for centre console.

Continued for all vehicles:

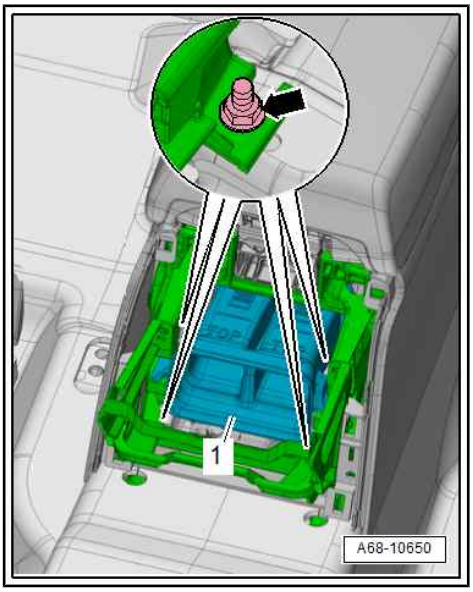
– Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring clear.
– Lift centre console, pull it out of dash panel towards rear and remove by lifting it over selector lever/gear lever.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fit centre console in position and guide electrical connectors through opening in centre console.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 53



3.10 Removing and installing cup holders

⇒ “3.10.1 Removing and installing cup holder”, page 68

⇒ “3.10.2 Removing and installing cup holder - country-specific version”, page 69

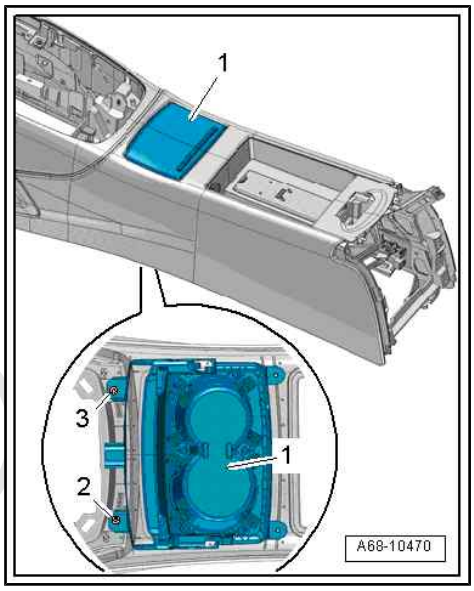
3.10.1 Removing and installing cup holder

Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 66 .

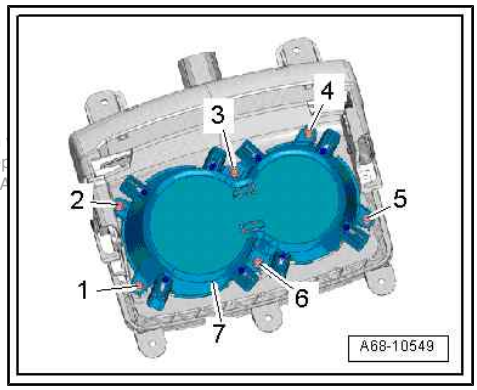
– Remove storage box in centre console ⇒ page 65 .

– Remove bolts -2- and -3- and detach cup holder -1- downwards.



Removing trim

– Remove bolts -1 ... 6- and detach bracket -7-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by A

– Use a small screwdriver to lift catches -3- on underside and at the same time press trim in direction of -arrow-.

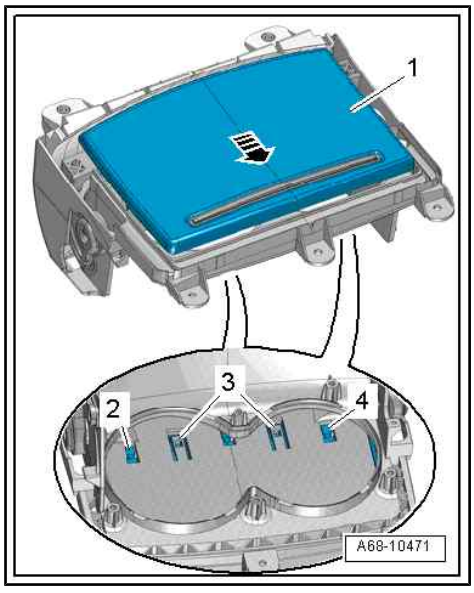
– Detach trim -1- from cover.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Engage fasteners -2- and -4- of trim at cover.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 53



3.10.2 Removing and installing cup holder - country-specific version

Removing

– Remove centre console trim (rear) ⇒ page 60 .

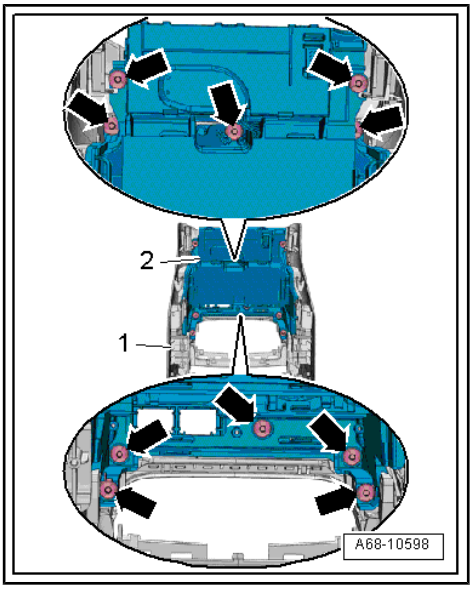
– Remove bracket for DC/AC converter with socket (12 V-230 V) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Cigarette lighter, socket; Exploded view - cigarette lighter, 12 V socket .

– Remove bolts -arrows- and detach cup holder -2- downwards from cover -1-.

– If cup holder is to be renewed:

♦ Move clear wiring harness.

♦ Remove button for cup holder ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in centre console .



Installing

Install in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 53

3.11 Removing and installing bracket for centre console

Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 66 .

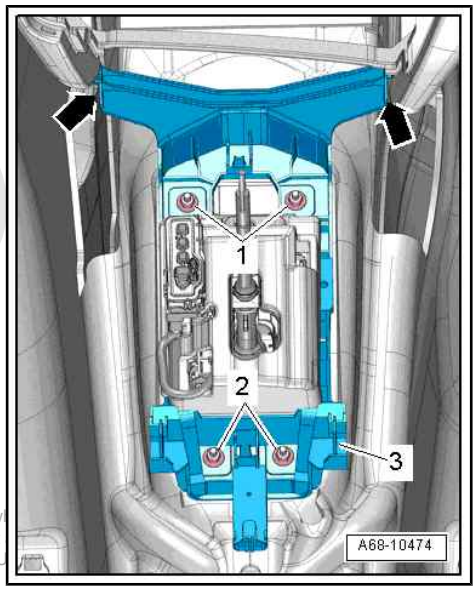
Bracket (front):

– Remove interior aerial 1 for entry and start authorisation - R138- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Removing and installing interior aerial 1 for entry and start authorisation - R138- .

– Unplug electrical connectors and move clear.

– Remove nuts -1- and -2-.

– Disengage bracket -3- at lugs -arrows- for dash panel and remove.

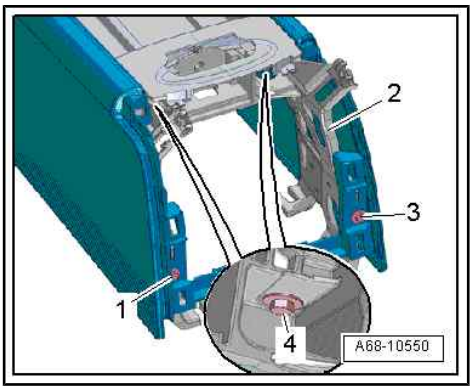


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in w
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

Bracket (rear):

– Unscrew bolts -1-, -3- and -4-.

– Detach bracket -2- downwards from centre console.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 53

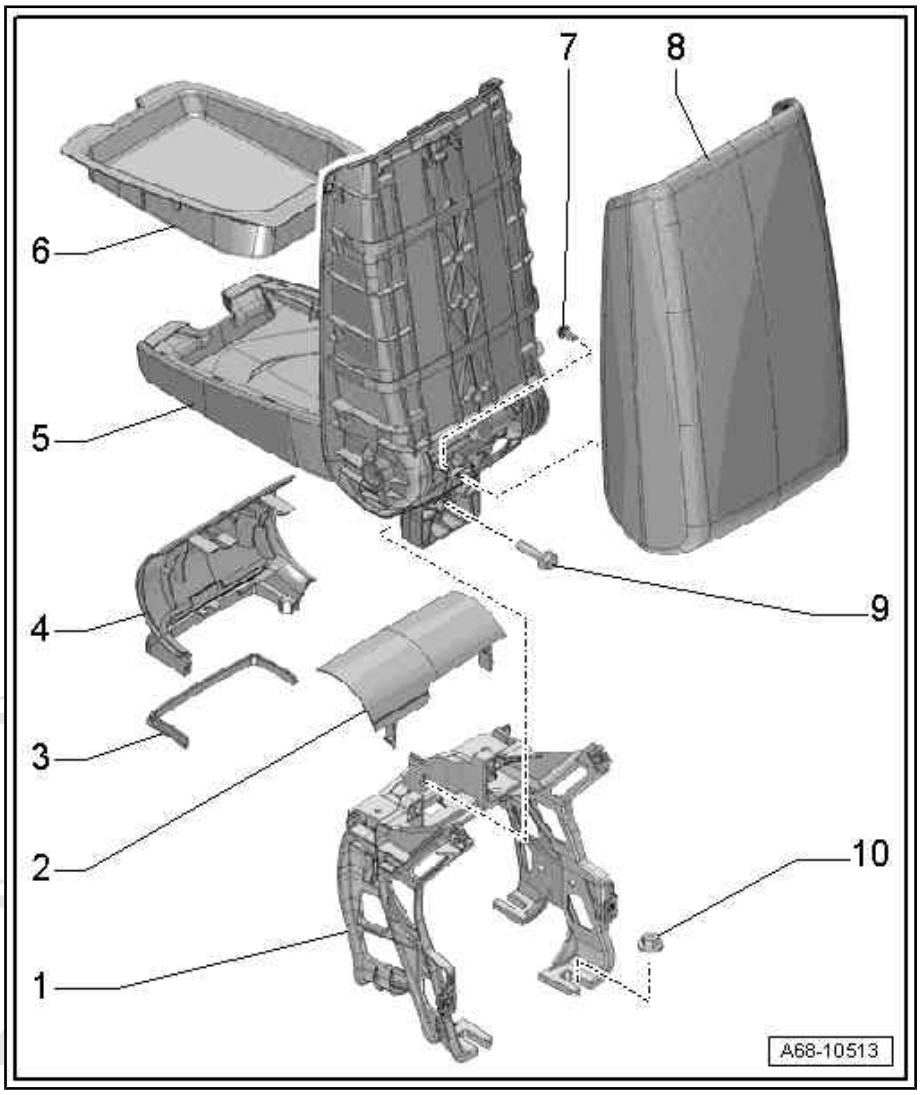
4 Centre armrest (front)

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 70

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)”, page 71

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)”, page 72

4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)



1 - Bracket

- ❑ For centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing bracket for centre console”, page 69

2 - Trim (rear)

- ❑ For centre armrest
- ❑ Clipped to -item 4-
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - Seal

- ❑ Insert in trim -item 4-

4 - Trim (front)

- ❑ For centre armrest
- ❑ Clipped to -item 2-
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 71

6 - Storage box

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 71
- ❑ Engage storage compartment at centre armrest and press on until it engages audibly

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 1 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Centre armrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 72

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm

10 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 20 Nm

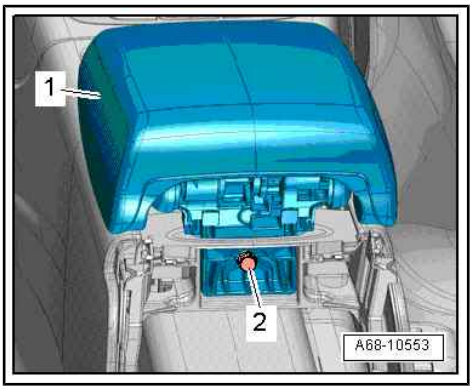
4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)

⇒ “4.2.1 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)”, page 71

⇒ “4.2.2 Removing and installing storage compartment for centre armrest (front)”, page 71

4.2.1 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)

Removing



– Remove centre console trim (rear) ⇒ page 60 .

– Remove air duct for vent (rear) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

– Remove bolt -2-.

– Lift centre armrest -1- out of mounting.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

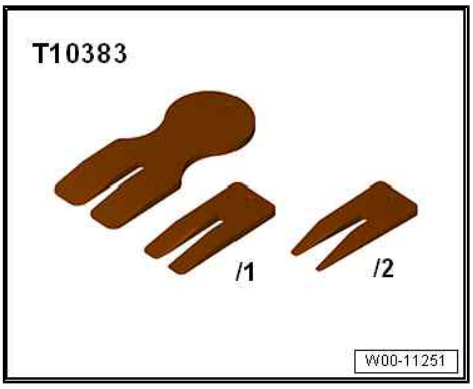
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 70

4.2.2 Removing and installing storage compartment for centre armrest (front)

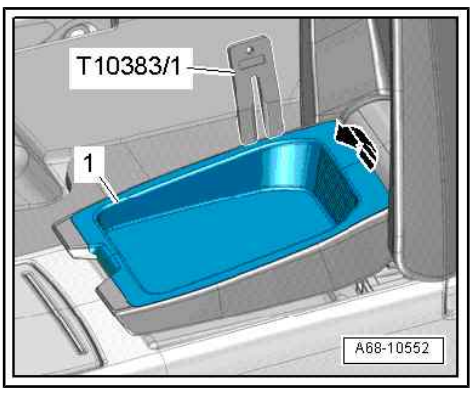
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing



– Starting at rear, unclip storage compartment -1- from centre armrest -arrow- using wedge -T10383/1- .

– Disengage storage compartment at armrest and detach.

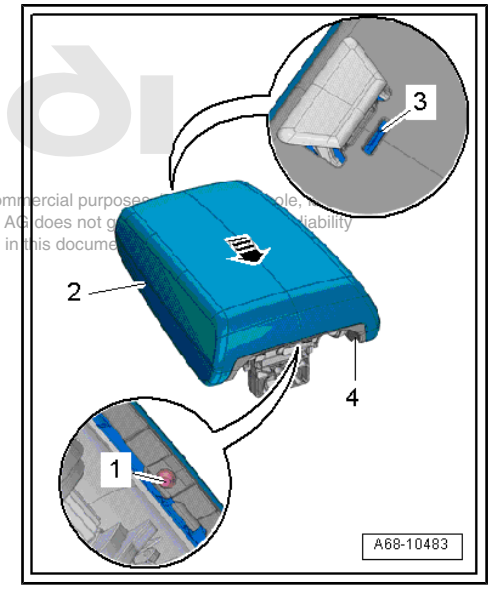
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 70

4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)

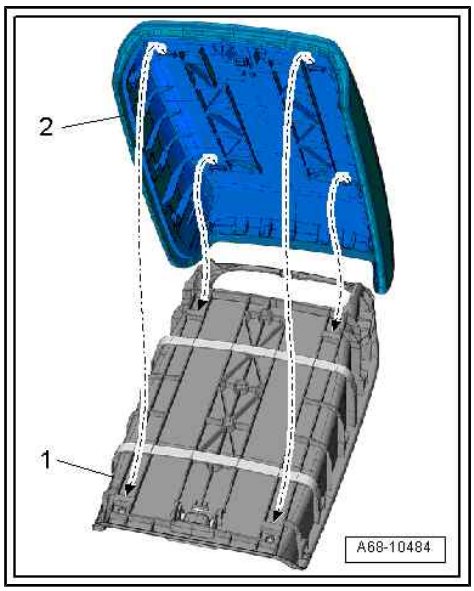
Removing



– Remove centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 71 .
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Open centre armrest cover and press down retaining hook -3- with a screwdriver.
– At the same time, press centre armrest padding -2- off mountings -4- in direction of -arrow-.
– Detach centre armrest padding.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Installing



– Position centre armrest padding -2- on centre armrest -1- -arrows- and press on until it engages audibly.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ **“4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 70**

5 Interior mirror

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror”, page 73

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror”, page 74

⇒ “5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off”, page 75

⇒ “5.4 Switching compass display on and off”, page 76

⇒ “5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone”, page 76

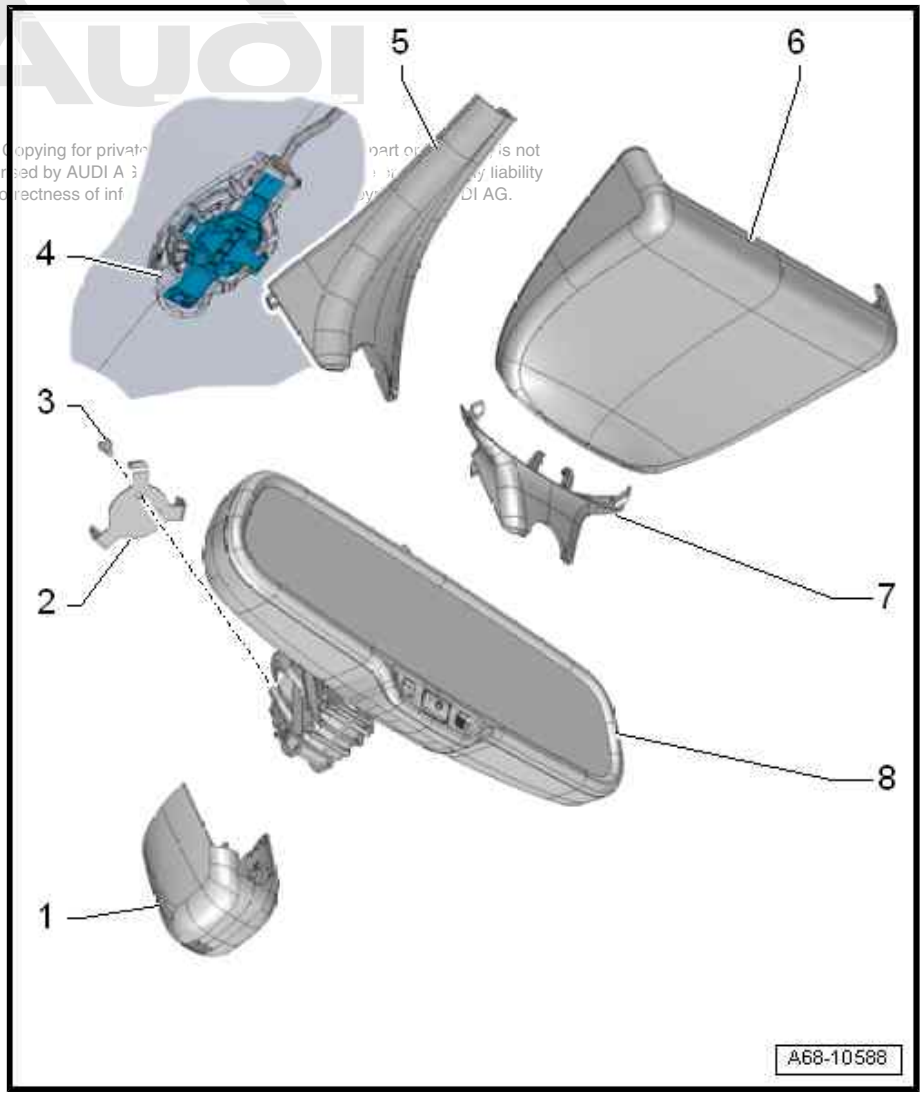
⇒ “5.6 Calibrating digital compass”, page 76

⇒ “5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles”, page 77

⇒ “5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map”, page 77

⇒ “5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror”, page 83

5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror



1 - Cover (front)
- ❑ For mirror base

2 - Retaining clip
- ❑ For interior mirror
- ❑ Different versions; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Always renew after removing interior mirror

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

4 - Retaining plate
- ❑ For interior mirror
- ❑ Bonded to windscreen

5 - Cover (rear)
- ❑ For mirror base
- ❑ For interior mirror without optional equipment

6 - Cover
- ❑ For interior mirror with optional equipment

7 - Cover (rear)
- ❑ For mirror base
- ❑ For interior mirror with optional equipment

8 - Interior mirror
- ❑ Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror or automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7-
- ❑ Different versions; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Protected by copyright. Copying for private part or is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI A liability with respect to the correctness of inf AUDI AG.

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 74
- ❑ Position at 30° angle to installation position and turn clockwise as far as stop
- ❑ Always renew retaining clip after removing

5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror

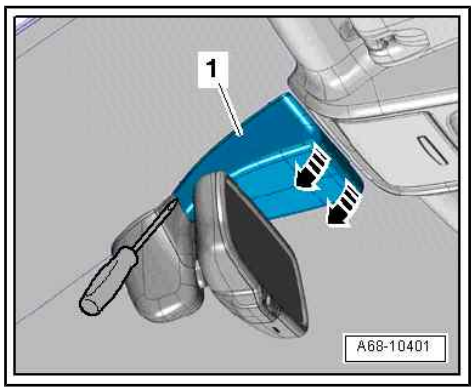
Observe the general information when removing and installing the mirror ⇒ page 15 .

Removing

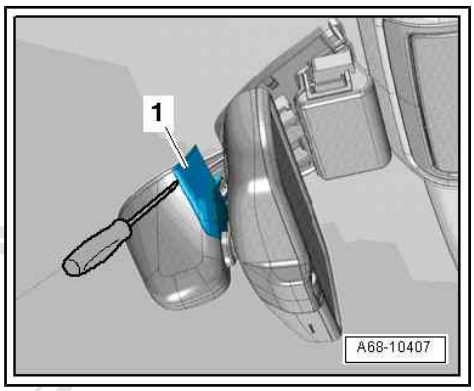
Interior mirror with optional equipment:

– Unclip cover (bottom) -1- -arrows-.

– Disengage cover (bottom) using a screwdriver and detach.

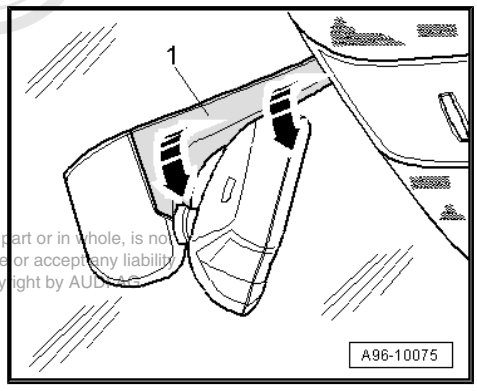


– Unclip cover -1- at mirror base with a screwdriver and detach.



Interior mirror without optional equipment:

– Prise off cover -1- at bottom of mirror base -arrows-.

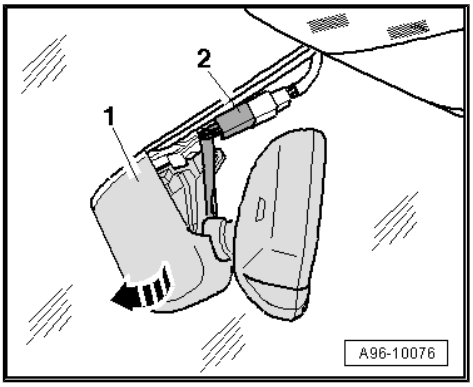


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

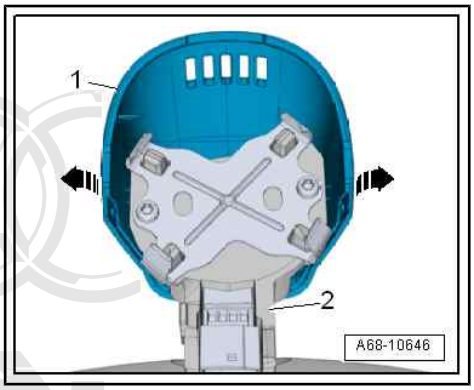
All mirror versions (continued):

– Take electrical connector -2- out of bracket and unplug.

– Turn interior mirror at mirror base -1- as far as it will go anti-clockwise -arrow- and detach from retainer.



– Carefully disengage retaining tabs -arrows- and pull cover -1- at front downwards out of guide elements on interior mirror base -2-.



Installing

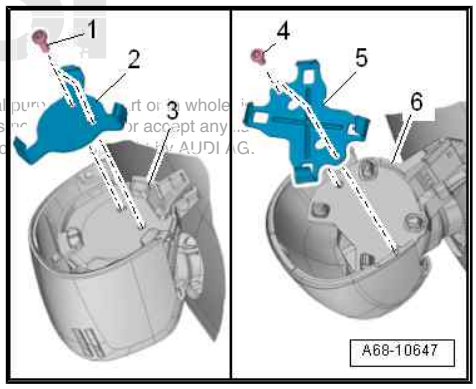
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Always renew retaining clip -2- or -5- for interior mirror after removing; for allocation see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

– Fit interior mirror at 30° angle to installation position.

– Turn interior mirror clockwise as far as it will go.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror”, page 73



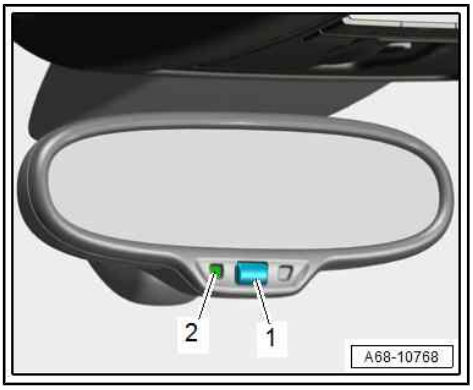
5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off

– Press button -1- briefly (up to 3 seconds) to switch automatic anti-dazzle function on or off.

Automatic anti-dazzle function “On”: Indicator lamp -2- lights up.

Automatic anti-dazzle function “Off”: Indicator lamp -2- goes out.

- The automatic anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on.
- If you deactivate the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror this will also deactivate the anti-dazzle function for the exterior mirrors.
- When in anti-dazzle mode, the mirror will become lighter as soon as the interior light is switched on or reverse gear is engaged.
- The automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror can only function correctly if the sun blind is retracted.



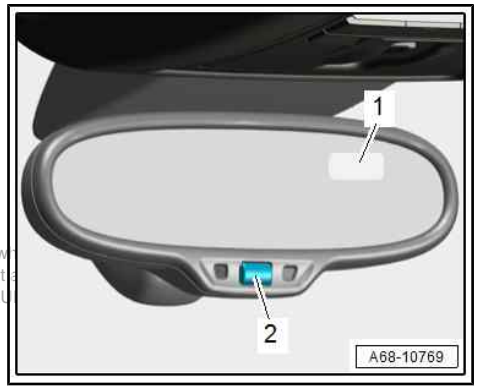
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part of whole is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

5.4 Switching compass display on and off

– Press button -2- for 3 to 6 seconds. The compass display -1- will be switched “on” or “off”.

Compass display “on” - direction is indicated.

Compass display “off” - direction is not indicated.



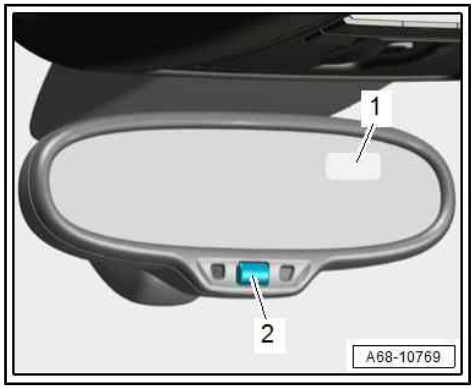
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in w
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone

It is necessary to set the magnetic deflection zone if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.
- You have reached a distance more than two zones away from the pre-set reference zone after travelling long distances; you should then set a different magnetic deflection zone.

Setting magnetic deflection zone:



– Press and hold button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until compass display shows “Z” and a number for the magnetic deflection zone.

– Press the button repeatedly until the number of the desired magnetic deflection zone appears.

– Select applicable deflection zone from the world map:

♦ Europe ⇒ page 77

♦ North America ⇒ page 78

♦ South America ⇒ page 79

♦ Asia ⇒ page 80

♦ Africa ⇒ page 81

♦ Australia ⇒ page 82

After a few seconds the compass display will switch from the magnetic deflection zone to the current direction/point of the compass.

– Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 76 after setting the magnetic deflection zone.

5.6 Calibrating digital compass

It is necessary to calibrate the digital compass if:

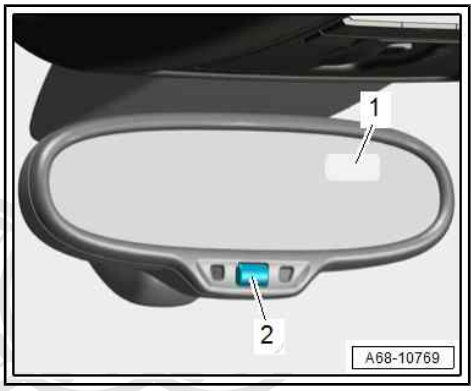
- The directions the digital compass shows are inaccurate.
- The compass display shows a “C” instead of a point of the compass, or if the display remains blank.
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.

In exceptional circumstances, the digital compass may also have to be calibrated, for example if:

- The vehicle battery is reconnected after it has been disconnected for a long period.

- A new audio system or audio system components has/have been fitted.

Calibrating digital compass:



– Switch on ignition.
- Compass display -1- should show “C”.
– If display does not show “C”, press and hold button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until letter “C” appears in compass display.
– Drive the vehicle in a circle two or three times at a speed of approx. 10 km/h (5 mph) until a direction is indicated on the compass display.
– After completing the calibration, re-activate the automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror ⇒ page 75 .

5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles

It is necessary to adjust the mirror to right-hand or left-hand drive if:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

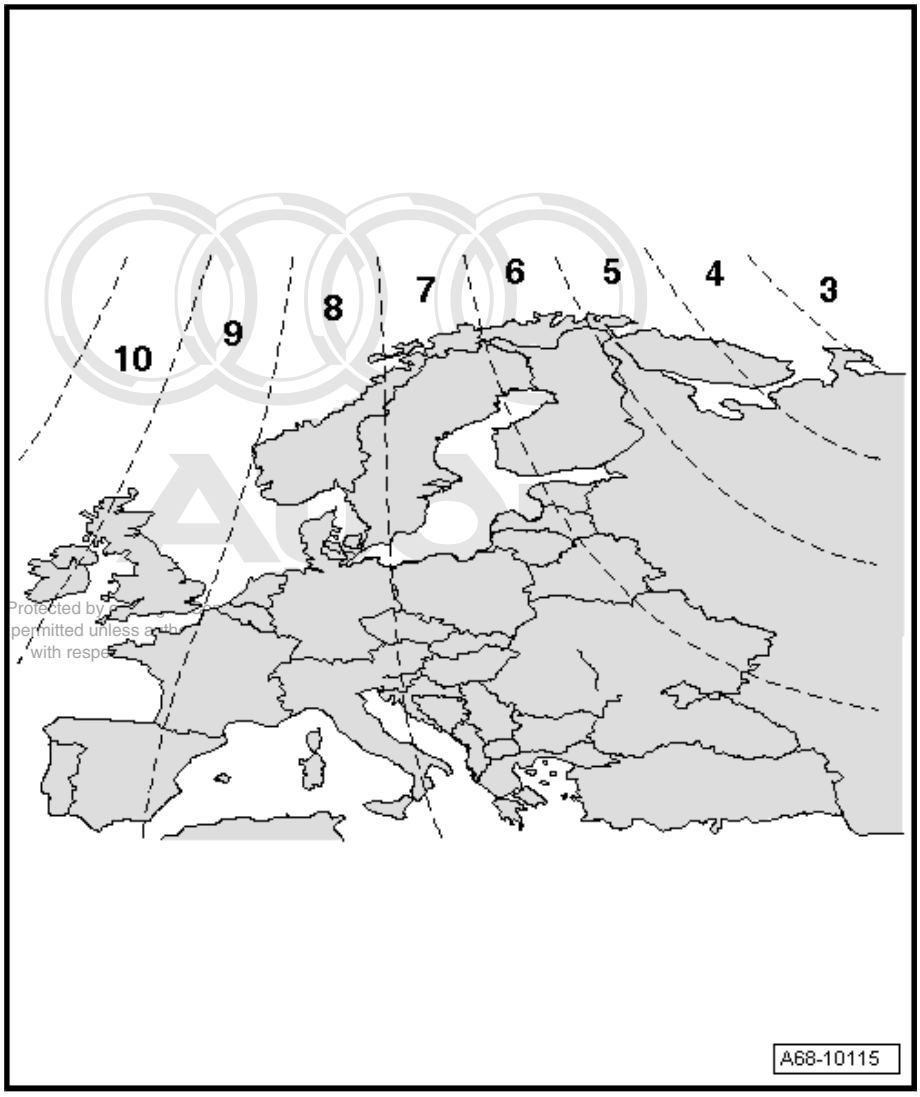
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.



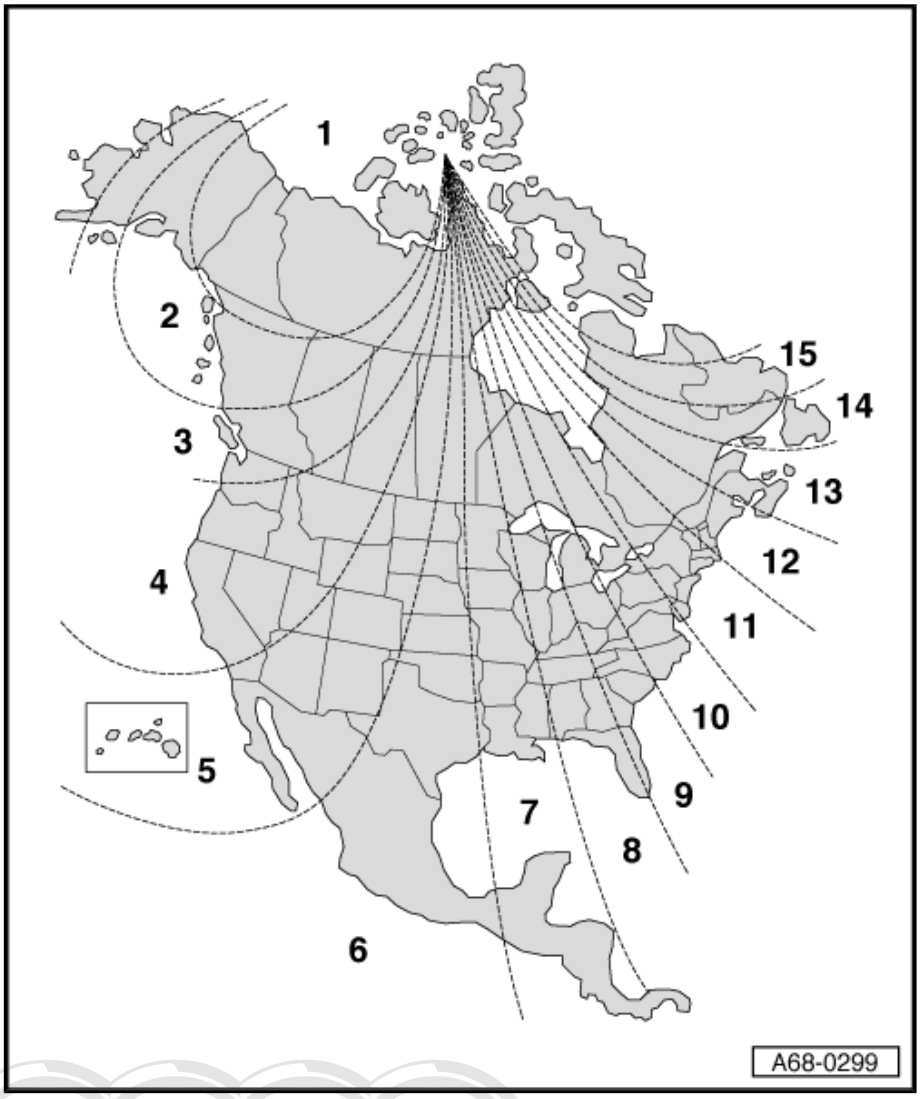
– Press and hold button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until display shows “L” (for left-hand drive vehicles) or “A” (for right-hand drive vehicles).
– Press the button again briefly to change the setting for right-hand or left-hand drive.
– Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 75 after adjusting the mirror for right-hand or left-hand drive.

5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map

Europe

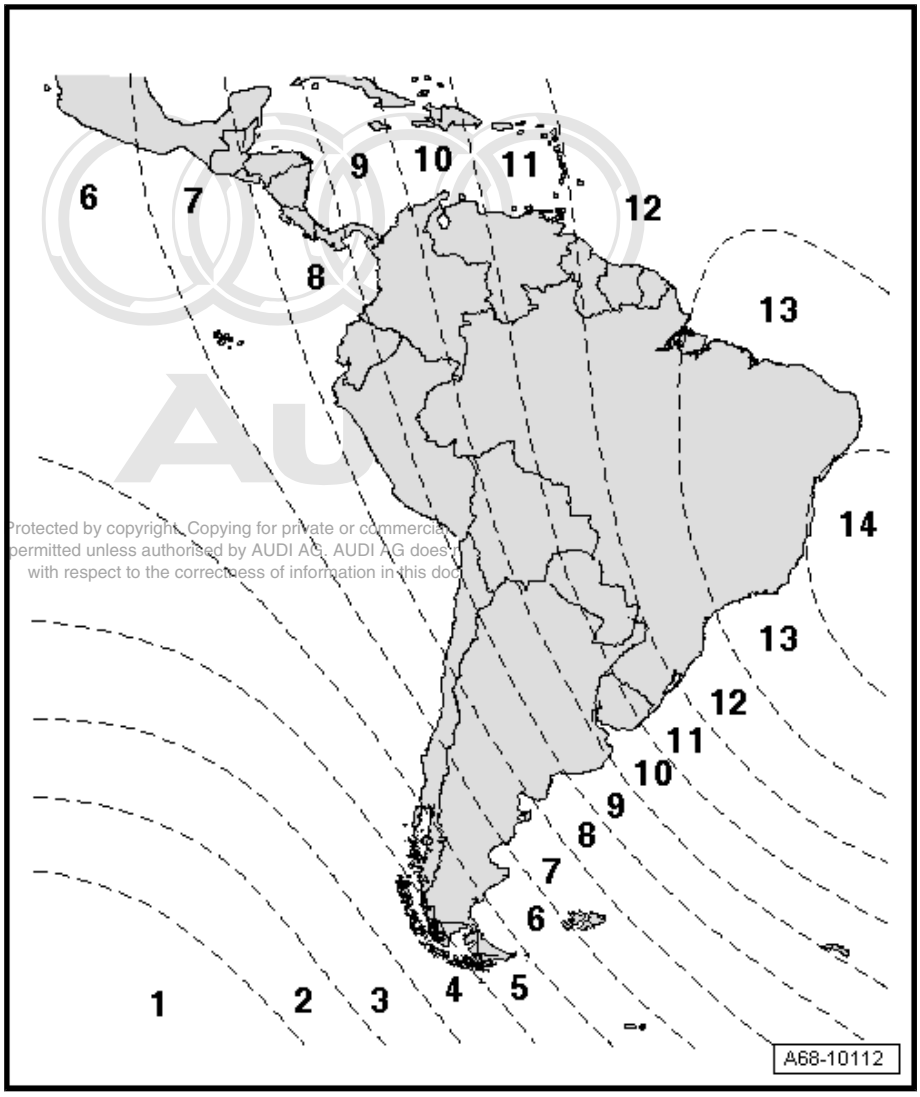


North America



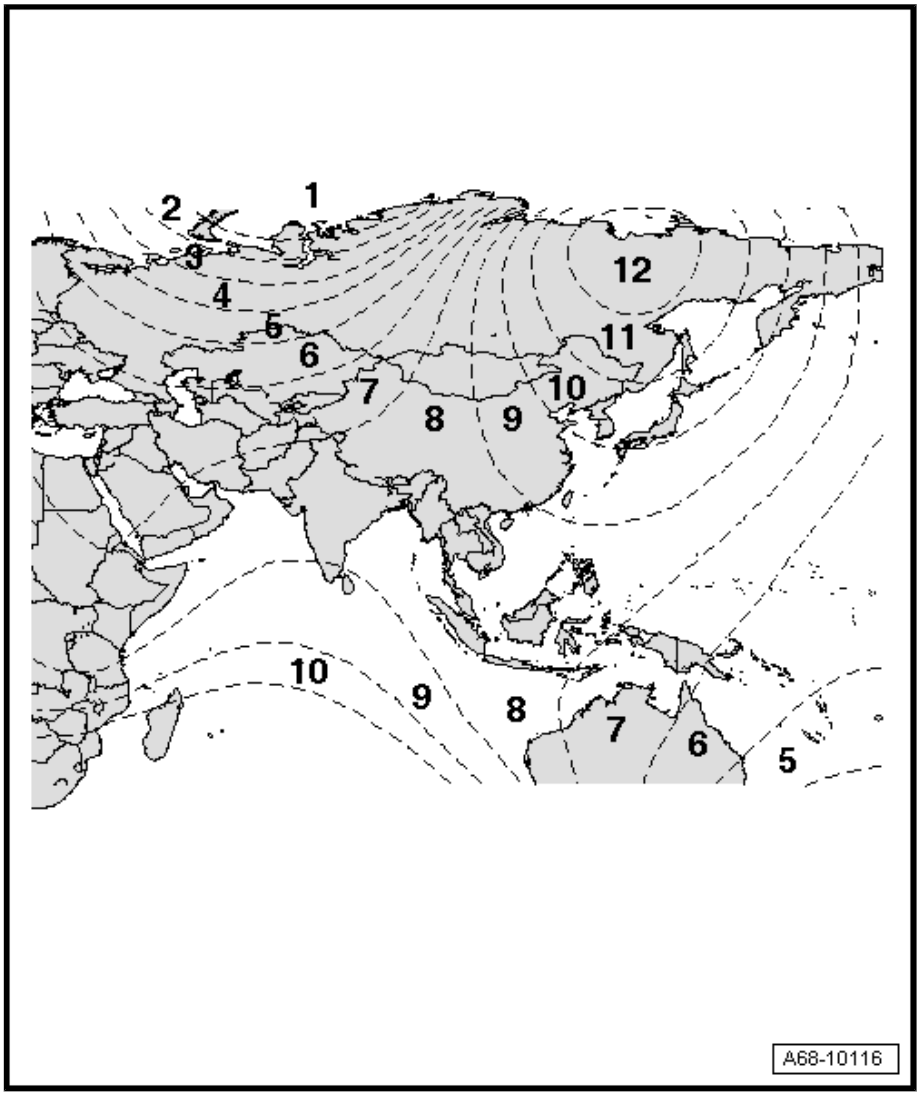
South America

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



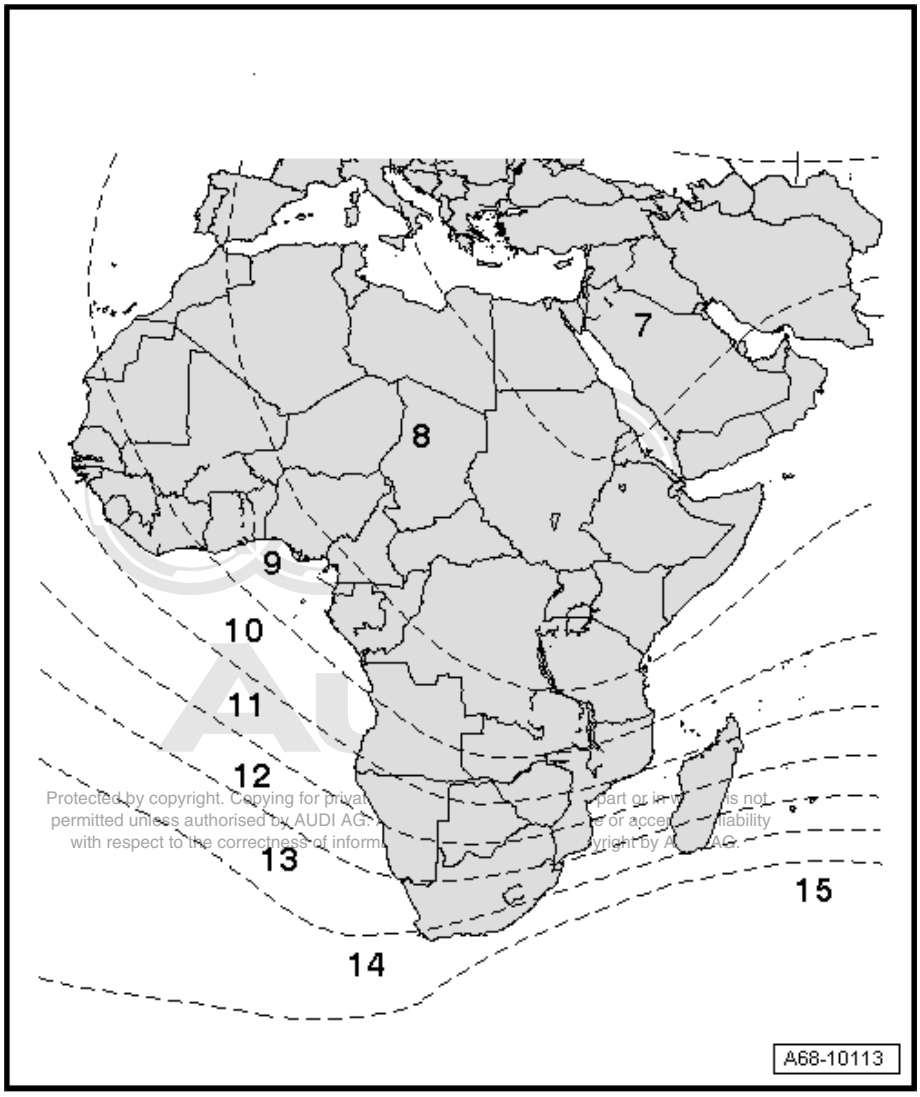
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Asia



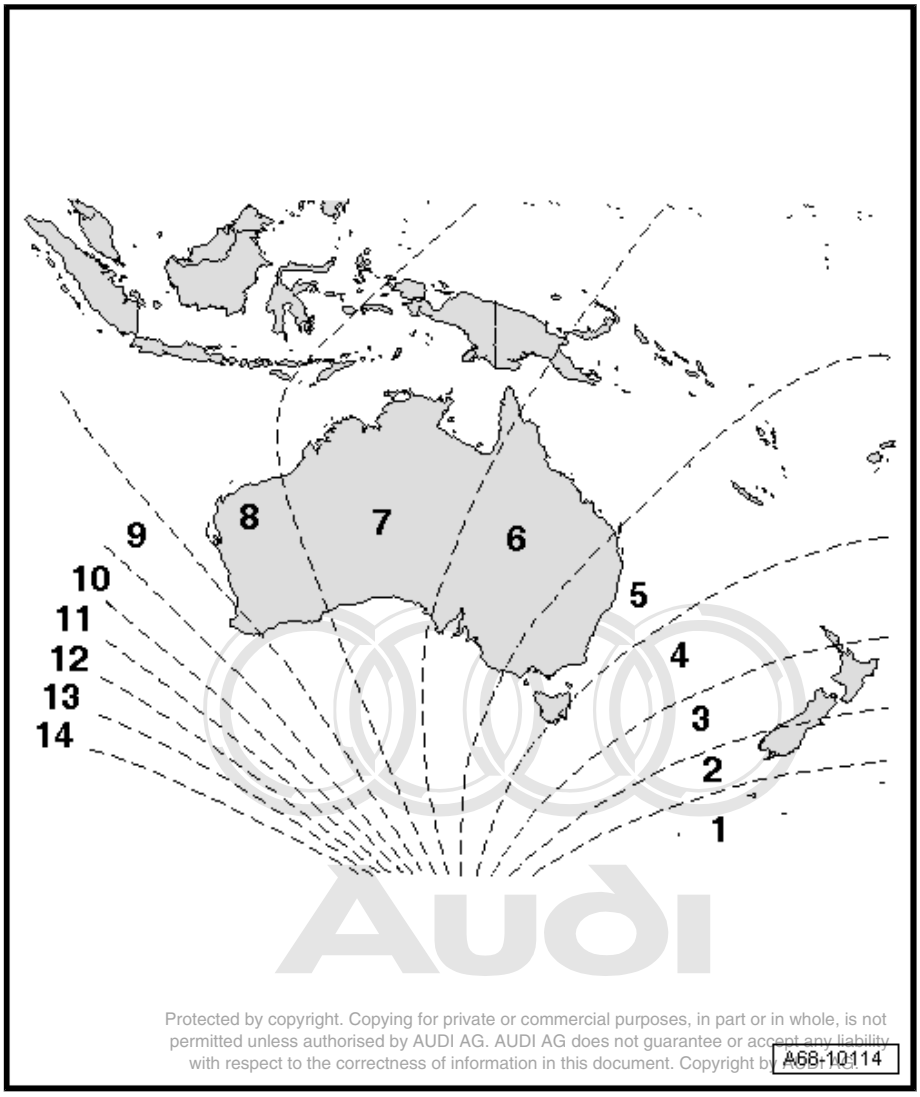
Africa

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Australia



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

The test can only be carried out if the following conditions are met:

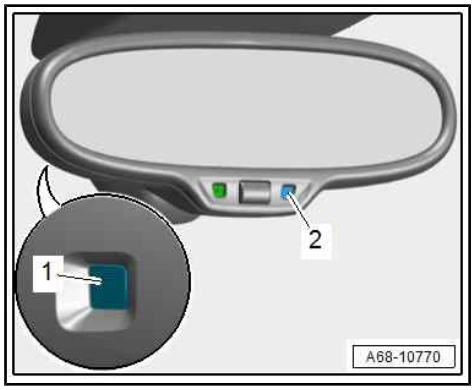
- Interior mirror is fitted.
- Ignition is switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on, indicator lamp must be lit.

Test sequence

– Cover photosensor -1- on housing side.

– Aim a light source, e.g. a torch, at photosensor -2- on mirror side.

• Interior mirror should darken quickly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

69 – Passenger protection

1 Seat belts

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points”, page 85

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 87

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 89

⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 90

⇒ “1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)”, page 91

⇒ “1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)”, page 93

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)”, page 96

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 99

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)”, page 111

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (front)”, page 115

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)”, page 116

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)”, page 117

⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing belt height adjuster”, page 118

⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)”, page 119

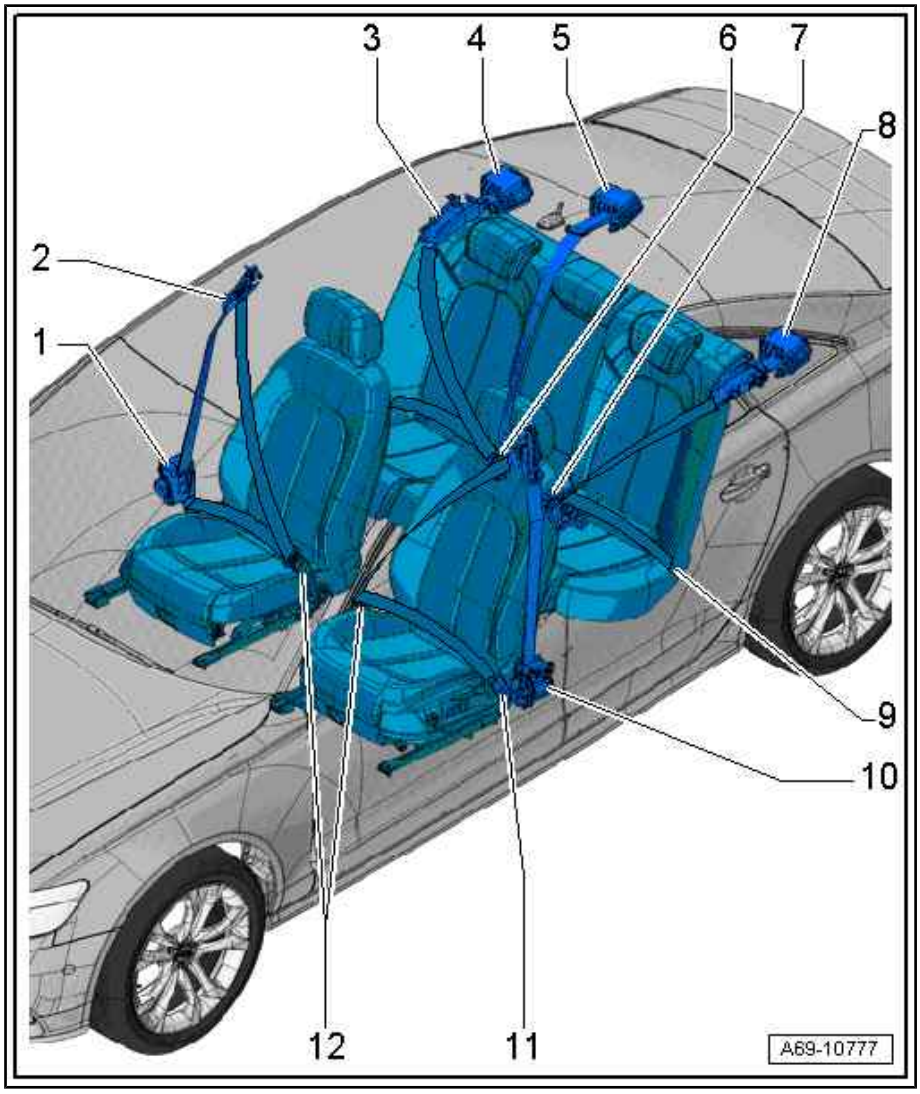
⇒ “1.15 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)”, page 121

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points

Note

Illustration shows seat belts in saloon with fixed rear seat backrest.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (front)
- ❑ With front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- , control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855- and front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 87

2 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 87

3 - Outer belt guide (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 111

4 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For outer three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ Country-specific version: with rear belt tensioner igniter on front passenger side - N197-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 89

5 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For centre three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ Only on 3-seat rear seat
- ❑ Country-specific version: with rear centre belt tensioner igniter - N198-

Equipment versions:

- ♦ For fixed rear seat backrest
- ♦ For folding rear seat backrest
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 90

6 - Centre belt end fitting (rear) with belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ Only on 3-seat rear seat
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 90 , ⇒ page 93

7 - Belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 93

8 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For outer three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ Country-specific version: with rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 89

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Outer belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 89

10 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (front)

- ❑ With driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- , control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854- and driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 87

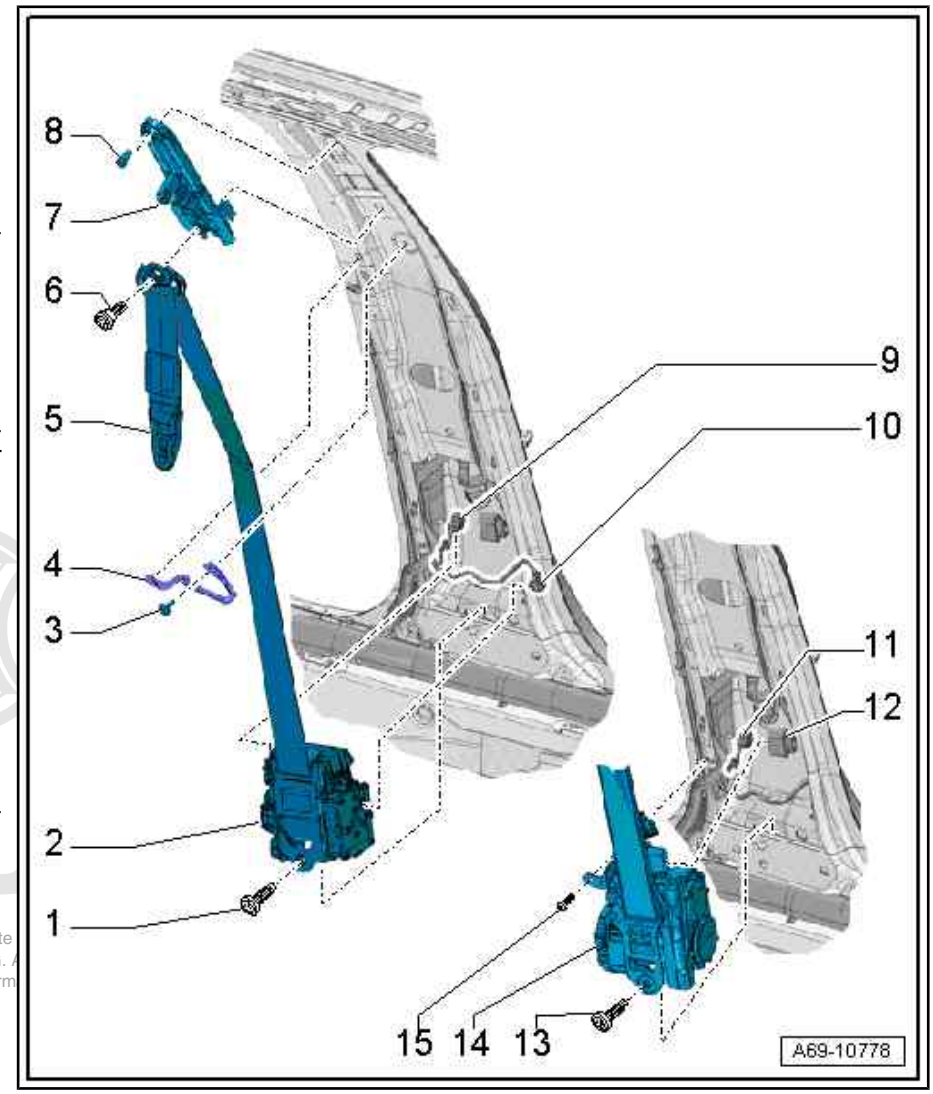
11 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 87

12 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 91

1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)



1 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

2 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ❑ Equipment version: without electric belt tensioning
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 5 Nm

4 - Belt guide (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 115

5 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 116

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

7 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident

Protected by copyright. Copying for private permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. A without any warranty. Audi AG does not

- ❑ 27 Nm

9 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ❑ For equipment version without electric belt tensioning
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 96

10 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ❑ For equipment version without electric belt tensioning
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 96

11 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ❑ For equipment version with electric belt tensioning
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 96

12 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-
- ❑ Passenger side: for control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-
- ❑ For equipment version with electric belt tensioning
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 96

13 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

14 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- , control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854- and driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- , control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855- and front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ❑ Equipment version: with electric belt tensioning
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

15 - Bolt

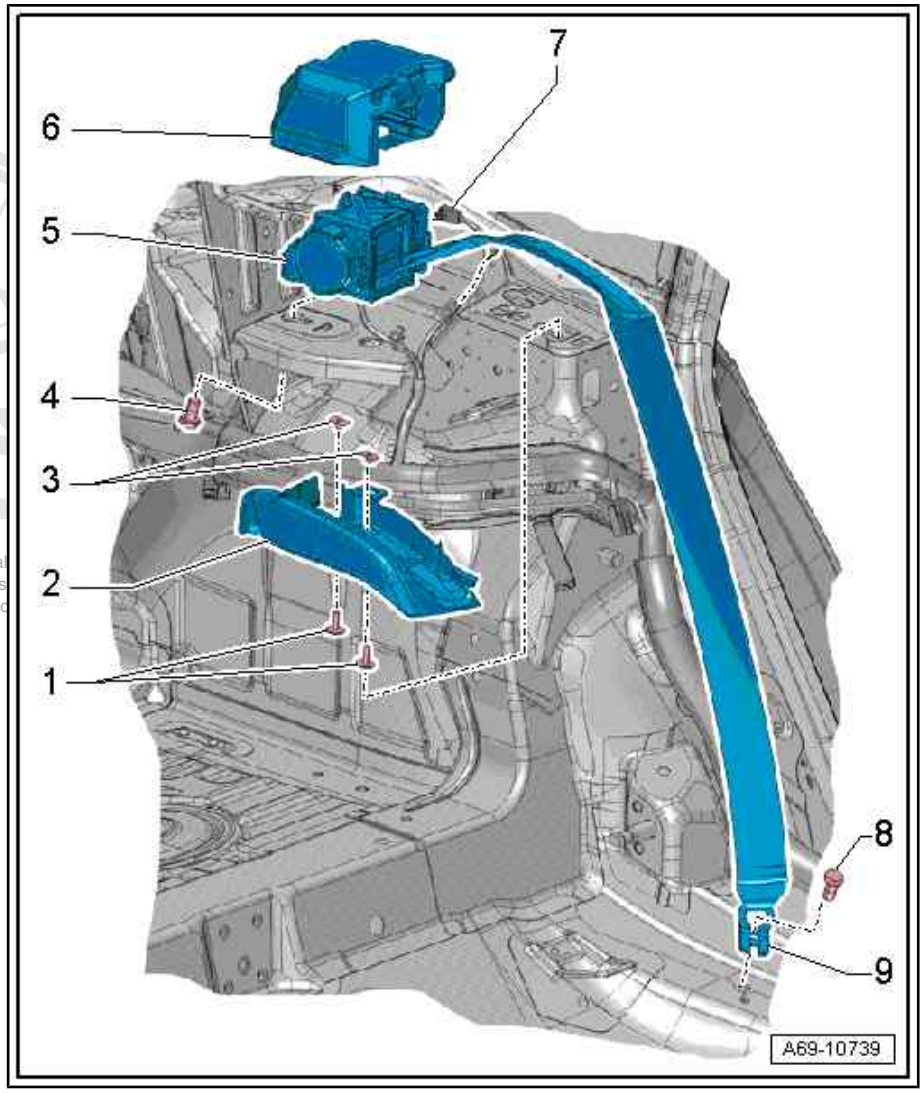
- ❑ Only for equipment version with electric belt tensioning
- ❑ 2 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)

Note

Illustration shows three-point seat belt for a saloon.



1 - Bolts

- When removing and installing belt guide, never change position of bolts (set by manufacturer)

2 - Belt guide

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 111

3 - Nut

4 - Bolt

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- 45 Nm

5 - Automatic belt retractor

- Driver side: country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- Passenger side: country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter on front passenger side - N197-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 99

6 - Noise insulation

- For automatic belt retractor

7 - Electrical connector

- Driver side: for country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- Passenger side: for country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter on front passenger side - N197-

8 - Bolt

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- 45 Nm

9 - Belt end fitting (rear)

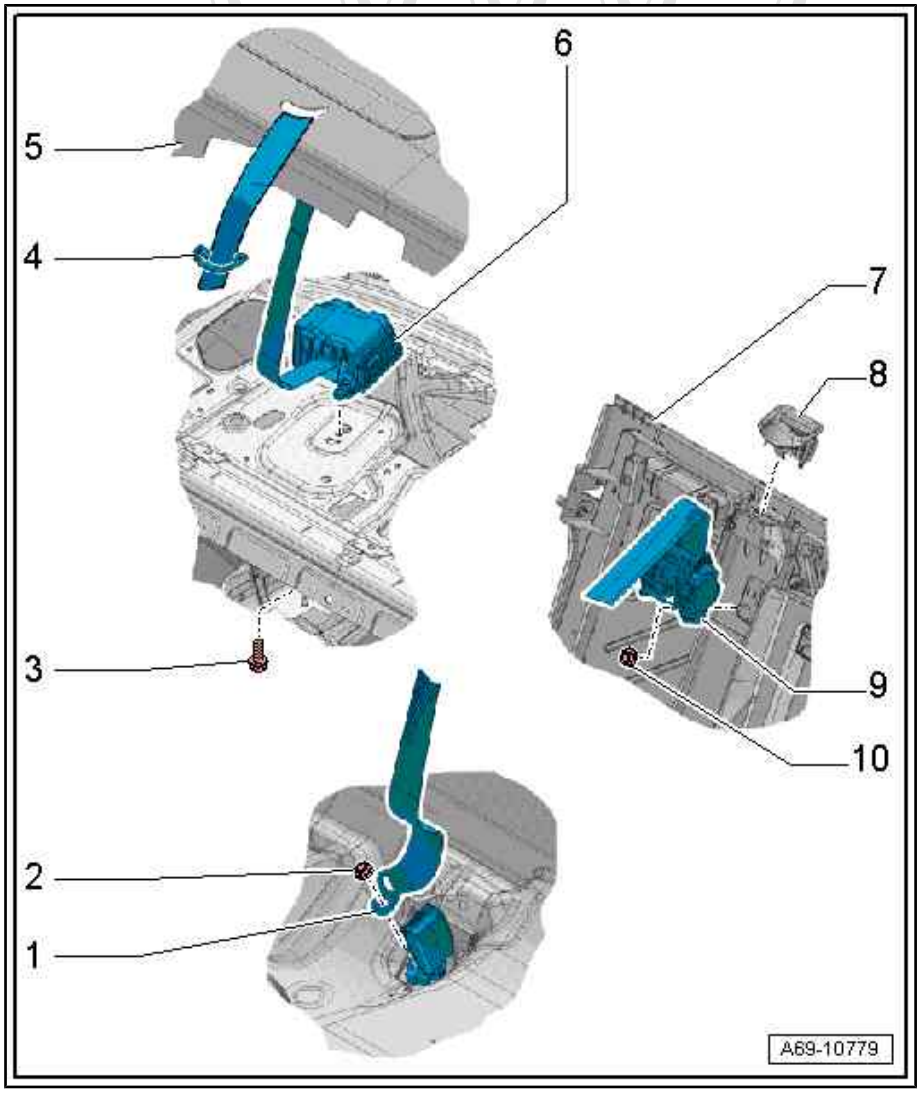
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 117

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)

Note

Illustration shows equipment versions with folding rear seat backrest and fixed rear seat backrest.



1 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121

2 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ “1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)”, page 93

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

4 - Centre belt guide (rear)

- ❑ For equipment version with fixed rear seat backrest
- ❑ Renew entire belt guide if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 111

5 - Rear shelf

6 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For equipment version with fixed rear seat backrest
- ❑ Country-specific version: with rear centre belt tensioner igniter - N198-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 105

7 - 2/3 section of split rear seat backrest (right-side)

8 - Centre belt guide (rear)

- ❑ For equipment version with folding rear seat backrest
- ❑ Renew entire belt guide if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 111

9 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For equipment version with folding rear seat backrest
- ❑ Country-specific version: with rear centre belt tensioner igniter - N198-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 108

10 - Nut

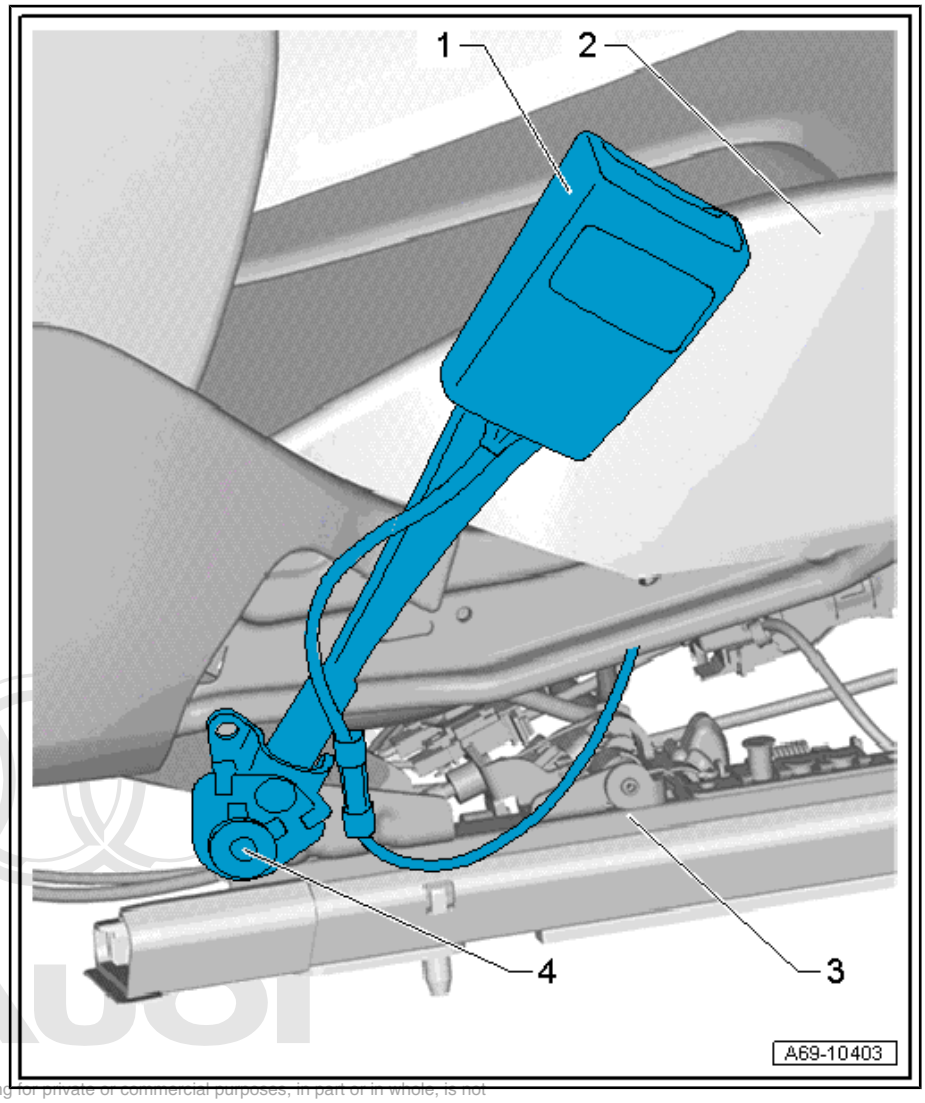
- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)

⇒ “1.5.1 Exploded view - belt buckle (front), standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat”, page 91

⇒ “1.5.2 Exploded view - belt buckle (front), multi-contour seat”, page 92

1.5.1 Exploded view - belt buckle (front), standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat



1 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ Driver side: with driver side belt switch - E24-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- ❑ Country-specific version, passenger side: with front passenger side belt switch - E25- and seat belt force sensor for seat occupied recognition - G453-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 119
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

2 - Front seat

3 - Seat pan frame

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 33 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5.2 Exploded view - belt buckle (front), multi-contour seat

1 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 33 Nm

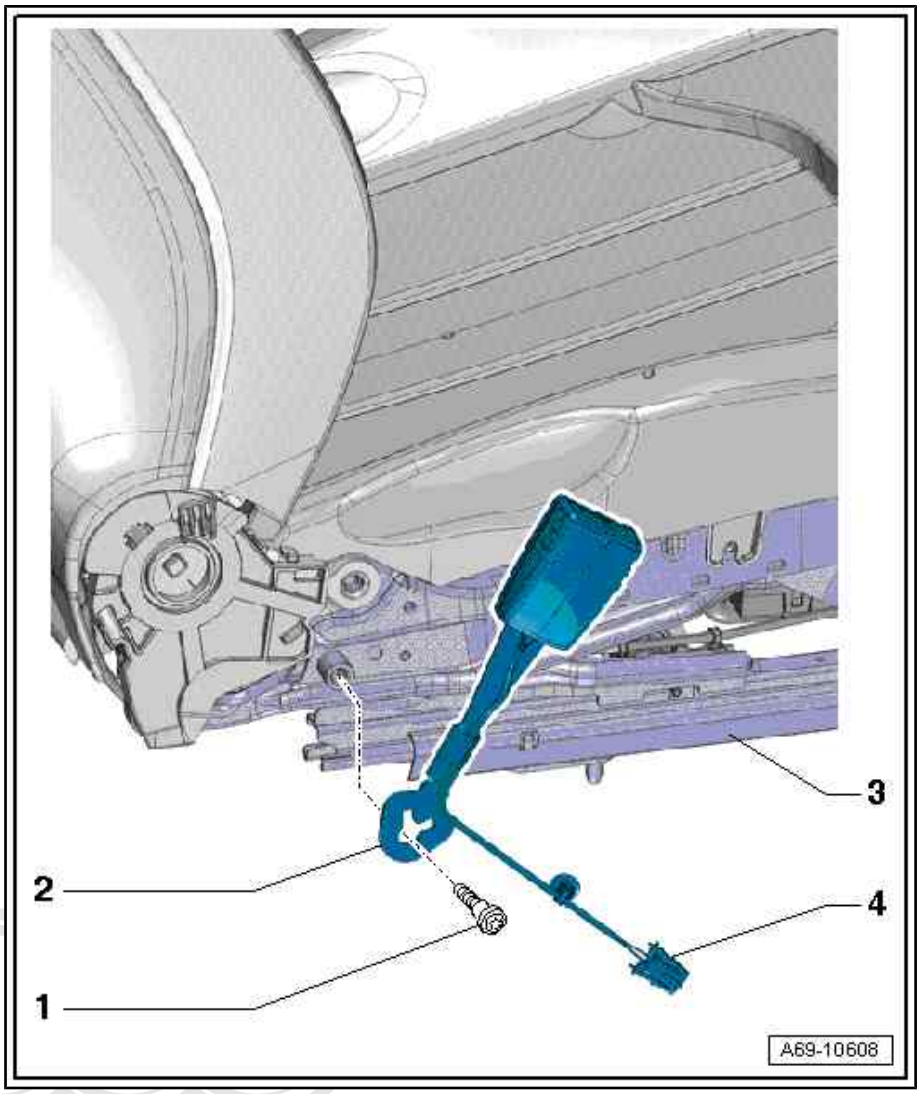
2 - Belt buckle (front) with driver side belt switch - E24-

- ❑ Passenger side: belt buckle (front) with front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- ❑ Country-specific version, passenger side: with front passenger side belt switch - E25- and seat belt force sensor for seat occupied recognition - G453-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 119
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

3 - Seat pan frame

4 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For belt switch



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

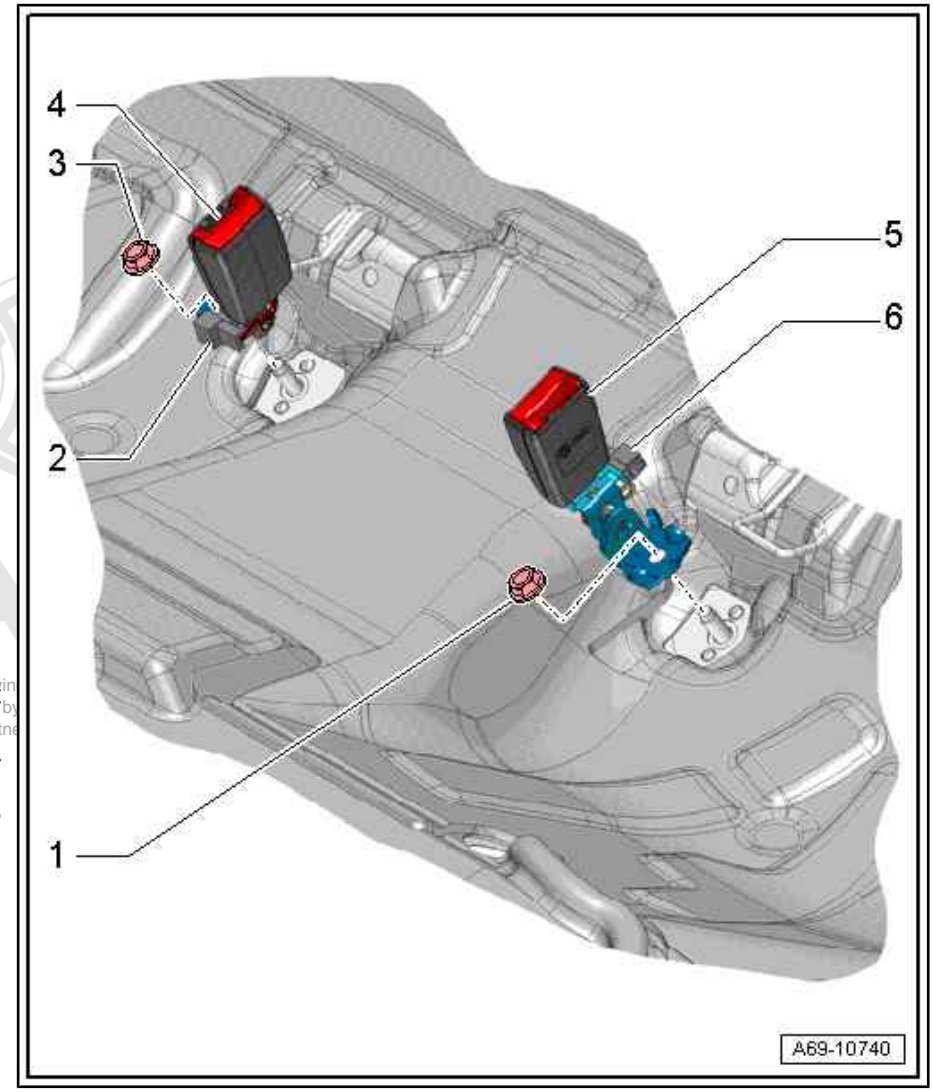
1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)

⇒ “1.6.1 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), 2-seat rear seat”, page 93

⇒ “1.6.2 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), 3-seat rear seat”, page 94

⇒ “1.6.3 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear). 3-seat rear seat, country-specific version”, page 95

1.6.1 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), 2-seat rear seat



1 - Nut

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 45 Nm

2 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For rear belt switch, front passenger side - E259-

3 - Nut

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 45 Nm

4 - Belt buckle with rear belt switch, front passenger side - E259-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121
- ❑ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ❑ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface
- ❑ Always renew belt buckle if belt tensioner was triggered (while belt was fastened)

5 - Belt buckle with rear belt switch, driver side - E258-

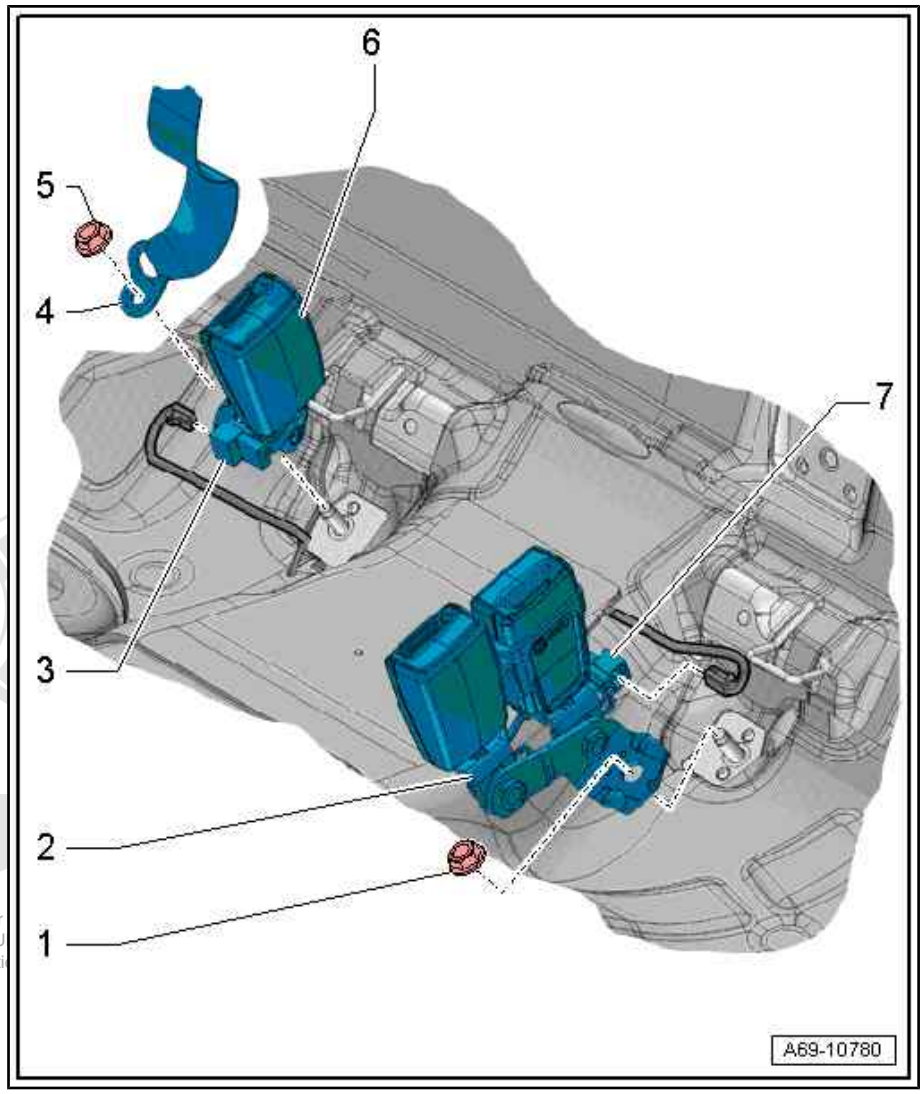
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121
- ❑ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ❑ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface
- ❑ Always renew belt buckle if belt tensioner was triggered (while belt was fastened)

6 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For rear belt switch, driver side - E258-

Protected by copyright. Copyin
permitted unless authorised by
with respect to the correctne

1.6.2 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), 3-seat rear seat



1 - Nut

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 45 Nm

2 - Belt buckle

- ❑ With rear belt switch, driver side - E258-
- ❑ With rear centre belt switch - E609-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ❑ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface

3 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For rear belt switch, front passenger side - E259-

4 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU
with respect to the correctness of informati

5 - Nut

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 45 Nm

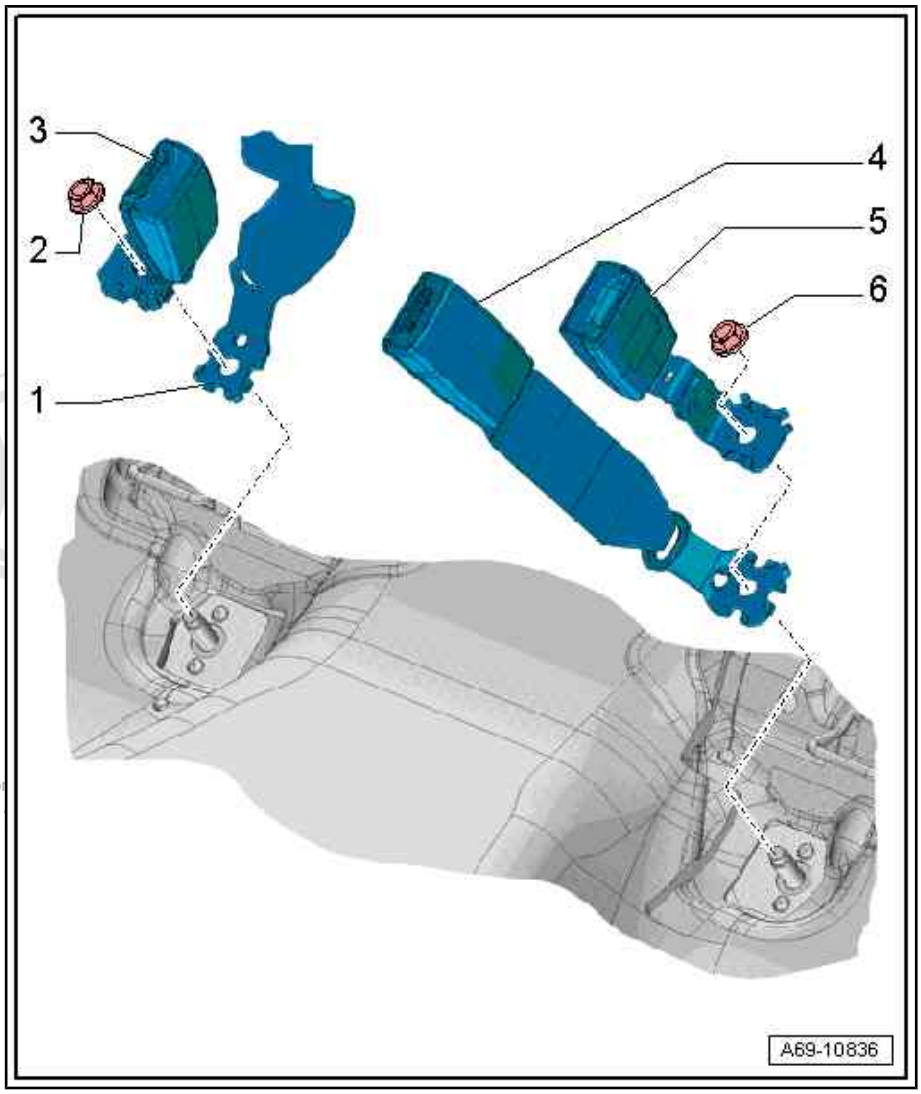
6 - Belt buckle

- ❑ With rear belt switch, front passenger side - E259-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ❑ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface

7 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For rear belt switch, driver side - E258- and rear centre belt switch - E609-

1.6.3 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear). 3-seat rear seat, country-specific version



1 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121
- ❑ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface

2 - Nut

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 45 Nm

3 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ❑ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI
disclaims liability for correctness of information

4 - Centre belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ❑ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface

5 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ❑ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface

6 - Nut

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 45 Nm

1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 116 .

– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 282 and guide out belt.

– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 284 .

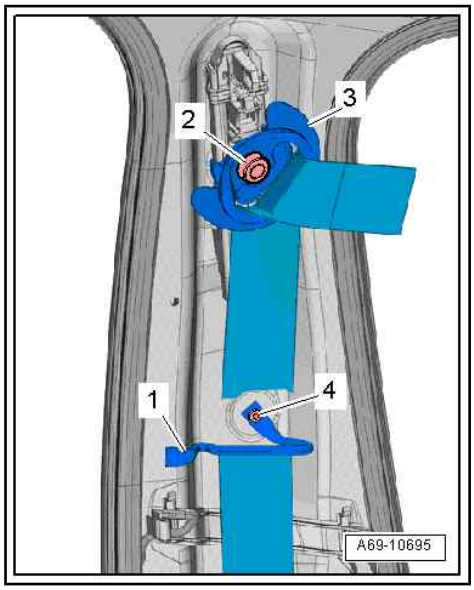
– Remove B-pillar air duct ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

WARNING

Before handling the belt tensioner units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Remove bolt -4- and detach belt guide (front) -1-.

– Remove bolt -2- for belt guide fitting -3-.



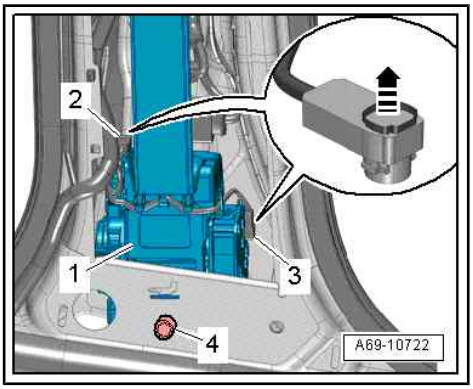
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Equipment version without electric belt tensioning:

– Release connector locking element with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connectors for belt force limiter -item 2- and for belt tensioner igniter 1 -item 3-.

– Disengage electrical wiring at belt tensioner and move clear.

– Remove bolt -4- and take automatic belt retractor -1- out of mounting.



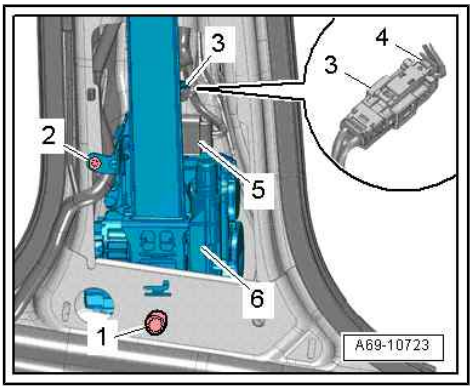
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Equipment version with electric belt tensioning:

– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connector -5- for control unit for belt tensioner.

– Unplug electrical connector -3- for belt tensioner igniter and belt force limiter; to do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -4-.

– Remove bolts -1- and -2- and take automatic belt retractor -6- out of mounting.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

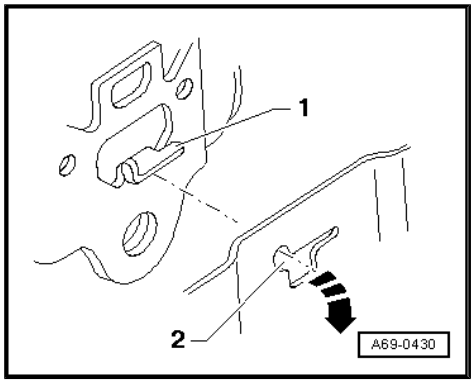
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten bolt.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Vehicles with control unit for front belt tensioner -J854- / -J855- (PR no. 7W4 and higher):

– After three-point seat belt (front) has been renewed, control unit for belt tensioner must be activated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

– Choose “Function/component selection” and select the following options one after the other:

- Body
- General body repairs
- 01 - Self-diagnosis compatible systems
- 8F - Front left belt tensioner control unit J854
- 8F - RGS front left, functions
- 8F 69 - Front left belt tensioner control unit J854-, replace

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

The code that must be entered is supplied together with the new part ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

– After installing three-point seat belt (front passenger side), check child seat restraint function (country-specific version) of belt ⇒ page 14 .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)", page 87

1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)

⇒ "1.8.1 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - Saloon", page 99

⇒ "1.8.2 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - Avant", page 102

⇒ "1.8.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear) in rear shelf", page 105

⇒ "1.8.4 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear) in rear seat backrest", page 108

1.8.1 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - Saloon

Removing

– Remove outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 117 .

– Remove rear shelf ⇒ page 293 .

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 321 .

– Remove belt guides (rear) ⇒ page 111 .

– Detach noise insulation for automatic belt retractor.

Country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

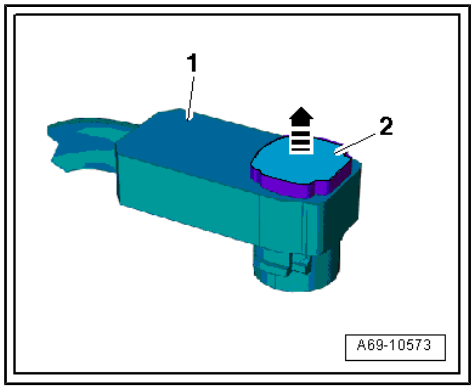
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

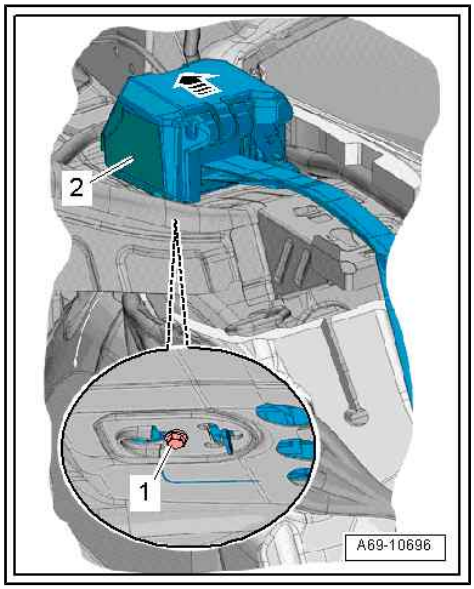
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector.
– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.



Continued for all vehicles:

– Remove bolt -1-.
– Slide three-point seat belt -2- to rear -arrow- and take out of mounting.



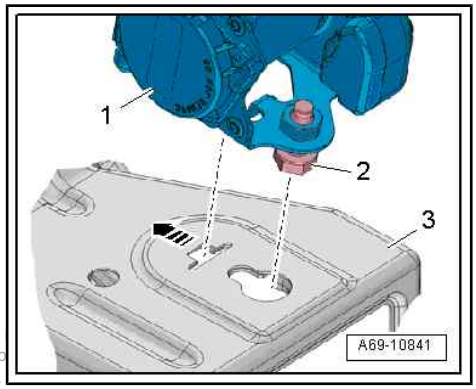
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.

– Press three-point seat belt -1- forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.



Country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components* *⇒ page 4* *.*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Continued for all vehicles:

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)", page 89

1.8.2 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - Avant

Removing

– Remove outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 117 .

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 330 .

– Remove bracket for backrest remote release mechanism ⇒ page 562 .

– Detach noise insulation for automatic belt retractor.

Country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

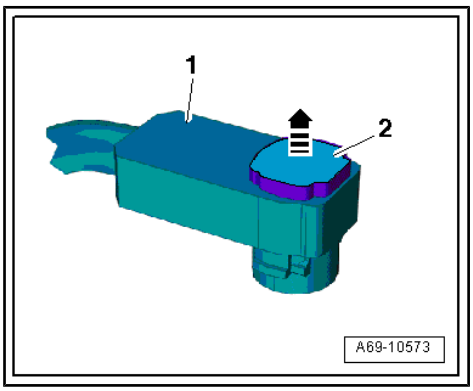
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug electrical connector.

– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.

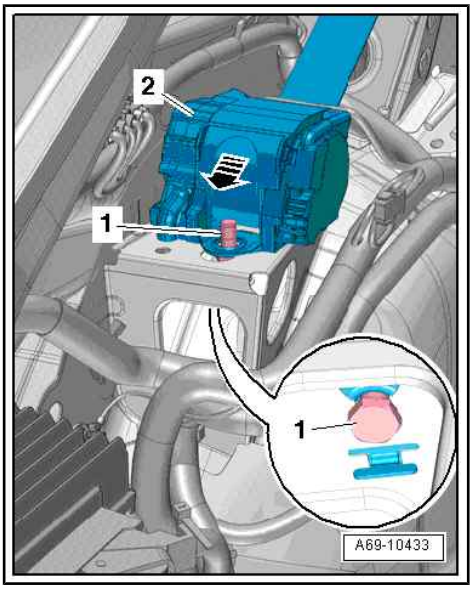


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Continued for all vehicles:

– Slacken off bolt -1-.

– Disengage three-point seat belt -2- -arrow- and detach.



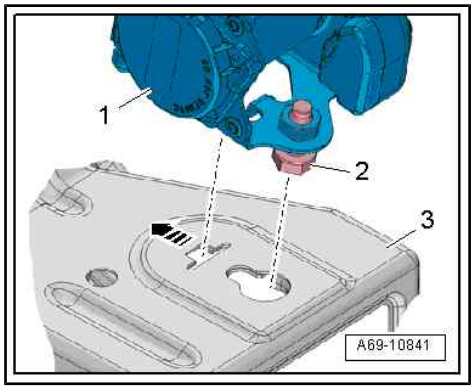
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.

– Press three-point seat belt -1- forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.



Country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copying. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Continued for all vehicles:

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)", page 89

1.8.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear) in rear shelf

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .
– Remove fixed rear seat backrest ⇒ page 544 .
– Equipment version with multi-contour seat: Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .
– Remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 121 .
– Remove rear shelf ⇒ page 293 .

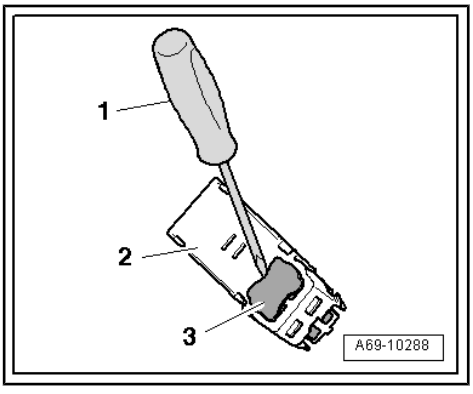
Country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter:

> **WARNING**
>
> - *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
> - *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– Switch on ignition.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

> **WARNING**
>
> *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

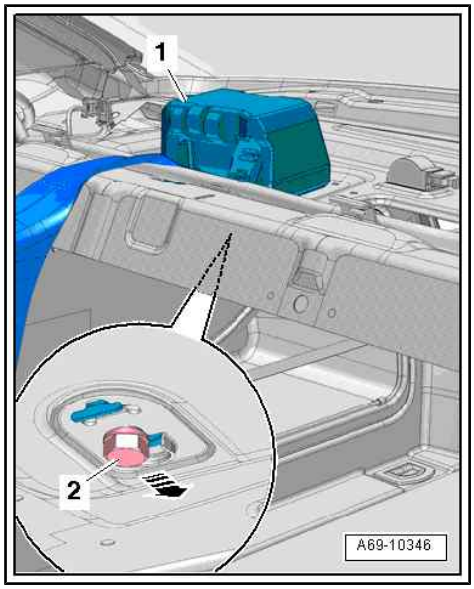
– Unplug electrical connector.
– To do so, use a small screwdriver -1- to release connector locking element -3- and unplug electrical connector -2-.



Continued for all vehicles:

– Slacken off bolt -2-.

– Disengage three-point seat belt -1- -arrow- and lift off.



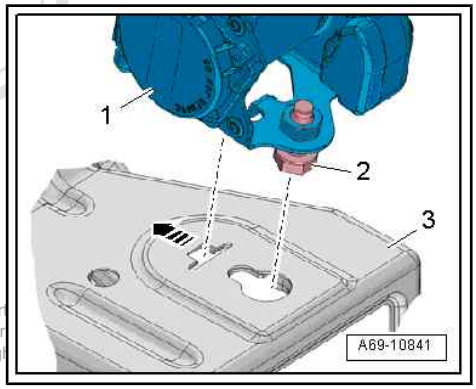
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.

– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.

– Press three-point seat belt -1- forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.



Country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components* *⇒ page 4* *.*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Continued for all vehicles:

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)", page 90

1.8.4 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear) in rear seat backrest

Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .

– Remove 2/3 section (right-side) of split rear seat backrest ⇒ page 544 .

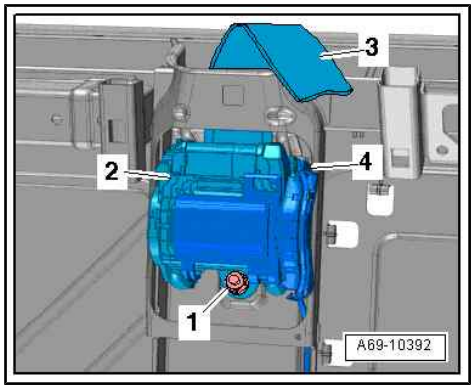
– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding for rear seat bench ⇒ page 701 .

Country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter:

WARNING

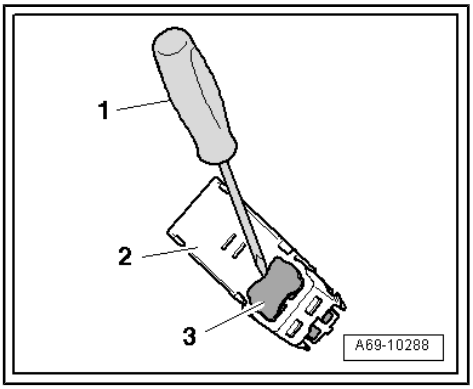
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Unplug electrical connector -4-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To do so, use a small screwdriver -1- to release connector locking element -3- and unplug electrical connector -2-.

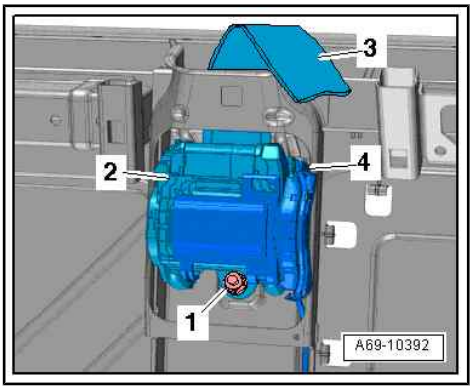


Continued for all vehicles:

– Remove nut -1-.

– Disengage three-point seat belt -2- and detach.

– Thread out belt -3-.

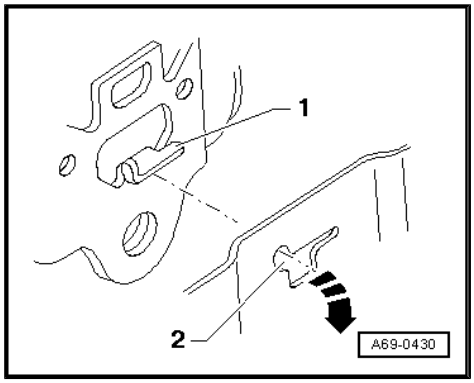


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.

– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element -1- in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten nut.



Country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Continued for all vehicles:

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 90

1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)

⇒ “1.9.1 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) - Saloon”, page 111

⇒ “1.9.2 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) - Avant”, page 112

⇒ “1.9.3 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) in rear shelf”, page 113

⇒ “1.9.4 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) in rear seat backrest”, page 114

1.9.1 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) - Saloon

Removing

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 552 .

– Equipment version with fixed rear seat backrest: Remove fixed rear seat backrest ⇒ page 544 .

– Equipment version with multi-contour seat: Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 321 .

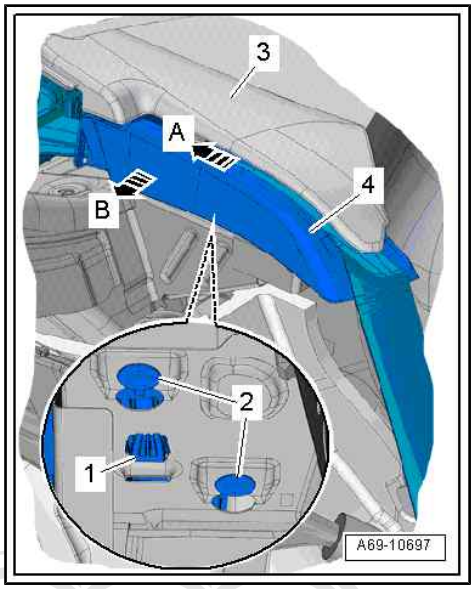
– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ page 288 .

– Remove rear shelf ⇒ page 293 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

- *When removing and installing belt guide -4-, never turn bolts -2-. They have been set by the manufacturer.*
- *Renew entire belt guide if damaged.*



– Press retaining hooks -1- on belt guide upwards and hold.
– Lift C-pillar trim -3- slightly and slide belt guide to rear -arrow A- until bolt heads -2- can be disengaged from bracket on body.
– Take out belt guide -4- sideways towards vehicle interior -arrow B-.
– Outer belt guide (rear): Unplug electrical connector for rear parking aid warning buzzer - H15- .
– Thread out belt and detach belt guide.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Place belt in recess in belt guide -4- and position belt guide on bracket.
– Insert belt guide with bolt heads -2- in guide elements at bracket.
– Press belt guide downwards and at the same time pull it forwards, making bolt heads engage in guide elements.
– Pull belt guide forwards until retaining hook engages audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)", page 89

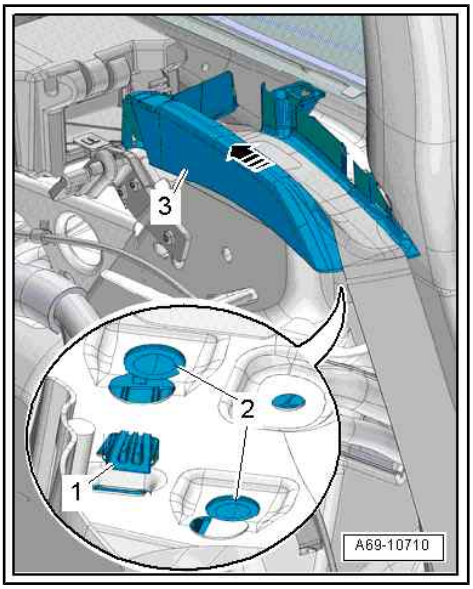
Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.9.2 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) - Avant

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 330 .

– Take foam element out of recess beneath belt guide.



Caution

- *When removing and installing belt guide -3-, never turn bolts -2-. They have been set by the manufacturer.*
- *Renew entire belt guide if damaged.*

– Using a screwdriver, press retaining hook -1- on belt guide upwards from below and hold.

– Slide belt guide to rear -arrow- until bolt heads -2- can be disengaged from bracket on body.

– Take out belt guide sideways towards vehicle interior.

– Outer belt guide (rear): Unplug electrical connector for rear parking aid warning buzzer - H15- .

– Thread out belt and detach belt guide.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Place belt in recess in belt guide -3- and position belt guide on bracket.

– Insert belt guide with bolt heads -2- in guide elements at bracket.

– Press belt guide downwards and at the same time pull it forwards, making bolt heads engage in guide elements.

– Pull belt guide forwards until retaining hook engages audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)", page 89

1.9.3 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) in rear shelf

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



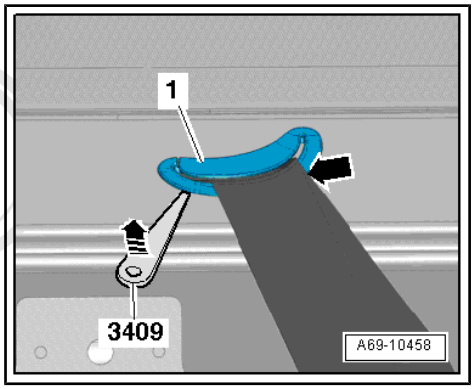
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Unclip belt guide -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -left arrow-.

– Unclip belt guide on opposite side -right arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- and lift out of rear shelf.

– Open belt guide at disconnecting point and thread out belt.



Installing

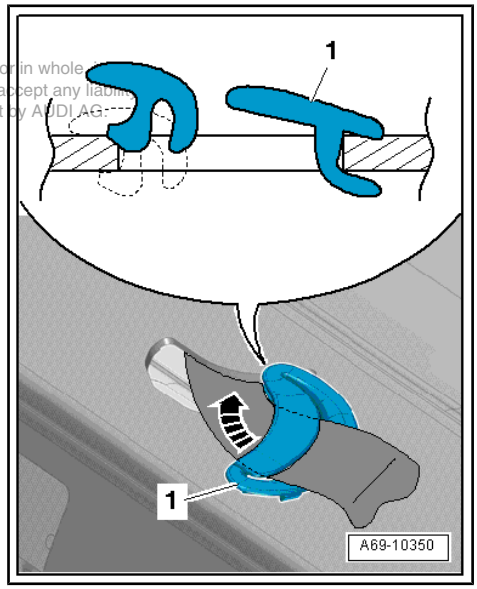
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Position belt guide -1- with edge turned by approx. 90° above opening in rear shelf (as shown in illustration).

– Slide belt guide into corner of opening and at the same time turn belt guide into opening -arrow-.

– Press belt guide down until retaining tabs engage in rear shelf.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 90

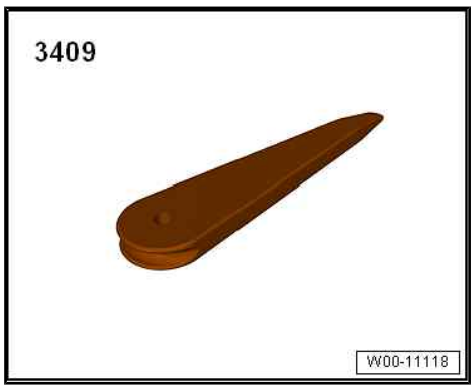


Copyright by AUDI AG. This document is protected by copyright and may not be reproduced in part or in whole or otherwise by any means without the prior written permission of AUDI AG unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.9.4 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) in rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



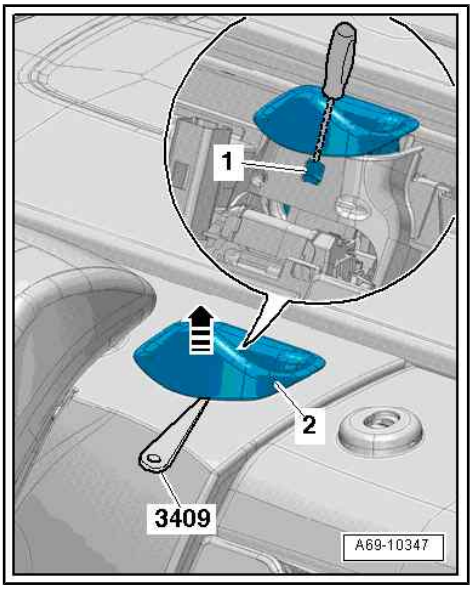
Removing

– Remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 121 .

– Insert screwdriver into opening in belt guide (from top) and release retaining tab -1-.

– At the same time, unclip belt guide -2- using removal wedge -3409- -arrow-.

– Thread out belt and detach belt guide.



Installing

Install in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)", page 90

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (front)

⇒ "1.10.1 Removing and installing belt guide (front)", page 115

⇒ "1.10.2 Removing and installing belt guide (front) - multi-contour seat", page 116

1.10.1 Removing and installing belt guide (front)

Removing

– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 282 .

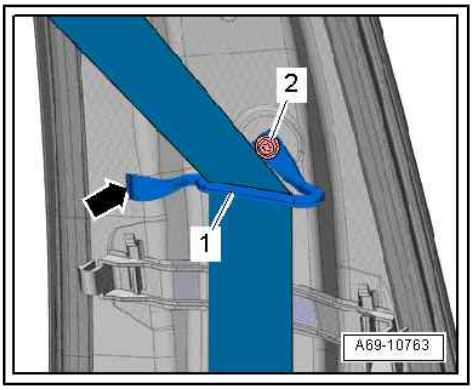
– Move B-pillar trim (top) to side with belt inserted.

– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 284 .

– Remove B-pillar air duct ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

– Remove bolt -2-.

– Disengage belt guide (front) -1- from B-pillar -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that belt is not trapped or damaged.

– Lay belt in recess in belt guide (front) -1-.

– Engage belt guide (front) at B-pillar -arrow- and tighten bolt -2-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)", page 87

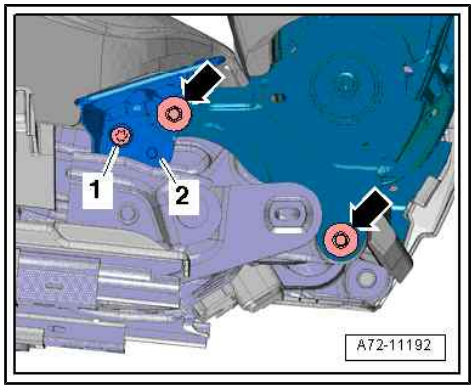
1.10.2 Removing and installing belt guide (front) - multi-contour seat

Removing

– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 465 .

– Remove bolt -top arrow- for backrest fitting.

– Remove bolt -1- and detach belt guide -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, multi-contour seat", page 379

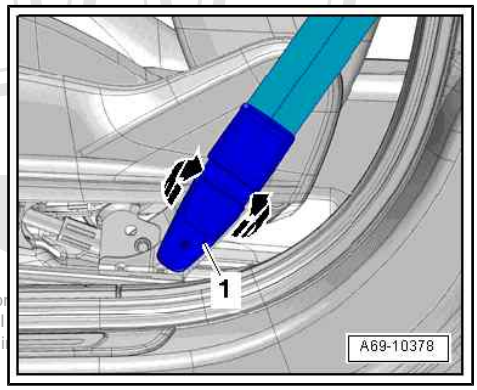
1.11 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)

Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat:

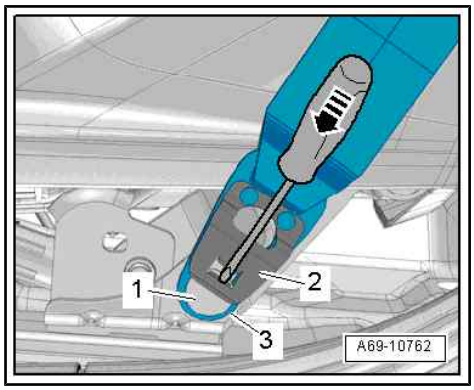
– Unclip cover -1- at belt end fitting -arrows- and fold upwards.



Protected by copyright. Copying for pr
permitted unless authorised by AUDI
with respect to the correctness of i

Caution

- *Spring -2- could be bent if it is not removed correctly. The three-point seat belt must be renewed if the spring is bent.*
- *Only move spring -2- to the extent required to release the retaining tab on the spring.*

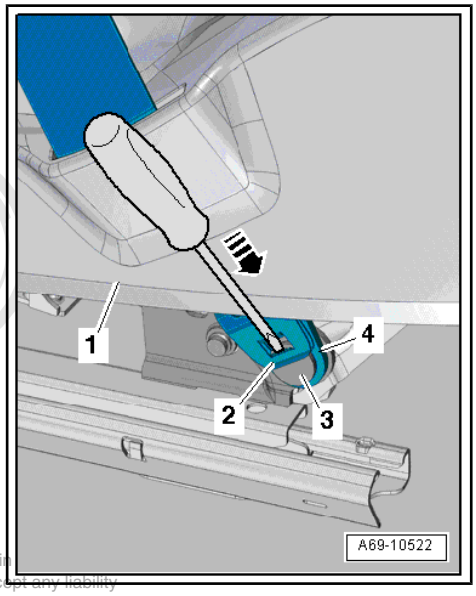


– Insert small screwdriver into opening on spring -arrow- and release retaining tab on spring -2-.

– Slide belt end fitting -3- downwards and disengage at stud -1-.

Multi-contour seat:

> **Caution**
>
> - *Spring -2- could be bent if it is not removed correctly. The three-point seat belt must be renewed if the spring is bent.*
> - *Only move spring -2- to the extent required to release the retaining tab on the spring.*



– Insert small screwdriver into opening on spring -arrow- and release retaining tab on spring -2-.

– Slide belt end fitting -4- downwards and disengage at stud -3-.

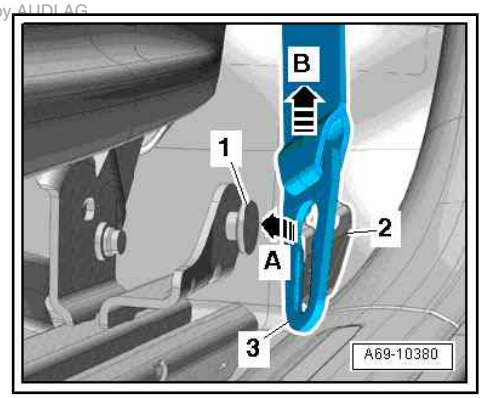
– Guide out belt end fitting upwards through trim (sill side) -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

> **Caution**
>
> - *Spring -2- could be bent if it is not removed correctly. The three-point seat belt must be renewed if the spring is bent.*
> - *Only move spring -2- to the extent required to release the retaining tab on the spring.*



– Engage belt end fitting -3- at stud -1- -arrow A- and pull upwards -arrow B- until retaining tab on spring -2- engages audibly at stud head.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 87

1.12 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)

Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .

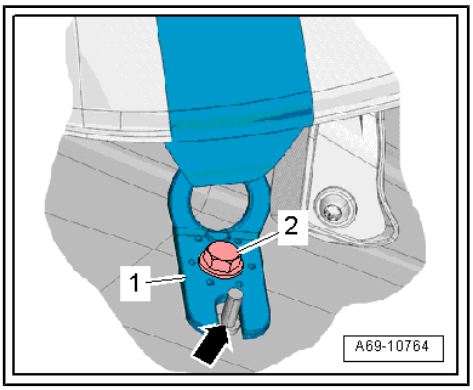
– Remove bolt -2- from belt end fitting -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

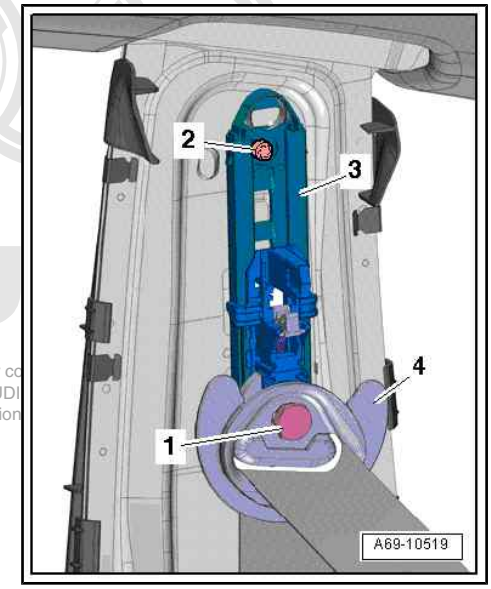
- Threaded pin -arrow- on floor panel must be located in recess of belt end fitting.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 89



1.13 Removing and installing belt height adjuster

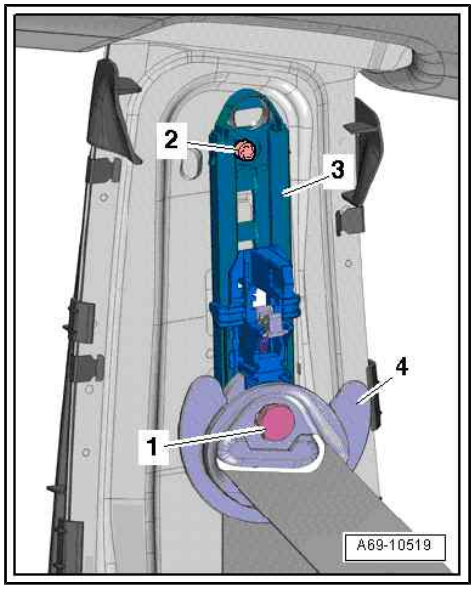
Removing



- Press belt height adjustment button and move slide for belt height adjuster to bottom detent position.
- Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 282 .
- Move B-pillar trim (top) to side with belt inserted.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Detach guide fitting -4- with belt.
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Lift belt height adjuster -3- off B-pillar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI
with respect to the correctness of information

Installing



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Note

- *When supplied as replacement parts, belt height adjusters are always supplied with belt height adjustment slide and set to bottom detent position (assembly position).*
- *If belt height adjusters are removed and re-fitted, they must be set to bottom detent position (assembly position).*

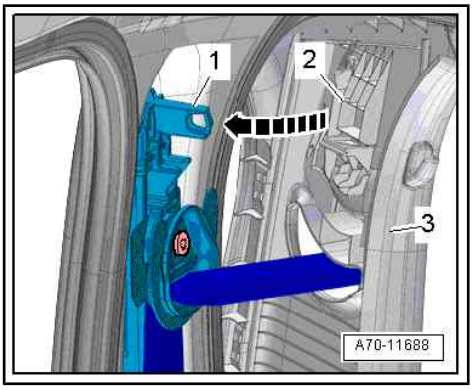
- Engage belt height adjuster -3- in B-pillar.
- Tighten bolt -2-.
- Install guide fitting -4- and tighten bolt -1-.

Note

Do not operate belt height adjustment button when fitting B-pillar trim (top).

– First insert B-pillar trim -3- upwards into mounting at roof.

• Mounting -2- of sliding element of B-pillar trim (top) must engage in retainer -1- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.



Belt height adjuster as replacement part:

– After fitting B-pillar trim (top), press slide firmly upwards.

• This will release belt height adjuster from assembly position.

All belt height adjusters (continued):

– The following functions must be tested successfully:

• Belt height adjuster must engage audibly in each of the three possible positions (including top position).

• Belt height adjustment button must always automatically return to top position whenever it has been operated.

• After tightening bolt, guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction.

If any of the listed functions is not OK, check installation of belt height adjuster and renew adjuster if necessary.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 87

1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)

⇒ “1.14.1 Removing and installing belt buckle (front) - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat”, page 119

⇒ “1.14.2 Removing and installing belt buckle (front) - multi-contour seat”, page 120

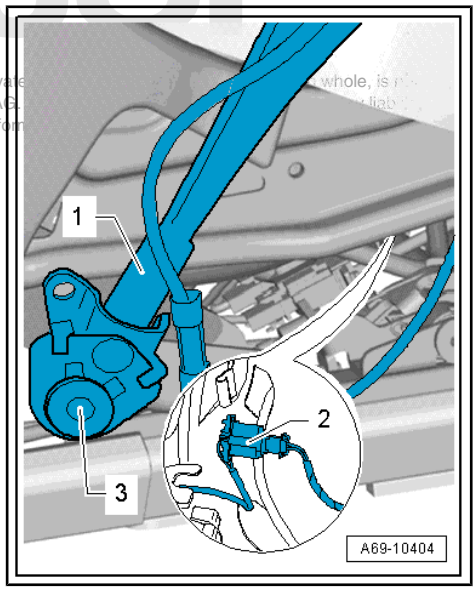
1.14.1 Removing and installing belt buckle (front) - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat

Removing

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2- and move wiring clear.

– Unscrew bolt -3- and detach belt buckle -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of infor
whole, is
liab

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Position belt buckle -2- so that recess -arrow B- coincides with lug -arrow A- at seat frame -1-.

Country-specific version with seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag:

– If the belt buckle for the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger's airbag is renewed, you must complete the form for the seat occupied recognition system stating the serial number and including the bar code sticker of the new belt buckle, and then send the form to the importer.

Continued for all vehicles:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)", page 91

1.14.2 Removing and installing belt buckle (front) - multi-contour seat

Removing

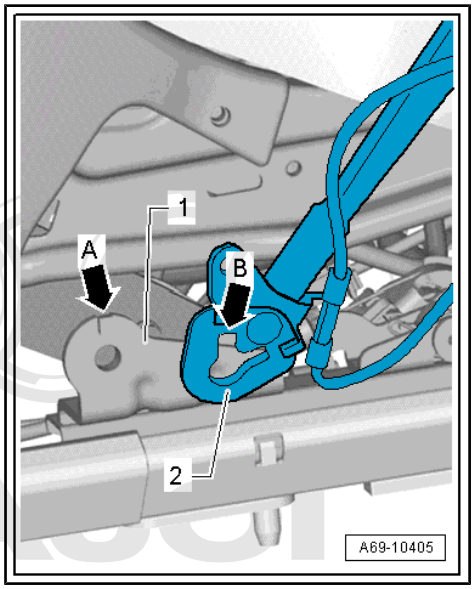
WARNING

Country-specific version with seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag:

- *The belt buckle for the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger's airbag must ALWAYS be renewed when the front passenger's belt tensioner has been triggered.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

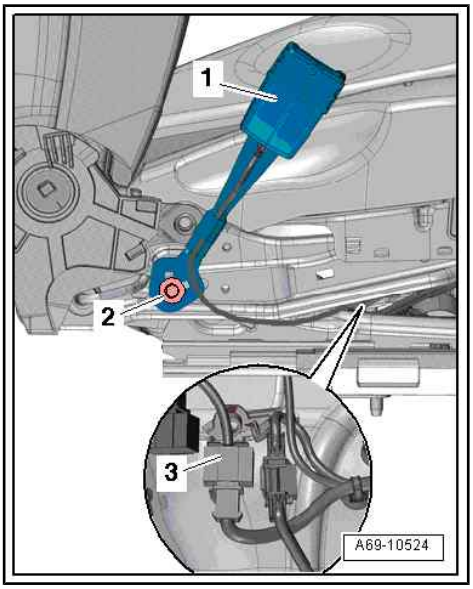
– Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 469 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector -3- and move wiring clear.

– Unscrew bolt -2- and detach belt buckle -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Always clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts using e.g. a thread tap.

– Renew bolt securing belt buckle.

Country-specific version with seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag:

– If the belt buckle for the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger's airbag is renewed, you must complete the form for the seat occupied recognition system stating the serial number and including the bar code sticker of the new belt buckle, and then send the form to the importer.

Continued for all vehicles:

WARNING

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)”, page 91

1.15 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)

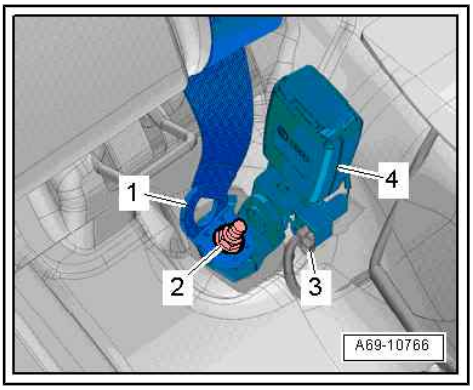
⇒ “1.15.1 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)”, page 121

⇒ “1.15.2 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) - country-specific version”, page 122

1.15.1 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)

Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .



Belt buckle (rear right) with centre belt end fitting (rear):

– Equipment version with belt switch: Unplug electrical connector -3- for belt switch.

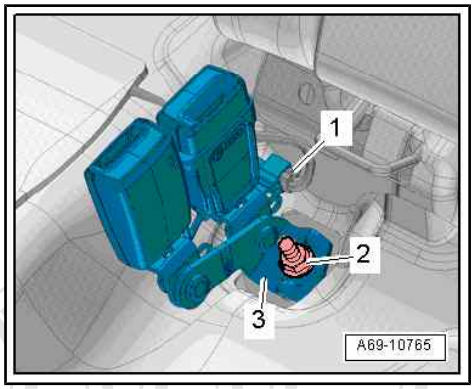
– Remove nut -2-.

– Detach centre belt end fitting (rear) -1-.

– Remove belt buckle -4-.

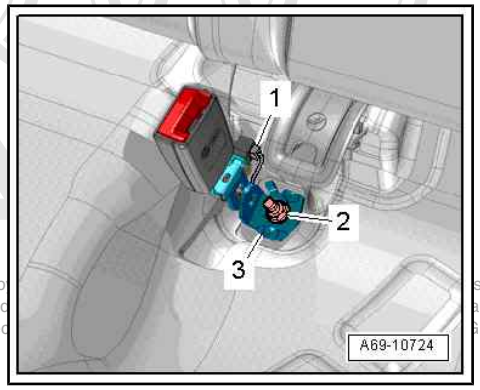
Belt buckle (rear left), 3-seat rear seat:

- Equipment version with belt switch: Unplug electrical connector -1- for belt switch.
- Remove nut -2-.
- Remove belt buckle -3-.



Belt buckle (rear left), 2-seat rear seat:

- Equipment version with belt switch: Unplug electrical connector -1- for belt switch.
- Remove nut -2-.
- Remove belt buckle -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)", page 93

Protected by copyright. Cop s not permitted unless authorised ability with respect to the correc .

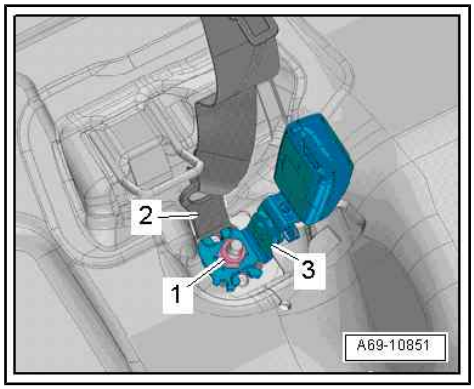
1.15.2 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) - country-specific version

Removing

- Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .

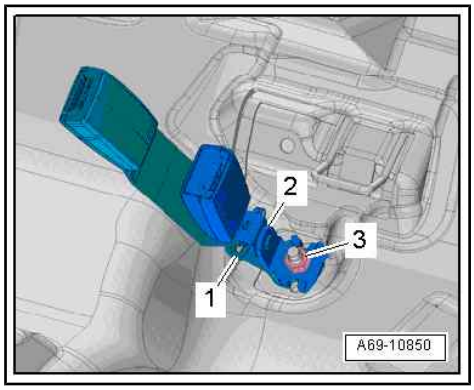
Belt buckle (rear right) with centre belt end fitting (rear):

- Remove nut -1-.
- Remove belt buckle -3-.
- Detach centre belt end fitting (rear) -2-.



Belt buckle (rear left)/belt buckle (rear centre):

- Remove nut -3-.
- Remove belt buckle (left-side) -2-.
- Remove belt buckle (centre) -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)", page 93

2 Child seat anchors

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)”, page 123

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)”, page 124

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)”, page 126

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear)”, page 126

2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)

1 - Speed nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Inserted in seat pan
- ❑ Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

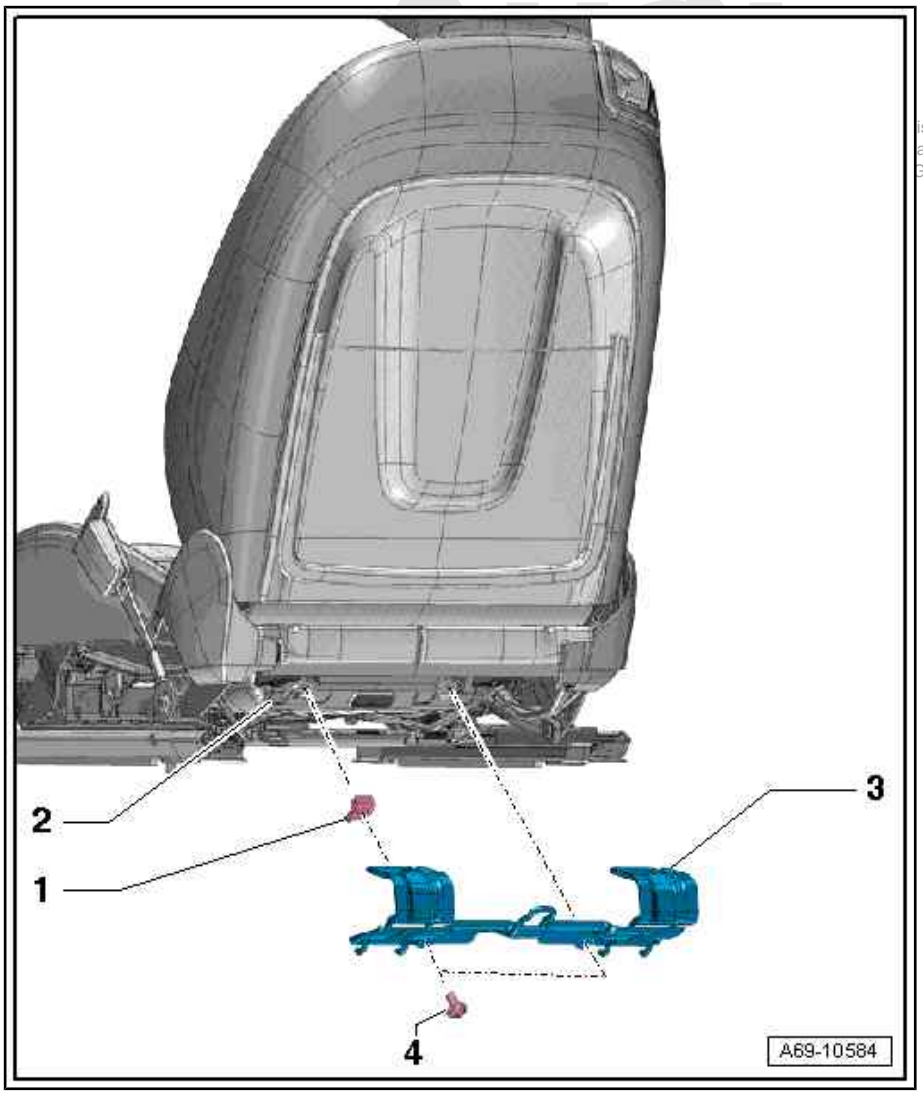
2 - Seat pan

3 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Front passenger seat only
- ❑ Bolted to seat pan
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 14
- ❑ Renew child seat anchor if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 126

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 8 Nm



2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)

⇒ “2.2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)”, page 124

⇒ “2.2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear), Avant”, page 125

2.2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)

Note

The child seat anchoring points are welded to the floor of the vehicle.

1 - Child seat anchor

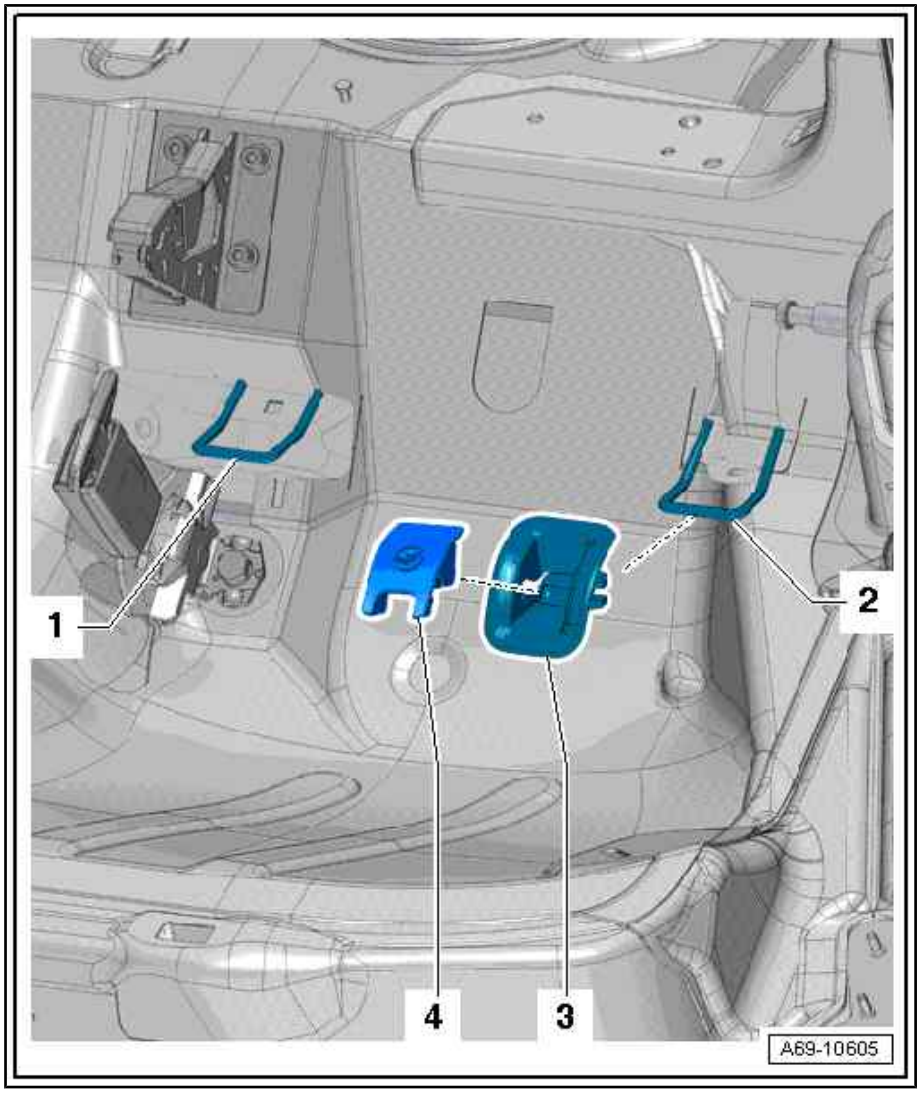
2 - Child seat anchor

3 - Guide

- For child seat anchor
- 4x
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 126
- Must be seated firmly on anchor

4 - Cover

- For child seat anchor
- 4x
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 126
- Must be seated firmly on anchor



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear), Avant

1 - Mounting
- ❑ For load guard
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

2 - Bolts
- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

4 - Cover

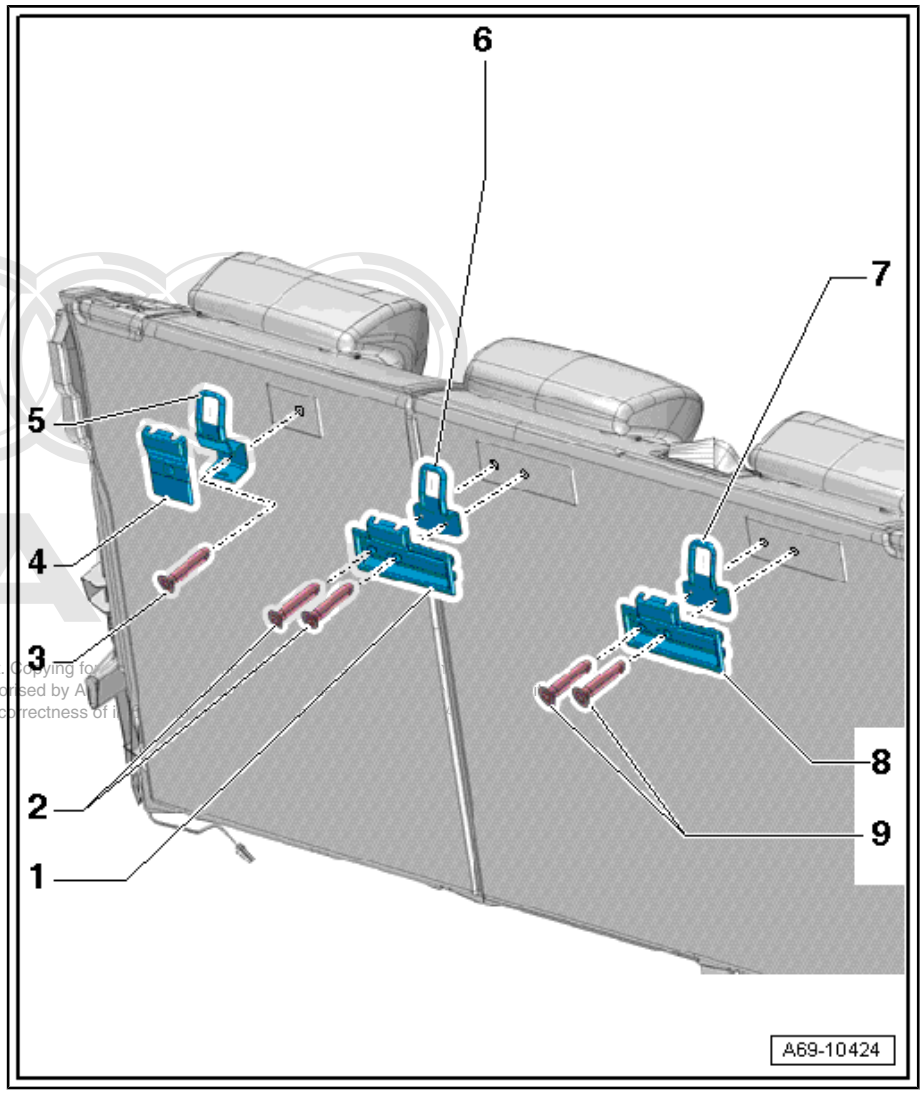
5 - Child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 127

6 - Child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 127

7 - Child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 127

8 - Mounting
- ❑ For load guard
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

9 - Bolts
- ❑ 9 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for
permitted unless authorised by A
with respect to the correctness of i

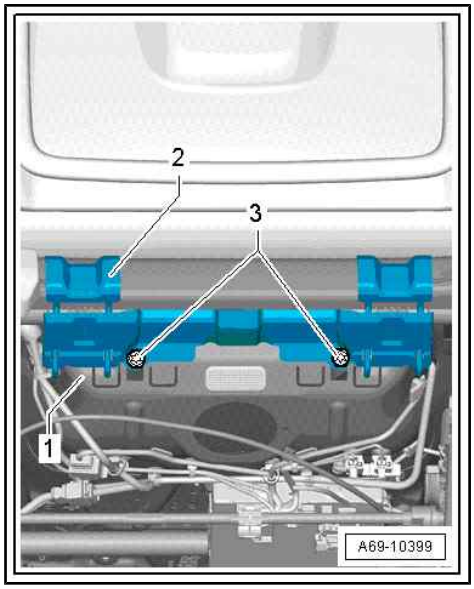
2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)

Removing

– Move front passenger's seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Remove bolts -3-.

– Detach child seat anchor -2- from seat pan -1- towards rear.

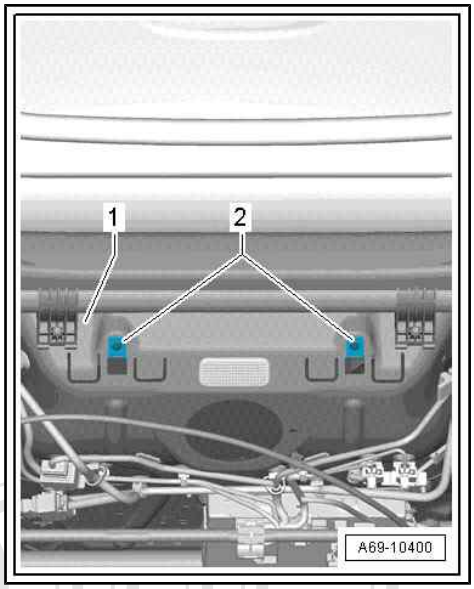


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Check speed nuts -2- at seat pan -1- for damage or deformation.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)", page 123



2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear)

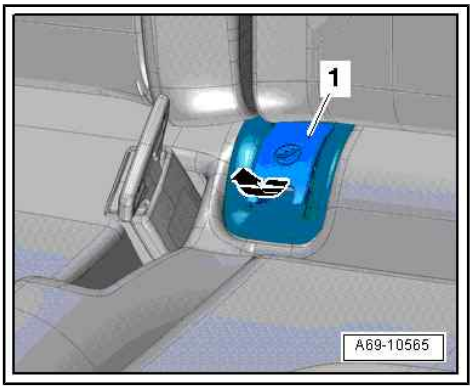
Note

The child seat anchoring points are welded to the rear part of the vehicle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

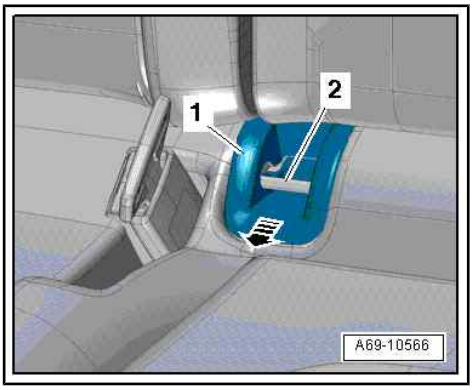
Removing anchor (bottom) - seat bench

– Unclip cover -1- for child seat anchor from anchor -arrow- and detach.



– Press guide -1- for child seat anchor downwards into recess and disengage from anchor -2-.

– Take guide for child seat anchor out towards front -arrow-.

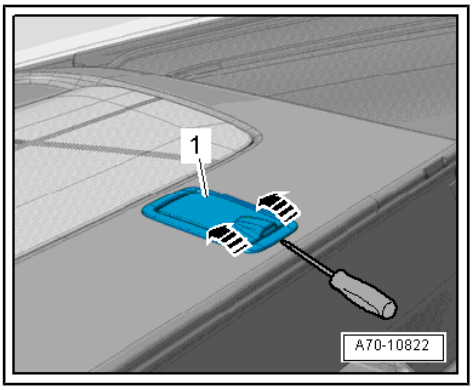


Removing anchor (top) in rear shelf - Saloon

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Equipment version with fixed rear seat backrest: Remove head restraint ⇒ page 540 .

– Use screwdriver to unclip cap -1- -arrows- and detach.



Removing anchor (top) in rear seat backrest - Avant

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Detach mounting -3- with guide -1- for load guard.

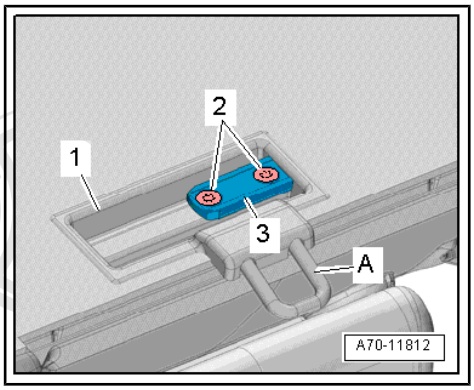
– Detach child seat anchor -A- from rear seat backrest.

Installing

Install in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)”, page 124



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

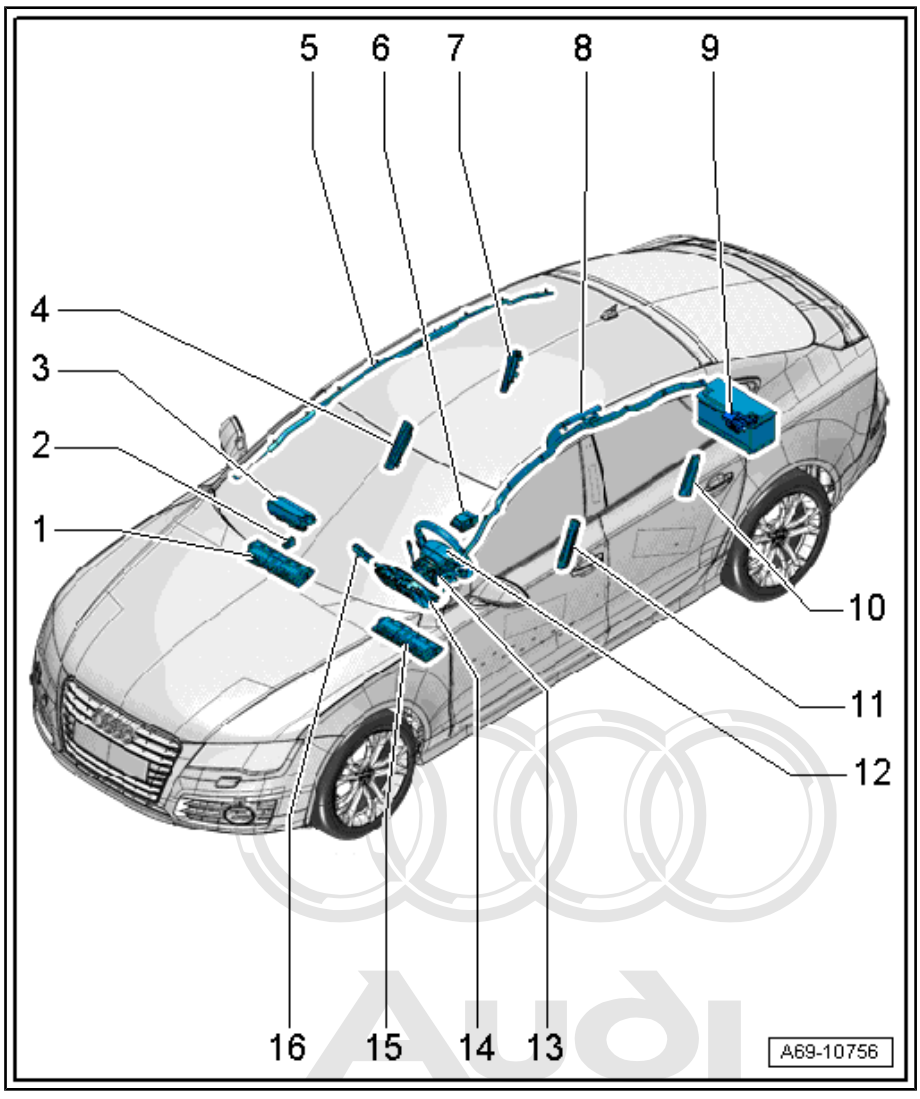
3 Airbag system

⇒ “3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system”, page 128

3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system

Note

Illustration shows fitting locations for a saloon.



1 - Knee airbag (front passenger side)

- With front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-
- Country-specific version
- Exploded view ⇒ page 173

2 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 149

3 - Airbag (front passenger side) with airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131- and igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491-

- Country-specific version: with airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 145
- Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

4 - Side airbag (front passenger side) with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

- Exploded view ⇒ page 152

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Curtain airbag (front passenger side) with front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-

- Exploded view ⇒ page 163

6 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- Exploded view ⇒ page 130

7 - Side airbag (rear, passenger side) with rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202-

- Depending on vehicle equipment
- Exploded view ⇒ page 154

8 - Curtain airbag (driver side) with driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-

- Exploded view ⇒ page 163

9 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- Exploded view ⇒ page 134

10 - Side airbag (rear, driver side) with rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-

- Depending on vehicle equipment
- Exploded view ⇒ page 154

11 - Side airbag (driver side) with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-

- Exploded view ⇒ page 152

12 - Airbag (driver side) with airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag - N490-

- Exploded view ⇒ page 139

13 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527- with airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138- and steering angle sender - G85-

- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column electronics control unit - J527-

14 - Airbag warning lamp - K75-

- Fitting location: in dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert
- Cannot be renewed separately

15 - Knee airbag (driver side)

- With driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-
- Country-specific version
- Exploded view ⇒ page 172

16 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-

- Integrated into switch module with -E693- , -E581- , -E266- , -E127- , -E256- ; if defective, renew switch module ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Airbag control unit

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit”, page 130

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 ”, page 130

4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit

1 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 130
- ❑ Earth connection for airbag control unit is provided by securing housing to body

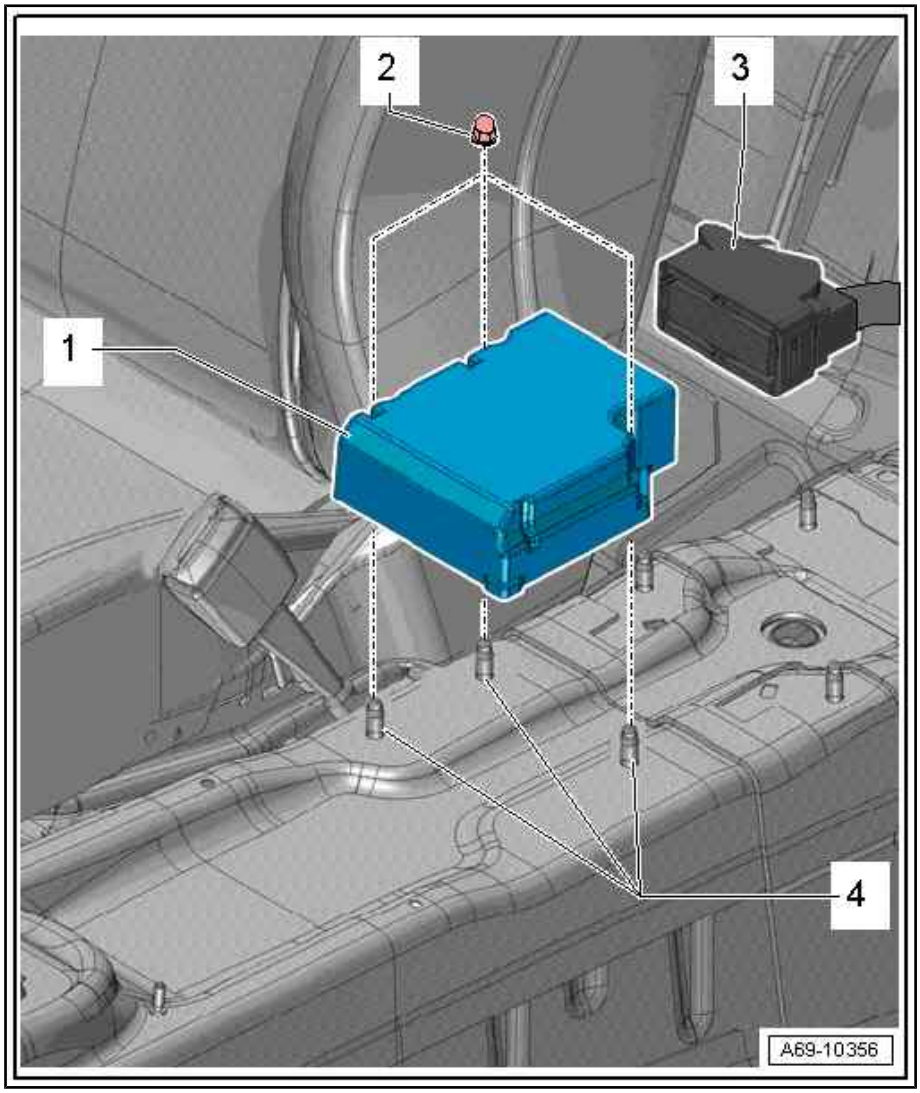
2 - Nut

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 9 Nm
- ❑ Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit

3 - Electrical connector

4 - Stud

- ❑ Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit



4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit - J234-

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 66 .
– Remove brackets for centre console ⇒ page 69 .
– Remove air duct (rear) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

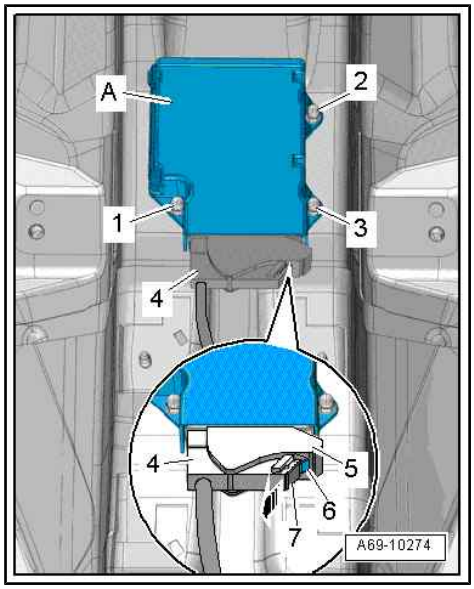
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Fold up floor covering above airbag control unit. If applicable, cut open floor covering along perforation.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Slide locking element -7- in direction of -arrow- at connector.
– Press release button -6-, open catch -5- at connector and unplug connector -4-.
– Unscrew nuts -1 ... 3- and detach airbag control unit -A- from studs.



Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

- *If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The airbag control unit -J234- must be encoded after it has been renewed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *An earth connection for the airbag control unit -J234- is provided by securing the housing to the body.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit”, page 130

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Battery isolation igniter

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter”, page 134

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter”, page 134

5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter

1 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For battery isolation igniter - N253-
- ❑ Releasing and unplugging ⇒ page 137

2 - Nuts

- ❑ 15 Nm

3 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- ❑ Only available together with -item 4-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 134

4 - Fuse holder A - SA-

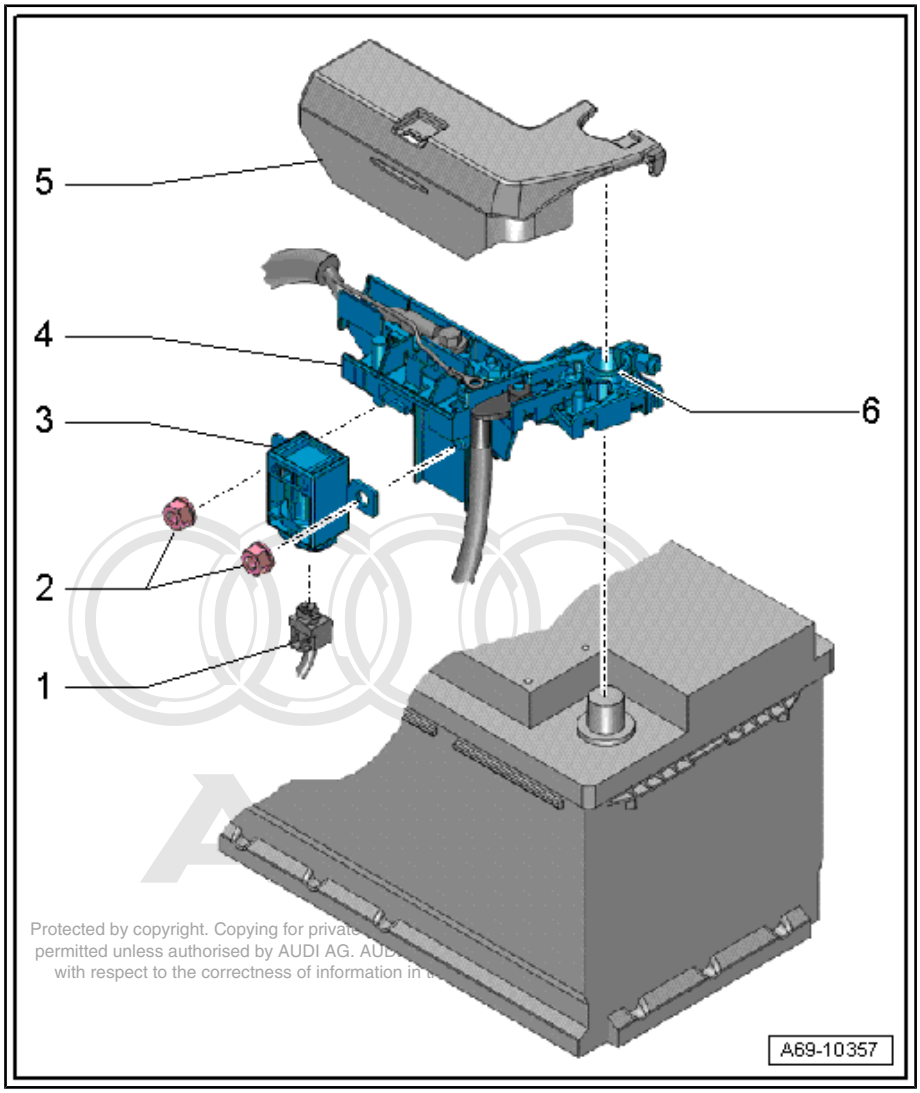
- ❑ Only available together with -item 3-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Exploded view - battery

5 - Cover

- ❑ For fuse holder A - SA-

6 - Positive terminal

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Exploded view - battery



Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI
with respect to the correctness of information in

5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

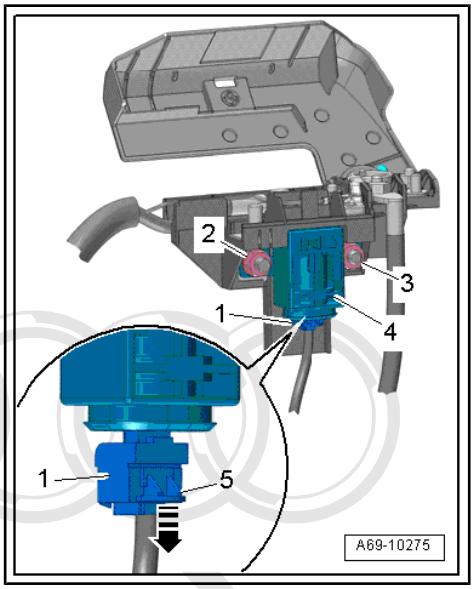
Note

- *If the airbag warning lamp - K75- is on after an accident, use the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester to check whether crash data have been stored. If this is the case, check whether the fault »Resistance too high« is stored in the event memory for the battery isolation igniter - N253- . If this fault is stored in the memory, the battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed.*
- *Each time the airbag is triggered, the battery isolation igniter - N253- electrically isolates the circuit. Battery isolation igniter - N253- must always be renewed after triggering.*
- *The battery isolation igniter - N253- is only available as a replacement part together with the fuse holder A - SA- .*
- *If you want to renew the battery isolation igniter -N253- separately, it can be detached from the replacement part and installed on the fitted fuse holder A - SA- , as described in the following.*

– A6 hybrid: Remove vented-air duct (front) for drive battery ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Battery cooling module; Exploded view - battery cooling module .

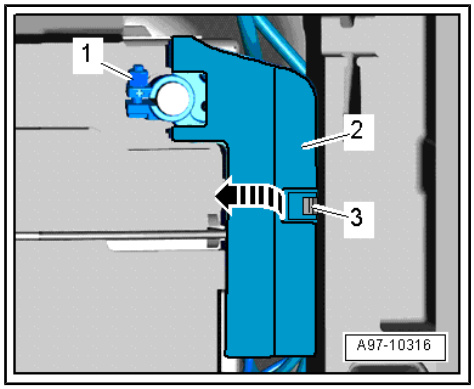
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove nuts -2- and -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release retaining spring -3-.
– Slightly lift up flap -2- above fuse holder A - SA- -arrow- and at the same time take out battery isolation igniter.



Note

Disregard -item 1-.

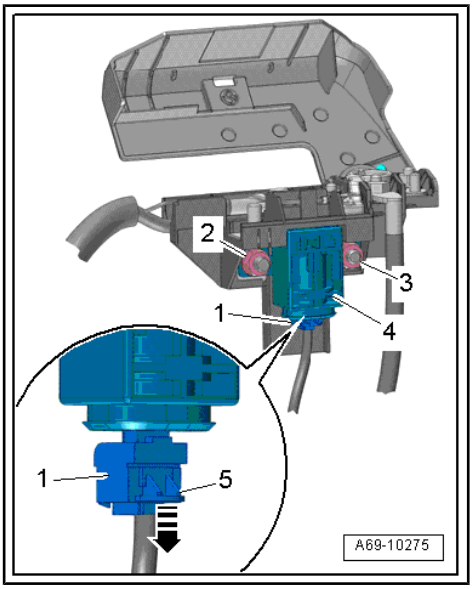
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Detach battery isolation igniter -4-.
– Pull out catch -5- downwards -arrow-, press catch and unplug electrical connector -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– As a final step, interrogate event memory of airbag control unit -J234- and eliminate any faults ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter", page 134

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

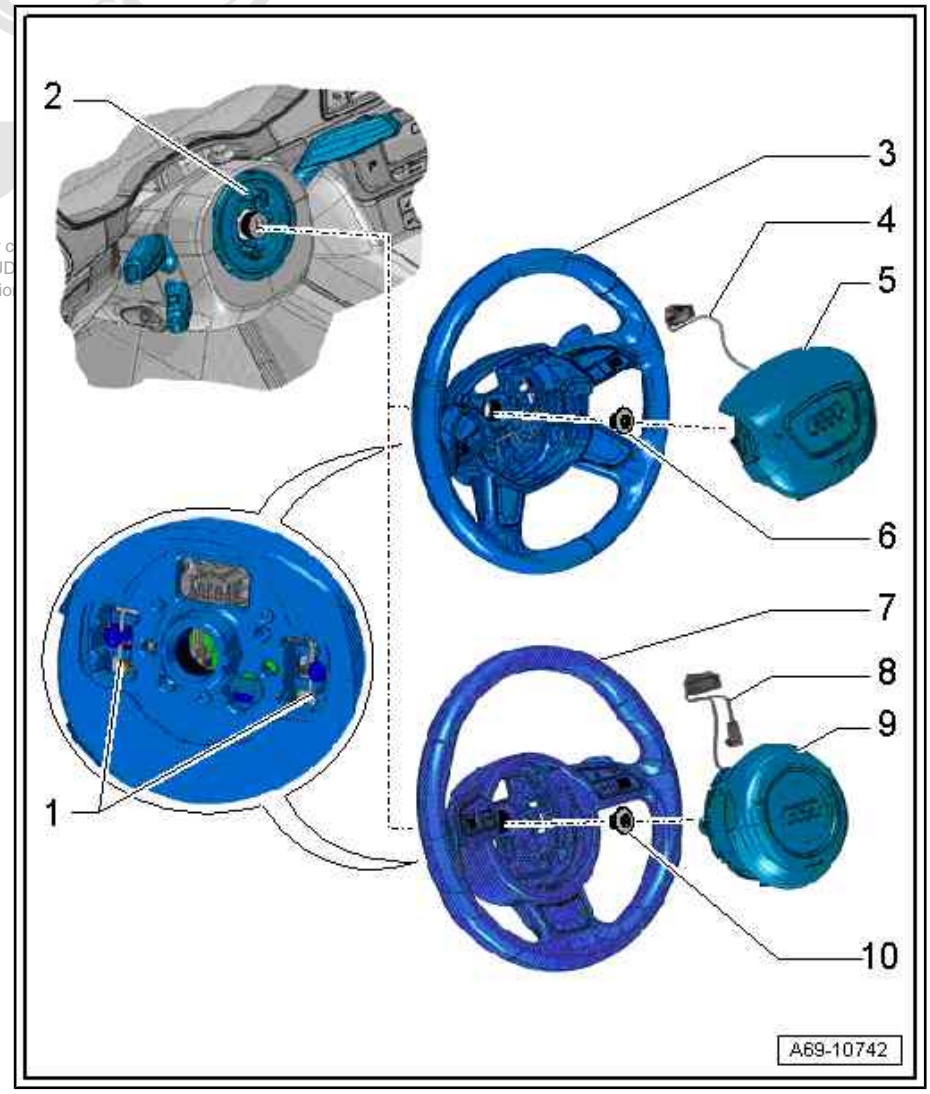
6 Airbag (driver side)

⇒ “6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)”, page 139

⇒ “6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters”, page 140

⇒ “6.3 Renewing connector at airbag”, page 143

6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)



1 - Retaining clip

- To release, use Torx screwdriver T25 (length approx. 100 mm)

2 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138- and steering angle sender - G85-
- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column electronics control unit - J527-

3 - 4-spoke steering wheel

- Equipment version
- Removing and installing ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel

4 - Wiring harness

- For airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag - N490-
- Renewing ⇒ page 143
- To secure in position, press into recesses in steering wheel

5 - Airbag (driver side)

- With airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag - N490-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 140

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

7 - 3-spoke steering wheel

- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel

8 - Wiring harness

- ❑ For airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag - N490-
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 143
- ❑ To secure in position, press into recesses in steering wheel

9 - Airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag - N490-

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 140

10 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torx screwdriver T25, approx. 100 mm (commercially available)

Removing

WARNING

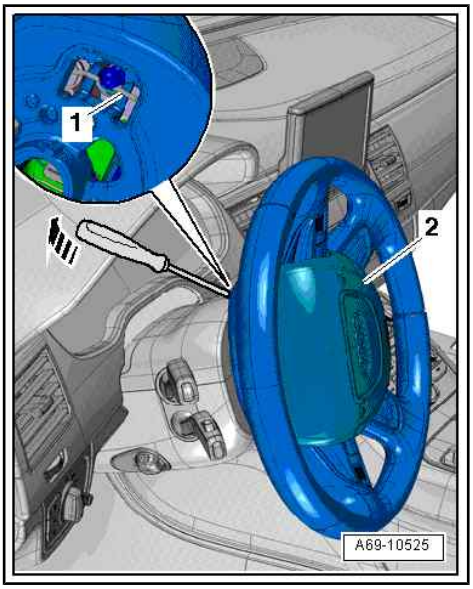
- ♦ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- ♦ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Turn steering wheel so that opening in back of steering wheel is pointing straight upwards (approx. 12 o'clock position).
– Using Torx screwdriver T25 (approx. 100 mm), release retaining clip -1- for airbag (driver side) -2- -arrow-.



Note

Using a flat screwdriver could damage the electrical wiring.

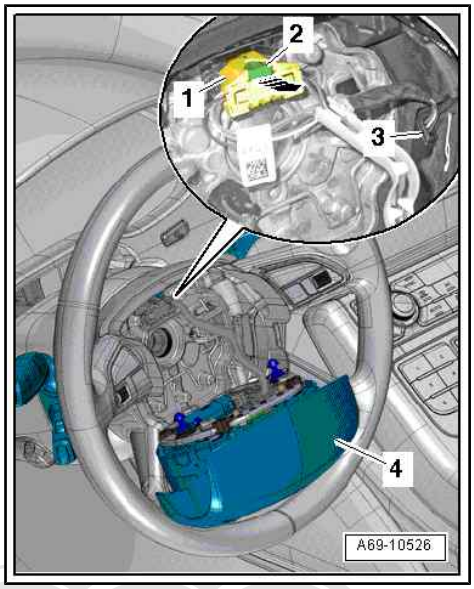
– Turn steering wheel by 180° and repeat procedure on opposite steering wheel side.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Pull airbag (driver side) -4- slightly away from steering wheel.
– Pull out connector locking element -2- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Equipment version with multi-function and tiptronic steering wheel: Unplug electrical connector -3-.
– Detach airbag.

WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Connect electrical plug for coil connector to airbag coupling at return ring with slip ring.
– To secure electrical connector in position, press it into recesses in steering wheel.
– Position airbag (driver side) in steering wheel and press on until it engages audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– As a final step, interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit as unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)", page 139

6.3 Renewing connector at airbag

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 *.*

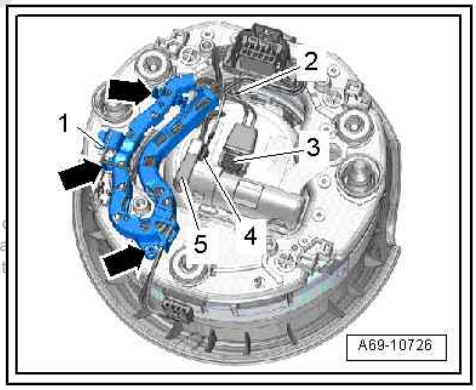
– Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ page 140 .

Equipment version with 3-spoke steering wheel:

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

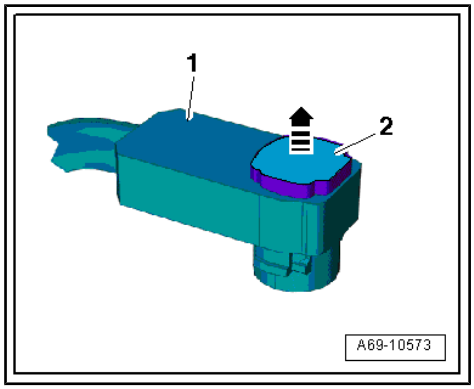


– Unclip wiring harness from retainers -arrows-.

– Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connectors -1, 2 and 4-.

– Unplug electrical connectors -3 and 5- for -N95- / -N490- and detach.

– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.



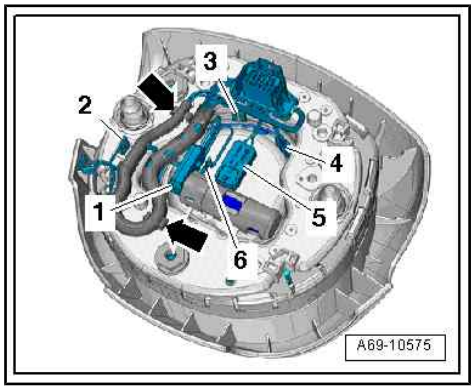
Equipment version with 4-spoke steering wheel:

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unclip wiring harness from retainers -arrows-.

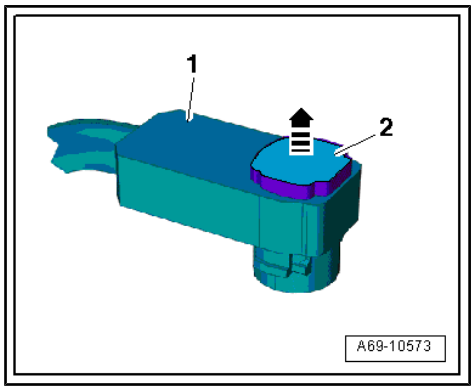
– Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connectors -2, 3, 4 and 6-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 5- for -N95- / -N490- .

– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.



Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 4*** ***.***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)”, page 139

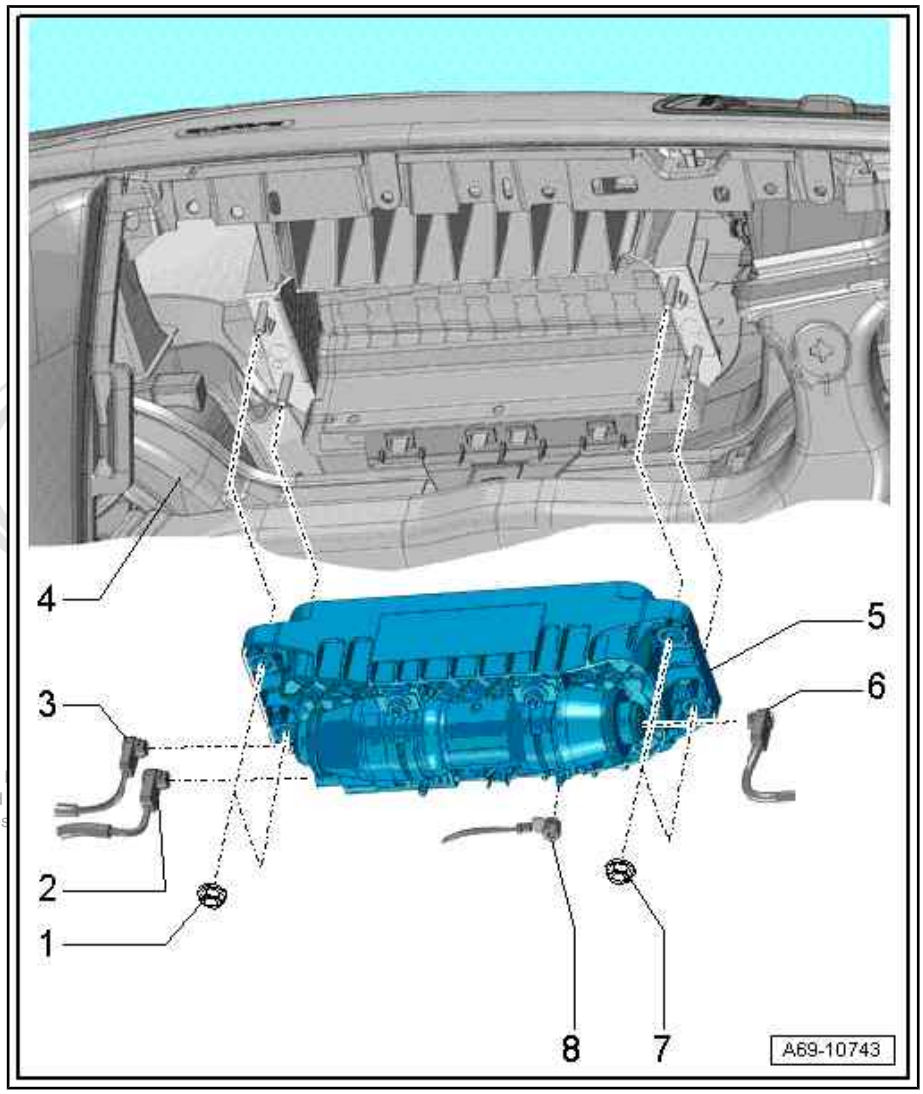
7 Airbag (front passenger side)

⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)”, page 145

⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters”, page 146

⇒ “7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag”, page 149

7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)



1 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 9 Nm

2 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491-

> **WARNING**
> *Renew electrical connector after airbag has been triggered ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors; Repairing electrical wiring harnesses and electrical connectors .*

3 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

4 - Dash panel

- ❑ Renew dash panel after an airbag has been triggered ⇒ page 244 .

5 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131- / igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491-
- ❑ Country-specific version: with airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-

Protected permitted

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 146

6 - Electrical connector

- For country-specific version with airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-

7 - Nut

- 2x
- Renew
- 9 Nm

8 - Earth wire

- 9 Nm

7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

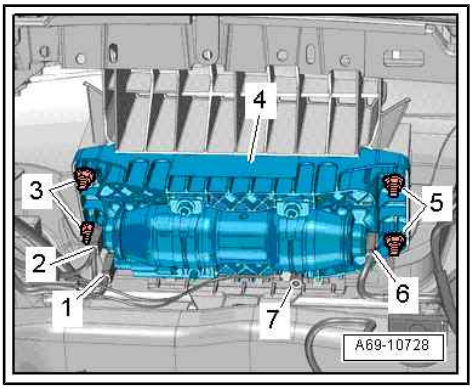
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*
- *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 28 .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Unscrew nut -7- and detach earth wire.

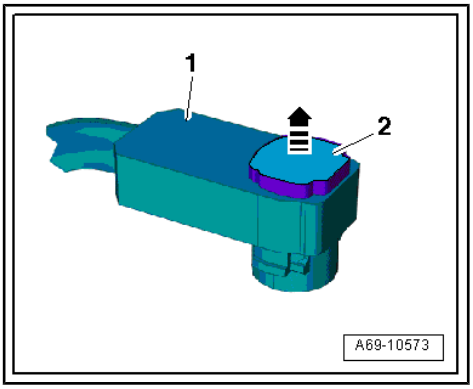
– Unplug electrical connectors:

1 - Igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491-

2 - Airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

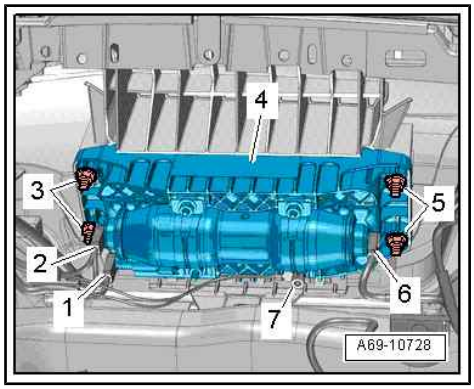
6 - Airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132- (country-specific version)

– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove nuts -3- and -5-.
– Take out airbag (front passenger side) -4- downwards.



WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *Renew electrical connector for igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491- after airbag has been triggered ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors; Repairing electrical wiring harnesses and electrical connectors .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)", page 145

7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

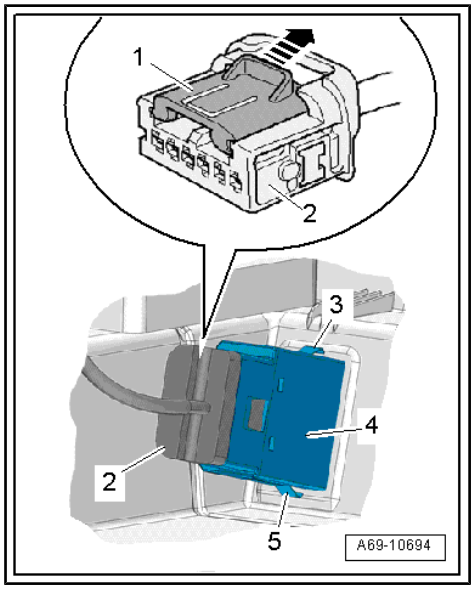
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 28 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector is disengaged.
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Release retaining springs -3- and -5- and press key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- -item 4- out of housing for key-operated switch.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Make sure that key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag - E224- engages audibly in housing.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)", page 145

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 Side airbags

⇒ “8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)”, page 152

⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)”, page 154

⇒ “8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter”, page 156

⇒ “8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter”, page 158

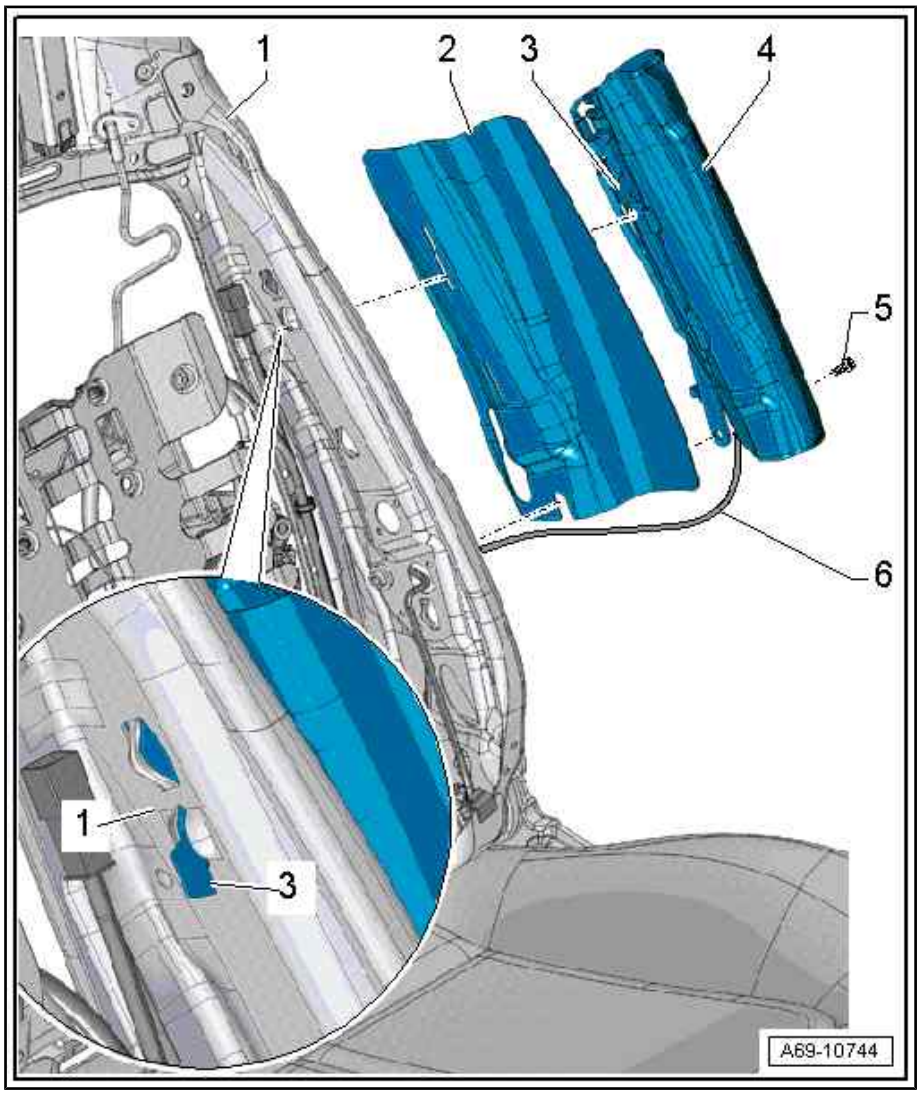
8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)

⇒ “8.1.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front), standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat”, page 152

⇒ “8.1.2 Exploded view - side airbag (front), multi-contour seat”, page 153

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8.1.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front), standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat



1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Padding protection

- ❑ For standard seat/ sports seat only

3 - Hook

- ❑ For securing side airbag to outer backrest frame

4 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 156

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 10 Nm

6 - Wiring harness

- ❑ Routed all the way through from side airbag igniter on driver side - N199- / side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200- to connector point

8.1.2 Exploded view - side airbag (front), multi-contour seat

1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Hook

- ❑ For securing side airbag to outer backrest frame

3 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

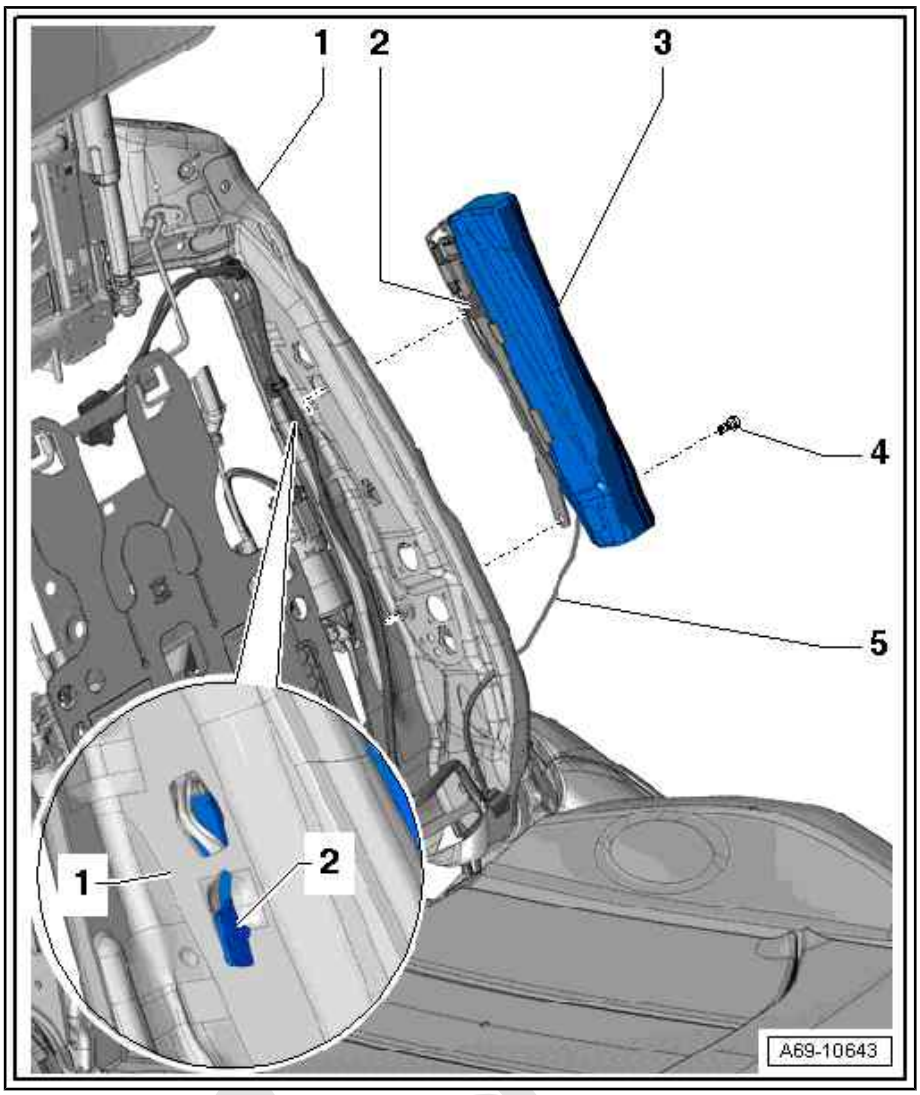
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 157

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 10 Nm

5 - Wiring harness

- ❑ Routed all the way through from side airbag igniter on driver side - N199- / side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200- to connector point



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)

⇒ “8.2.1 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)”, page 154

⇒ “8.2.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear), country-specific version”, page 155

8.2.1 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)

1 - Pop rivet nut

2 - Side airbag (rear)

- ❑ Driver side: with rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ❑ Passenger side: with rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 158

3 - Bolt

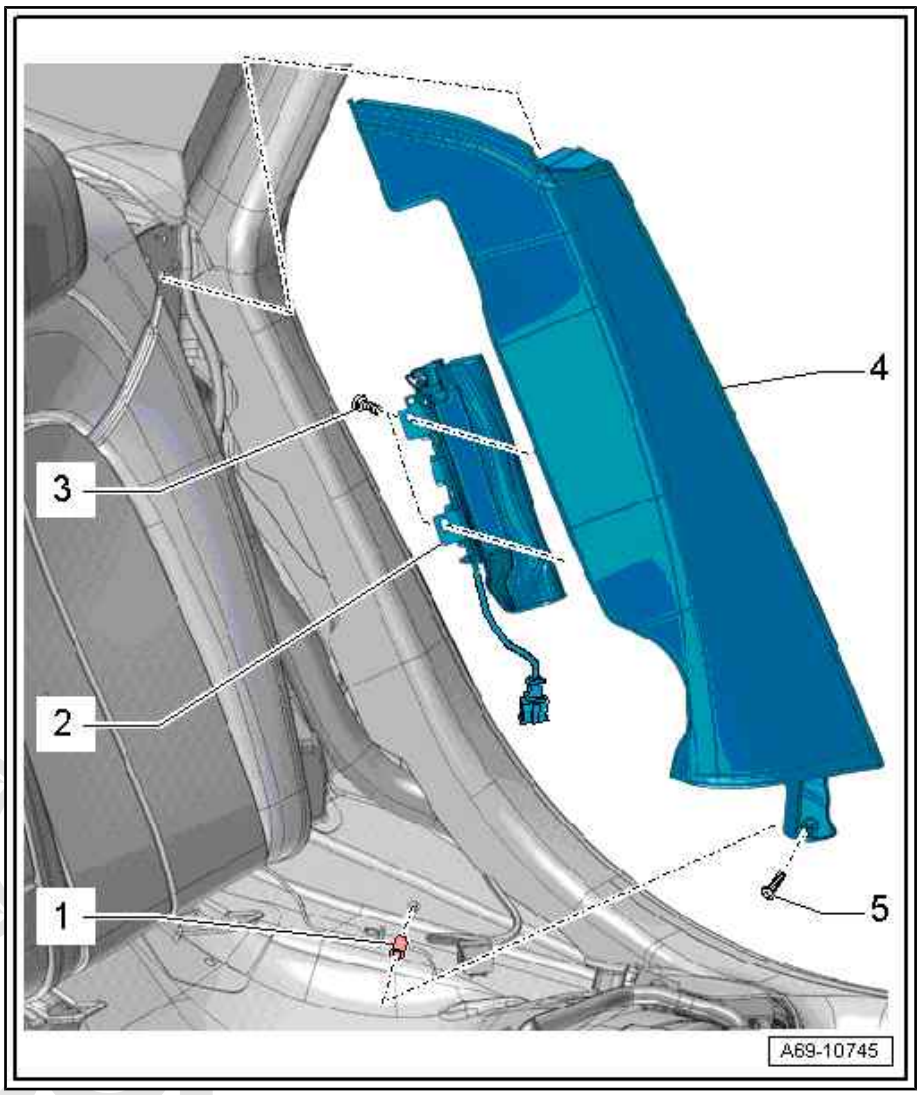
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 10 Nm

4 - Side padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 552

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8.2.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear), country-specific version

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 10 Nm

2 - Side airbag (rear)

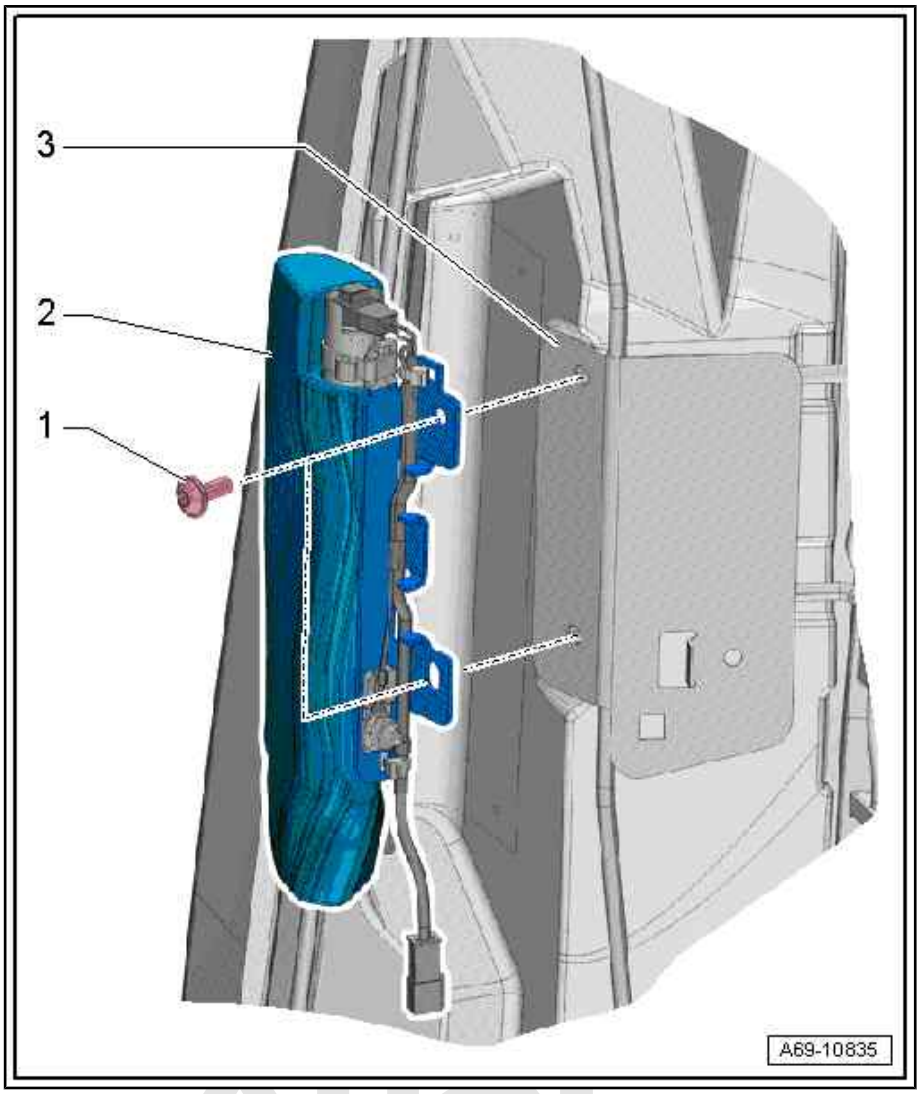
- ❑ Driver side: with rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ❑ Passenger side: with rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160

3 - Rear seat backrests

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 548



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter

⇒ “8.3.1 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter”, page 156

⇒ “8.3.2 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter - multi-contour seat”, page 157

8.3.1 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 444 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 440 .

Standard seat/sports seat:

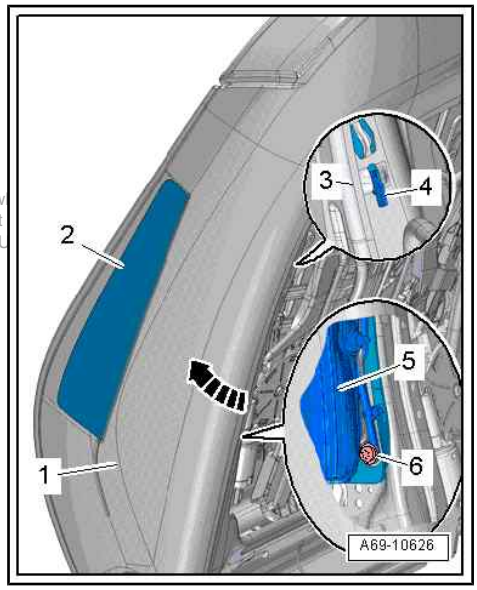
– Detach padding from backrest in area of side airbag ⇒ page 668 until bolt -6- for side airbag is accessible.

– In area of side airbag, carefully pull backrest cover with backrest padding -1- forwards as far as possible -arrow-.

– Remove bolt -6-.

– Disengage side airbag -5- with hook -4- from outer backrest frame -3-.

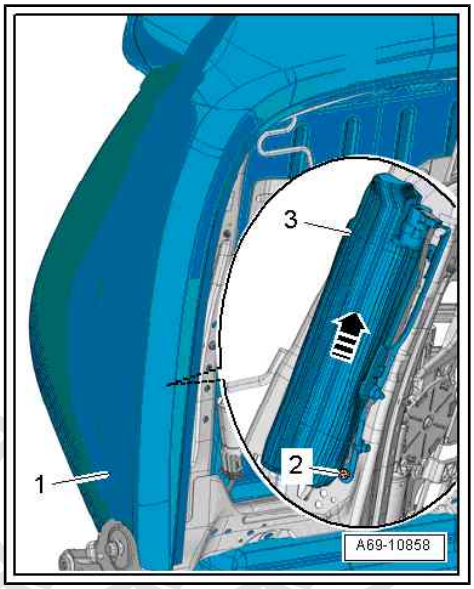
– Disengage side airbag with padding protection -2- from backrest padding and pull out towards rear while at the same time guiding out wiring harness of side airbag.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in w
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

Super sports seat:

- Detach padding from backrest in area of side airbag ⇒ page 670 until bolt -2- for side airbag is accessible.
- In area of side airbag, carefully pull backrest cover with backrest padding -1- forwards as far as possible.
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Disengage side airbag -3- with hook from outer backrest frame -arrow-.
- Disengage side airbag at padding protection and pull it out towards rear while at the same time guiding out wiring harness of side airbag.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "8.1.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front), standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat", page 152

8.3.2 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter - multi-contour seat

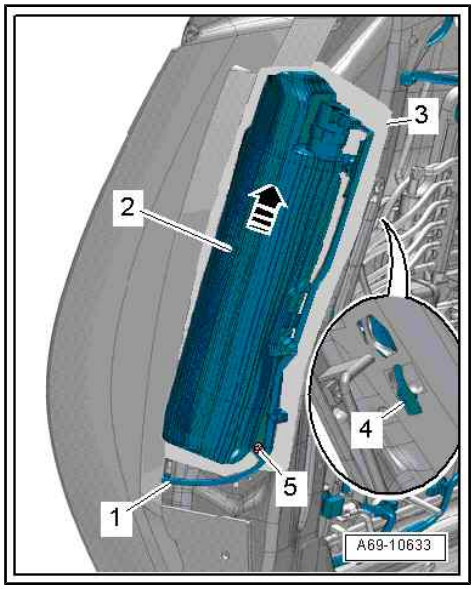
Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

- Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .
- Remove backrest ⇒ page 440 .
- Detach padding from backrest in area of side airbag until side airbag is accessible ⇒ page 668 .

– In area of side airbag, carefully pull backrest cover forwards as far as possible.
– Remove bolt -5-.
– Disengage side airbag -2- with hook -4- from outer backrest frame -arrow-.
– Disengage and detach side airbag from padding protection -3-, at the same time guiding out wiring harness -1- of side airbag.
– Backrest cover with stitched-in pouch: Remove side airbag downwards from pouch stitched into backrest cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "8.1.2 Exploded view - side airbag (front), multi-contour seat", page 153

8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter

⇒ "8.4.1 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter", page 158

⇒ "8.4.2 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter - country-specific version", page 160

8.4.1 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter

Removing

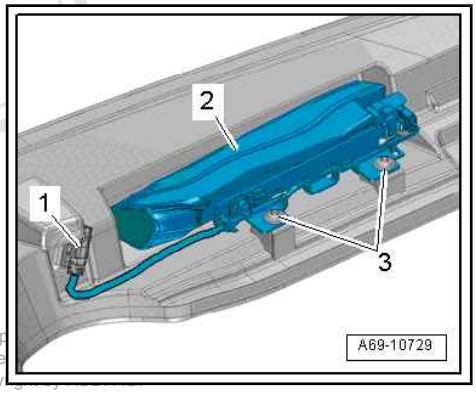
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 552 .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Move clear electrical connector -1- for side airbag (rear).
– Remove bolts -3-.
– Detach side airbag (rear) -2- from side padding.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Audi
Passing on to third parties and commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "8.2.1 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)", page 154

8.4.2 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter - country-specific version

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

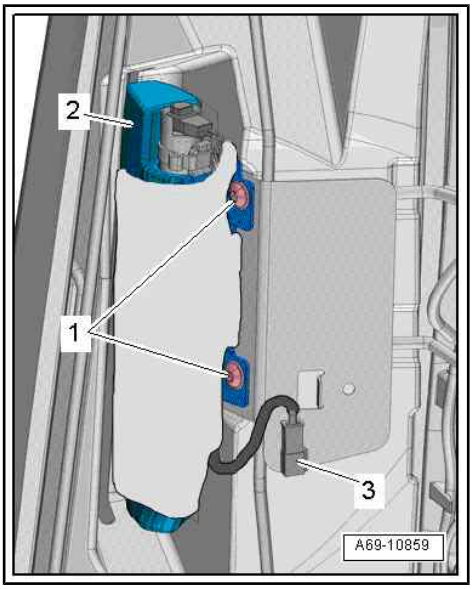
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Move clear electrical connector -3- for side airbag (rear).
– Remove bolts -1-.
– Remove side airbag (rear) -2- downwards from pouch stitched into backrest cover.



WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "8.2.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear), country-specific version", page 155

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 Curtain airbags

⇒ “9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag”, page 163

⇒ “9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter”, page 165

9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag

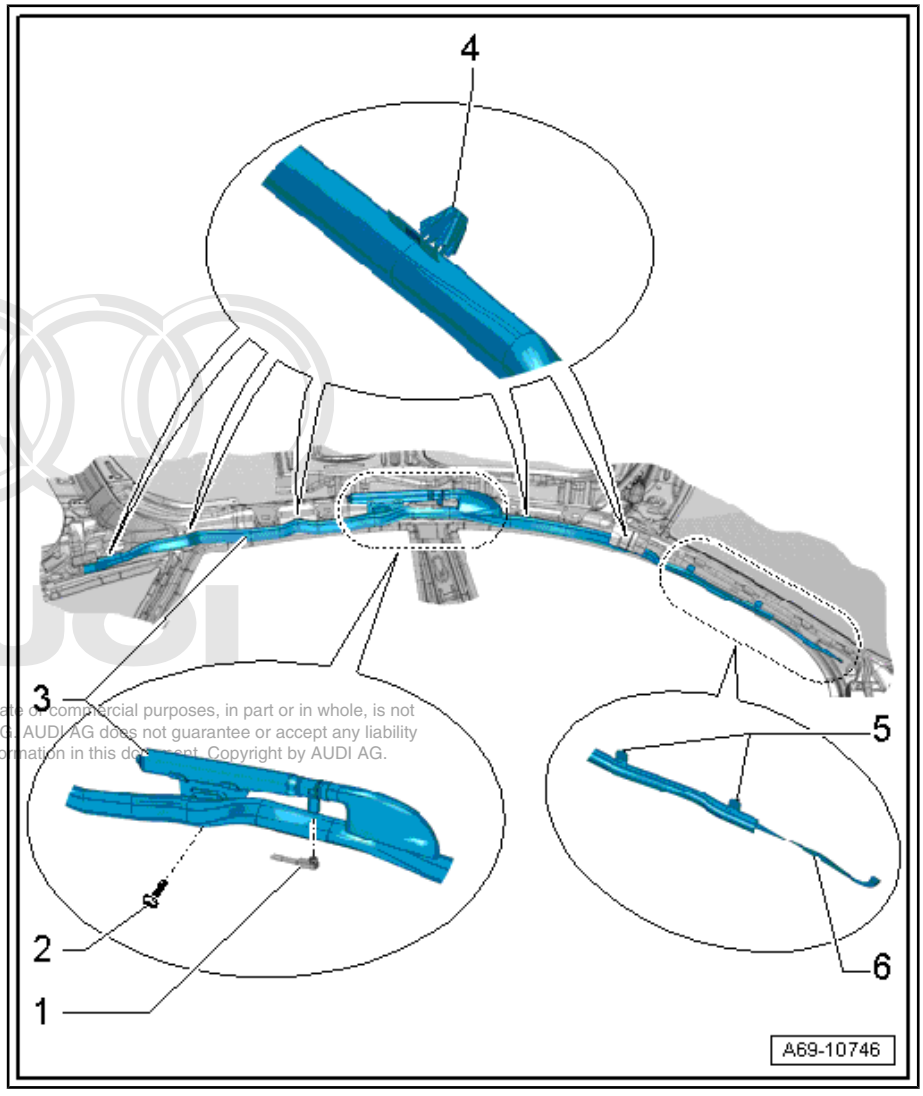
⇒ “9.1.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag”, page 163

⇒ “9.1.2 Exploded view - curtain airbag, country-specific version”, page 164

9.1.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag

Note

Illustration shows the curtain airbag on a saloon.



1 - Electrical connector

- Driver side: for driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- Passenger side: for front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 168

2 - Bolt

- Renew
- 5 Nm

3 - Curtain airbag

- Driver side: with driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- Passenger side: with front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ***⇒ page 4*** ***.***

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 165
- Black line designed to prevent twisting
- Line must be fully visible after installation

4 - Retaining clip

- 5x
- Renew

ted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not ted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Retaining clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Assembly aid

6 - Bag tether

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 167

9.1.2 Exploded view - curtain airbag, country-specific version

1 - Retaining clip

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Renew

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 5 Nm

3 - Curtain airbag

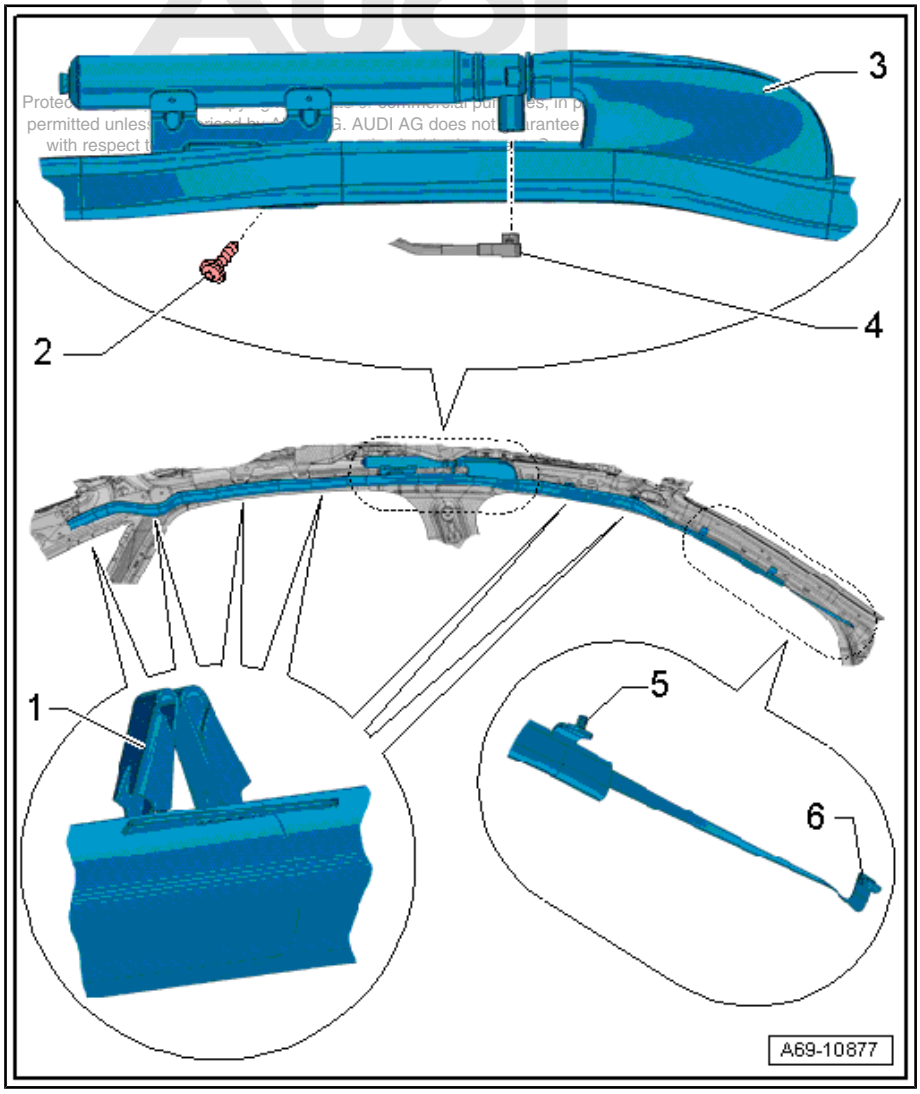
- ❑ Driver side: with driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 165
- ❑ Black line designed to prevent twisting
- ❑ Line must be fully visible after installation

4 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 168



5 - Retaining clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Assembly aid

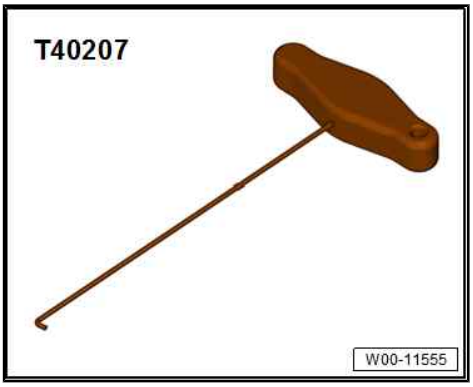
6 - Bag tether

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 167

9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hook - T40207-



Removing

– Tilt front seat backrests to a 45° angle.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove dash panel cover (top) ⇒ page 239 .

Saloon:

– Detach moulded headliner and lay it down on seats (do not remove windscreen) ⇒ page 350 .

Avant:

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 352 .

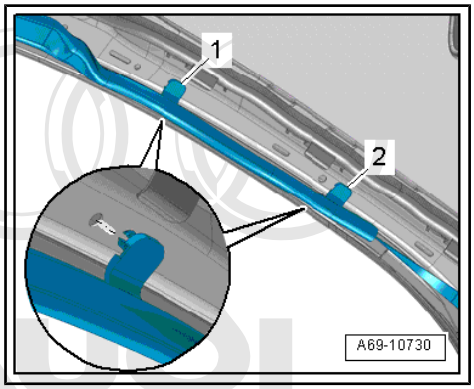
Continued for all vehicles:

Caution

- *The moulded headliner must be removed and set down on the seats for the following work steps. Proceed very carefully when doing so as the moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

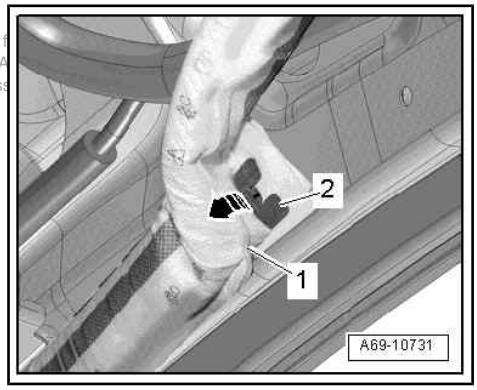
– Detach retaining clips -1- and -2- from A-pillar.



Protected by copyright. Copying f
permitted unless authorised by A
with respect to the correctness

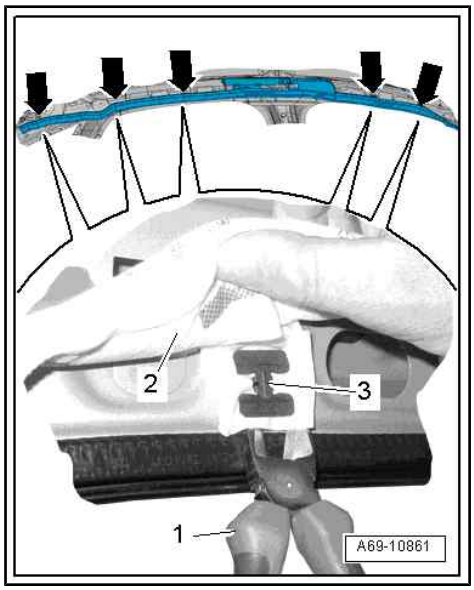
Caution

- *Detach the curtain airbag from the retaining clips as carefully as possible.*
- *Small tears in the fabric of the protective cover for the curtain airbag can be repaired with a repair patch.*
- *The curtain airbag must be renewed if there is a long tear in the fabric of the protective cover after removal.*



– Disengage curtain airbag -1- as carefully as possible from retaining clip -2- -arrow-.

– Use a pair of robust pliers (side-cutting pliers) -1- to remove retaining clips -arrows- for curtain airbag -2-.

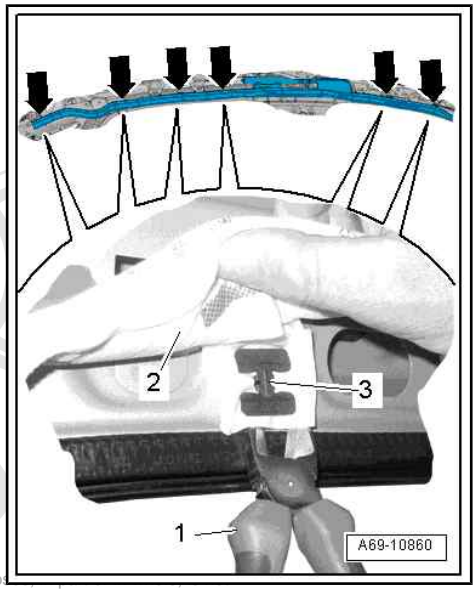


Note

- *Retaining clip -3- will be damaged during removal.*
- *Make sure not to damage the curtain airbag during removal.*

Country-specific version:

– Use a pair of robust pliers (side-cutting pliers) -1- to remove retaining clips -arrows- for curtain airbag -2-.



Note

- *Retaining clip -3- will be damaged during removal.*
- *Make sure not to damage the curtain airbag during removal.*

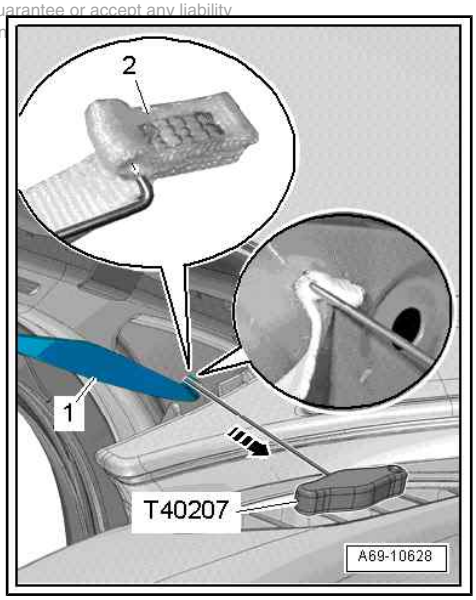
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

Continued for all vehicles:

– Remove bag tether -1- for curtain airbag from A-pillar.

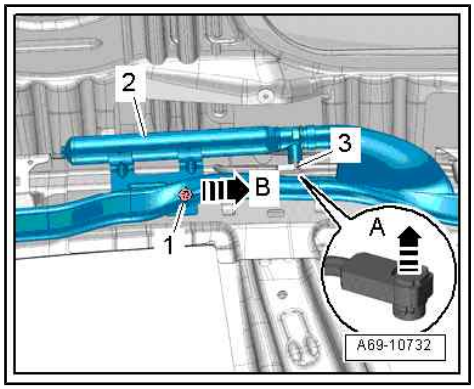
– To do so, carefully apply hook - T40207- and insert it in opening in body.

– Engage hook - T40207- in lug -2- at bag tether for curtain airbag and pull out carefully -arrow-.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Release connector locking element with a small screwdriver -arrow A- and unplug electrical connector -3-.
– Unscrew bolt -1- at gas generator.
– Slide curtain airbag -2- forwards -arrow B- and remove from mounting.

Installing

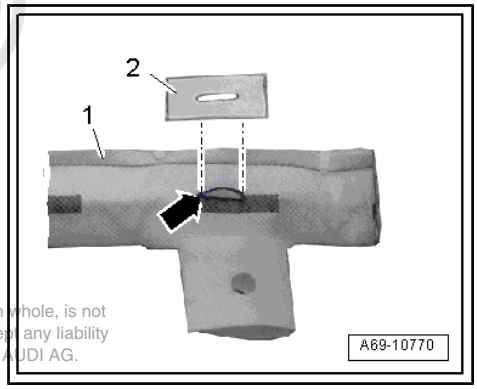
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Always observe correct sequence for installing curtain air-bag.*

WARNING

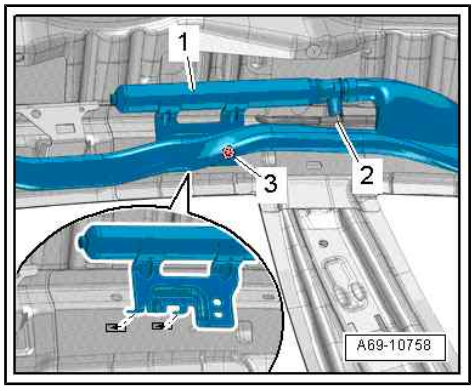
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– If there is a short tear in the protective cover in the area of the slot for the retaining clip, it can be repaired by bonding on a repair patch ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
– To do so, smoothen surface of curtain airbag -1- in area of slot -arrow- and press repair patch -2- on so that slots in protective cover and repair patch are in line.
– If there are tears in the protective cover which are longer than the area to be covered by the repair patch, the protective cover must be renewed.

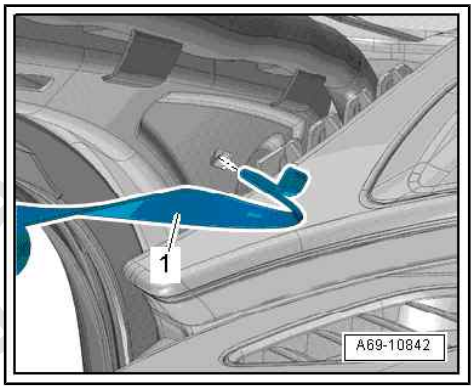


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Engage gas generator -1- at body -arrows-.
– Tighten bolt -3-.
– Attach connector -2- to curtain airbag igniter.
– Press in connector locking element. This inserts connector as far as possible in curtain airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.

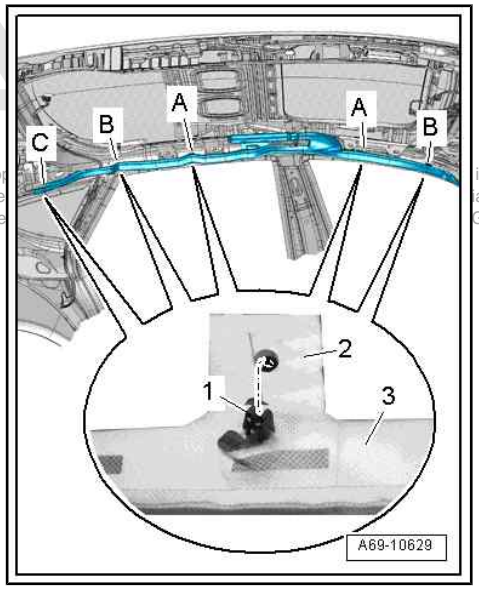


– Install bag tether -1- for curtain airbag at A-pillar.



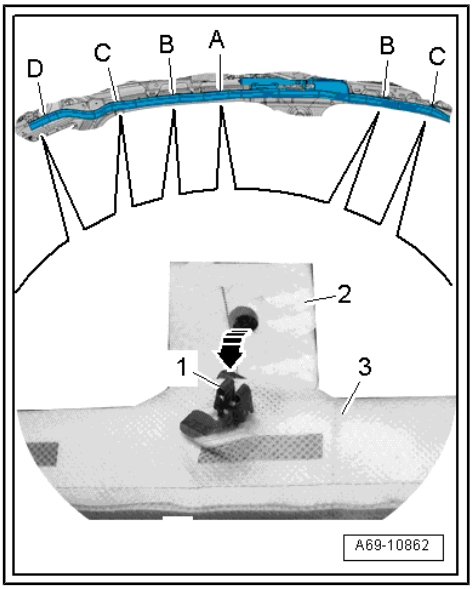
– Carefully insert retaining clip -1- in curtain airbag -3- and engage retaining tab -2- at retaining clip -arrow-.
– Clip retaining clips for curtain airbag into body in the sequence -A ... C- until they engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Co
permitted unless authorise
with respect to the corre
is not
ability
G.



Country-specific version:

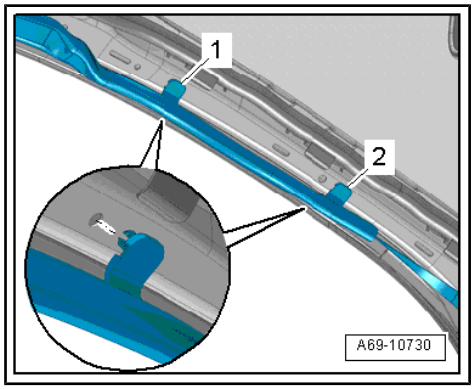
– Carefully insert retaining clip -1- in curtain airbag -3- and engage retaining tab -2- at retaining clip -arrow-.
– Clip retaining clips for curtain airbag into body in the sequence -A ... D- until they engage audibly.



Continued for all vehicles:

– Fasten retaining clips -1- and -2- at A-pillar.

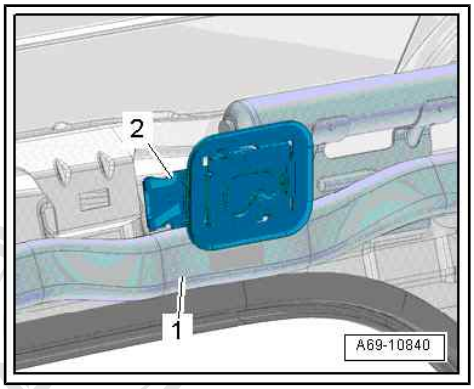
– Check that black line is visible over entire length to make sure that curtain airbag is not twisted.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Avant:

– After clipping in curtain airbag -1- push it beneath retainer -2- for load guard, as shown in illustration.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Audi
Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- ***Move selector lever to position P***
- ***Activate parking brake***
- ***Switch off ignition***
- ***Open bonnet***
- ***Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system***
- ***Switch on ignition***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag", page 163

10 Knee airbags

⇒ “10.1 Exploded view - knee airbag”, page 172

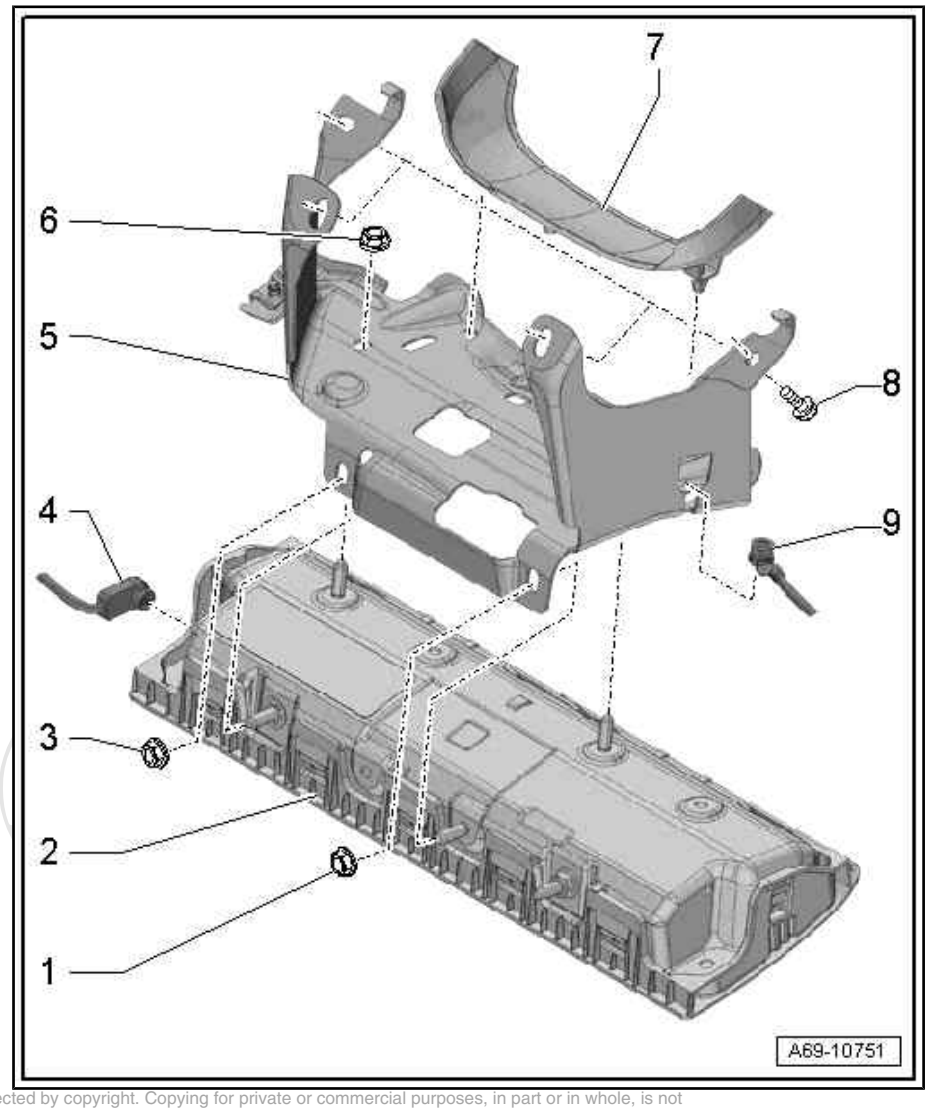
⇒ “10.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter”, page 174

10.1 Exploded view - knee airbag

⇒ “10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag (driver side)”, page 172

⇒ “10.1.2 Exploded view - knee airbag (front passenger side)”, page 173

10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag (driver side)



1 - Nut
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 8 Nm

2 - Knee airbag (driver side)
- ❑ With driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 174

3 - Nut
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Electrical connector
- ❑ For driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 175

5 - Bracket
- ❑ For knee airbag (driver side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “10.2.1 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (driver side)”, page 174

6 - Nut
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Trim cover
- ❑ Clip into bracket

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 9 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 176

9 - Nut

- ❑ With connection for earth wire
- ❑ 9 Nm

10.1.2 Exploded view - knee airbag (front passenger side)

1 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-
- ❑ Unplugging ⇒ page 33

2 - Knee airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ With front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 177

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Glove box

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 31

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Support

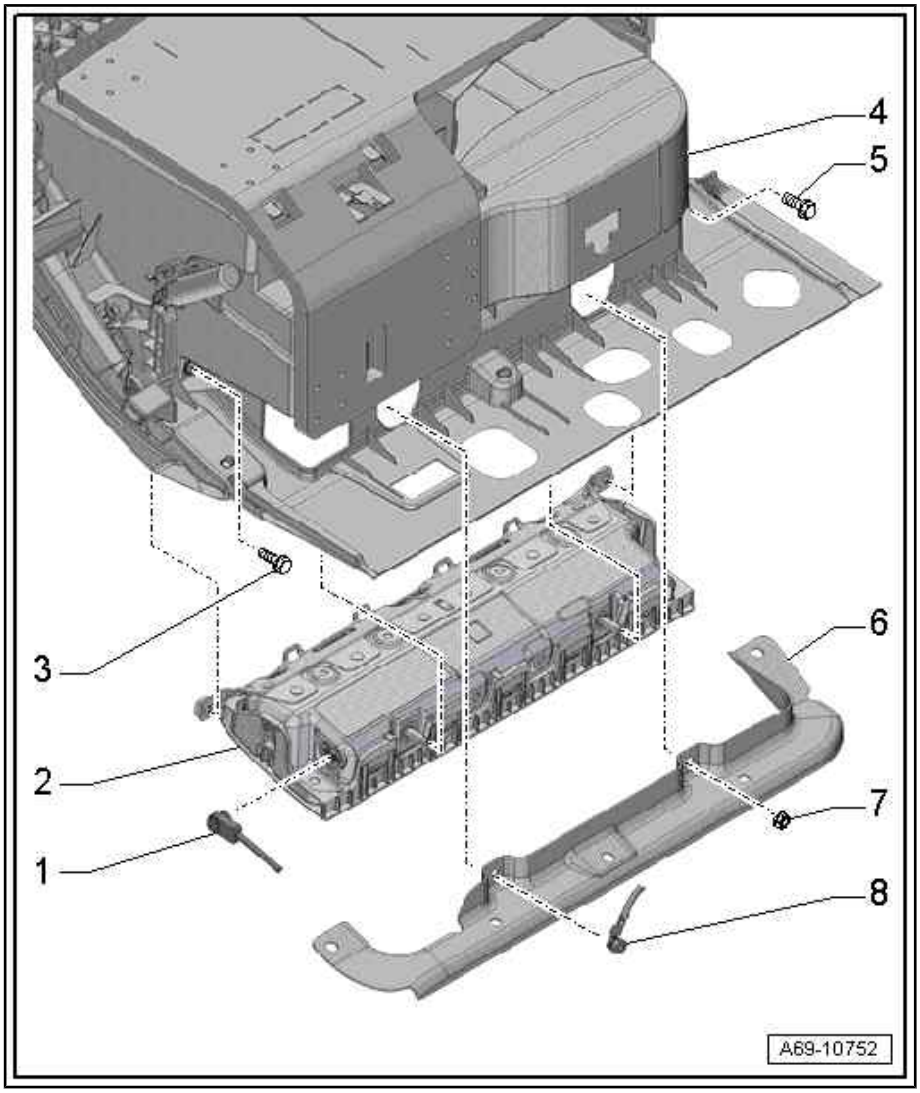
- ❑ For knee airbag

7 - Nut

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 8 Nm

8 - Nut

- ❑ With connection for earth wire
- ❑ 8 Nm



10.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter

⇒ "10.2.1 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (driver side)", page 174

⇒ "10.2.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (front passenger side)", page 177

10.2.1 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (driver side)

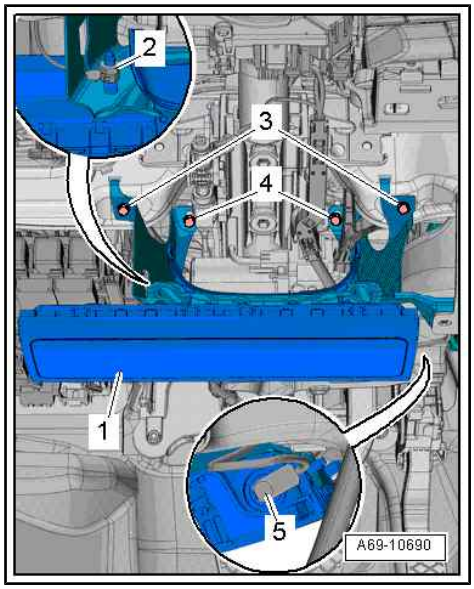
Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

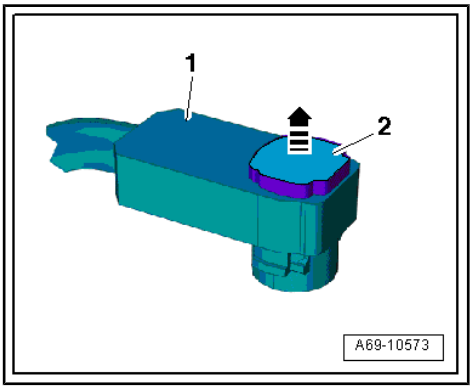
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 22 .
– Unscrew nut -2- with connection for earth wire.
– Remove bolts -3- and -4-.
– Disengage knee airbag (driver side) -1- with bracket and detach as far as necessary to unplug electrical connector -5-.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



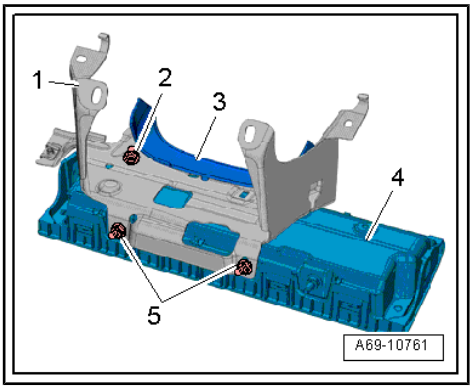
– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.

WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Removing bracket

– Unclip trim cover -3- from bracket for knee airbag.
– Remove nuts -2- and -5-.
– Detach bracket -1- from knee airbag -4-.



Installing

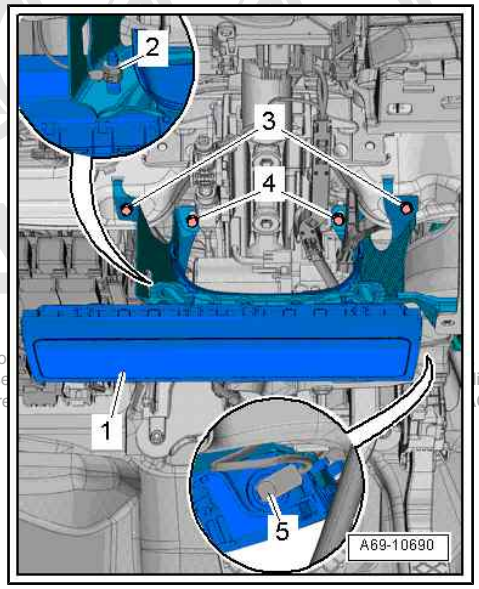
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tighten bolts in the sequence -3- and -4-.



Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Once an airbag has been triggered the airbag securing components must be renewed.

Protected by copyright. Co is not permitted unless authorise liability with respect to the corre G.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- ***Move selector lever to position P***
- ***Activate parking brake***
- ***Switch off ignition***
- ***Open bonnet***
- ***Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system***
- ***Switch on ignition***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag (driver side)", page 172

10.2.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (front passenger side)

Removing

WARNING

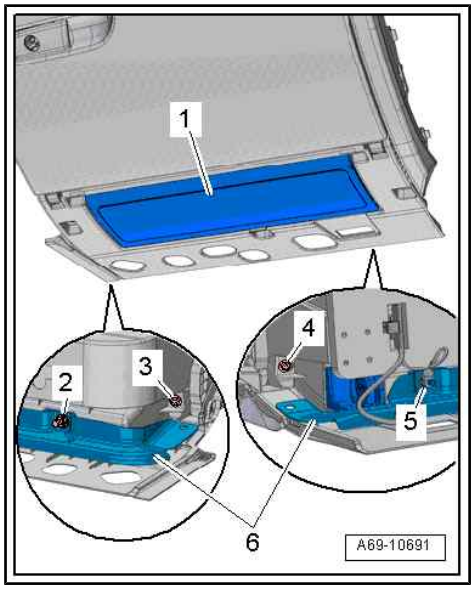
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 31 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove nut -2- and bolt -3-.
– Unscrew nut -5- with connection for earth wire and detach support -6- for knee airbag.
– Remove bolt -4-.
– Detach knee airbag (front passenger side) -1-.



WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Once an airbag has been triggered the airbag securing components must be renewed.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "10.1.2 Exploded view - knee airbag (front passenger side)", page 173

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 Crash sensors for airbags

⇒ “11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags”, page 180

⇒ “11.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor G283 / G284 ”, page 181

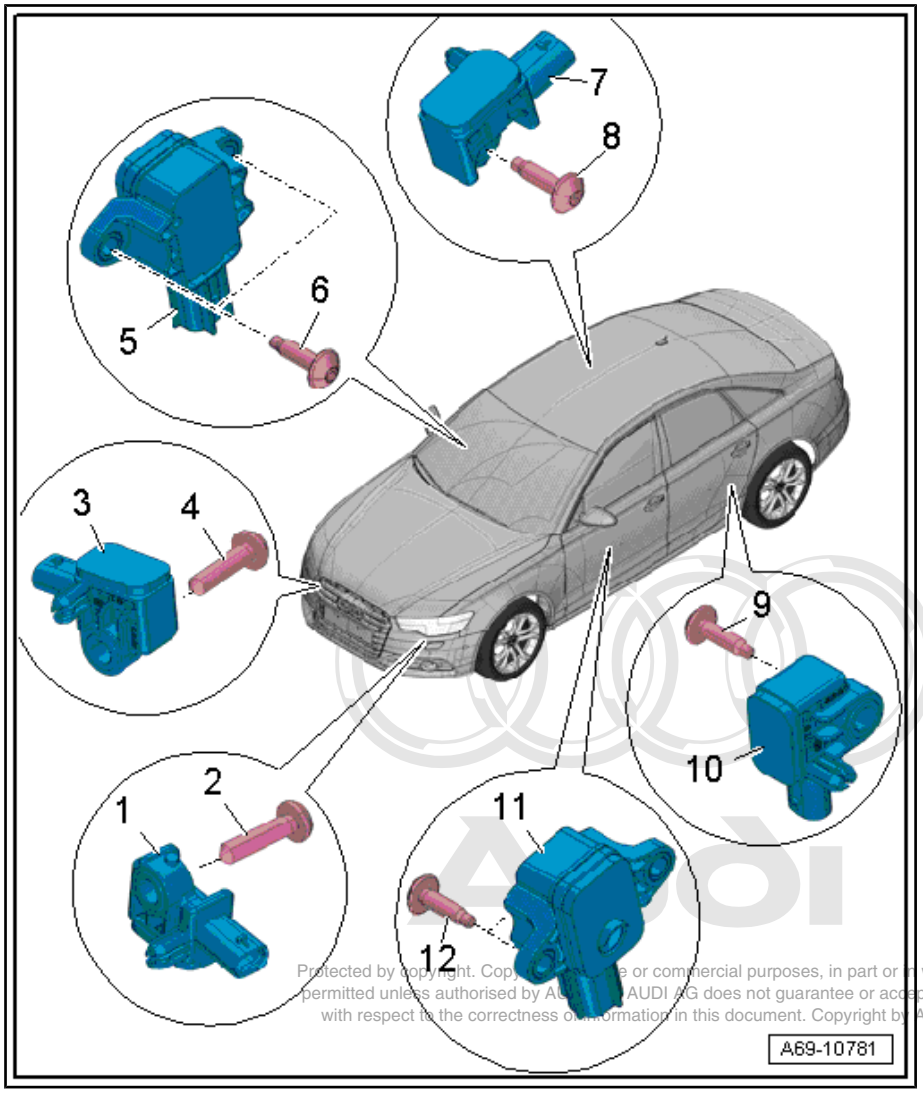
⇒ “11.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 ”, page 183

⇒ “11.4 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (rear) G256 / G257 ”, page 185

11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags

Note

Illustration shows crash sensors on a saloon.



1 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

- ❑ Fitting location: on retainer for headlight housing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 181

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side - G284-

- ❑ Fitting location: on retainer for headlight housing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 181

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

5 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G180-

- ❑ Fitting location: in door
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 183
- ❑ Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 7

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

7 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G257-

- ❑ Fitting location: on inside of wheel housing behind sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 185

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

10 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256-

- ❑ Fitting location: on inside of wheel housing behind sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 185

11 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G179-

- ❑ Fitting location: in door
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 183
- ❑ Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 7

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

11.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor -G283- / -G284-

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

Risk of injury due to automatic engine start on vehicles with start/stop system.

- *On vehicles with activated start/stop system (indicated by a message in the instrument cluster), the engine may start automatically on demand.*
- *Therefore it is important to ensure that the start/stop system is deactivated when performing repairs (switch the ignition off, and if required switch the ignition on again).*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

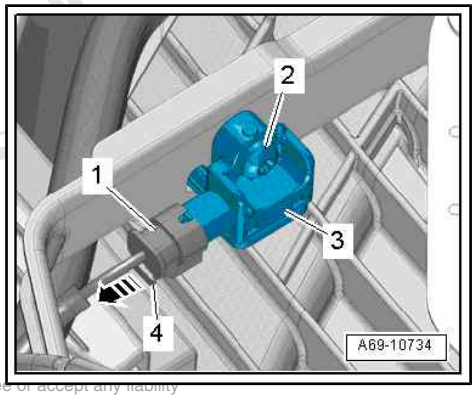
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove wheel housing liner (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Wheel housing liners; Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front) .

– Remove wheel spoiler (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Wheel housing liners; Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front) .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Remove bolt -2- and detach crash sensor -3- for front airbag.
– Pull out connector locking element -4- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

Copyright by AUDI AG.
This electronic information is intended for private use only and for educational purposes, in any way commercial exploitation is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 180

11.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor -G179- / -G180-

Removing

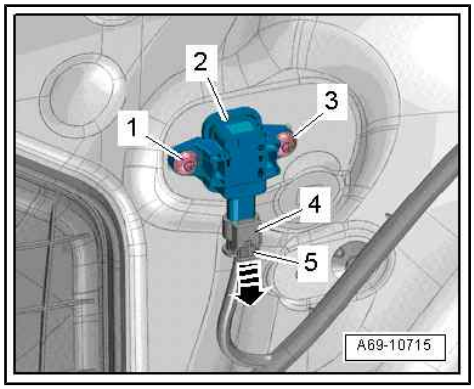
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 7 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability whatsoever for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 210 .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Pull out connector locking element -5- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -4- at crash sensor.

– Remove bolts -1- and -3- and detach crash sensor for side airbag -2-.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 7 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.*
- *Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.*
- *The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 180

11.4 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (rear) -G256- / -G257-

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 552 .

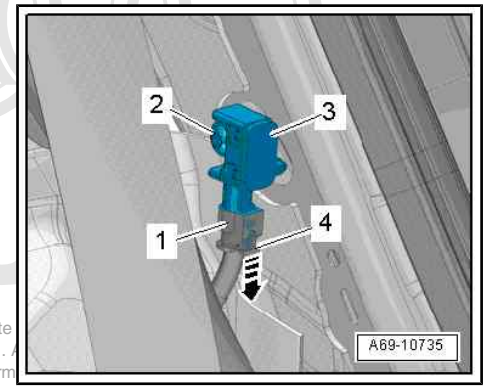
– Equipment version with fixed rear seat backrest: Remove fixed rear seat backrest ⇒ page 544 .

– Equipment version with multi-contour seat: Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256- :

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

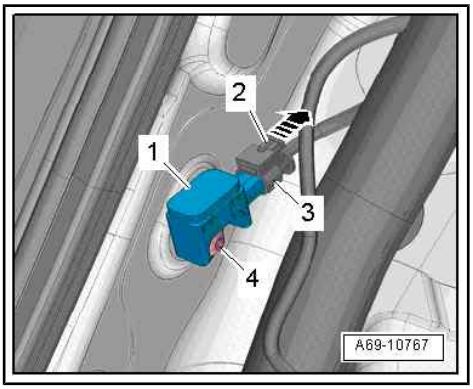


– Pull out connector locking element -4- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

– Unscrew bolt -2- and detach crash sensor -3- for side airbag (rear).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
with respect to the correctness of inform

Rear side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G257- :



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Pull out connector locking element -2- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -3- at crash sensor.

– Unscrew bolt -4- and detach crash sensor -1- for side airbag (rear).

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 180

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 Seat position sensor

⇒ “12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor”, page 189

⇒ “12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor”, page 189

12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor

Note

The seat position sensor is the same on all seat versions.

1 - Lower seat pan frame

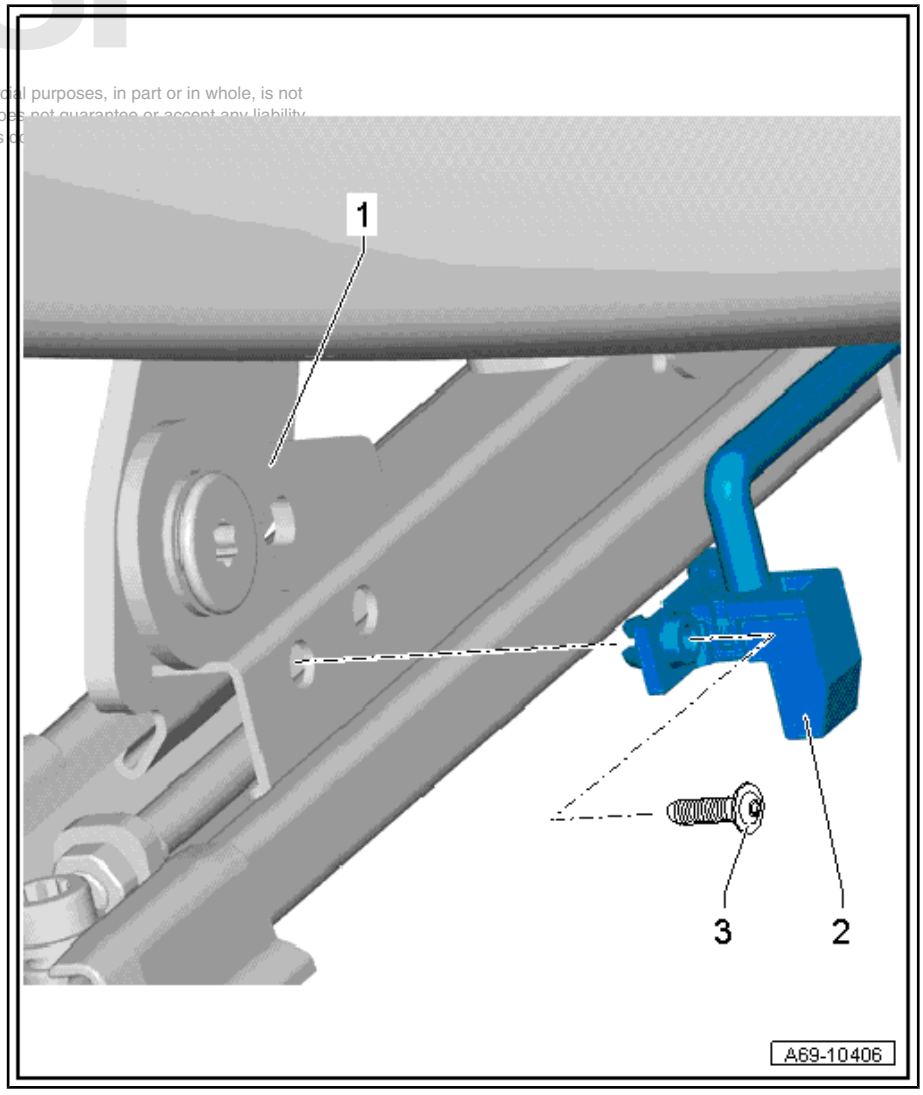
2 - Driver side seat position sensor - G553-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-
- ❑ Removing and installing - equipment version with seat occupied sensor for belt-fastened recognition ⇒ page 189

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.2 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor

Replacement seat position sensors are available with wiring harness and 10-pin connector (black). The following wires with connectors are incorporated into the wiring harness:

- ♦ Wire with connector for belt buckle coupling (driver seat)

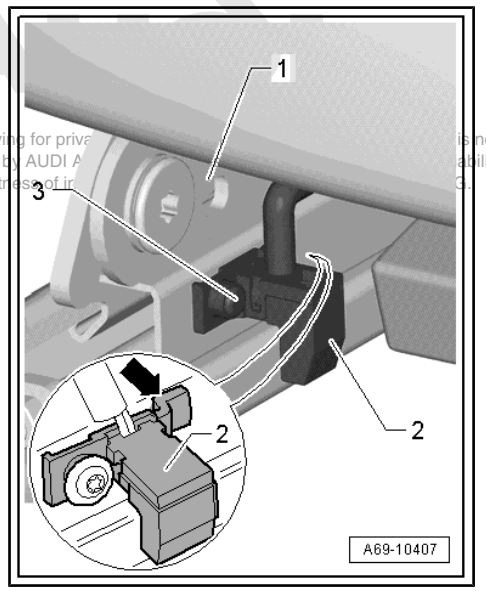
- Wire with connector for belt buckle coupling (front passenger seat)
- Wire with connector for coupling for seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-
- Country-specific version: Wire with connector for coupling for seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- with pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- .

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Remove bolt -3-.
– Disengage hook -arrow- of seat position sensor -2- from lower seat pan frame -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for priva... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI A... ability for correctness of in... G...

Driver seat:

– Open up corrugated tube -3- and take out wiring with 10-pin connector for belt buckle:

♦ Connector point connectors ⇒ page 426

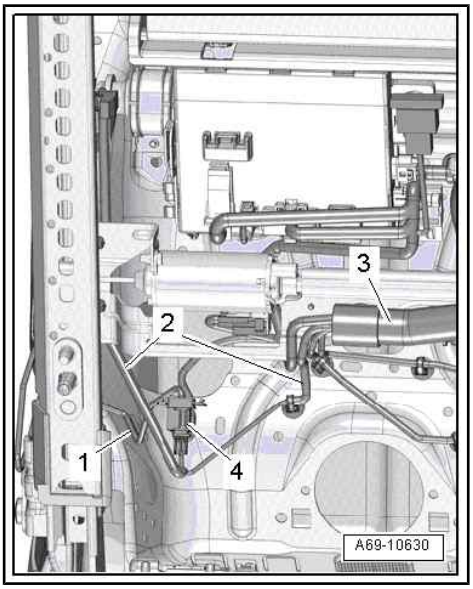
♦ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat ⇒ page 459

– Unfasten cable ties/cable clips for wiring -2- as far as electrical connector.

– Unplug electrical connector -4-.

1 - Wiring to belt buckle

2 - Wiring to 10-pin connector (black) and driver side seat position sensor - G553-



Note

Leave electrical connector -1- with wire and cable clip on upper seat pan frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Detach seat position sensor with wires from lower seat pan frame.

Front passenger seat:

– Open up corrugated tube -1- and take out wiring with 10-pin connector for belt buckle:

◆ Connector point connectors ⇒ page 426

◆ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat ⇒ page 459

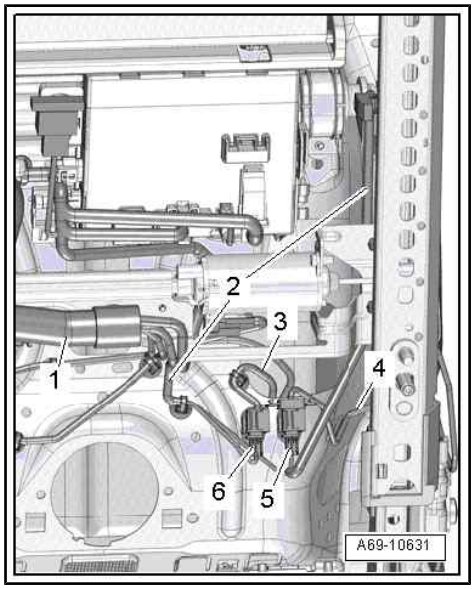
– Unfasten cable ties/cable clips for wiring -2- as far as electrical connectors.

– Unplug electrical connectors -5- and -6-.

2 - Wiring to 10-pin connector (black) and front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-

3 - Wiring to seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

4 - Wiring to belt buckle



Note

Leave connectors with wires -3- and -4- and wiring clips on upper seat pan frame.

– Detach seat position sensor with wires from lower seat pan frame.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor", page 189

13 Belt-fastened recognition system

⇒ "13.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) G128 ", page 193

13.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

Note

The seat occupied sensor is only fitted on the front passenger seat.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hot air blower - VAS 1978/14A- (only for front seat with seat heating element)

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove front passenger seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Remove padding from rear section of seat cover until seat occupied sensor is exposed (seat pan) ⇒ page 677 .

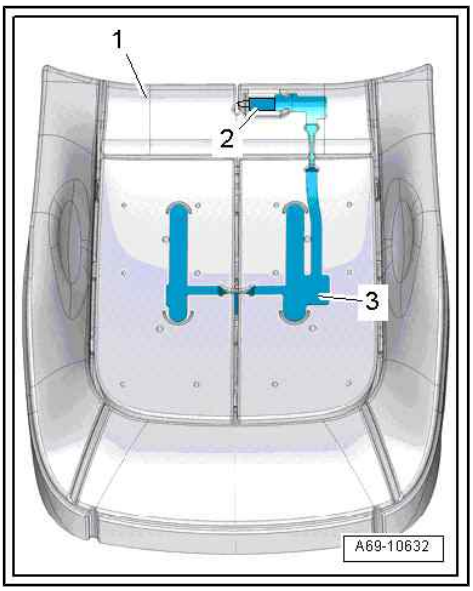
– Unplug electrical connector for seat occupied sensor.

Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment):

– If fitted, carefully heat seat heating element with hot air blower - VAS 1978/14A- .

– Pull off seat heating element just far enough so that seat occupied sensor is exposed.

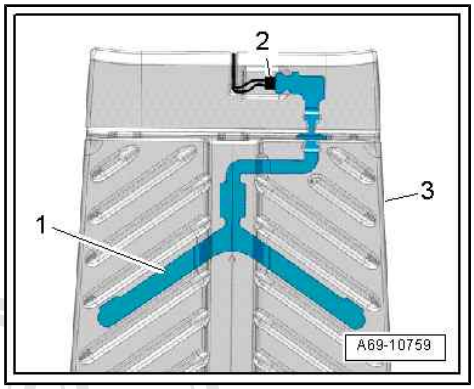
– Carefully detach seat occupied sensor -3- with printed circuit board -2- from seat padding -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Multi-contour seat:

– Carefully detach seat occupied sensor -1- with printed circuit board -2- from seat padding -3-.



Installing

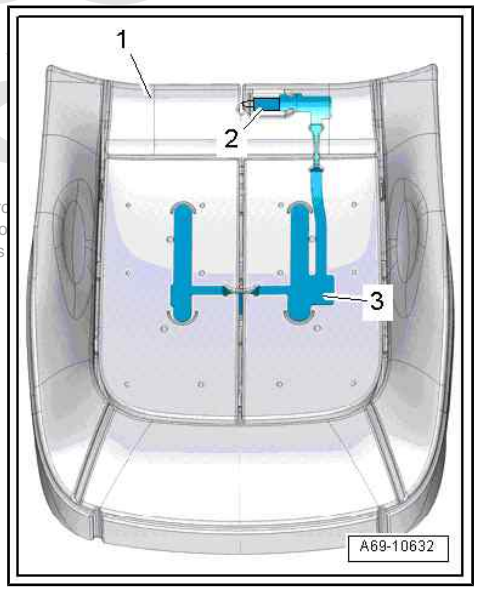
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment):

– Position printed circuit board -2- of seat occupied sensor -3- in cut-out in seat padding -1-.

– Align seat occupied sensor according to marks on seat padding.



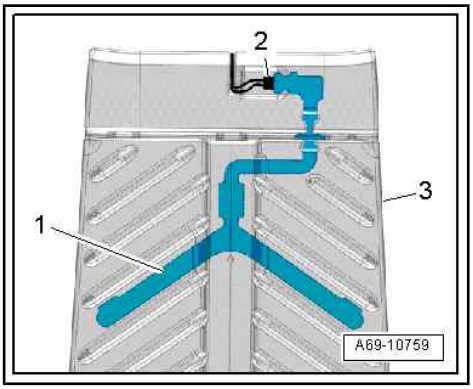
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do
with respect to the correctness of information in this

Caution

Install new seat occupied sensor in seat padding in same position as old seat occupied sensor.

– Peel off protective film and bond seat occupied sensor onto seat padding.

Multi-contour seat:



– Position printed circuit board -2- of seat occupied sensor -1- in cut-out in seat padding -3-.

– Align seat occupied sensor according to marks on seat padding.

Caution

Install new seat occupied sensor in seat padding in same position as old seat occupied sensor.

– Peel off protective film and bond seat occupied sensor onto seat padding.

All seat versions (continued):

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure seat occupied sensor is not covered by coils of the seat heating element.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 Seat occupied recognition system

⇒ “14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system”, page 197

⇒ “14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor”, page 200

14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system

⇒ “14.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system”, page 197

⇒ “14.1.2 Exploded view - seat occupied recognition system”, page 199

14.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system

WARNING

The replacement part (service kit) for the seat occupied recognition system (country-specific version) is already pre-assembled. Do NOT unplug the electrical connector between the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- and the pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- . The service kit varies depending on the seat version and consists of:

Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat:

Multi-contour seat:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensors ⇒ page 7 .

Note

The seat occupied sensor is only fitted in the front passenger's seat.

1 - Electrical connector

- Between pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- and seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

> **Caution**
> *Do NOT unplug the electrical connector between the pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- and the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .*

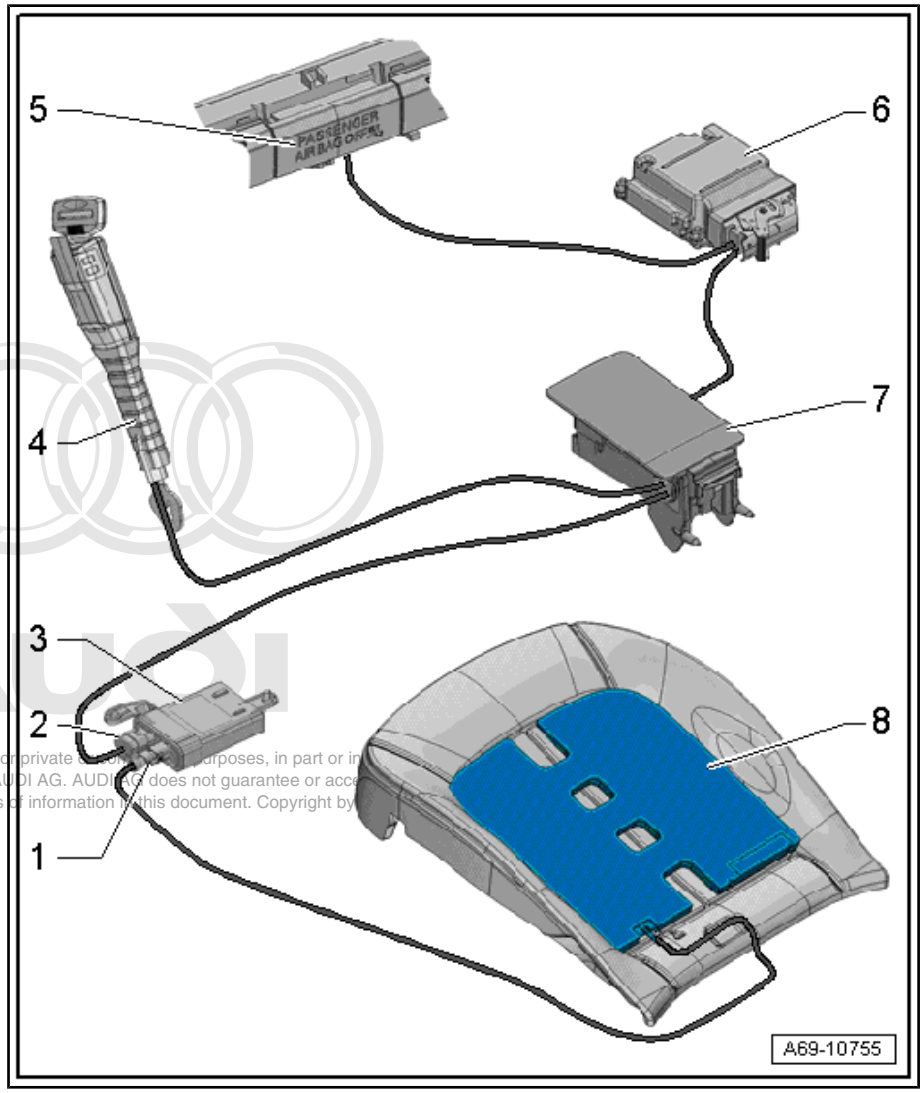
2 - Electrical connector

- Between connector point beneath seat and seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

3 - Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

- Different versions; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

> **Caution**
> *Do NOT unplug the electrical connector between the pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- and the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 200

4 - Front passenger side belt switch - E25- and seat belt force sensor for seat occupied recognition - G453-

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 119

5 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-

- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

6 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 130

7 - Connector point

- Underneath seat
- Pin assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- Unplugging and plugging in connectors ⇒ page 423

8 - Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452-

- Different versions:

♦ Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat: seat occupied sensor bonded onto seat padding

♦ Multi-contour seat: seat occupied sensor with seat heating element stitched into seat cover

Caution

Do NOT unplug the electrical connector between the pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- and the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .

Do NOT detach the seat occupied sensor from the seat padding or seat cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 200

14.1.2 Exploded view - seat occupied recognition system

1 - Bolt

❑ 1.5 Nm

2 - Electrical connector

❑ Between connector point beneath seat and seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

3 - Bracket

❑ For control unit

❑ Engaged in seat pan and clipped on

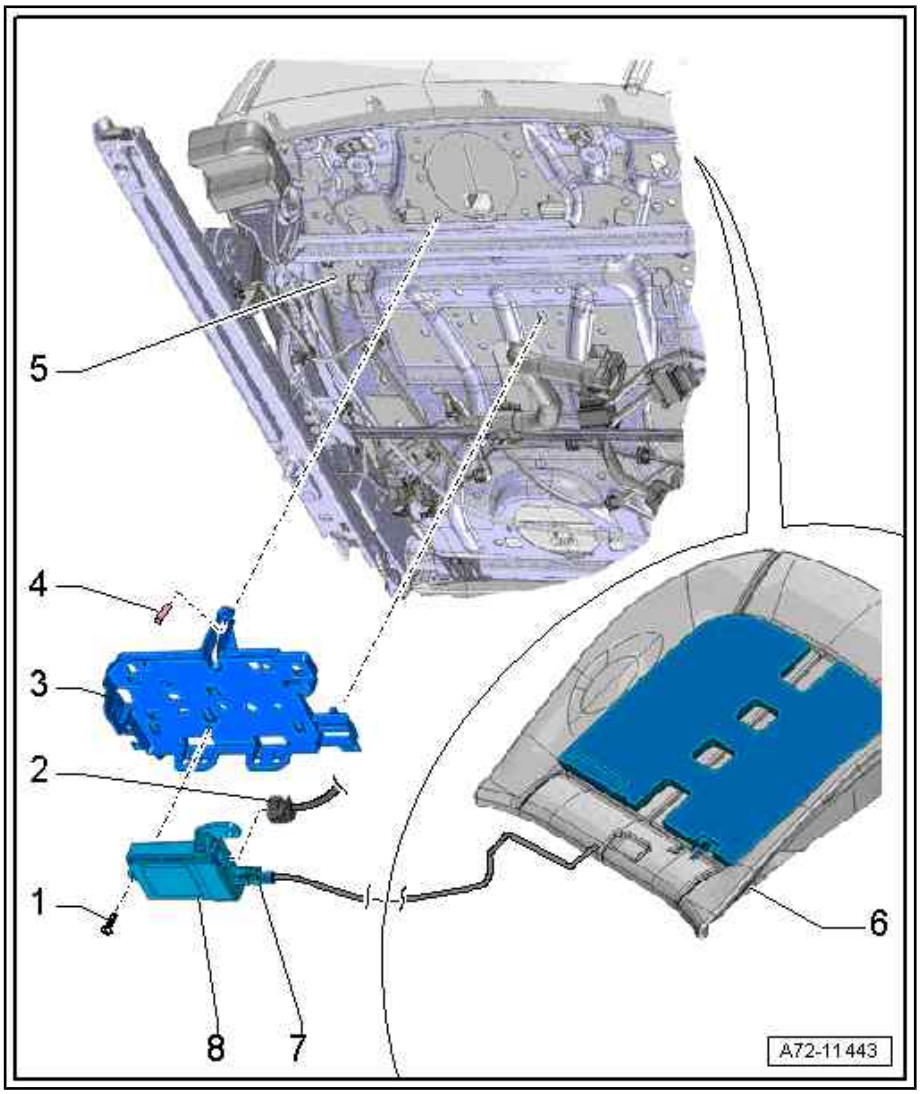
❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 497

4 - Pin

❑ For securing retainer to seat pan

5 - Front seat

6 - Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452-



Caution

Do NOT unplug the electrical connector between the pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- and the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .

Do NOT detach the seat occupied sensor from the seat padding or seat cover.

❑ Different versions:

- ♦ Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat: seat occupied sensor bonded onto seat padding
- ♦ Multi-contour seat: seat occupied sensor with seat heating element stitched into seat cover

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 200

7 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Between pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- and seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

Caution

Do NOT unplug the electrical connector between the pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- and the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .

8 - Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

- ❑ Clipped to bracket

Caution

Do NOT unplug the electrical connector between the pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- and the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 200

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor

Note

The seat occupied sensor is only fitted in the front passenger's seat.

WARNING

The replacement part (service kit) for the seat occupied recognition system (country-specific version) is already pre-assembled. Do NOT unplug the electrical connector between the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- and the pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- . The service kit varies depending on the seat version and consists of:

Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat:

- *Seat padding with or without seat heating element*
- *Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- (bonded onto seat padding)*
- *Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-*

Multi-contour seat:

- *Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- with seat heating element (stitched into seat cover)*
- *Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-*

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 and seat occupied sensors ⇒ page 7 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

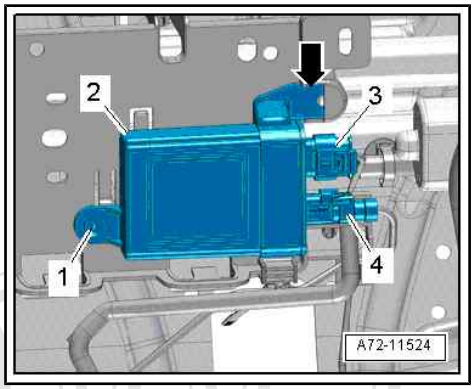
– Remove front passenger seat ⇒ page 415 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

Caution

Do NOT unplug electrical connector -4- at seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .



– Unplug electrical connector -3- at control unit.

– Remove bolt -1-.

– Disengage control unit -2- at retainer -arrow- and move control unit with wiring clear.

Standard seat (with manual or electric adjustment):

Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- is bonded onto seat padding.

– Remove seat cover with padding for seat pan ⇒ page 659 .

– Separate seat cover and padding ⇒ page 677 .

Sports seat/super sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment):

Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- is bonded onto seat padding.

– Remove seat cover with padding for sports seat/super sports seat with seat depth adjustment ⇒ page 661 .

– Separate seat cover and padding ⇒ page 677 .

Multi-contour seat:

Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- is stitched into seat cover with seat heating element.

– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 665 .

– Separate seat cover and padding ⇒ page 679 .

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

When installing a new service kit and following any repair work on the front passenger's seat during which the seat cover and/or backrest cover are/is disengaged, the basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed ⇒ page 7 .

– Finally, select “Airbag” function in “Guided Fault Finding” mode using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

♦ Basic setting for seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system”, page 197

70 – Trim, insulation

1 Door trim (front)

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 204

⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim”, page 208

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing bass loudspeaker trim”, page 208

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing trim panel”, page 209

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing door trim (front)”, page 210

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing armrest (front)”, page 214

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing switch trim”, page 214

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing trim for mirror cover”, page 214

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 215

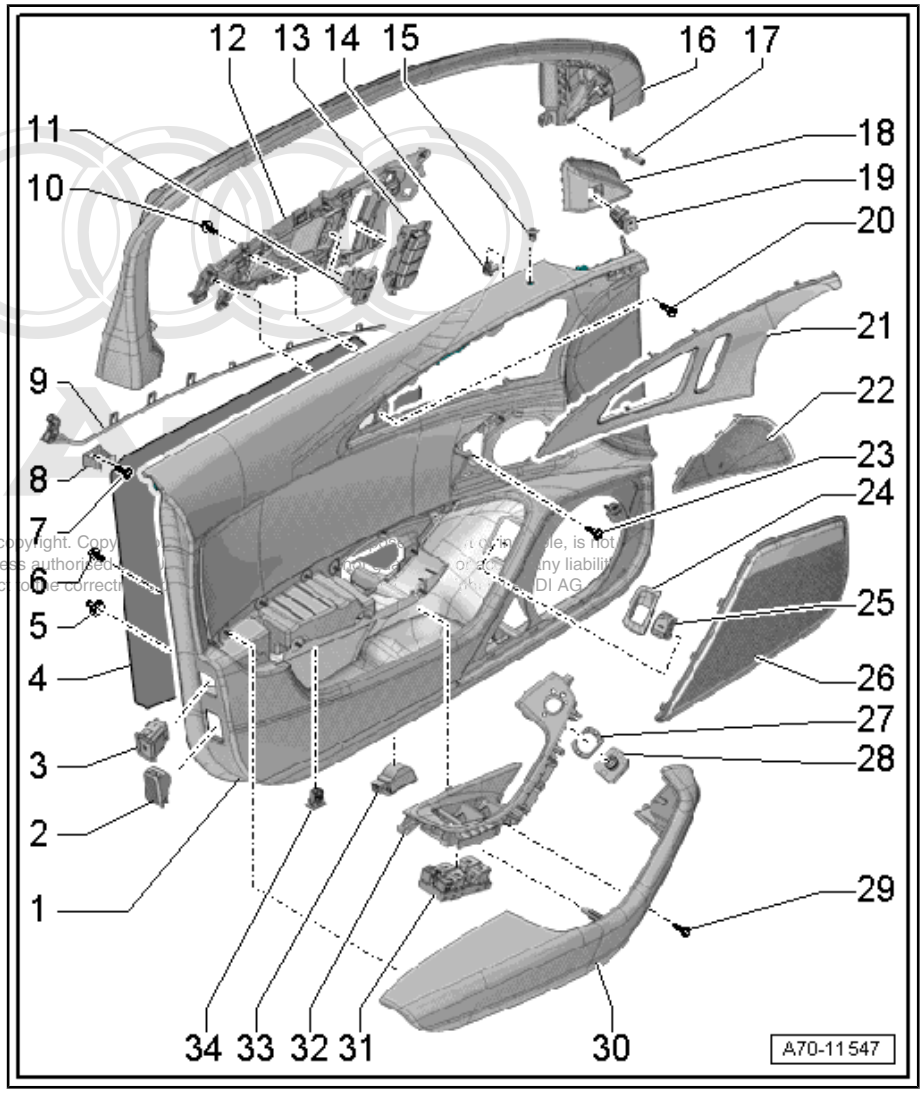
⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing window frame trim”, page 215

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)

Note

The illustration shows the door trim (front) on the driver side; it is similar on the passenger side.



1 - Door trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210
- ❑ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve -item 15- must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

2 - Door warning lamp

- ❑ Driver side (equipment version): driver side door warning lamp -W30-
- ❑ Passenger side (equipment version): front passenger side door warning lamp - W36-
- ❑ Removing and installing door warning lamp ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing door warning lamp -W30- / -W36-

3 - Alarm system off switch - E217-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing alarm system off switch - E217-

4 - Insulating mat

5 - Clip

- ❑ With seal
- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 7x, one-piece
- ❑ 1x, two-piece
- ❑ Renew two-piece clip if damaged

WARNING

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.

The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips for door trim.

6 - Bolt

- ❑ For door puller/armrest
- ❑ 13x

- ❑ 1.2 Nm

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 4.5 Nm

8 - Clip

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ Bolted to door frame

9 - Driver door ambient lighting bulb - L164-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger door ambient lighting bulb - L165-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing front door ambient lighting bulb -L164- / -L165-

10 - Bolt

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ 7x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

11 - Driver side interior locking switch - E150-

- ❑ Front passenger side: passenger side interior locking switch - E198-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

12 - Interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 215

13 - Driver seat memory operating unit - E97-

- ❑ Front passenger side: front passenger seat memory operating unit - E277-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing driver seat/ front passenger seat memory operating unit -E97- / -E277-

14 - Central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-

- ❑ Driver's door only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-

15 - Sleeve

- ❑ For central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-
- ❑ Driver's door only
- ❑ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

16 - Trim

- ❑ For window frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 215

17 - Stop

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

18 - Inner cover panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214
- ❑ Clip into trim for window frame

19 - Button for lane change assist - E530-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Removing and installing button for lane change assist - E530-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

20 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

21 - Trim

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 209

22 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ For mid-range loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 208
- ❑ Hook into door trim and press on until it engages audibly

23 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

24 - Trim

- ❑ For rear lid remote release button - E233-
- ❑ Driver's door only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rear lid remote release button - E233-
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

25 - Rear lid remote release button - E233-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rear lid remote release button - E233-

26 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ For bass loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 208
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

27 - Symbol trim

28 - Mirror adjustment switch - E43-

- ❑ Depending on equipment version: adjustment switch for mirror with fold-in feature - E168-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

29 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

30 - Door puller/armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

31 - Operating unit for window regulator in driver door - E512-

- ❑ Passenger side: window regulator switch in front passenger door - E107-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing operating unit for window regulator in driver door - E512-

32 - Handle recess

- ❑ With switch mounting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

33 - Front left entry light - W31-

- ❑ Passenger side: front right entry light - W32-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing entry light (front) -W31- / -W32-

34 - Driver door storage compartment illumination bulb - L160-

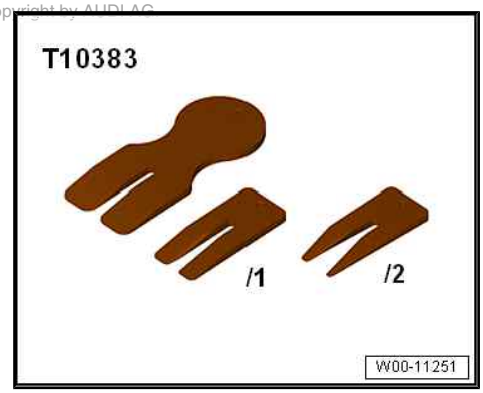
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger door storage compartment illumination bulb - L161-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing door storage compartment illumination bulb -L160- / -L161-

1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

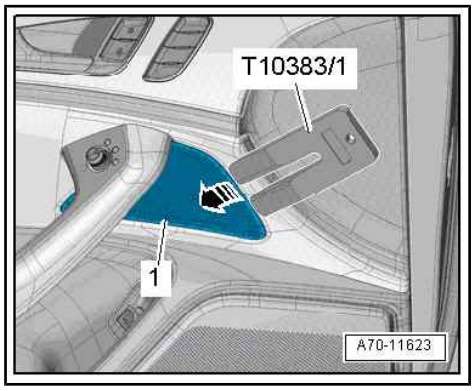
– Starting at front, carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim -arrows- using wedge - T10383/1- .

– Pull loudspeaker trim upwards out of door trim and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

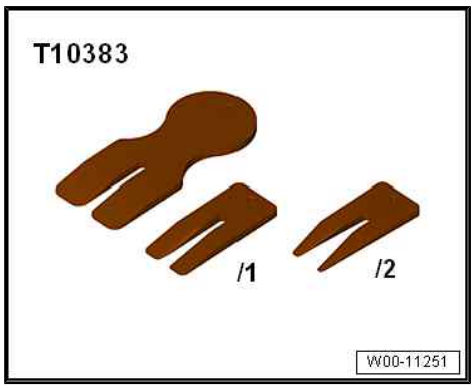
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 204



1.3 Removing and installing bass loudspeaker trim

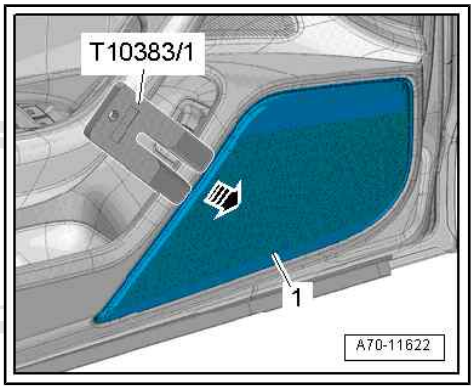
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

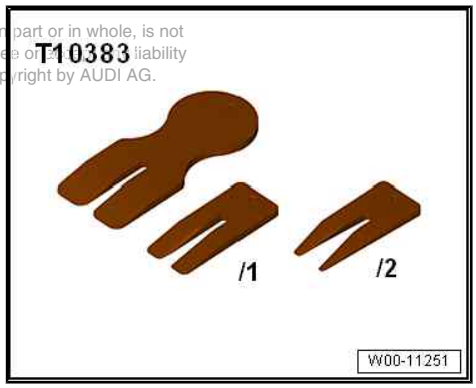
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 204

1.4 Removing and installing trim panel

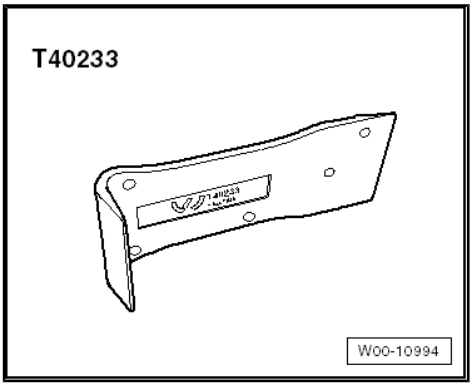
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

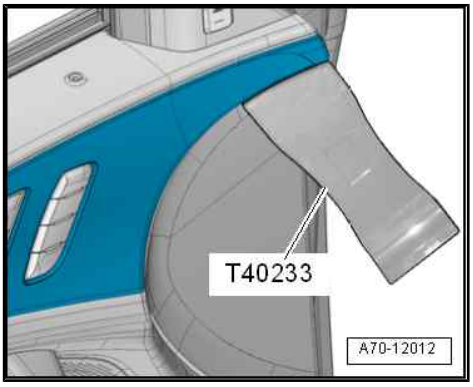


♦ Removal wedge - T40233-

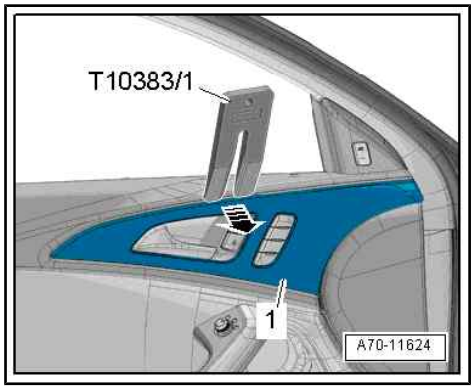


Removing

– Starting at front, carefully prise trim off door trim using removal wedge - T40233- .



– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully prise trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow-.
– Lift trim slightly and slide it forwards to allow hook on inside of trim to be unfastened from recess in door trim.



Installing

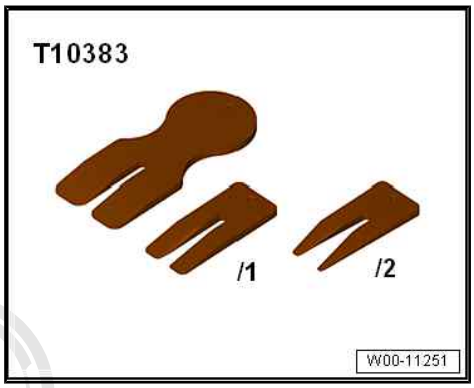
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 204

1.5 Removing and installing door trim (front)

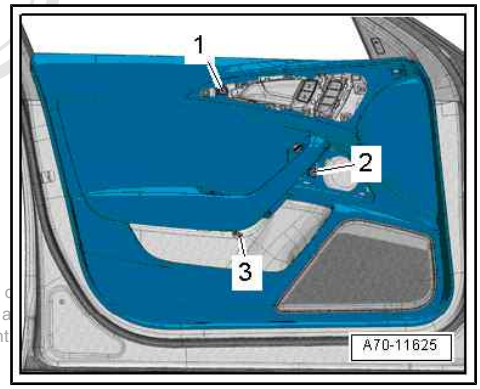
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.
– Remove trim panel ⇒ page 209 .
– Remove mid-range loudspeaker trim ⇒ page 208 .
– Remove bolts -1 ... 3-.

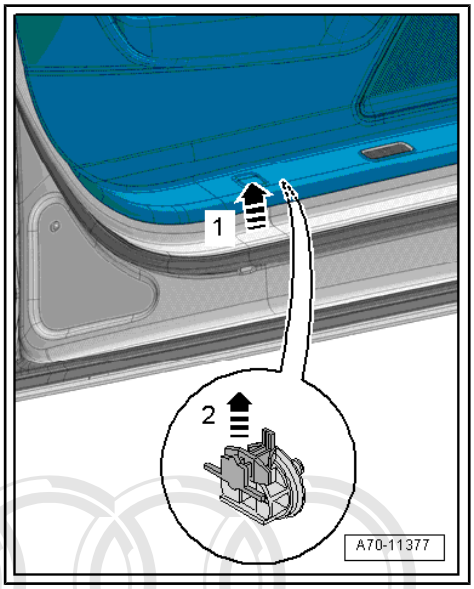


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part c
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

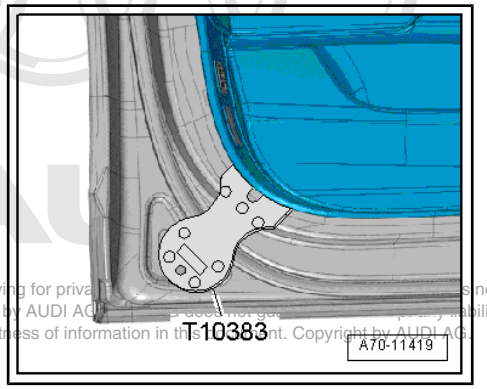
Note

A two-piece clip is fitted at the bottom centre of the door trim. This clip must be released before unfastening the seven "normal" one-piece clips.

– Press firmly against embossed area of door trim (at bottom next to entry light) -arrow 1- with your thumb to release two-piece clip -arrow 2-.

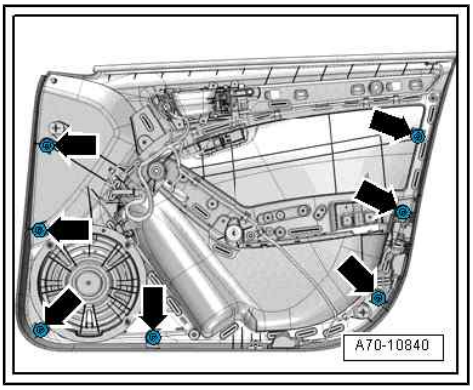


– Starting in bottom rear corner, use wedge -T10383- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips.



Protected by copyright. Copying for priva... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG... Liability with respect to the correctness of information in this ... Copyright by AUDI AG.

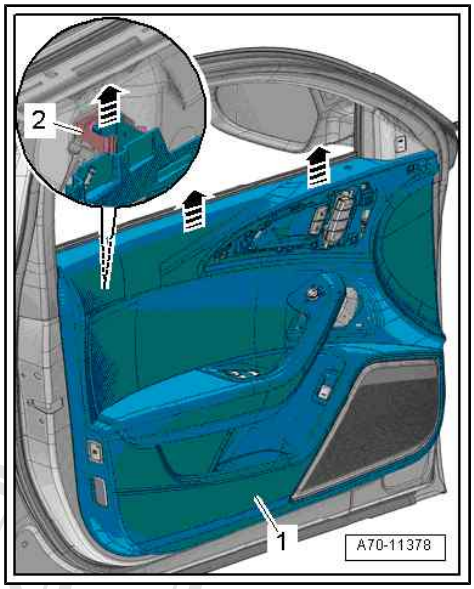
• Position of remaining retaining clips -arrows-



– Pull door trim -1- approx. 15 mm away from the door all around.

• Do not leave retaining clips in door.

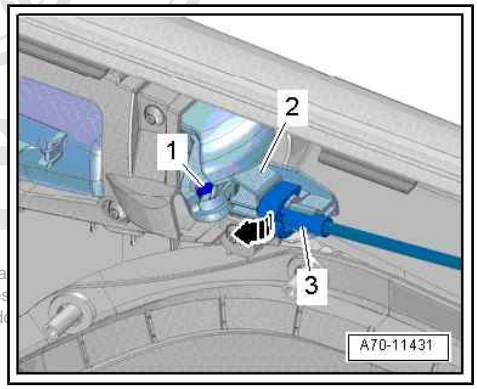
– Press door trim upwards out of clip -2- at location indicated, disengage from door at window slot (top) -arrows- and detach.



– Carefully unclip Bowden cable -3- from interior door handle -2-.

– Swivel Bowden cable for interior door handle inwards -arrow-.

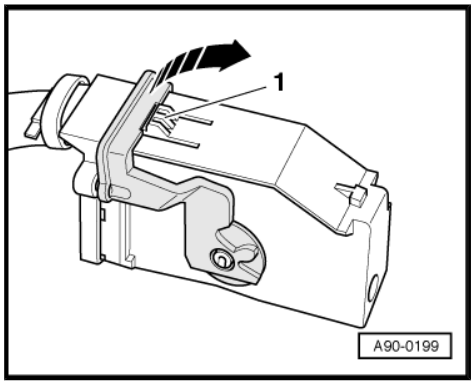
– Disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercia
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

– To unplug electrical connector, press catch -1-, turn retaining bracket in direction of -arrow- and unplug connector.

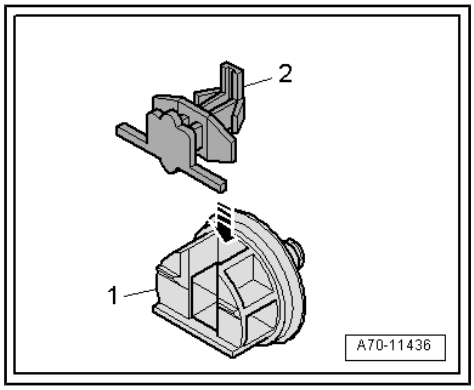
– Detach door trim.



Installing

– Renew damaged two-piece clip; to do so, disengage bottom part -1- from door (working from back of door) and remove top part -2- from door trim.

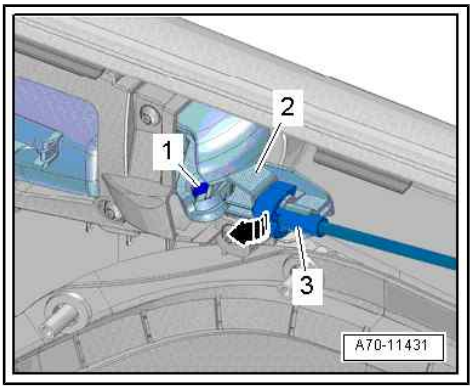
– Assemble two-piece clip -arrow- and insert in door trim.



– Engage end of cable -1- in lever of interior door handle.

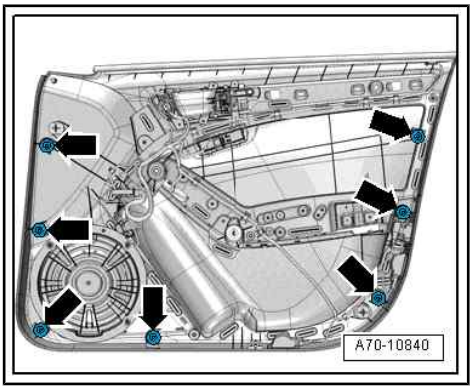
– Clip in Bowden cable -3- for interior door handle at interior door handle -2-.

• Bowden cable must engage audibly.



WARNING

- *Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.*
- *The retaining clips -arrows- for the door trim provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips for door trim.*

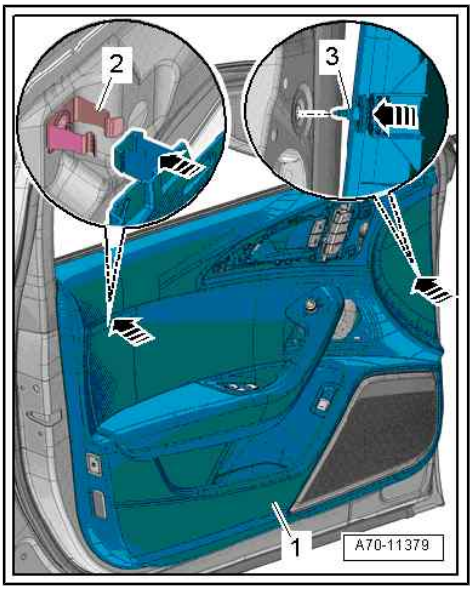


– Plug in electrical connector at door control unit.

– Position door trim -1- at window slot and press on downwards.

– Carefully position clips -3- for door trim all around door and press door trim onto door -arrows- until it engages audibly at anchorage points ⇒ page 213 .

– Engage door trim in clip -2- by pressing door trim onto door -arrows- so that it engages with a click.

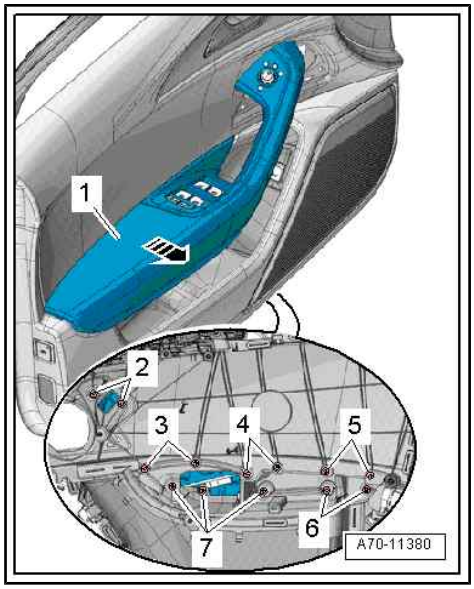


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 204

1.6 Removing and installing armrest (front)



Removing

– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ page 210 .
– Remove insulating mat.
– Unplug electrical connector for operating unit for window regulator in driver door - E512- .
– Unplug electrical connector for mirror adjustment switch - E43- .
– Unscrew bolts -2 ... 7- at rear of door trim.
– Unfasten door puller/armrest -1- from door trim -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

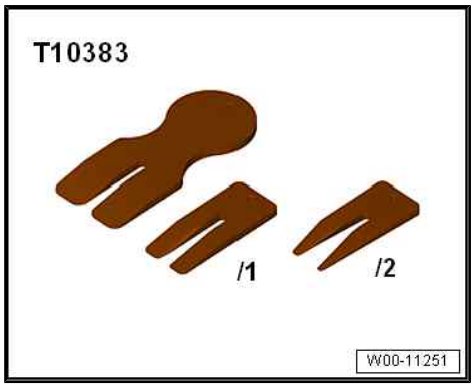
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 204

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7 Removing and installing switch trim

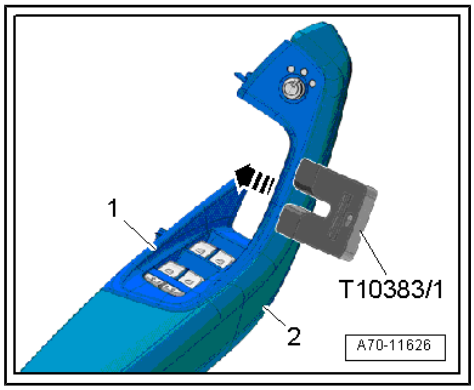
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Remove door puller/armrest:
♦ Door trim (front) ⇒ page 214
♦ Door trim (rear) ⇒ page 227
– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully unclip handle recess -1- with switch mounting from door puller/armrest -2- -arrow- and detach.



Installing

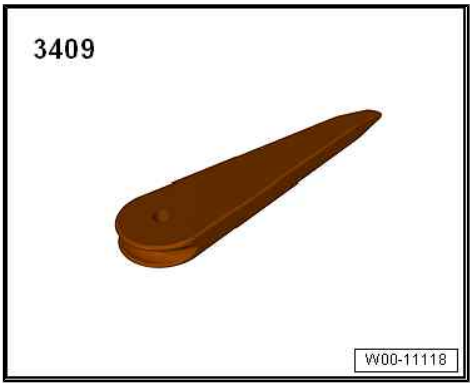
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 204

1.8 Removing and installing trim for mirror cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

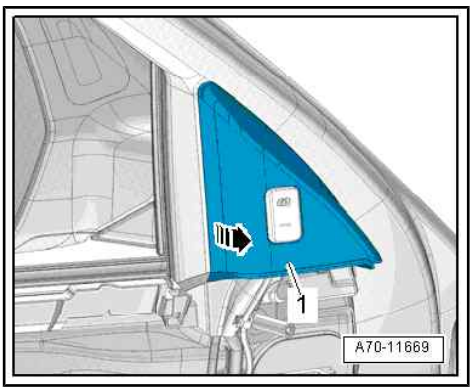


Removing

– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ page 210 .

– Prise cover panel -1- off door -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- and detach.

– Equipment version with button for lane change assist - E530- : Unplug electrical connector for button for lane change assist - E530- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 204

1.9 Removing and installing interior door handle

Removing

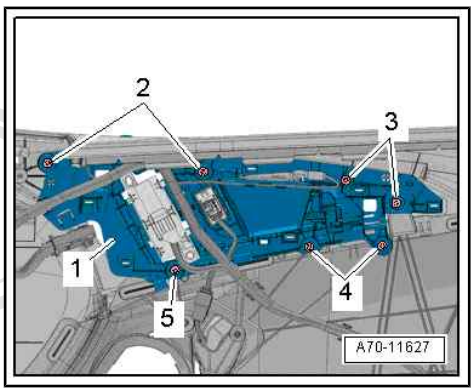
– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ page 210 .

– Remove insulating mat.

– Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring clear.

– Unscrew bolts -2 ... 5- at rear of door trim.

– Detach interior door handle -1- from door trim.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

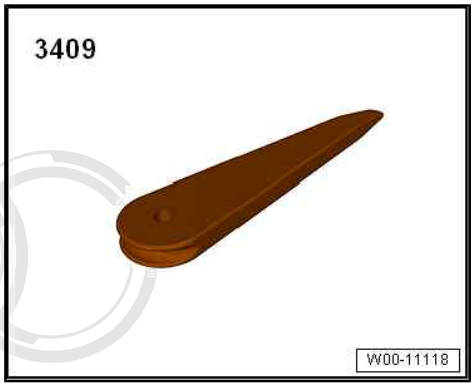
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 204

1.10 Removing and installing window frame trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

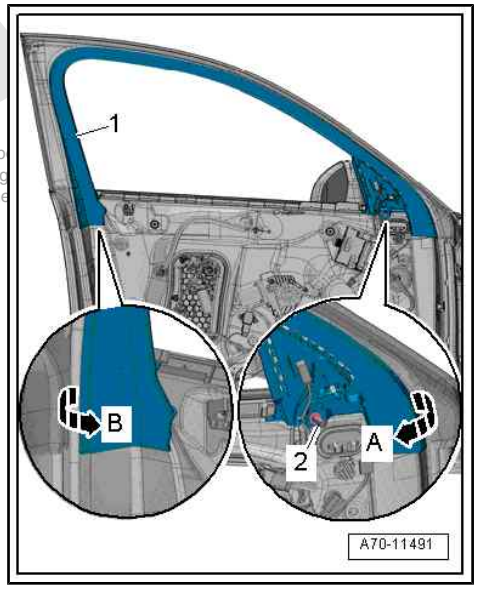
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

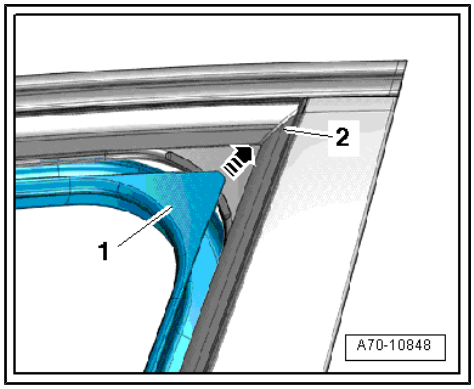
– Lower door window.
– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ page 210 .
– Remove inner cover panel ⇒ page 214 .
– Unscrew stop -2- for door trim.
– Working from bottom front to top rear, carefully prise off trim -1- for window frame working along window guide -arrow A- with removal wedge - 3409- .
– Then prise off trim for window frame at bottom rear with removal wedge - 3409- , working carefully along length of window guide -arrow B-.
– Pull trim for window frame downwards off window frame and detach.

Blocked by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume



Installing

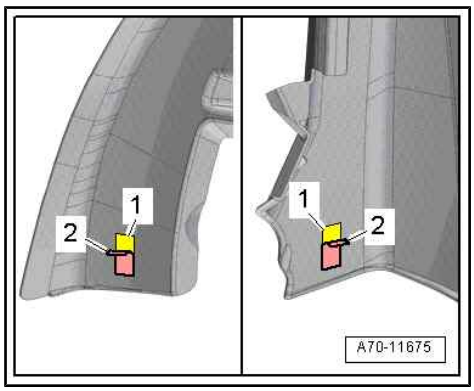
– Insert trim -1- for window frame in window guide -2- at top rear -arrow-.
– Install trim for window frame over entire length of window guide.



– Peel protective film -2- off adhesive pads -1-.
– Press trim firmly onto door frame.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 204



2 Door trim (rear)

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 217

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - sun blind for door window”, page 222

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim”, page 223

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing trim panel”, page 223

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 224

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing door trim (rear)”, page 225

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing armrest (rear)”, page 227

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing window frame trim”, page 228

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing sun blind for door window”, page 229

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing retainer for sun blind”, page 230

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing ashtray (rear)”, page 230

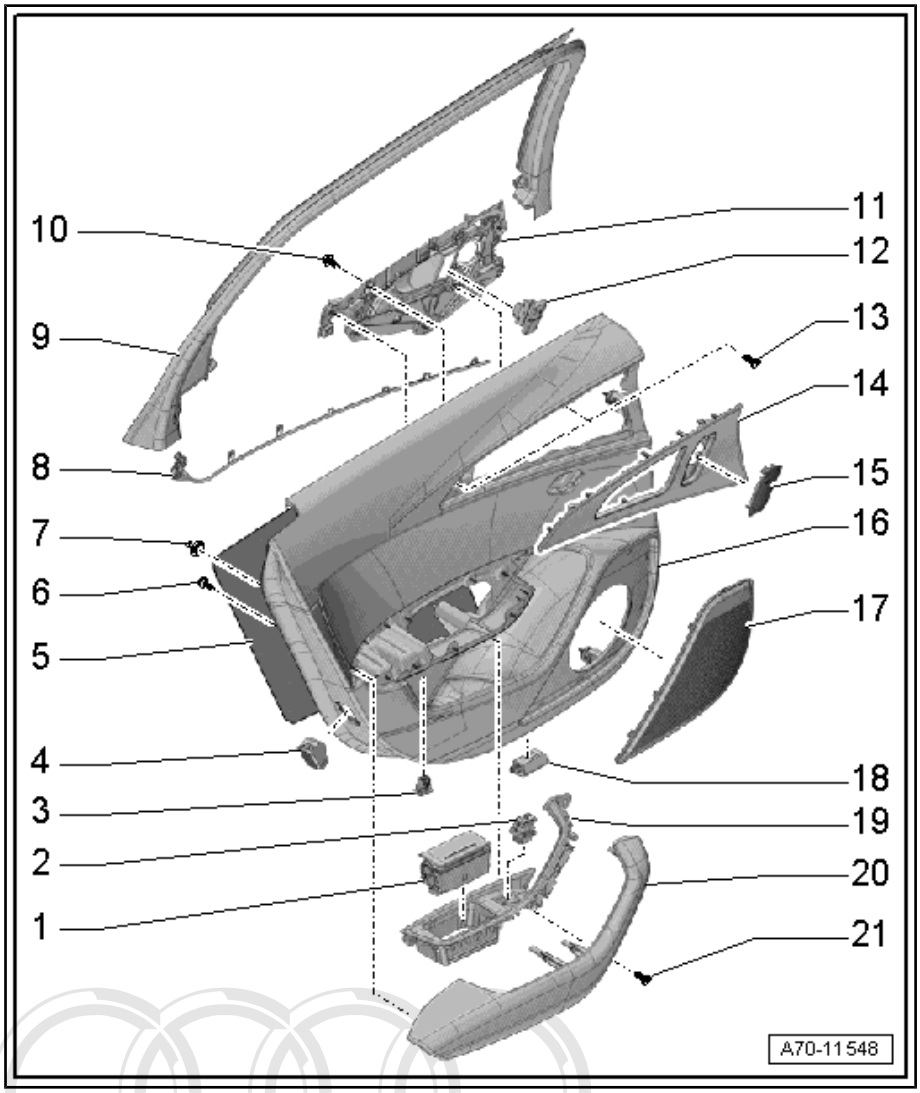
2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 217

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - door trim (rear), country-specific version”, page 220

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)



1 - Ashtray (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 230

2 - Rear left window regulator button in rear left door - E700-

- ❑ Right side: rear right window regulator button in rear right door - E705-
- ❑ Left side (equipment version): rear right window regulator button in rear left door - E701-
- ❑ Right side (equipment version): rear left window regulator button in rear right door - E706-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rear window regulator button in rear door - E700- / -E705-

3 - Rear left door storage compartment illumination bulb - L170-

- ❑ Right side: rear right door storage compartment illumination bulb - L171-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear door storage compartment illumination bulb -L170- / -L171-

4 - Door warning lamp

- ❑ Left side (equipment version): rear left door warning lamp - W37-
- ❑ Right side (equipment version): rear right door warning lamp - W38-
- ❑ Removing and installing door warning lamp ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear door warning lamp -W37- / -W38-

5 - Insulating mat

6 - Bolt

- ❑ For door puller/armrest
- ❑ 13x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

tected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 - Clip

- ❑ 6x, one-piece
- ❑ 1x, two-piece
- ❑ Renew two-piece clip if damaged

8 - Rear left door ambient lighting bulb - L166-

- ❑ Right side: rear right door ambient lighting bulb - L167-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear door ambient lighting bulb -L166- / -L167-

9 - Trim

- ❑ For window frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228

10 - Bolt

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ 9x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

11 - Interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 224

12 - Rear left interior locking switch - E273-

- ❑ Right side: rear right interior locking switch - E274-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rear interior locking switch -E273- / -E274-

13 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

14 - Trim

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 223
- ❑ Hook into door trim and press on until it engages audibly

15 - Trim

- ❑ For treble loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 223
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

16 - Door trim (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 225

17 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ For bass loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 208

18 - Rear left entry light - W33-

- ❑ Right side: rear right entry light - W34-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing entry light (rear) -W33- / -W34-

19 - Handle recess

- ❑ With switch mounting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

20 - Door puller/armrest

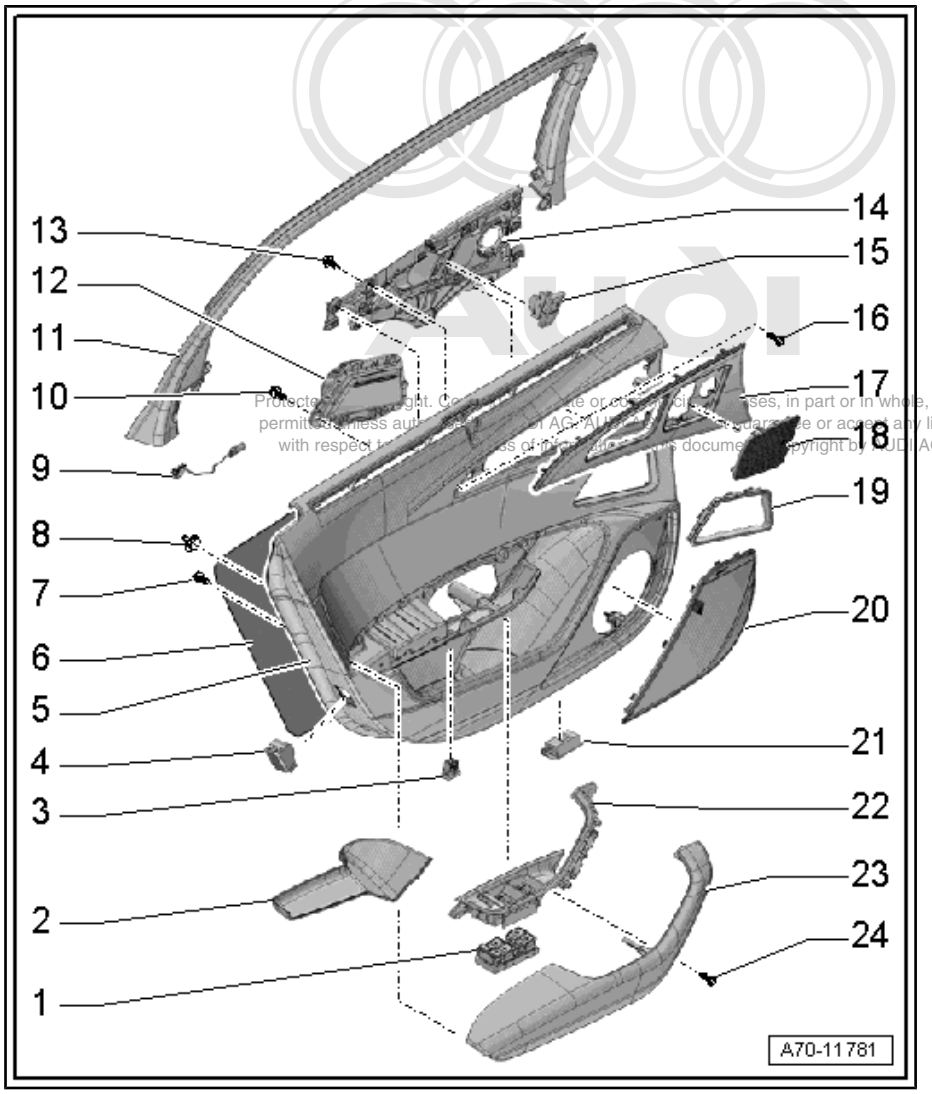
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 227

21 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.2 Exploded view - door trim (rear), country-specific version



1 - Rear window regulator buttons

- Left side: rear left window regulator button in rear left door - E700- , rear right window regulator button in rear left door - E701- , sunroof button in rear left door - E702- , sunroof roller blind button in rear left door - E703- and rear roller blind button in rear left door - E699-
- Right side: rear right window regulator button in rear right door - E705- , rear left window regulator button in rear right door - E706- , sunroof button in rear right door - E707- , sunroof roller blind button in rear right door - E708- and rear roller blind button in rear right door - E704-
- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rear window regulator button in rear door - E700- / -E705-

2 - Lining mat

- For door pocket

3 - Rear left door storage compartment illumination bulb - L170-

- Right side: rear right door storage compartment illumination bulb - L171-
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear door storage compartment illumination bulb -L170- / -L171-

4 - Door warning lamp

- Left side (equipment version): rear left door warning lamp - W37-
- Right side (equipment version): rear right door warning lamp - W38-
- Removing and installing door warning lamp ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear door warning lamp -W37- / -W38-

5 - Door trim (rear)

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 225

6 - Insulating mat

7 - Bolt

- For door puller/armrest
- 15x
- 1.2 Nm

8 - Clip

- ❑ 7x, one-piece
- ❑ 1x, two-piece
- ❑ Renew two-piece clip if damaged

9 - Rear left door ambient lighting bulb - L166-

- ❑ Right side: rear right door ambient lighting bulb - L167-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear door ambient lighting bulb -L166- / -L167-

10 - Bolt

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ For ashtray
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

11 - Trim

- ❑ For window frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228

12 - Ashtray (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 230

13 - Bolt

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ 9x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

14 - Interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 224

15 - Rear left interior locking switch - E273-

- ❑ Right side: rear right interior locking switch - E274-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rear interior locking switch -E273- / -E274-

16 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

17 - Trim

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 223
- ❑ Hook into door trim and press on until it engages audibly

18 - Trim

- ❑ For treble loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 223
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

19 - Frame

- ❑ For ashtray
- ❑ Clip into door trim

20 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ For bass loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 208
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

21 - Rear left entry light - W33-

- ❑ Right side: rear right entry light - W34-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing entry light (rear) -W33- / -W34-

22 - Handle recess

- ❑ With switch mounting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

23 - Door puller/armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 227

24 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

2.2 Exploded view - sun blind for door window

1 - Door trim (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 225

2 - Bolt

- ❑ For sun blind
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

3 - Sun blind

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 229

4 - Bolt

- ❑ For sun blind
- ❑ 3x or 4x (depending on equipment version)
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

5 - Retainer for sun blind

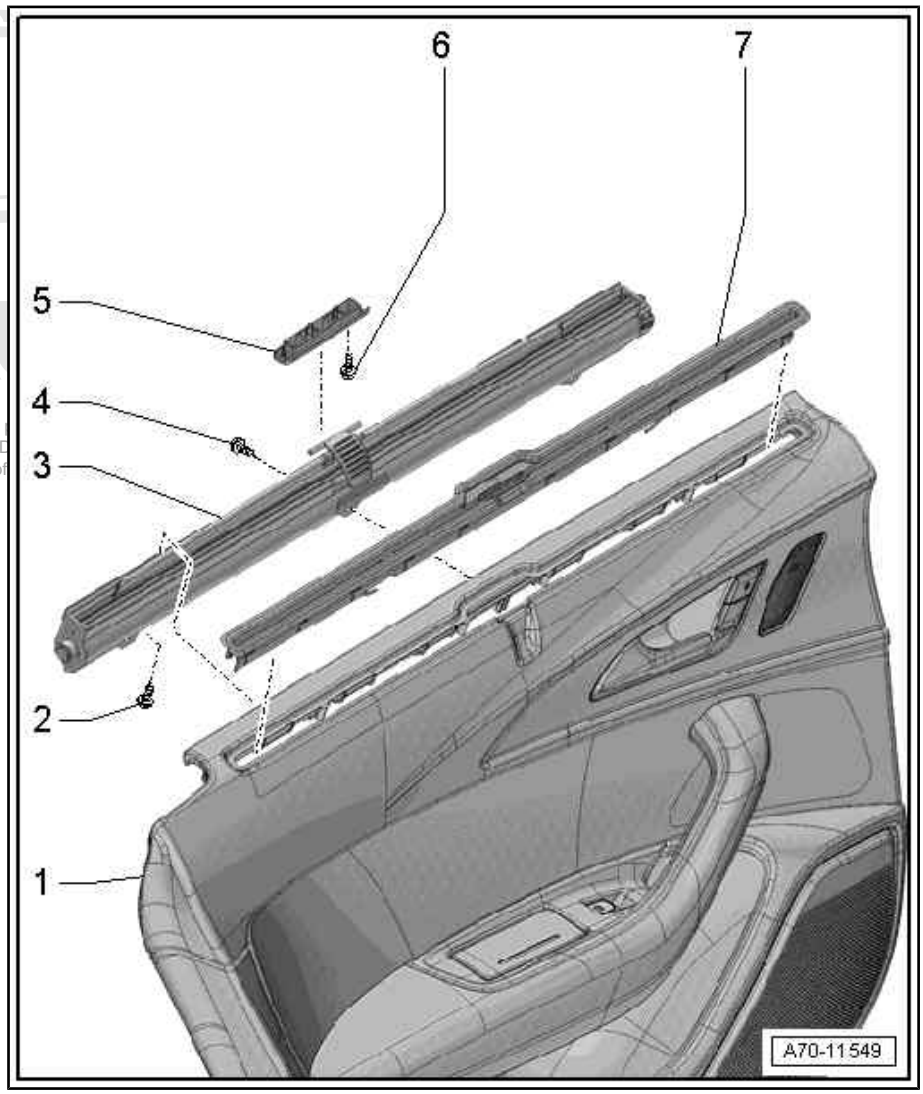
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 230

6 - Bolt

- ❑ For retainer
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.2 Nm

7 - Guide strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing sun blind for door window”, page 229
- ❑ Can only be inserted in door trim in one position

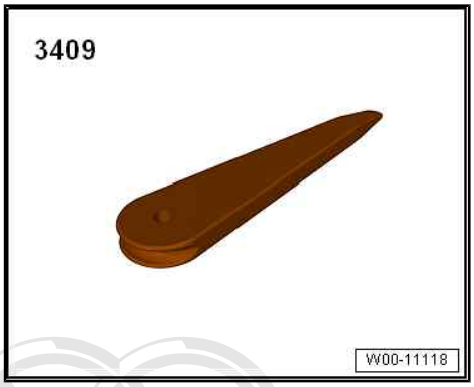


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document or any of its contents and does not undertake any liability for the non-infringement of intellectual property rights of third parties.

2.3 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim

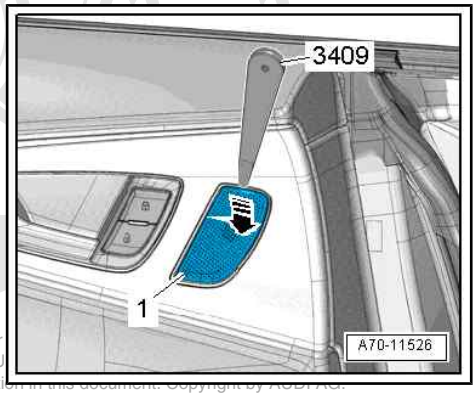
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

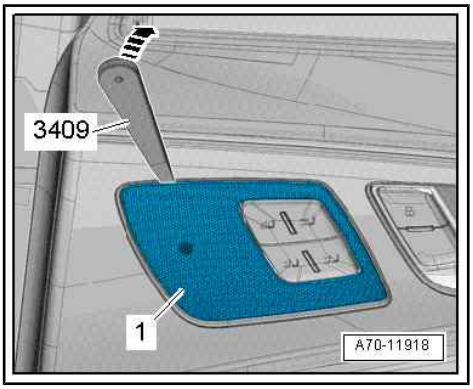
– Using removal wedge - 3409- , carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim -arrow- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU
with respect to the correctness of informati

Country-specific version:

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim -arrow- and detach.



Installing

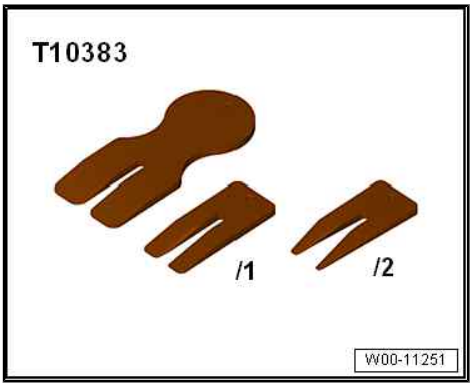
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 217

2.4 Removing and installing trim panel

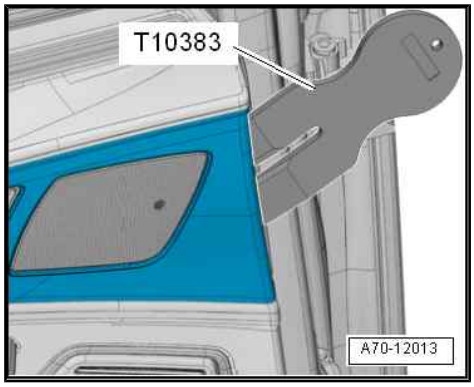
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-

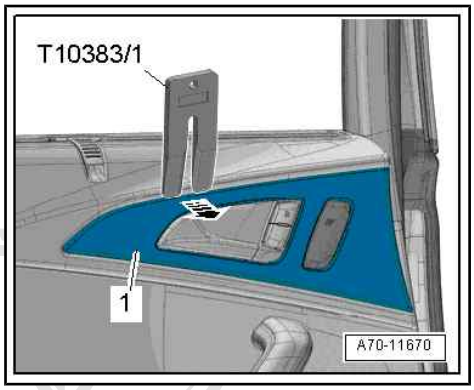


Removing

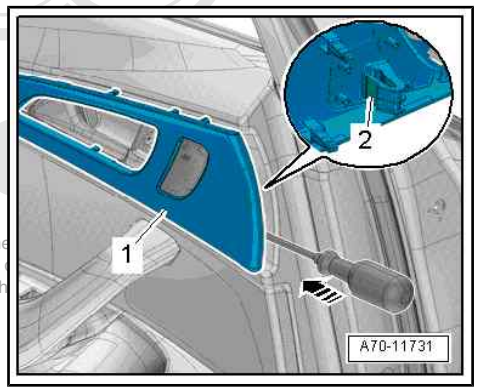
– Starting at front, carefully prise trim off door trim using removal wedge -T10383- .



– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully prise trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow-.



– Lift trim -1- slightly and release retaining hook (front) -2- from trim at door trim -arrow- with a screwdriver.
– Lift trim slightly and slide it forwards to allow hook (rear) on inside of trim to be unfastened from recess in door trim.
– Detach trim from door trim.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

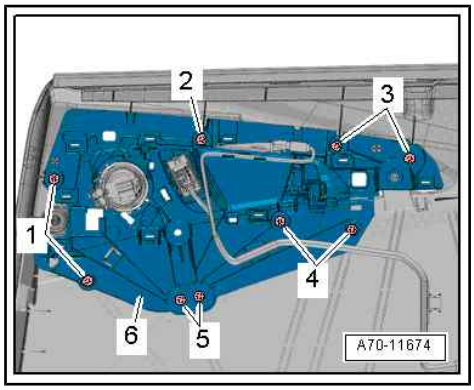
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in th

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 204

2.5 Removing and installing interior door handle

Removing

– Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ page 225 .
– Remove insulating mat.
– Equipment version with sun blind: Remove sun blind ⇒ page 229 .
– Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring clear.
– Unscrew bolts -1 ... 5- at rear of door trim.
– Detach interior door handle -6- from door trim.



Installing

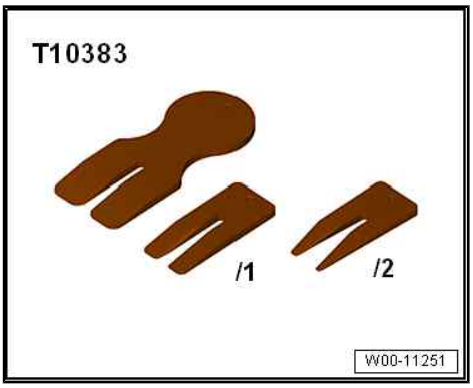
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 217

2.6 Removing and installing door trim (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-

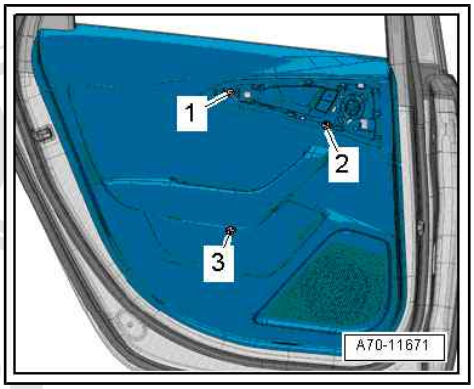


Removing

– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.

– Remove trim for interior door handle ⇒ page 223 .

– Remove bolts -1 ... 3-.

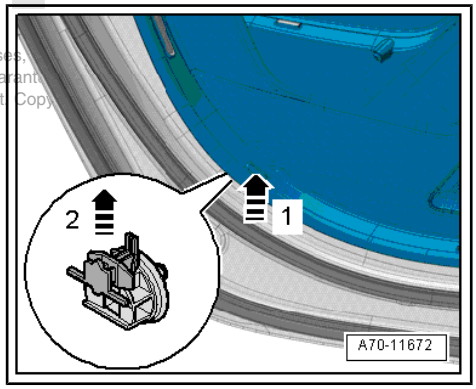


Note

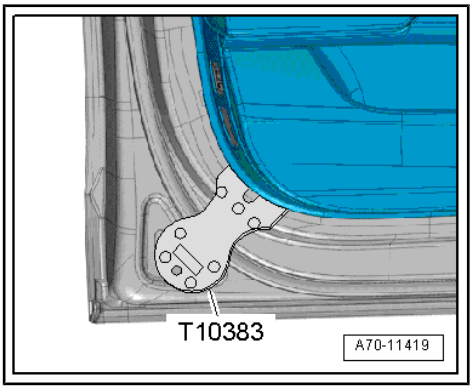
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

A two-piece clip is fitted at the bottom rear of the door trim. This clip must be released before unfastening the six “normal” one-piece clips.

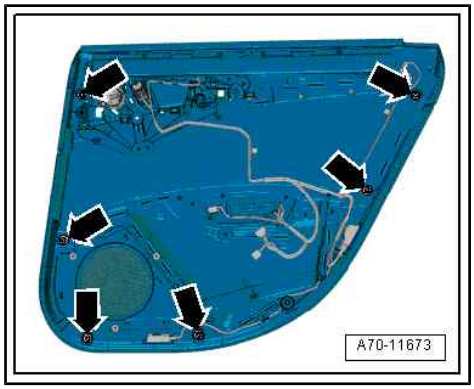
– Press firmly against embossed area of door trim (at bottom next to entry light) -arrow 1- with your thumb to release two-piece clip -arrow 2-.



– Starting in bottom rear corner, use wedge -T10383- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips.

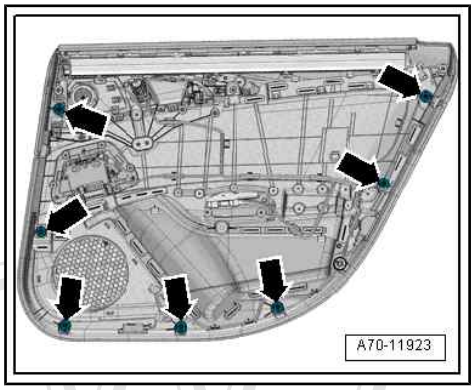


- Position of remaining retaining clips -arrows-



Country-specific version:

- Position of remaining retaining clips -arrows-



Continued for all vehicles:

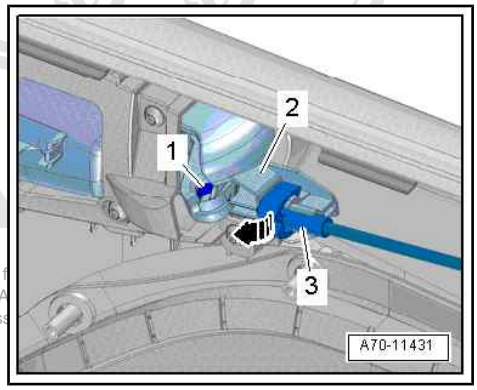
– Disengage door trim from door at top of window slot. To do so, pull door trim upwards.

– Equipment version with treble loudspeaker: Unplug electrical connector for treble loudspeaker.

– Carefully unclip Bowden cable -3- from interior door handle -2-.

– Swivel Bowden cable for interior door handle in direction of -arrow-.

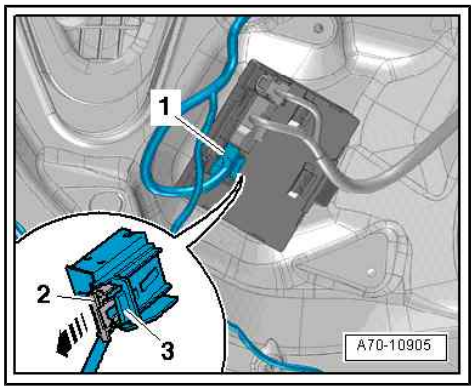
– Disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.



Protected by copyright. Copying f
permitted unless authorised by A
with respect to the correctness

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at door control unit. To do so, pull out fastener -2- -arrow- and press down release mechanism -3-.

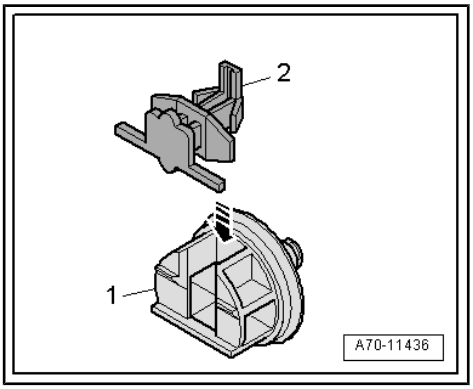
– Detach door trim.



Installing

– Renew damaged two-piece clip; to do so, disengage bottom part -1- from door (working from back of door) and remove top part -2- from door trim.

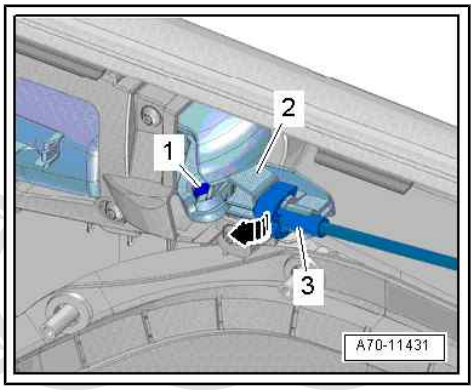
– Assemble two-piece clip -arrow- and insert in door trim.



– Engage end of cable -1- in lever of interior door handle.

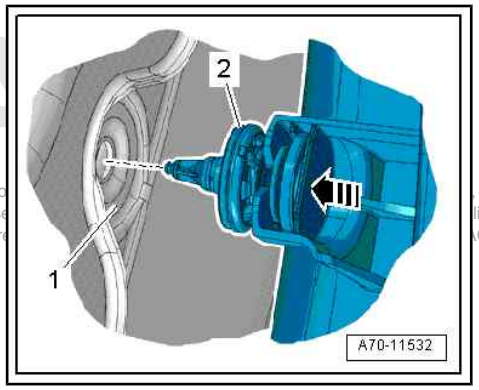
– Clip in Bowden cable -3- for interior door handle at interior door handle -2-.

– Plug in electrical connector at door control unit.



– Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.

– Carefully position clips -2- for door trim all around door -1- and press door trim onto door -arrow- until it engages audibly at anchorage points ⇒ page 226 .



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Protected by copyright. Co
permitted unless authorise
the corre
is not
liability
G.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 217

2.7 Removing and installing armrest (rear)

Removing

– Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ page 225 .

– Remove insulating mat.

– Unplug electrical connectors.

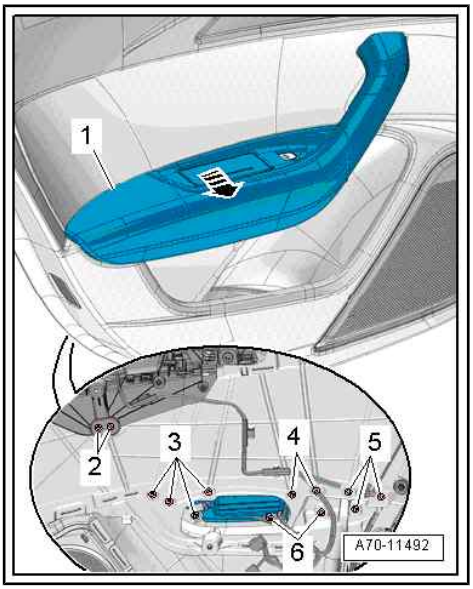
– Unscrew bolts -2 ... 6- at rear of door trim.

– Unfasten door puller/armrest -1- from door trim -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

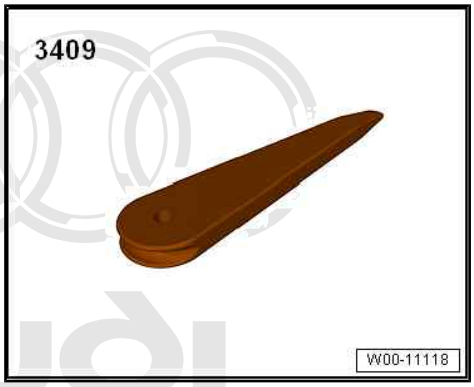
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 217



2.8 Removing and installing window frame trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

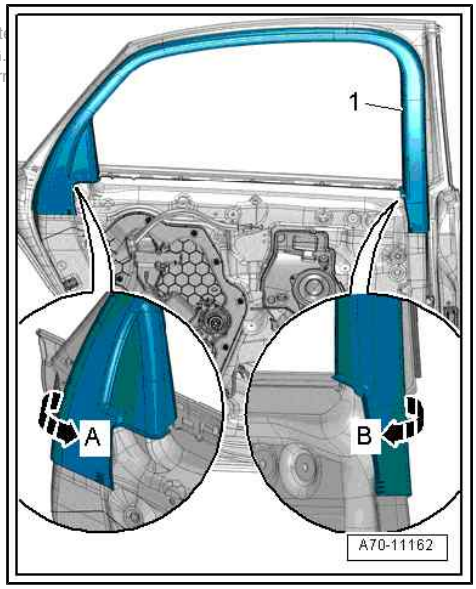
- Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of infor

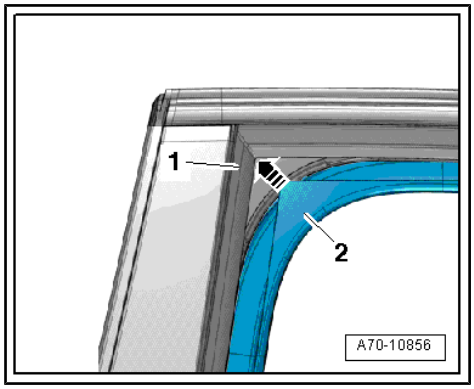
Removing

- Lower door window.
- Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ page 225 .
- Equipment version with sun blind: Remove retainer for sun blind ⇒ page 230 .
- Working from bottom rear to top front, carefully prise off trim -1- for window frame working along window guide -arrow A- with removal wedge - 3409- .
- Then prise off trim for window frame at bottom front with removal wedge - 3409- , working carefully along length of window guide -arrow B-.
- Pull trim for window frame downwards off window frame and detach.



Installing

- Starting at top of B-pillar, insert trim -2- for window frame in window guide -1- -arrow-.
- Install trim for window frame over entire length of window guide.

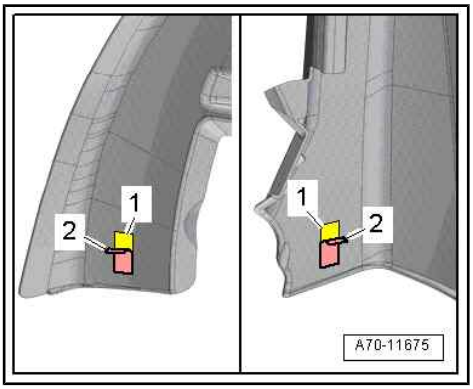


– Peel protective film -2- off adhesive pads -1-.

– Press trim firmly onto door frame.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

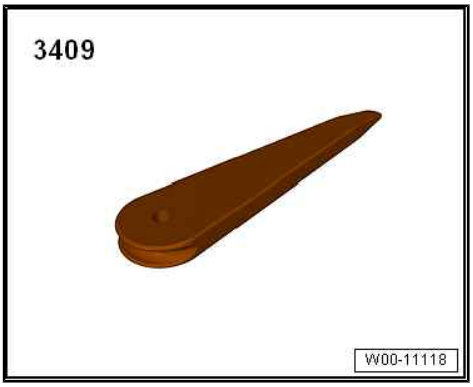
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 217



2.9 Removing and installing sun blind for door window

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

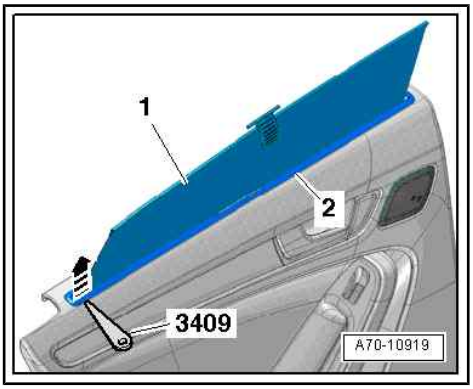


Removing

– Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ page 225 .

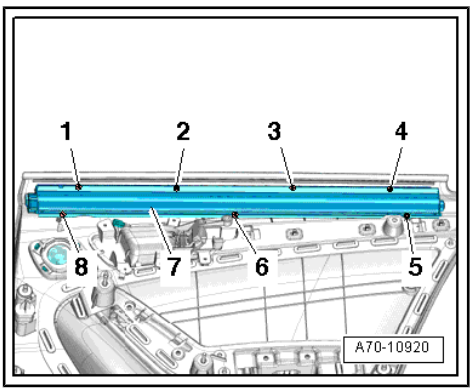
– Use removal wedge - 3409- to carefully unclip guide strip -2- from door trim -arrow-.

– Pull sun blind -1- slightly out of door trim and guide lug out through guide strip.



– Unscrew bolts -1 ... 6- and -8-.

– Detach sun blind -7- from door trim by swivelling it outwards slightly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Tighten bolts in the sequence -1 ... 6- and -8-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - sun blind for door window”, page 222

2.10 Removing and installing retainer for sun blind

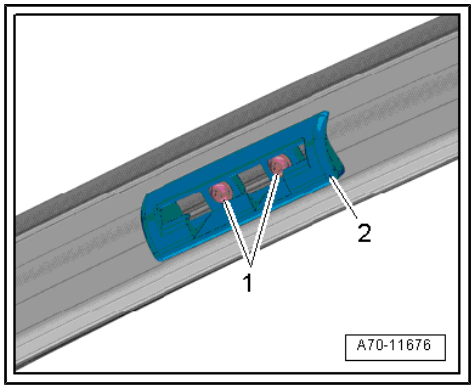
Removing

– Remove bolts -1- and detach securing lug -2- from window frame.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 217



2.11 Removing and installing ashtray (rear)

⇒ "2.11.1 Removing and installing ashtray (rear)", page 230

⇒ "2.11.2 Removing and installing ashtray (rear) - country-specific version", page 231

2.11.1 Removing and installing ashtray (rear)

Removing

Equipment version with ashtray light:

– Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ page 225 .

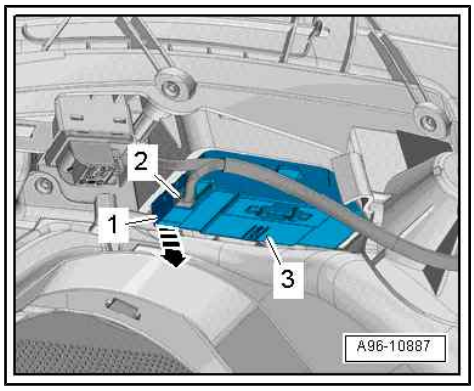
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move insulating mat liner to the side around ashtray light.

– Unplug electrical connector -2- for ashtray light -1- at ashtray -3-.

Note

-Arrow- can be ignored.



All equipment versions (continued):

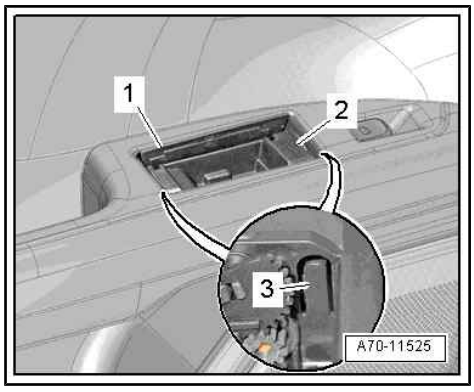
– Open ashtray lid and take out ashtray insert -2-.

– Using a screwdriver, release catch -3- and pull out ashtray -1-.

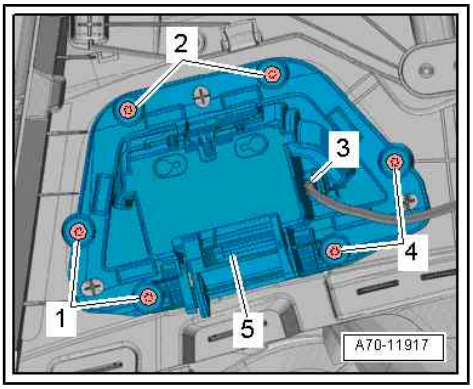
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 217



2.11.2 Removing and installing ashtray (rear) - country-specific version



Removing

– Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ page 225 .
– Remove insulating mat.
– Unplug electrical connector -3- for ashtray light at ashtray.
– Remove bolts -1, 2, 4-.
– Detach ashtray -5-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 217

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Dash panel

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 232

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)”, page 238

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover”, page 238

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel”, page 241

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim”, page 242

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing retaining frame for dash panel insert”, page 244

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing dash panel”, page 244

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing dash panel vents”, page 249

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)”, page 251

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing defroster vent (side)”, page 252

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

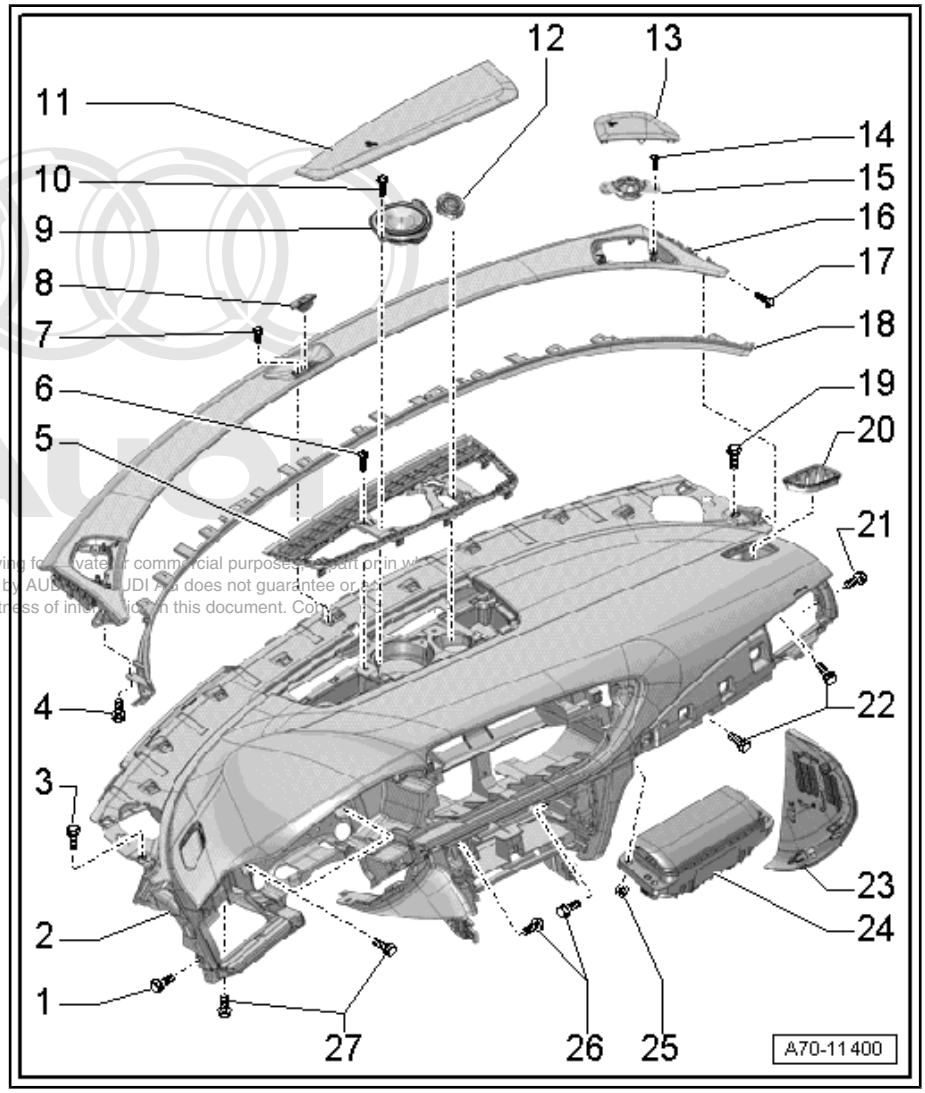
3.1 Exploded view - dash panel

Dash panel ⇒ page 232

Fitted components - dash panel ⇒ page 235

Head-up display - dash panel ⇒ page 237

Dash panel



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

2 - Dash panel

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
> *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 244

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part of in w... permitted unless authorised by AUDI ... AUDI AG does not guarantee or ... with respect to the correctness of inf... in this document. Co...

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 12x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

5 - Defroster vent (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 251

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

8 - Sunlight penetration photosensor - G107-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor - G107-

9 - Centre loudspeaker - R208-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Removing and installing centre loudspeaker

10 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

11 - Loudspeaker trim (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 242
- ❑ First insert in front of dash panel and press on until it engages audibly

12 - Centre loudspeaker 2 - R219-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Removing and installing centre loudspeaker

13 - Side loudspeaker trim

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 243
- ❑ First insert in front of dash panel and press on until it engages audibly

14 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

15 - Front left treble loudspeaker - R20-

- ❑ Right-side: front right treble loudspeaker - R22-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Removing and installing front treble loudspeakers -R20- / -R22-

16 - Dash panel cover (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 239

17 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

18 - Trim strip

- ❑ For dash panel cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.3.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (top)”, page 239

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

20 - Side defroster vent

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 252
- ❑ Press on until it engages

21 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

22 - Bolts

- ❑ 3 Nm

23 - Cover (side)

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 238
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

24 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131- and igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491-
- ❑ Country-specific version: with airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 145
- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch

25 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)”, page 145

26 - Bolts

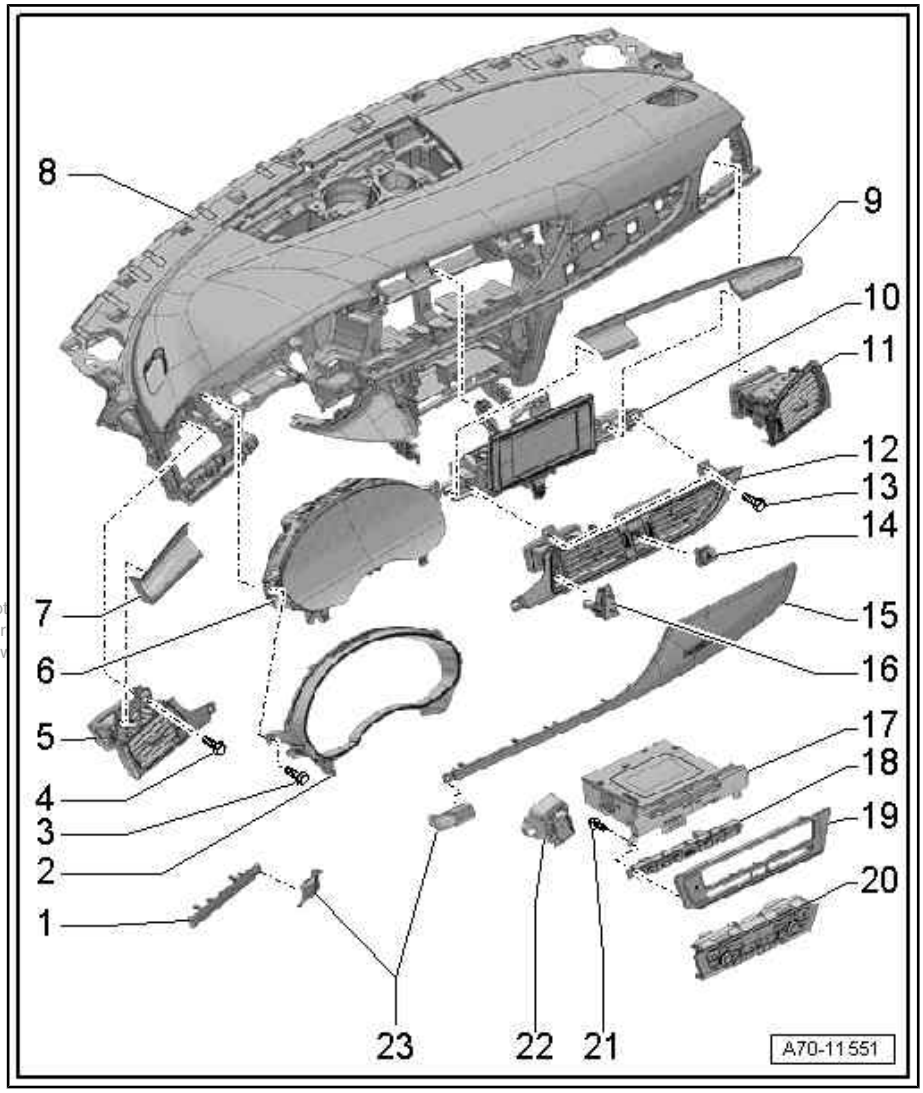
- ❑ 3 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

27 - Bolts

- ❑ 3 Nm

Fitted components - dash panel



1 - Trim (driver side)

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Clipped into dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 241

2 - Frame

- ❑ For dash panel insert
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 244

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

5 - Dash panel vent

- ❑ For driver side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 249
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ When inserting in opening, make sure that air duct engages properly
- ❑ Press into installation opening as far as stop

6 - Dash panel insert

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert

7 - Dash panel cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 238
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Dash panel

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 244

9 - Dash panel cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 238
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

10 - Display unit for front information display and operating unit control unit - J685-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing infotainment system display

11 - Dash panel vent

- ❑ For passenger side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 250

12 - Dash panel vent (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 251

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

14 - Hazard warning lights button - E229-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing hazard warning lights button - E229-

15 - Trim (passenger side)

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Clipped into dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 241
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

16 - Open and close button for front display - E462- / display unit button - E506-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in centre console

17 - Control unit 1 for information electronics - J794-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing control unit 1 for information electronics - J794-

18 - Switch unit

- ❑ With -E693- , -E581- , -E266- , -K145- , -E127- , -E256-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

19 - Trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ For control unit 1 for information electronics - J794-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing control unit 1 for information electronics - J794-

20 - Climatronic control unit - J255-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit

21 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

22 - Immobiliser reader coil - D2-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Immobilizer; Removing and installing immobilizer reader coil

23 - Trim cover for dash panel insert

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24

Head-up display - dash panel

1 - Dash panel

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
> *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 244

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 4 (page 233)

3 - Trim strip

- ❑ For dash panel cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.3.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (top)”, page 239

4 - Bolt

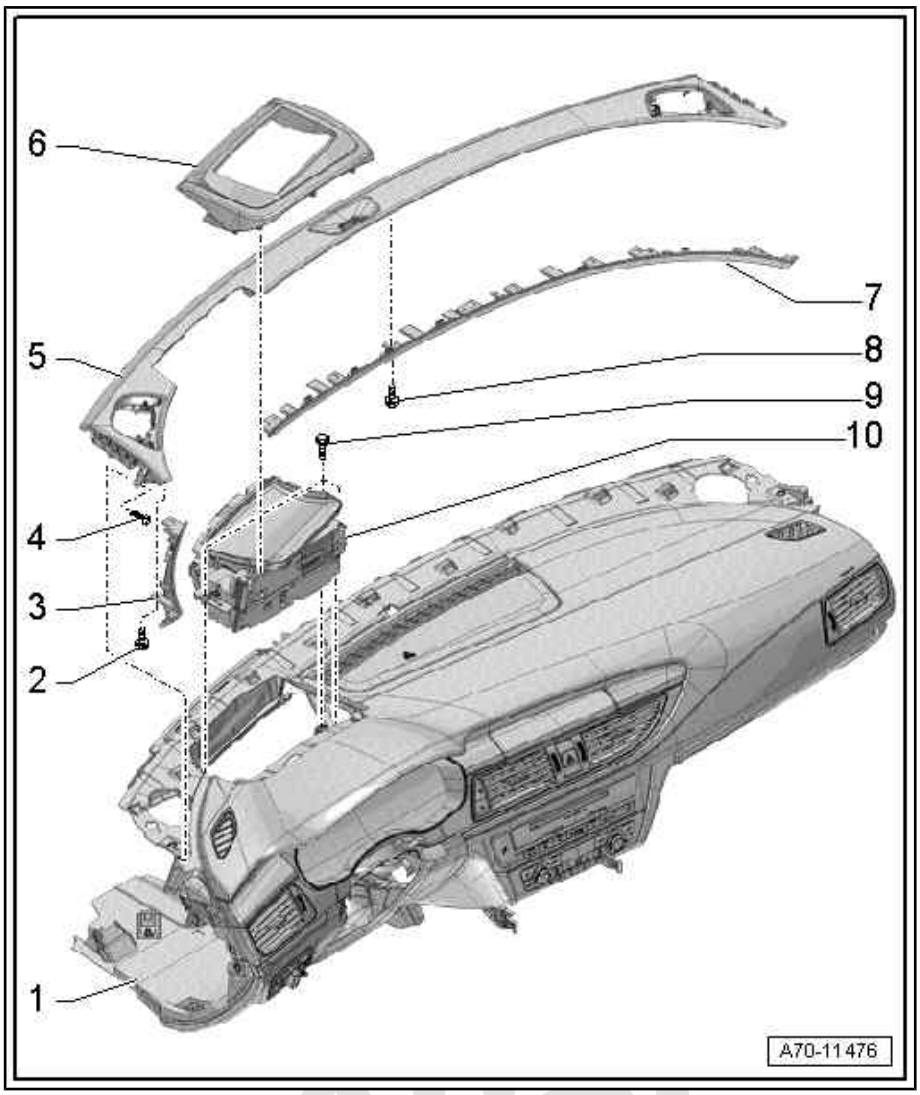
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 17 (page 234)

5 - Dash panel cover (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 239

6 - Cover

- ❑ For control unit for head-up display - J898-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.3.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (top)”, page 239
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 - Trim strip

- ❑ For dash panel cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.3.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (top)”, page 239

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 4 (page 233)

9 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - head-up display

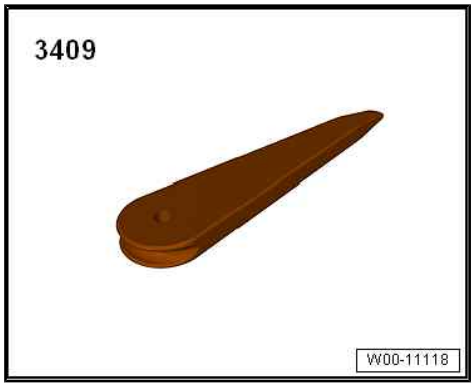
10 - Control unit for head-up display - J898-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing control unit for head-up display

3.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)

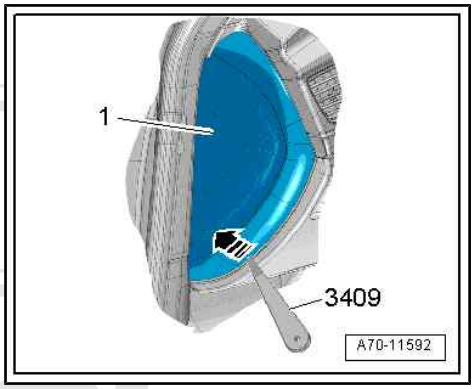
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Prise off dash panel cover (side) -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 232

3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover

⇒ “3.3.1 Removing and installing dash panel cover (rear)”, page 238

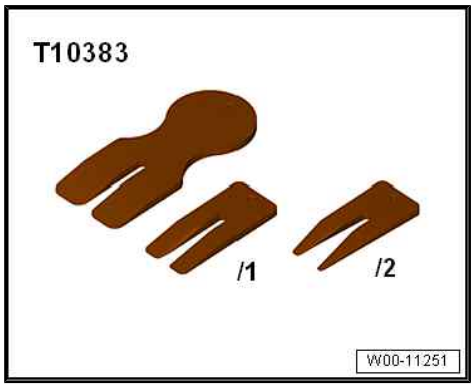
⇒ “3.3.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (top)”, page 239

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3.1 Removing and installing dash panel cover (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

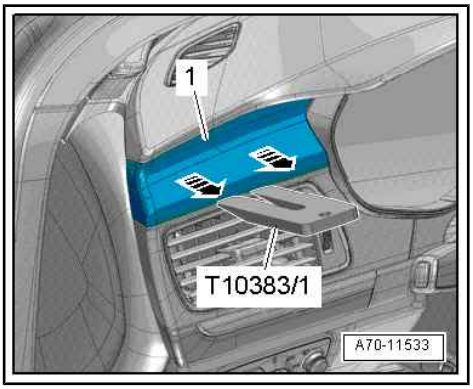
- Wedges - T10383-



Removing

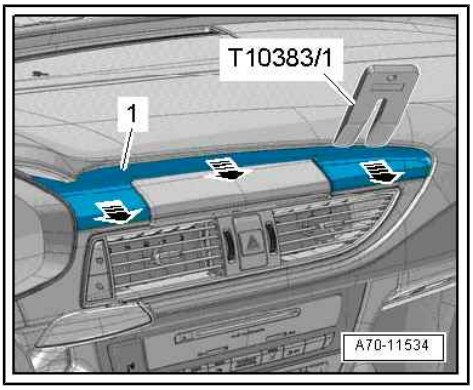
Cover (driver side):

– Unclip cover -1- with wedge -T10383/1- -arrows- and detach.



Cover (centre):

– Carefully unclip cover -1- for display unit -J685- using wedge -T10383/1- -arrows- and detach.



Installing

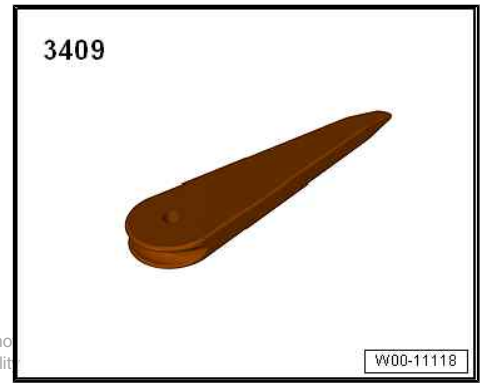
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 232

3.3.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (top)

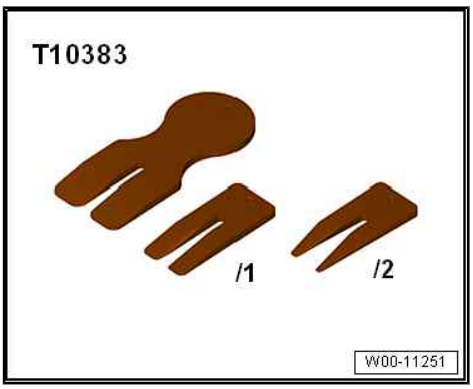
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

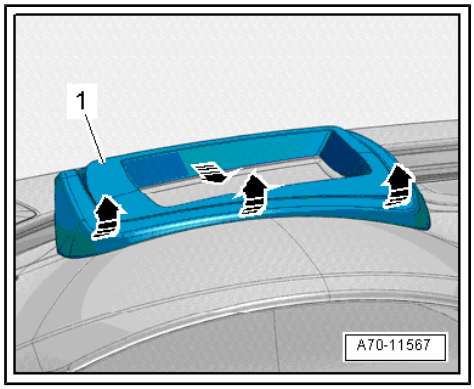


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is no permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liabilit with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

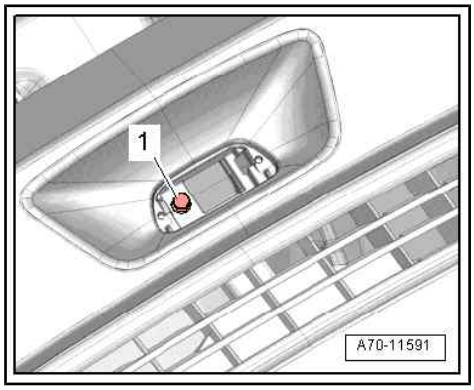
♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

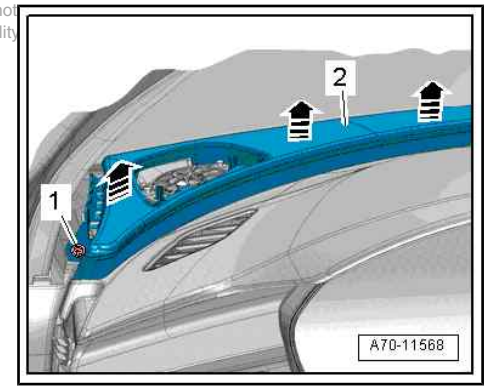


- Equipment version with head-up display: Unclip cover -1- from dash panel -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Swivel up cover and pull it out of dash panel towards rear.
- Remove A-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 279 .



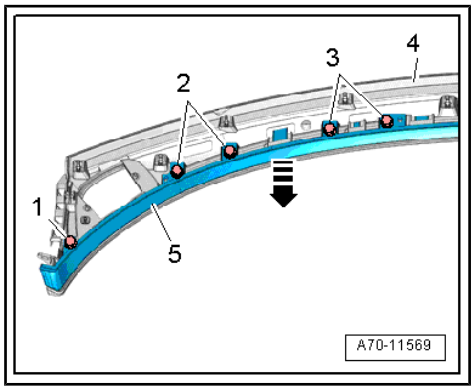
- Remove sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- .
- Remove bolt -1- for dash panel cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Remove bolts -1- (left and right) in area of A-pillar.
- Unclip dash panel cover -2- upwards from dash panel -arrows- using wedge - T10383- .
- Detach dash panel cover from dash panel towards rear.
- Detach dash panel cover to such an extent that electrical connector at treble loudspeaker can be unplugged.
- Guide dash panel cover past A-pillar on passenger side and remove.

Removing trim strip



- Remove bolts -1 ... 3-.
- Using removal wedge - 3409- , unclip trim strip -5- from dash panel cover -4- -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Fit dash panel cover in position and route electrical connectors for sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- and loudspeakers through openings in dash panel cover.
- Press on dash panel cover until it engages.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 232

3.4 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel

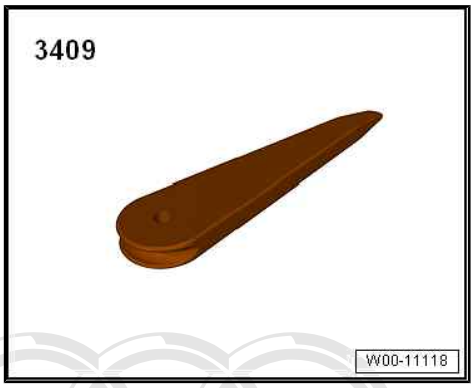
⇒ “3.4.1 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel (driver side)”, page 241

⇒ “3.4.2 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel (passenger side)”, page 241

3.4.1 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel (driver side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

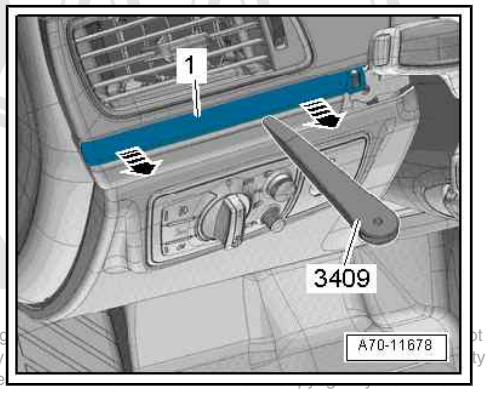
- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Remove trim cover for dash panel insert ⇒ page 24 .

– Unclip dash panel trim -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

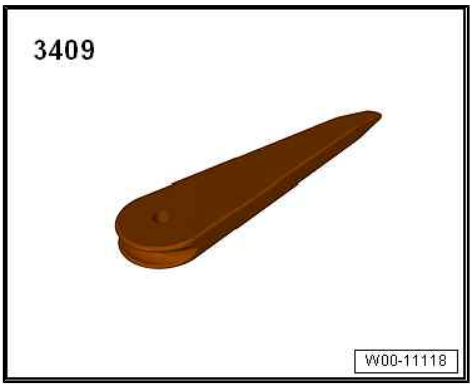
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 232

Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by with respect to the correctne

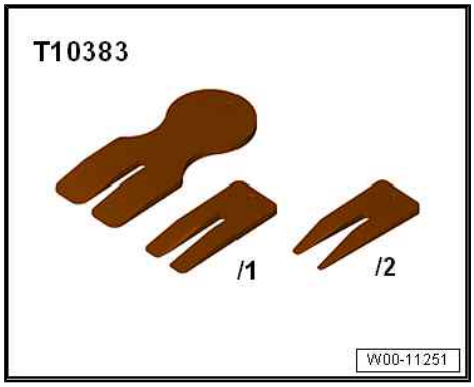
3.4.2 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel (passenger side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Wedges - T10383-



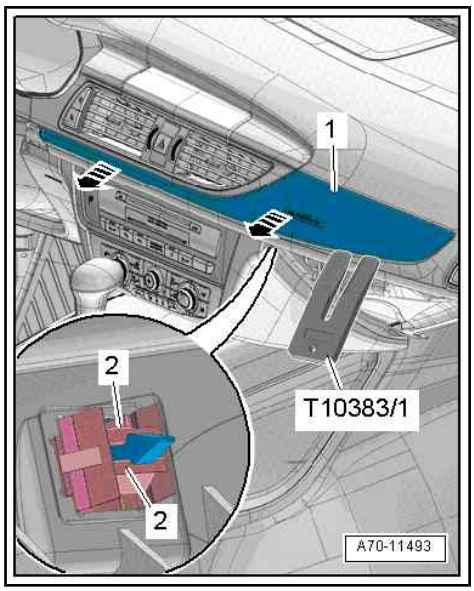
Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 28 .
– Remove trim cover for dash panel insert ⇒ page 24 .
– Unclip dash panel trim -1- using wedge -T10383/1- -arrows-.
– To do so, release catches -2- of clips using removal wedge -3409- .
– Take out dash panel trim.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 232



3.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

⇒ "3.5.2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim (side)", page 243

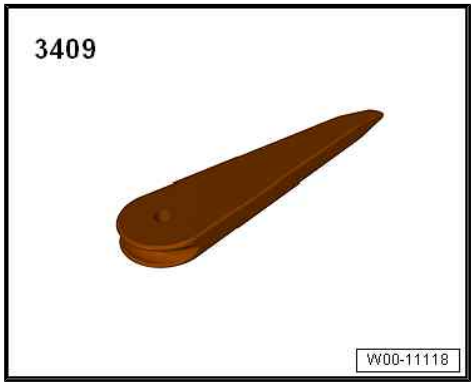
⇒ "3.5.1 Removing and installing centre loudspeaker trim", page 242

3.5.1 Removing and installing centre loudspeaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



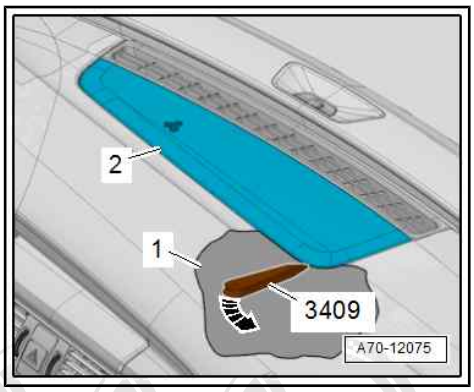
Removing

Note

- *Proceed very carefully when removing and installing loudspeaker trim, as retaining pins for loudspeaker trim can break off very easily.*
- *Make sure that you apply the removal wedge - 3409- at a very shallow angle, otherwise you may inadvertently also prise out the centre defroster vent located under the loudspeaker trim.*

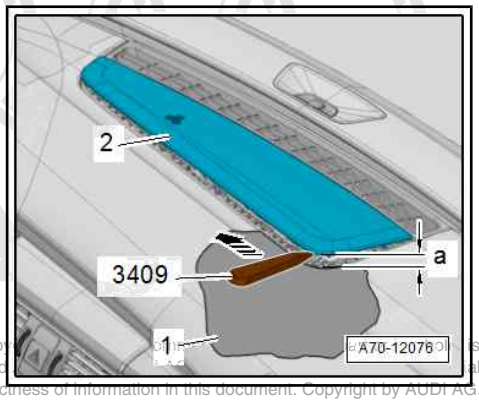
– Use a cloth -1- to protect dash panel from damage.

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , start by carefully disengaging loudspeaker trim -2- at rear right rounded edge -arrow-.



– Working gradually from right to left -arrow-, continue to disengage loudspeaker trim; do not lift loudspeaker trim higher than -a- = 30 mm.

– When loudspeaker trim is fully disengaged at rear, lift slightly, pull towards rear and remove upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

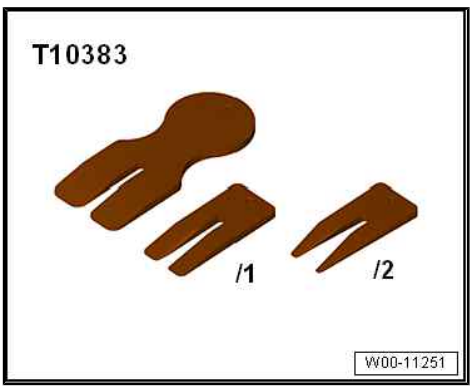
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 232

Protected by copyright. Copy... permitted unless authorised... with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

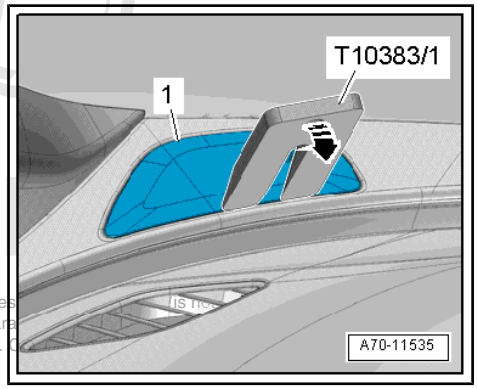
3.5.2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim (side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



Removing



Note

Proceed very carefully when removing and installing as the loudspeaker trim can be damaged quite easily.

– Carefully prise off loudspeaker trim -1- -arrow- using wedge - T10383/1- .
– Fold loudspeaker trim upwards and pull out towards rear.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Installing

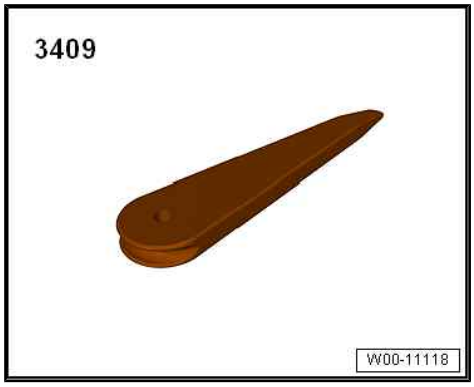
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 232

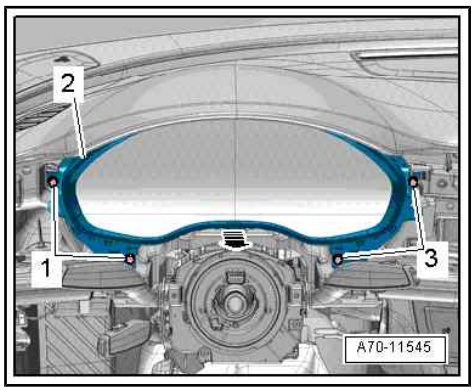
3.6 Removing and installing retaining frame for dash panel insert

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing



– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
– Remove trim cover for dash panel insert ⇒ page 24 .
– Remove dash panel vent (driver side) ⇒ page 249 .
– Remove dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ page 251 .
– Remove bolts -1- and -3-.
– Carefully unclip frame -2- from dash panel insert -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 232

3.7 Removing and installing dash panel

Removing

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Move front seats as far towards rear as possible and tilt backrests to 45°.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ page 140 .

– Remove steering wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 22 .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 28 .

– Remove dash panel vent (driver side) ⇒ page 249 .

– Remove dash panel vent (passenger side) ⇒ page 250 .

– Remove dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ page 251 .

– Remove frame for dash panel insert ⇒ page 244 .

– Remove dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert .

– Remove display unit -J685- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing infotainment system display .

– Remove Climatronic control unit - J255- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit .

– Remove control unit 1 for information electronics - J794- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing control unit 1 for information electronics - J794- .

– Remove dash panel cover (top) ⇒ page 239 .

– Remove centre loudspeaker from dash panel ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Removing and installing centre loudspeaker .

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 66 .

– Country-specific version with knee airbag: Remove bracket for knee airbag ⇒ page 262 .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

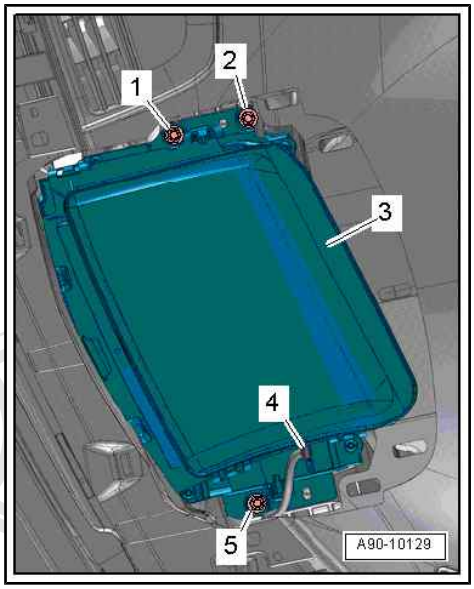
– Unplug electrical connectors for airbag (front passenger side) ⇒ page 146 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove immobiliser reader coil - D2- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Immobiliser; Removing and installing immobiliser reader coil .

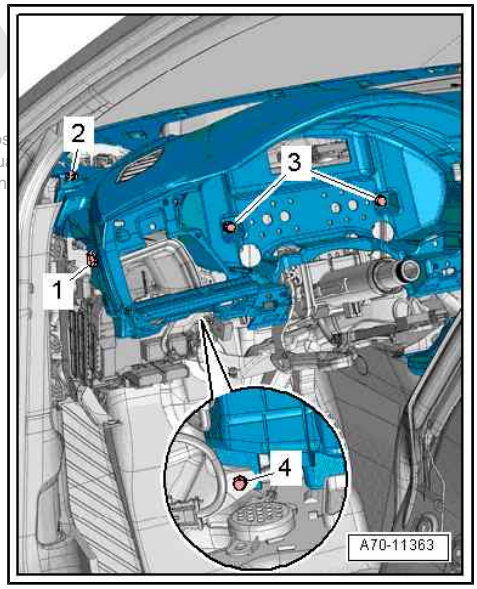
– Equipment version with head-up display: Remove bolts -1, 2, 5- and pull control unit for head-up display - J898- loosely out towards rear together with dash panel.

– To do so, lift out control unit -3- slightly and unplug electrical connector -4-.

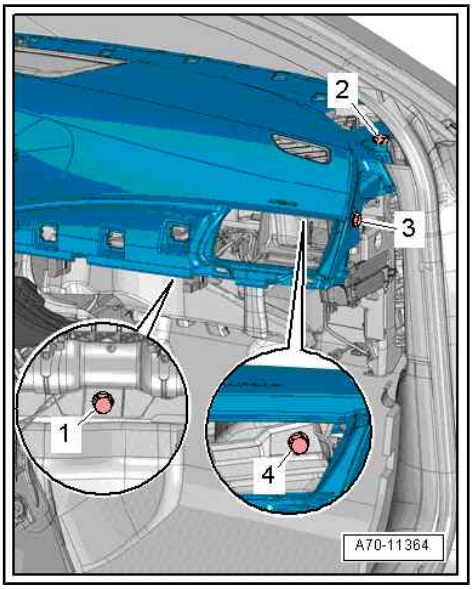


– Unscrew bolts -1 ... 4- for dash panel from dash panel cross member (driver side).

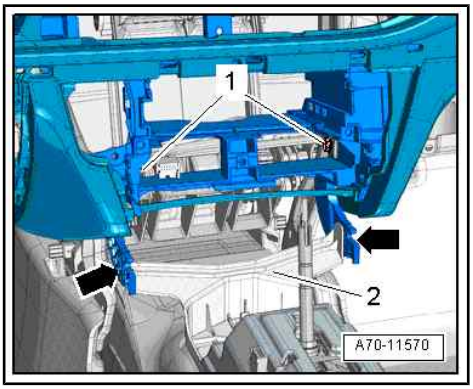
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen



– Unscrew bolts -1 ... 4- for dash panel from dash panel cross member (passenger side).



– Unscrew bolts -1- for dash panel from dash panel cross member (centre).



Note

A second mechanic is required for detaching the dash panel.

– Disengage dash panel (bottom) at bracket -2- -arrows-.
– Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring harnesses clear.
– Carefully detach dash panel from dash panel cross member towards rear.
– Take dash panel out of passenger compartment and set it down on a soft surface.

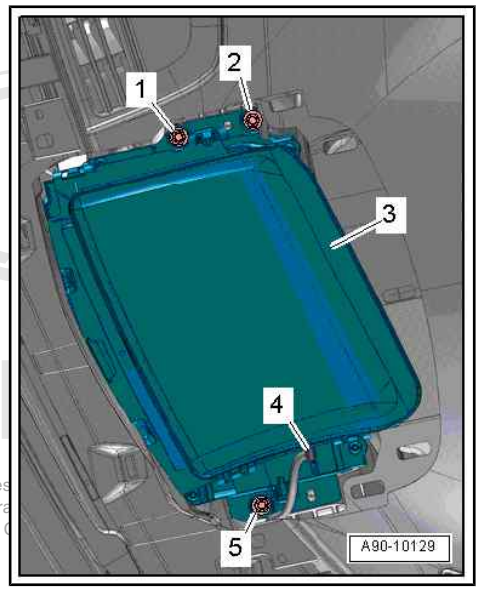
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

WARNING

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

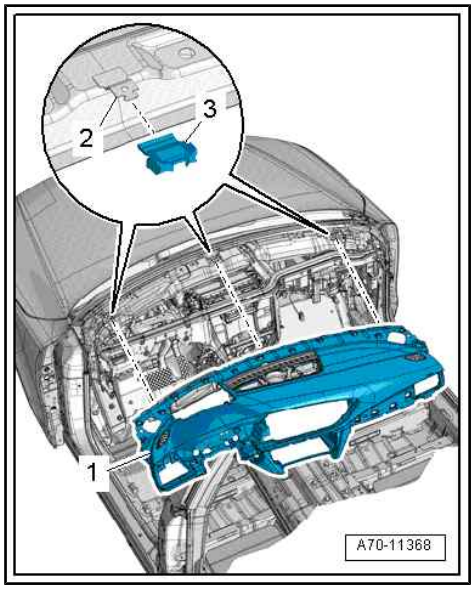
– Place dash panel in position and route electrical connectors for sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- and loudspeakers through openings in dash panel.
– Equipment version with head-up display: Apply control unit for head-up display -3- with dash panel.
– Plug in electrical connector -4- and tighten bolts -1, 2, 5- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - head-up display .



Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Check whether a rubber buffer -3- has been fitted on each of the dash panel mountings -2- at the lower windscreen frame.

– When inserting dash panel -1-, make sure mountings for dash panel engage in box-shaped sections on underside of dash panel.



WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Align dash panel and tighten bolts.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 232

3.8 Removing and installing dash panel vents

⇒ "3.8.1 Removing and installing dash panel vent (driver side)", page 249

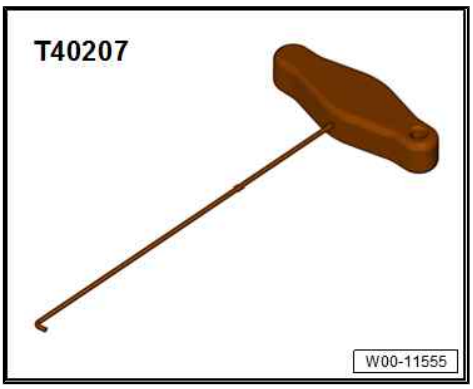
⇒ "3.8.2 Removing and installing dash panel vent (passenger side)", page 250

⇒ "3.8.3 Removing and installing dash panel vent (centre)", page 251

3.8.1 Removing and installing dash panel vent (driver side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hook - T40207-



Audi

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

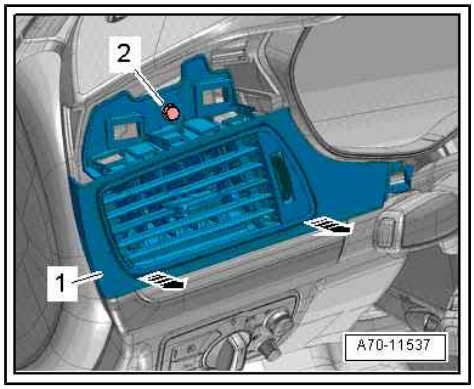
– Remove trim cover for dash panel insert ⇒ page 24 .

– Remove dash panel trim (driver side) ⇒ page 241 .

– Remove cover for dash panel vent ⇒ page 238 .

– Remove light switch - E1- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel .

– Remove bolt -2-.



Note

A hole is provided on both sides of the vent for engaging the hook -T40207- .

– Carefully insert hook - T40207- between louvres and engage at side of vent.
– Working alternately on both sides, carefully pull vents -1- out of openings -arrows-.
– Reach through installation opening for light switch, unplug electrical connector and detach dash panel vent.

Installing

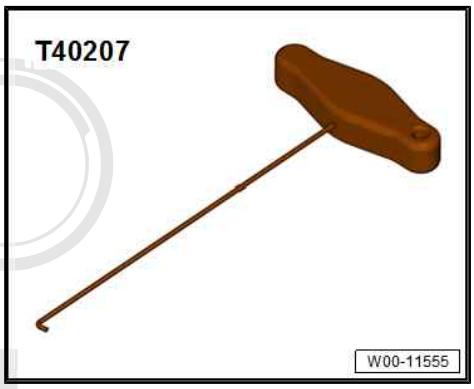
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 232

3.8.2 Removing and installing dash panel vent (passenger side)

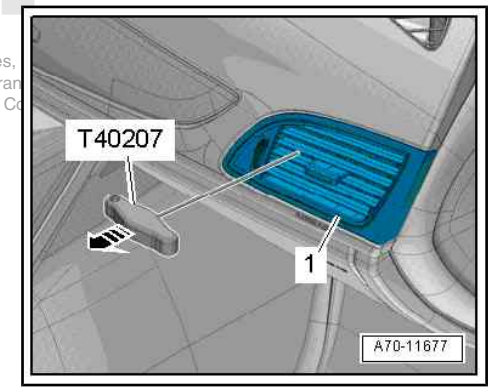
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hook - T40207-



Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co



Note

A hole is provided on both sides of the vent for engaging the hook -T40207- .

– Carefully insert hook - T40207- between louvres and engage at side of vent.
– Working alternately on each side, carefully pull vent -1- out of opening -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector.

Installing

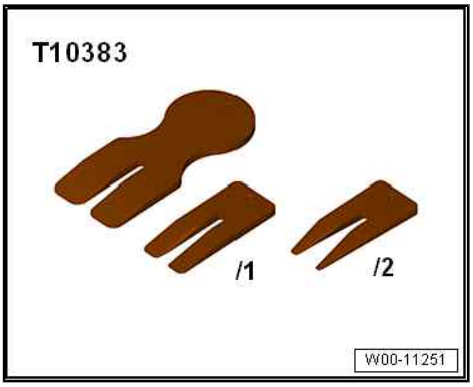
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 232

3.8.3 Removing and installing dash panel vent (centre)

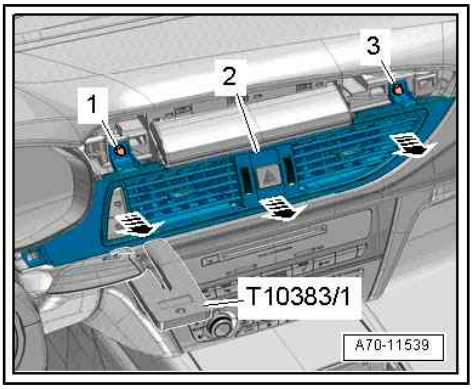
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



Removing

- Remove trim cover for dash panel insert ⇒ page 24 .
- Remove cover for display unit ⇒ page 238 .
- Remove bolts -1- and -3-.
- Using wedge - T10383/1- , prise dash panel vent -2- out of dash panel towards rear -arrows-.
- Unplug electrical connectors and detach dash panel vent.



Installing

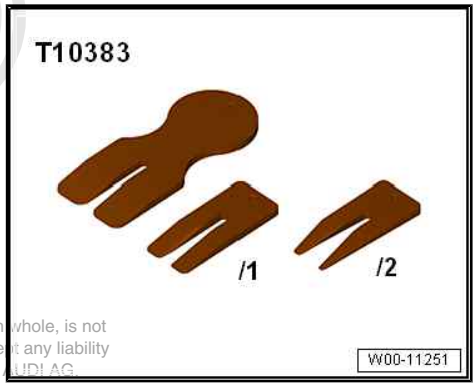
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 232

3.9 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



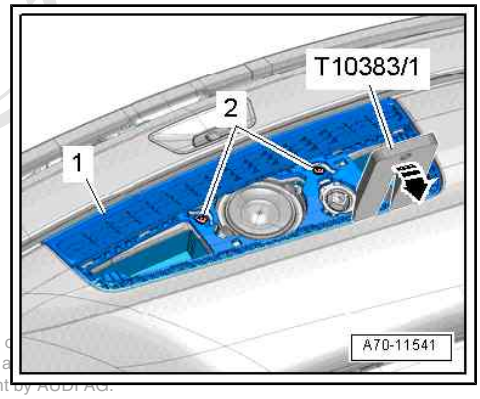
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove loudspeaker trim (centre) ⇒ page 242 .

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , prise defroster vent (rear) -1- off dash panel -arrow- and pull out towards rear.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

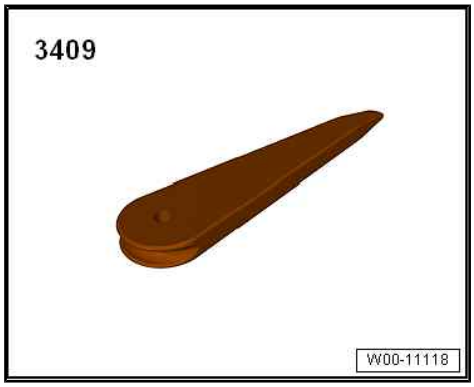
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 232

Any use by third parties, including for commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.10 Removing and installing defroster vent (side)

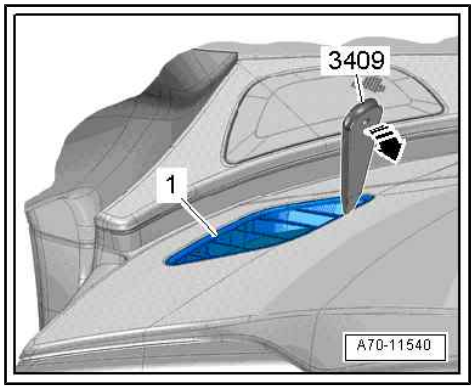
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , carefully prise defroster vent -1- upwards off dash panel -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 232

4 Dash panel cross member

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member”, page 253

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing dash panel cross member”, page 255

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing mounting bracket”, page 260

⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing brackets for glove box”, page 260

⇒ “4.5 Removing and installing brackets/support for dash panel cross member”, page 261

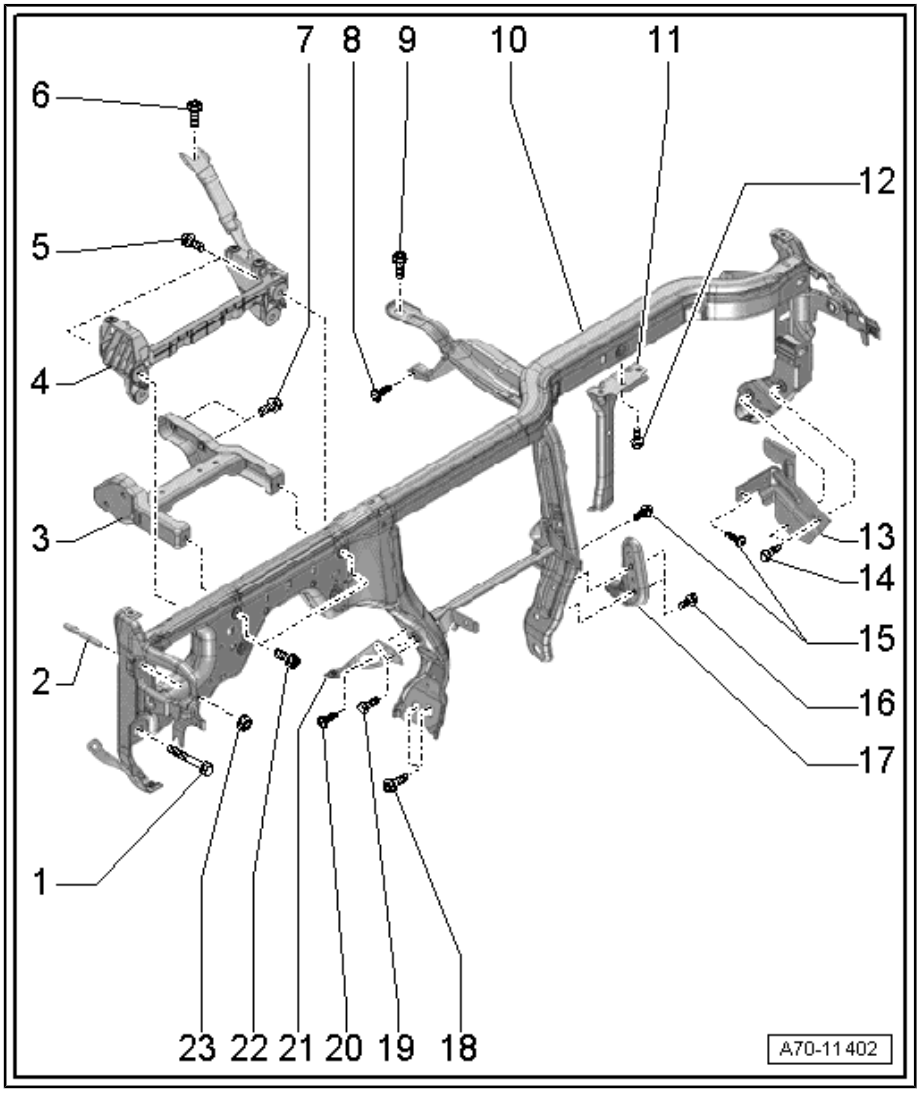
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member

Dash panel cross member ⇒ page 253

Brackets for knee airbag at cross member ⇒ page 254

Dash panel cross member



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

2 - Threaded pin
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

3 - Mounting bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 260

4 - Bracket
- ❑ For control unit for head-up display - J898-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 9 Nm

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 20 Nm

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 20 Nm

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 3.6 Nm

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 20 Nm

10 - Cross member
- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 255

11 - Bracket

- ❑ For glove box/knee airbag
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 261

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

13 - Bracket

- ❑ For air conditioning unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 261

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

15 - Bolts

- ❑ 3.6 Nm

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

17 - Bracket

- ❑ For glove box
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 260

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

18 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 25 Nm

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

20 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.6 Nm

21 - Bracket

- ❑ For dash panel cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 262

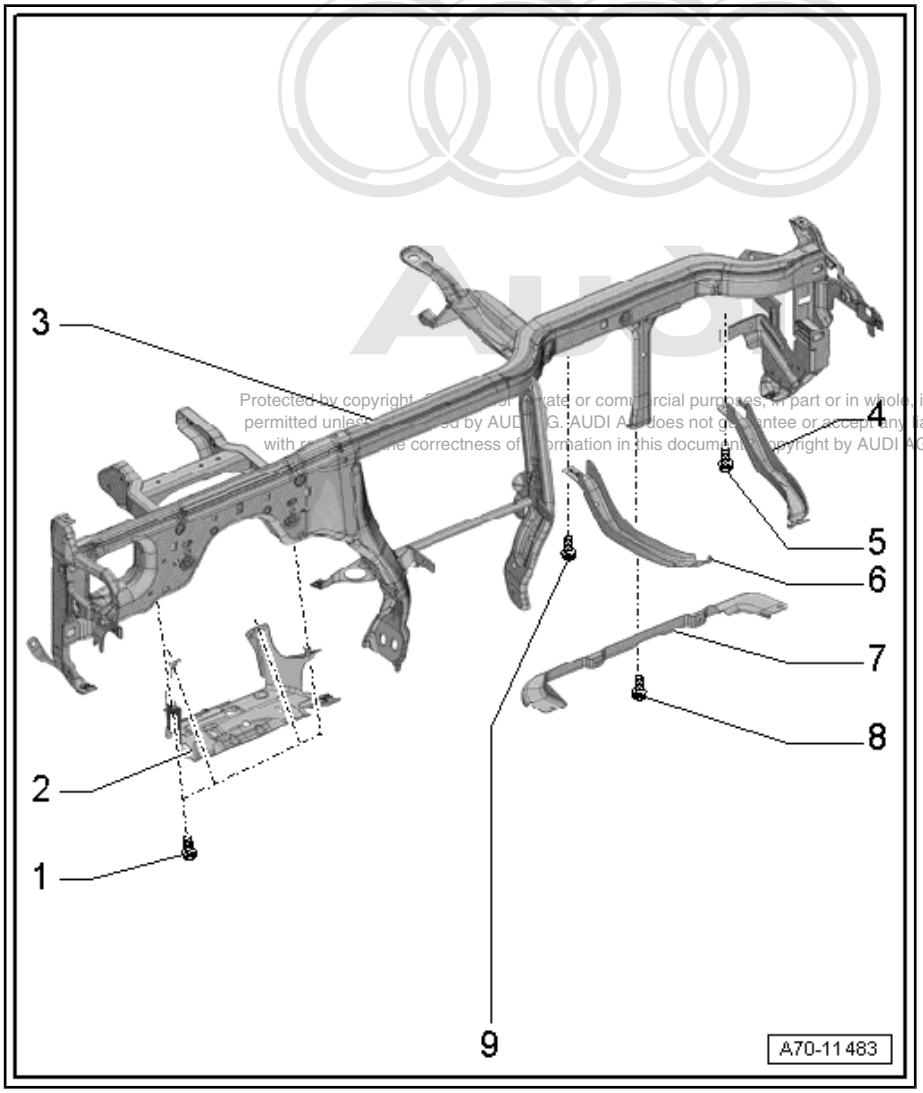
22 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

23 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ 20 Nm

Brackets for knee airbag at cross member



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ “10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag (driver side)”, page 172

2 - Bracket

- ❑ For knee airbag (driver side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “10.2.1 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (driver side)”, page 174

3 - Cross member

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 255

4 - Bracket (right-side)

- ❑ For knee airbag
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 262
- ❑ Insert bracket in mounting with rubber grommet

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

6 - Bracket (left-side)

- ❑ For knee airbag
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 262
- ❑ Insert bracket in mounting with rubber grommet

7 - Support

- ❑ For knee airbag
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “10.2.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (front passenger side)”, page 177

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 21

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

4.2 Removing and installing dash panel cross member

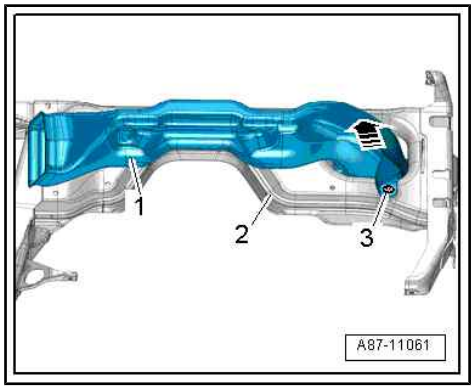
Removing

– Remove dash panel ⇒ page 244 .

– Country-specific version with knee airbag: Remove knee airbag (driver side) ⇒ page 174 .

– Unbolt steering column from dash panel cross member and set it down on floor of vehicle ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .

– Unscrew bolt -3- from fastener and disengage air duct -1- for dash panel vent (left-side) on driver side at dash panel cross member -2-.



– Remove air duct for dash panel vent (right-side) on passenger side at dash panel cross member ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

– Remove air duct for defroster vent and vent for indirect ventilation for windscreen ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air duct for defroster vent .

– Remove air duct for dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air duct for dash panel vent (centre) .

– Remove bracket for air conditioning unit ⇒ page 261 .

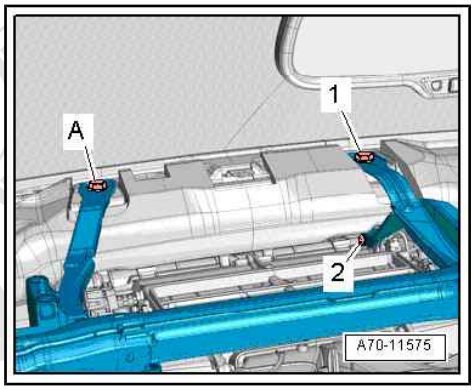
– Detach fuse holder B - SB- (left-side) and fuse holder C - SC- (right-side) from dash panel cross member ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .

– Unplug electrical connectors, unclip wires at dash panel cross member and move clear.

– Remove bolt -1- at brace at top of dash panel cross member.

– Remove bolt -2- for air conditioning unit at brace at top of dash panel cross member.

– Equipment version with head-up display: Remove bolt -A- from bracket for control unit for head-up display.



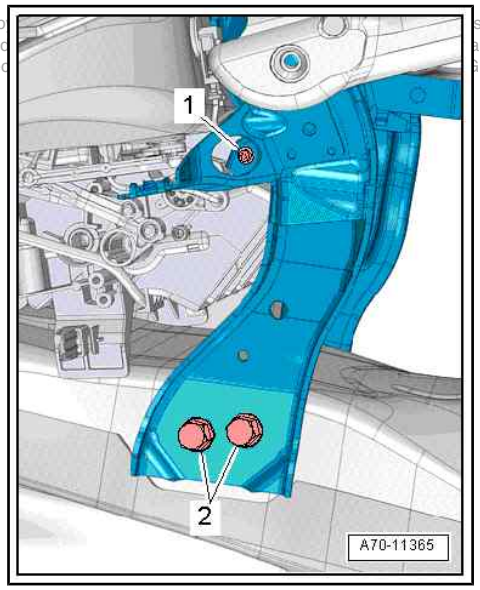
– Unscrew bolt -1- for air conditioning unit (both sides) at support for dash panel cross member.

Reproduction not permitted. Copyright. Copyright unless authorised with respect to the correctness

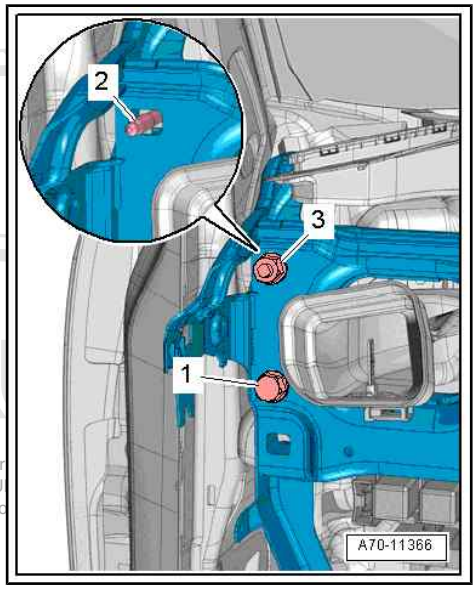
Caution

Mark the vertical and side positions at the dash panel cross member for re-installation.

– Remove bolts -2- (left and right) for support for dash panel cross member.



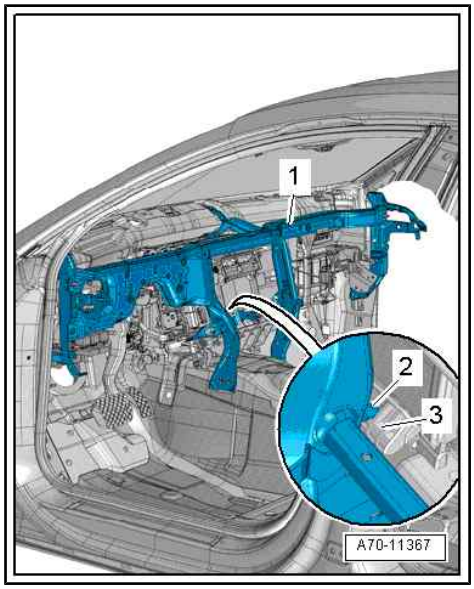
– Unscrew bolt -1- (left and right) for dash panel cross member.
– Unscrew nut -3- (left and right) for dash panel cross member.
– Remove threaded pin -2- for dash panel cross member.



Protected by copyright. Copying for
permitted unless authorised by AU
with respect to the correctness o

Note

A second mechanic is required to detach dash panel cross member.



- Pull dash panel cross member (driver side) -1- carefully upwards and at the same time disengage it from air conditioning unit -3- at stop bracket -2-.
- Pull dash panel cross member off threaded pin at A-pillar (passenger side).
- Carefully swivel top of dash panel cross member to rear and at the same time pull it upwards.
- Take dash panel cross member out of passenger compartment.

Installing

- Carefully insert dash panel cross member -1- in body.
- Engage dash panel cross member at air conditioning unit -3- and at stop bracket -2-.
- Screw threaded pin into mounting at A-pillar (driver side) and tighten.
- Align dash panel cross member with A-pillar in accordance with marks for cross member (made during removal).
- Tighten nuts and bolts for dash panel cross member at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

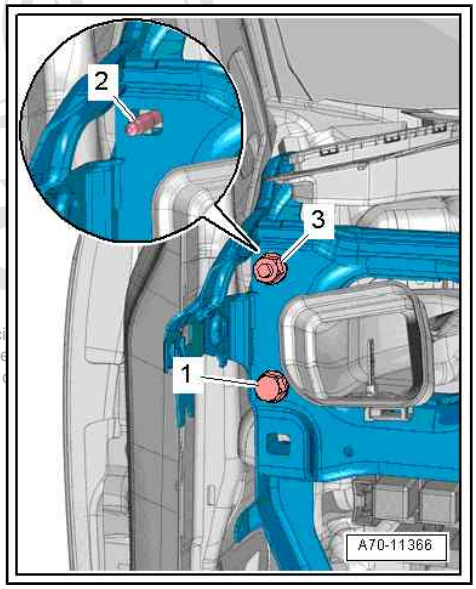
- Install steering column ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Exploded view - steering column .

Checking installation position of dash panel cross member

- Insert dash panel to check if it fits correctly.
- Bolt dash panel (left and right) to dash panel cross member.
- Close doors.
- Check whether gap between dash panel and door is the same on left and right.
- Check whether height of dash panel coincides with recesses in door trim.
- If setting is incorrect, note down the lateral and/or vertical deviation.
- Unscrew bolts on dash panel cross member.
- Adjust dash panel cross member in accordance with notes on deviations.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tighten bolt -1- and nut -3- for dash panel cross member at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerci
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe
with respect to the correctness of information in this

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

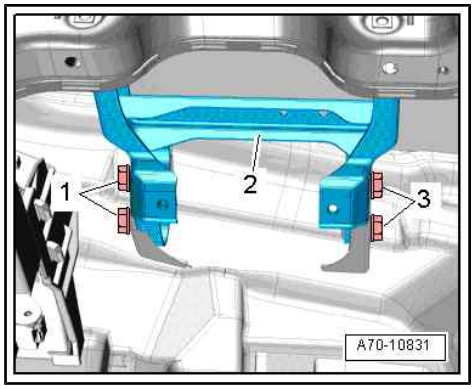
Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member", page 253

4.3 Removing and installing mounting bracket



Removing

– Remove dash panel cross member ⇒ page 255 .

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -3- and take out mounting bracket -2- downwards.

Installing

– Insert mounting bracket in mounting at windscreen frame and fix loosely in position with bolts -1 and 3-.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

Mounting bracket can only be positioned correctly if cross member is fitted.

– First bolt steering column with mounting bracket to cross member ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Exploded view - steering column .

– Then tighten bolts -1- and -3- for mounting bracket.

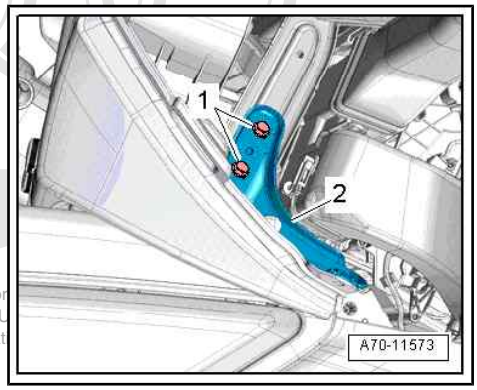
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member”, page 253

4.4 Removing and installing brackets for glove box

⇒ “4.4.1 Removing and installing bracket for glove box”, page 260

⇒ “4.4.2 Removing and installing bracket for glove box - versions with knee airbag”, page 261

4.4.1 Removing and installing bracket for glove box



Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 28 .

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Detach bracket -2- for glove box.

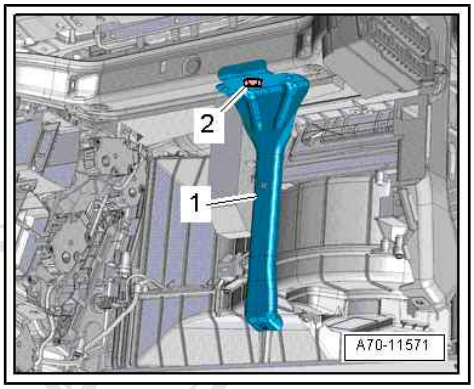
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member”, page 253

Copyright AUDI AG. All rights reserved. Any private or commercial use is prohibited unless permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

4.4.2 Removing and installing bracket for glove box - versions with knee airbag



Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 31 .

– Remove air duct for dash panel vent (right-side) on passenger side at dash panel cross member ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

– Remove bolt -2- for bracket from dash panel cross member.

– Detach bracket -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member”, page 253

4.5 Removing and installing brackets/support for dash panel cross member

⇒ “4.5.1 Removing and installing bracket for air conditioning unit”, page 261

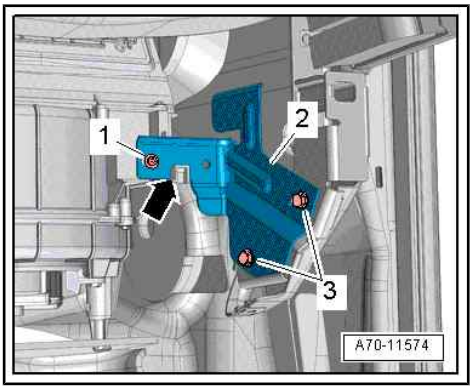
⇒ “4.5.2 Removing and installing bracket for dash panel cover”, page 262

⇒ “4.5.3 Removing and installing bracket for knee airbag”, page 262

Audi

Unless expressly stated otherwise, copying or publishing for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.5.1 Removing and installing bracket for air conditioning unit



Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 28 .

– Remove bolts -1- and -3-.

– Disengage bracket -2- at air conditioning unit -arrow- and detach.

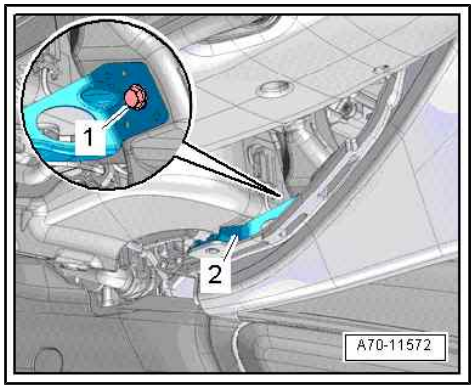
Installing

– Engage bracket at air conditioning unit -arrow- and secure in position with bolt -1-.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member”, page 253

4.5.2 Removing and installing bracket for dash panel cover



Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 22 .

– Remove bolt -1-.

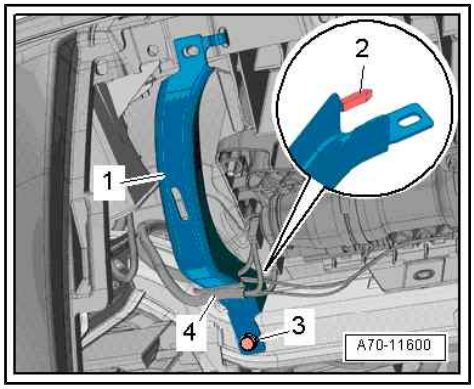
– Detach bracket -2- for dash panel cover.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member”, page 253

4.5.3 Removing and installing bracket for knee airbag



Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 31 .

– Remove air duct for dash panel vent (right-side) on passenger side at dash panel cross member ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

– Unclip cable retainer -4- at bracket.

– Remove bolt -3- for bracket from dash panel cross member.

– Detach bracket -1- with rubber grommet -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Position bracket -1- with rubber grommet -2- so that lug engages in hole in dash panel.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member”, page 253

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ “5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels”, page 263

⇒ “5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim”, page 266

⇒ “5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim”, page 268

⇒ “5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim”, page 269

⇒ “5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim”, page 270

⇒ “5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim”, page 273

⇒ “5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 275

⇒ “5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 276

⇒ “5.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim”, page 277

⇒ “5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 279

⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim”, page 281

⇒ “5.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim”, page 285

⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing D-pillar trim”, page 288

⇒ “5.14 Removing and installing foot rest”, page 291

⇒ “5.15 Removing and installing floor covering”, page 292

⇒ “5.16 Removing and installing rear shelf”, page 293

⇒ “5.17 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim”, page 295

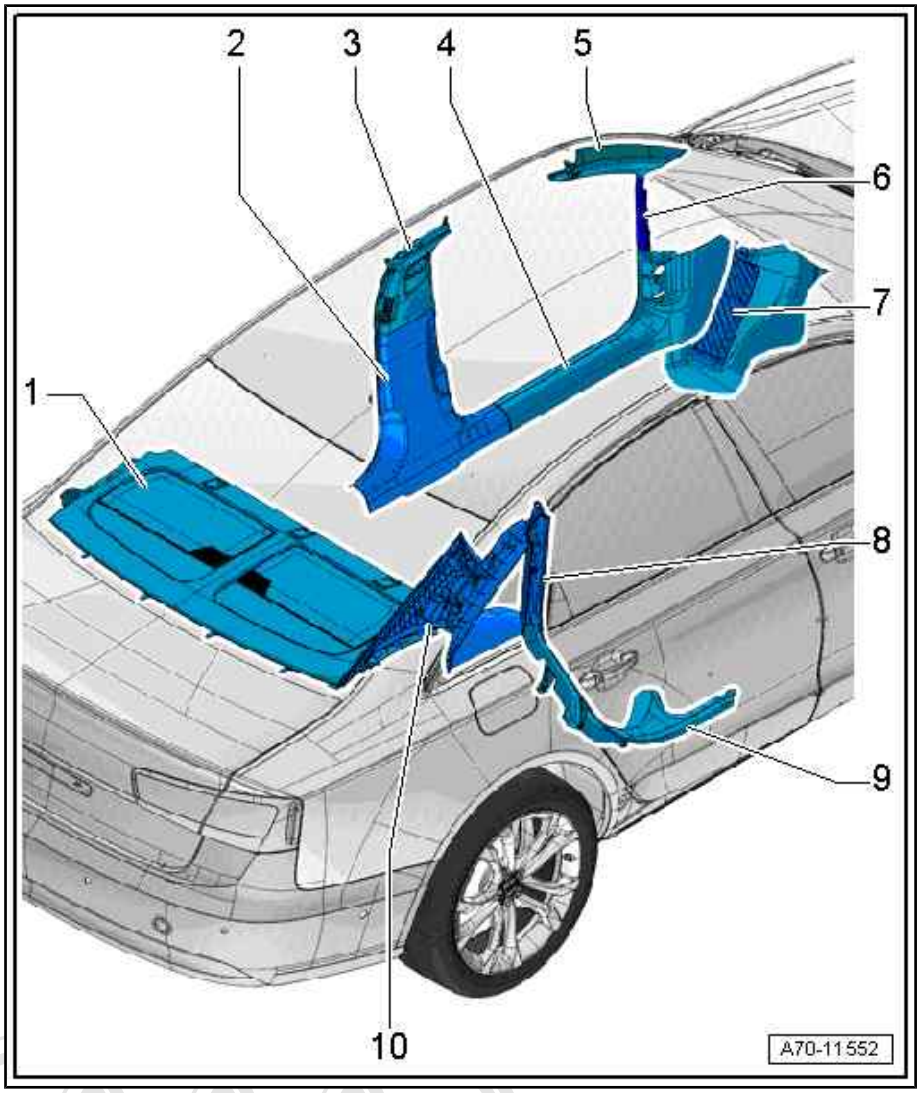
5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ “5.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, Saloon”, page 263

⇒ “5.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, Avant”, page 265

5.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, Saloon

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Rear shelf

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 276

Equipment versions:
◆ With/without sun blind

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 39

2 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 269

3 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 269

4 - Sill panel trim (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 266

5 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 268

6 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 279

7 - Floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 275

8 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270

9 - Sill panel trim (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 267

10 - D-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 273

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, Avant

1 - D-pillar trim
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 274

2 - Sill panel trim (rear)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 267

3 - C-pillar trim
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 272

4 - B-pillar trim (bottom)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 269

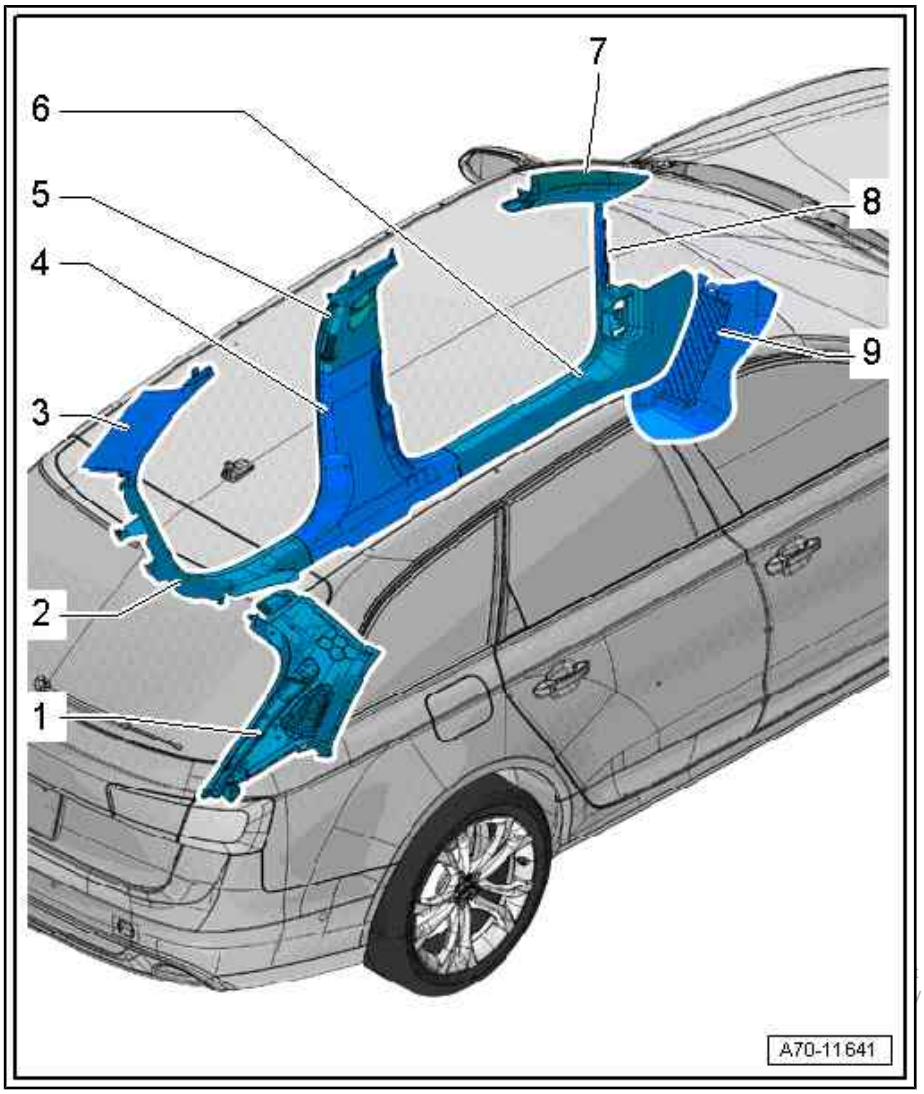
5 - B-pillar trim (top)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 269

6 - Sill panel trim (front)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 266

7 - A-pillar trim (top)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 268

8 - Trim cover for A-pillar
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 279

9 - Floor covering
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 275

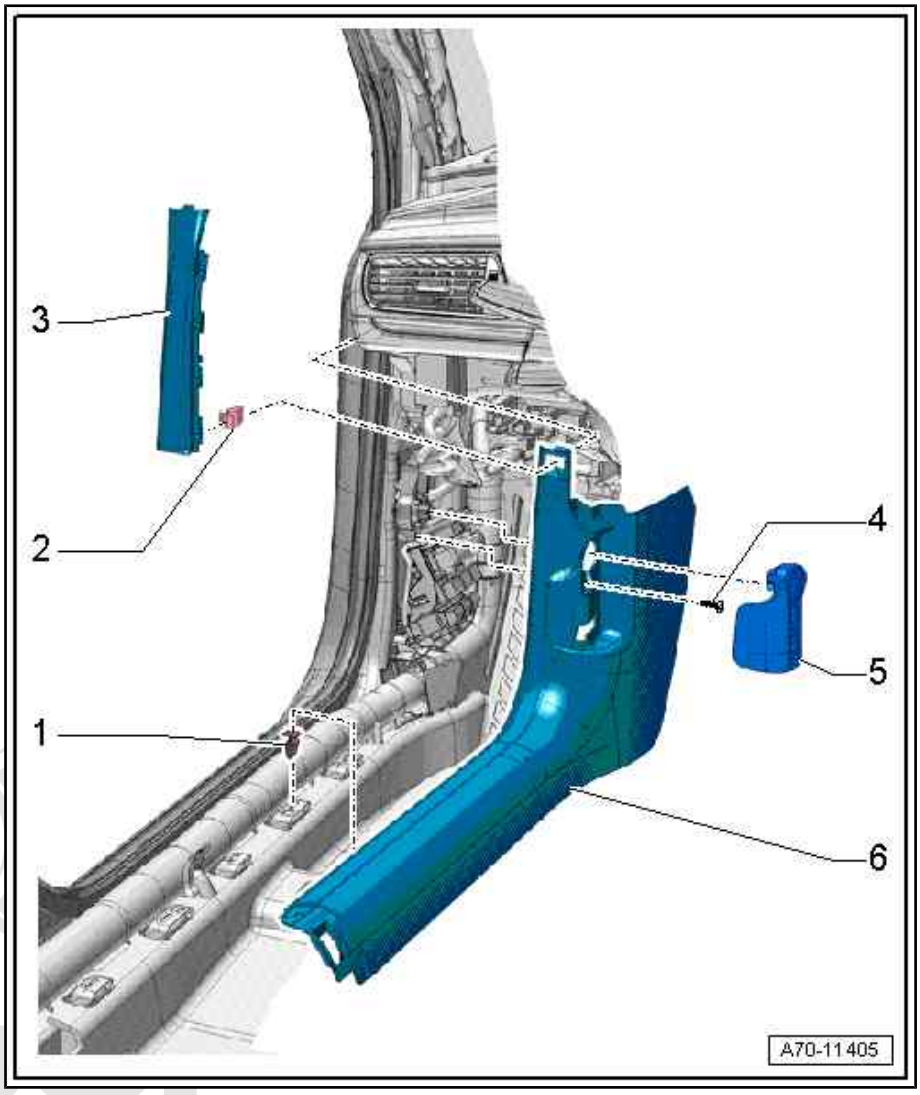


5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim

⇒ “5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim (front)”, page 266

⇒ “5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim (rear)”, page 267

5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim (front)



1 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in trim cover
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim cover for installation
- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed

3 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Engage in A-pillar trim (top)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 279

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Driver side only
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

5 - Operating lever

- ❑ For Bowden cable for bonnet lock
- ❑ Driver side only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Sill panel trim (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 277

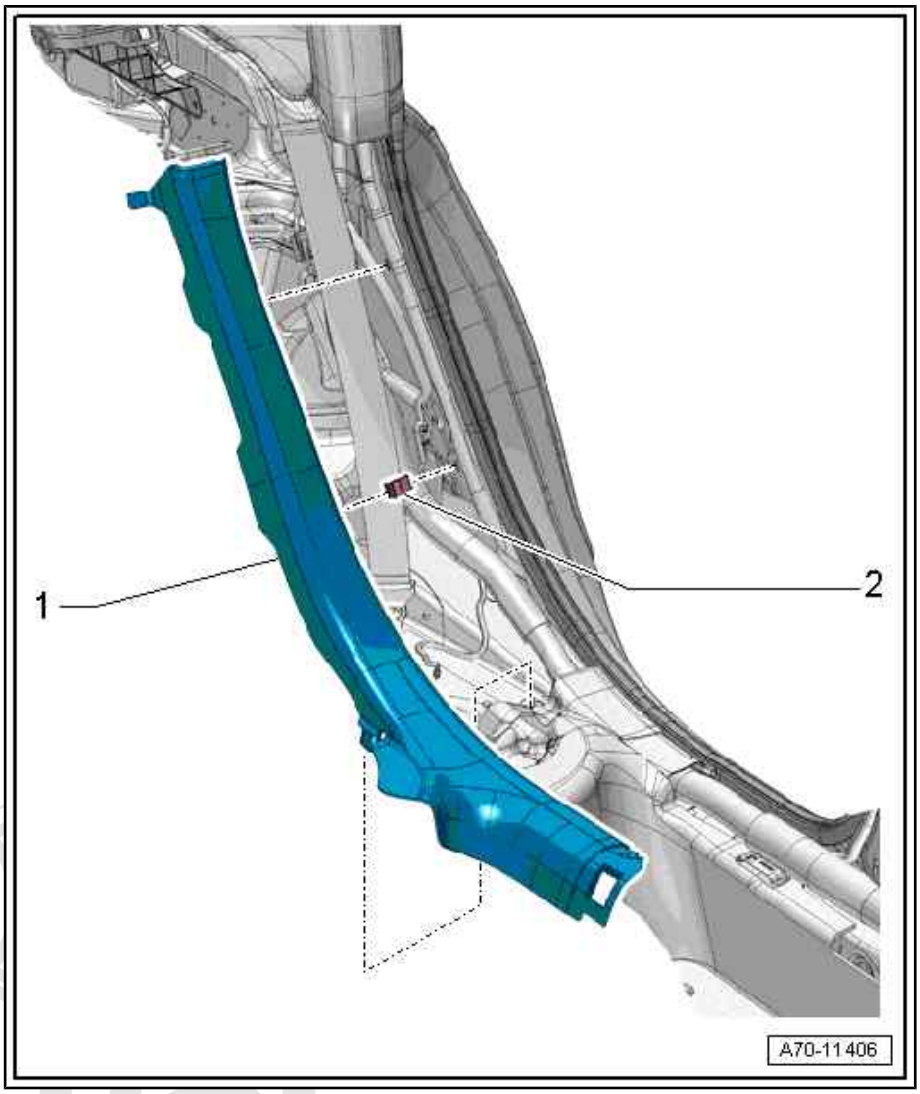
5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim (rear)

1 - Sill panel trim (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 278

2 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim

1 - Clip

- ❑ With catch
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-

2 - Fastener

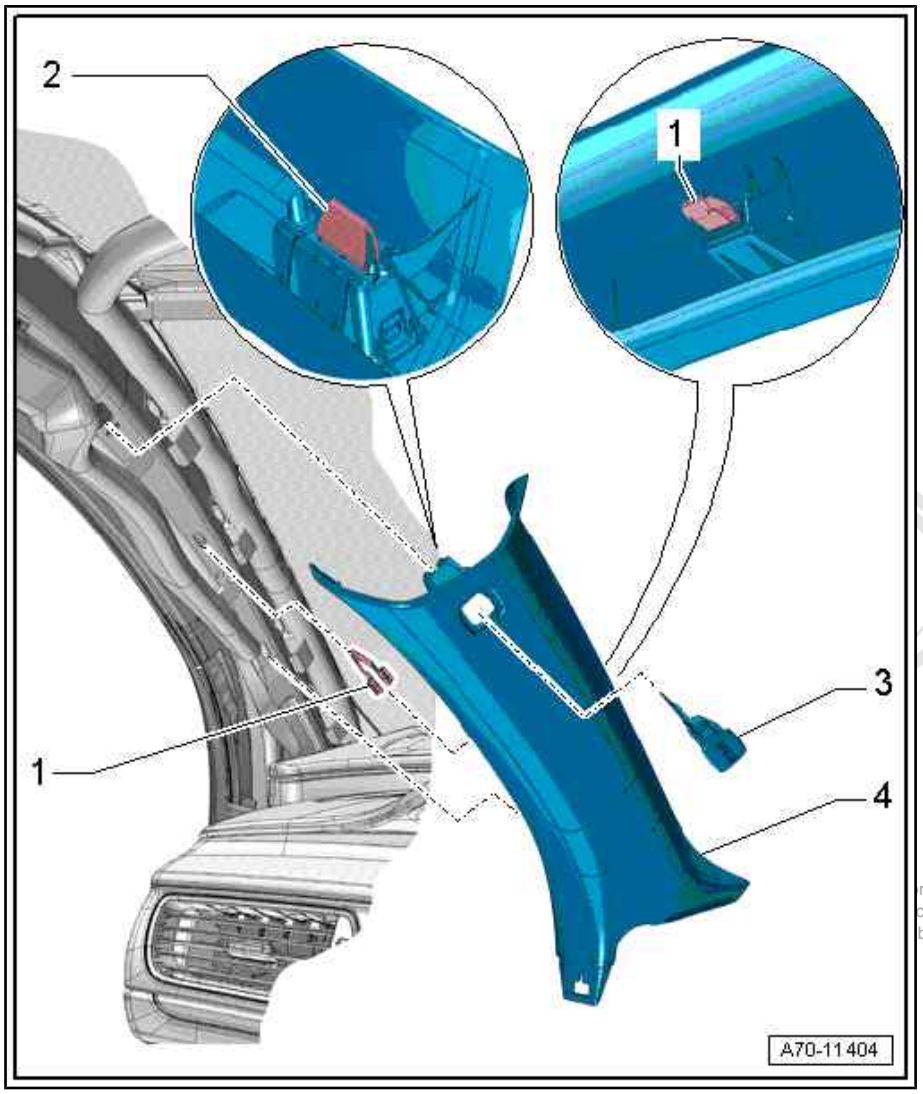
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-

3 - Expanding cap

- ❑ With “airbag” symbol
- ❑ Unclip carefully

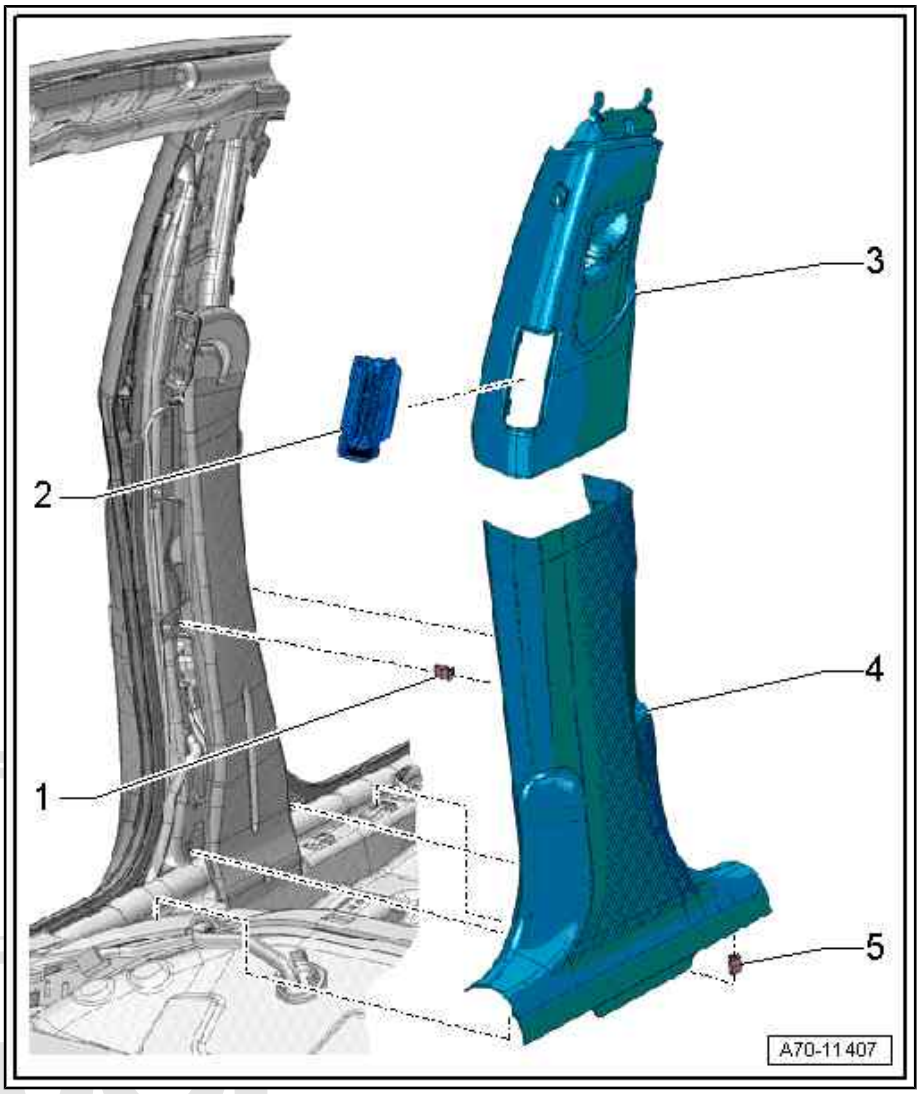
4 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 279



r in whole, is not
ccept any liability
by AUDI AG.

5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim



1 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool -T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Vent

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 281
- ❑ Plug in electrical connector, insert vent in trim at bottom and then press on until it engages audibly

3 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 282

4 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 284

5 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

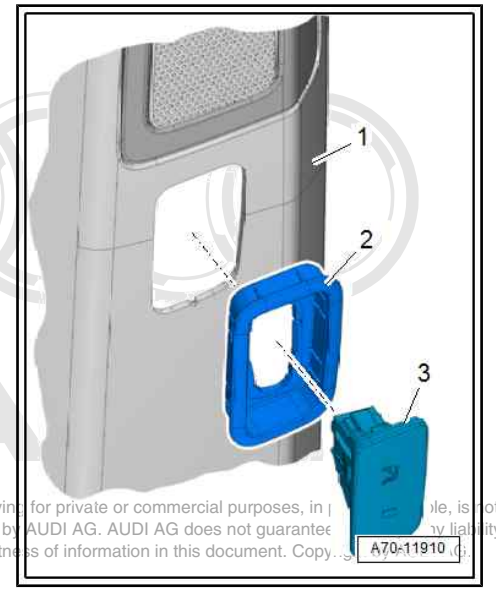
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Frame for button for air ionisation system

1 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

2 - Frame for button

3 - Button for air ionisation system - E677-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee for any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim

⇒ “5.5.1 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, Saloon”, page 270

⇒ “5.5.2 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, Avant”, page 272

5.5.1 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, Saloon

1 - C-pillar trim

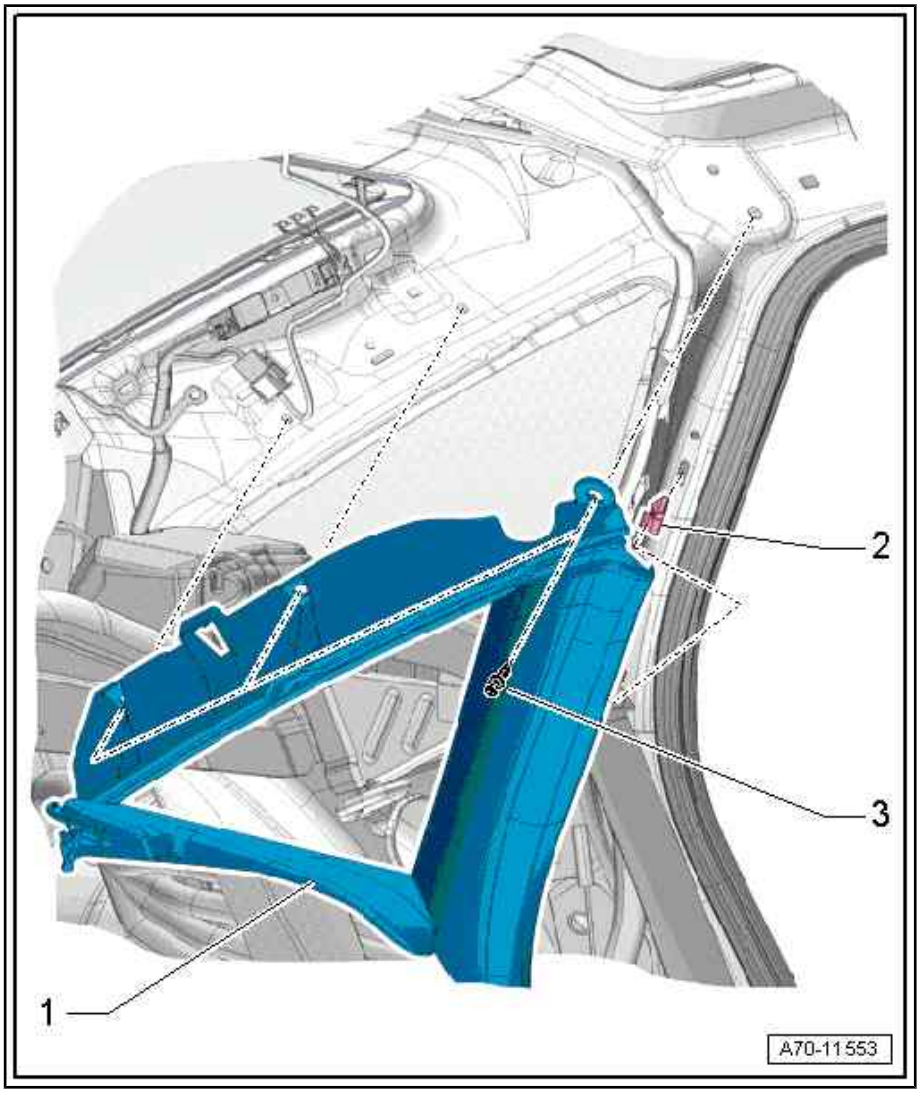
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 285

2 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed

3 - Fastener

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

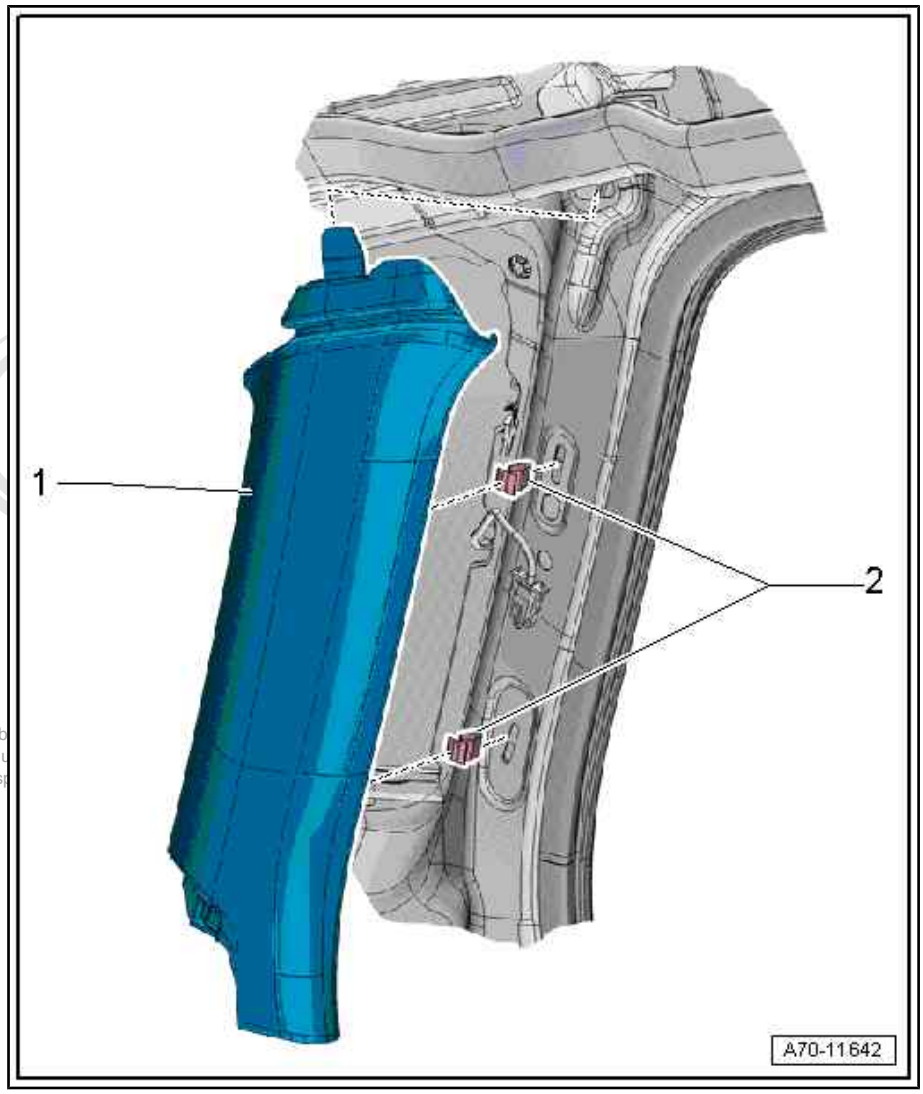
5.5.2 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, Avant

1 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 287
- ❑ Insert at top in mounting point at roof and clip into C-pillar
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal

2 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation



Protected b
permitted u
with resp

5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim

⇒ “5.6.1 Exploded view - D-pillar trim, Saloon”, page 273

⇒ “5.6.2 Exploded view - D-pillar trim, Avant”, page 274

5.6.1 Exploded view - D-pillar trim, Saloon

1 - Trim

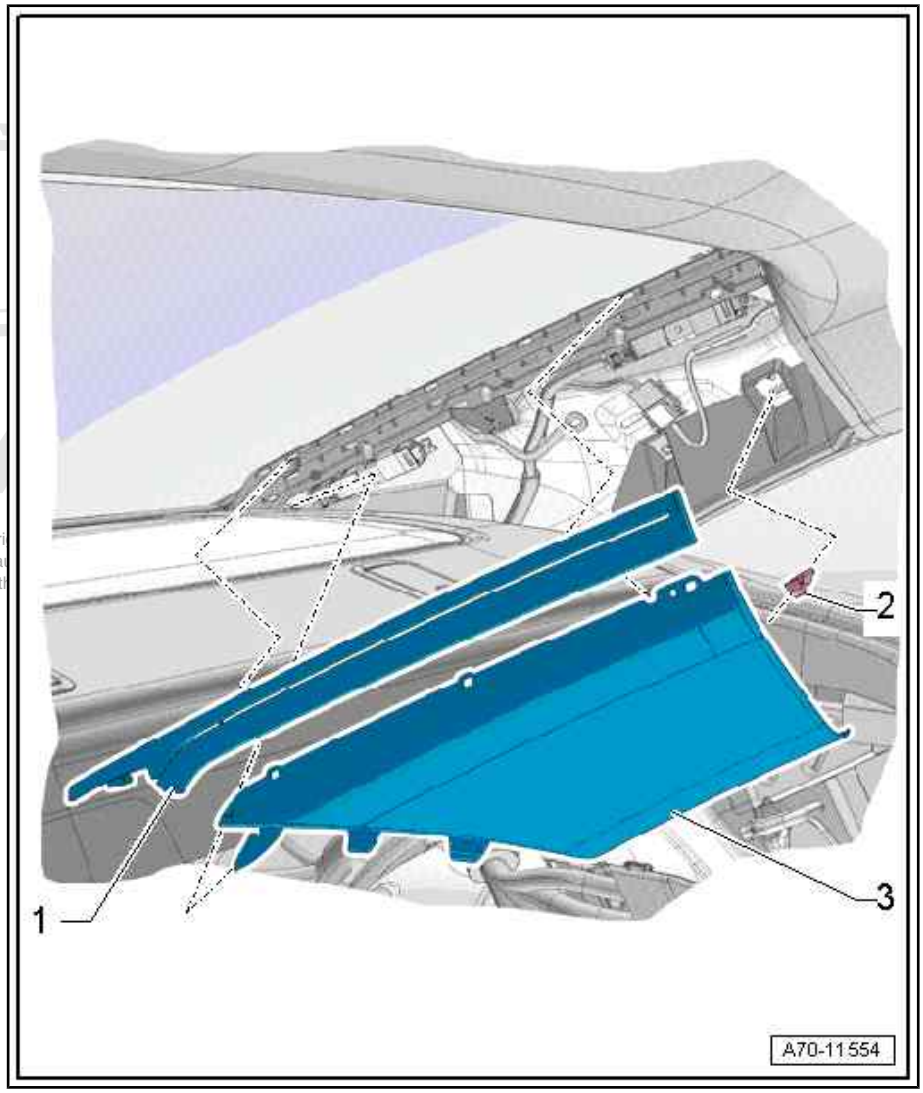
- ❑ For guide strip for sun blind
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288
- ❑ Engage in guide strip and press on until it engages

2 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

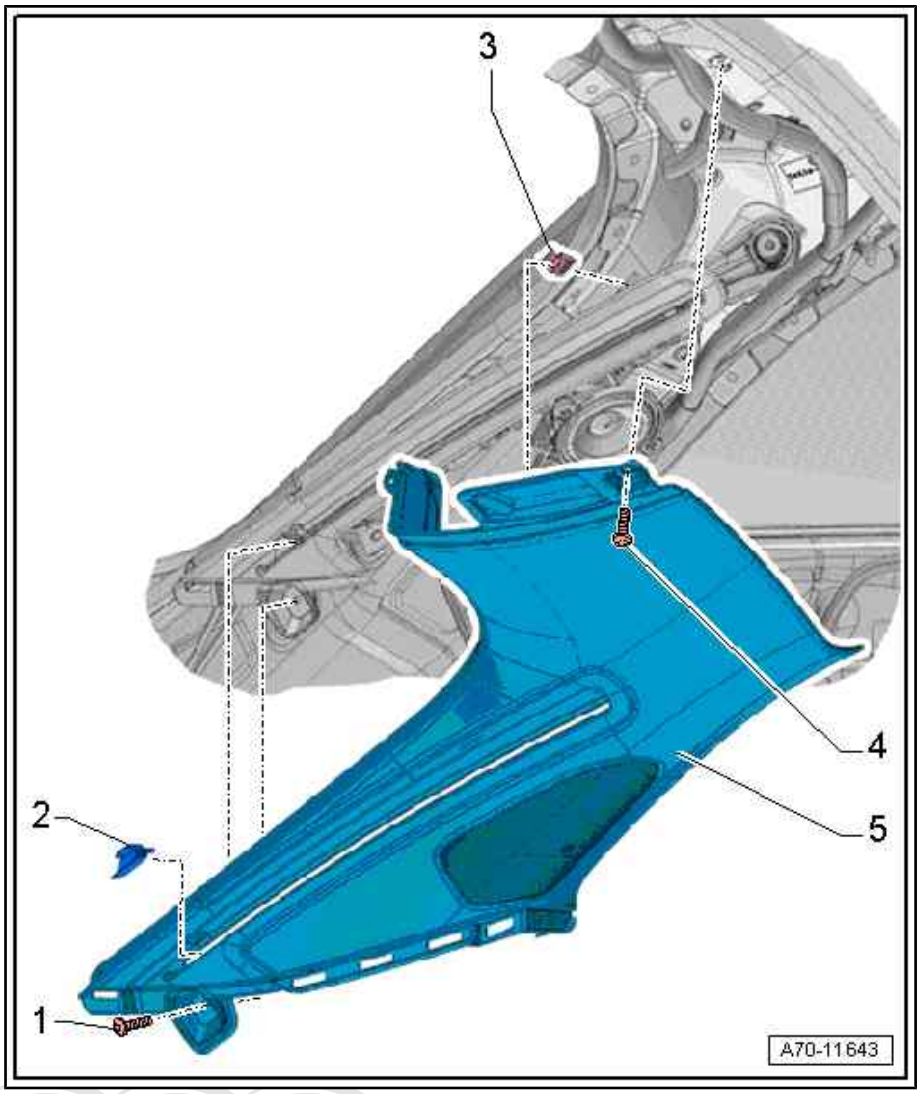
3 - D-pillar trim

- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288
- ❑ Insert in rear shelf and press on until it engages audibly



Copyright unless with respect to

5.6.2 Exploded view - D-pillar trim, Avant



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

2 - Actuator

- ❑ For luggage compartment cover
- ❑ Only on equipment version with motor for luggage compartment cover
- ❑ Clip into guide rail for luggage compartment cover

3 - Clip

- ❑ 1x or 2x (depending on equipment version)
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - D-pillar trim

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Without motor for luggage compartment cover
- ◆ With motor for luggage compartment cover
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 290
  - ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
  - ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering

1 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

2 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in foot rest

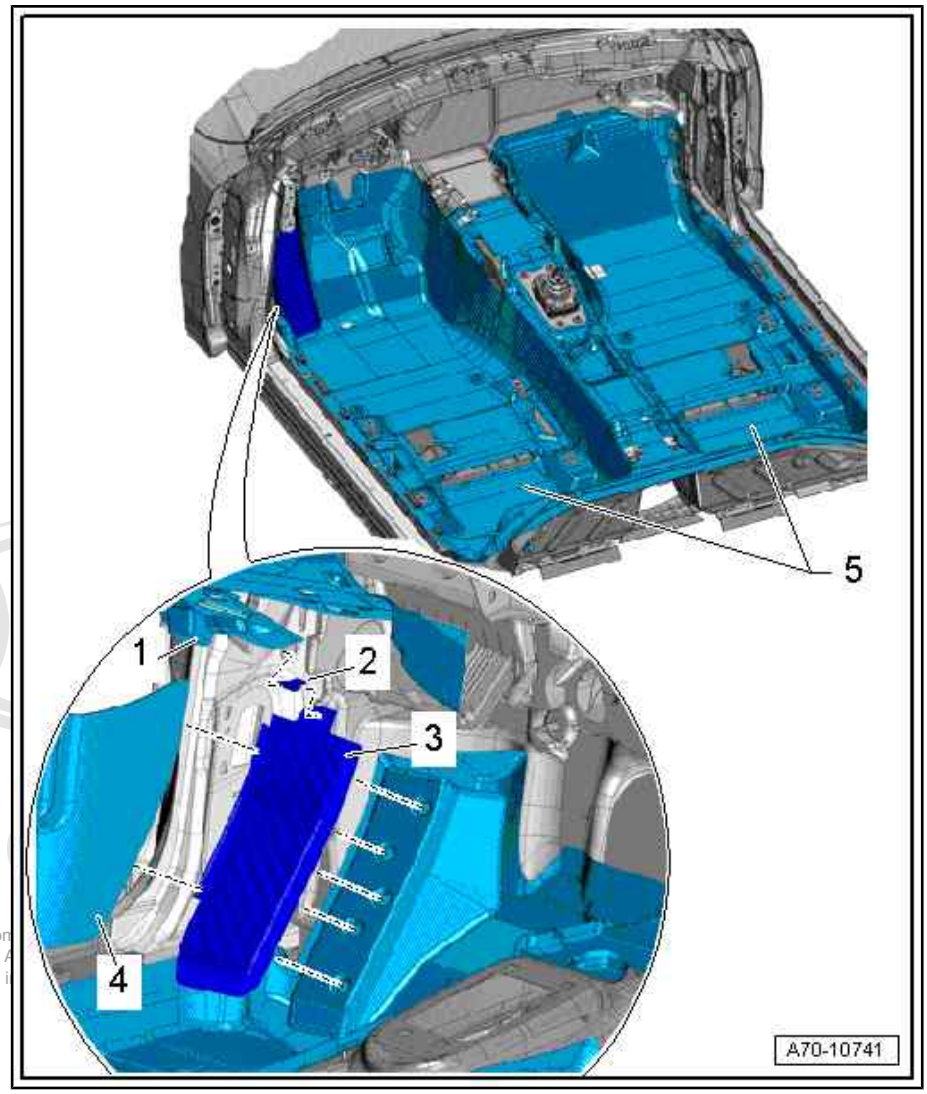
3 - Foot rest

- ❑ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291
- ❑ Must engage completely in mountings

4 - Sill panel trim (front)

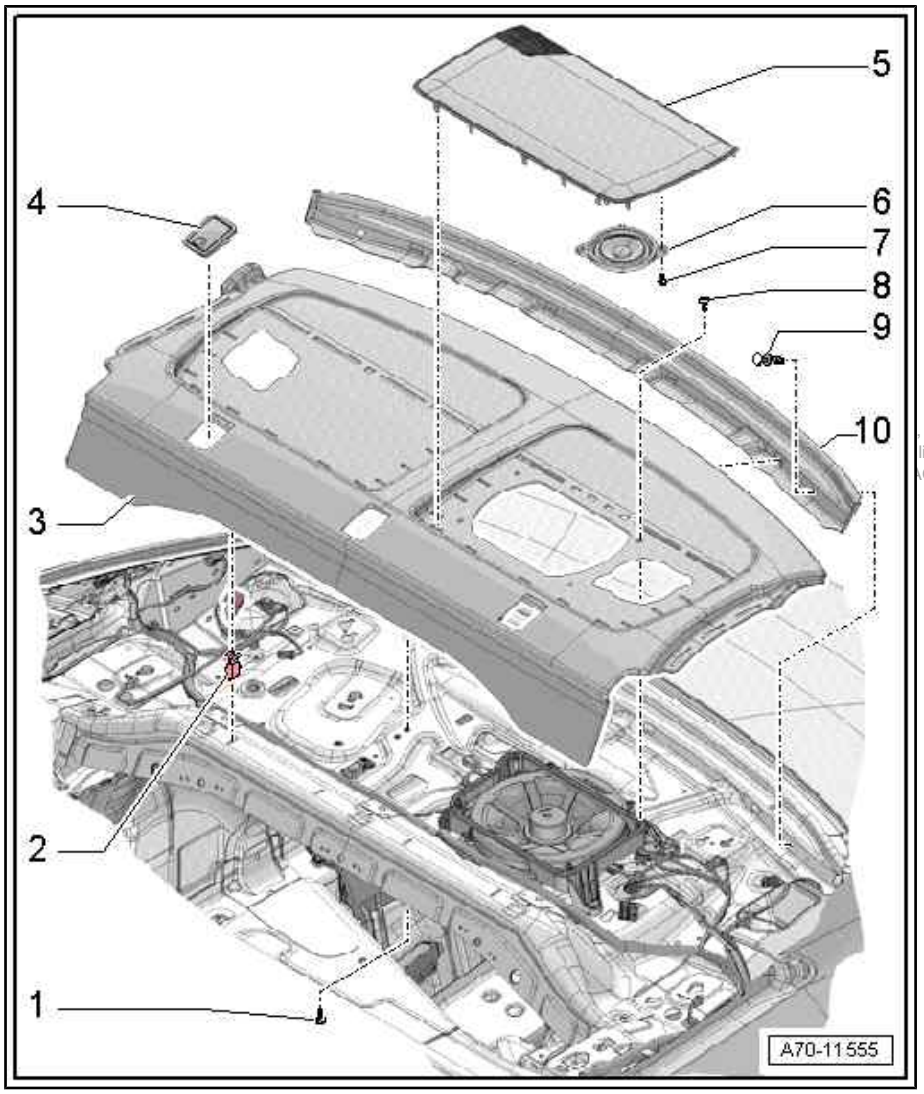
5 - Floor covering

- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 292



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information i

5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

2 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in rear shelf
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in rear shelf for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Rear shelf

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Without sun blind
- ♦ With sun blind
- ♦ Without sound system
- ♦ With sound system
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 293
  - ❑ Insert rear shelf in rear window frame and press on until it engages audibly.

4 - Cap

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 127
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295
- ❑ Insert in rear shelf and press on until it engages audibly

6 - Loudspeaker

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x

, is not
liability
AG.

❑ 2 Nm

9 - Fastener

❑ 2x

❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

10 - Trim

❑ For rear window frame

5.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim

⇒ "5.9.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim (front)", page 277

⇒ "5.9.2 Removing and installing sill panel trim (rear)", page 278

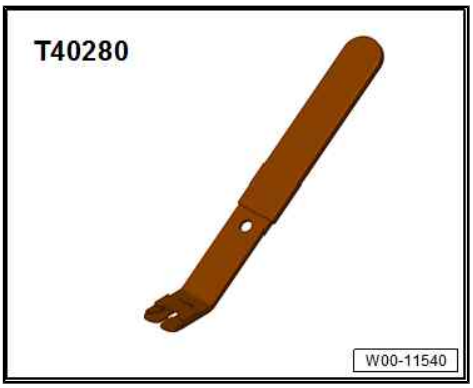
5.9.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



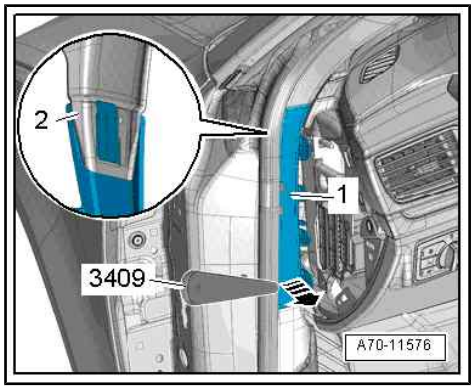
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm... part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG... guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 238 .

– Unclip trim cover -1- for A-pillar (bottom) using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow- and detach downwards from A-pillar trim (top) -2-.

– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 284 .



Driver side:

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 22 .

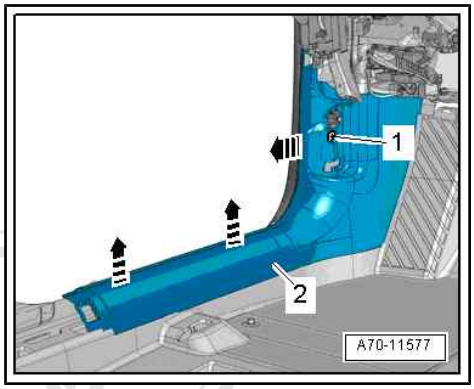
– Remove operating lever for bonnet ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet .

– Remove bolt -1- for sill panel trim (front).

Both sides of vehicle (continued):

– Starting at rear, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim (front) -2- from side member and pull off towards rear -arrows-.

– Detach sill panel trim (front).



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Driver side:

– Engage sill panel trim (front) at mounting for operating lever and slide into foot rest.

Passenger side:

– Insert guide for sill panel trim (front) in floor covering.

Both sides of vehicle (continued):

– Clip in sill panel trim (front) at side member and fold over lip of door seal.

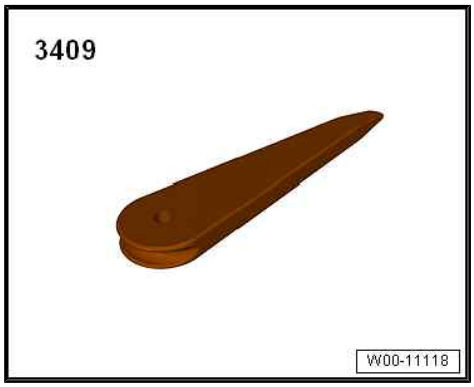
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim (front)", page 266

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

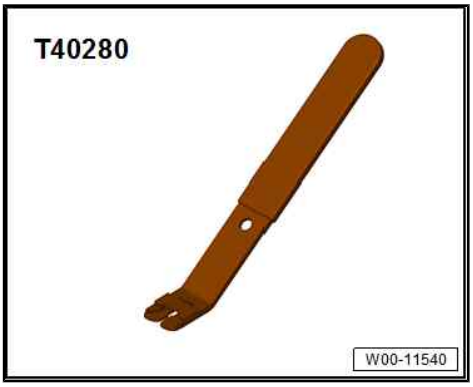
5.9.2 Removing and installing sill panel trim (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 284 .

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .

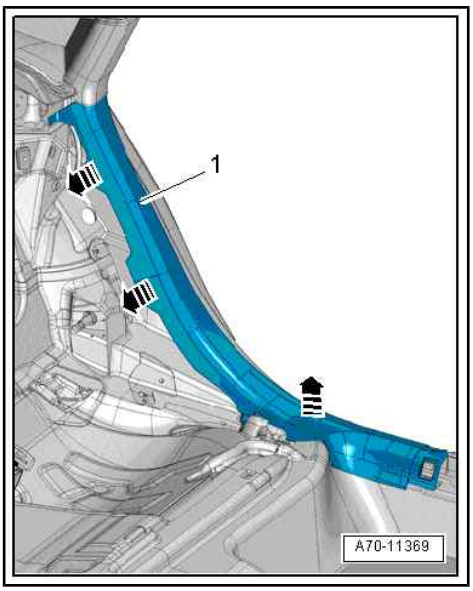
– Remove side padding ⇒ page 552 .

– Equipment version with fixed rear seat backrest: Remove fixed rear seat backrest ⇒ page 544 .

– Equipment version with multi-contour seat: Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

– Starting at front, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim -1- from side member and side panel -arrows -.

– Pull sill panel trim downwards out of C-pillar trim and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert sill panel trim in C-pillar trim and press on until it engages audibly.

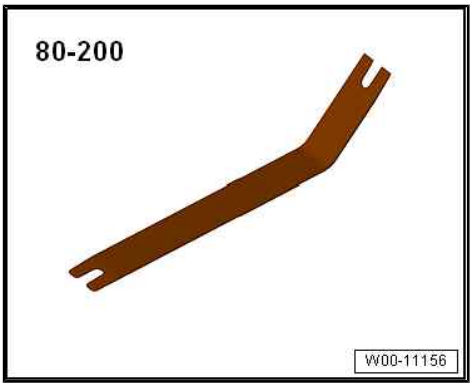
– Fold over lip of door seal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim (rear)", page 267

5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim

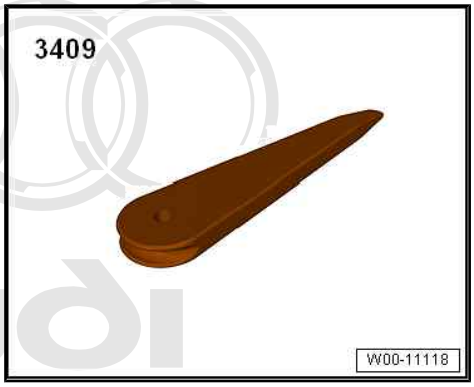
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

- Removal tool - T40280-



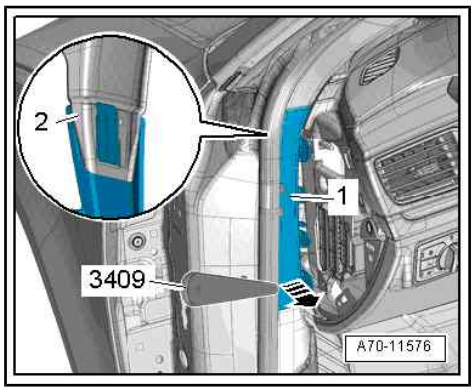
Removing

WARNING

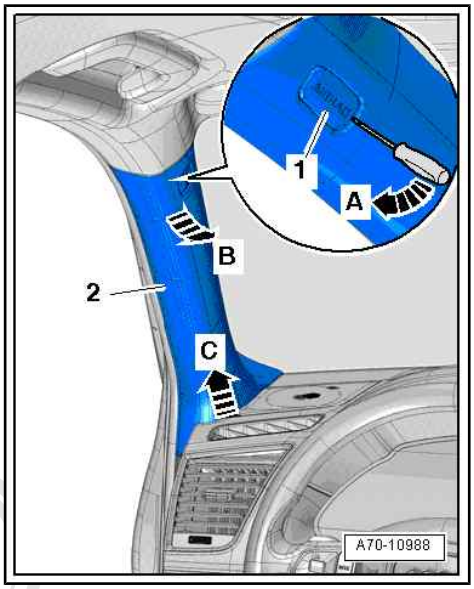
Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 238 .

– Unclip trim cover -1- for A-pillar (bottom) using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow- and detach downwards from A-pillar trim (top) -2-.



– Use a screwdriver to prise out expanding cap -1- with “airbag” symbol approx. 5 mm -arrow A-.



Note

The clips with catches at the trim can only be unfastened as far as the first detent.

– Starting at top, carefully unfasten A-pillar trim (top) -2- as far as first detent -arrow B- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .
– To release clips with catches, pull trim upwards -arrow C-; this causes clips to slide out of guide at trim.
– Pull A-pillar trim (top) out of dash panel and detach.

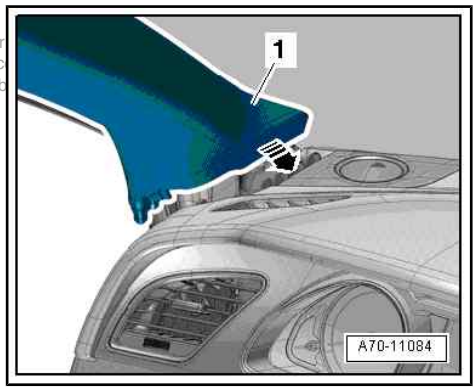
Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting A-pillar trim (top).*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert A-pillar trim (top) -1- in mounting at dash panel -arrow-.
– Clip in A-pillar trim (top) and fold over lip of door seal.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim”, page 268

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b

5.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim

⇒ “5.11.1 Removing and installing B-pillar vent”, page 281
⇒ “5.11.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top)”, page 282
⇒ “5.11.3 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom)”, page 284

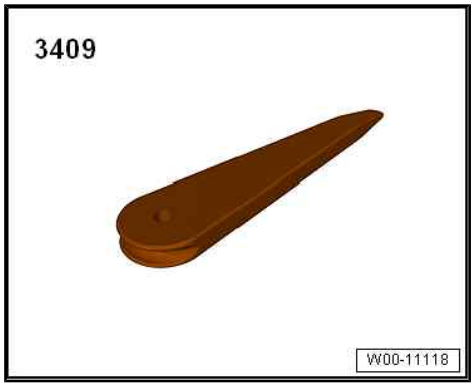
5.11.1 Removing and installing B-pillar vent

Note

Proceed very carefully when removing and installing, as the vent can be damaged quite easily.

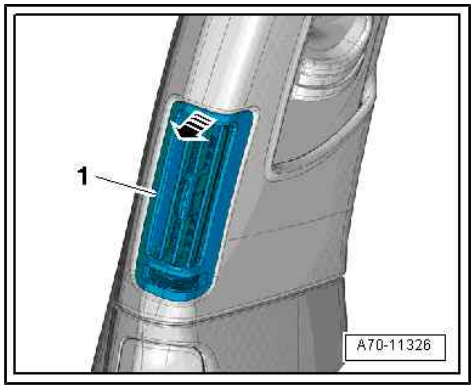
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Using a small screwdriver, release top clip at B-pillar vent -1-.
– Carefully unclip B-pillar vent from B-pillar trim (top) -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Unplug electrical connector and detach vent.



Installing

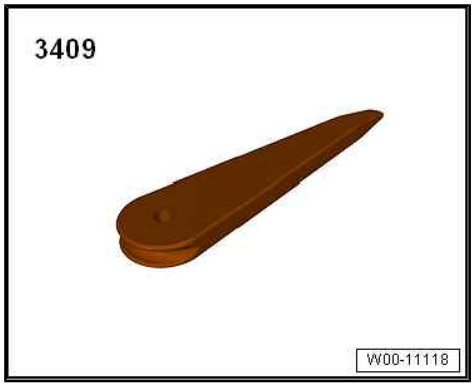
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim”, page 269

5.11.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

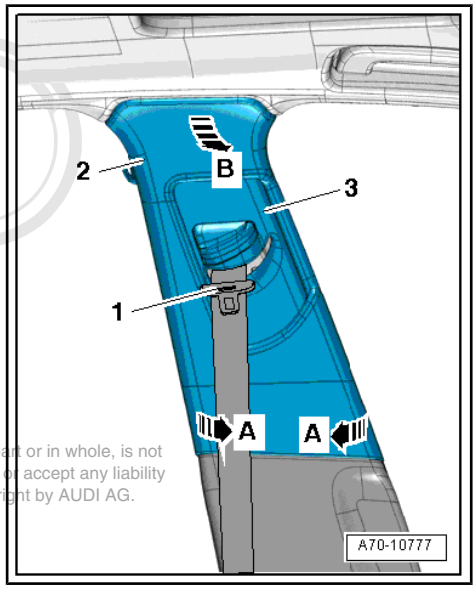


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .



– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 116 .
– Move belt height adjuster to lowest possible position.
– Apply removal wedge - 3409- at bottom edge of B-pillar trim (top) and unclip B-pillar trim (top) -2- -arrows A-.
– Equipment version with vent: Unplug electrical connector for vent.
– Pull B-pillar trim (top) out of mounting on body -arrow B-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.
– Thread belt -1- with latch plate through slide for belt height adjuster -3- and detach B-pillar trim.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

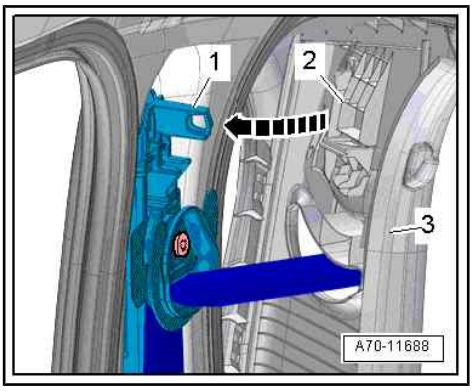
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting B-pillar trim.*

– Thread in belt with latch plate through slide for belt height adjuster.

Note

Make sure belt height adjuster is in bottom position.



– First insert B-pillar trim -3- upwards into mounting at roof.
• Mounting -2- of sliding element of B-pillar trim (top) must engage in retainer -1- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.

Equipment version with vent:

– Position B-pillar trim -1- at rear of B-pillar so that vent -2- engages properly in air duct -3- -arrow-.

– Engage B-pillar trim at rear of B-pillar -arrow A-.

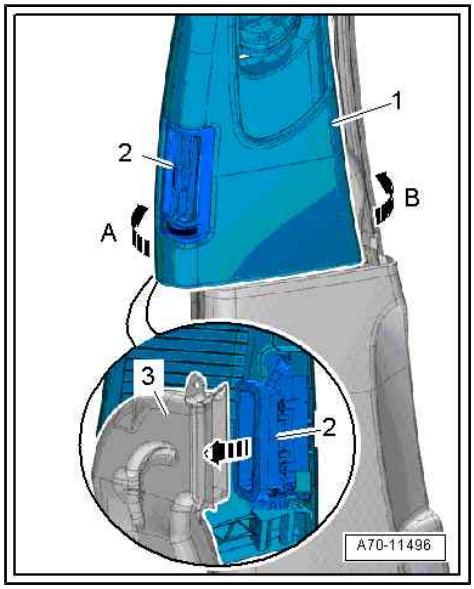
– Engage B-pillar trim at front of B-pillar -arrow B-.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Install belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 116 .

– Fold lips of door seals over trim.

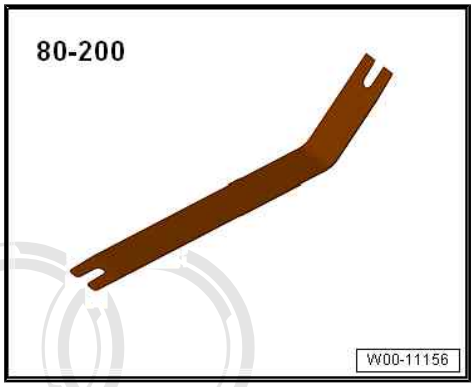
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim", page 269



5.11.3 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



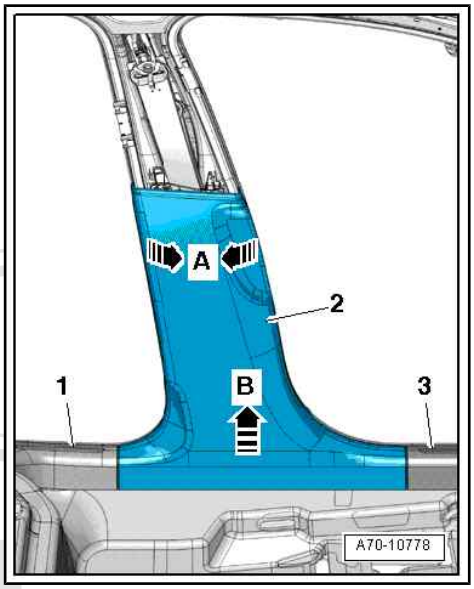
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 282 .

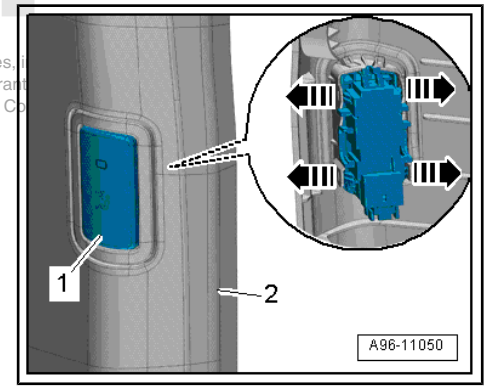
– Starting at top, use removal lever - 80 - 200- to unclip B-pillar trim (bottom) -2- from B-pillar -arrows A-.

– Unclip B-pillar trim (bottom) from side member -arrow B- in area of sill panel trims (rear -1- and front -3-).



– Equipment version with air ionisation system: Unplug electrical connector for button for air ionisation system - E677- -item 1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, i
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on B-pillar trim until it engages audibly.

– Fold lips of door seals over trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim", page 269

5.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim

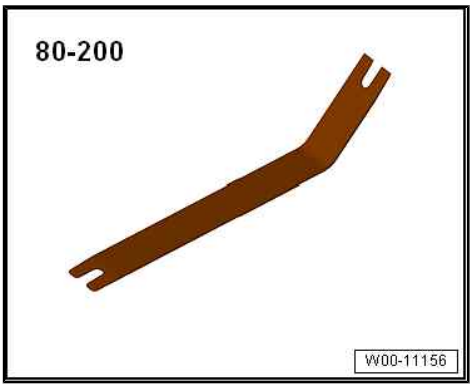
⇒ "5.12.1 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - Saloon", page 285

⇒ "5.12.2 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - Avant", page 287

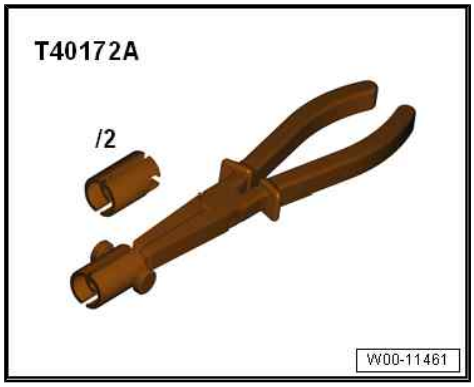
5.12.1 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



- Pliers - T40172 A-



- Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

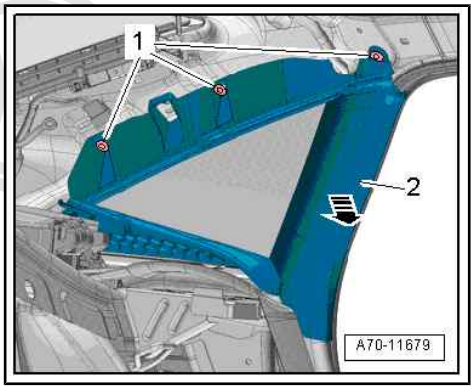
– Remove outer belt guide (rear) ⇒ page 111 .

– Detach moulded headliner and lay it down on seats (do not remove windscreen) ⇒ page 350 .

Caution

- *The moulded headliner must be removed and set down on the seats for the following work steps. Proceed very carefully when doing so as the moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

– Remove fasteners -1- using pliers - T40172 A- .
– Unclip C-pillar trim -2- from C-pillar using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrow- and detach.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting C-pillar trim.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

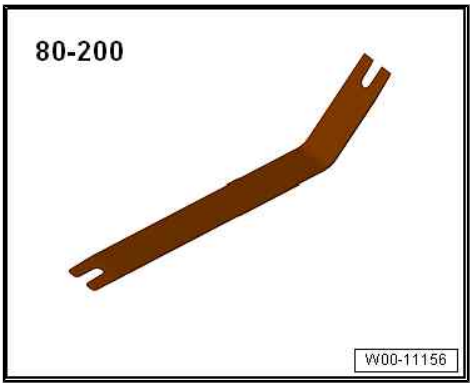
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.5.1 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, Saloon", page 270

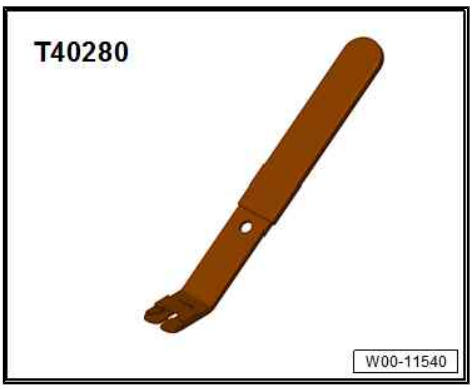
5.12.2 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80 - 200-



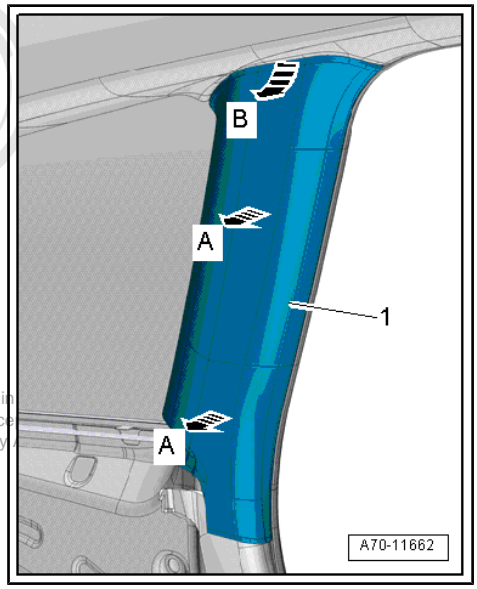
- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .



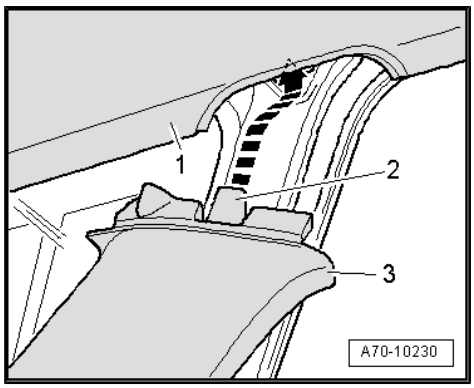
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 330 .
– Remove outer belt guide (rear) ⇒ page 112 .
– Unclip C-pillar trim -1- from C-pillar using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows A-.
– Pull C-pillar trim (top) out of mounting on body -arrow B-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting C-pillar trim.*



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– When installing C-pillar trim -3-, make sure that retaining tab -2- engages in body cut-out -arrow- and in moulded headliner -1-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.5.2 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, Avant”, page 272

5.13 Removing and installing D-pillar trim

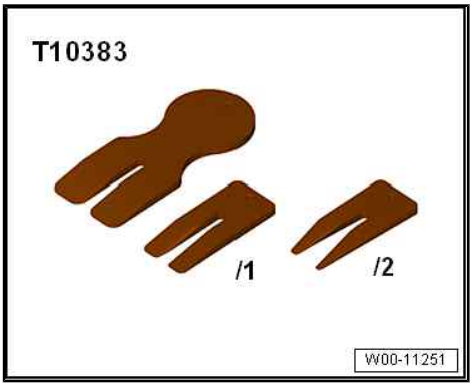
⇒ “5.13.1 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - Saloon”, page 288

⇒ “5.13.2 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - Avant”, page 290

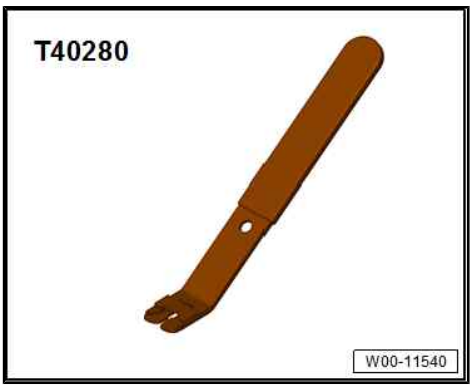
5.13.1 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



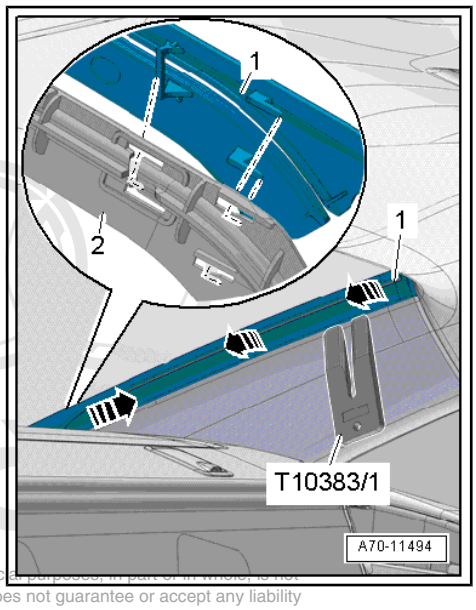
Removing

> **WARNING**
>
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– Equipment version with folding rear seat backrest: Fold down rear seat backrest.

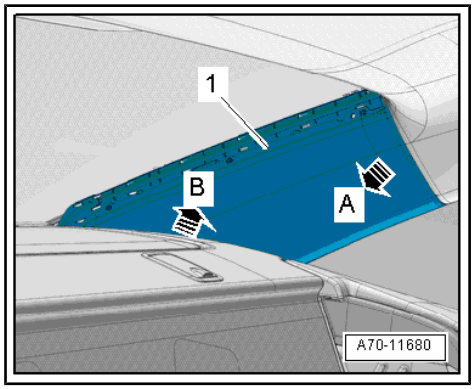
– Equipment version with sun blind: Starting at top, carefully unclip trim -1- for guide strip for sun blind using wedge -T10383/1- -arrows-.

– Pull trim (bottom) upwards out of guide strip -2- for sun blind and detach inwards.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unclip D-pillar trim -1- -arrow A- using wedge -T10383/1- .
– Pull D-pillar trim upwards out of rear shelf -arrow B- and detach.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting D-pillar trim.*

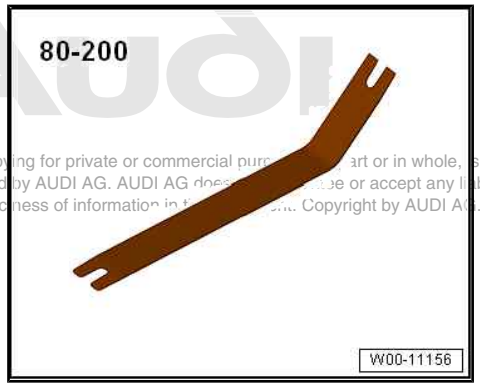
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.6.1 Exploded view - D-pillar trim, Saloon", page 273

5.13.2 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - Avant

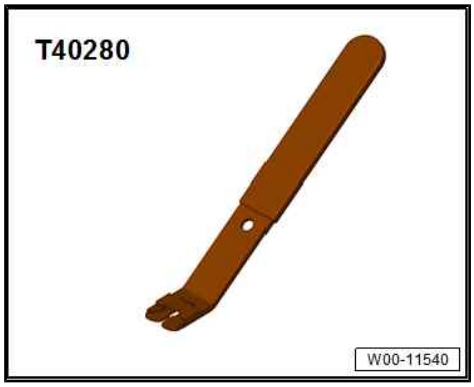
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80 - 200-

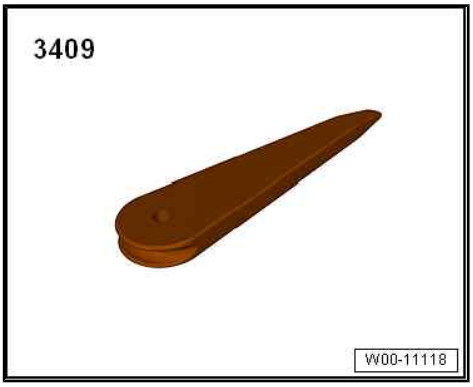


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal tool - T40280-



♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



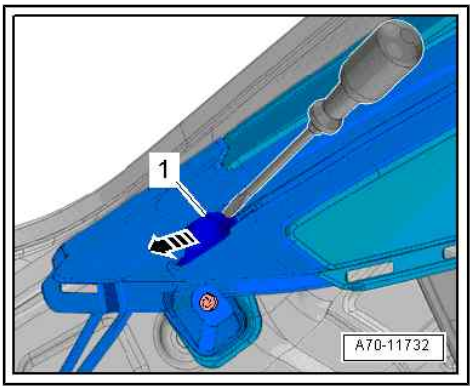
Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 330 .

– Remove roof end trim ⇒ page 348 .

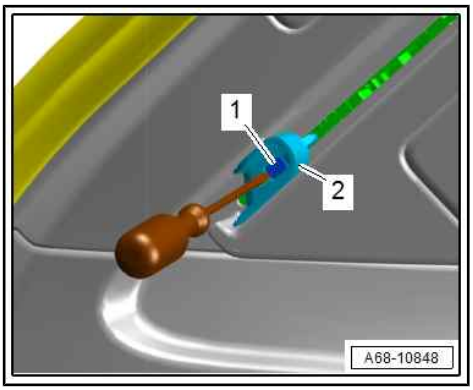
Version 1:

– Unclip actuator -1- for luggage compartment cover using removal wedge - 3409- or screwdriver -arrow-.



Version 2:

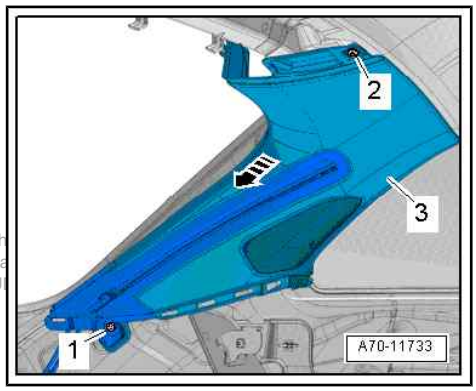
– Remove spreader pin -1- for actuator -2- using a small screwdriver and pull actuator off luggage compartment cover using pliers.



– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.

– Unclip D-pillar trim -3- from body -arrow- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .

– Unclip guide for luggage compartment cover at D-pillar trim from guide rail for luggage compartment cover and detach.



Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh
permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

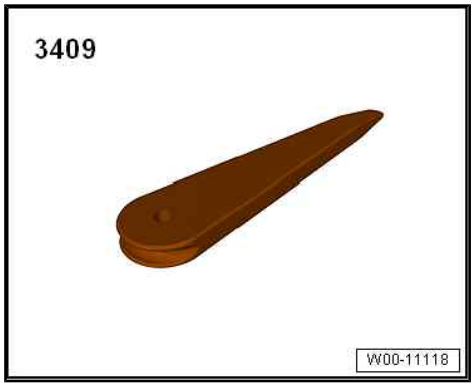
– Fit guide for luggage compartment cover at D-pillar trim on guide rail for luggage compartment cover and clip on.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.5.2 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, Avant", page 272

5.14 Removing and installing foot rest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

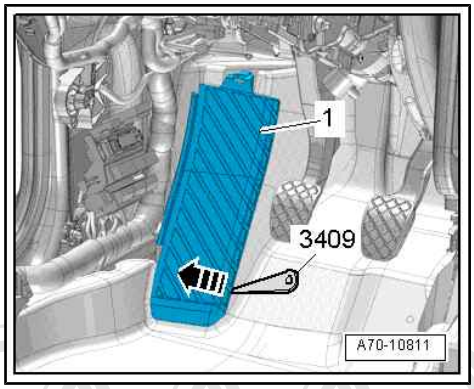


Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 22 .

– Remove sill panel trim (front, driver side) ⇒ page 277 .

– Unclip foot rest -1- with removal wedge - 3409- -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 275

5.15 Removing and installing floor covering

Removing

– Remove front seats ⇒ page 415 .

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .

– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 284 .

– Remove sill panel trim panels (front) ⇒ page 277 .

– Remove sill panel trim panels (rear) ⇒ page 278 .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 28 .

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 22 .

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 66 .

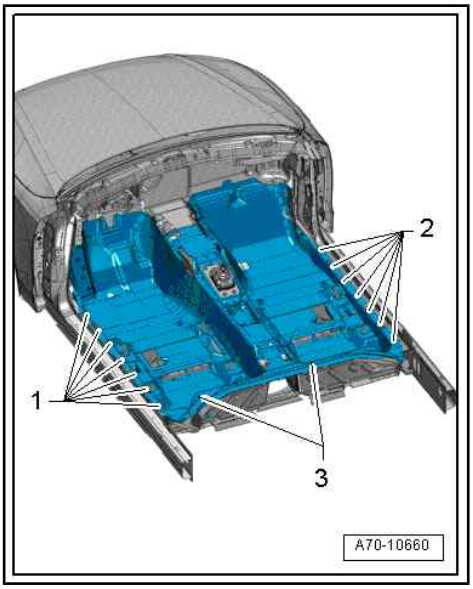
– Remove footwell trim (front) ⇒ page 23 .

– Remove bracket for centre console and lower shift mechanism ⇒ page 69 .

– Remove air duct (rear) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove floor mat.
– Disengage floor covering at retainers -1- and -2-.
– Pull floor covering -3- to rear.



Note

Make sure that floor covering does not tear at openings.

– Fold up floor covering and take it out through rear door opening.

Installing

– Fold up floor covering and place it in vehicle.
– Slide floor covering forwards and align until hole patterns coincide.

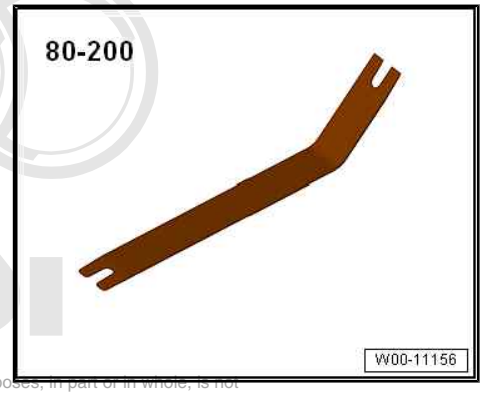
Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering", page 275

5.16 Removing and installing rear shelf

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

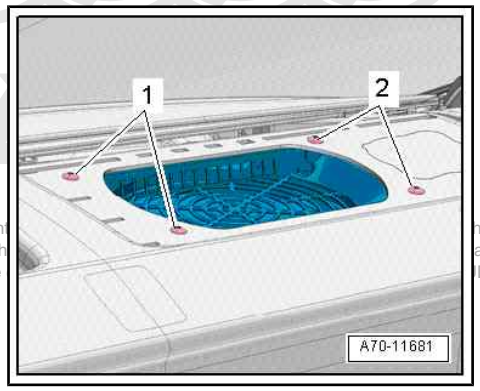
– Equipment version with folding rear seat backrest: Fold down rear seat backrest.
– Equipment version with fixed rear seat backrest: Remove fixed rear seat backrest ⇒ page 544 .

– Equipment version with multi-contour seat: Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .
– Remove centre belt guide (rear) ⇒ page 111 .
– Remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 121 .
– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ page 288 .

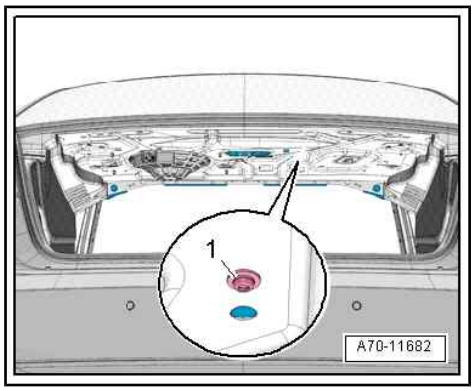
Equipment version with sound system:

– Remove loudspeaker trim (left-side) in rear shelf ⇒ page 295 .
– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.

Protected by copyright
permitted unless auth
with respect to the
hole, is not
any liability
DI AG.

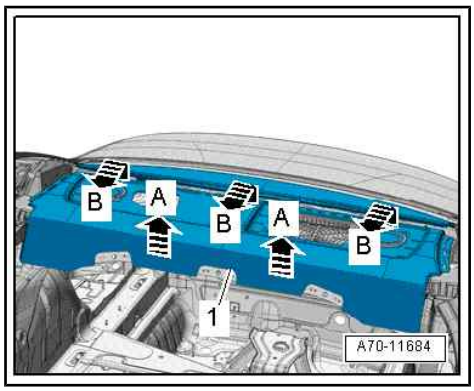


– Unscrew bolt -1- for rear shelf in luggage compartment.



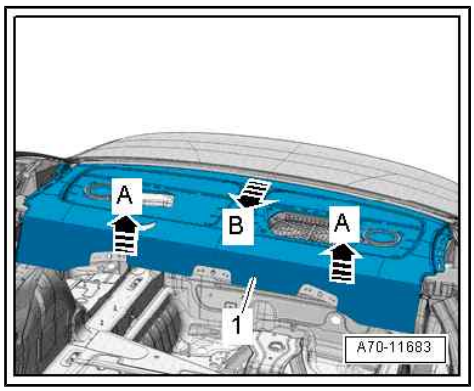
Equipment version with sun blind:

– Unclip rear shelf -1- at front using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows A-.
– Disengage rear of rear shelf from sun blind -arrows B- and take out towards front.



Equipment version without sun blind:

– Unclip rear shelf -1- at front using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows A-.
– Pull rear shelf forwards out of mountings in rear window frame -arrow B- and take out.



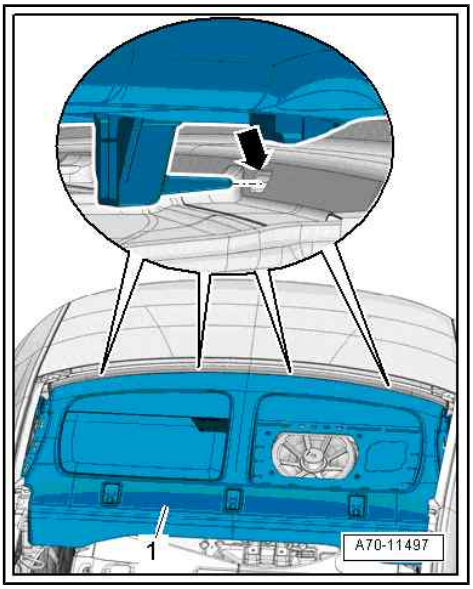
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert rear shelf -1- in rear window frame and tighten bolts.

• Pins on rear shelf must engage in mountings -arrow- in rear window frame.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 276



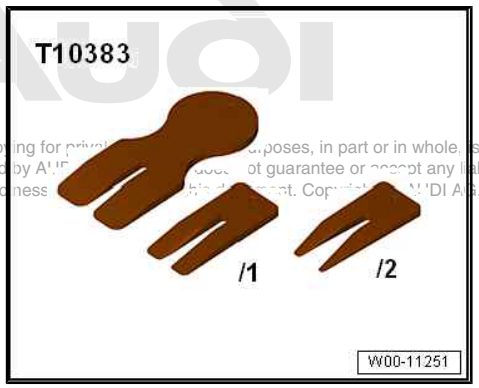
5.17 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

Note

Be very careful when removing and installing, as loudspeaker trim can be damaged quite easily.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



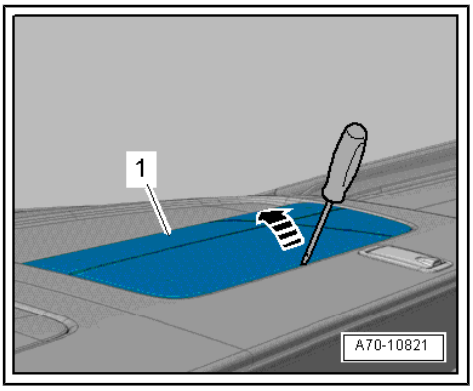
Protected by copyright. Copying for private purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Equipment version with folding rear seat backrest: Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Using wedge -T10383/1- or screwdriver, carefully unclip loudspeaker trim -1- off rear shelf along gap at front and sides -arrow-.

– Equipment version with loudspeaker: Unplug electrical connector and pull out loudspeaker trim towards front.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 276

6 Luggage compartment trim panels

⇒ “6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels”, page 296

⇒ “6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 299

⇒ “6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 305

⇒ “6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 311

⇒ “6.5 Exploded view - lock carrier trim”, page 314

⇒ “6.6 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 315

⇒ “6.7 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)”, page 319

⇒ “6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 321

⇒ “6.9 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor”, page 333

⇒ “6.10 Removing and installing lock carrier trim”, page 335

⇒ “6.11 Removing and installing bracket for warning triangle”, page 337

⇒ “6.12 Removing and installing fastening ring”, page 337

⇒ “6.13 Removing and installing retainer for luggage compartment floor covering”, page 338

⇒ “6.14 Removing and installing frame for loading aid”, page 338

⇒ “6.15 Removing and installing bag hook”, page 339

⇒ “6.16 Removing and installing grip for luggage compartment floor (rear)”, page 339

⇒ “6.17 Removing and installing retaining rail”, page 340

⇒ “6.18 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well”, page 341

⇒ “6.19 Removing and installing tail light cover”, page 342

⇒ “6.20 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock”, page 342

Audi

Copyright by AUDI AG. Duplication or commercial use, in any form and for any purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels

⇒ “6.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, Saloon”, page 296

⇒ “6.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, Avant”, page 298

6.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, Saloon

1 - Lining for spare wheel well

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 305

2 - Rear cross panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 314

3 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 299

4 - Trim for rear lid hinge

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 311

5 - Rear lid trim

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 311

6 - Luggage compartment floor covering

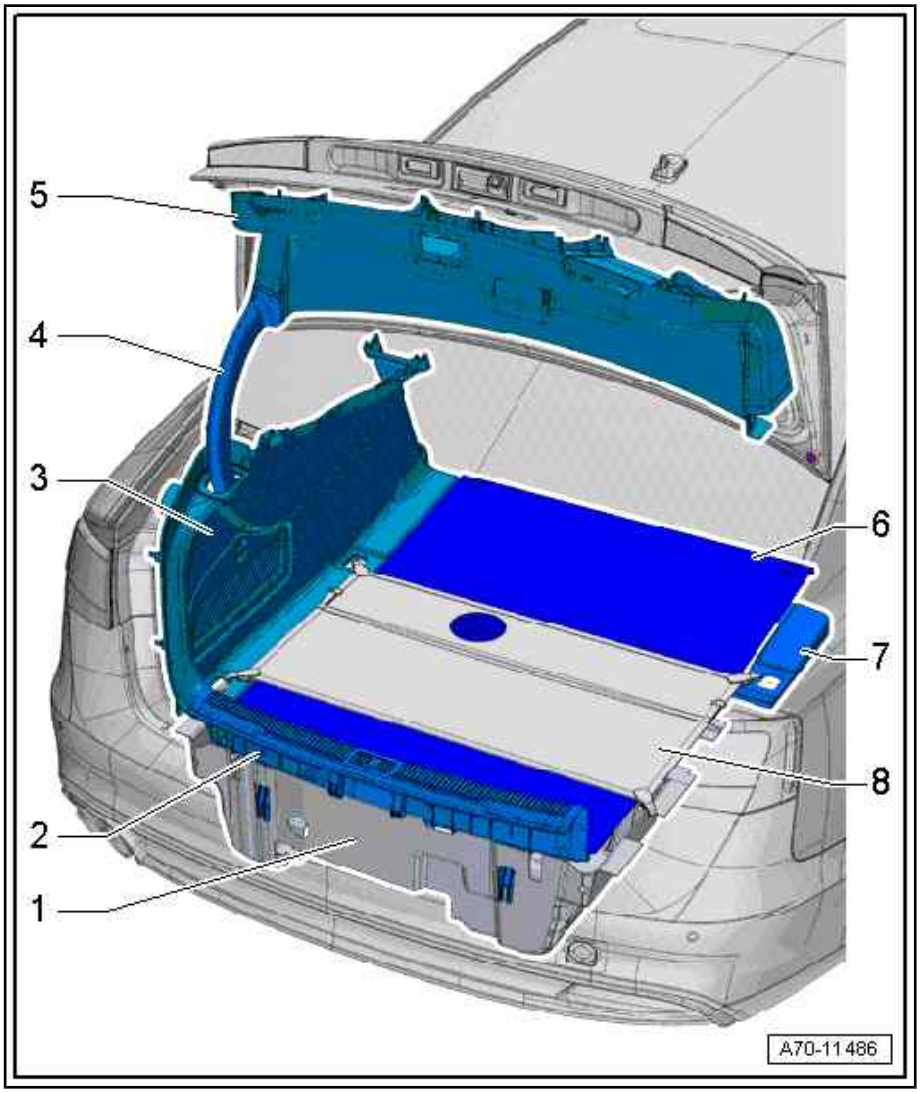
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 305

7 - Mounting frame for loading aid

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 305

8 - Luggage net

- ❑ Engage at fastening rings



6.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, Avant

1 - Spare wheel well insert

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

2 - Rear cross panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 315

3 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 309

4 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 304

5 - Luggage compartment cover

- ❑ Exploded view of motor for luggage compartment cover ⇒ page 41

6 - Load guard

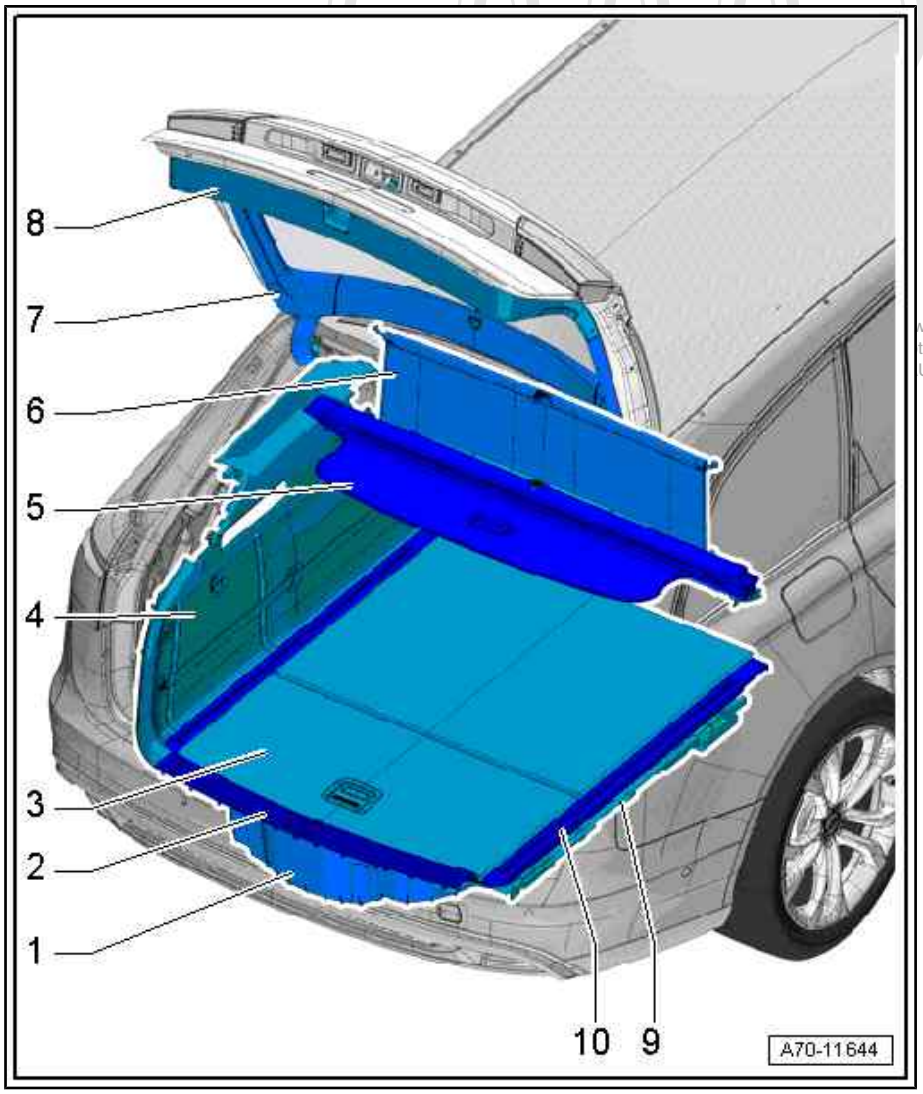
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 36

7 - Rear lid trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 312

8 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Without sun blind
- ♦ With sun blind
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 312



9 - Luggage compartment floor lining

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

10 - Retaining rail

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 309

whole, is not
t any liability
UDI AG.

6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim

⇒ “6.2.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Saloon”, page 299

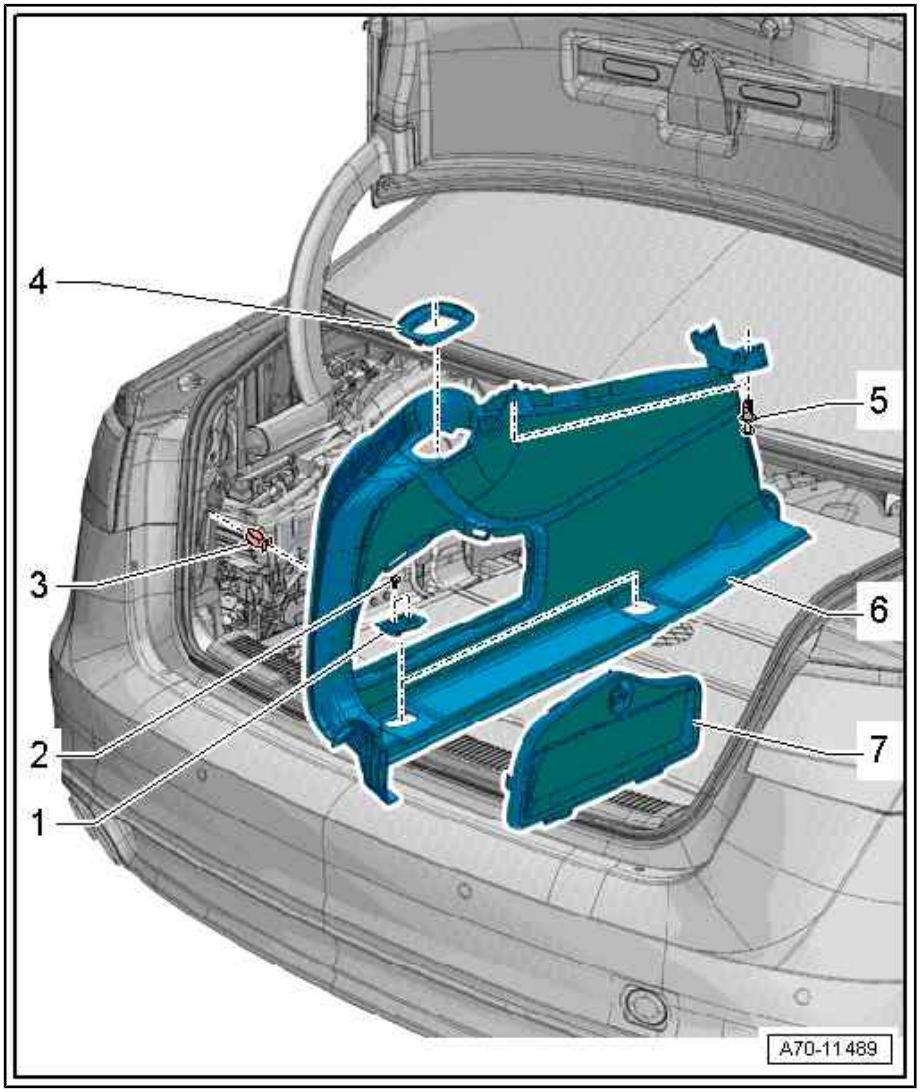
⇒ “6.2.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, country-specific version”, page 300

⇒ “6.2.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, hybrid”, page 301

⇒ “6.2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, e-tron”, page 302

⇒ “6.2.5 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Avant”, page 304

6.2.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Saloon



1 - Fastening ring

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 337

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 6 Nm

3 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - Frame

- ❑ For rear lid hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 321

5 - Fastener

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

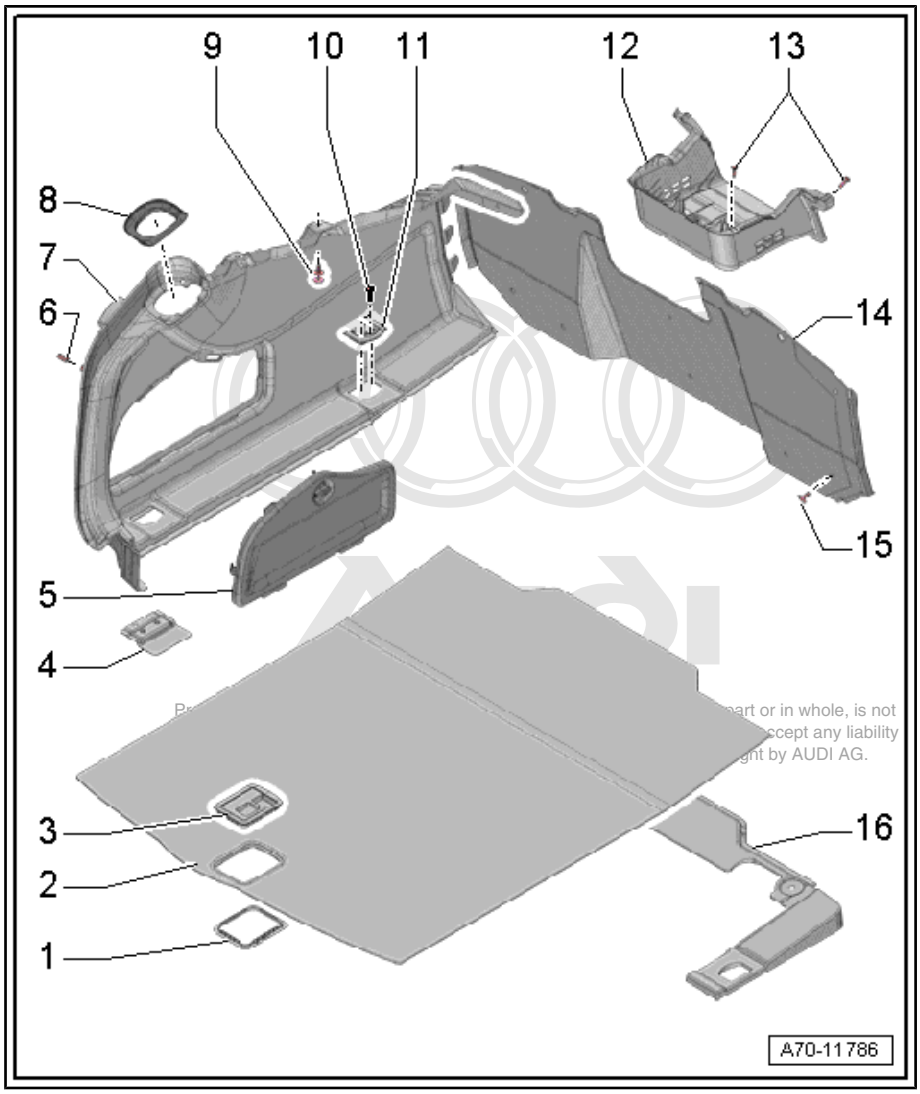
6 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 321
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

7 - Cover

- ❑ For luggage compartment side trim

6.2.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, country-specific version



1 - Retaining frame

- For grip for luggage compartment floor covering
- Can only be pressed onto grip for luggage compartment floor covering in one position

2 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- Different versions
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

3 - Grip

- For luggage compartment floor covering
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 339

4 - Support

- 2x

5 - Cover

- For luggage compartment side trim

6 - Clip

- 2x
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Luggage compartment side trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 321
- Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Frame

- For rear lid hinge
- Removing and installing ⇒ “6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 321

9 - Fastener

- 3x
- Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

10 - Bolt

- 8x
- 6 Nm

11 - Fastening ring

- 4x
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 337

12 - Cover

- ❑ For Rear Seat Entertainment
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ “6.8.6 Removing and installing luggage compartment back panel trim”, page 331

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3.8 Nm

14 - Back panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 331

15 - Clip

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Use removal lever - 80 - 200- to remove

16 - Mounting frame

- ❑ For loading aid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 338
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6.2.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, hybrid

1 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Frame

- ❑ For rear lid hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 321

3 - Fastener

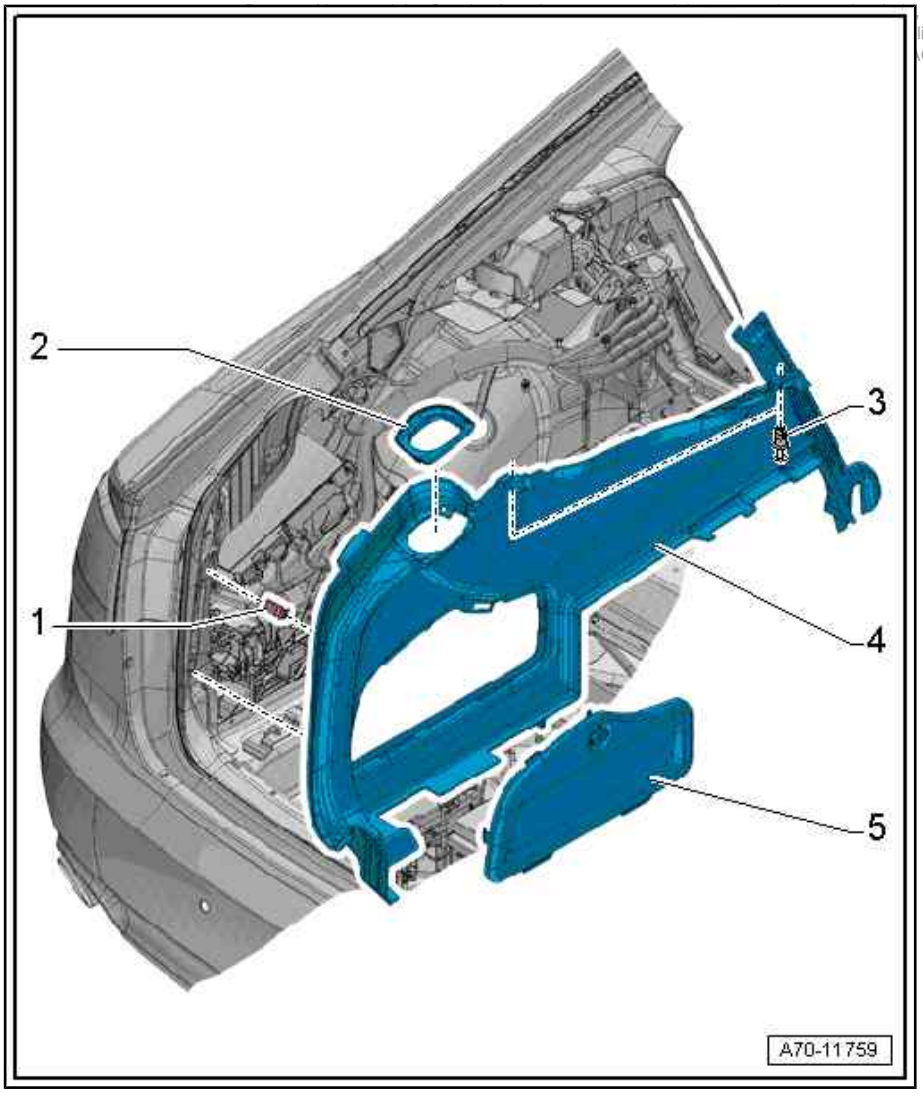
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

4 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 325
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

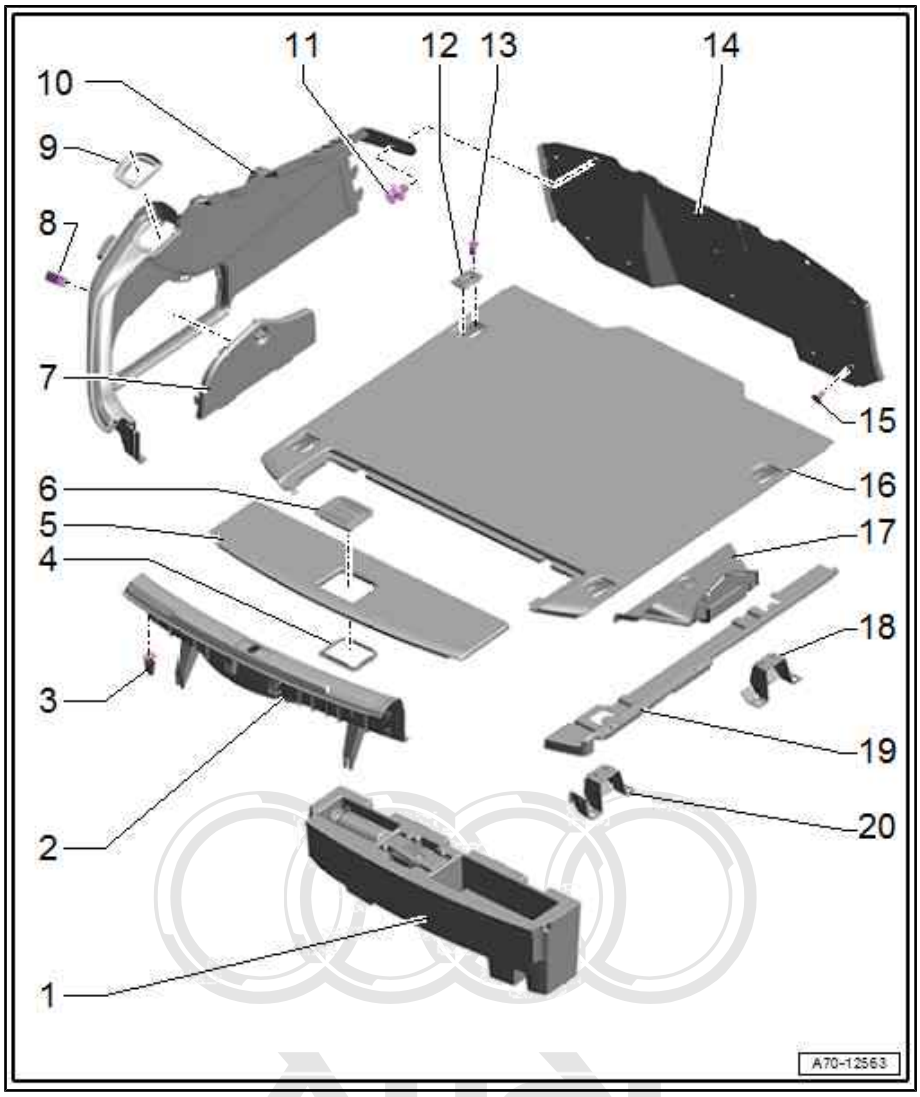
5 - Cover

- ❑ For luggage compartment side trim



is not
liability
AG.

6.2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, e-tron



1 - Tool kit/breakdown set

2 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 335
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - Clip

- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - Retaining frame

- ❑ For grip for luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Can only be pressed onto grip for luggage compartment floor in one position
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Luggage compartment floor (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 334

6 - Grip

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 339

7 - Cover (left-side)

- ❑ For luggage compartment side trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

9 - Frame

- ❑ For rear lid hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 321

10 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 325
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

11 - Fastener

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

12 - Fastening ring

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 337

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 6 Nm

14 - Back panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 331

15 - Clip

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Use removal lever - 80 - 200- to remove

16 - Luggage compartment floor (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 334

17 - Cover (right-side)

- ❑ For luggage compartment side trim

18 - Mounting (front)

- ❑ For fastening ring
- ❑ 2x

19 - Filler piece

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ “6.9.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - e-tron”, page 334

20 - Mounting (rear)

- ❑ For fastening ring
- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.2.5 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Avant

1 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 330
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

2 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

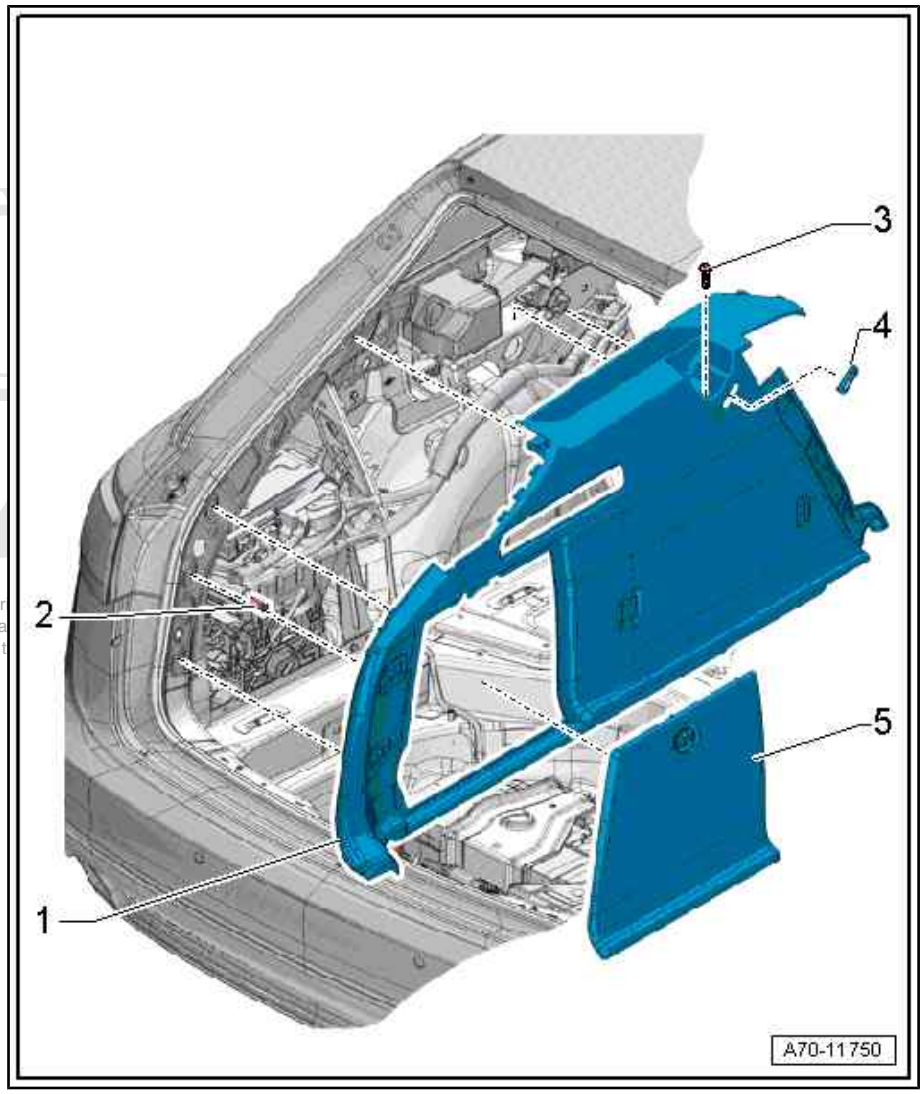
4 - Rubber grommet

- ❑ For bracket for load guard
- ❑ Slide onto bracket and insert in trim

5 - Cover

- ❑ For luggage compartment side trim

Protected by copyr
permitted unless a
with respect to t



6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor

⇒ “6.3.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Saloon”, page 305

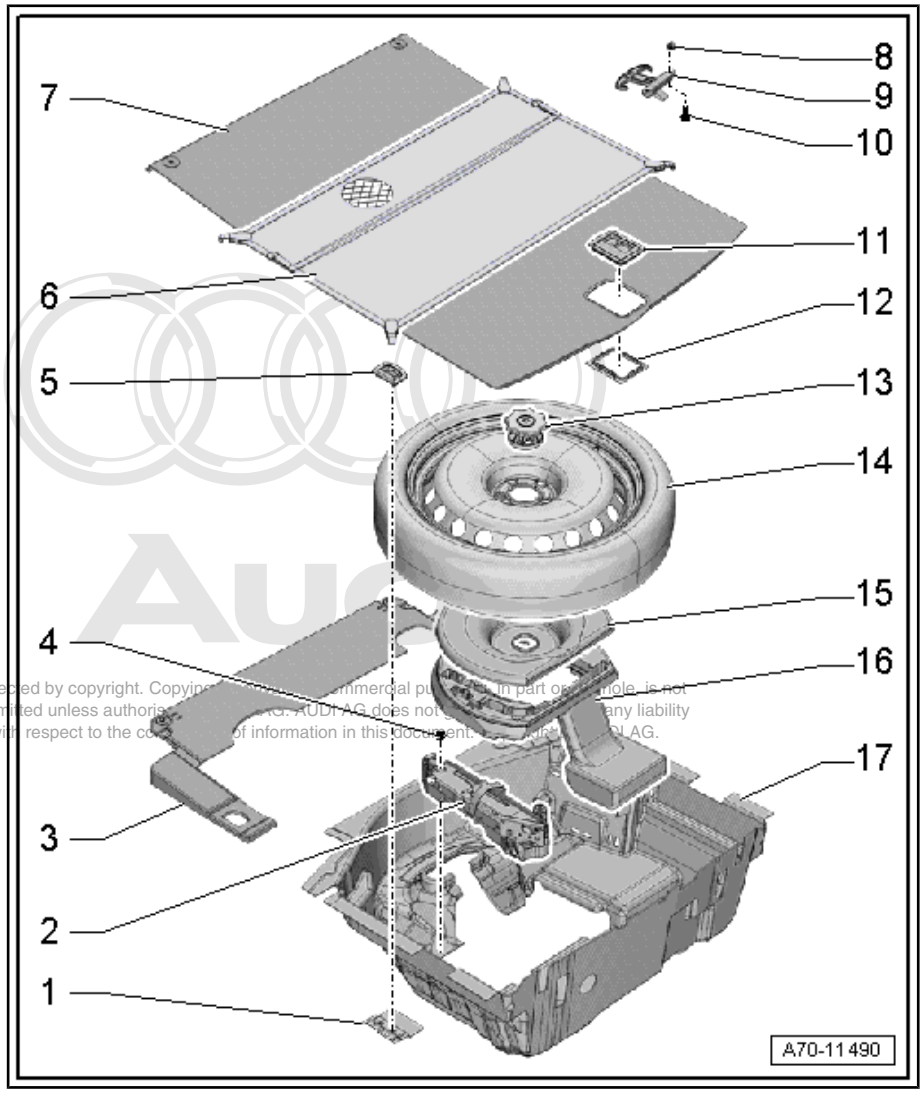
⇒ “6.3.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, hybrid”, page 307

⇒ “6.3.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Avant”, page 309

6.3.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Saloon

Note

The illustration shows the luggage compartment floor covering for the equipment version with folding rear seat backrest.



1 - Support
- ❑ 2x

2 - Jack/breakdown set
- ❑ Equipment version

3 - Mounting frame
- ❑ For loading aid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 338
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

4 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Fastening ring
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 337

6 - Luggage net
- ❑ Engage at fastening rings

7 - Luggage compartment floor covering
- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

8 - Metal clip
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Clip into body

9 - Retaining hook
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 339

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x

Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

11 - Grip

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor covering
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 339

12 - Retaining frame

- ❑ For grip for luggage compartment floor covering
- ❑ Can only be pressed onto grip for luggage compartment floor covering in one position

13 - Nut

- ❑ For securing spare wheel
- ❑ Must engage audibly when tightening

14 - Spare wheel

- ❑ Depending on equipment version

15 - Cover

- ❑ For vehicle tool kit

16 - Vehicle tool kit

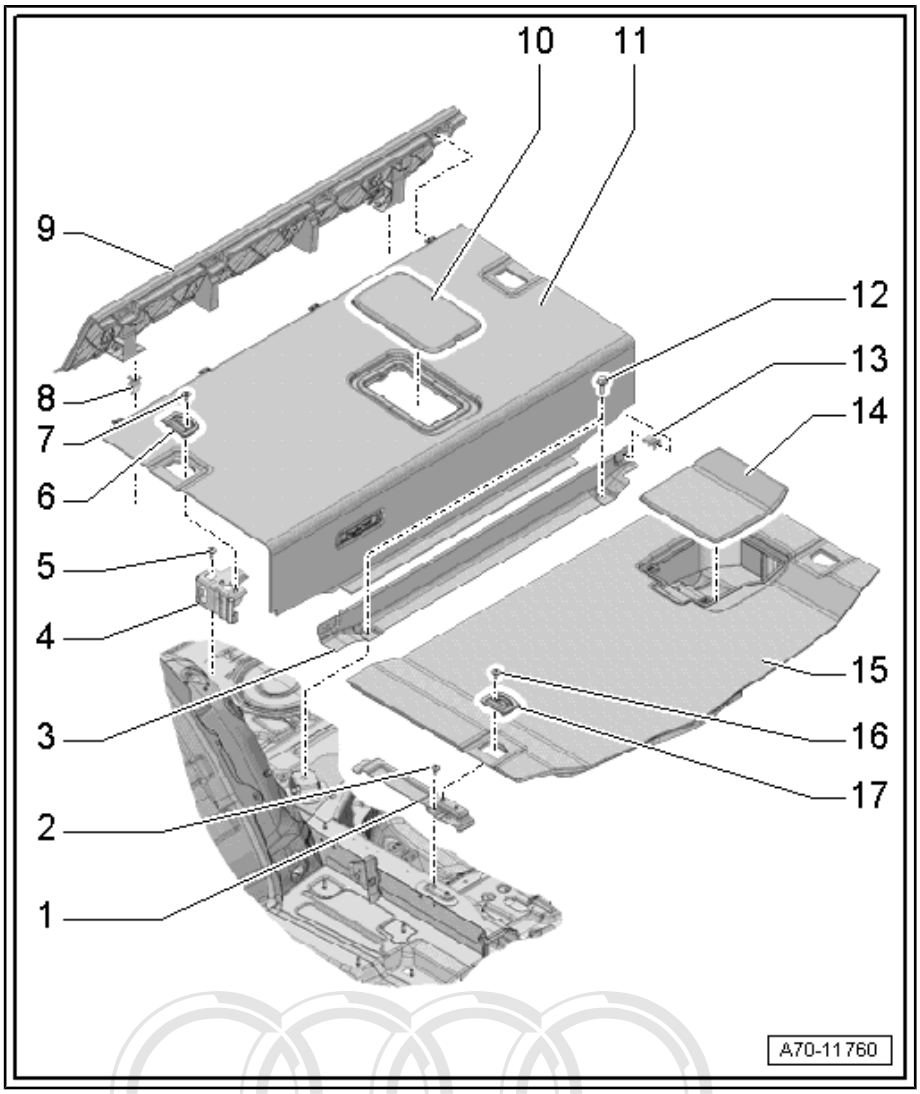
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

17 - Lining for spare wheel well

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341

6.3.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, hybrid



1 - Bracket
- ❑ For luggage compartment floor covering
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 338

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 6 Nm

3 - Support
- ❑ For cover for drive battery - A2-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.9.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - hybrid”, page 333

4 - Bracket
- ❑ For cover for drive battery - A2-
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 338

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 6 Nm

6 - Fastening ring
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 337

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 6 Nm

8 - Clip
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in cover for drive battery

9 - Cover (front)
- ❑ For drive battery - A2-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

10 - Cover
- ❑ For maintenance connector for high-voltage system - TW-

11 - Cover
- ❑ For drive battery - A2-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

12 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ 10 Nm

13 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in cover for drive battery
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

14 - Cover

- ❑ For breakdown set

15 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

16 - Bolt

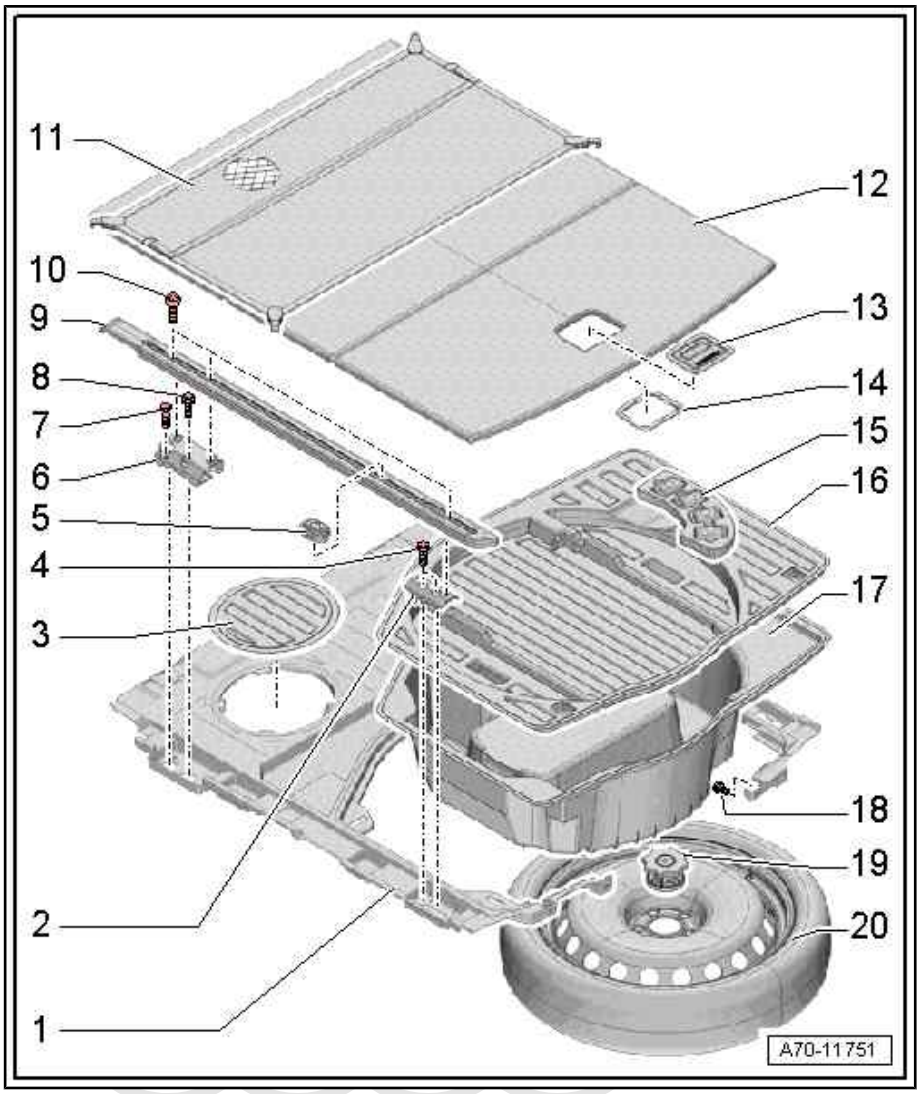
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 6 Nm

17 - Fastening ring

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 337

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.3.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Avant



1 - Lining
- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

2 - Retainer (rear)
- ❑ For retaining rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.17 Removing and installing retaining rail”, page 340

3 - Cover
- ❑ For flange
- ❑ Clipped into lining
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 10 Nm

5 - Fastening ring
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in retaining rail; press release button to adjust

6 - Retainer (front)
- ❑ For retaining rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.17 Removing and installing retaining rail”, page 340

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 55 Nm

8 - Bolt
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 10 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Retaining rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 4 Nm

11 - Luggage net
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Engage at fastening rings

12 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333
- ❑ Engage at front of luggage compartment floor lining

13 - Grip

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor covering
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 339

14 - Retaining frame

- ❑ For grip for luggage compartment floor covering
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 339
- ❑ Can only be pressed onto grip for luggage compartment floor covering in one position
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

15 - Mounting box

- ❑ For fastening rings

16 - Cover

- ❑ For spare wheel well
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

17 - Insert

- ❑ For spare wheel well
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

18 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 315

19 - Nut

- ❑ For securing spare wheel
- ❑ Must engage audibly when tightening

20 - Spare wheel

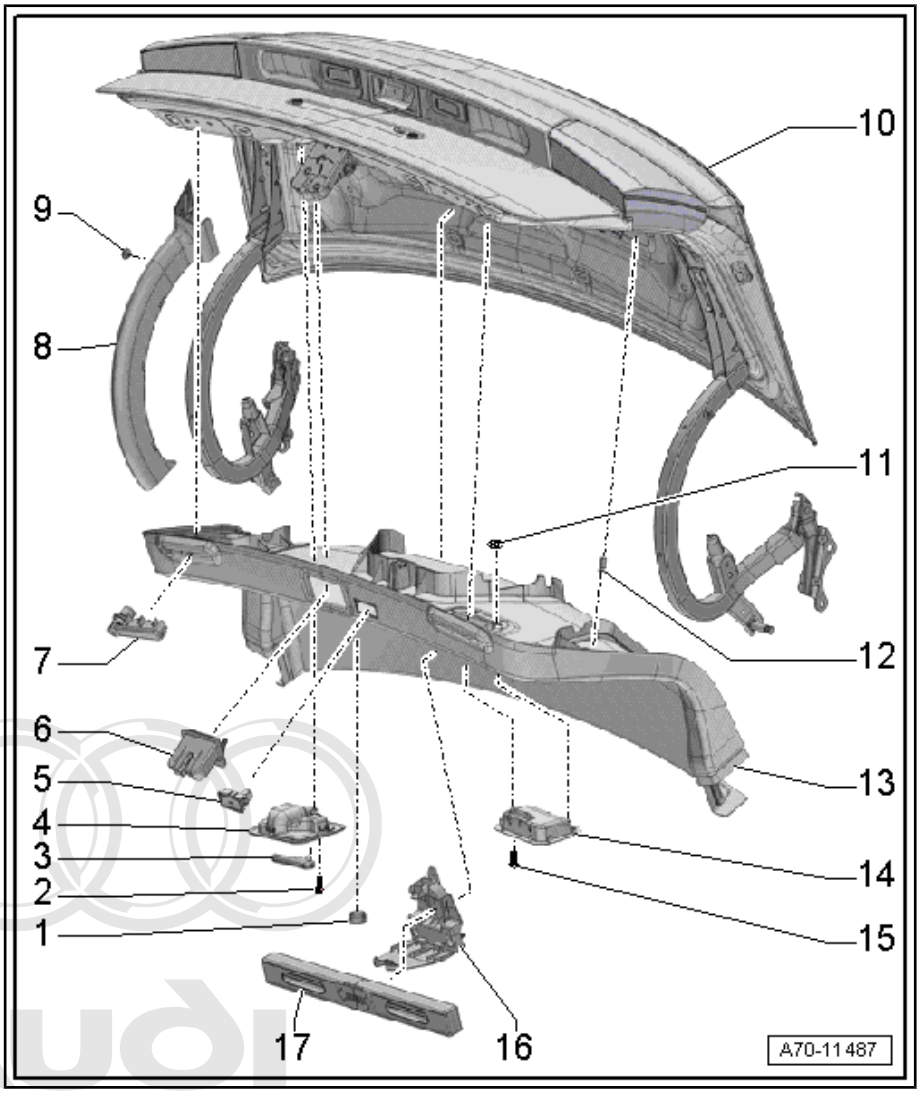
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)

⇒ “6.4.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Saloon”, page 311

⇒ “6.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Avant”, page 312

6.4.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Saloon



1 - Plug

- ❑ For manual release mechanism
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.8 Nm

3 - Operating lever

- ❑ For manual release mechanism
- ❑ Country-specific version

4 - Manual release

- ❑ Country-specific version

5 - Button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406- .

6 - Trim

- ❑ For rear lid lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.6.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - Saloon”, page 315
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

7 - Stop strip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clip into rear lid

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Trim for rear lid hinge

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.6.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - Saloon”, page 315

9 - Fastener

- ❑ 2x

10 - Rear lid

11 - Clamping washer

- ❑ 8x

12 - Clip

- ❑ 11x
- ❑ Insert in trim

- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

13 - Rear lid trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 315
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

14 - Door puller

- ❑ Secured to rear lid trim with clamping washers

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.8 Nm

16 - Bracket

- ❑ For warning triangle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 337
- ❑ Hook in and press on until it engages audibly

17 - Warning triangle

6.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Avant

1 - Trim

- ❑ For rear lid lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406- .

3 - Rubber buffer

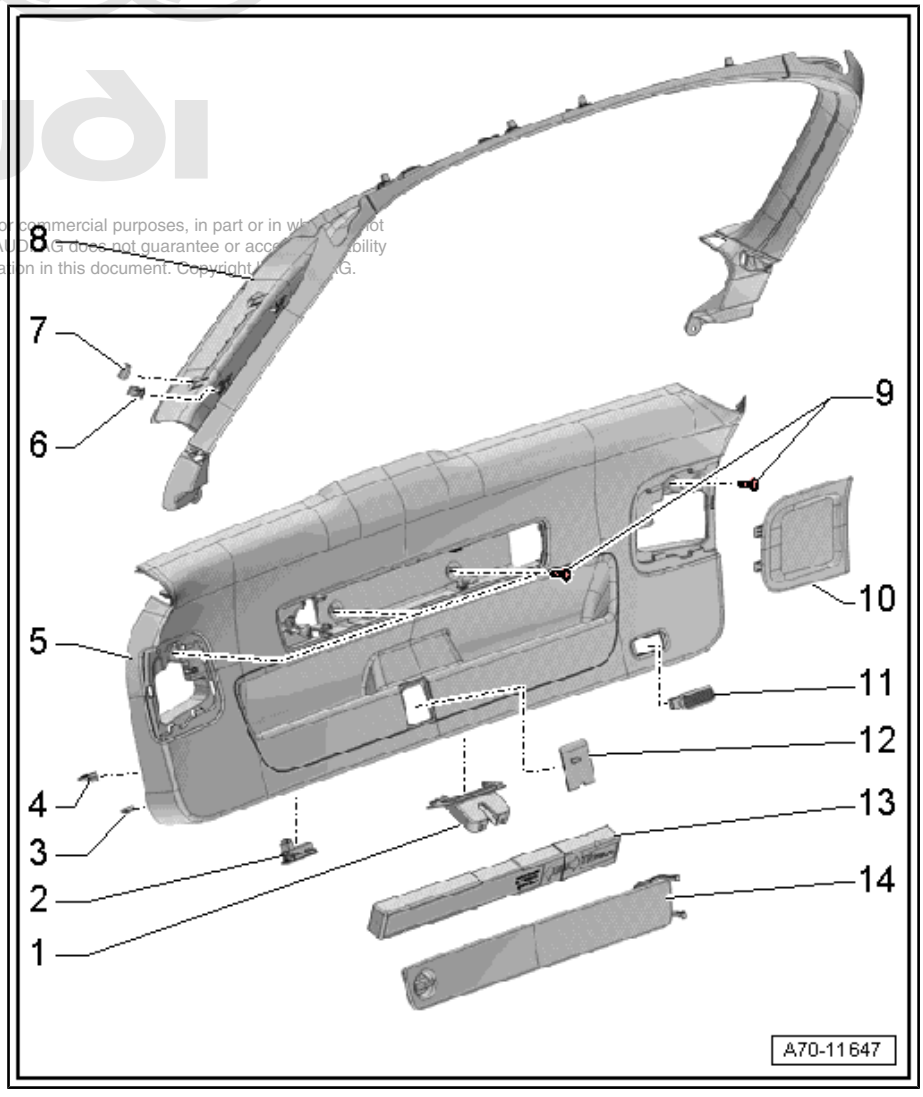
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Insert in trim

4 - Clip

- ❑ 8x without catches
- ❑ 2x with catches; renew
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

5 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

Equipment versions:
♦ Without sun blind



Audi
Reproduction prohibited. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ With sun blind
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 318
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Clip
- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Rubber buffer
- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Insert in trim

8 - Rear lid trim (top)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 319
- ❑ First insert behind side window frames of rear lid
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Cover
- ❑ For tail light
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim

11 - Luggage compartment light
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing luggage compartment light - W3-

12 - Cover
- ❑ For manual release mechanism
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim

13 - Warning triangle

14 - Cover
- ❑ For warning triangle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.6.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - Avant”, page 318
- ❑ Engage in rear lid trim
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6.5 Exploded view - lock carrier trim

⇒ “6.5.1 Exploded view - lock carrier trim, Saloon”, page 314

⇒ “6.5.2 Exploded view - lock carrier trim, Avant”, page 315

6.5.1 Exploded view - lock carrier trim, Saloon

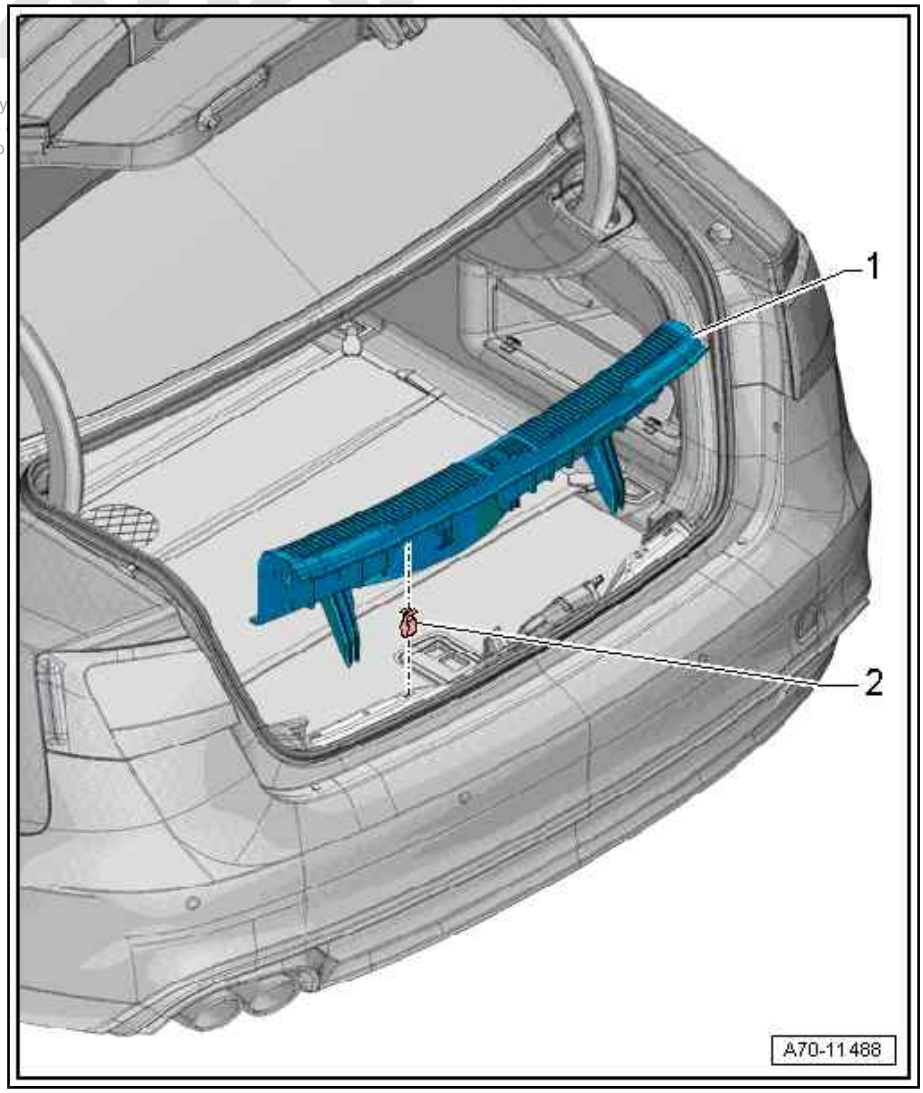
1 - Rear cross panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 335
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, with respect to

2 - Clip

- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



6.5.2 Exploded view - lock carrier trim, Avant

1 - Bolt

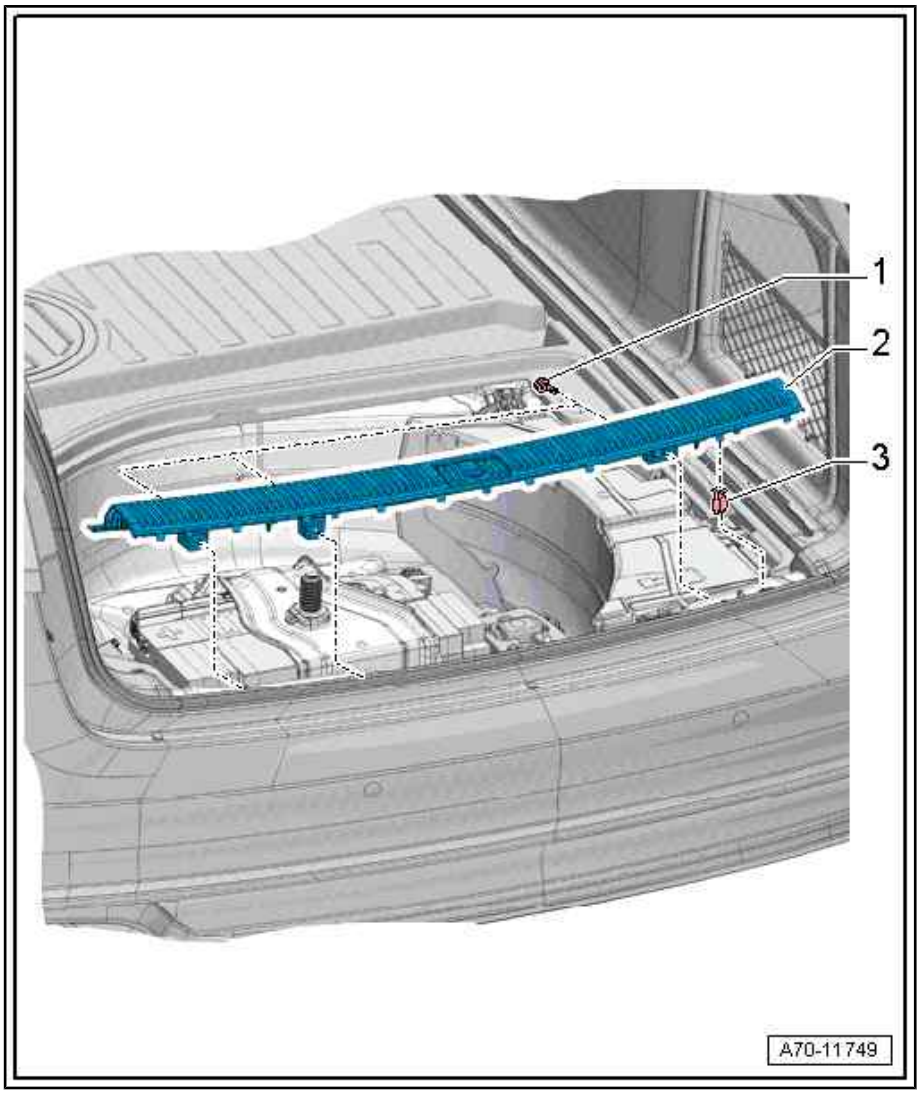
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

2 - Rear cross panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 336
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

3 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



6.6 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

⇒ "6.6.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - Saloon", page 315

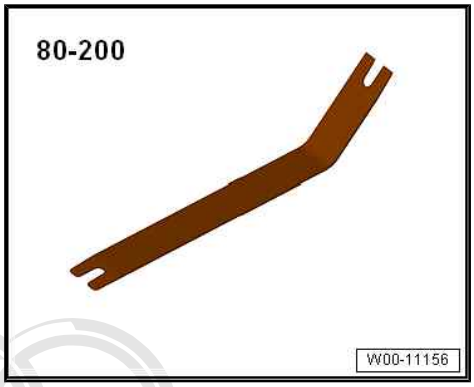
⇒ "6.6.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - Avant", page 318

6.6.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-

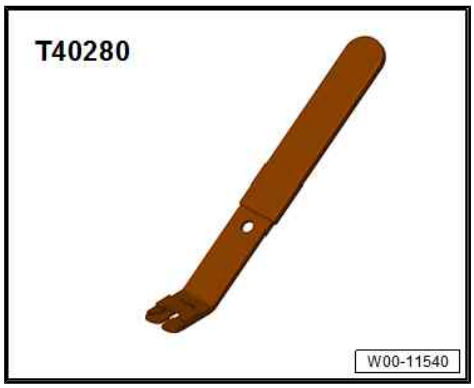


♦ Wedges - T10383-



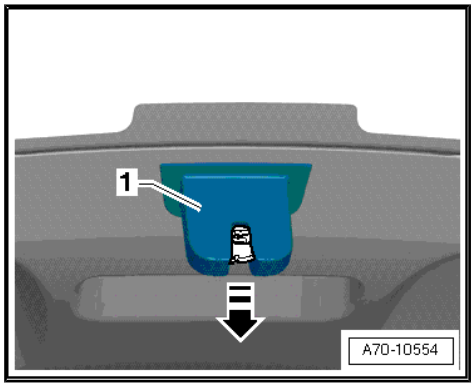
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-

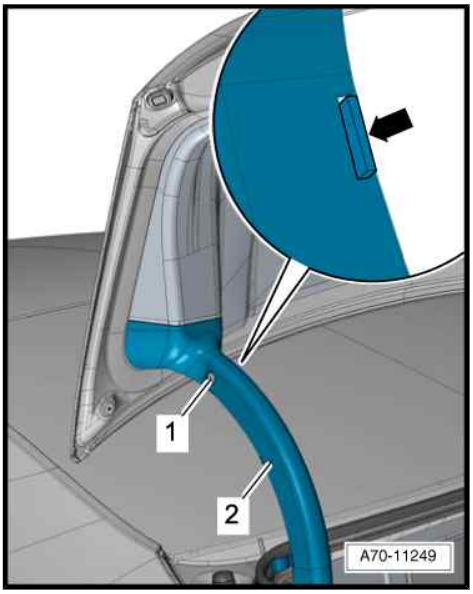


Removing

– Unclip trim for rear lid lock -1- -arrow- using wedge -T10383- .

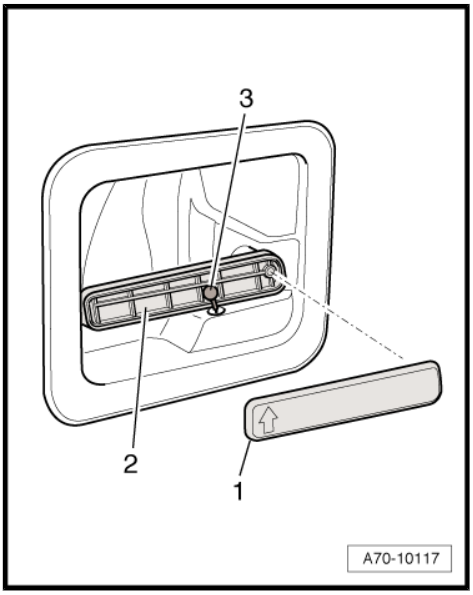


– Remove fastener -1-; to do so, carefully press locking pin approx. 5 mm into fastener until it engages audibly.
– Release retaining tabs -arrow- with a screwdriver and unfasten trim for rear lid hinge.
– Press trim for rear lid hinge -2- down slightly and disengage at top of rear lid trim.
– Lift out and detach trim for rear lid hinge.
– Repeat procedure on opposite side of trim for rear lid hinge.
– Remove bracket for warning triangle ⇒ page 337 .
– Remove button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406- .



Country-specific version with manual release inside luggage compartment:

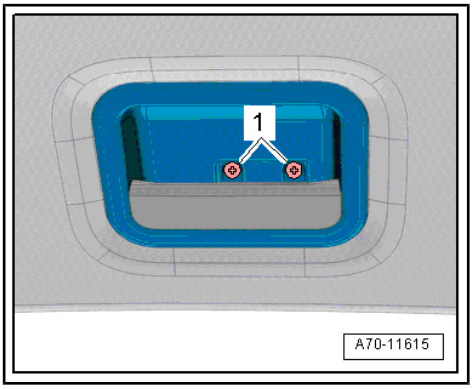
– Unclip cover -1- at operating lever -2-.
– Disengage nipple -3- of actuating cable from operating lever.
– Unscrew bolt behind operating lever.



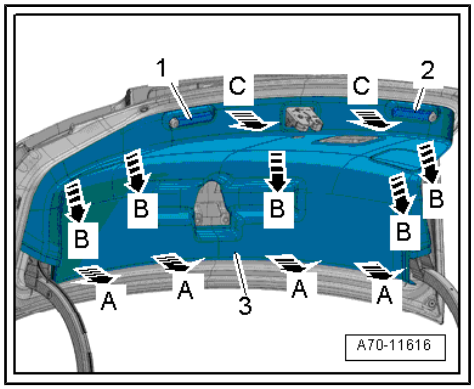
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Continued for all vehicles:

– Using a screwdriver, unclip cover and unscrew bolts -1- beneath.



– Unclip stop strips -1- and -2- with a screwdriver.
– Prise off rear lid trim -3- using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows-.
– To do so, unfasten retaining clips in the sequence -A, B, C-.
– Detach rear lid trim.



Country-specific version with manual release inside luggage compartment:

– Disengage cable sheath at rear of handle recess for operating lever.

Installing

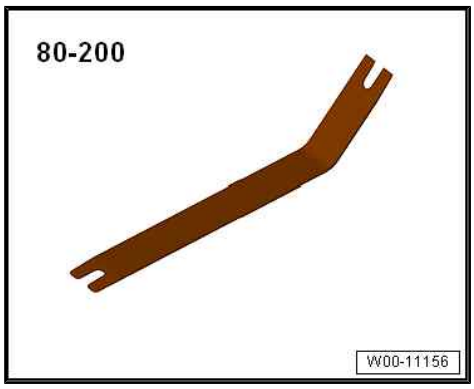
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "6.4.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Saloon", page 311

6.6.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - Avant

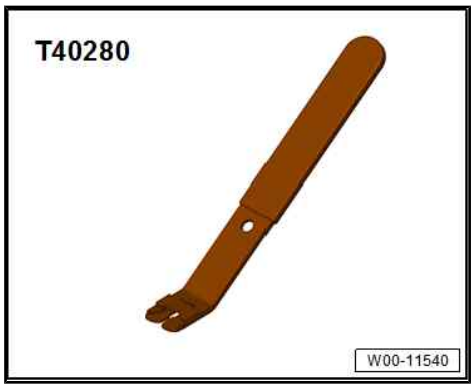
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-

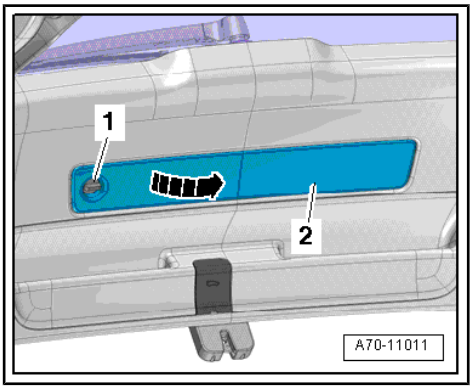


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

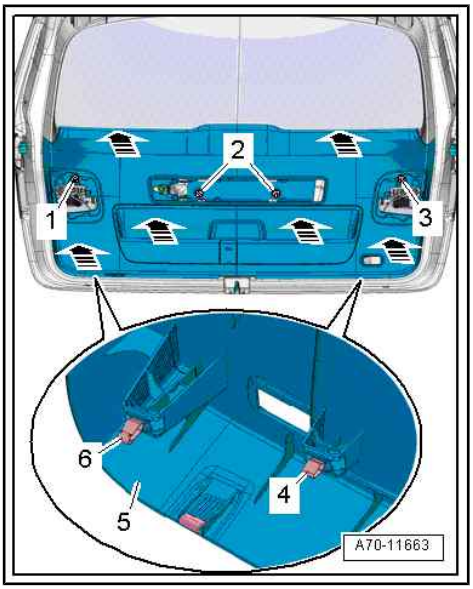
♦ Removal tool - T40280-



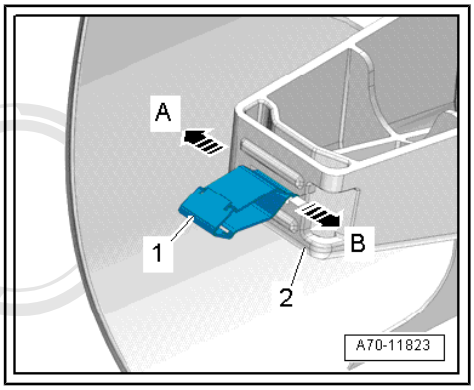
Removing



– Turn quick-release fastener -1- 90° (anti-clockwise) and swivel out cover -2- for warning triangle -arrow-.
– Take out warning triangle.
– Disengage cover at rear lid trim (bottom) and detach.
– Remove tail light covers ⇒ page 342 .
– Remove luggage compartment light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing luggage compartment light - W3- .
– Remove button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406- .



– Remove bolts -1, 2, 3-.
– Release clips -6- (with catches) on rear lid trim (bottom) -5- at corners using removal lever - 80 - 200- up to first detent -outer arrows-.
– Insert removal lever - 80 - 200- between trim and rear lid and disengage the remaining clips -4- -inner arrows-.



– To release clip -1- (with catches), press trim outwards -arrow A-; this causes clip to slide out of mounting point -2- in trim -arrow B-.
– Detach rear lid trim (bottom).

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

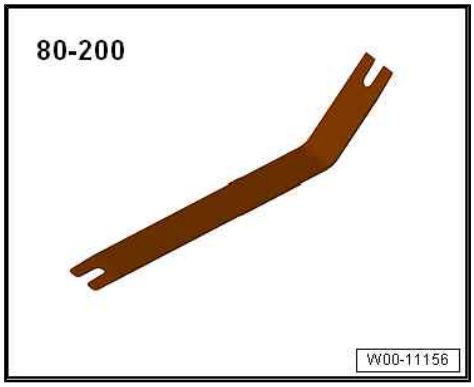
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Avant”, page 312

6.7 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)

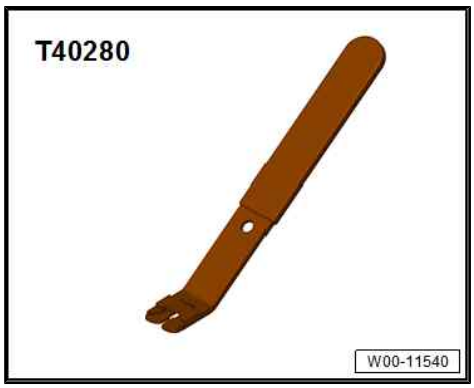
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Copyright AUDI AG. Any use for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

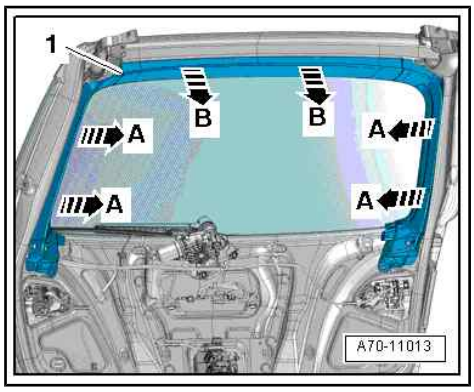
Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ page 318 .

– Equipment version with sun blind: Remove retainer for sun blind ⇒ page 49 .

– First unclip rear lid trim (top) -1- from rear lid from the side using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows A-.

– Then unclip rear lid trim (top) from rear lid using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows B- and detach.

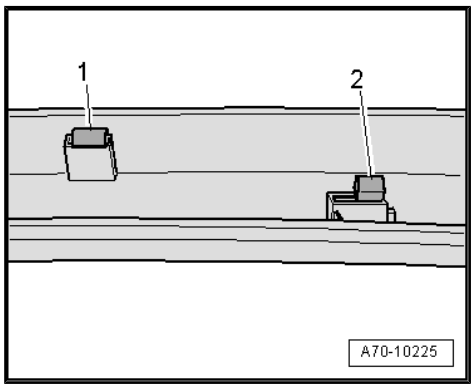


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Check that all rubber buffers -1- and clips -2- are fitted in trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Avant”, page 312



6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

⇒ “6.8.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Saloon”, page 321

⇒ “6.8.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - country-specific version”, page 323

⇒ “6.8.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - hybrid”, page 325

⇒ “6.8.4 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - e-tron”, page 327

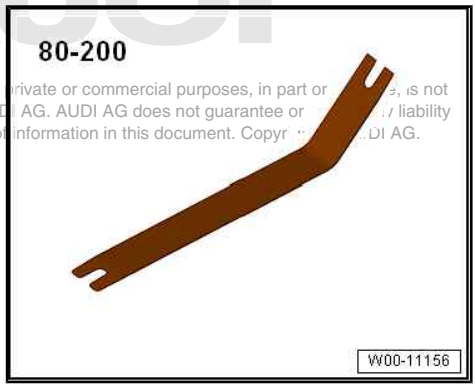
⇒ “6.8.5 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Avant”, page 330

⇒ “6.8.6 Removing and installing luggage compartment back panel trim”, page 331

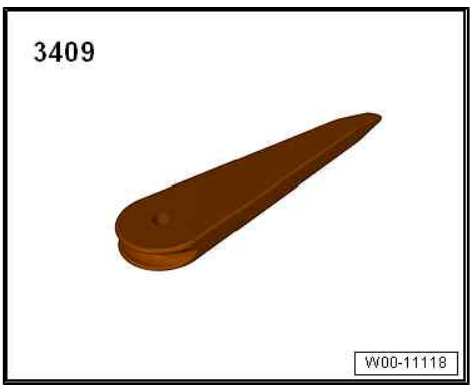
6.8.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80 - 200-

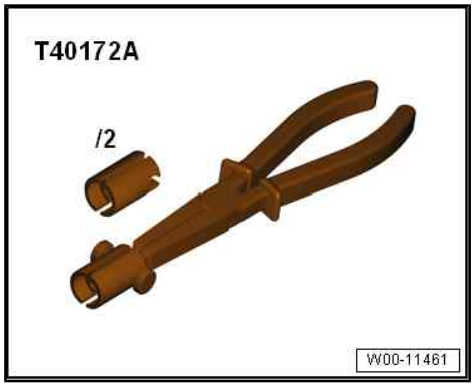


- Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or ... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ... liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr ... DI AG.

♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



The reproduction, distribution and utilization of this document for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 552 .

– Equipment version with fixed rear seat backrest: Remove fixed rear seat backrest ⇒ page 544 .

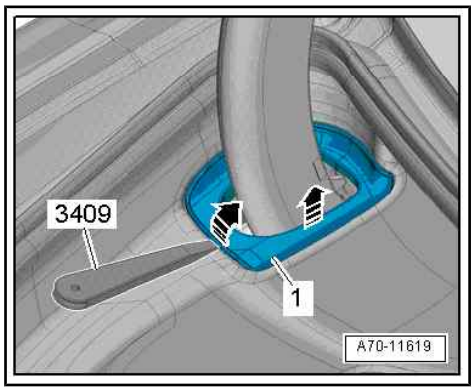
– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 333 .

– Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 335 .

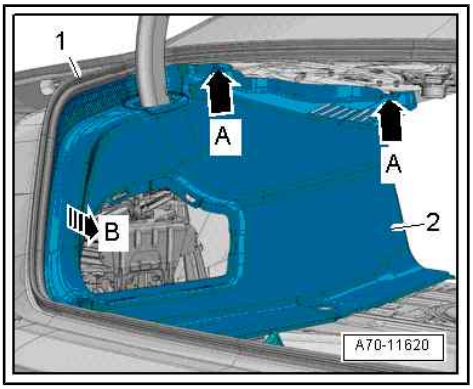
– Remove fastening ring ⇒ page 337 .

– Unclip frame for rear lid hinge -1- at rear and inside using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.

– Pull frame out of luggage compartment side trim, release fastener and disengage frame at rear lid hinge.



– Pull off rear lid seal -1- in area of luggage compartment side trim.
– Remove fasteners -arrows A- using pliers - T40172 A- .
– Lever luggage compartment side trim -2- off body -arrow B- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim at rear lid hinge.
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim at catch for rear seat backrest and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

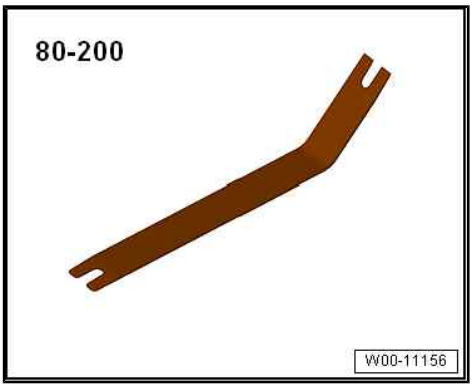
– Fold rear lid seal over luggage compartment side trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 299

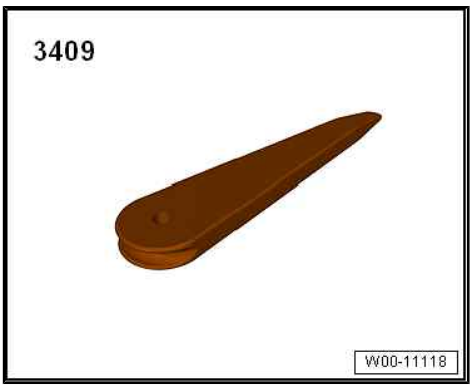
6.8.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - country-specific version

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-

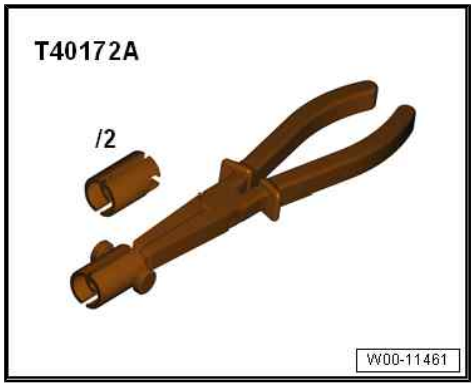


♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

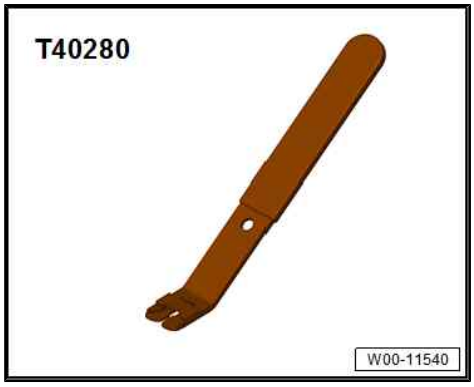


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

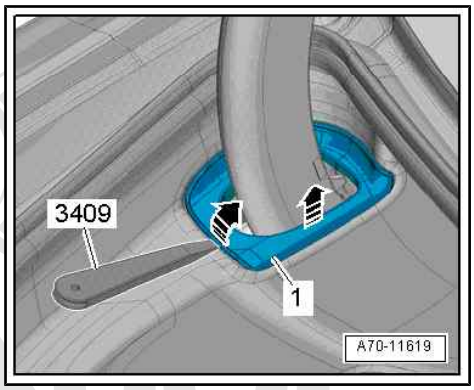
– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 333 .

– Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 335 .

– Remove fastening ring ⇒ page 337 .

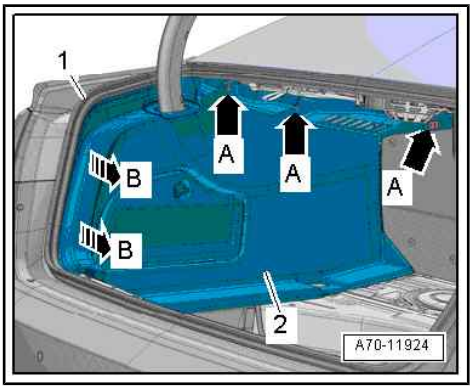
– Unclip frame for rear lid hinge -1- at rear and inside using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.

– Pull frame out of luggage compartment side trim, release fastener and disengage frame at rear lid hinge.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull off rear lid seal -1- in area of luggage compartment side trim.
– Remove fasteners -arrows A- using pliers - T40172 A- .
– Lever luggage compartment side trim -2- off body -arrow B- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim at rear lid hinge.
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim at catch for rear seat backrest and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Copyright AUDI AG. All rights reserved. Any use, duplication or distribution of this document is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Fold rear lid seal over luggage compartment side trim.

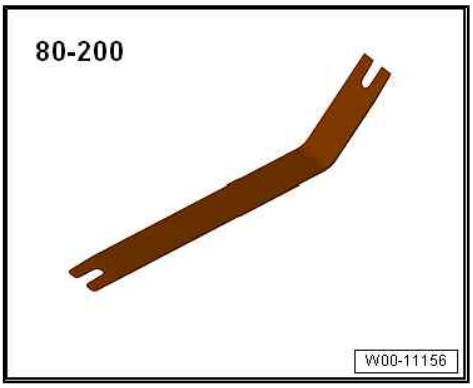
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 299

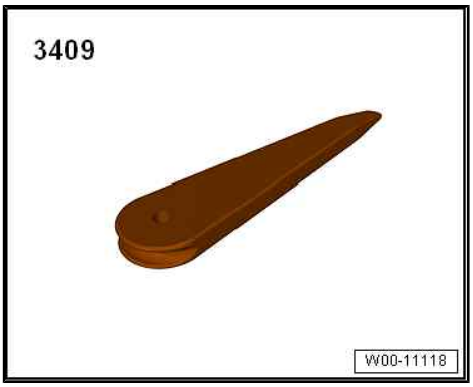
6.8.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - hybrid

Special tools and workshop equipment required

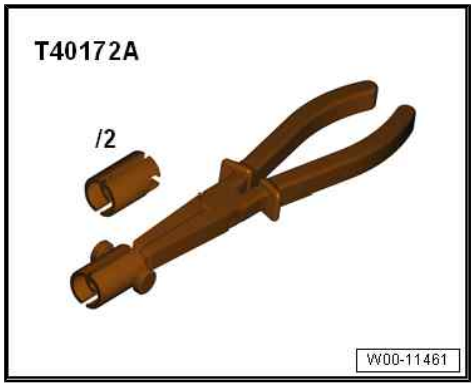
♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



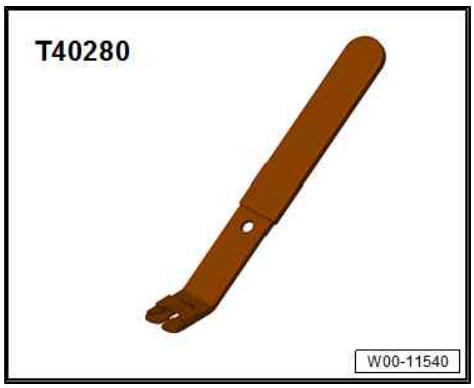
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 552 .

– Equipment version with fixed rear seat backrest: Remove fixed rear seat backrest ⇒ page 544 .

– Remove fastening ring ⇒ page 337 .

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 333 .

DANGER!

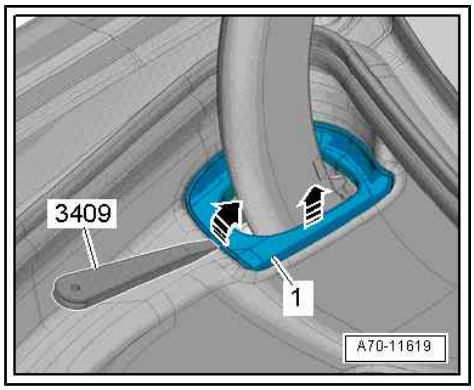
High voltage! Danger of severe or fatal injuries from electric shock.

♦ ***Note safety precautions when working in the vicinity of high-voltage components ⇒ page 3 .***

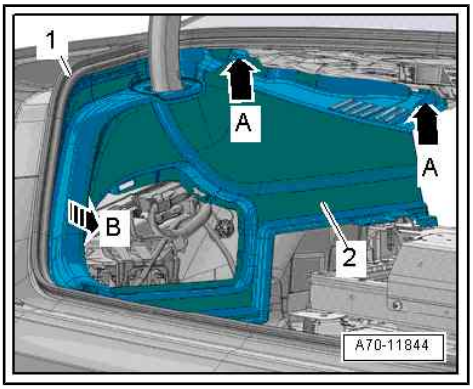
– Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 335 .

– Unclip frame for rear lid hinge -1- at rear and inside using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.

– Pull frame out of luggage compartment side trim, release fastener and disengage frame at rear lid hinge.



– Remove fasteners -arrows A- using pliers - T40172 A- .
– Pull off rear lid seal -1- in area of luggage compartment side trim.
– Lever luggage compartment side trim -2- off body -arrow B- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim at rear lid hinge.
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim at catch for rear seat backrest and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

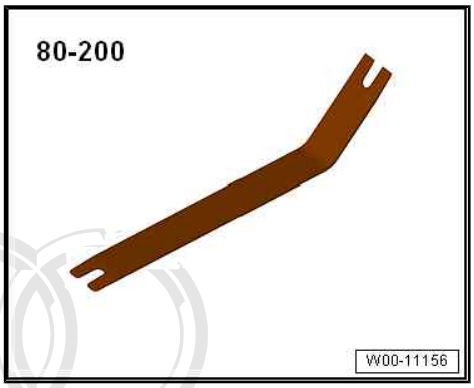
– Fold rear lid seal over luggage compartment side trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.2.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, hybrid", page 301

6.8.4 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - e-tron

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-

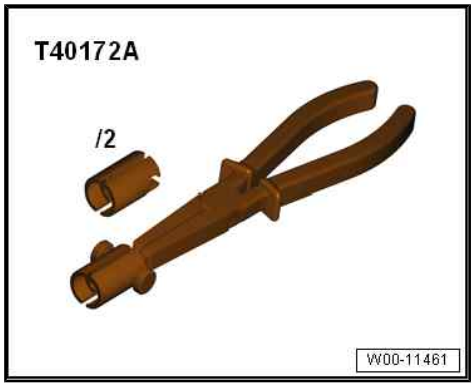


♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

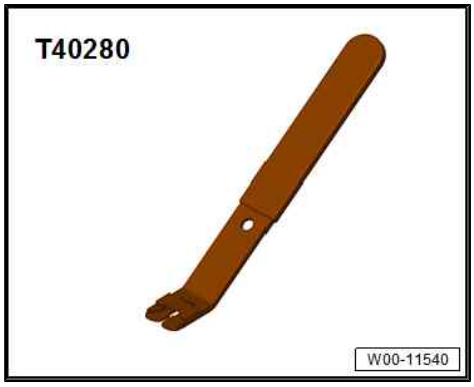


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in ... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant... any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 552 .

– Remove fastening ring ⇒ page 337 .

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 333 .

DANGER!

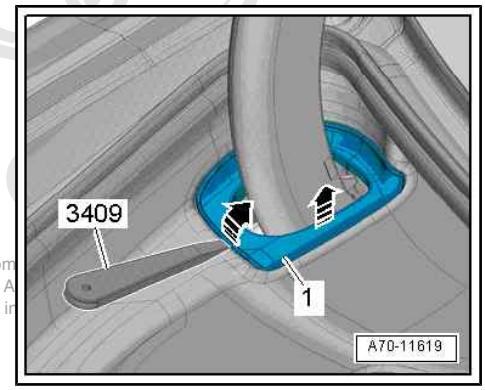
High voltage! Danger of severe or fatal injuries from electric shock.

♦ ***Note safety precautions when working in the vicinity of high-voltage components ⇒ page 3 .***

– Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 335 .

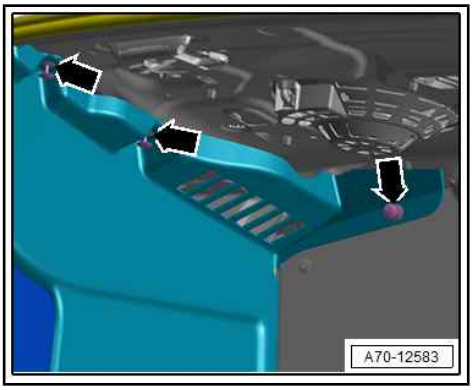
– Unclip frame for rear lid hinge -1- at rear and inside using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.

– Pull frame out of luggage compartment side trim, release fastener and disengage frame at rear lid hinge.

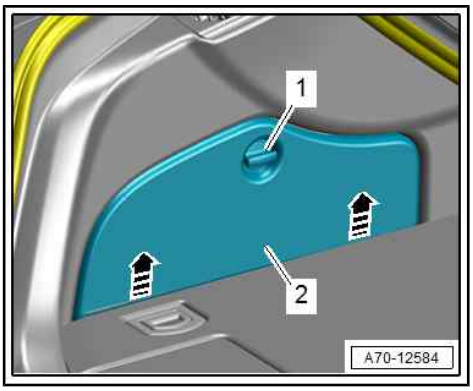


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information in

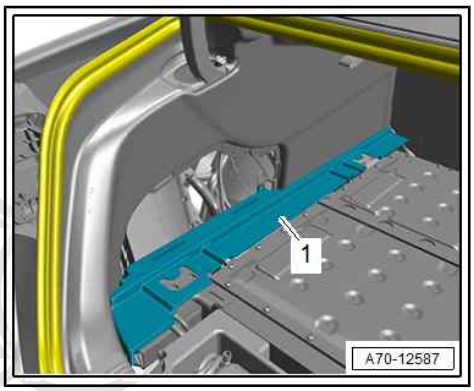
– Remove fasteners -arrows- using pliers - T40172 A- .



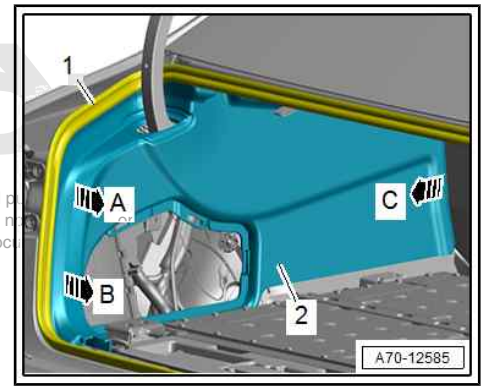
– Turn quick-release fastener -1- anti-clockwise and swivel service cover towards inside.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector.
– Remove service cover -2- upwards from luggage compartment side trim -arrows-.



– Take out filler piece -1-.



– Move luggage compartment side trim clear in vicinity of rear lid seal -1-.
– Unclip luggage compartment side trim -1- from body -arrows A and B-.
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim at rear lid hinge.
– Pull luggage compartment side trim towards rear out of back panel trim -arrow C- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n
with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fold rear lid seal over luggage compartment side trim.

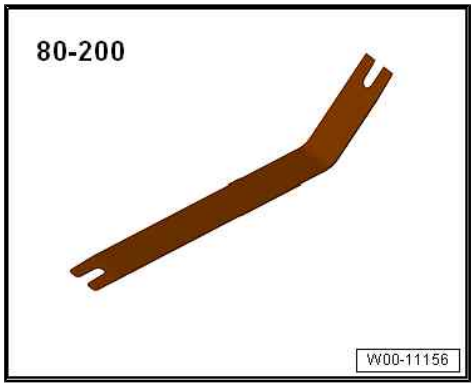
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “6.2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, e-tron”, page 302

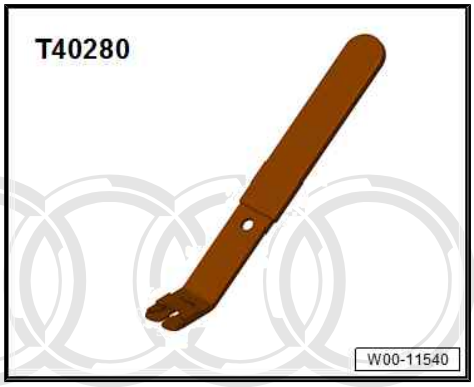
6.8.5 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80 - 200-



- Removal tool - T40280-

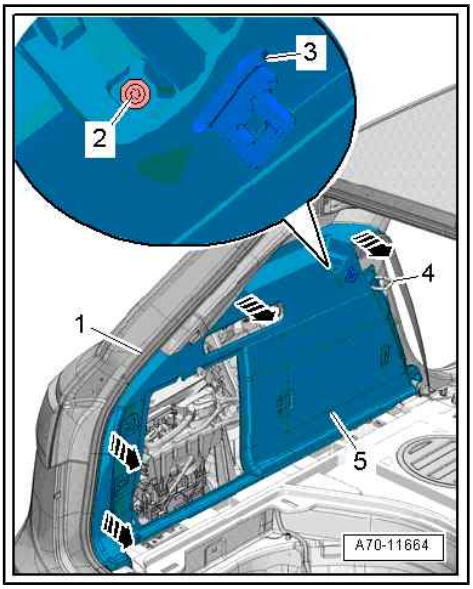


Removing

– Remove luggage compartment cover.
– Remove load guard.
– Remove side padding ⇒ page 552 .
– Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 336 .
– Remove retaining rail ⇒ page 340 .
– Remove backrest remote release mechanism ⇒ page 560 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove cover for luggage compartment side trim.
– Pull off rear lid seal -1- in area of luggage compartment side trim.
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Remove rubber grommet -3- from bracket for load guard.
– Lever luggage compartment side trim -5- off body at rear -arrows- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .
– Detach luggage compartment side trim from D-pillar trim and C-pillar trim -arrows-.
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim at catch -4- for rear seat backrest and detach.



Installing

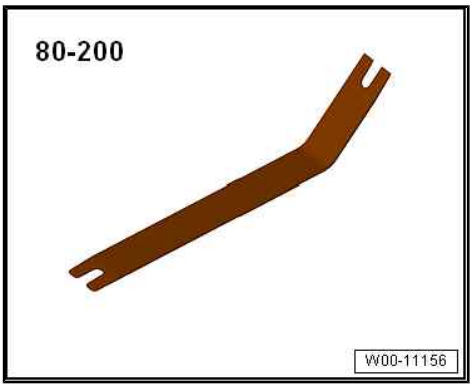
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.2.5 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Avant”, page 304

6.8.6 Removing and installing luggage compartment back panel trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



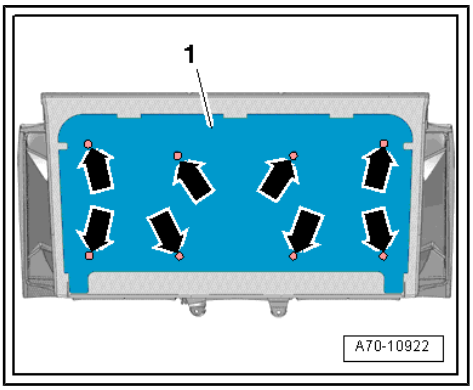
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

Note

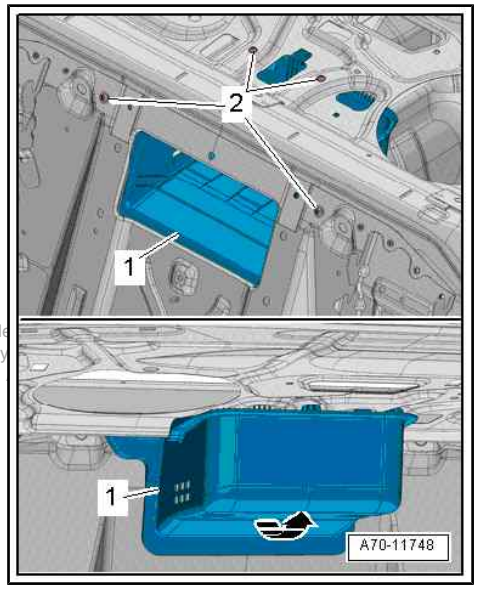
For greater clarity, rear seat backrest has been removed in illustration.

– Detach retaining clips -arrows- using removal lever - 80 - 200- and remove back panel trim -1-.



Country-specific version/equipment version:

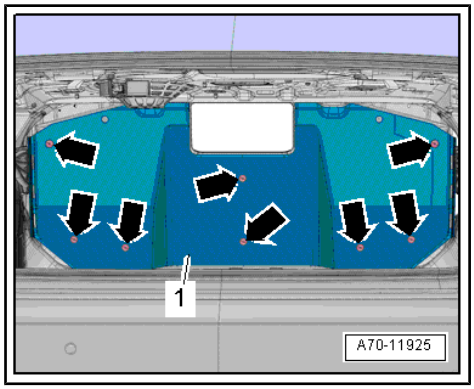
– Remove multi-contour seats ⇒ page 548 .
– Remove rear shelf ⇒ page 293 .
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Swivel cover -1- downwards -arrow-, disengage from hooks and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Country-specific version (continued):

– Remove luggage compartment side trim panels ⇒ page 321 .
– Detach retaining clips -arrows- using removal lever - 80 - 200- and remove back panel trim -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew any damaged retaining clips.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim", page 299

6.9 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor

⇒ “6.9.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - all vehicles except hybrid/e-tron”, page 333

⇒ “6.9.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - hybrid”, page 333

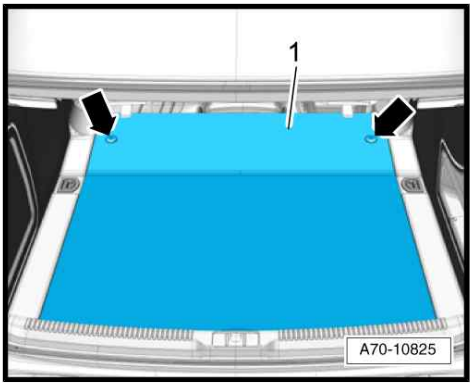
⇒ “6.9.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - e-tron”, page 334

6.9.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - all vehicles except hybrid/e-tron

Removing

Saloon:

– Disengage luggage compartment floor covering -1- at front -arrows- and detach.

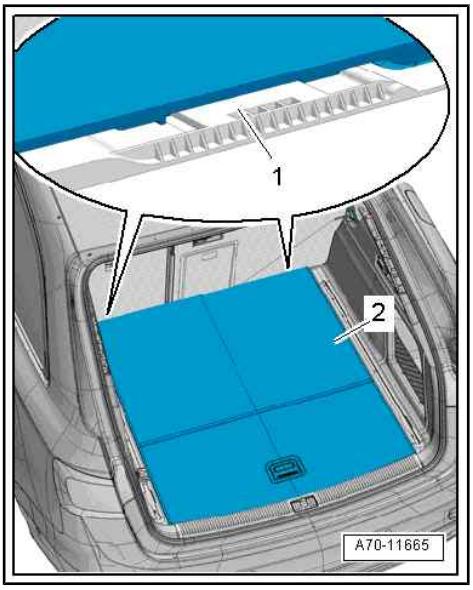


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Avant:

– Lift luggage compartment floor covering by its grip.

– Pull luggage compartment floor covering -2- towards rear off mountings -1- on luggage compartment floor lining and take out.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 305

6.9.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - hybrid

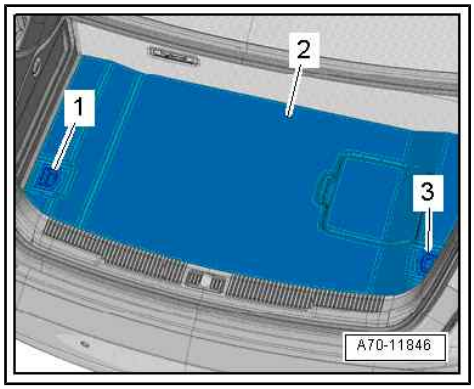
DANGER!

High voltage! Danger of severe or fatal injuries from electric shock.

- ***Note safety precautions when working in the vicinity of high-voltage components ⇒ page 3 .***

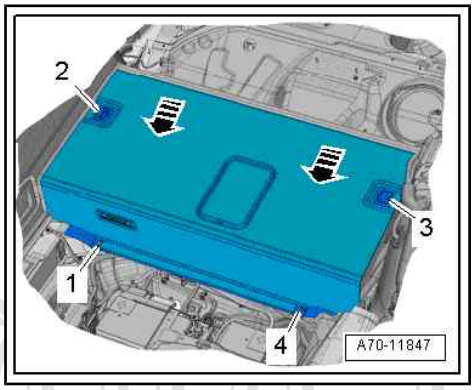
Removing

– Remove fastening rings -1 and 3- ⇒ page 337 .
– Remove luggage compartment floor covering -2-.



Removing cover for drive battery

– Remove fastening rings -2 and 3- ⇒ page 337 .
– Remove bolts -1, 4-.
– Unclip cover (front) for drive battery.
– Pull cover for drive battery towards rear -arrows- and take it out.



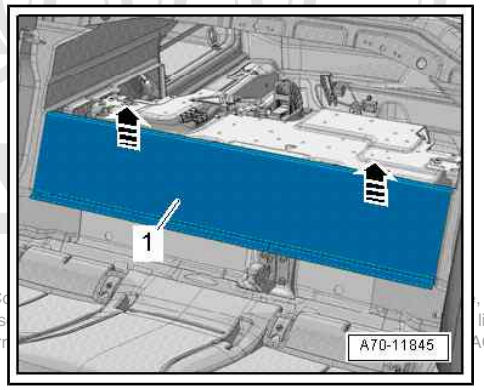
Removing trim cover (front)

– Fold down rear seat backrest.
– Unclip cover (front) -1- for drive battery -arrows- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.3.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, hybrid", page 307



Protected by copyright. Co... permitted unless authoris... with respect to the cor... , is not liability AG.

6.9.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - e-tron

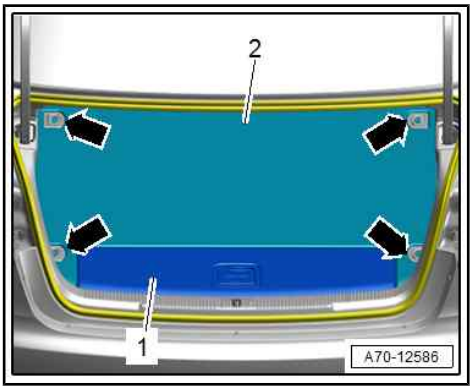
Removing

DANGER!

High voltage! Danger of severe or fatal injuries from electric shock.

- ***Note safety precautions when working in the vicinity of high-voltage components ⇒ page 3 .***

– Disengage and remove luggage compartment floor (rear) -1-.
– Remove fastening rings -arrows- ⇒ page 337 .
– Take out luggage compartment floor (front) -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, e-tron”, page 302

6.10 Removing and installing lock carrier trim

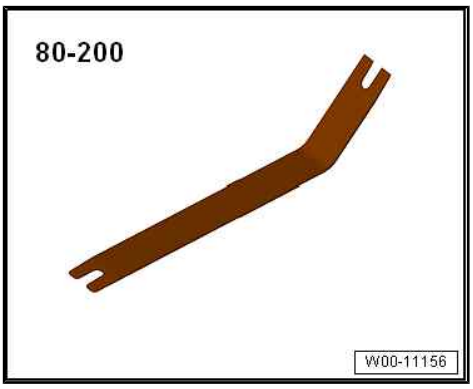
⇒ “6.10.1 Removing and installing lock carrier trim - Saloon”, page 335

⇒ “6.10.2 Removing and installing lock carrier trim - Avant”, page 336

6.10.1 Removing and installing lock carrier trim - Saloon

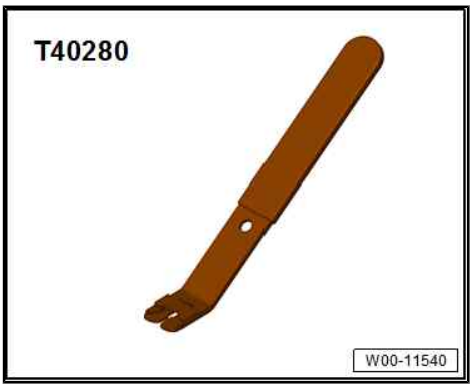
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-

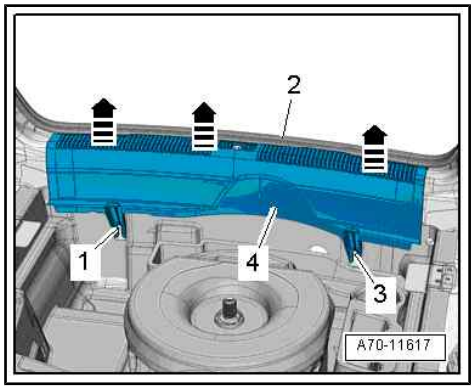


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing



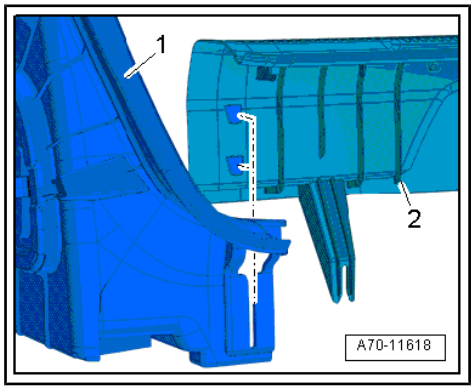
– A6 hybrid/e-tron: Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 333 .
– Fold luggage compartment floor covering forwards.
– Equipment version with tool kit/breakdown set: Remove tool kit/breakdown set.
– Pull off rear lid seal -2- in area of rear cross panel trim.
– Working vertically upwards, unclip rear cross panel trim -4- -arrows- using removal lever - 80 - 200- and detach.

Note

Considerable force is required to unclip the trim from the rear cross panel.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



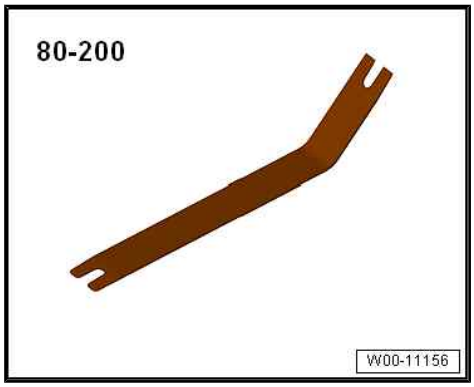
- Lugs must engage in pins -1- and -3-.
- Rear cross panel trim -2- must engage in luggage compartment side trim -1-.

– Fold rear lid seal over rear cross panel trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.5.1 Exploded view - lock carrier trim, Saloon”, page 314

6.10.2 Removing and installing lock carrier trim - Avant

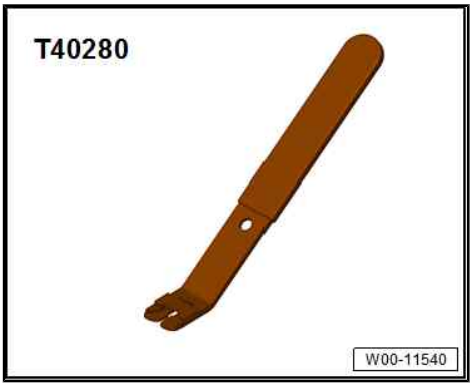
Special tools and workshop equipment required



♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

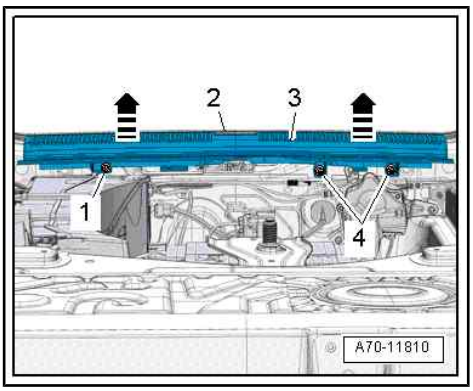
– Take hold of grip to lift luggage compartment floor covering and fold it towards front.

– Remove insert/cover for spare wheel well.

– Remove bolts -1- and -4-.

– Pull off rear lid seal -2- in area of rear cross panel trim.

– Working vertically upwards, unclip rear cross panel trim -3- -arrows- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

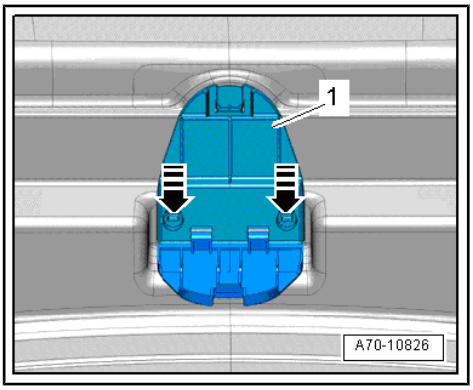
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.5.2 Exploded view - lock carrier trim, Avant”, page 315

6.11 Removing and installing bracket for warning triangle

Removing

– Press release mechanism and remove warning triangle from bracket.

– Release retaining tabs -arrows- with a screwdriver and detach bracket -1- for warning triangle.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.4.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Saloon”, page 311

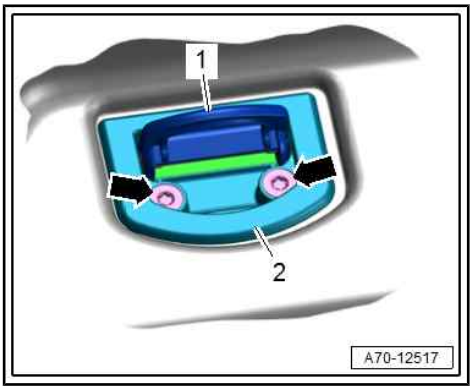
6.12 Removing and installing fastening ring

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Fold fastening ring -1- upwards.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach mounting for fastening ring -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 299

6.13 Removing and installing retainer for luggage compartment floor covering

Removing

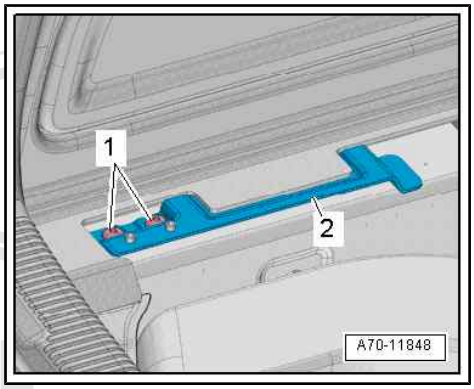
> **DANGER!**
>
> *High voltage! Danger of severe or fatal injuries from electric shock.*
>
> - *Note safety precautions when working in the vicinity of high-voltage components ⇒ page 3 .*

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 333 .

Retainer (rear):

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Disengage and detach bracket -2-.

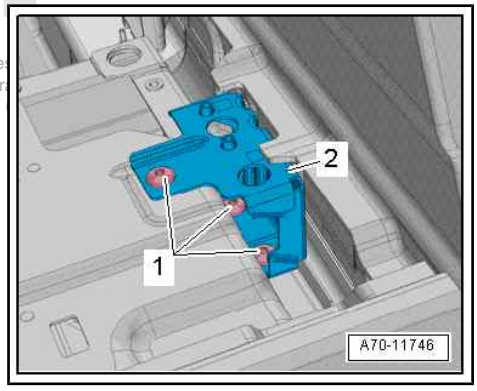


Retainer (front):

– Remove cover for drive battery ⇒ page 334 .

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Disengage bracket -2- for cover for drive battery and detach.



Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Installing

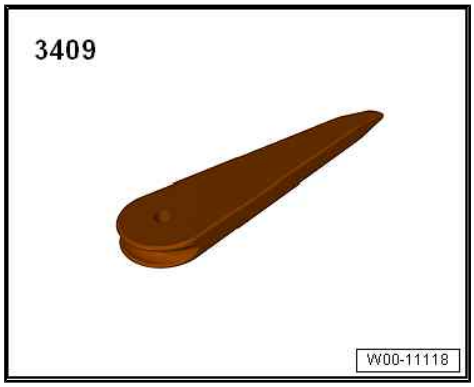
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.3.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, hybrid", page 307

6.14 Removing and installing frame for loading aid

Special tools and workshop equipment required

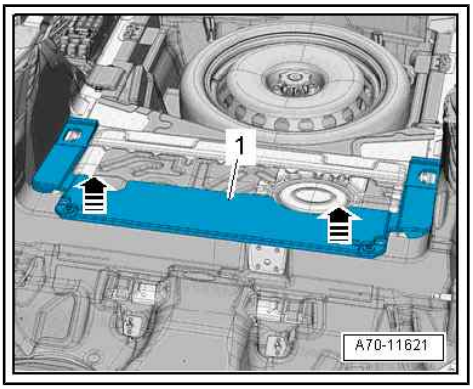
- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim panels ⇒ page 321 .

– Unclip mounting frame for loading aid -1- at front using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and remove.



Installing

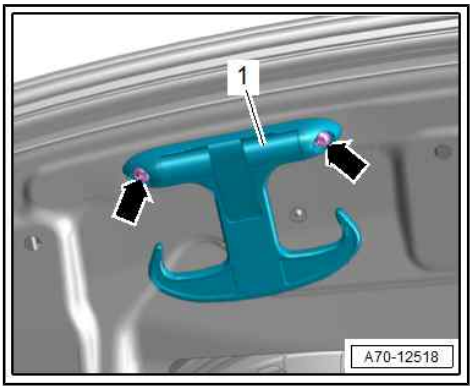
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.3.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Saloon", page 305

6.15 Removing and installing bag hook

Removing

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach retaining hook -1-.



Installing

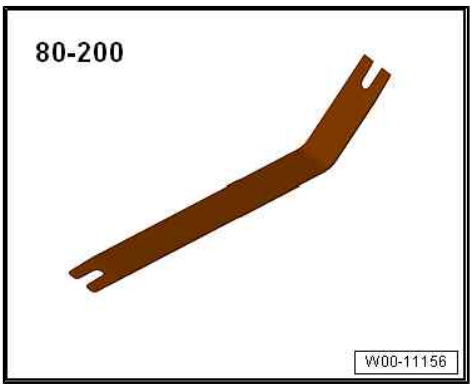
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.3.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Saloon", page 305

6.16 Removing and installing grip for luggage compartment floor (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

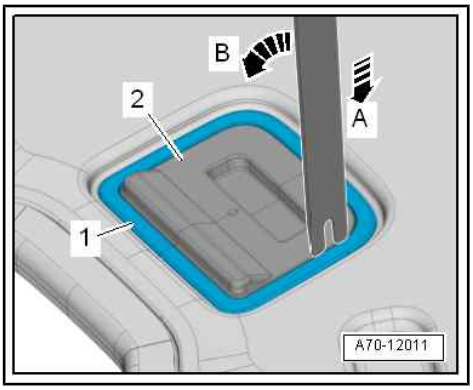
Removing

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 333 .

– Release retaining frame -1- on underside of luggage compartment floor.

– To do so, apply removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrow A- and release retaining frame -arrow B-.

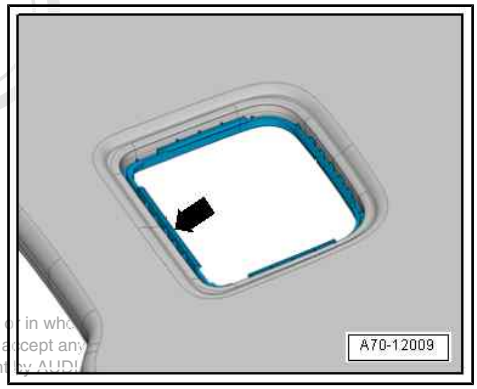
– Disengage retaining frame and detach grip -2- for luggage compartment floor.



Installing

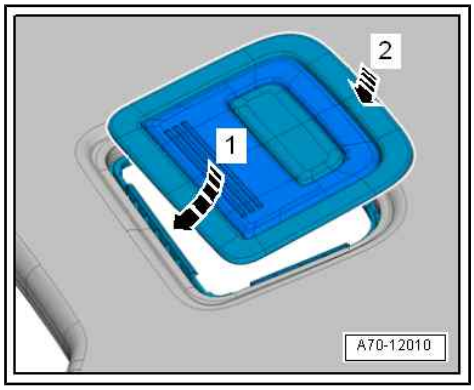
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert retaining frame -arrow- into opening in luggage compartment floor from underneath and hold it in position.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Slide grip for luggage compartment floor into retaining frame towards rear of vehicle -arrow 1- and engage downwards -arrow 2-.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 305

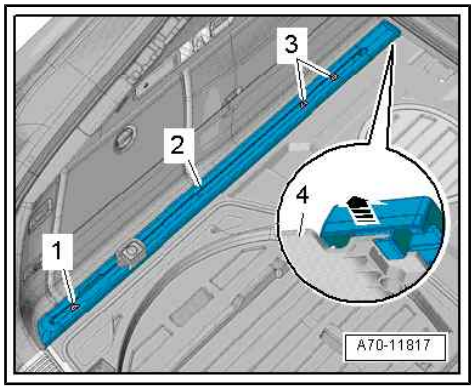
6.17 Removing and installing retaining rail

Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Remove bolts -1- and -3-.

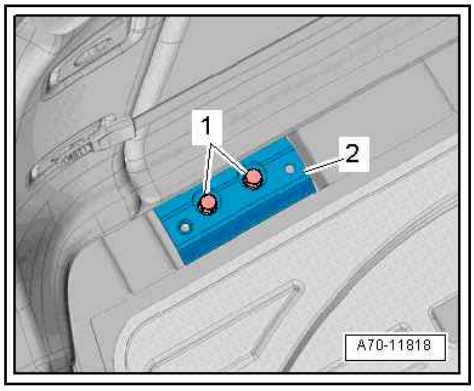
– Slide retaining rail -2- forwards slightly -arrow-, disengage it from luggage compartment floor lining -4- and remove.



Removing bracket (rear)

– Remove bolts -1-.

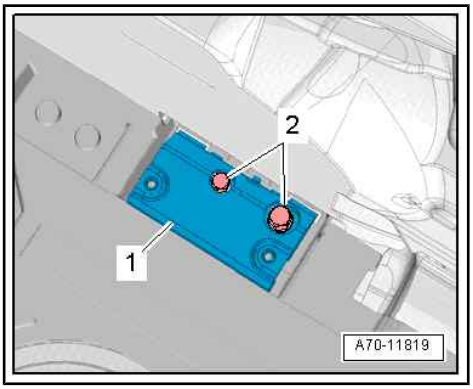
– Pull retainer -2- out from underneath luggage compartment side trim and detach.



Removing bracket (front)

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 330 .

– Unscrew bolts -2- and detach retainer -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.3.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Avant", page 309

6.18 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well

⇒ "6.18.1 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well - Saloon", page 341

⇒ "6.18.2 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well - Avant", page 342

6.18.1 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well - Saloon

Removing

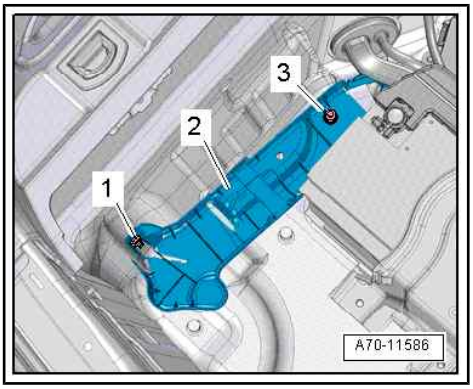
– Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 335 .

– Equipment version with spare wheel: Take out spare wheel.

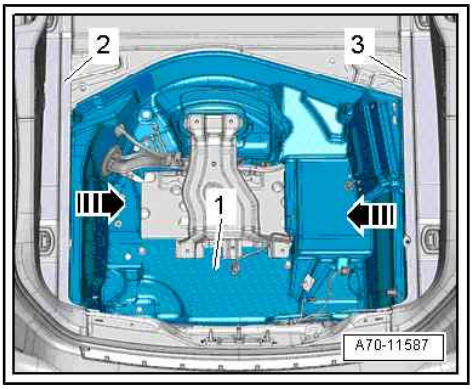
– Take out mounting for tool kit.

– Equipment version with jack: Take out jack and remove mounting -2- for jack; to do so, unscrew nuts -1- and -3-.

– Equipment version with breakdown set: Remove breakdown set.



– Pull out lining -1- for spare wheel well sideways from underneath luggage compartment side trim panels -2- and -3- -arrows- and lift off.



Note

If the lining cannot be pulled out, loosen the bolts for the rear fastening rings ⇒ page 337 .

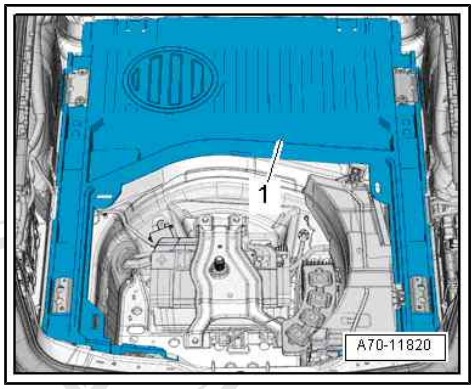
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.3.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Saloon", page 305

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.18.2 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well - Avant



Removing

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 333 .
– Remove insert/cover for spare wheel well.
– Remove retaining rails ⇒ page 340 .
– Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 336 .
– Remove luggage compartment side trim panels ⇒ page 330 .
– Take out luggage compartment floor lining -1- towards rear through rear lid opening.

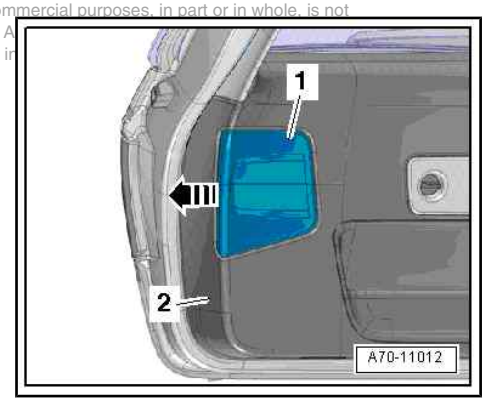
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.3.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Avant”, page 309

6.19 Removing and installing tail light cover

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A with respect to the correctness of information in



Removing

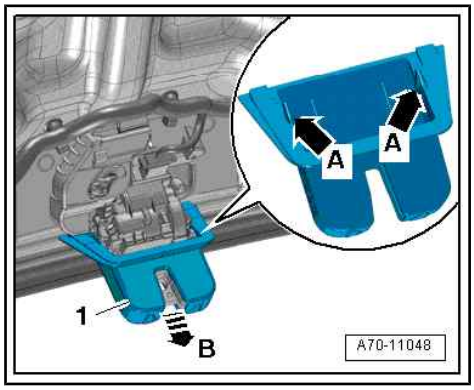
– Unclip tail light cover -1- from rear lid trim (bottom) -2- in direction of -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Avant”, page 312

6.20 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock



Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ page 318 .
– Using a screwdriver, release retaining tabs -arrows A- and detach trim -1- from rear lid lock -arrow B-.

Installing

Install in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Avant”, page 312

7 Roof trim panels

⇒ “7.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim”, page 343

⇒ “7.2 Exploded view - roof end trim”, page 345

⇒ “7.3 Exploded view - moulded headliner”, page 346

⇒ “7.4 Removing and installing roof end trim”, page 348

⇒ “7.5 Removing and installing moulded headliner”, page 350

⇒ “7.6 Attaching roof reinforcement to body”, page 355

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim

⇒ “7.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim, Saloon”, page 343

⇒ “7.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim, Avant”, page 344

7.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim, Saloon

1 - Moulded headliner

For equipment versions:
- Without sliding sunroof
- With sliding sunroof/panoramic sunroof
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 346

> **Caution**
> *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
>
> *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

2 - Grab handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 49

3 - Interior light/reading light (front)

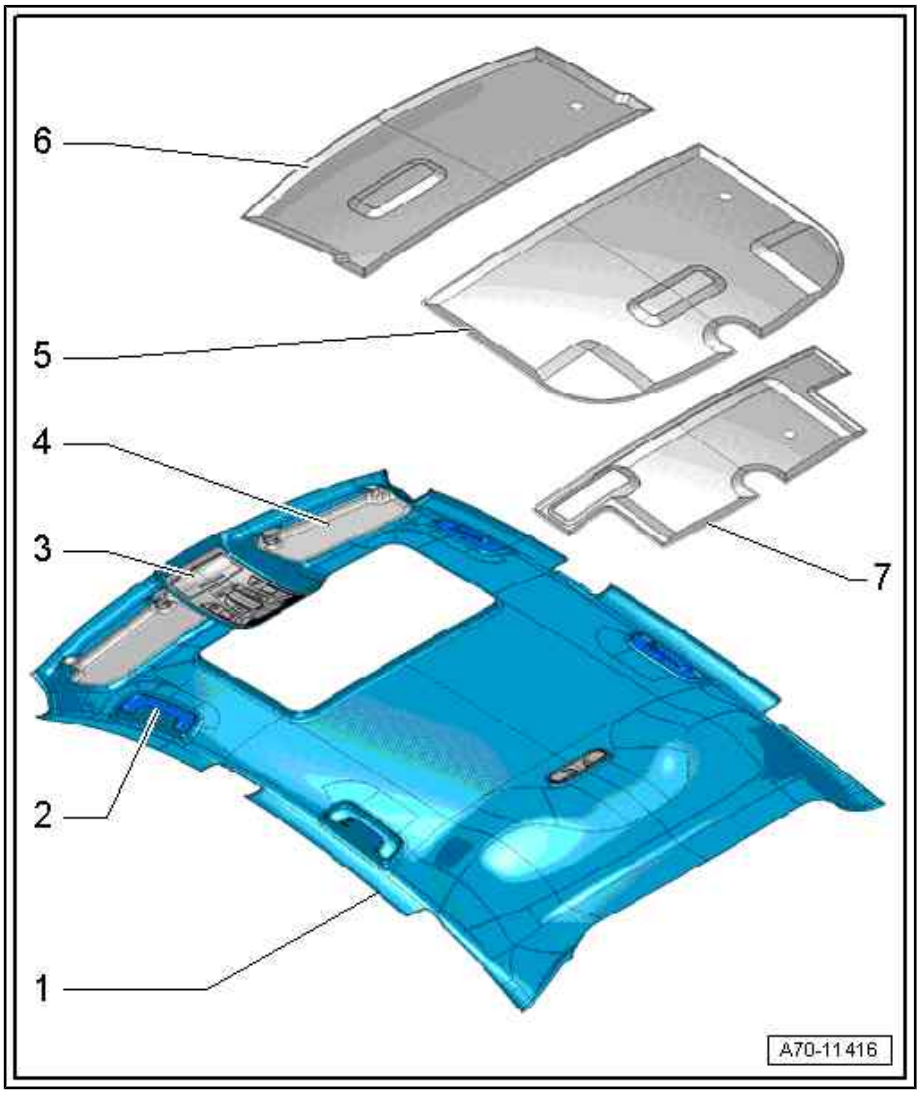
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front)

4 - Sun visor

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 38

5 - Roof reinforcement (rear)

- ❑ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching ⇒ page 355



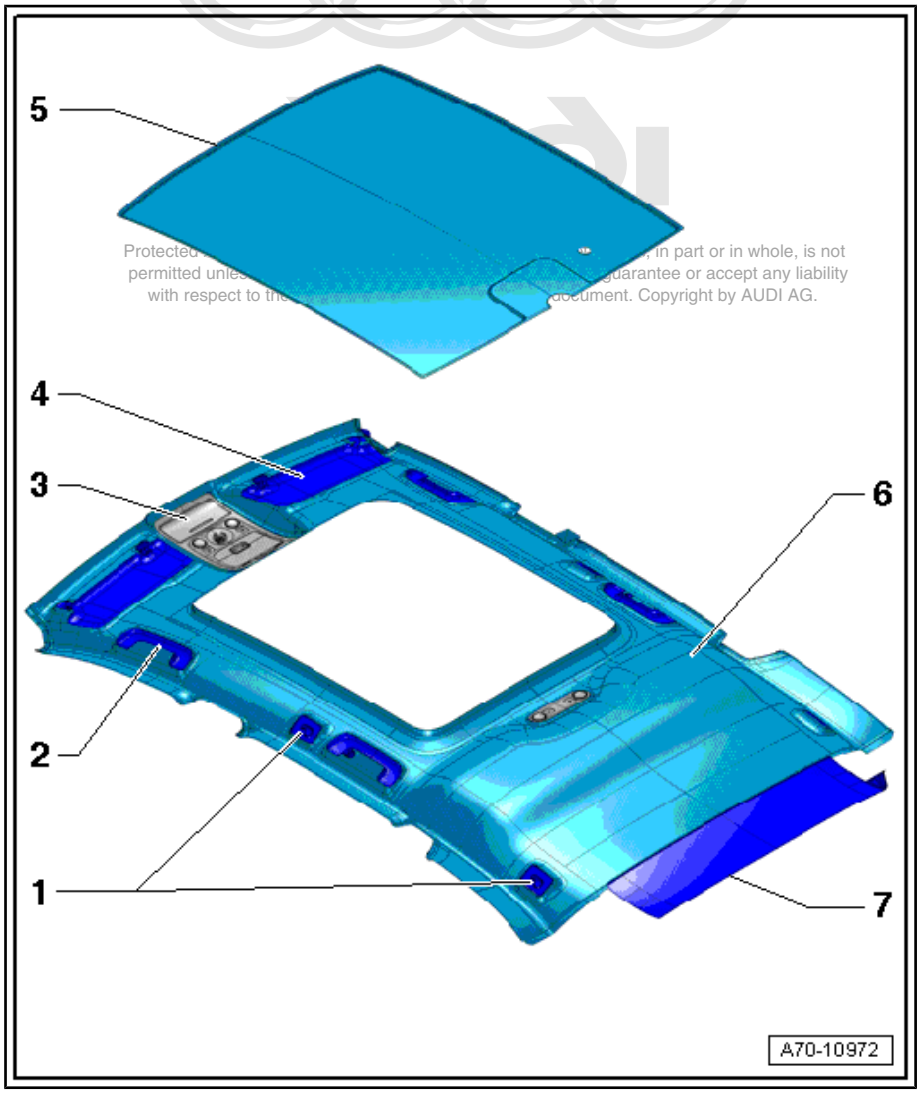
6 - Roof reinforcement (front)

- ❑ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching ⇒ page 355

7 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching ⇒ page 355

7.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim, Avant



Protected … permitted unle… with respect to th… document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Retainer

- ❑ For load guard
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 36

2 - Grab handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 49

3 - Interior light/reading light (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front)

4 - Sun visor

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 38

5 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching ⇒ page 357

6 - Moulded headliner

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Without sliding sunroof
- ♦ With sliding sunroof
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 348

Caution

The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.

Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.

7 - Roof end trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 345

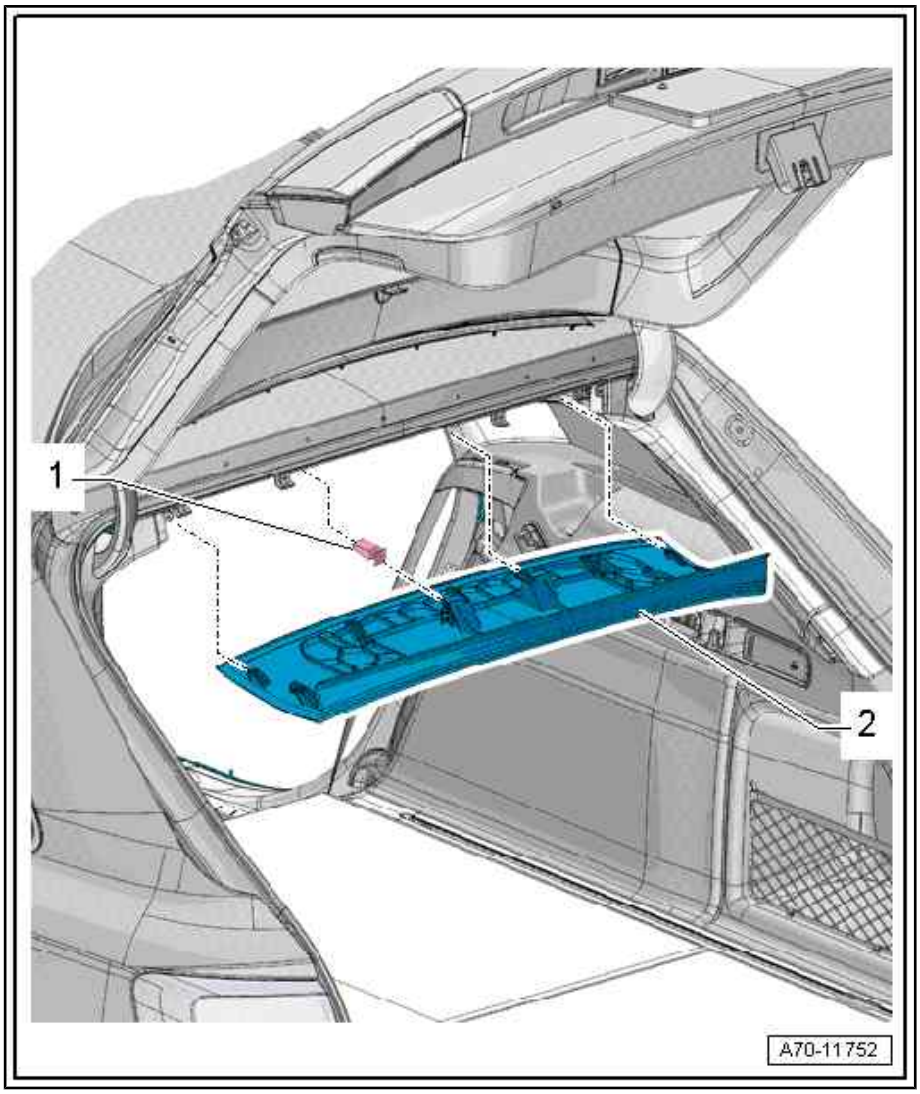
7.2 Exploded view - roof end trim

1 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool -T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Roof end trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 348
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

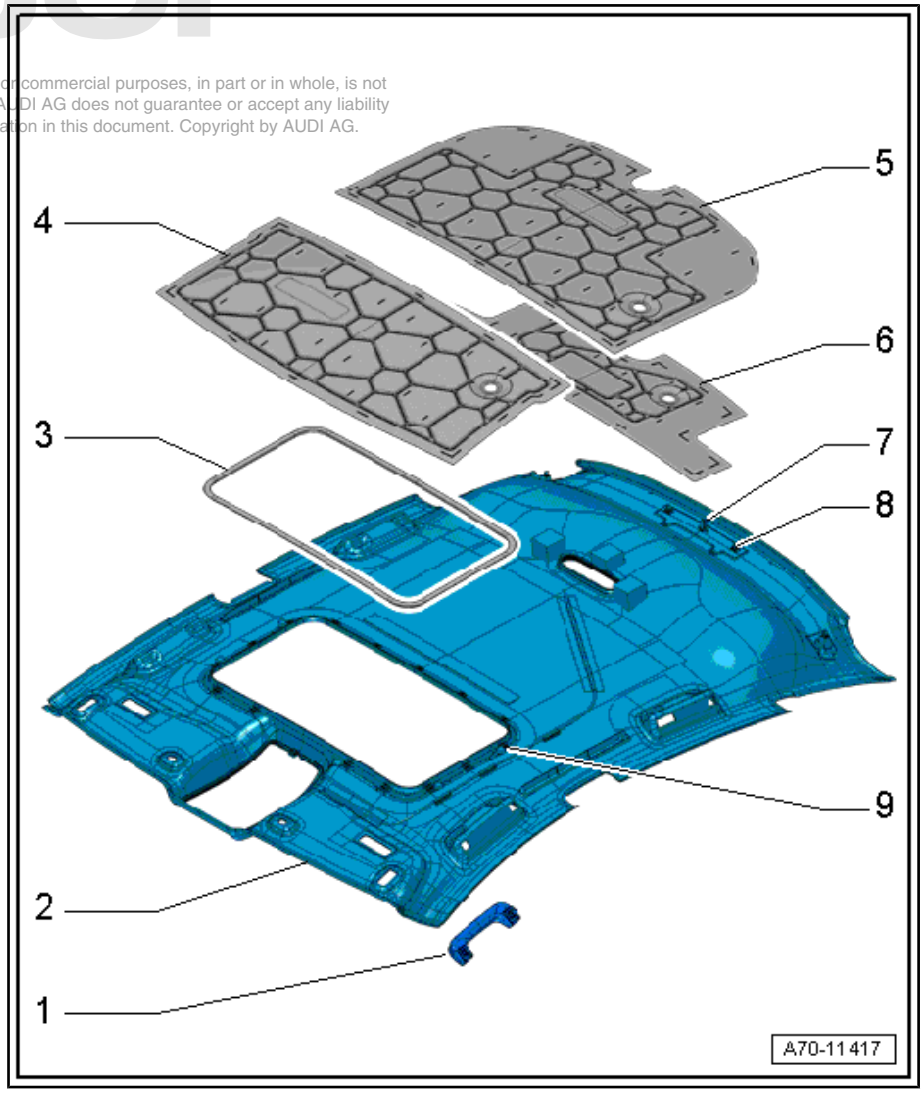
7.3 Exploded view - moulded headliner

⇒ “7.3.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Saloon”, page 346

⇒ “7.3.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Avant”, page 348

7.3.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Saloon

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Grab handle

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 49
- ❑ Press on expanding caps until they engage completely

2 - Moulded headliner

For equipment versions:

- ♦ Without sliding sunroof
- ♦ With sliding sunroof
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 350

> **Caution**
>
> *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
>
> *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

3 - Trim frame

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof only

4 - Roof reinforcement (front)

- ❑ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 355

5 - Roof reinforcement (rear)

- ❑ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 355

6 - Roof reinforcement (rear)

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 356

7 - Centring mechanism

8 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

9 - Clip

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ 15x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

Moulded headliner with panoramic sunroof

1 - Grab handle

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 49
- ❑ Press on expanding caps until they engage completely

2 - Moulded headliner

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 350

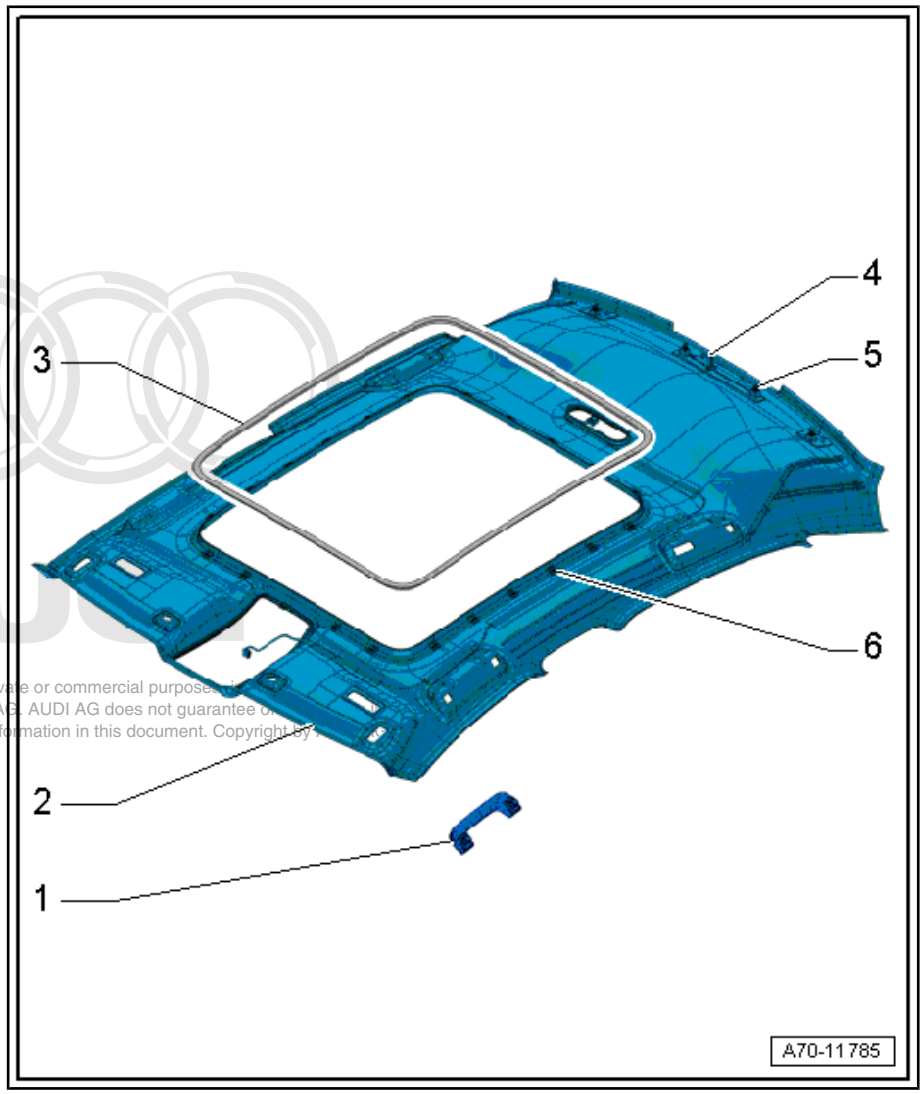
> **Caution**
>
> *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
>
> *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

3 - Trim frame

4 - Centring mechanism

5 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



6 - Clip

- ❑ 21x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

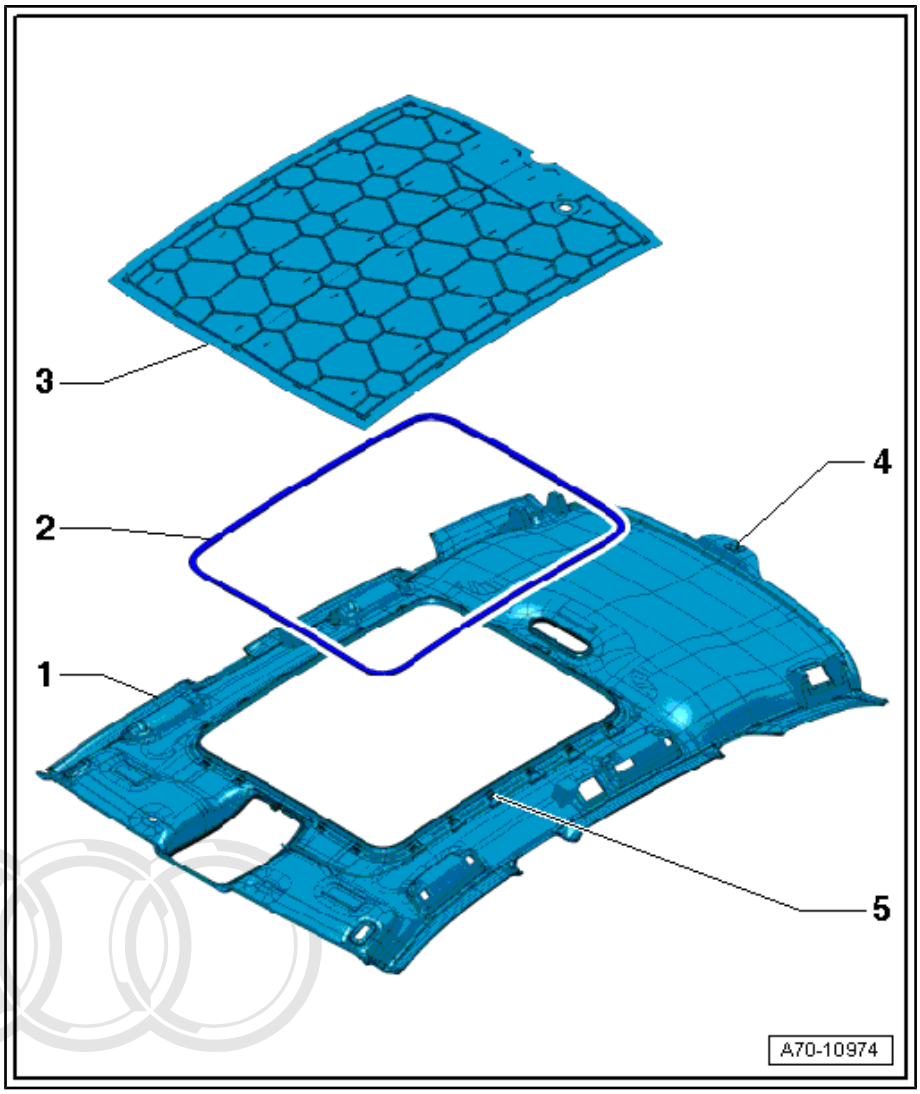
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.3.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Avant

1 - Moulded headliner

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Without sliding sunroof
- ♦ With sliding sunroof
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 352

> **Caution**
> *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
> *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*



2 - Trim frame
- ❑ Only on equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ Mark faces rear of vehicle
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - Roof reinforcement
- ❑ Only on equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 357

4 - Centring clip
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

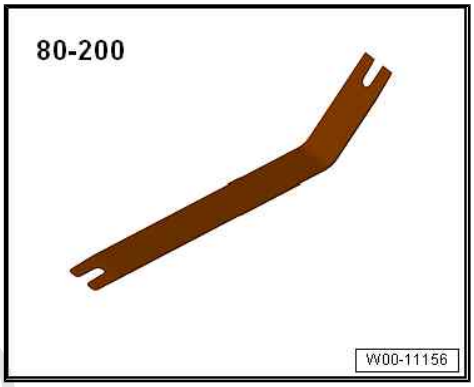
5 - Clip
- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ 21x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in trim frame using removal tool - T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.4 Removing and installing roof end trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



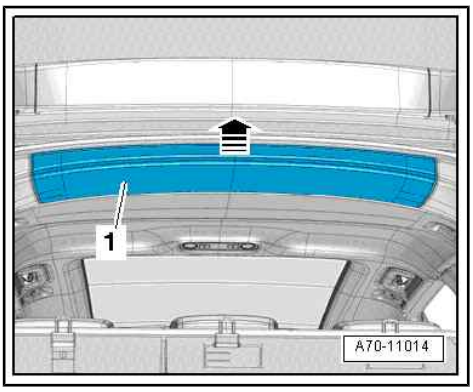
♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Working towards rear, carefully unclip roof end trim -1- in centre from roof frame -arrow- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .

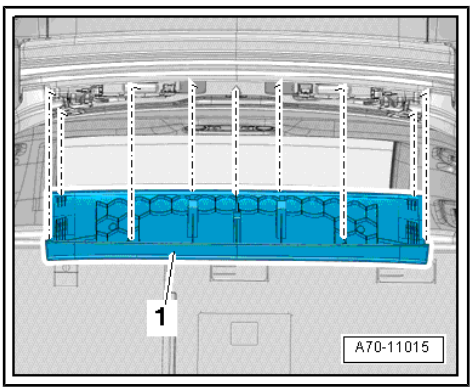


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Apply roof end trim -1- so that retaining clip makes contact with D-pillar trim.

– First apply roof end trim to centring pin on body cut-out and then press on clips until they engage audibly.



7.5 Removing and installing moulded headliner

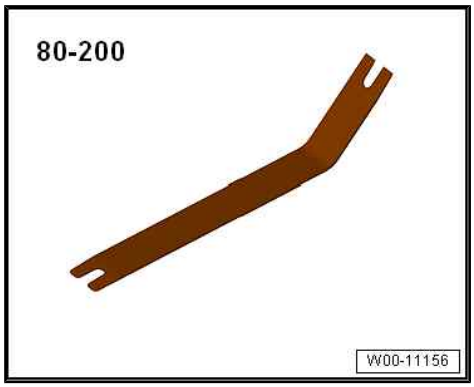
⇒ “7.5.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner - Saloon”, page 350

⇒ “7.5.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner - Avant”, page 352

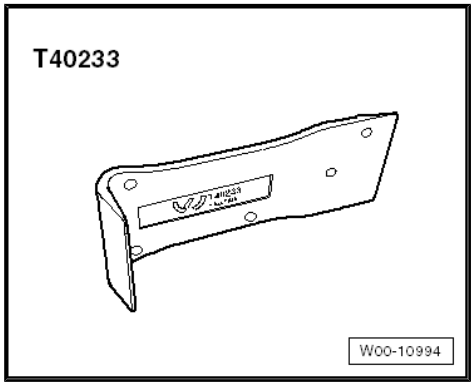
7.5.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

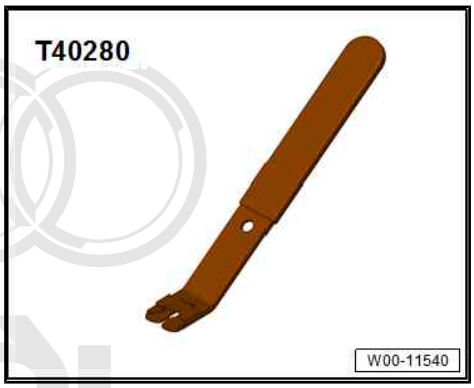
- Removal lever - 80 - 200-



- Removal wedge - T40233-



- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

WARNING

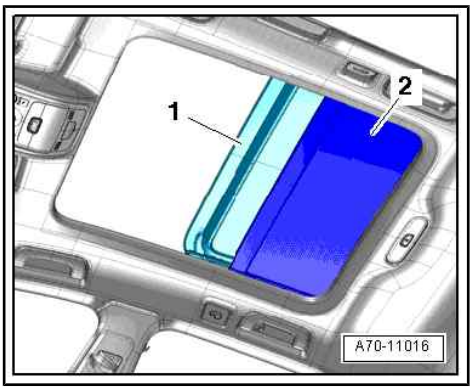
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

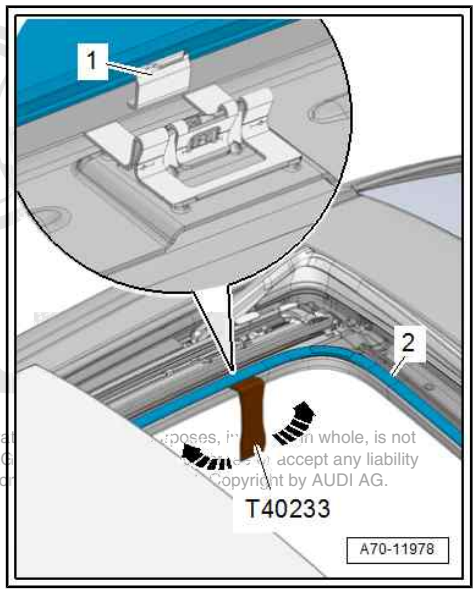
– Tilt front seat backrests to a 45° angle.
– Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 279 .
– Remove B-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 282 .
– Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 288 .
– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 44 .
– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 44 .
– Remove interior light/reading light (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/ reading light (front) .
– Remove vanity mirror light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing illuminated vanity mirror - W20- / -W14- .
– Remove windscreen ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 64 ; Windscreen; Removing and installing windscreen .
– Remove grab handles ⇒ page 49 .

Equipment version with sliding sunroof or panoramic sunroof:

– Fully open sunroof -1-.
– Open sun blind -2- approx. $^{2}/_{3}$.



– Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.
– Insert removal wedge - T40233- between trim frame -2- for sunroof opening and moulded headliner.
– Release trim frame from retainers -1- one after the other using removal wedge - T40233- as shown -arrows-.

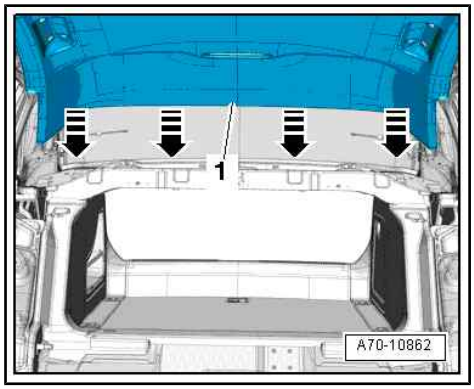


Protected by copyright. Copying for privat
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of info
poses, i
whole, is not
accept any liability
Copyright by AUDI AG.

Continued for all vehicles:

Caution

- *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*



– Carefully lift moulded headliner over C-pillar trim panels.
– Unclip moulded headliner -1- (rear) from body using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows-.
– Unclip moulded headliner (rear) at centring pin from body; to do so, release retaining tabs with a screwdriver.

Note

A second mechanic is required to unfasten the last connections and take out the moulded headliner.

– Take moulded headliner out through windscreen opening.

Installing

– Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.
– Install centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 44 .
– Carefully lift moulded headliner over C-pillar trim panels.
– Press clips at rear of moulded headliner into mounting points in body until they engage audibly.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following.

Copyright by AUDI AG. This document is for commercial purposes. Copying in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

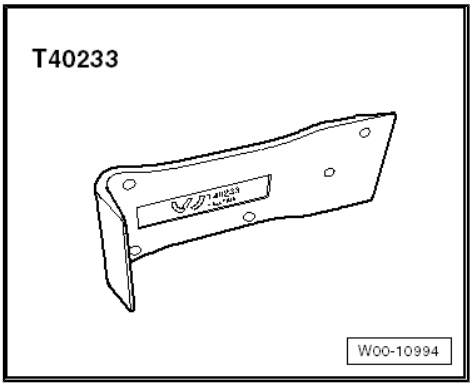
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “7.3.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Saloon”, page 346

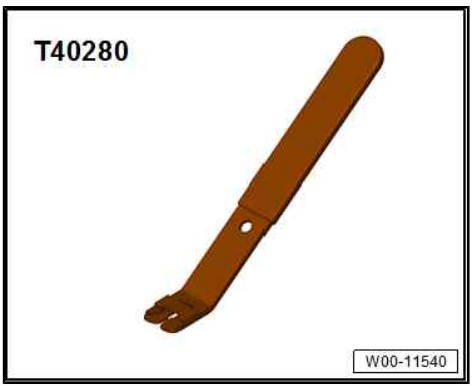
7.5.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner - Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - T40233-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

WARNING

♦ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

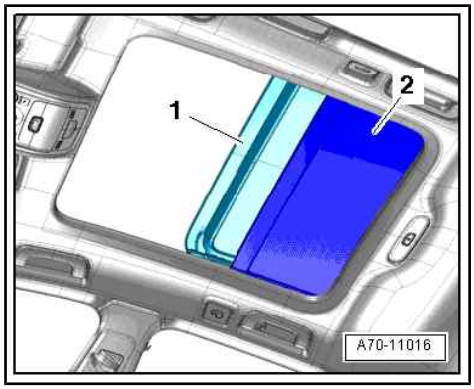
– Fold down backrests (rear).
– Remove head restraints (front) ⇒ page 455 .
– Move front seats as far forwards and down as possible and tilt backrests as far back as possible.
– Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 279 .
– Remove B-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 282 .
– Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 287 .
– Remove roof end trim ⇒ page 348 .
– Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 290 .
– Remove interior light/reading light (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/ reading light (front) .
– Remove grab handles ⇒ page 49 .
– Remove covers from retainers for load guard ⇒ page 42 .
– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 44 .
– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 44 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

– Fully open sunroof -1-.

– Open sun blind -2- approx. $^{2}/_{3}$.

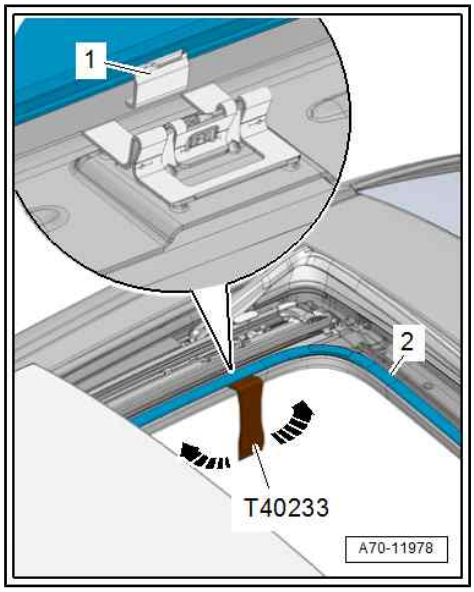


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.

– Insert removal wedge - T40233- between trim frame -2- for sunroof opening and moulded headliner.

– Release trim frame from retainers -1- one after the other using removal wedge - T40233- as shown -arrows-.



Continued for all vehicles:

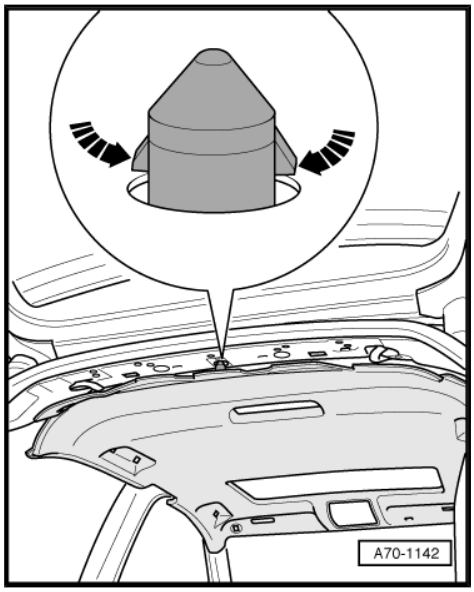
Caution

- *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

Note

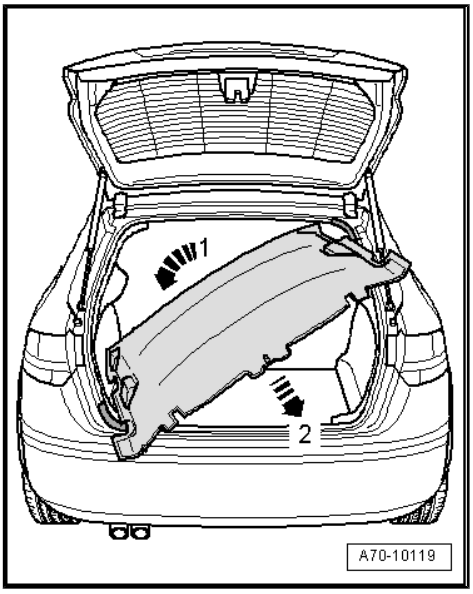
A second mechanic is required to unfasten the last connections and take out the moulded headliner.

– Release retaining tabs at centring clip using a small screw-driver -arrows-.



– Lower moulded headliner at left side of vehicle -arrow 1-.

– Carefully pull moulded headliner out through rear lid opening -arrow 2-.



Installing

– Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring clip at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.

– Install centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 44 .

– Before attaching moulded headliner, centre moulded headliner and press it on until clips engage audibly in trim frame for sunroof opening.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “7.3.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Avant”, page 348

7.6 Attaching roof reinforcement to body

⇒ “7.6.1 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Saloon without sliding sunroof”, page 355

⇒ “7.6.2 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Saloon with sliding sunroof”, page 356

⇒ “7.6.3 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Avant without sliding sunroof”, page 357

7.6.1 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Saloon without sliding sunroof

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

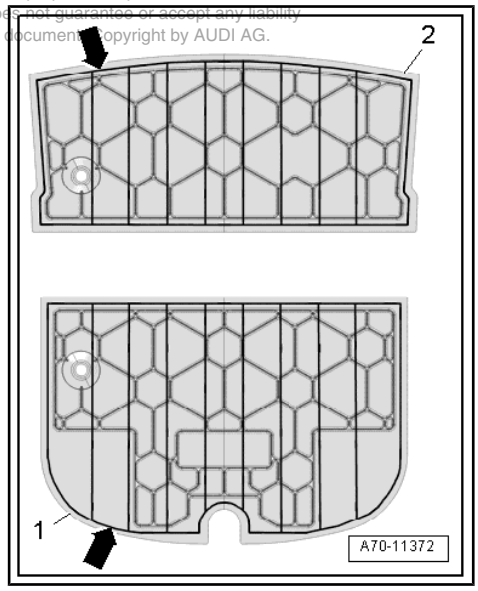
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

– Detach moulded headliner and lay it down on seats (do not remove windscreen) ⇒ page 350 .

Caution

- *The moulded headliner must be removed and set down on the seats for the following work steps. Proceed very carefully when doing so as the moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*



– Apply adhesive beads -arrows- to roof reinforcement sections -1- and -2-, as shown.

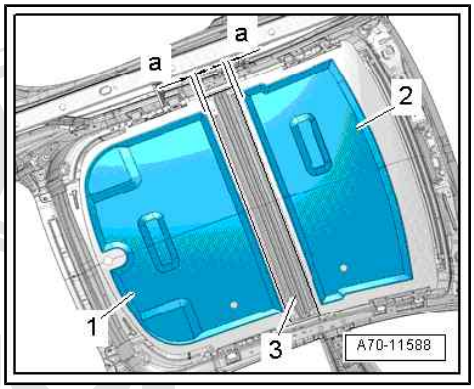
- Thickness of adhesive beads: approx. 8 mm
- Apply adhesive beads according to markings on roof reinforcement.

– Position roof reinforcement sections -1- and -2- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -3-.

• Dimension -a- = 15 mm

– Press roof reinforcement onto surface of roof.

– Wipe off any surplus adhesive.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "7.3.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Saloon", page 346

7.6.2 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Saloon with sliding sunroof

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure

– Detach moulded headliner and lay it down on seats (do not remove windscreen) ⇒ page 350 .

Caution

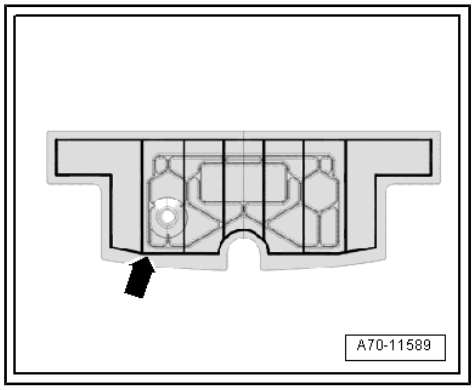
♦ *The moulded headliner must be removed and set down on the seats for the following work steps. Proceed very carefully when doing so as the moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*

♦ *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

– Apply adhesive beads -arrow- to roof reinforcement according to markings, as shown in illustration.

• Thickness of adhesive beads: approx. 8 mm

• Apply adhesive beads according to markings on roof reinforcement.

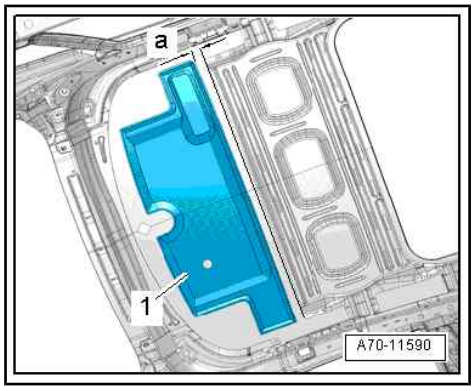


– Position roof reinforcement -1- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut.

• Dimension -a- = 33 mm

– Press roof reinforcement onto surface of roof.

– Wipe off any surplus adhesive.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "7.3.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Saloon", page 346

7.6.3 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Avant without sliding sunroof

Special tools and workshop equipment required

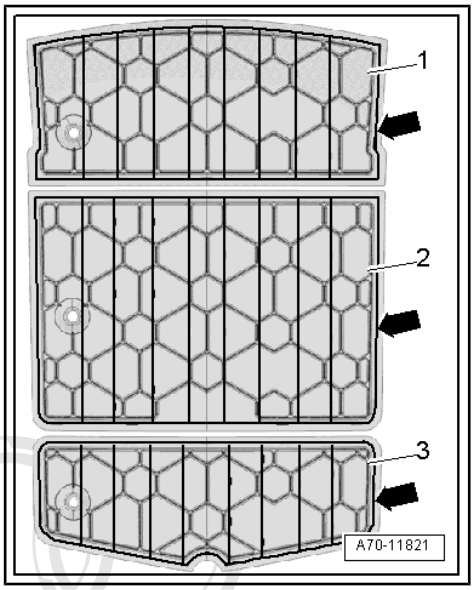
- Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 350 .

– Apply adhesive beads -arrows- to roof reinforcement sections, as shown in illustration.

- Thickness of adhesive beads: approx. 8 mm
- Apply adhesive beads according to markings on roof reinforcements.



1 - Roof reinforcement (front)

2 - Roof reinforcement (centre)

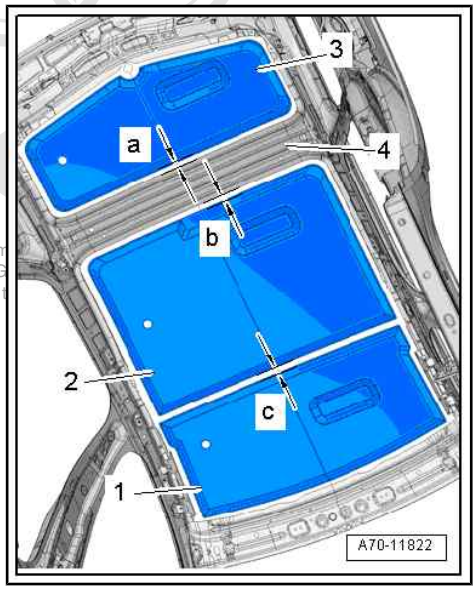
3 - Roof reinforcement (rear)

– Position roof reinforcement sections -2- and -3- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- and -b- from cross strut -4-.

– Position roof reinforcement -1- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -c- from roof reinforcement (centre).

- Dimension -a- = 15 mm
- Dimension -b- = 20 mm
- Dimension -c- = 10 mm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in t



– Press roof reinforcement onto surface of roof.

– Wipe off any surplus adhesive.

Note

On vehicles with an additional roof cross strut (same height as B-pillar), roof reinforcement sections -1- and -2- must be adapted accordingly.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

– Install moulded headliner ⇒ page 352 .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “7.3.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Saloon”, page 346

72 – Seat frames

1 Overview - seat versions

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions”, page 358

⇒ “1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand”, page 360

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions

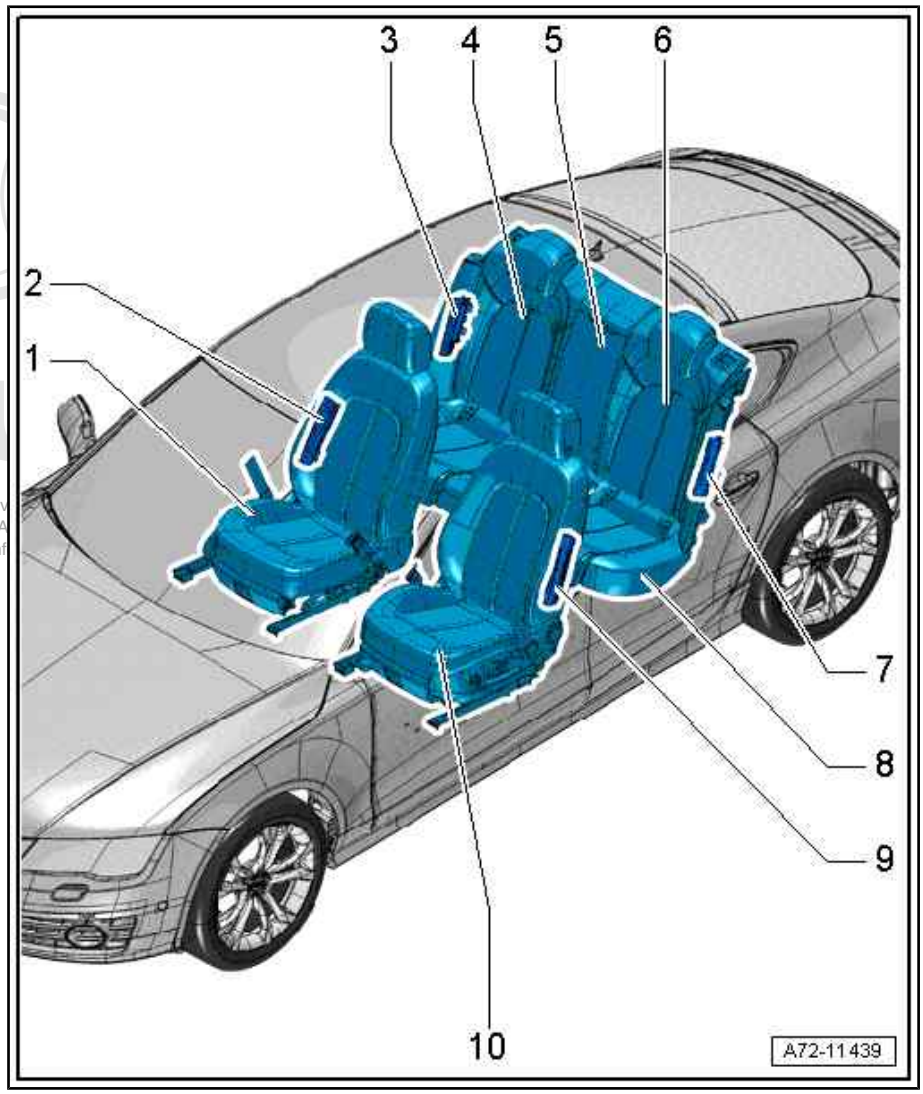
Note

The illustration shows the seats in a saloon with folding rear seat backrests.

1 - Front passenger seat

Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment)
Equipment versions:
- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Lumbar support
- ♦ Storage compartment
- ♦ Footwell light
- ♦ Child seat anchor
- ♦ Rear Seat Entertainment
- ♦ Seat rake adjustment for sports seat only
- ♦ Seat depth adjustment for sports seat and super sports seat only
- ♦ Memory function
- ♦ Seat ventilation
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 369

Multi-contour seat
Equipment versions:
- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Seat ventilation
- ♦ Footwell light
- ♦ Child seat anchor
- ♦ Rear Seat Entertainment
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 363



2 - Side airbag (front)
- ❑ With side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 152

3 - Side airbag (rear)
- ❑ With rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 154

Protected by copyright. Copying for priv
Commercial use prohibited by AUDI A
No liability assumed for correctness of inf

4 - Rear seat backrest

2/3 section of split rear seat backrest (folding, right-side)
Equipment versions:
- ♦ Backrest heating
- ♦ Load-through hatch
- ♦ 2/3-seat rear seat backrest
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 515

Fixed rear seat backrest
Equipment versions:
- ♦ Backrest heating
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 516

Multi-contour seat - equipment version
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 521

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Centre armrest (rear)

Equipment versions:
- ♦ With flap for load-through hatch
- ♦ With storage compartment
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 522

6 - Rear seat backrest

1/3 section of split rear seat backrest (folding, left-side)
Equipment version:
- ♦ Backrest heating
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 515

Fixed rear seat backrest
Equipment version:
- ♦ Backrest heating
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 515

Multi-contour seat - equipment version
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 521

7 - Side airbag (rear)
  - ❑ With rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 154

8 - Rear seat bench

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Seat heating
- ♦ 2/3-seat rear seat bench (with/without storage compartment)
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 504

Multi-contour seat - equipment version
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 504

9 - Side airbag (front)
  - ❑ With side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 152

10 - Driver seat

Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment)
Equipment versions:
- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Lumbar support
- ♦ Storage compartment

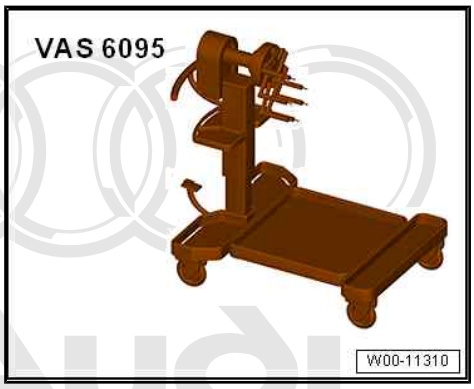
- Footwell light
- Rear Seat Entertainment
- Seat rake adjustment for sports seat only
- Seat depth adjustment for sports seat and super sports seat only
- Memory function
- Seat ventilation
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 369

Multi-contour seat
Equipment versions:
- Seat/backrest heating
- Seat ventilation
- Footwell light
- Rear Seat Entertainment
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 363

1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand - VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Attaching front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-

- Front seat removed from vehicle

– Attach seat repair stand - VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095- .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- .

2 Front seats

⇒ “2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components”, page 361

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - front seat”, page 369

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest”, page 377

⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - head restraint”, page 386

⇒ “2.5 Exploded view - seat pan”, page 389

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing front seat”, page 415

⇒ “2.7 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter”, page 423

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjuster”, page 426

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 427

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit”, page 432

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit”, page 436

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 440

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 455

⇒ “2.14 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 456

⇒ “2.15 Dismantling and assembling seat pan”, page 458

⇒ “2.16 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 ”, page 502

⇒ “2.17 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 ”, page 502

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

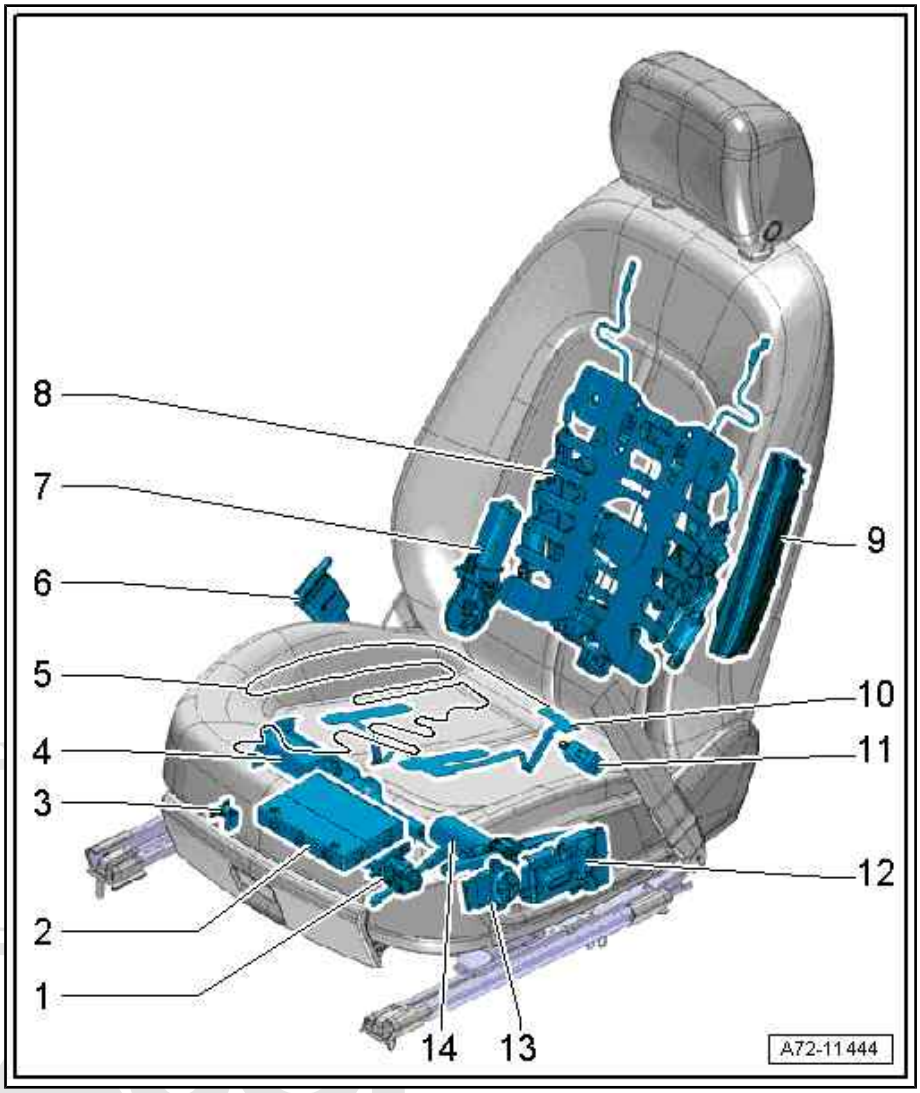
2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components

⇒ “2.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat”, page 361

⇒ “2.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, multi-contour seat”, page 363

⇒ “2.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, seat ventilation fans”, page 368

2.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat



1 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
- Depending on equipment version
- Exploded view ⇒ page 398

2 - Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function - J136-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment with memory control unit - J521-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 409

Control unit for front left seat ventilation - J800-

- Passenger side: control unit for front right seat ventilation - J799-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 409

Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- - country-specific version

- Exploded view ⇒ page 197

3 - Driver side seat position sensor - G553-

- Passenger side: front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 189

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 - Driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
- Depending on equipment version
- Integrated into lower seat pan frame; if defective, renew lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 478

5 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6- / heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

- Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8- / heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- Depending on equipment version
- Removing and installing heating element ⇒ page 683

6 - Driver side belt switch - E24-

- Passenger side: front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 119

7 - Driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-
- Depending on equipment version
- Exploded view ⇒ page 383

8 - Lumbar support

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125- / driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 382

9 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 152

10 - Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

- ❑ Country-specific version: pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452-
- ❑ Equipment version (passenger side only)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 193
- ❑ Removing and installing - country-specific version with seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag ⇒ page 200

11 - Rear left footwell light - W45-

- ❑ Right side: rear right footwell light - W46-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear footwell light -W45- / -W46-

12 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 405

13 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 405

14 - Driver seat height adjustment motor - V245-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 396

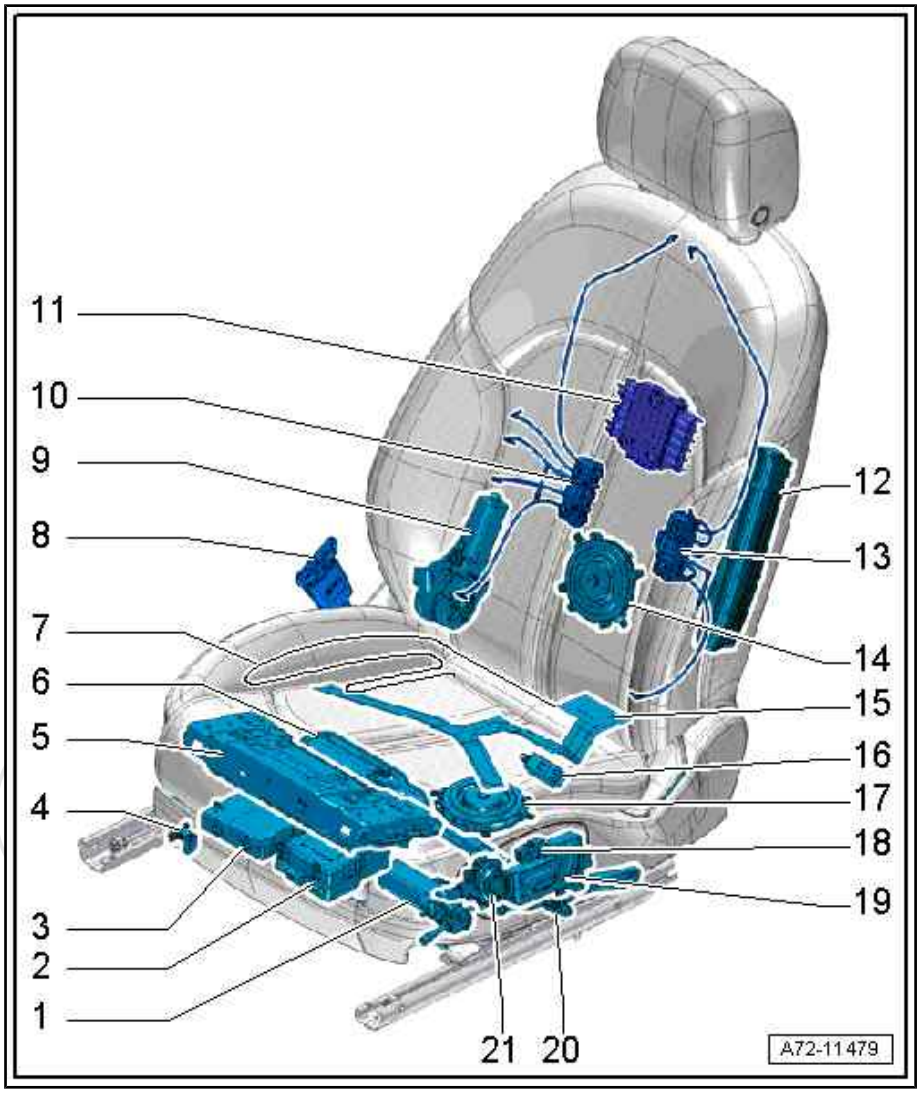
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, multi-contour seat

Multi-contour seat up to 08.2012 ⇒ page 363

Multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards ⇒ page 366

Multi-contour seat up to 08.2012



1 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 398

2 - Compressor for multi-contour driver seat - V439-

- Passenger side: compressor for multi-contour front passenger seat - V440-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 583

3 - Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function - J136-

- Equipment version with seat ventilation: front left seat ventilation and seat heating integrated
- Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment with memory control unit - J521-
- Equipment version with seat ventilation: front right seat ventilation and seat heating integrated
- Exploded view ⇒ page 410

4 - Driver side seat position sensor - G553-

- Passenger side: front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 189

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Driver seat depth adjustment motor - V256-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat depth adjustment motor - V257-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 403

6 - Driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
- Integrated into lower seat pan frame; if defective, renew lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 478

7 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6- / heated backrest for driver seat - Z7- / driver seat cushion lateral support heater - Z31-

- Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8- / heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9- / front passenger seat lateral support heater - Z33-
- Depending on equipment version
- Removing and installing heating element ⇒ page 679

8 - Driver side belt switch - E24-

- Passenger side: front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 120

9 - Driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 383

10 - Valve block 1 in driver seat - N475-

- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 1 in front passenger seat - N477-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 587

11 - Control unit for driver multi-contour seat - J873-

- ❑ Passenger side: control unit for front passenger multi-contour seat - J872-
- ❑ There is no restrictor connection on the Genuine replacement part with integrated non-return valve and restrictor ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ; in this case the separate non-return valve must be removed
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 611

12 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 153

13 - Valve block 2 in driver seat - N476-

- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 2 in front passenger seat - N478-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 587

14 - Driver seat backrest fan - V388-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest fan - V389-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 454

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15 - Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

- ❑ Country-specific version: pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452-
- ❑ Equipment version for front passenger's seat only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 193
- ❑ Country-specific version: seat occupied sensor with seat heating element stitched into seat cover
- ❑ Removing and installing - country-specific version with seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag ⇒ page 200

16 - Rear left footwell light - W45-

- ❑ Right side: rear right footwell light - W46-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear footwell light -W45- / -W46-

17 - Driver seat cushion fan - V390-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat cushion fan - V391-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 412

18 - Driver seat massage function button - E670-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat massage function button - E671-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 624

19 - Switch module for driver seat - E663-

- ❑ Passenger side: switch module for front passenger seat - E664-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 407

20 - Driver seat height adjustment motor - V245-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 396

21 - Switch module 2 for driver seat - E667-

- ❑ Passenger side: switch module 2 for front passenger seat - E668-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 407

Multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

1 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-

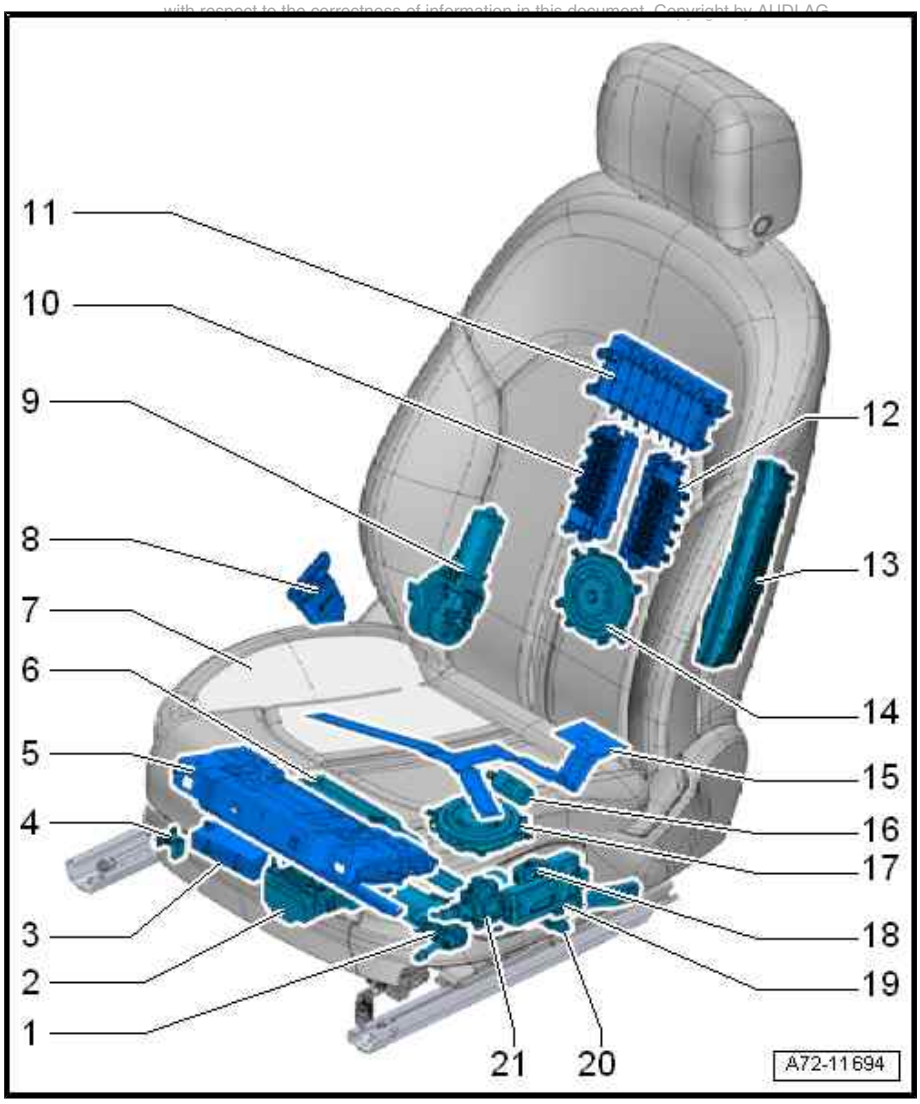
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 398

2 - Compressor for multi-contour driver seat - V439- with integrated control unit -J873-

- ❑ Passenger side: compressor for multi-contour passenger seat - V440- with integrated control unit -J872-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 584

3 - Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function - J136-

- ❑ Equipment version with seat ventilation: front left seat ventilation and seat heating integrated
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment with memory control unit - J521-
- ❑ Equipment version with seat ventilation: front right seat ventilation and seat heating integrated
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 410



4 - Driver side seat position sensor - G553-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 189

5 - Driver seat depth adjustment motor - V256-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat depth adjustment motor - V257-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 403

6 - Driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
- ❑ Integrated into lower seat pan frame; if defective, renew lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 478

7 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6- / heated backrest for driver seat - Z7- / driver seat cushion lateral support heater - Z31-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8- / heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9- / front passenger seat lateral support heater - Z33-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing heating element ⇒ page 679

8 - Driver side belt switch - E24-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 120

9 - Driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 383

10 - Valve block 3 in driver seat - N523-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 3 in front passenger seat - N524-
- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 588

11 - Valve block 1 in driver seat - N475-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 1 in front passenger seat - N477-
- ❑ For lumbar support and seat bolster adjustment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 586

12 - Valve block 2 in driver seat - N476-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 2 in front passenger seat - N478-
- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 588

13 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 153

14 - Driver seat backrest fan - V388-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest fan - V389-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 454

15 - Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

- ❑ Country-specific version: pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452-
- ❑ Equipment version for front passenger's seat only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 193
- ❑ Country-specific version: seat occupied sensor with seat heating element stitched into seat cover
- ❑ Removing and installing - country-specific version with seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag ⇒ page 200

16 - Rear left footwell light - W45-

- ❑ Right side: rear right footwell light - W46-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear footwell light -W45- / -W46-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

17 - Driver seat cushion fan - V390-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat cushion fan - V391-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 413

18 - Driver seat massage function button - E670-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat massage function button - E671-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 624

19 - Switch module for driver seat - E663-

- Passenger side: switch module for front passenger seat - E664-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 407

20 - Driver seat height adjustment motor - V245-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 396

21 - Switch module 2 for driver seat - E667-

- Passenger side: switch module 2 for front passenger seat - E668-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 407

2.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, seat ventilation fans

1 - Driver seat cushion fan - V390-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat cushion fan - V391-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 498

2 - Control unit for front left seat ventilation - J800- (integrated seat heating function)

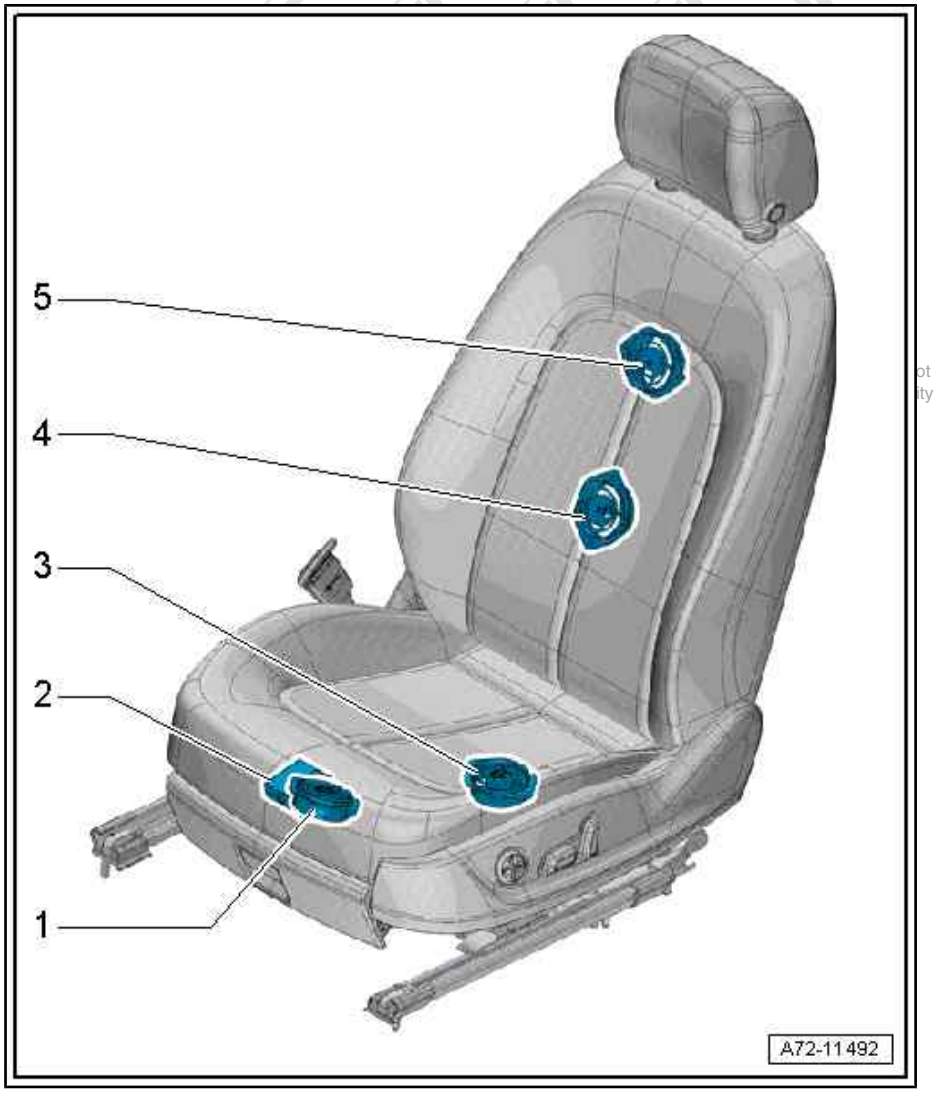
- Passenger side: control unit for front right seat ventilation - J799- (integrated seat heating function)
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 494

3 - Driver seat cushion fan 2 - V419-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat cushion fan 2 - V420-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 498

4 - Driver seat backrest fan 2 - V417-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest fan 2 - V418-
- Bonded to backrest padding
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 454



5 - Driver seat backrest fan - V388-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest fan - V389-
- ❑ Bonded to backrest padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 454

2.2 Exploded view - front seat

⇒ "2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat", page 369

⇒ "2.2.2 Exploded view - front super sports seat", page 373

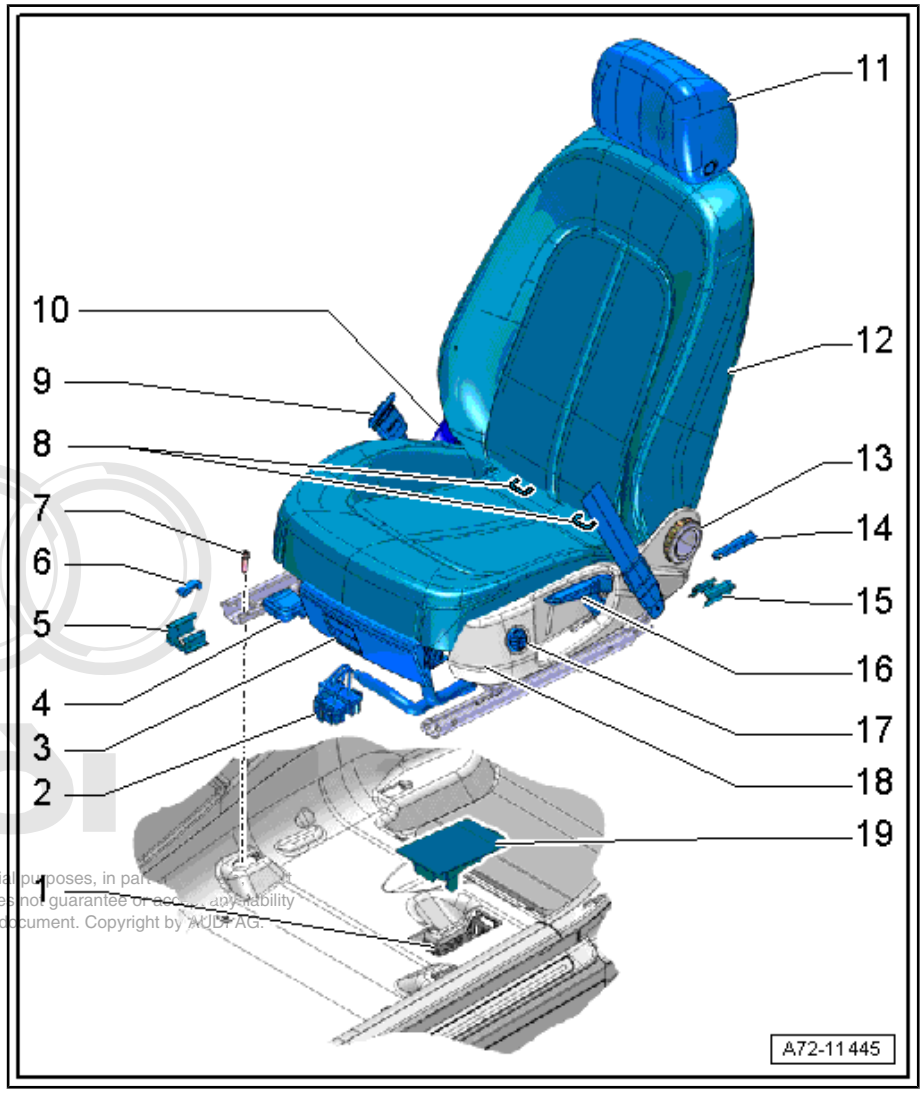
⇒ "2.2.3 Exploded view - front multi-contour seat", page 375

2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat

Standard seat/sports seat (with manual adjustment)
⇒ page 369

Standard seat/sports seat (with electric adjustment)
⇒ page 371

Standard seat/sports seat (with manual adjustment)



1 - Connector point

- ❑ Pin assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 425

2 - Electrical connector

- ❑ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ❑ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ page 459

3 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 408

4 - Seat longitudinal adjuster

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 399

5 - Cover (front)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 460
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

6 - Spindle cover (front)

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat", page 415

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Press onto seat rail until it engages audibly

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 50 Nm

8 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 123
- ❑ Checks to be performed following an accident ⇒ page 14

Reproduction or distribution of this document or any part of it for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 119

10 - Trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 469

11 - Head restraint

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455

12 - Standard seat/sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Lumbar support
- ♦ Footwell light
- ♦ Rear Seat Entertainment
- ♦ Seat rake adjustment for sports seat only
- ♦ Seat depth adjustment for sports seat only

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 415

13 - Hand wheel

- ❑ For backrest adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.15.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat (with manual adjustment)”, page 461

14 - Spindle cover (rear)

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat”, page 415
- ❑ Press onto bolt for seat rail until it engages audibly

15 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 460
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

16 - Seat height adjustment unit

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 395

17 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 502
- ❑ Removing and installing lumbar support ⇒ page 502

18 - Trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 461

19 - Cover

- ❑ For connector point
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 424

Standard seat/sports seat (with electric adjustment)

1 - Connector point

- ❑ Pin assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 425

2 - Electrical connector

- ❑ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ❑ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ page 459

3 - Storage compartment

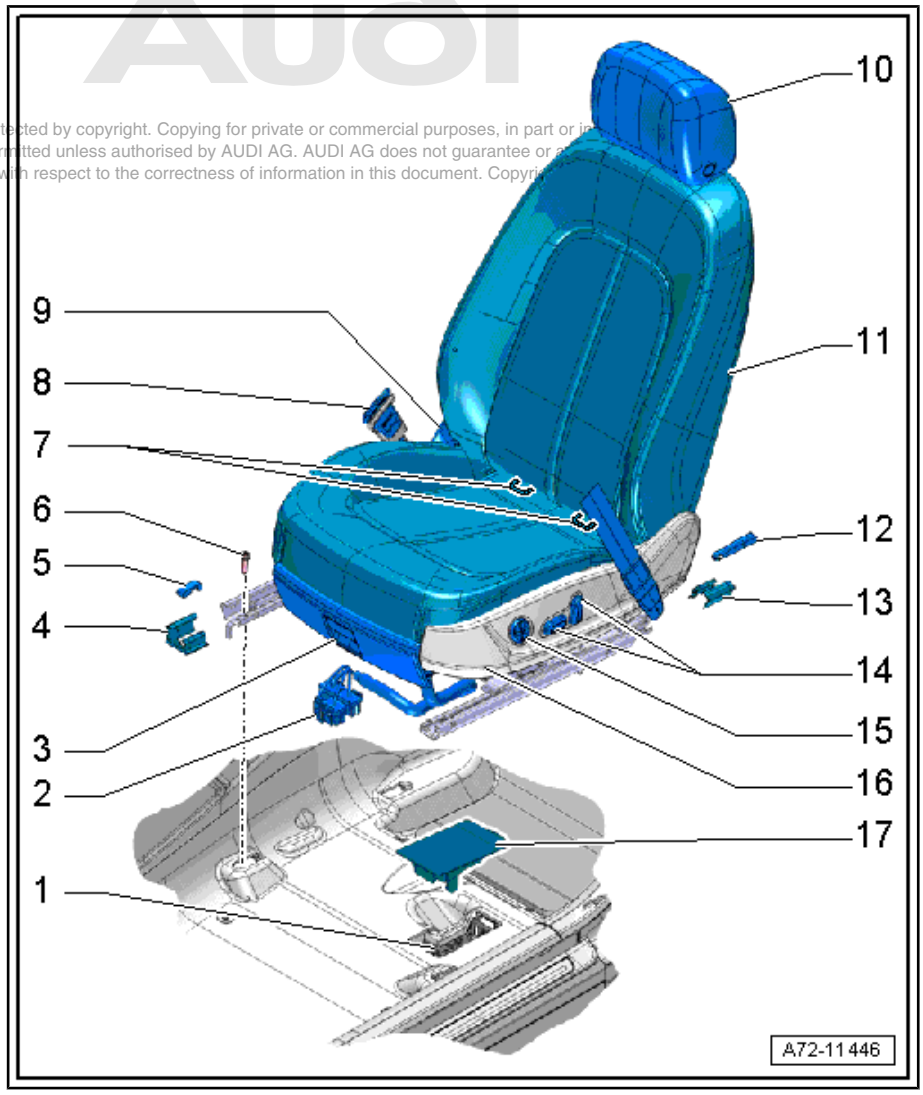
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 408

4 - Cover (front)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 460
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

5 - Spindle cover (front)

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat”, page 415
- ❑ Press onto seat rail until it engages audibly



6 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 50 Nm

7 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 123
- ❑ Checks to be performed following an accident ⇒ page 14

8 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 119

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 469

10 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455

11 - Standard seat/sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Memory function
- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Seat ventilation
- ♦ Footwell light
- ♦ Rear Seat Entertainment
- ♦ Seat depth adjustment for sports seat only

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 415
- ❑ Removing if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- or control unit -J136- / -J521- is defective ⇒ page 418

12 - Spindle cover (rear)

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat”, page 415
- ❑ Press onto bolt for seat rail until it engages audibly

13 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 460
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

14 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 405

15 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 502
- ❑ Removing and installing lumbar support ⇒ page 502

16 - Trim (sill side)

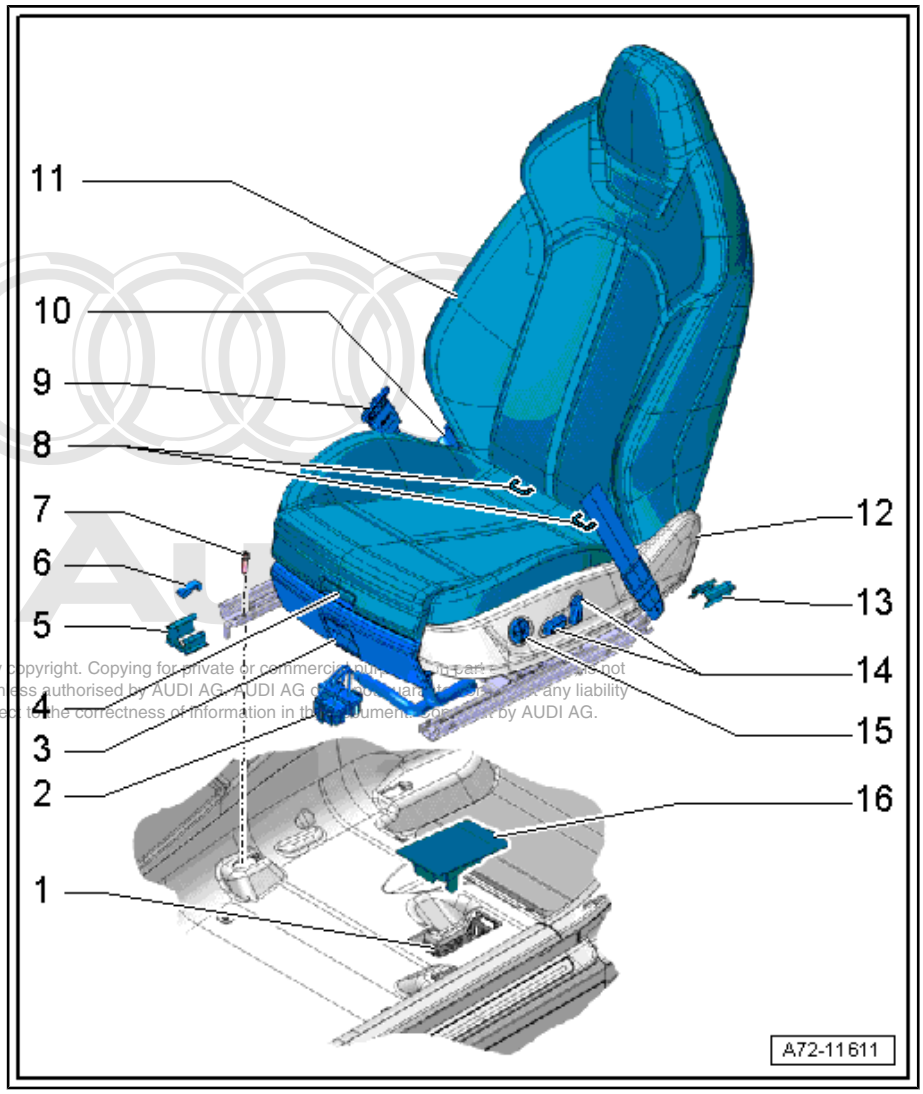
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 464

17 - Cover

- ❑ For connector point
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 424

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.2 Exploded view - front super sports seat



1 - Connector point

- ❑ Pin assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 425

2 - Electrical connector

- ❑ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ❑ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ page 459

3 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 487

4 - Seat depth adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 488

5 - Cover (front)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 460
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

6 - Spindle cover (front)

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat”, page 415
- ❑ Press onto seat rail until it engages audibly

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 50 Nm

8 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 126
- ❑ Checks to be performed following an accident ⇒ page 14

9 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 119

10 - Trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 469

11 - Super sports seat

Equipment versions:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ♦ Memory function
- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Footwell light
- ♦ Rear Seat Entertainment
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 415

12 - Trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 464

13 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 460
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

14 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 493

15 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 502
- ❑ Removing and installing lumbar support ⇒ page 502

16 - Cover

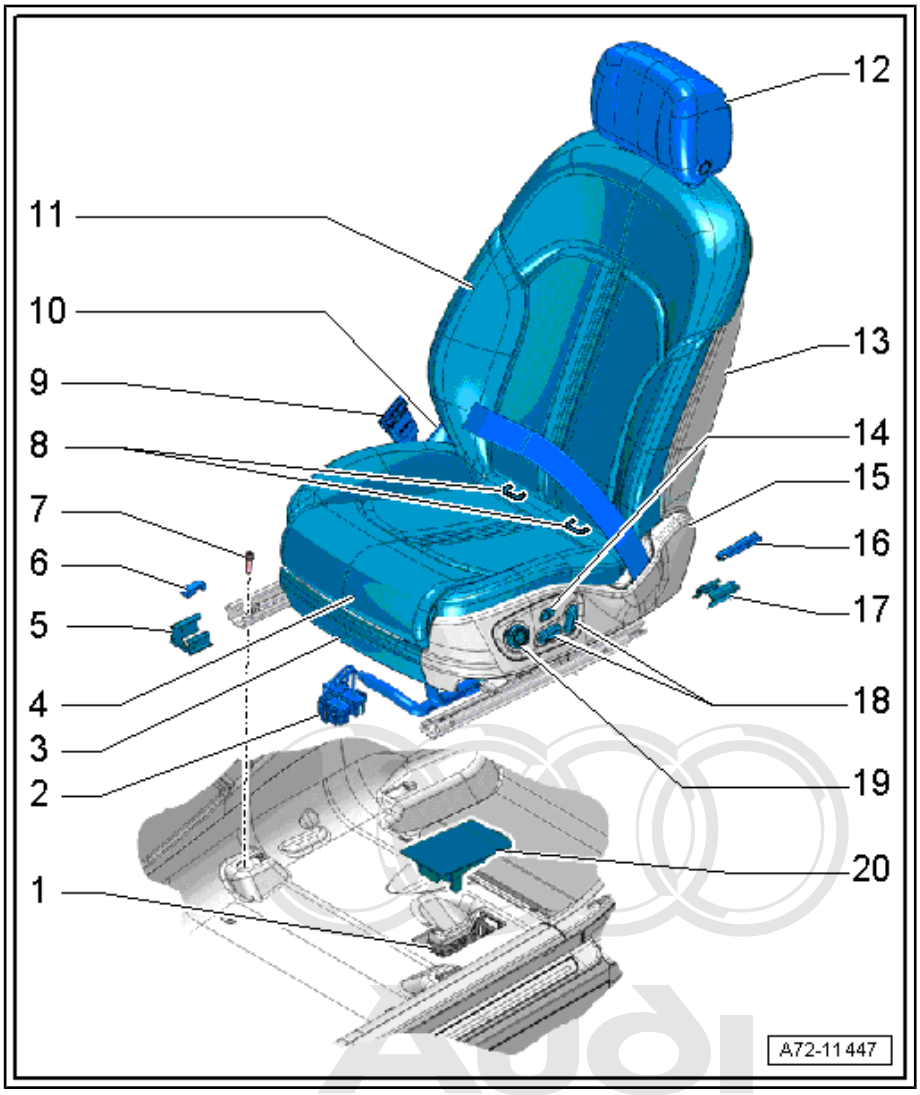
- ❑ For connector point
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 424

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.3 Exploded view - front multi-contour seat

Note

The exploded view relates to the driver's seat. The front passenger's seat is similar; the attachments are fitted on the opposite sides.



1 - Connector point

- ❑ Pin assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 425

2 - Electrical connector

- ❑ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ❑ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ page 459

3 - Trim panel (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 465

4 - Seat depth adjuster

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 403

5 - Cover (front)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 460
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

6 - Spindle cover (front)

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat”, page 415
- ❑ Press onto seat rail until it engages audibly

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 50 Nm

8 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 123
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 14

9 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 120

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 469

11 - Multi-contour seat

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Seat ventilation
- ♦ Footwell light
- ♦ Rear Seat Entertainment
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 415
  - ❑ Removing if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- or control unit -J136- / -J521- is defective ⇒ page 418

12 - Head restraint

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455

13 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 445

14 - Driver seat massage function button - E670-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat massage function button - E671-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 624

15 - Trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 465

16 - Spindle cover (rear)

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat”, page 415
- ❑ Press onto bolt for seat rail until it engages audibly

17 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 460
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

18 - Switch module for driver seat - E663-

- ❑ Passenger side: switch module for front passenger seat - E664-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 407

19 - Switch module 2 for driver seat - E667-

- ❑ Passenger side: switch module 2 for front passenger seat - E668-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 407

20 - Cover

- ❑ For connector point
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 424

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest

⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat”, page 377

⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest, super sports seat”, page 378

⇒ “2.3.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, multi-contour seat”, page 379

⇒ “2.3.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest, country-specific version”, page 380

⇒ “2.3.5 Exploded view - front seat backrest, spring mat”, page 381

⇒ “2.3.6 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support”, page 382

⇒ “2.3.7 Exploded view - front backrest adjustment motor”, page 383

⇒ “2.3.8 Exploded view - front seat backrest, mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment”, page 383

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat

1 - Seat pan

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 34.5 Nm

3 - Backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 440

4 - Head restraint

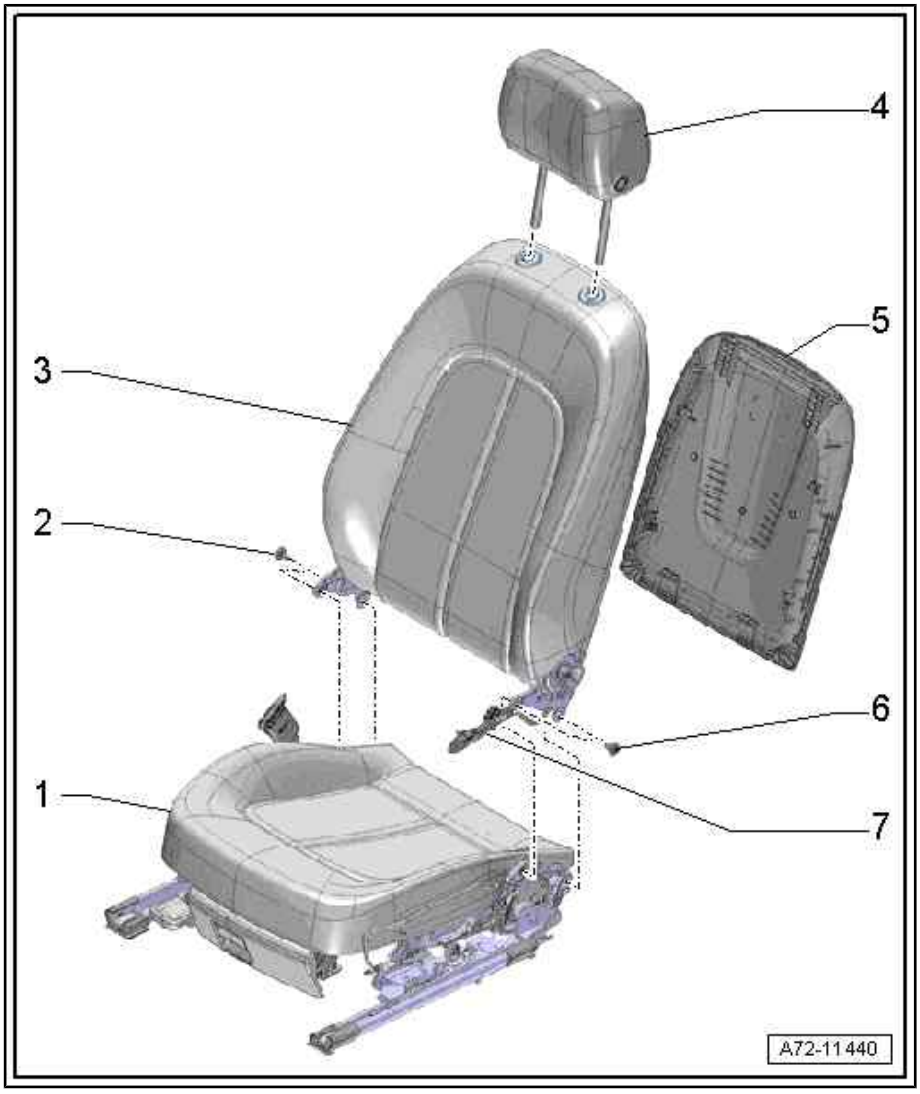
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455

5 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Equipment version with luggage net; luggage net cannot be separated from backrest cover panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444
- ❑ Hook in at outer backrest frame (top) and press on until it engages audibly

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap



- ❑ 34.5 Nm

7 - Electrical wiring harness

- ❑ From side airbag to connector point
- ❑ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wiring harnesses, e.g. for backrest heating, lumbar support

2.3.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest, super sports seat

1 - Seat pan

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 34.5 Nm

3 - Backrest

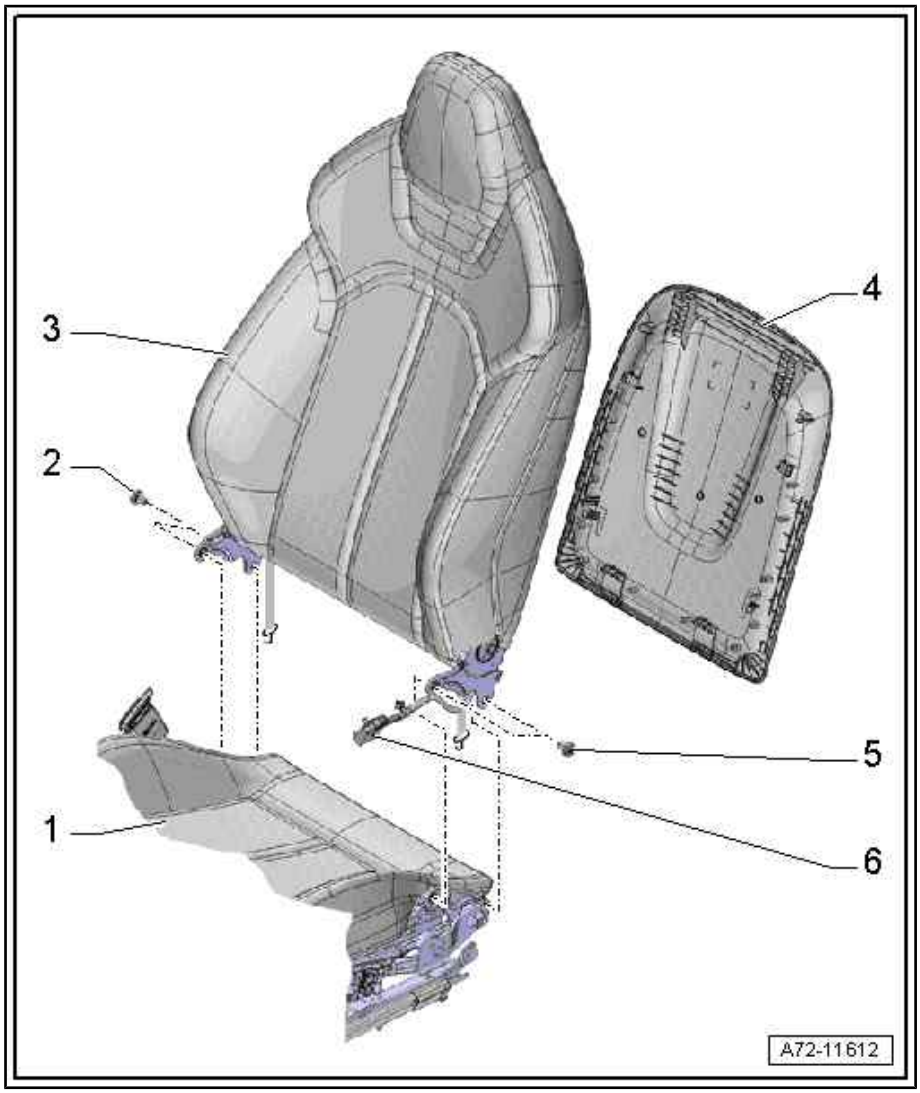
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 440

4 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Equipment version with luggage net; luggage net cannot be separated from backrest cover panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444
- ❑ Hook in at outer backrest frame (top) and press on until it engages audibly

5 - Bolt

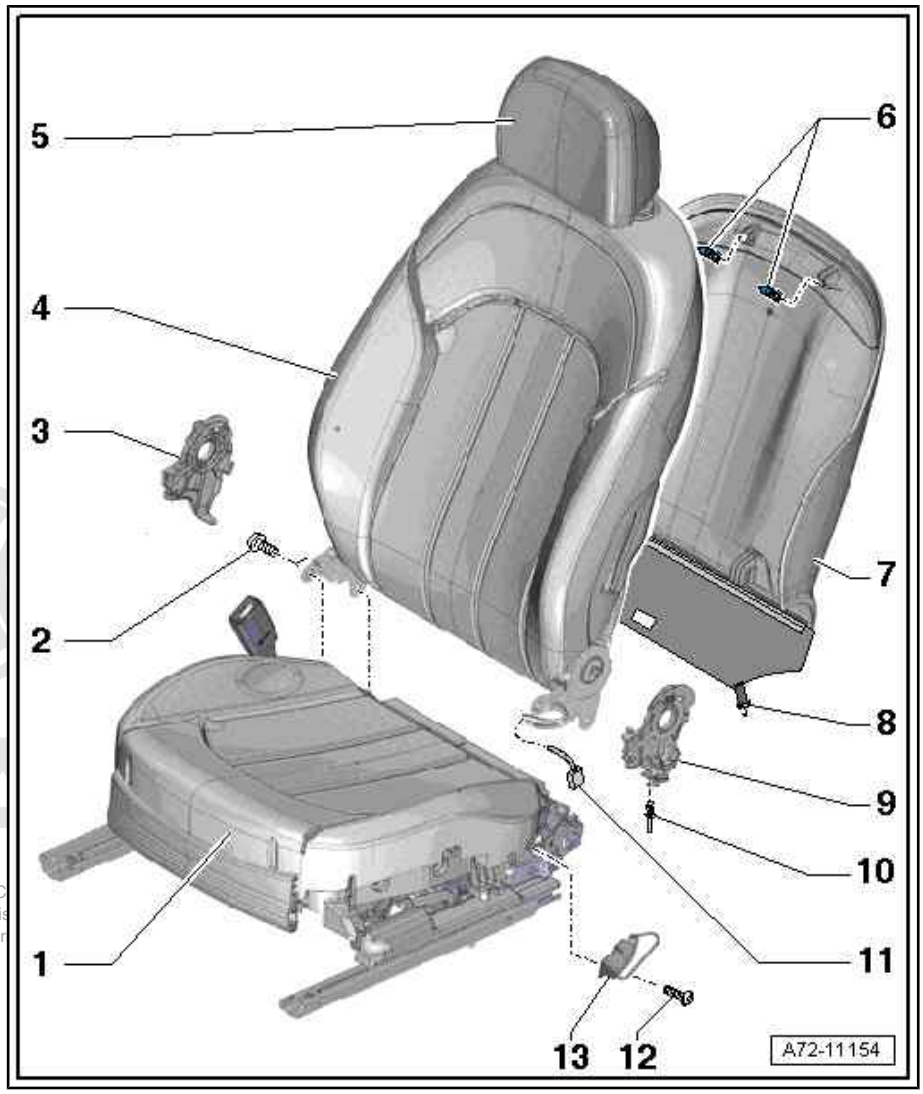
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 34.5 Nm



6 - Electrical wiring harness

- ❑ From side airbag to connector point
- ❑ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wiring harnesses, e.g. for backrest heating, lumbar support

2.3.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, multi-contour seat



1 - Seat pan

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 34.5 Nm

3 - Trim

- ❑ For backrest fitting (tunnel side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 440

4 - Backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 440

5 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455

6 - Clip

- ❑ With catch
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert in backrest cover panel
- ❑ Remove any clips left in outer backrest frame mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

Protected by copyright. C
permitted unless authoris
with respect to the cor

7 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 445

8 - Rubber strap

- ❑ With hook
- ❑ 2x

9 - Trim

- ❑ For backrest fitting (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 440

10 - Spreader rivet

11 - Electrical wiring harness

- ❑ From side airbag to connector point
- ❑ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wiring harnesses, e.g. for backrest heating

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 10 Nm

13 - Belt guide

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 116

2.3.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest, country-specific version

1 - Seat pan

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 33 Nm

3 - Trim

- ❑ For backrest fitting (tunnel side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 440

4 - Backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 440

5 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455

6 - Trim

- ❑ For backrest cover panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.12.5 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - country-specific version”, page 447

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

9 - Bracket

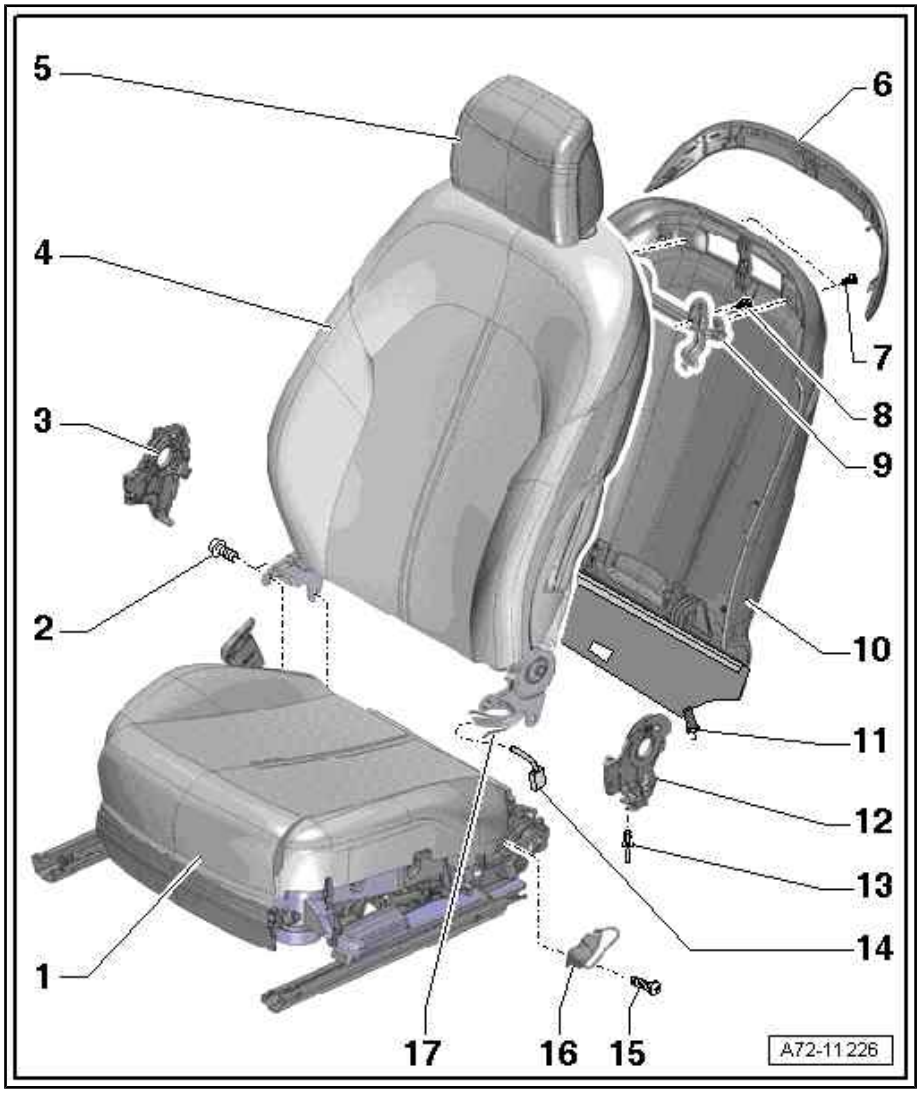
- ❑ For backrest cover panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 448

10 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 447

11 - Rubber strap

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ With hook



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Trim

- ❑ For backrest fitting (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 440

13 - Spreader rivet

14 - Wiring harness

- ❑ From side airbag to connector point
- ❑ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wiring harnesses, e.g. for backrest heating

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 10 Nm

16 - Belt guide

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 116

17 - Pneumatic line

- ❑ To compressor for multi-contour seat
- ❑ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional pneumatic lines, e.g. for seat bolster adjustment

2.3.5 Exploded view - front seat backrest, spring mat

1 - Spring mat

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 448
- ❑ Can be removed and installed with or without extension springs

2 - Extension spring (bottom)

- ❑ Not available as separate part

3 - Extension spring (centre)

- ❑ Not available as separate part

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information i

4 - Extension spring (centre)

- ❑ Not available as separate part

5 - Extension spring (top)

- ❑ Not available as separate part

6 - Outer backrest frame

7 - Extension spring (top)

- ❑ Not available as separate part

8 - Extension spring (centre)

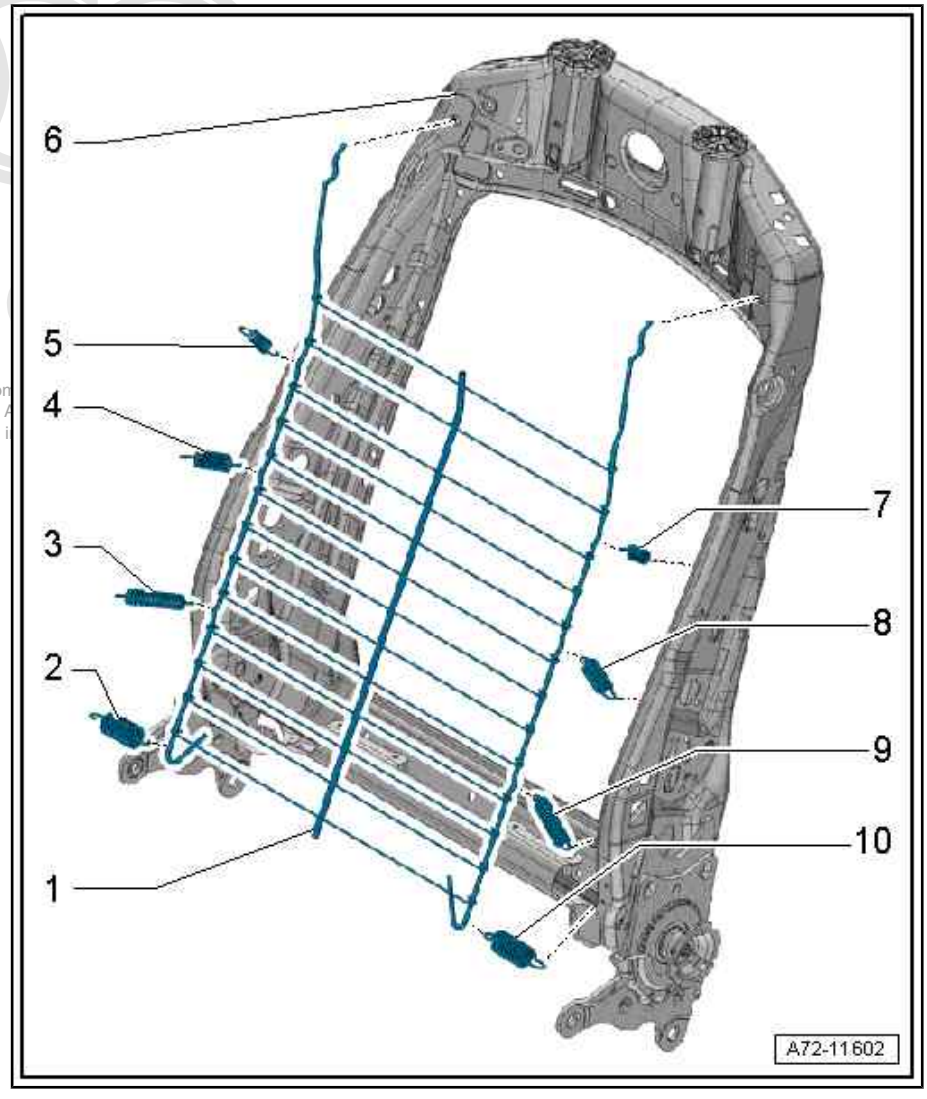
- ❑ Not available as separate part

9 - Extension spring (centre)

- ❑ Not available as separate part

10 - Extension spring (bottom)

- ❑ Not available as separate part



2.3.6 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support

1 - Metal washer

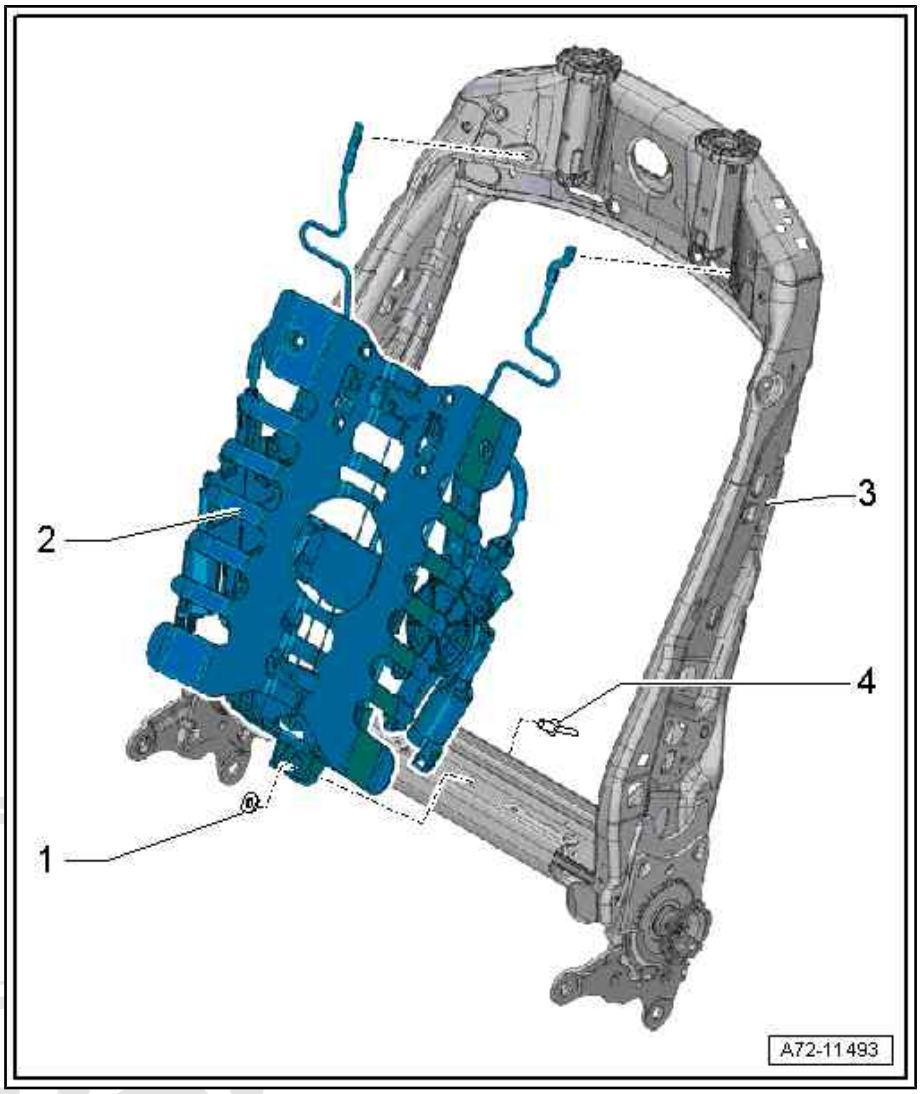
- ❑ Before securing rivet, check whether metal washer has been inserted in lumbar support from front.

2 - Lumbar support

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125- / driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 502

3 - Outer backrest frame

4 - Rivet

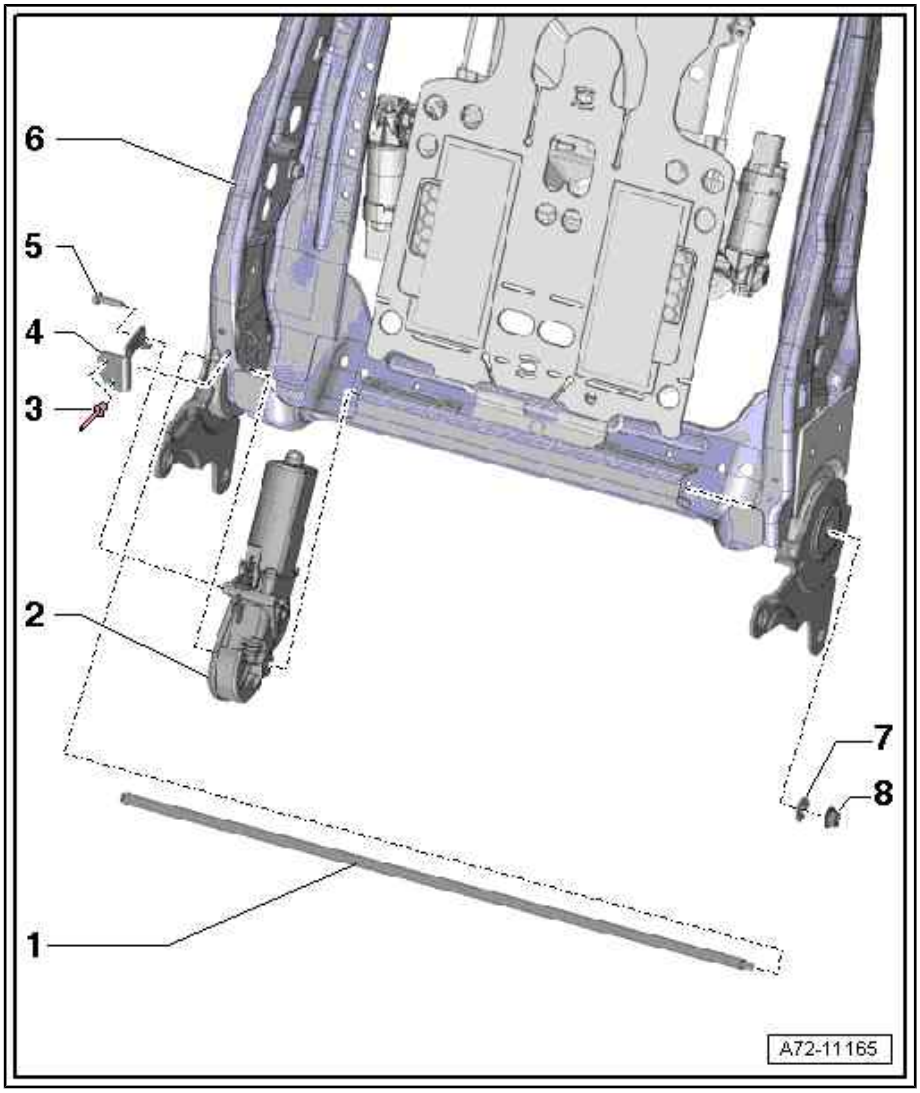


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3.7 Exploded view - front backrest adjustment motor

Note

For greater clarity the backrest padding and cover are not shown in the illustration.



1 - Shaft

- ❑ Clean threaded section for nut -item 8- using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Before fitting nut, apply locking fluid to threaded section of shaft; for locking fluid refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 436

3 - Rivet

- ❑ 2x

4 - Bracket

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 3.7 Nm

6 - Outer backrest frame

7 - Washer

8 - Nut

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 6 Nm

2.3.8 Exploded view - front seat backrest, mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment

Mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment ⇒ page 383

Mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment - country-specific version ⇒ page 384

Mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4 Nm

2 - Pop rivet nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Retrofit on outer backrest frame (rivet on) ⇒ page 452

3 - Contact connector

- ❑ For Rear Seat Entertainment
- ❑ Clip into bracket

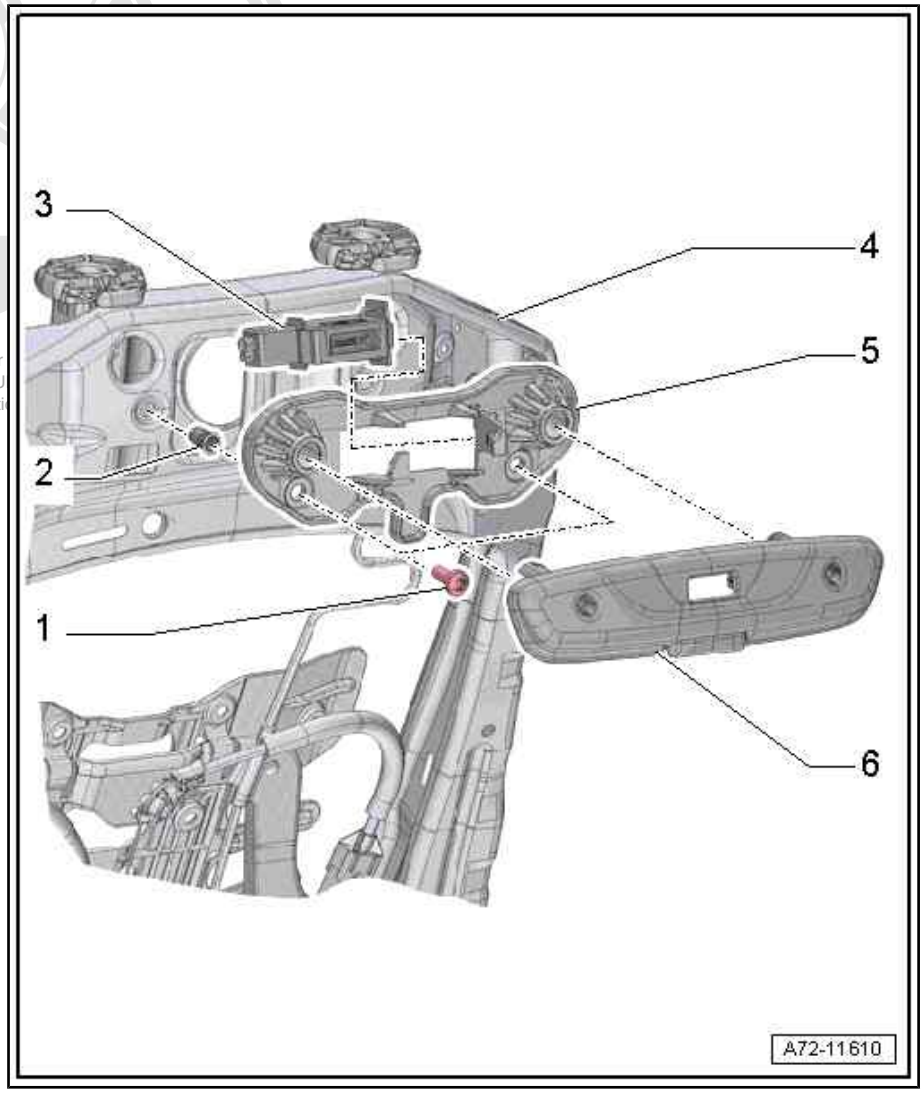
4 - Outer backrest frame

5 - Bracket

- ❑ For Rear Seat Entertainment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 450
- ❑ Hook into outer backrest frame

6 - Mounting

- ❑ For Rear Seat Entertainment
- ❑ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 450
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted use is authorised by AUDI AG. AU
with respect to the correctness of informati

Mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment - country-specific version

1 - Front seat

2 - Cover (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.12.8 Removing and installing mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment - country-specific version”, page 452
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

3 - Mounting

- ❑ For Rear Seat Entertainment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 452
- ❑ Hook in at retainer and bolt on

4 - Bolt

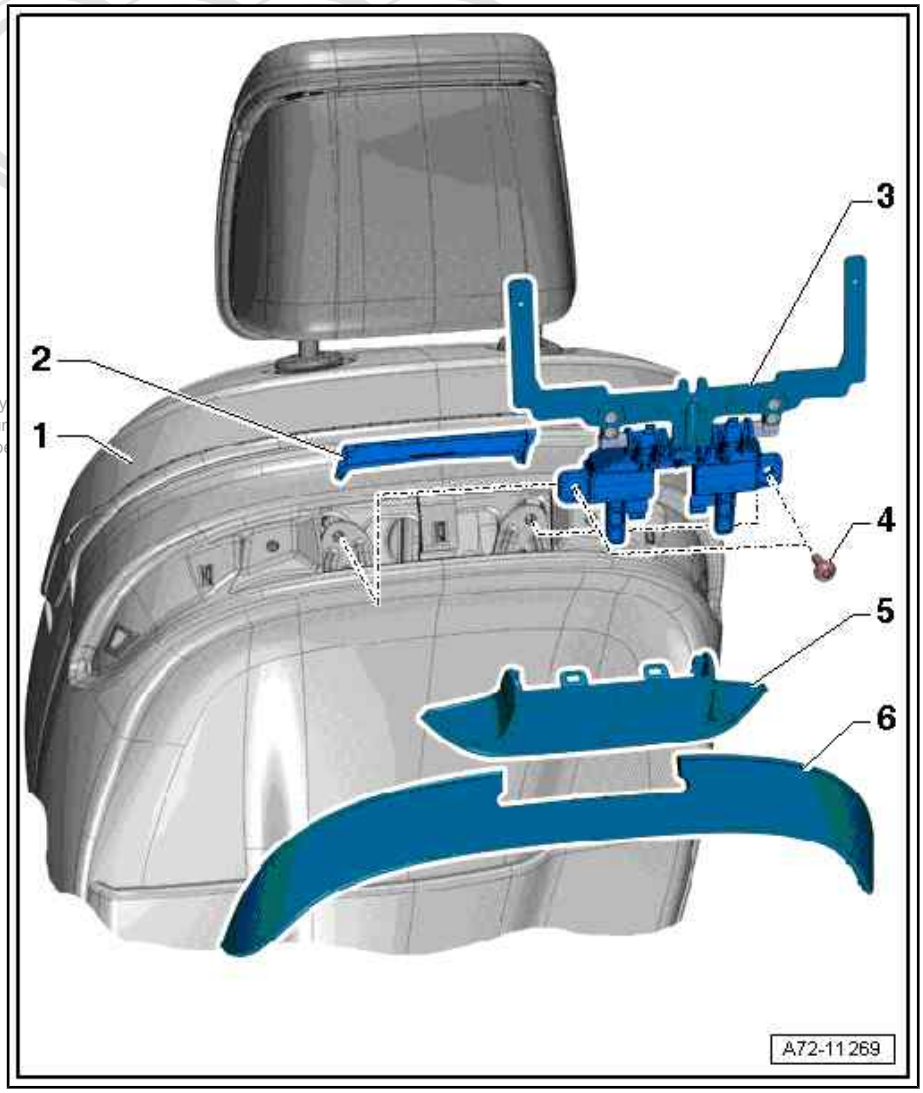
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

5 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.12.8 Removing and installing mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment - country-specific version”, page 452
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

6 - Trim

- ❑ For backrest cover panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.12.8 Removing and installing mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment - country-specific version”, page 452
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely



Protected by
permitted u
with resp

2.4 Exploded view - head restraint

⇒ “2.4.1 Exploded view - head restraint, basic version”, page 386

⇒ “2.4.2 Exploded view - head restraint, convenience version”, page 387

⇒ “2.4.3 Exploded view - head restraint, super sports seat”, page 388

2.4.1 Exploded view - head restraint, basic version

1 - Head restraint guide (right-side)

- ❑ Without release button
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 456

2 - Cover

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Attached to backrest cover

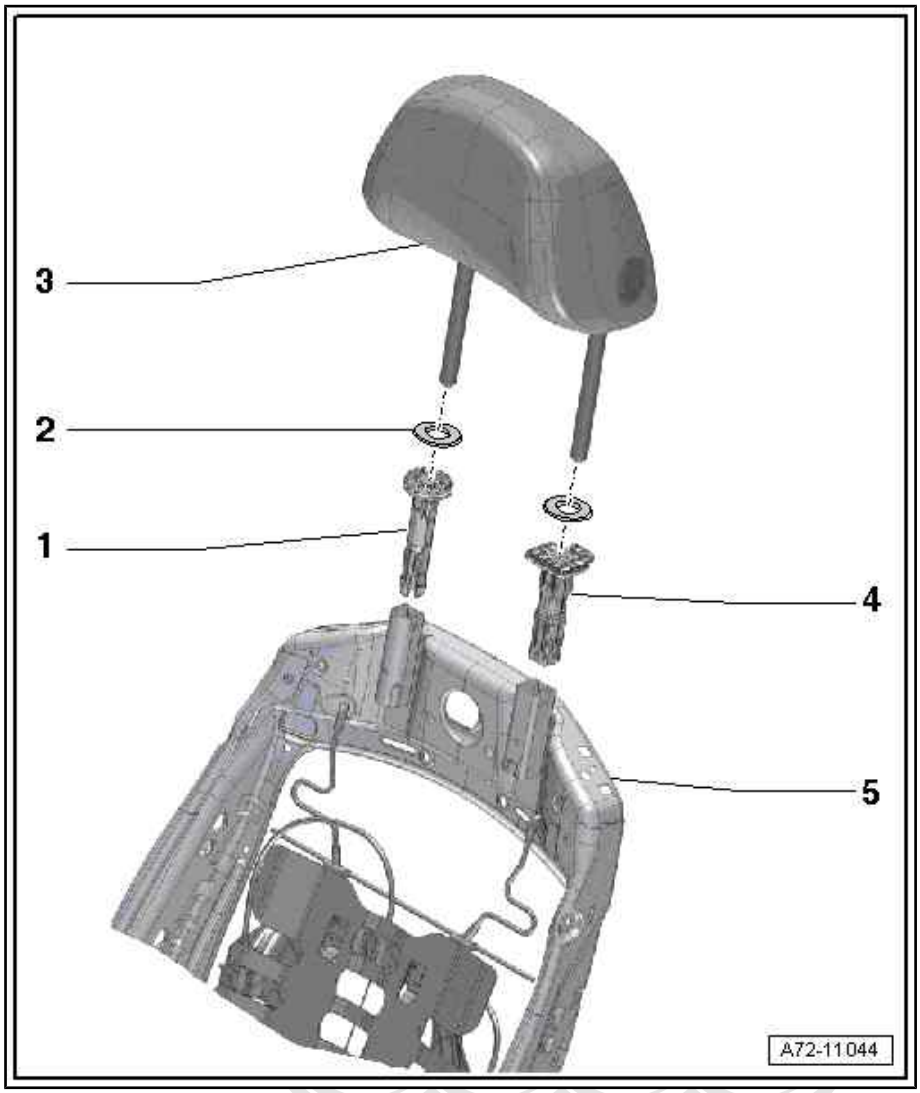
3 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455
- ❑ Must be properly locked in head restraint guides

4 - Head restraint guide (left-side)

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 456

5 - Outer backrest frame



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.2 Exploded view - head restraint, convenience version

1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Head restraint guide (right-side)

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Can only be installed on one side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 456

3 - Head restraint

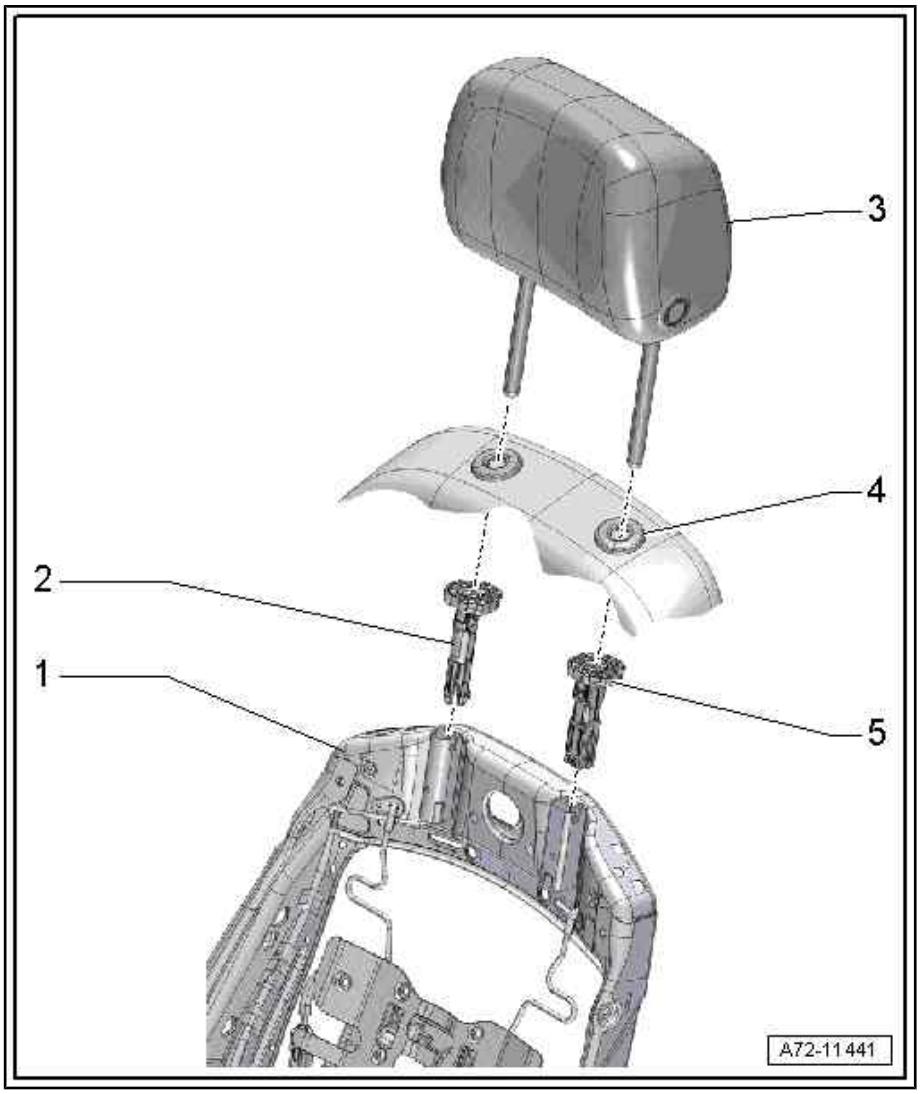
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455
- ❑ Must be properly locked in head restraint guides

4 - Cover

- ❑ Attached to backrest cover

5 - Head restraint guide (left-side)

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Can only be installed on one side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 456



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.3 Exploded view - head restraint, super sports seat

Note

- *The head restraint is permanently attached to the backrest padding and can only be removed together with the backrest padding.*
- *The head restraint cannot be separated from the backrest padding.*
- *For greater clarity the backrest cover is not shown.*

1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Head restraint guide

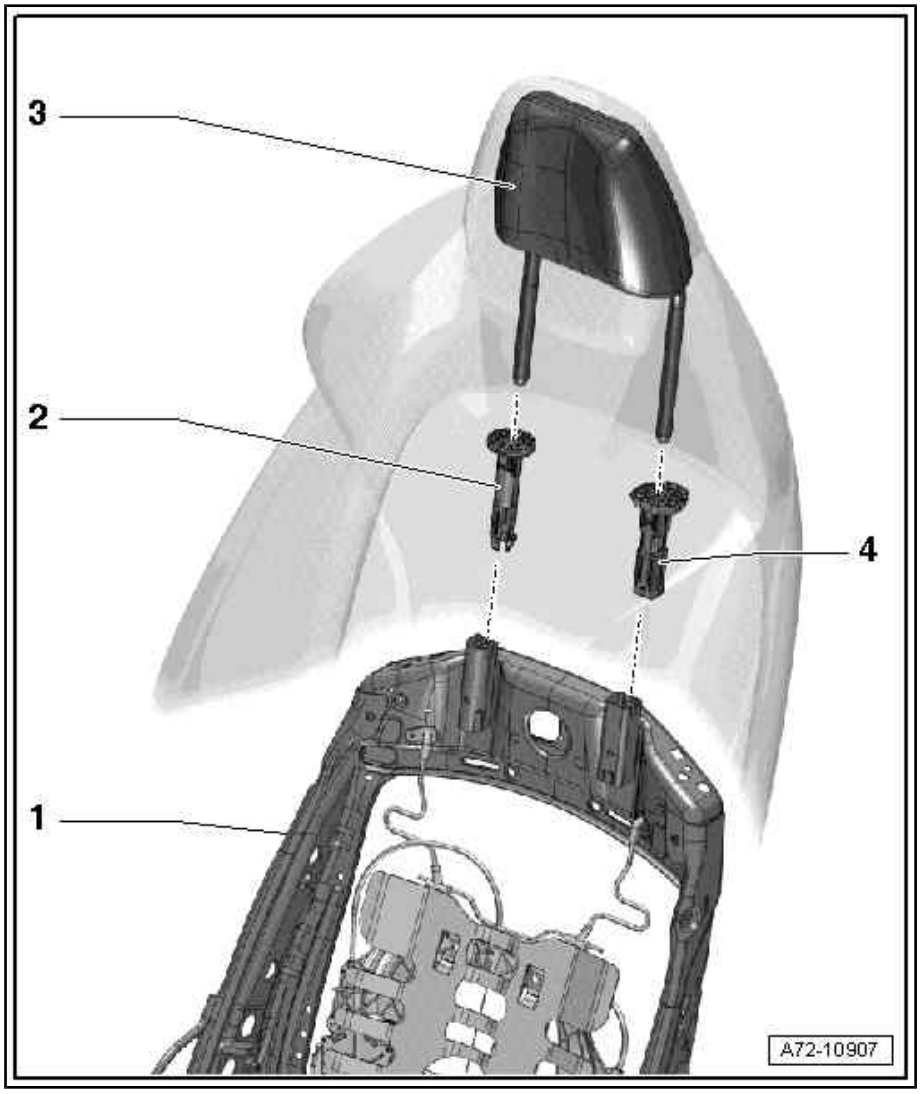
- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 456

3 - Head restraint

- ❑ With padding
- ❑ Head restraint foam-fitted in padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 670

4 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 456



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5 Exploded view - seat pan

⇒ “2.5.1 Exploded view - seat pan, modular wire routing”, page 389

⇒ “2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side)”, page 390

⇒ “2.5.3 Exploded view - seat pan, bracket for seat side trim (sill side)”, page 394

⇒ “2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster”, page 395

⇒ “2.5.5 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster”, page 398

⇒ “2.5.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster”, page 399

⇒ “2.5.7 Exploded view - seat pan, seat depth adjuster”, page 403

⇒ “2.5.8 Exploded view - seat pan, torsion bar”, page 405

⇒ “2.5.9 Exploded view - seat pan, seat adjustment actuators/ switches”, page 405

⇒ “2.5.10 Exploded view - seat pan, storage compartment”, page 408

⇒ “2.5.11 Exploded view - seat pan, front seat control unit”, page 409

⇒ “2.5.12 Exploded view - seat pan, seat cushion fan”, page 411

⇒ “2.5.13 Exploded view - seat pan, inertia safety latch”, page 415

2.5.1 Exploded view - seat pan, modular wire routing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Cable retainer (rear)

- ❑ Re-attach at the same location when installing

2 - Front seat

3 - Cable retainer (front)

- ❑ Re-attach at the same location when installing

4 - Wiring harness

- ❑ Do not twist inserted wires

5 - Lower shell for corrugated tube

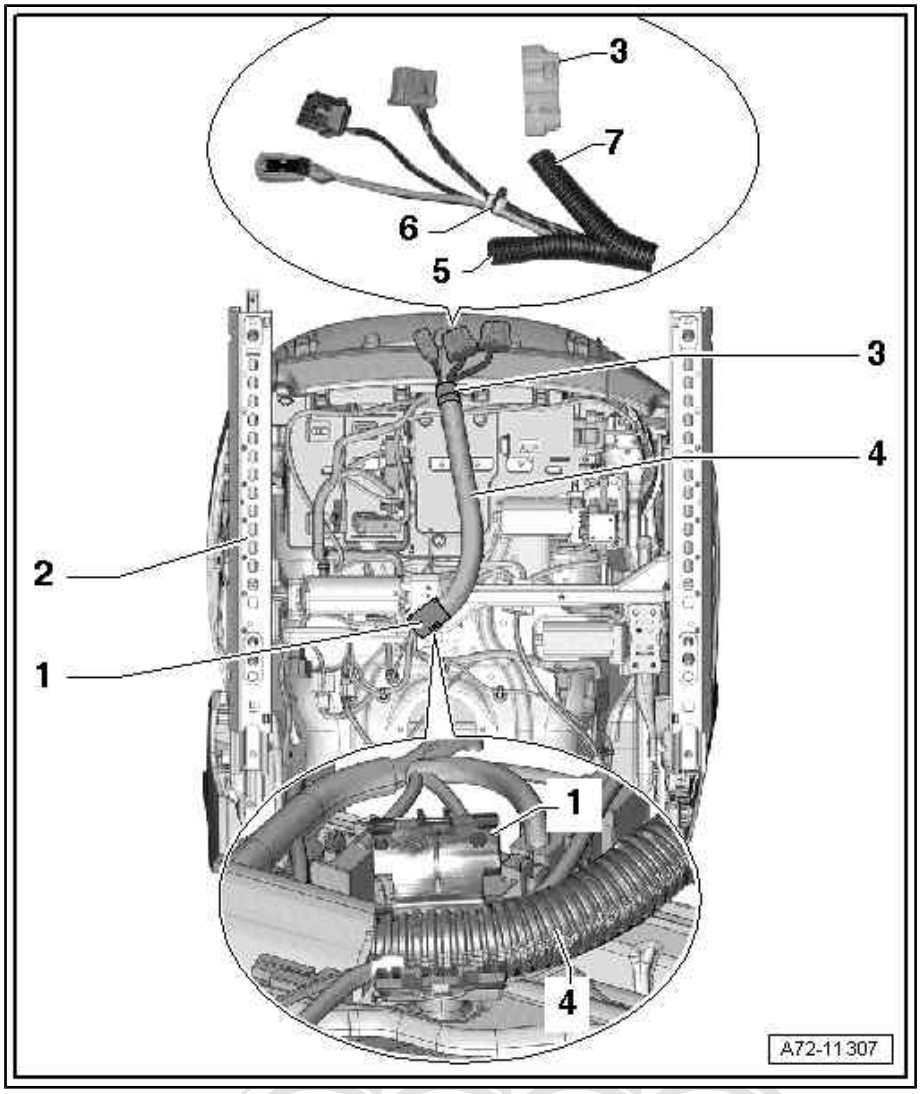
- ❑ Must be flush with cable retainer (rear)

6 - Cable tie

- ❑ Re-attach at the same location when installing

7 - Upper shell for corrugated tube

- ❑ Must be flush with cable retainer (rear)



2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side)

Seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) - front seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ page 390

Seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) - front seat (with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 391

Seat trim (sill/tunnel side) - front multi-contour seat ⇒ page 392

Seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) - front seat (with manual adjustment)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Front seat

2 - Spreader rivet

3 - Trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 469

4 - Spreader rivet

5 - Hand wheel

- ❑ For backrest adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.15.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat (with manual adjustment)”, page 461
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Seat height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 426
- ❑ Slide handle on and press on as far as stop

7 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 405

8 - Trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 461



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) - front seat (with electric adjustment)

1 - Front seat

2 - Spreader rivet

3 - Trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 469

4 - Spreader rivet

5 - Spreader rivet

6 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 405

7 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-

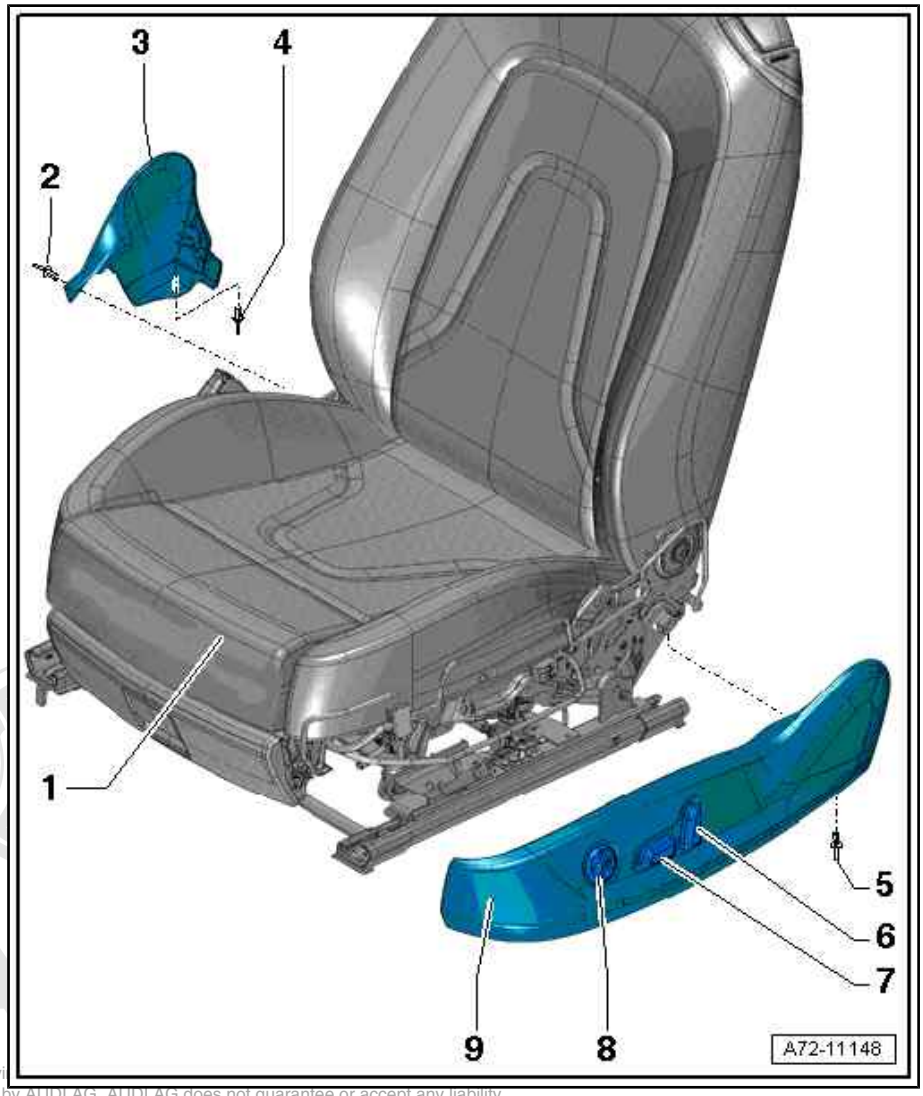
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 405

8 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 405

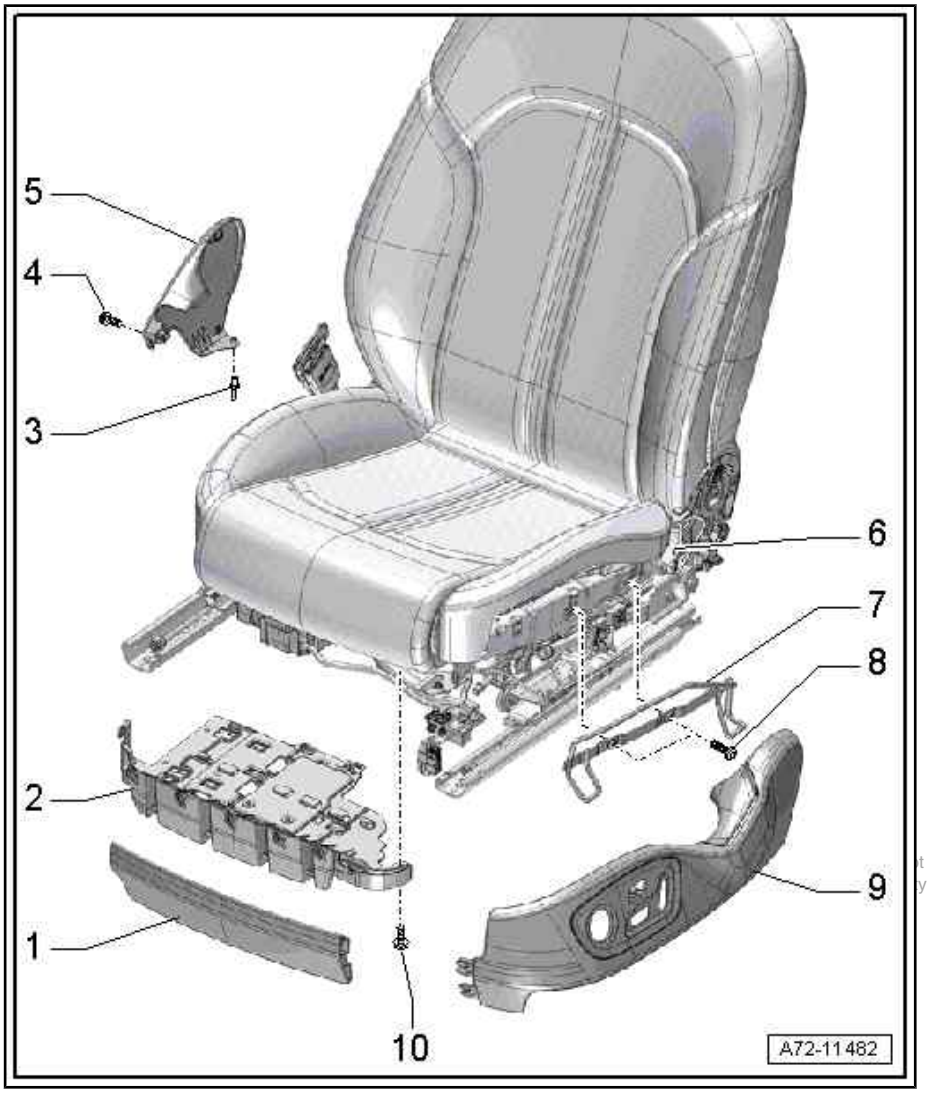
9 - Trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 464
- ❑ Engage at bracket and storage compartment



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Seat trim (front), seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) - multi-contour seat



1 - Trim panel (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 465

2 - Bracket

- ❑ For trim (front), compressor and control unit for multi-contour seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 467
- ❑ When renewing, fit compressor for multi-contour seat in new bracket

3 - Spreader rivet

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

5 - Trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 469

6 - Front seat

7 - Bracket

- ❑ For trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.15.5 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side)/seat trim (front) - multi-contour seat”, page 465

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

9 - Trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 465
- ❑ Engage at bracket and trim (front)

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

2.5.3 Exploded view - seat pan, bracket for seat side trim (sill side)

Bracket for seat side trim (sill side) - front seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ page 394

Bracket for seat side trim (sill side) - front seat (with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 394

Bracket for seat side trim (sill side) - front seat (with manual adjustment)

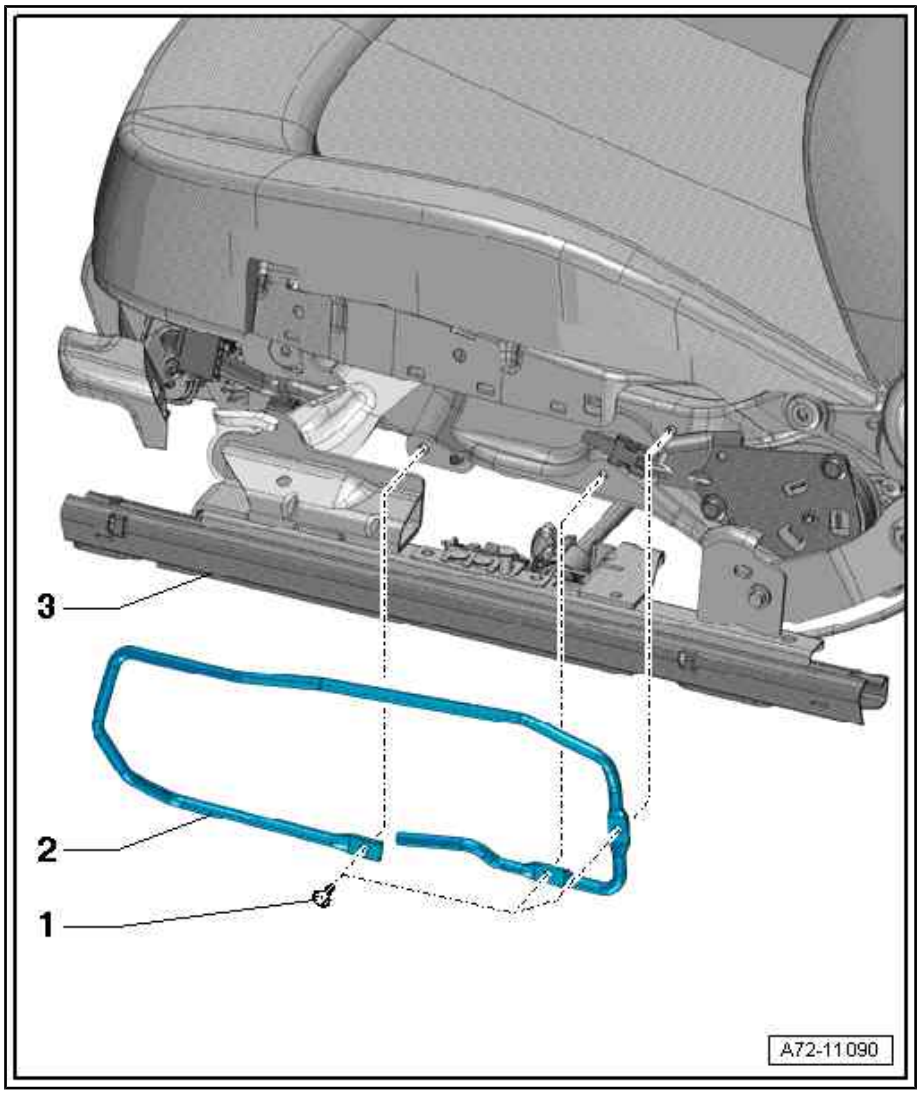
1 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

2 - Bracket

- ❑ For trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.15.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat (with manual adjustment)", page 461

3 - Front seat



Bracket for seat side trim (sill side) - front seat (with electric adjustment)

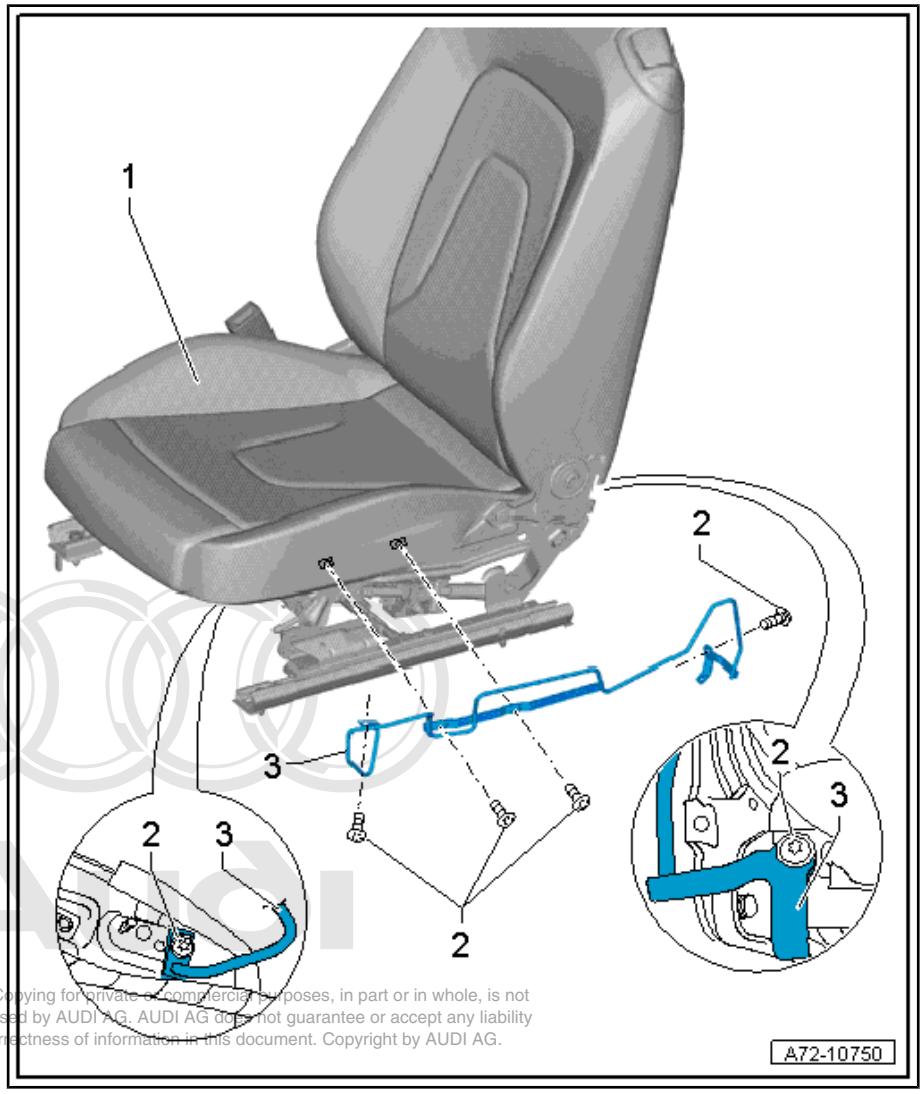
1 - Front seat

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Bracket for trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.15.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat (with electric adjustment)”, page 464



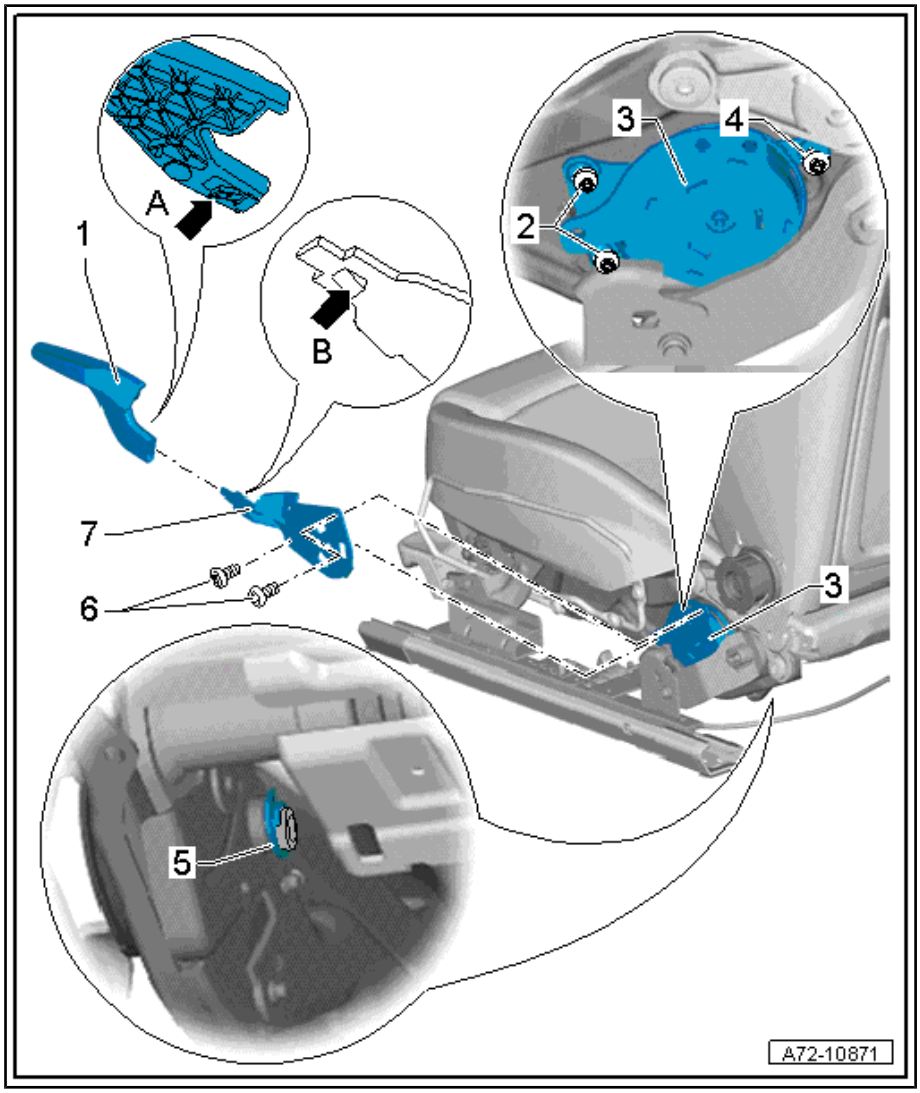
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster

Seat height adjustment unit (for manual adjustment) ⇒ page 395

Seat height adjustment motor ⇒ page 396

Seat height adjustment unit (for manual adjustment)



1 - Seat height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 426
- ❑ Slide handle on and press on as far as stop
- ❑ Renew seat height adjuster if lug -arrow A- is damaged
- ❑ Engage tab -arrow A- with lug -arrow B-

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Note difference to length of bolt -item 4-
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

3 - Seat height adjustment unit

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 427

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Note difference to length of bolts -item 2-
- ❑ 10 Nm

5 - Securing clip

- ❑ Always renew after removing

6 - Bolt

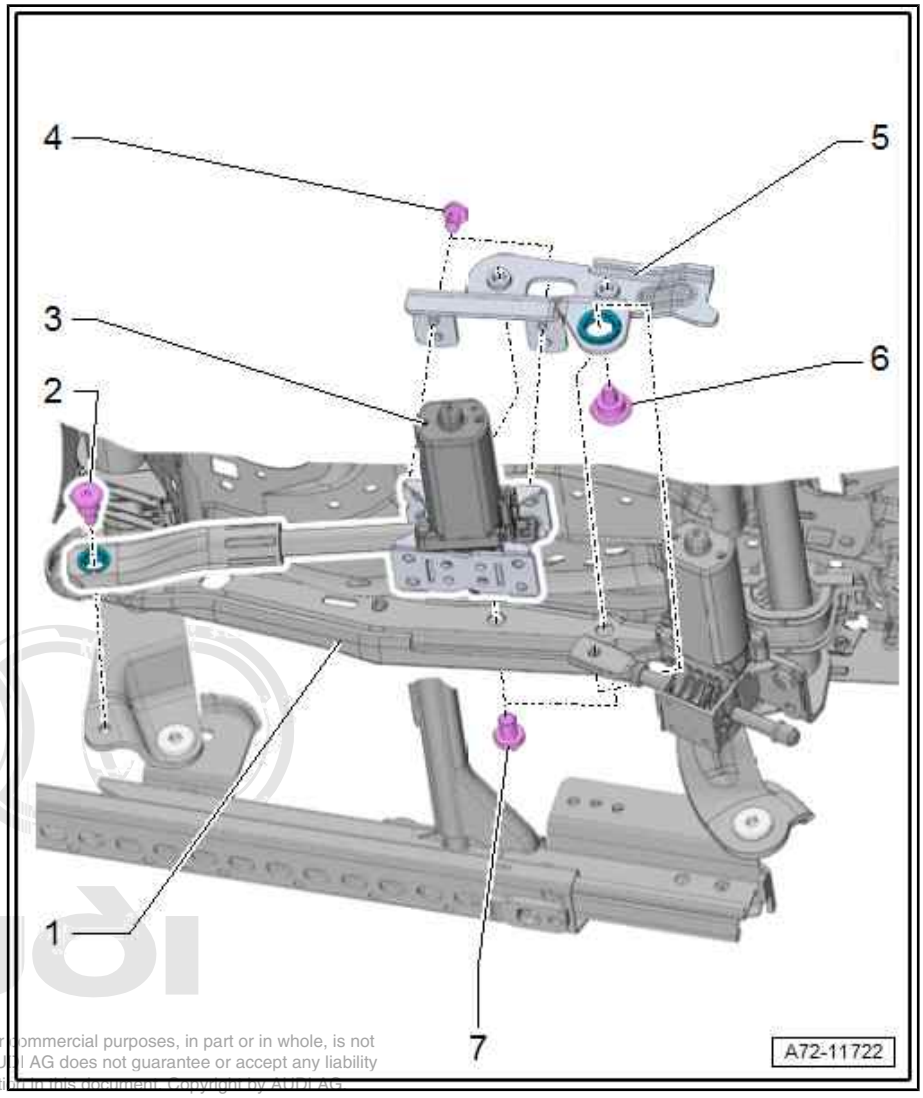
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Lever

- ❑ For seat height adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.9.1 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 427

Seat height adjustment motor

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Seat pan

2 - Bolt

> **Caution**
> *Bolt with left-hand thread.*

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Observe notes when removing and installing ⇒ page 430
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 22 Nm

3 - Driver seat height adjustment motor - V245-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 430

4 - Bolts

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 10 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Bracket

- ❑ Bolted to seat pan

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 398

7 - Bolts

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 20 Nm

2.5.5 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster

Seat rake adjuster (for manual adjustment) ⇒ page 398

Seat rake adjustment motor ⇒ page 398

Seat rake adjuster (for manual adjustment)

1 - Handle

- ❑ For seat rake adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 435
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

2 - Clip

- ❑ Always renew seat rake adjustment handle after removing
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 436

3 - Bolt

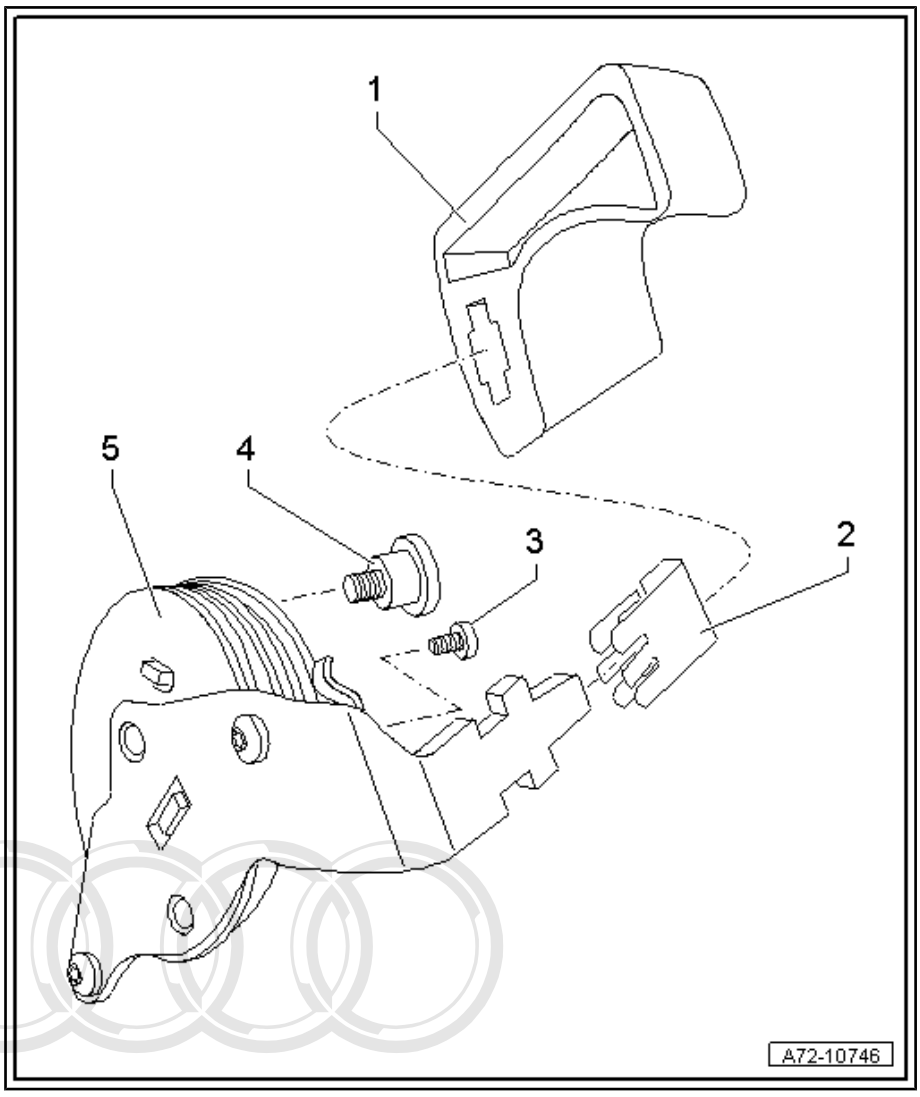
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

4 - Pivot stud

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for pivot stud using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 6 Nm

5 - Seat rake adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 432



Seat rake adjustment motor

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 20 Nm

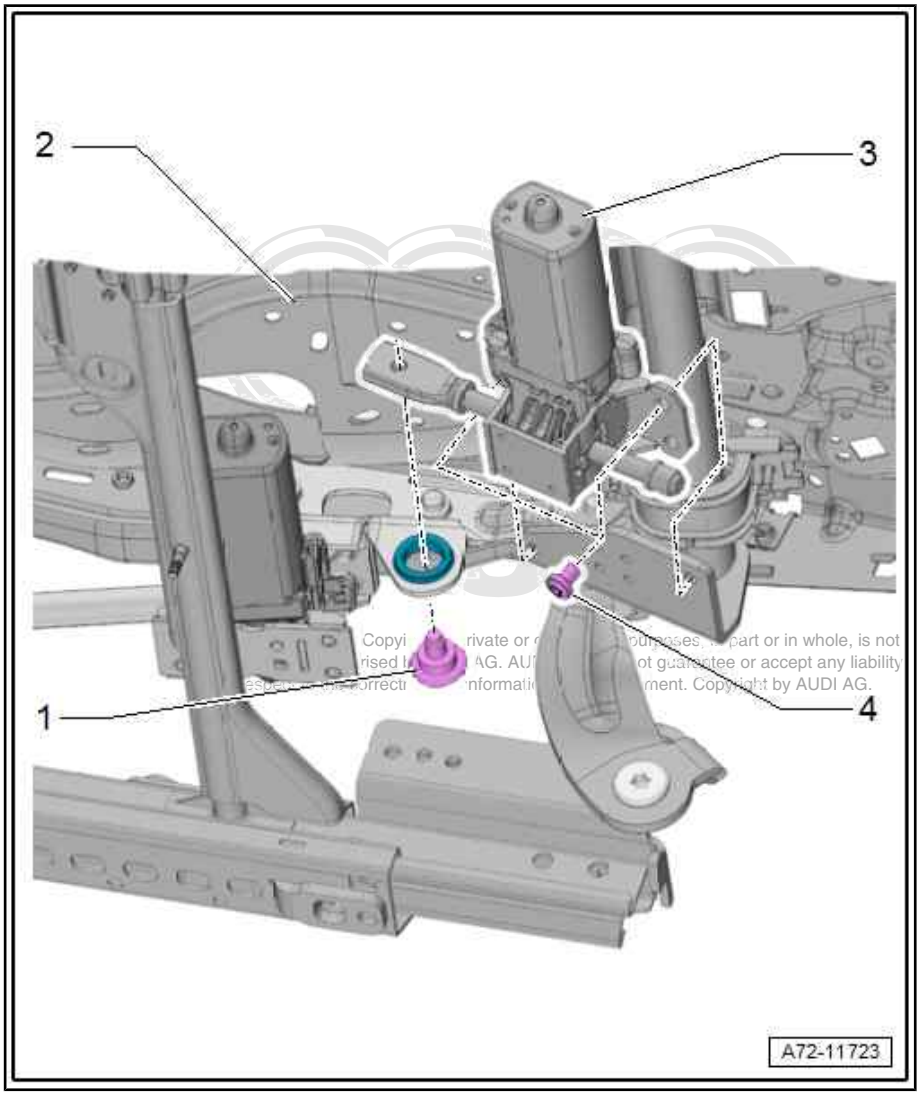
2 - Seat pan

3 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 434

4 - Bolts

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 10 Nm



2.5.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster

Seat longitudinal adjuster (for manual adjustment) ⇒ page 399

Seat longitudinal adjuster (for electric adjustment) - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat ⇒ page 401

Seat longitudinal adjuster - multi-contour seat ⇒ page 401

Seat longitudinal adjuster (for manual adjustment)

Note

A repair set is available for repairing the seat longitudinal adjuster ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

1 - Front seat

2 - Seat longitudinal adjuster

- ❑ Forms a joint unit with top part of seat (seat pan)
- ❑ Cannot be renewed separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Servicing ⇒ page 474

3 - Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 471
- ❑ There is no provision for Bowden cable adjustment

4 - Clip or cable tie

5 - Handle

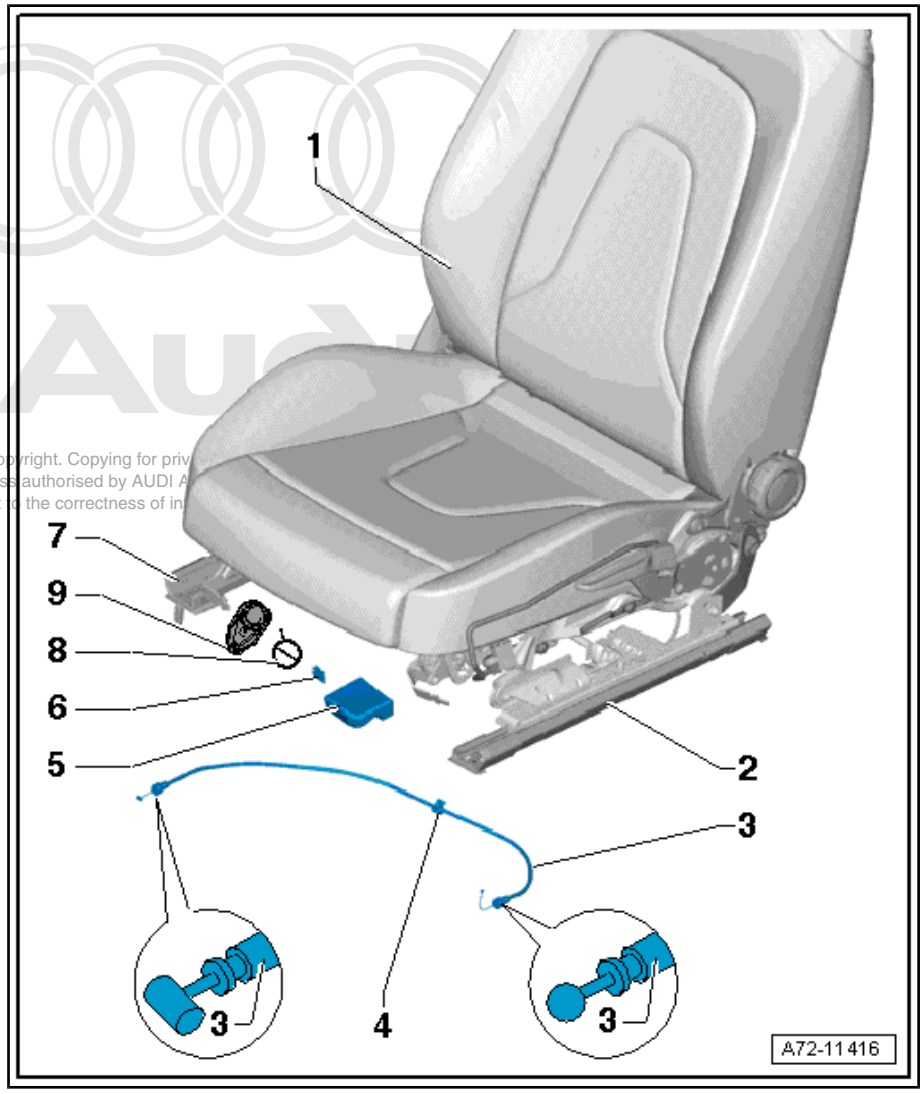
- ❑ For seat longitudinal adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 470
- ❑ Must engage with clip

6 - Clip

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 400

7 - Actuator

- ❑ For seat longitudinal adjustment



8 - Spring

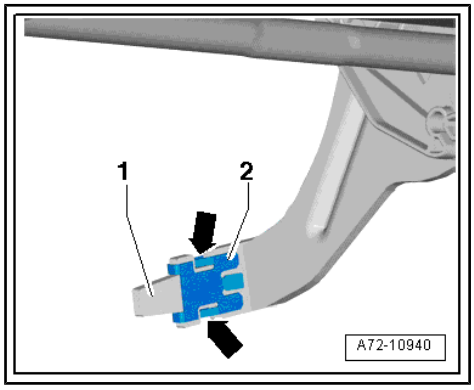
- ❑ For lever for engaging Bowden cable (seat longitudinal adjustment)
- ❑ Different components on driver's and front passenger's seats
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 473

9 - Lever

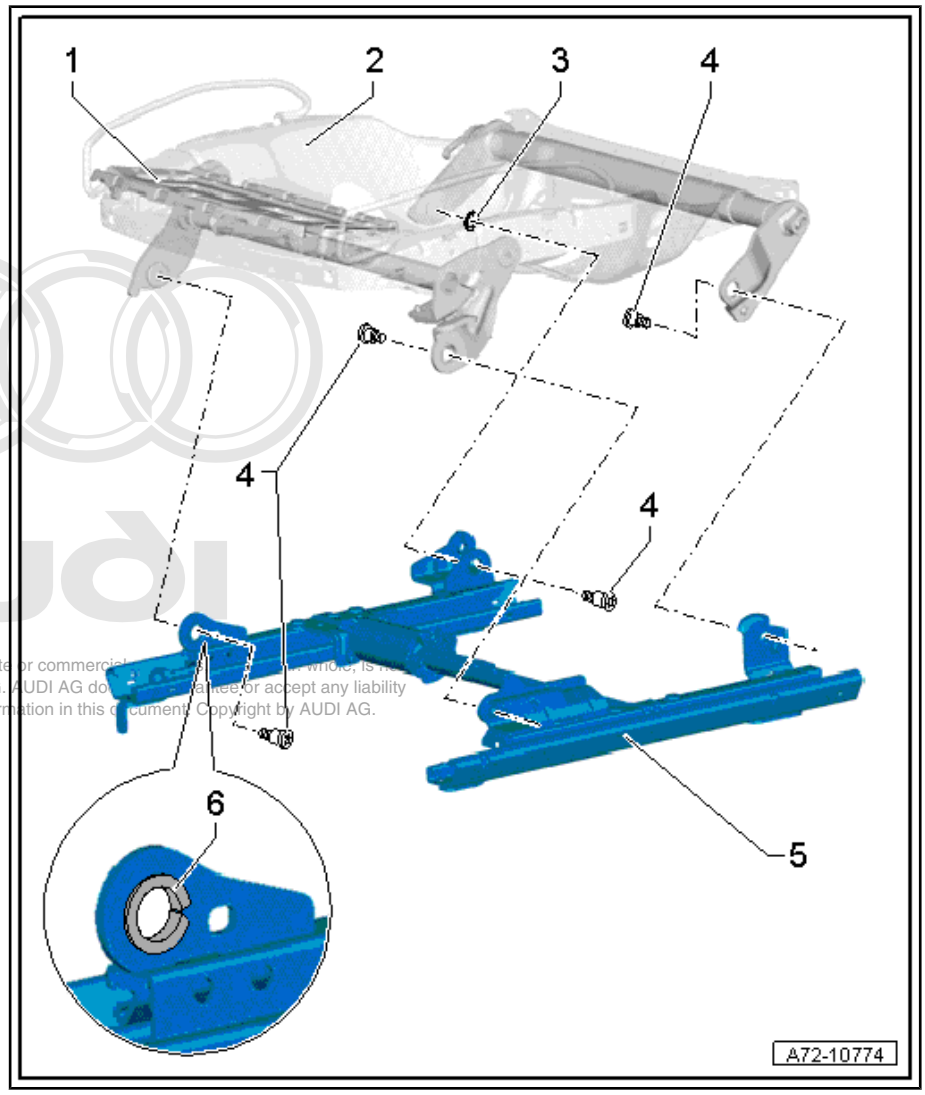
- ❑ For engaging Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment
- ❑ Identical on driver's and front passenger's seats
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 473

Installation position of clip

- Springs -arrows- (2x) of clip -2- must be located on inside of lever -1-.



Seat longitudinal adjuster (for electric adjustment) - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat



1 - Seat depth adjuster

- For sports seat/super sports seat only
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 488
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Upper seat pan frame

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 481
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- When renewing, fit electrical and electronic components and wiring removed earlier in new upper frame

3 - Washer

4 - Bolt

- 4x
- Self-locking
- Renew
- Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- 22 Nm

5 - Lower seat pan frame

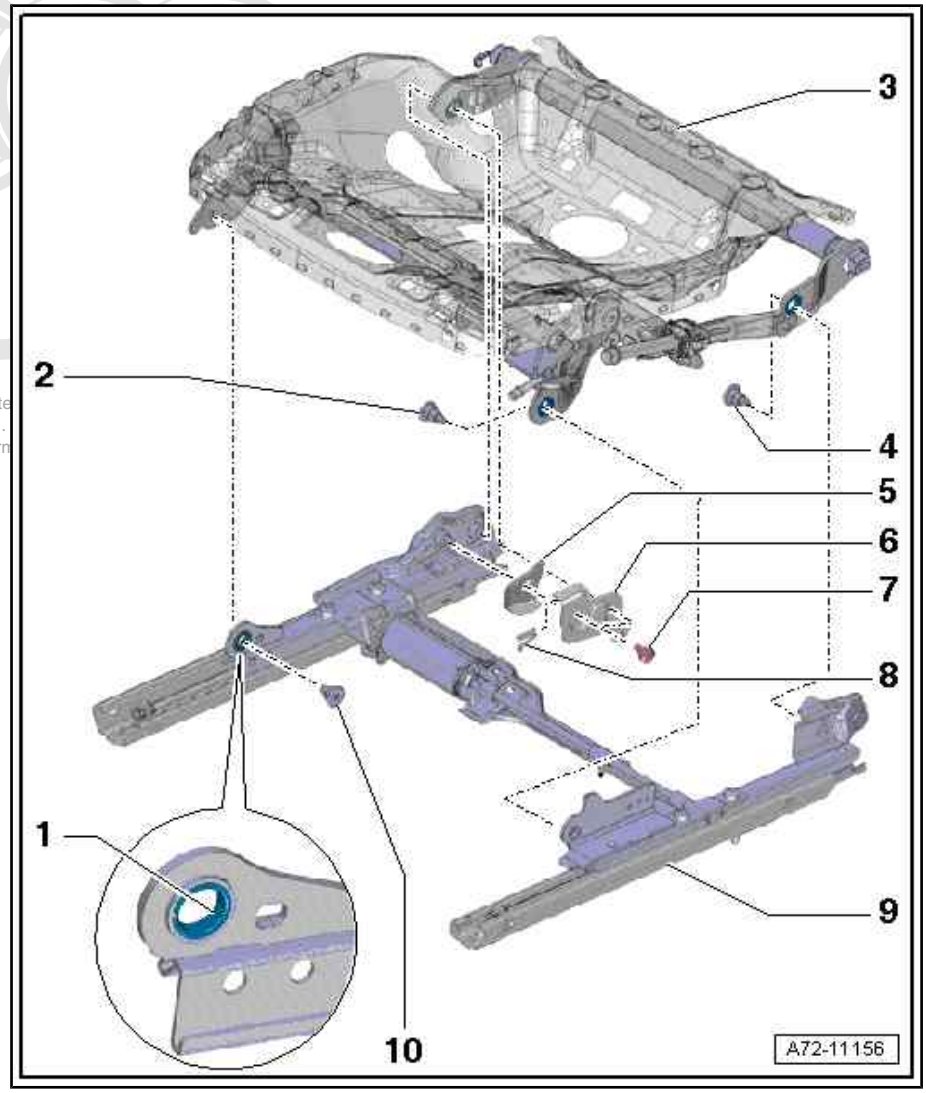
- Driver side: with driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-
- Passenger side: with front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
- Cannot be dismantled
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 478
- When renewing, fit seat position sensor and belt buckle in new lower frame

6 - Bush

- Inserted in all pivot points
- Cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops
- Component must be renewed if bush is damaged

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Seat longitudinal adjuster - multi-contour seat



1 - Bush

- ❑ Inserted in all pivot points
- ❑ Cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops
- ❑ Component must be renewed if bush is damaged

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 22 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
AG.
of inform

3 - Upper seat pan frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 481
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ When renewing, fit electrical and electronic components and wiring removed earlier in new upper frame

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 22 Nm

5 - Inertia safety latch

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 501
- ❑ Checking for freedom of movement ⇒ page 501

6 - Retaining plate

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torques ⇒ page 415

8 - Spring

9 - Lower seat pan frame

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 478
- ❑ When renewing, fit seat position sensor and belt buckle in new lower frame

10 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap

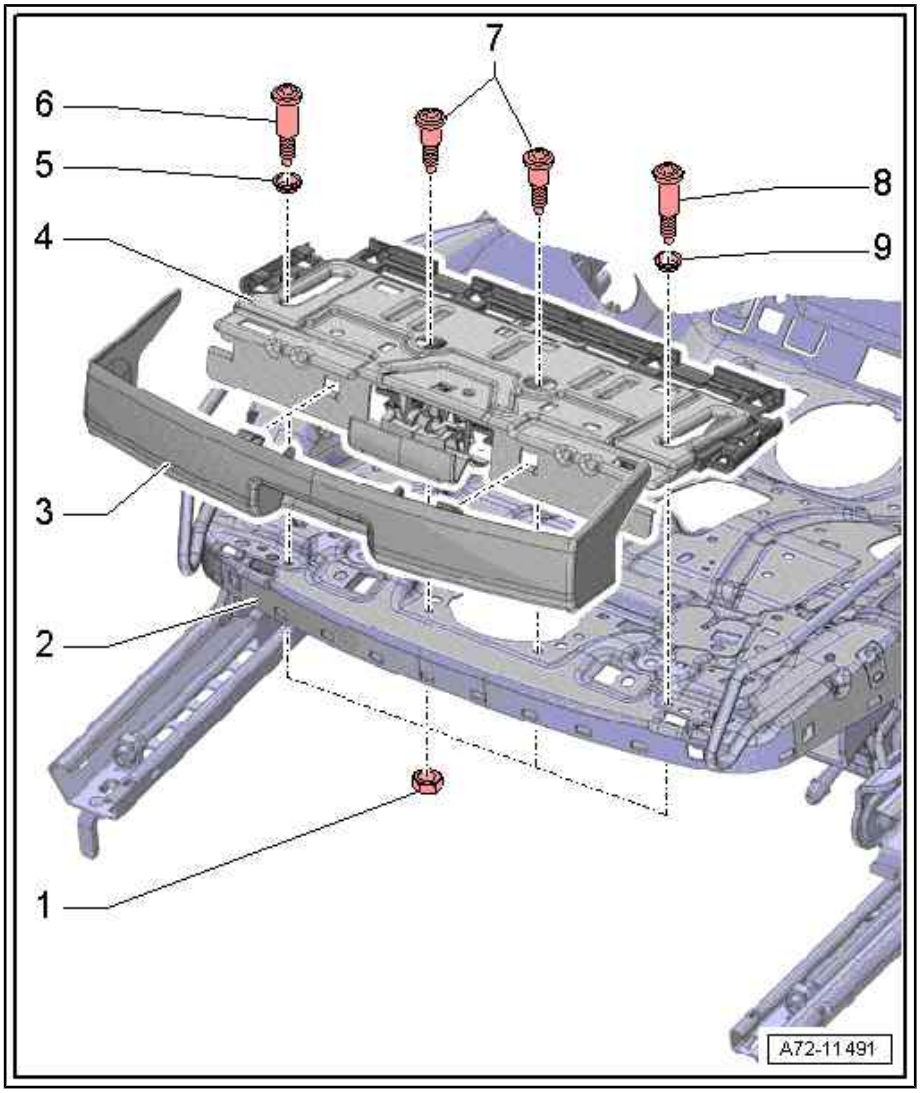
- ❑ 22 Nm

2.5.7 Exploded view - seat pan, seat depth adjuster

Seat depth adjuster - sports seat/super sports seat ⇒ page 403

Seat depth adjuster - multi-contour seat ⇒ page 403

Seat depth adjuster, sports seat/super sports seat



1 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Renew

2 - Sports seat
- ❑ With seat depth adjustment

3 - Trim
- ❑ For seat depth adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.15.17 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster - sports seat/ super sports seat”, page 488
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

4 - Seat depth adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 488

5 - Bush

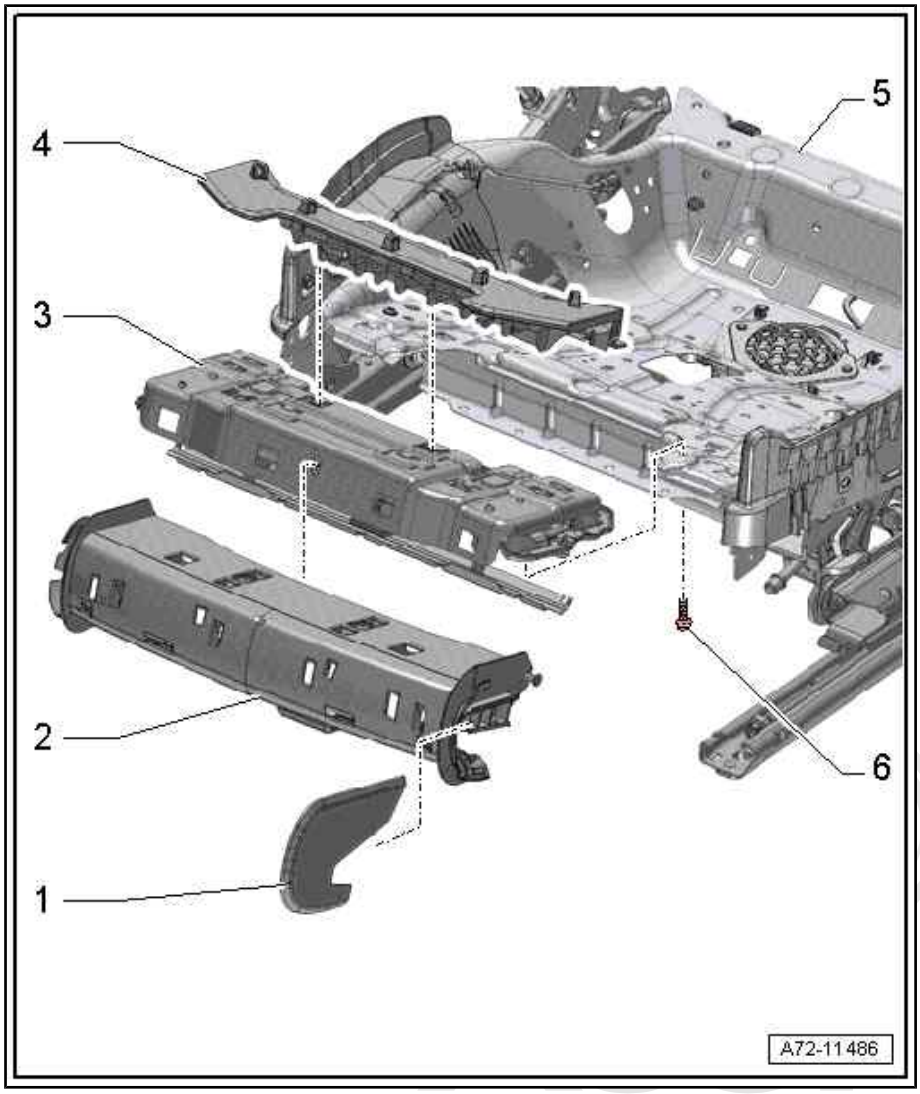
6 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 4 Nm

7 - Bolts
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 4 Nm

8 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 4 Nm

9 - Bush

Seat depth adjuster - multi-contour seat



1 - Trim

- ❑ For seat depth adjuster
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Carrier

- ❑ For seat depth adjustment motor -V256- / -V257-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.15.18 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster - multi-contour seat”, page 492

3 - Driver seat depth adjustment motor - V256-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat depth adjustment motor -V257-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 492
- ❑ Re-attach all cable ties at the same locations when re-installing.

4 - Cover

- ❑ For seat depth adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.15.18 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster - multi-contour seat”, page 492
- ❑ Clipped to seat cover and padding
- ❑ Engage at seat depth adjuster and press on until it engages audibly

5 - Multi-contour seat

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.8 Exploded view - seat pan, torsion bar

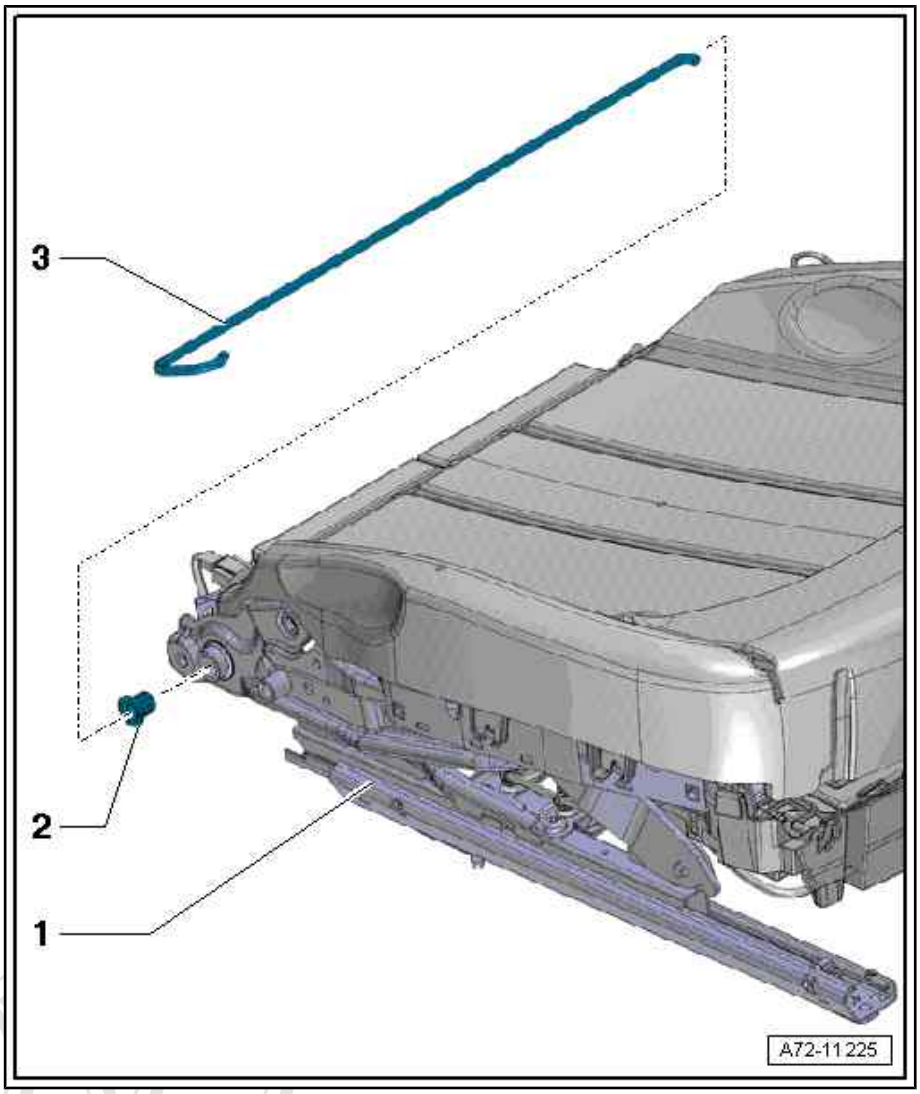
1 - Seat pan

2 - Bearing

- ❑ For torsion bar
- ❑ Pushed into guide
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.15.15 Removing and installing torsion bar”, page 483

3 - Torsion bar

- ❑ Greased; for grease refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 483



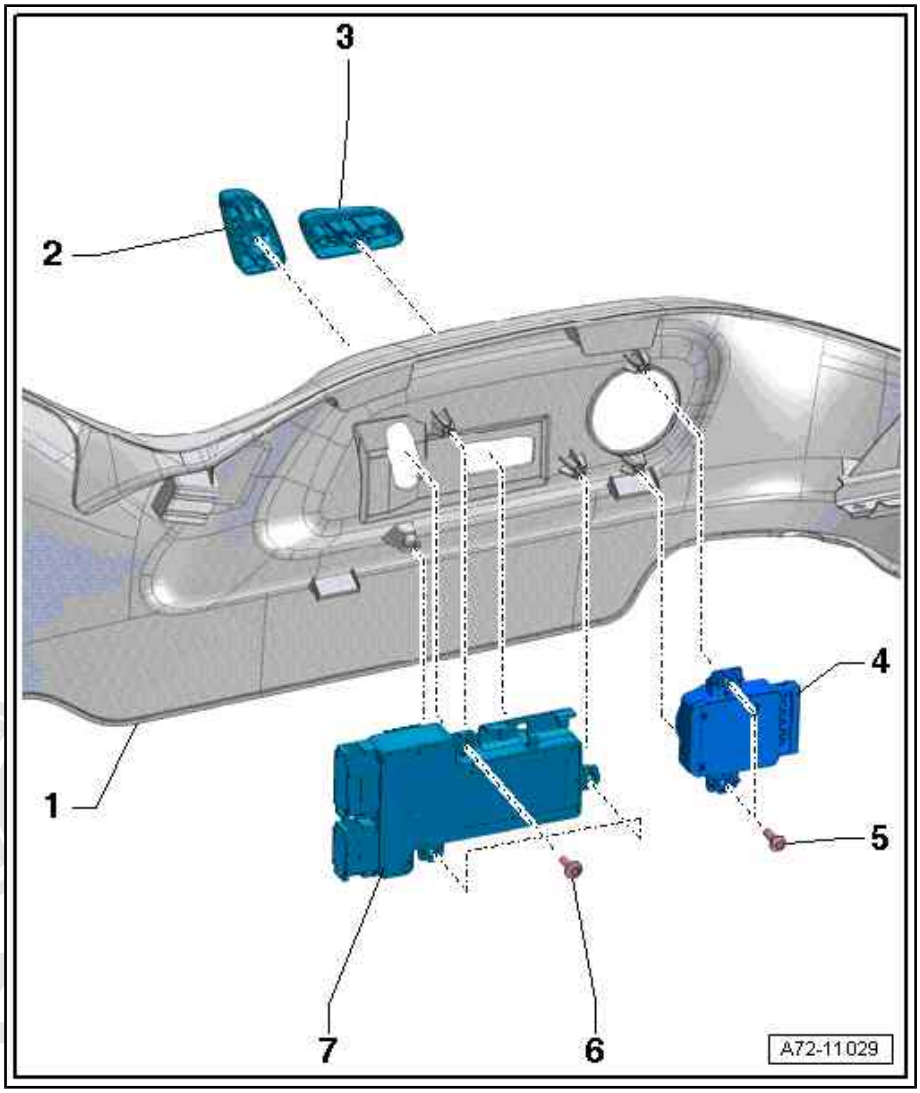
2.5.9 Exploded view - seat pan, seat adjustment actuators/switches

Seat adjustment actuators/switches - standard seat/sports seat/ super sports seat ⇒ page 405

Seat adjustment actuators/switches - multi-contour seat ⇒ page 407

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Seat adjustment actuators/switches - standard seat/sports seat/ super sports seat



1 - Trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 464

2 - Actuator

- ❑ For backrest adjustment
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Clipped on
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.15.19 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit”, page 493

3 - Actuator

- ❑ For seat adjustment
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Clipped on
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.15.19 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit”, page 493

4 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 502

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 0.8 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 0.8 Nm

7 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-

- ❑ With:

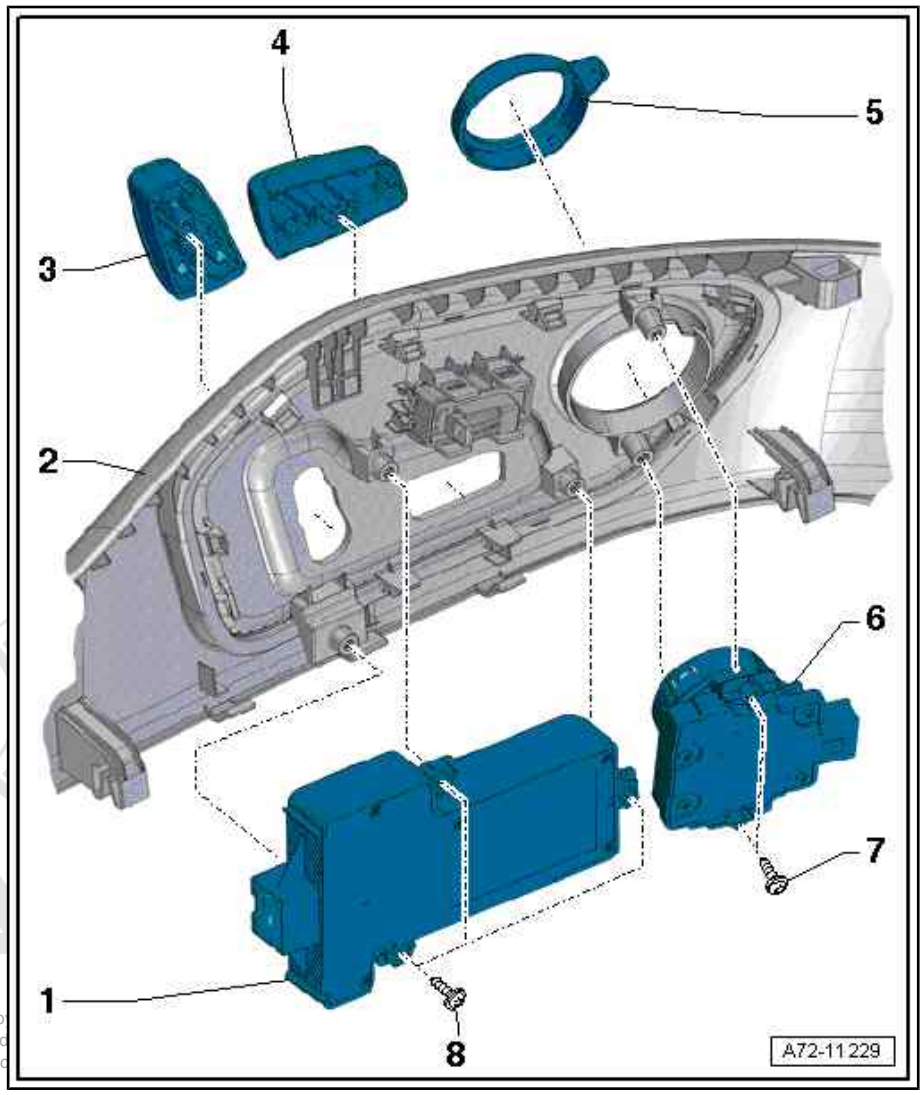
- ♦ Driver seat backrest adjustment switch - E96-
- ♦ Driver seat rake adjustment switch - E222-
- ♦ Driver seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E363-
- ♦ Driver seat height adjustment switch - E364-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471- with:

- ♦ Front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E64-
- ♦ Front passenger seat backrest adjustment switch - E98-
- ♦ Front passenger seat rake adjustment button - E334-
- ♦ Front passenger seat height adjustment switch - E365-

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 493

Seat adjustment actuators/switches - multi-contour seat



1 - Switch module for driver seat - E663-

- ❑ With:
- ♦ Driver seat backrest adjustment switch - E96-
- ♦ Head restraint adjustment switch - E155-
- ♦ Driver seat rake adjustment switch - E222-
- ♦ Driver seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E363-
- ♦ Driver seat height adjustment switch - E364-
  - ❑ Passenger side: switch module for front passenger seat - E664- with:
- ♦ Front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E64-
- ♦ Front passenger seat backrest adjustment switch - E98-
- ♦ Front passenger seat head restraint adjustment switch - E170-
- ♦ Front passenger seat rake adjustment button - E334-
- ♦ Front passenger seat height adjustment switch - E365-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 493

Protected by copyright. Cop
respect to the correc

2 - Trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 465

3 - Actuator

- ❑ For backrest adjustment
- ❑ Clipped on
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.15.19 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit”, page 493
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

4 - Actuator

- ❑ For seat adjustment
- ❑ Clipped on
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.15.19 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit”, page 493
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Rocker

- ❑ For switch module 2 for front seat -E667- / -E668-
- ❑ Clipped on
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 616

6 - Switch module 2 for driver seat - E667-

- ❑ Passenger side: switch module 2 for front passenger seat - E668-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 616

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 0.8 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 0.8 Nm

2.5.10 Exploded view - seat pan, storage compartment

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

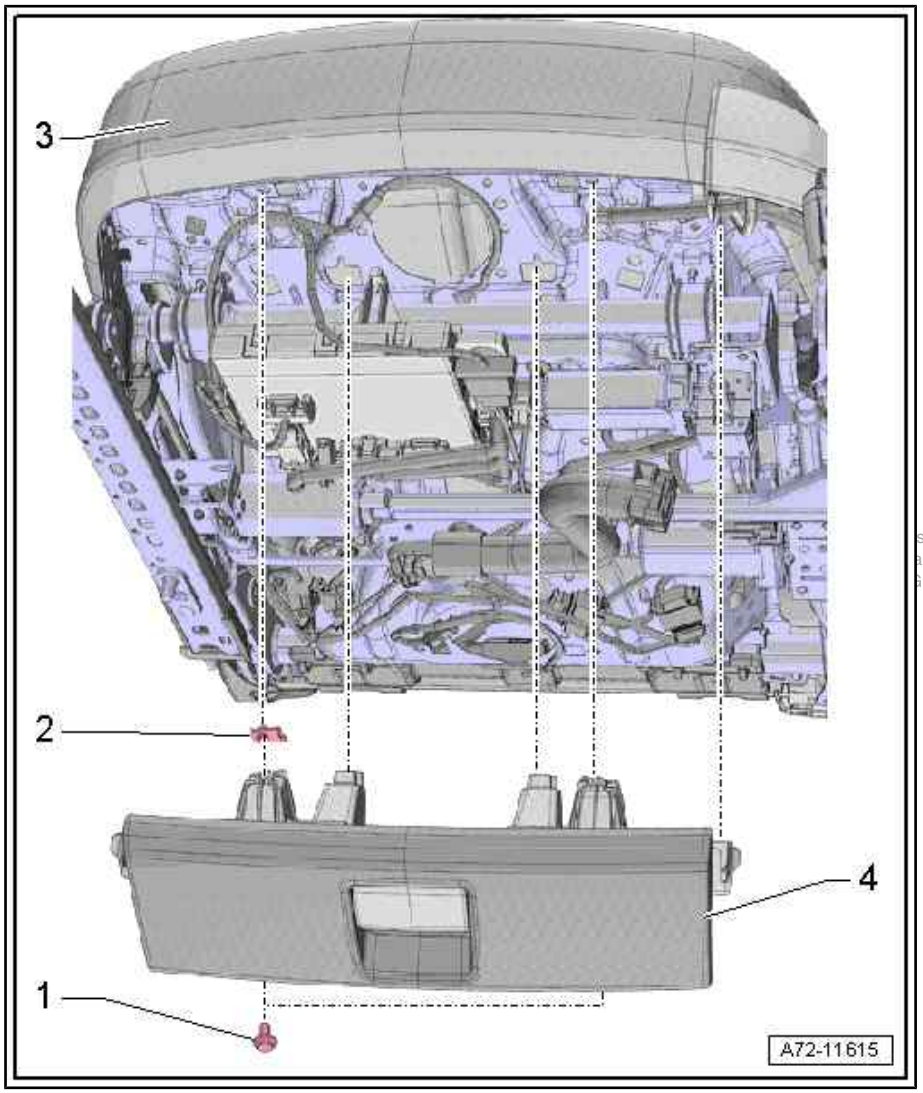
2 - Speed nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Inserted in seat pan
- ❑ Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

3 - Front seat

4 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 487
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled and is only available as a complete replacement unit
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



s not
ability
s.

2.5.11 Exploded view - seat pan, front seat control unit

Control unit for seat ventilation (seat heating integrated)
⇒ page 409

Seat/steering column adjustment control unit with memory function - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat ⇒ page 409

Seat/steering column adjustment control unit with memory function - multi-contour seat ⇒ page 410

Control unit for seat ventilation (seat heating integrated)

1 - Control unit for front left seat ventilation - J800- (integrated seat heating function)

- ❑ Passenger side: control unit for front right seat ventilation - J799- (integrated seat heating function)
- ❑ Clipped to retainer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 494

2 - Retainer

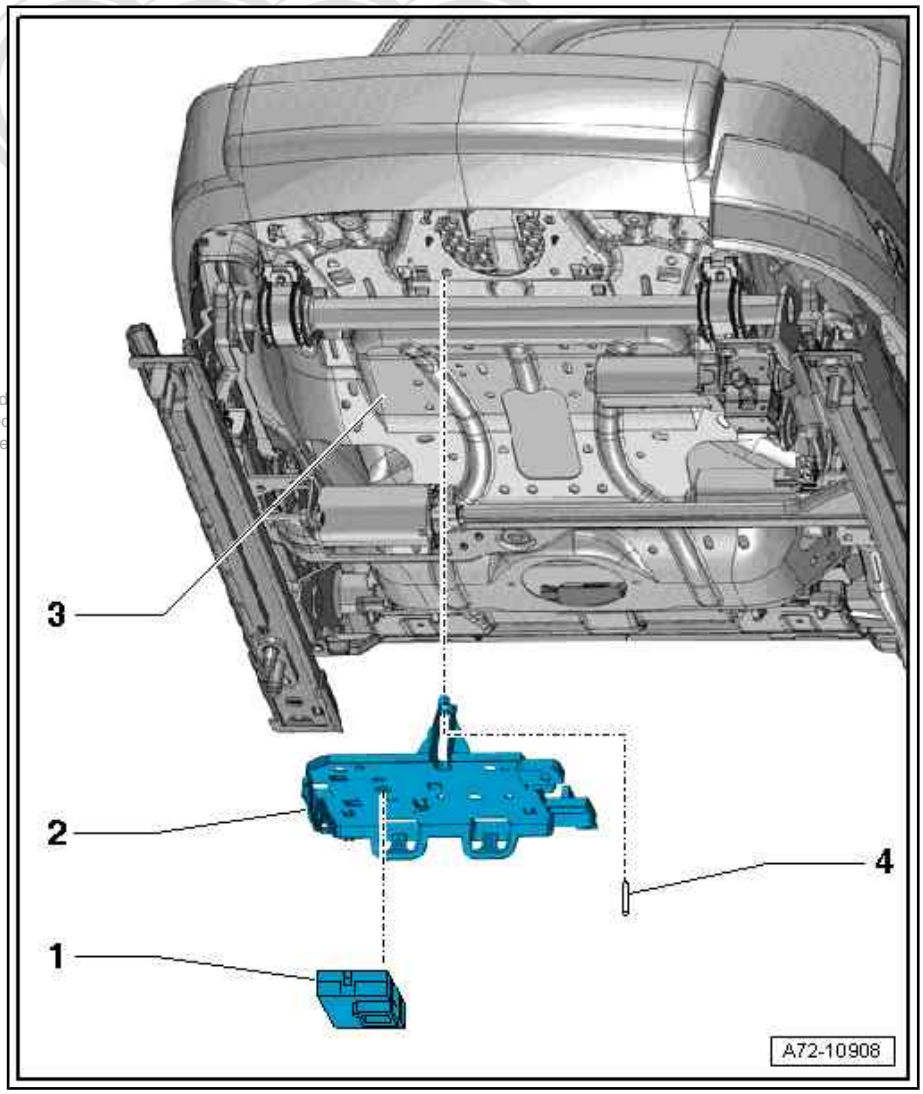
- ❑ Engaged in seat pan and clipped on
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 497

3 - Front seat

4 - Pin

- ❑ For securing retainer to seat pan

Protected
permitted
with re



Seat/steering column adjustment control unit with memory function - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat

1 - Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function - J136-

- ❑ Equipment version with seat ventilation: front left seat ventilation and seat heating integrated
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment with memory control unit - J521-
- ❑ Equipment version with seat ventilation: front right seat ventilation and seat heating integrated
- ❑ Clipped to retainer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 495

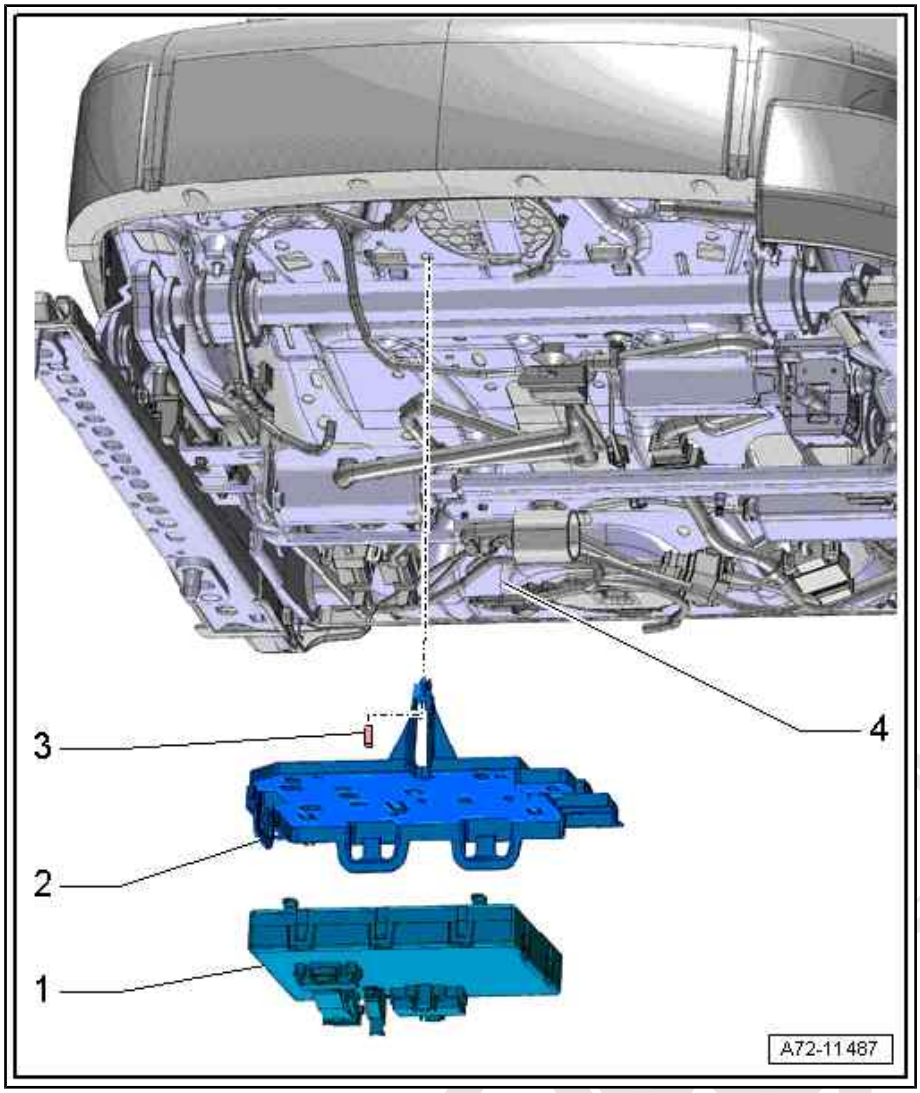
2 - Retainer

- ❑ Engaged in seat pan and clipped on
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 497

3 - Pin

- ❑ For securing retainer to seat pan

4 - Front seat



Seat/steering column adjustment control unit with memory function - multi-contour seat

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Cover

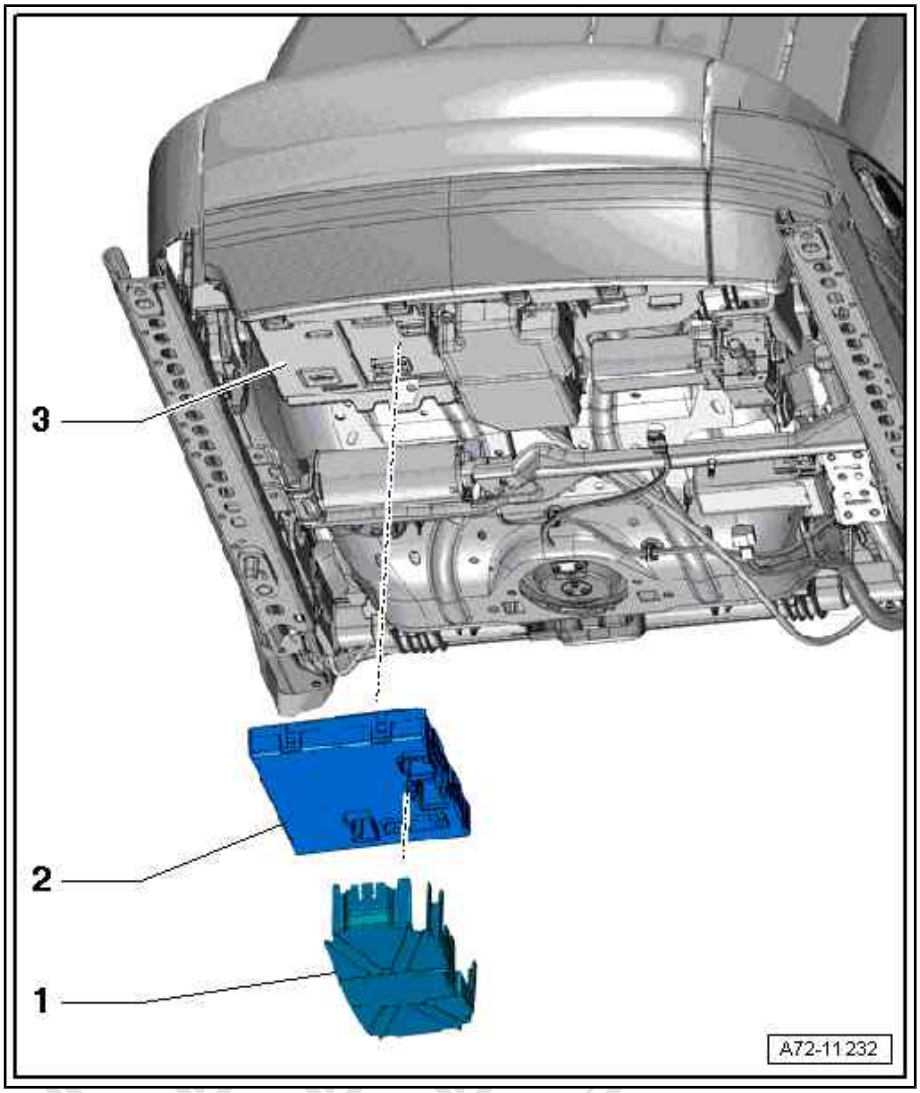
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Must engage audibly in bracket

2 - Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function - J136-

- ❑ Equipment version with seat ventilation: front left seat ventilation and seat heating integrated
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment with memory control unit - J521-
- ❑ Equipment version with seat ventilation: front right seat ventilation and seat heating integrated
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 495
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly in bracket

3 - Bracket

- ❑ For trim (front), compressor and control unit for multi-contour seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 467



2.5.12 Exploded view - seat pan, seat cushion fan

Seat cushion fan - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat
⇒ page 411

Seat cushion fan - multi-contour seat up to 08.2012
⇒ page 412

Seat cushion fan - multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards
⇒ page 413

Seat cushion fan - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Bolts

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

2 - Cover grille

3 - Front seat

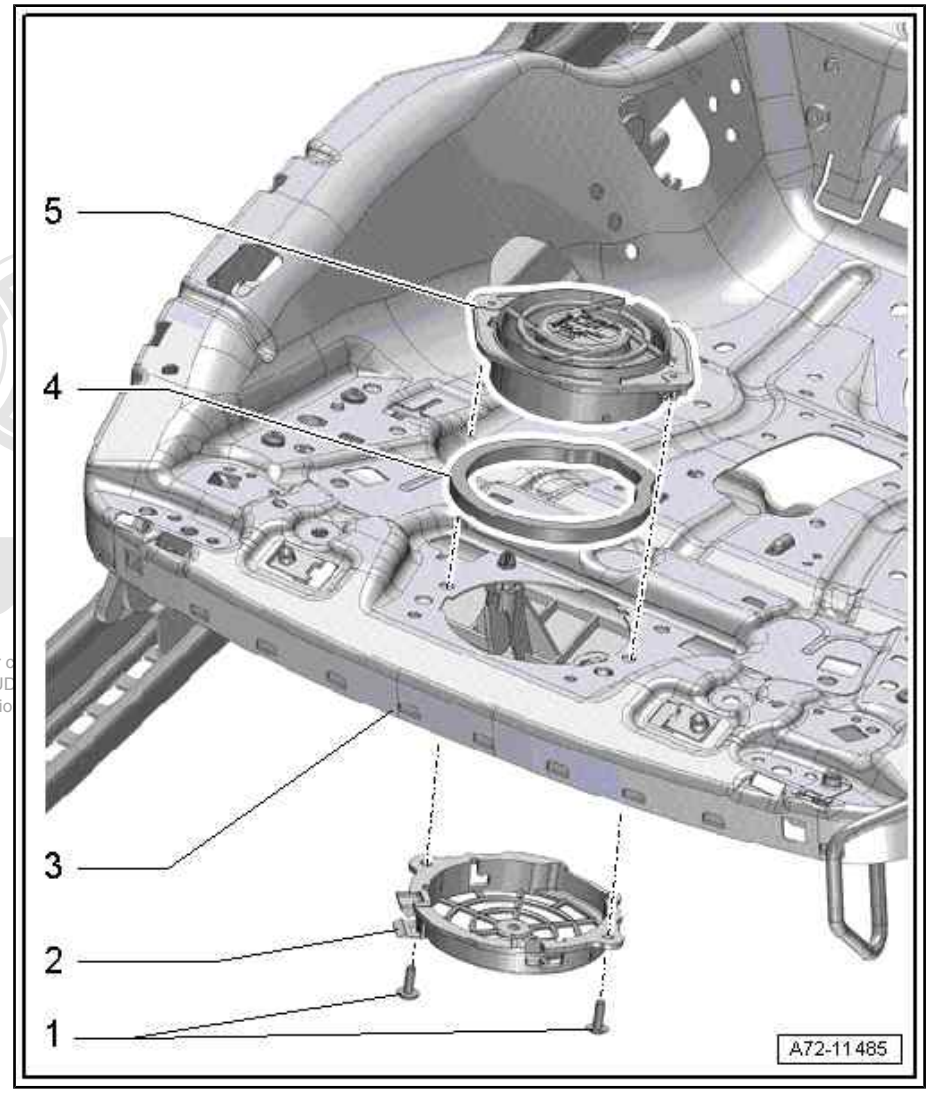
4 - Seal

- ❑ Insert between seat pan and fan

5 - Driver seat cushion fan - V390- / driver seat cushion fan 2 - V419-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat cushion fan - V391- / front passenger seat cushion fan 2 - V420-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 498

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD
with respect to the correctness of informatio



Seat cushion fan - multi-contour seat up to 08.2012

1 - Bolts

- ❑ 2.4 Nm

2 - Driver seat cushion fan - V390-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat cushion fan - V391-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 499

3 - Seal

- ❑ Fit between fan and retainer

4 - Bracket

- ❑ For fan
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 500
- ❑ Engaged in seat pan and clipped on
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

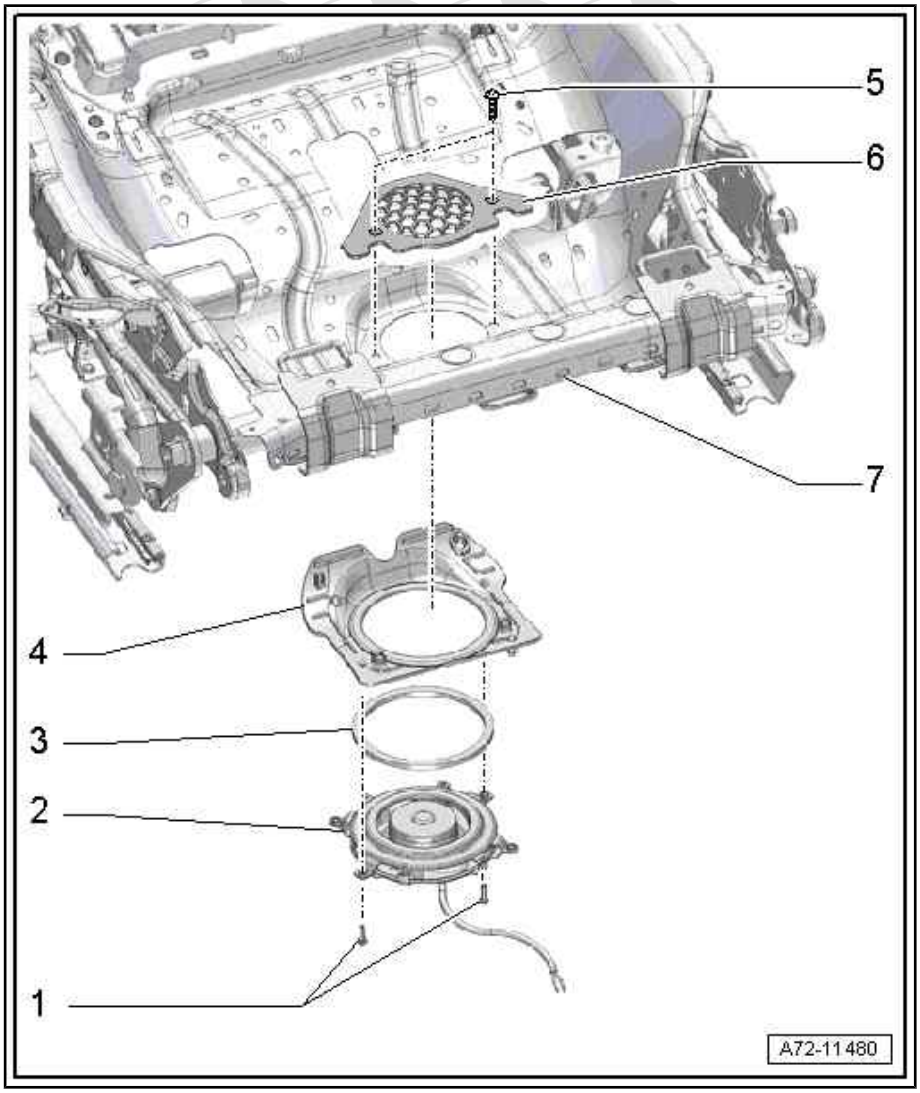
5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.4 Nm

6 - Grille

- ❑ For fan
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 500

7 - Seat pan



Seat cushion fan - multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards

1 - Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 499

2 - Retainer

- ❑ For fan
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 500
- ❑ Engaged in seat pan and clipped on
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - Seat pan

4 - Bolts

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.4 Nm

5 - Grille

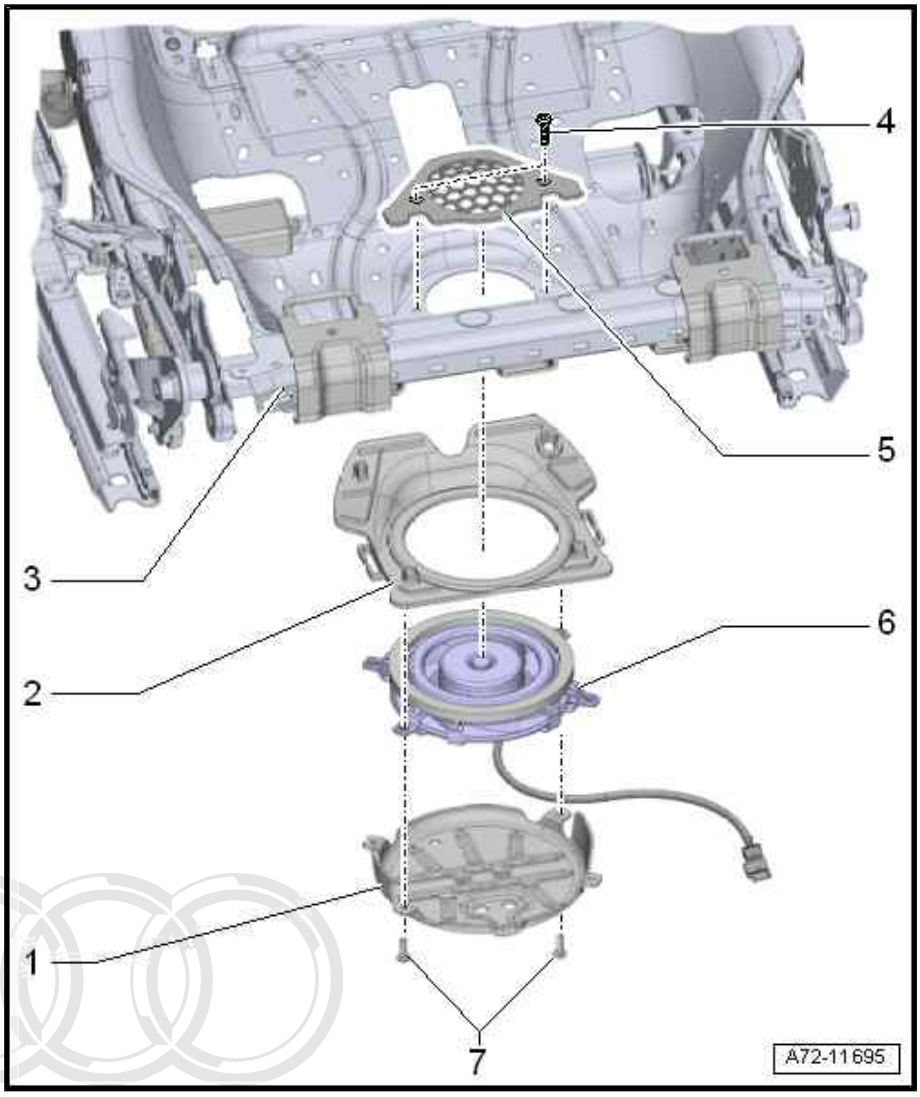
- ❑ For fan
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 500

6 - Driver seat cushion fan - V390-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat cushion fan - V391-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 499

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.4 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.13 Exploded view - seat pan, inertia safety latch

1 - Lower seat pan frame

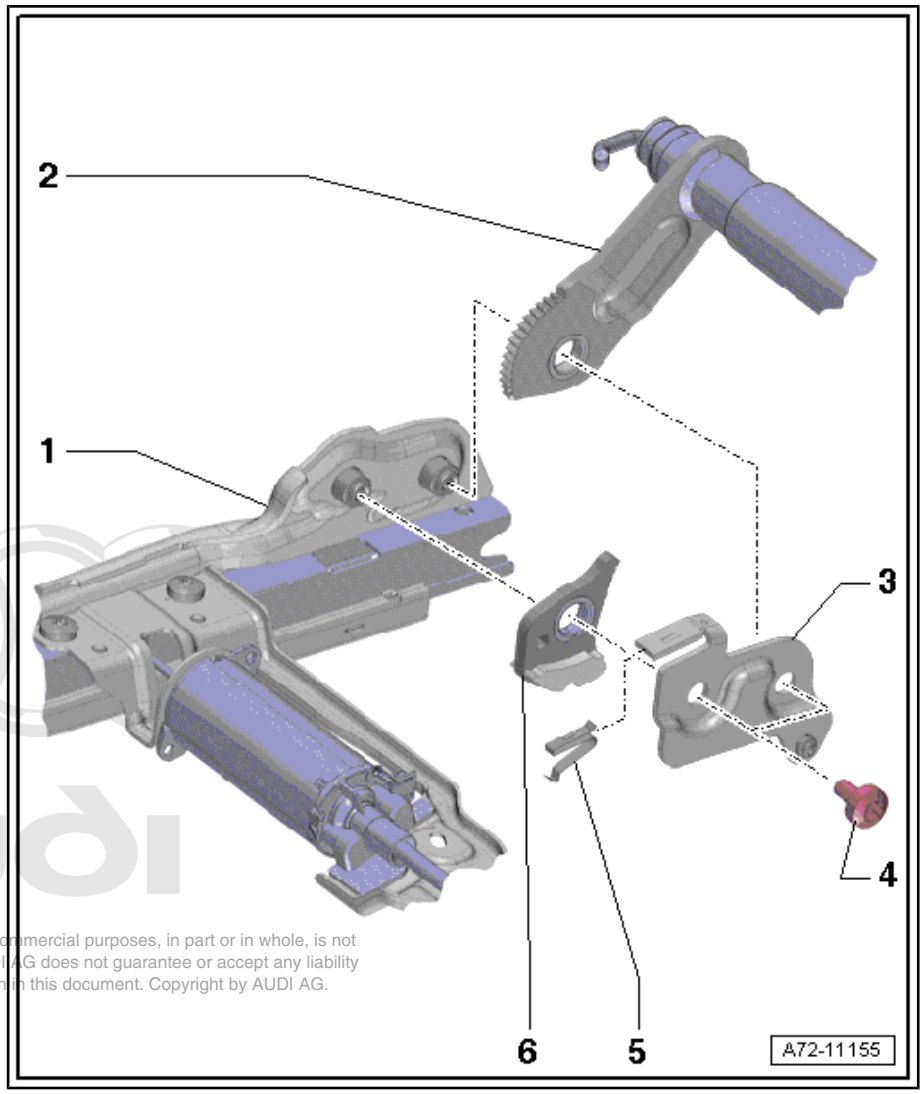
2 - Upper seat pan frame

3 - Retaining plate

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 28 Nm

5 - Spring

6 - Inertia safety latch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 501
- ❑ Checking ⇒ page 501



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6 Removing and installing front seat

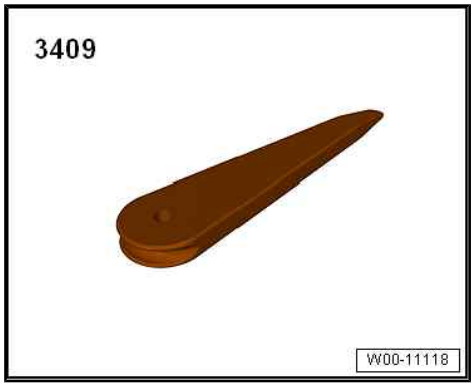
⇒ "2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat", page 415

⇒ "2.6.2 Removing front seat if seat longitudinal adjustment motor or control unit are defective", page 418

2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Protector - VAS 871 001- (not illustrated)

Removing

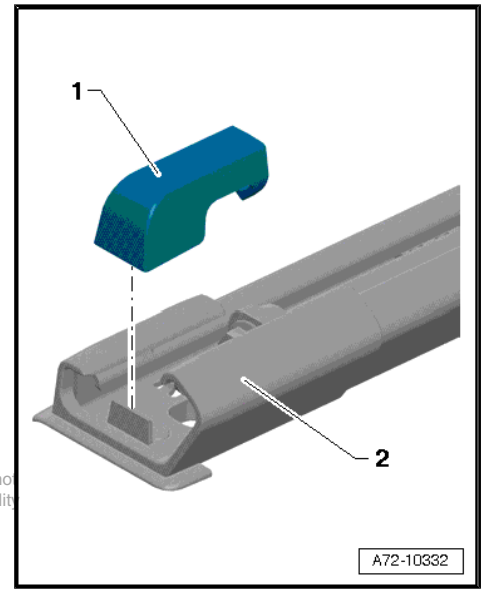
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Move head restraint to lowest possible position.

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

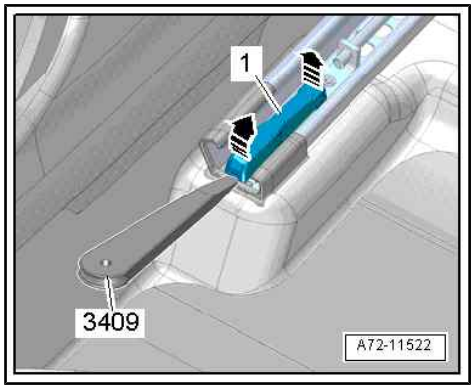
– Using removal wedge - 3409- , prise spindle cover (front) -1- off seat rail cover -2- and spindle for seat longitudinal adjustment.



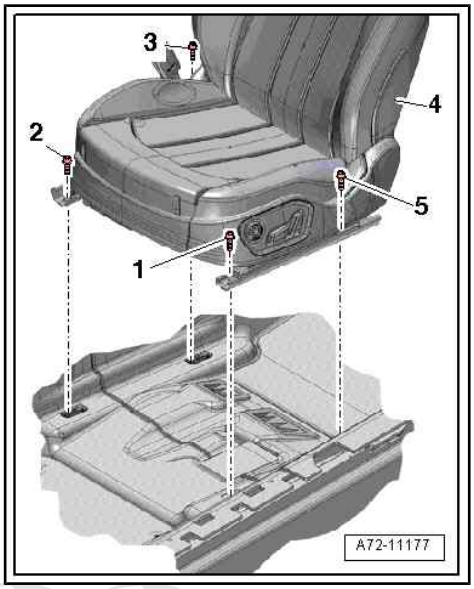
Reproduction or duplication of this document in any form, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , prise spindle cover (rear) -1- off seat rail cover and bolt for seat rail -arrows-.



– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 116 .
– Remove bolts -3- and -5- from rear of seat rail.
– Move front seat -4- as far back and upwards as possible.
– Remove bolts -1- and -2- from front of seat rail.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 423 .
– Unplug electrical connectors.

– Before lifting out front seat, attach protector - VAS 871001- as shown in illustration to protect sill panel trim.
– Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.



Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

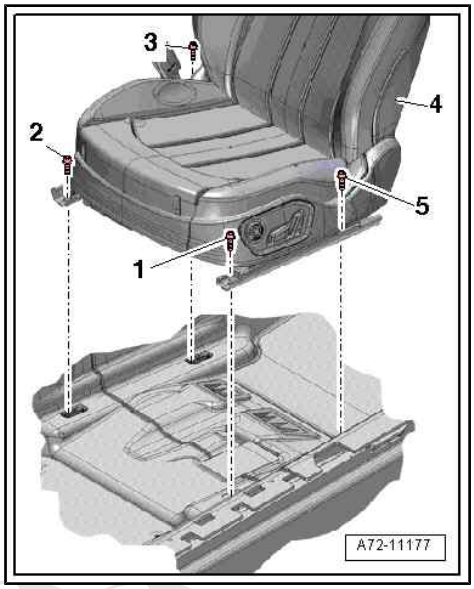
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Plug in electrical connectors, and install front seat before unplugging airbag adapter - VAS 6282- ⇒ page 423 .

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Align front seat -4- in vehicle and only hand-tighten bolts -1- and -2- at front of seat rail.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Detach airbag adapter - VAS 6282- and plug connector in at connector point in floor ⇒ page 423 .

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Fit and tighten bolts -3- and -5- at rear of seat rail.

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

– Tighten bolts at front.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. **⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - front seat", page 369**

2.6.2 Removing front seat if seat longitudinal adjustment motor or control unit are defective

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Protector - VAS 871 001- (not illustrated)

Checking seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- or control unit -J136- / -J521-

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

Note

To avoid unnecessary repair costs, check the electrical/electronic components and wiring before removing the front seat any further.

– Perform the following checks:

♦ Check fuse ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unauthorised distribution to third parties. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Check voltage at connector point and perform Fault Finding if necessary ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

♦ Check voltage at control unit ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

♦ Check voltage at seat longitudinal adjustment motor ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– If fuse is defective, it must be renewed ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– Repair or renew wire if there is no voltage at connector point ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– If seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective, lower seat pan frame must be renewed ⇒ page 478 .

– If control unit is defective, renew control unit -J136- / -J521- ⇒ page 495 .

Removing if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- is defective

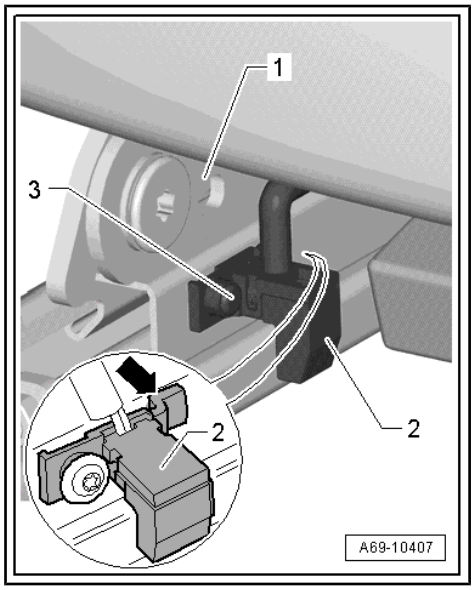
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 116 .

– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 423 .
– Unplug electrical connectors.
– Remove bolt -3-.
– Disengage seat position sensor -2- from lower seat pan frame -1- at hooks -arrow-.
– Unclip electrical wiring from lower seat pan frame and move to one side.
– Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.
– Remove bracket for modular wire routing at lower seat pan frame.
– Unplug electrical connector for belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 119 .



Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat:

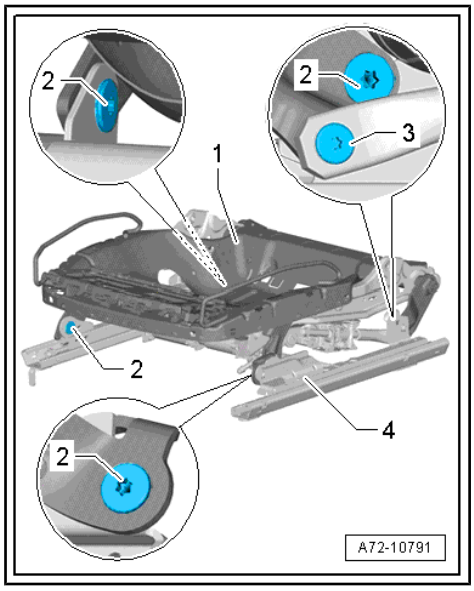
Caution

Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- ***A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.***

Risk of damage to thread of bolt -3-.

- ***Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.***



– Remove bolt -3-.
– Remove bolts -2-.
– With the help of a second mechanic, lift upper seat pan frame -1- off lower frame -4- and remove from vehicle.

Note

For greater clarity, the seat pan is shown without the padding, cover and backrest.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Multi-contour seat:

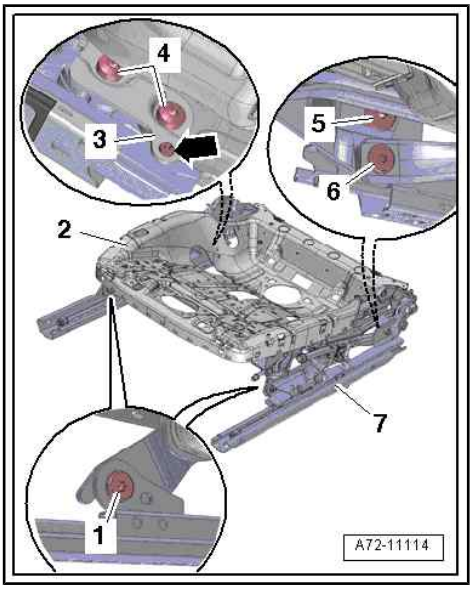
Caution

Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.*

Risk of damage to thread of bolt -6-.

- *Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.*



– Remove bolt -6-.
– Remove bolts -4-.
– Disengage retaining plate -3- at lower seat pan frame -arrow- and detach.
– Remove bolts -1, 5-.
– With the help of a second mechanic, disengage upper seat pan frame -2- from lower frame -7- and remove from vehicle.

Note

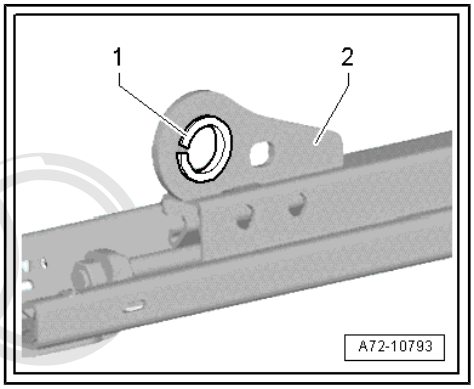
For greater clarity, the seat pan is shown without the padding, cover and backrest.

All seat versions (continued):

Caution

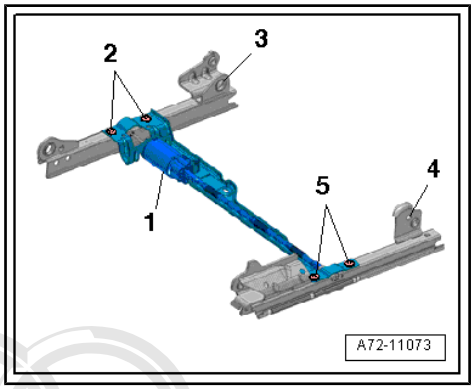
Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew accessible bolts for seat rails at console.



Note

For greater clarity the surrounding area is not shown.

– Unscrew bolts -2- and -5- and remove defective seat longitudinal adjustment motor -1- with bracket.

– Move seat rails -3- and -4- forwards/backwards until bolt for seat rail is accessible.

– Unscrew bolt and detach seat rail.

– Renew lower seat pan frame with seat longitudinal adjustment motor ⇒ page 478 .

Removing if control unit -J136- / -J521- is defective

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Audi
Reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

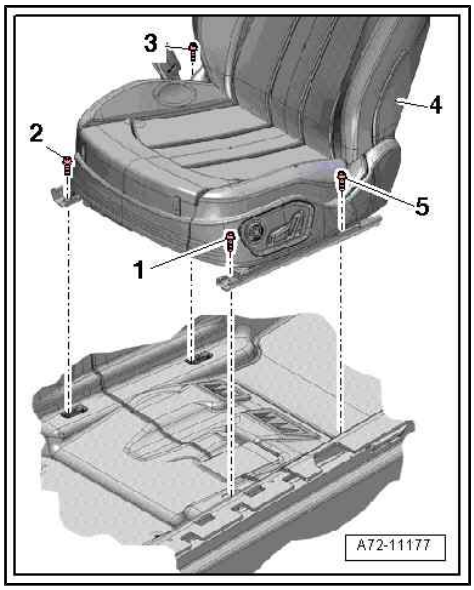
– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 116 .

– Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.

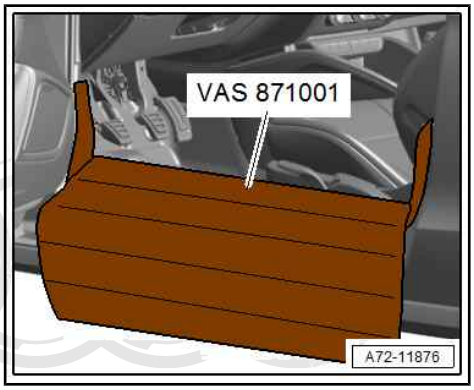
– Connect seat longitudinal adjustment motor to an external 12 V power supply and move front seat forwards or backwards as necessary until bolts are visible.

– Remove bolts -1, 2, 3 and 5-.

– Unplug electrical connectors and plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 423 .



– Before lifting out front seat, attach protector - VAS 871001- as shown in illustration to protect sill panel trim.
– Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Renew control unit -J136- / -J521- ⇒ page 495 .



2.7 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter

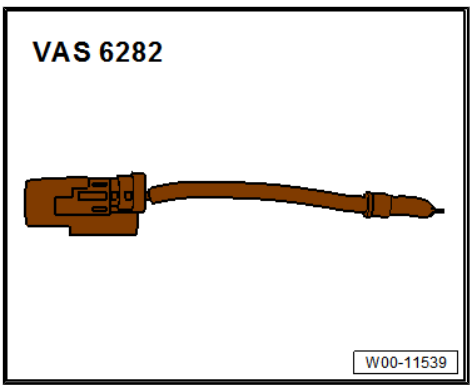
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



♦ Airbag adapter - VAS 6282-



Unplugging connectors

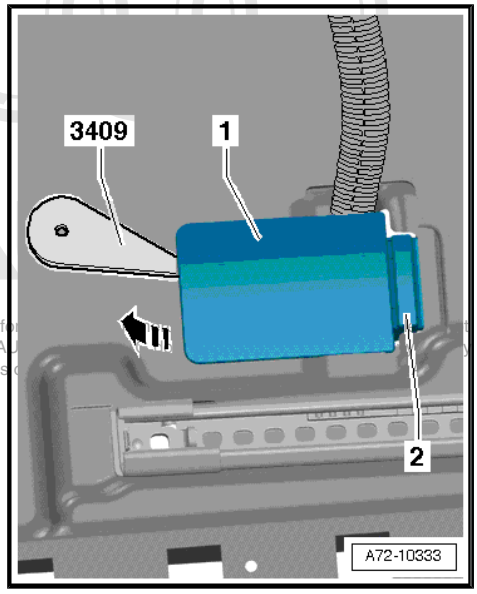
Note

The connector point is located in the vehicle floor under the front section of the seat.

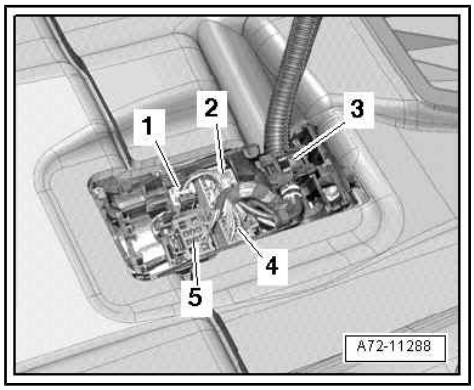
WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ***⇒ page 4 .***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Move head restraint to lowest possible position.
- Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Using removal wedge - 3409- unclip cover -1- at front and pull it off connector point -2- in direction of -arrow-.
- Release retaining tabs and lift cable retainer -3- off connector point.



Note

The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment. The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

- Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connector -1- for side airbag.

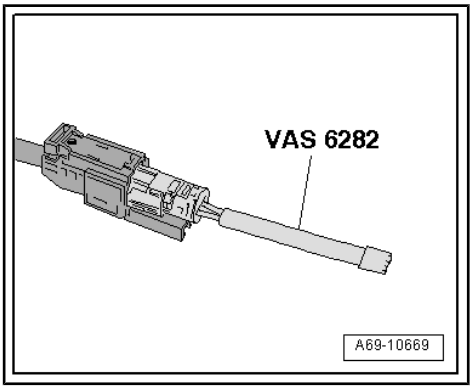
2 - Seat heating

4 - Power supply for seat adjustment

5 - Belt buckle

Connecting airbag adapter

– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connection for side airbag.



Caution

Leave airbag adapter - VAS 6282- connected to seat until seat has been re-installed.

Note

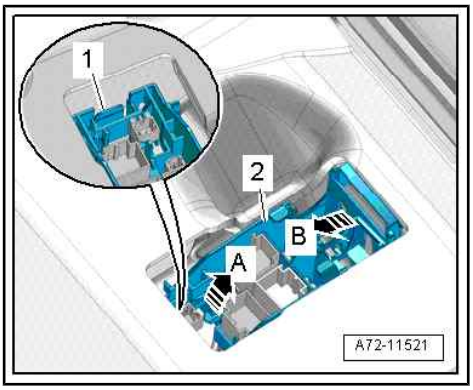
Make sure airbag adapter engages properly.

Removing connector point

– Release catch -1- using a screwdriver.

– Pull connector point -2- upwards -arrow A- and take it out towards front -arrow B- (lift floor covering slightly if necessary).

– Release catches and remove electrical connectors from connector point.



Plugging in connectors

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 4*** ***.***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

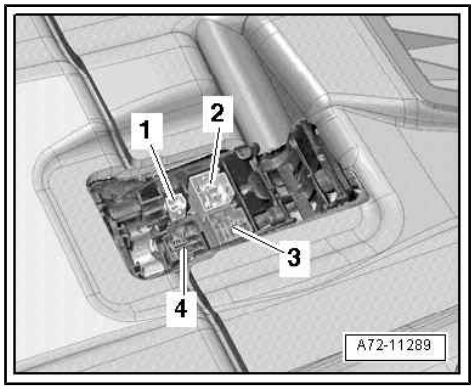
Plug in electrical connectors in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Pin assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations



1 - Side airbag

2 - Seat heating

3 - Power supply for seat adjustment

4 - Belt buckle

Note

The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment. The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- ***Move selector lever to position P***
- ***Activate parking brake***
- ***Switch off ignition***
- ***Open bonnet***
- ***Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system***
- ***Switch on ignition***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

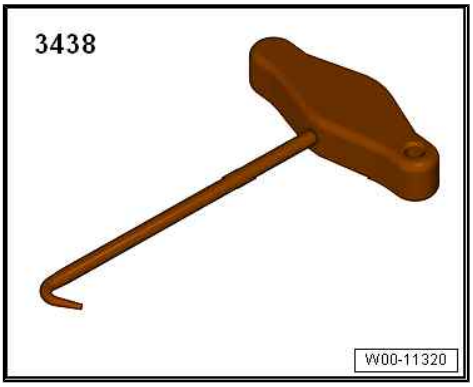
Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjuster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hook - 3438-



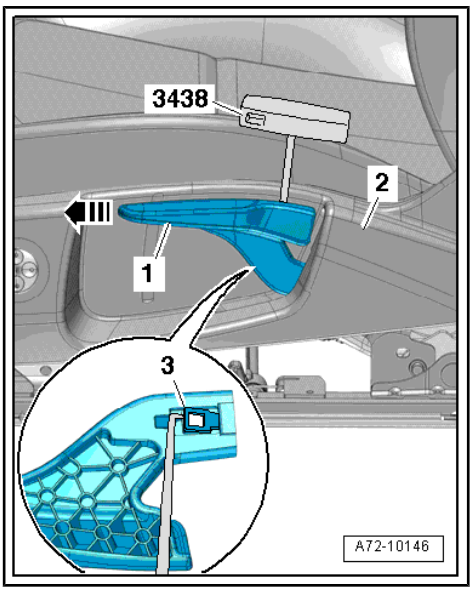
Removing

– Pull seat height adjuster -1- upwards as far as possible and hold in this position.

– Carefully pull seat height adjuster slightly off front seat.

– Insert hook - 3438- between seat height adjuster and trim -2-.

– Release tab -3- with hook - 3438- and at the same time pull seat height adjuster off lever in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster”, page 395

2.9 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

⇒ “2.9.1 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 427

⇒ “2.9.2 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor”, page 430

2.9.1 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

Caution

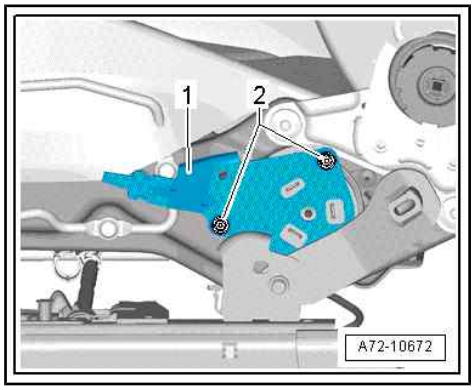
Move front seat to top position if possible. This reduces the spring force when removing and installing the seat height adjustment unit.

– Move front seat as far forwards as it will go and to highest position; then lower it by one stroke of the lever.

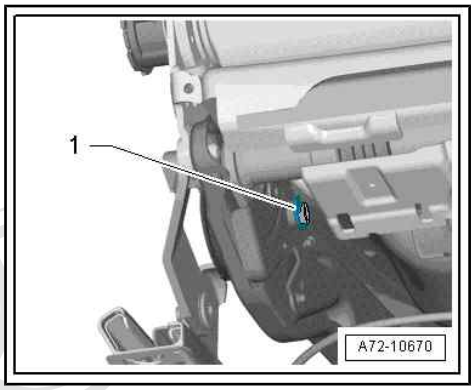
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

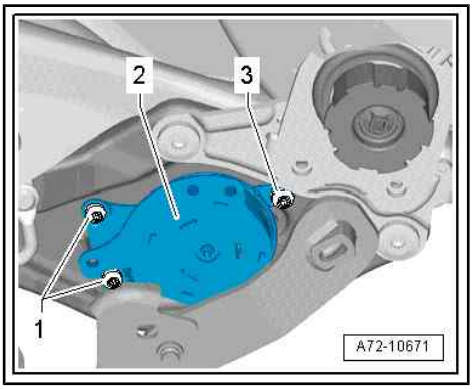
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 461 .
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Detach lever -1- from seat height adjustment unit.



– Remove securing clip -1- with a screwdriver.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

Bolts -1- and bolt -3- have different lengths.

– Remove bolts -1- and -3-.
– Unfasten seat height adjustment unit -2- from seat pan frame and detach.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster", page 395

2.9.2 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor

Removing

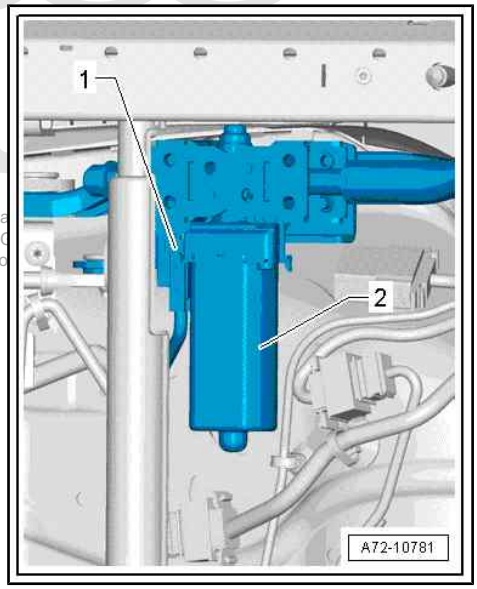
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Remove trim (sill side):
- Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat (with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 464
- Multi-contour seat ⇒ page 465

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at seat height adjustment motor -2-.
– Slacken off torsion bar ⇒ page 483 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for priva
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of info



Caution

Risk of (irreparable) damage to threaded hole in seat pan.

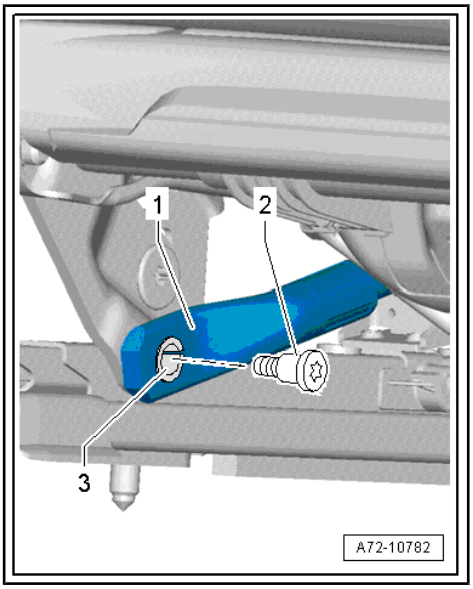
- *Bolted connection for adjustment spindle to seat pan must be free of strain when fitting/removing bolt.*

Risk of damage to bush -3- in pivot point (bolted connection between adjustment spindle and seat pan).

- *The bush cannot be renewed using workshop equipment.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bush is damaged.*

Risk of damage to thread of bolt -2-.

- *Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.*



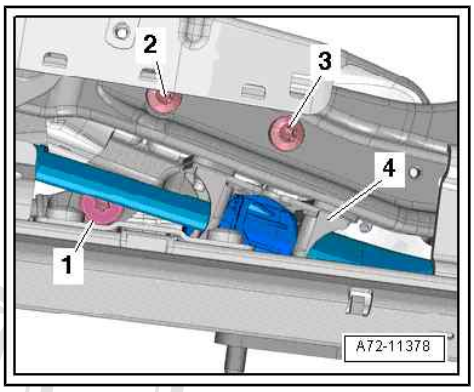
– Unscrew bolt -2- at adjustment spindle -1- of seat height adjustment motor.

– Unscrew bolt -1- for adjustment spindle for seat rake adjustment motor (pre-set at factory).

– Swivel upper seat pan frame upwards as far as possible and support with a suitable block of wood on seat repair stand - VAS 6136- .

– Remove bolts -2- and -3-.

– Detach bracket with seat height adjustment motor -4- from seat pan.



– Remove bolts -1-.

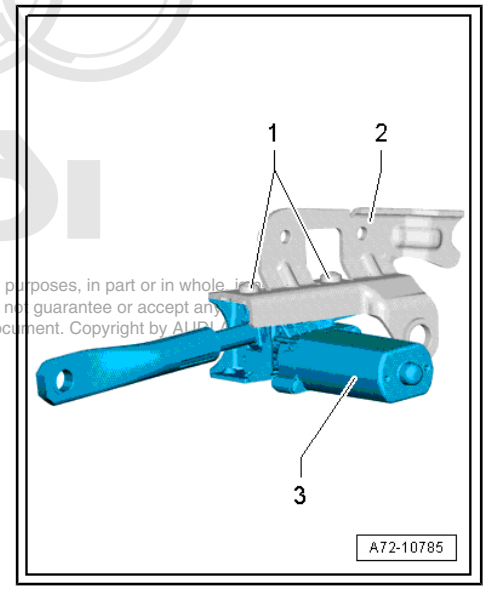
– Detach bracket -2- from seat height adjustment motor -3-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster", page 395

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.10 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit

⇒ “2.10.1 Removing and installing seat rake adjuster”, page 432

⇒ “2.10.2 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor”, page 434

⇒ “2.10.3 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment handle”, page 435

2.10.1 Removing and installing seat rake adjuster

Removing

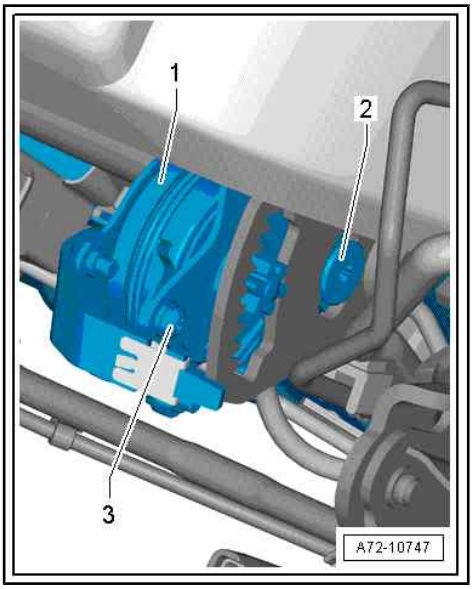
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 461 .
– Remove seat rake adjustment handle ⇒ page 435 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove pivot stud -2- and bolt -3-.
– Take out seat rake adjuster -1-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.5 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster", page 398

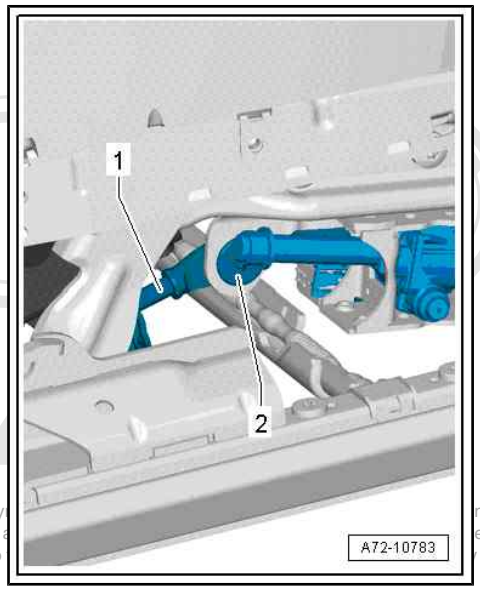
2.10.2 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Unscrew bolt -2- for adjustment spindle -1- of seat rake adjustment motor (pre-set at factory).

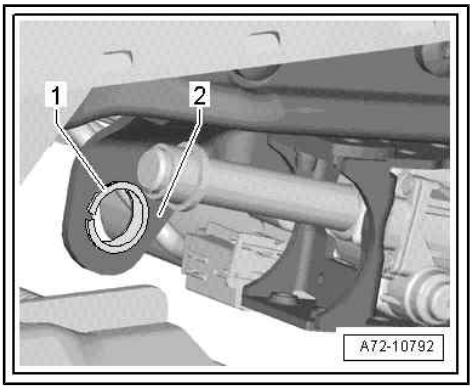


Protected by copy
permitted unless
with respect to
n whole, is not
ept any liability
AUDI AG.

Caution

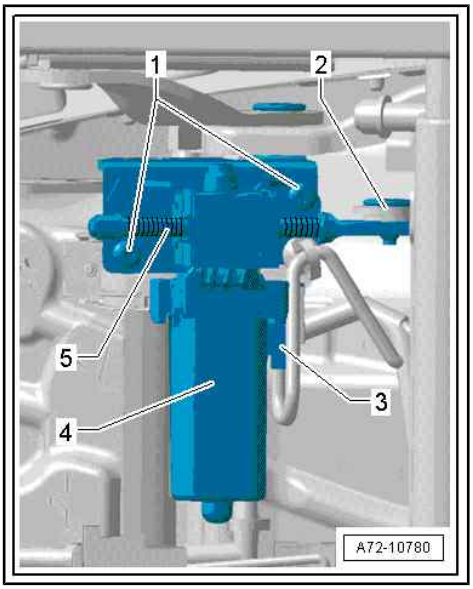
Risk of damage to bush -1- in pivot point -2- (bolted connection between adjustment spindle and seat pan).

- *The bush cannot be renewed using workshop equipment.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bush is damaged.*



– Unplug electrical connector -3- at seat rake adjustment motor.
– Unscrew bolts -1- and detach seat rake adjustment motor -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Installing

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.5 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster", page 398

2.10.3 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment handle

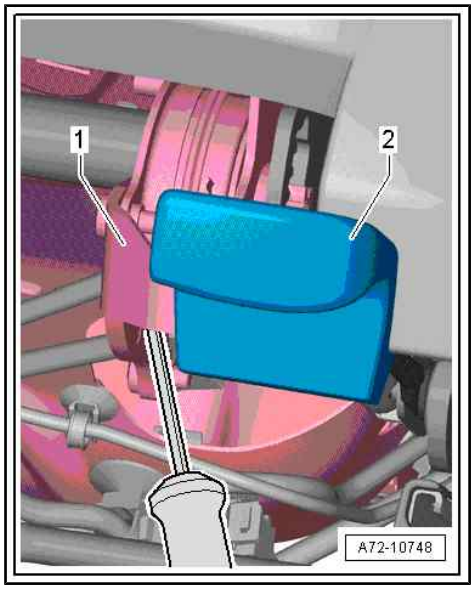
Note

Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.

Removing

– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 461 .

– Working from rear, lever handle -2- off seat rake adjuster -1-; to do so, press down locking spring of clip with a screwdriver.



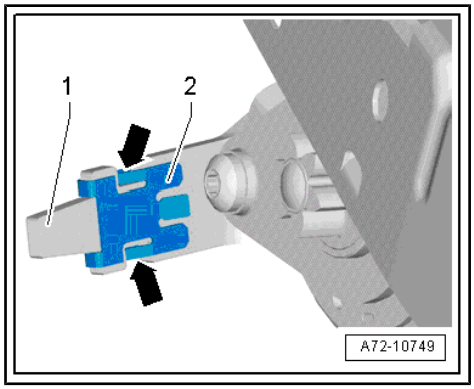
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Renew clip at seat rake adjustment lever; note installation position.

– Make sure seat rake adjustment handle engages properly with clip.

• Springs -arrows- (2x) of clip -2- must be located on inside of lever -1-.

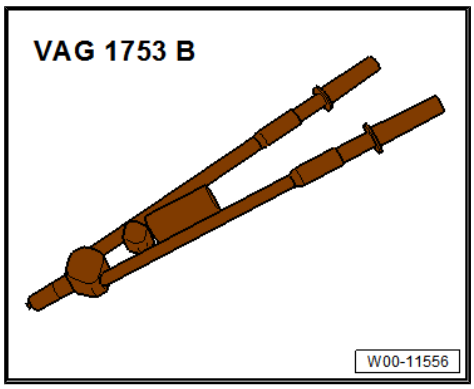


Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.5 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster", page 398

2.11 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



♦ Drill

♦ Safety goggles

♦ Locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 469 .

– Remove trim (sill side):

♦ Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat (with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 464

♦ Multi-contour seat ⇒ page 465

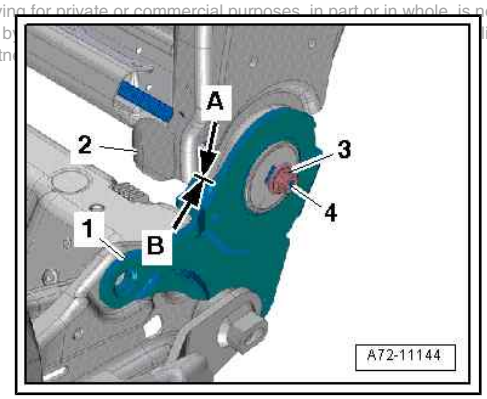
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 440 .

– Mark angular position of backrest fittings (left and right) on front seat as follows:

– Use a waterproof felt-tip pen to make mark -arrow B- on outer backrest frame -2- directly at front edge -arrow A- of fitting -1-.

– Unscrew nut -3- from shaft -4-.

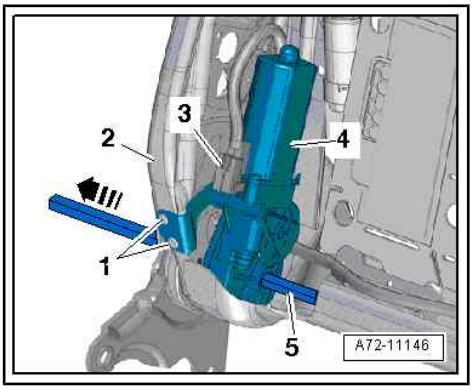
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by
with respect to the correctn



– Detach padding from outer backrest frame in area of backrest fitting ⇒ page 668 .

– Pull shaft -5- out of outer backrest frame -2- -arrow-.

– Unplug electrical connector -3- at backrest adjustment motor.



Note

As protection against metal swarf, place plastic film between seat cover and outer backrest frame.

WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

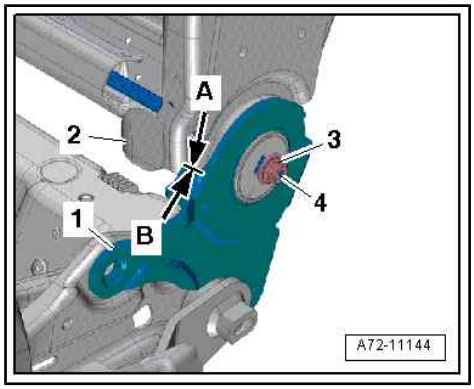
– Drill out rivets -1- and detach backrest adjustment motor -4- with bracket.

Installing

– Check position of outer backrest frame -2- and fitting -1- on left and right side of backrest.

• The outer backrest frame must be in the position marked before removal (on left and right side) -arrows A and B-.

– If the outer backrest frame is not in the position marked before removal (on left and right side), make adjustments as required.



– Fit backrest adjustment motor -3- with bracket.

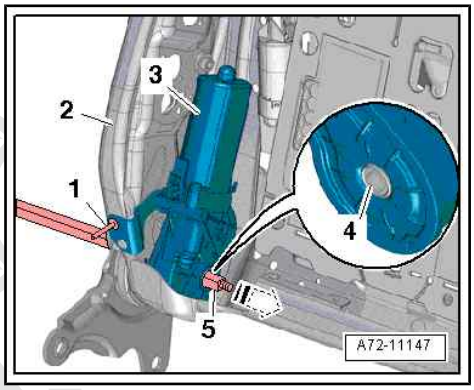
• It must still be possible to move the backrest adjustment motor.

– First slide shaft through fitting (tunnel side) as far as mounting -4- in backrest adjustment motor.

– Check that profiles of inserted shaft and mounting in backrest adjustment motor are in line.

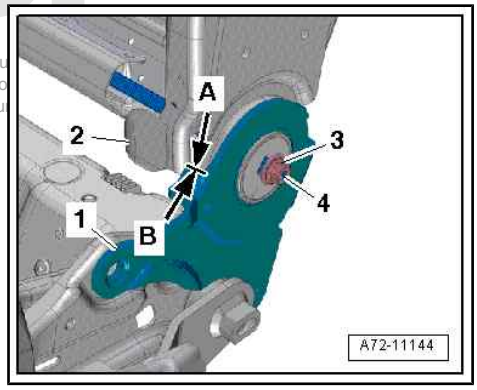
– If profiles of shaft and mounting in backrest adjustment motor are not in line, apply an external 12 V power supply to backrest adjustment motor -3- and rotate mounting until profiles of shaft and mounting are in line.

– Push shaft -5- through mounting in backrest adjustment motor as far as stop (sill side) -arrow-.



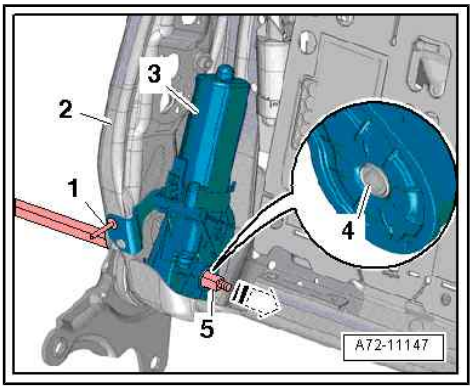
– Fit new nut -3- on shaft -4- and tighten.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu



– Rivet -1- bracket with motor to outer backrest frame -2-.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:



WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3.7 Exploded view - front backrest adjustment motor", page 383

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.12 Removing and installing front seat backrest

⇒ “2.12.1 Removing and installing front seat backrest - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat”, page 440

⇒ “2.12.2 Removing and installing front seat backrest - multi-contour seat”, page 441

⇒ “2.12.3 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat”, page 444

⇒ “2.12.4 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - multi-contour seat”, page 445

⇒ “2.12.5 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - country-specific version”, page 447

⇒ “2.12.6 Removing and installing spring mat”, page 448

⇒ “2.12.7 Removing and installing mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment”, page 450

⇒ “2.12.8 Removing and installing mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment - country-specific version”, page 452

⇒ “2.12.9 Removing and installing backrest fans (front)”, page 454

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.12.1 Removing and installing front seat backrest - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 469 .

– Remove trim (sill side):

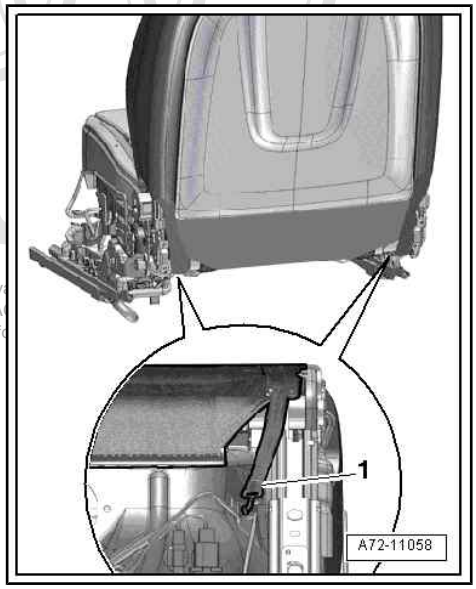
- Standard seat/sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ page 461
- Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat (with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 464

– Unplug electrical connectors of wiring harnesses to backrest and move disconnected wiring harnesses clear ⇒ page 459 .

Note

There is a continuous wiring harness between the connector point and the side airbag.

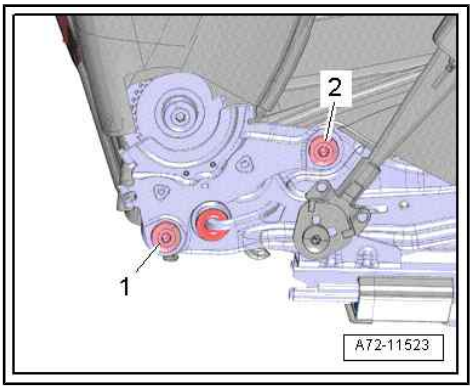
– Disengage rubber strap -1- at bottom left and right of seat pan.



Protected by copyright. Copying for priva
permitted unless authorised by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of info

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- on left and right of backrest fitting.

– Detach backrest from seat pan. To do so, carefully pull electrical wiring harness for side airbag and, depending on equipment version, all other wiring harnesses going to backrest out of seat pan.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest", page 377

2.12.2 Removing and installing front seat backrest - multi-contour seat

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Remove seat side trim:

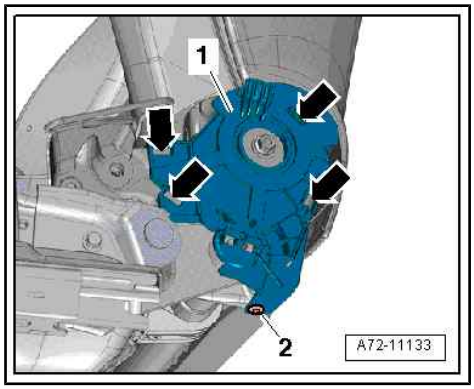
◆ ⇒ “2.15.5 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side)/seat trim (front) - multi-contour seat”, page 465 .

◆ ⇒ “2.15.7 Removing and installing seat side trim (tunnel side)”, page 469 .

– Remove spreader rivet -2- from trim (sill side).

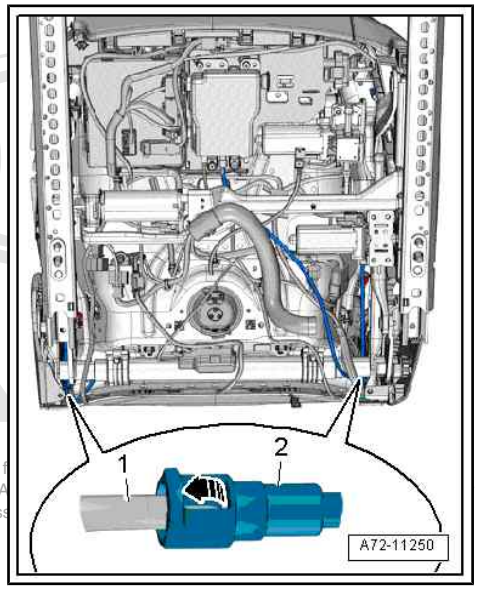
– Release catches -arrows- with a screwdriver and detach trim for backrest fitting -1-.

– Remove belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 120 .



Multi-contour seat up to 08.2012:

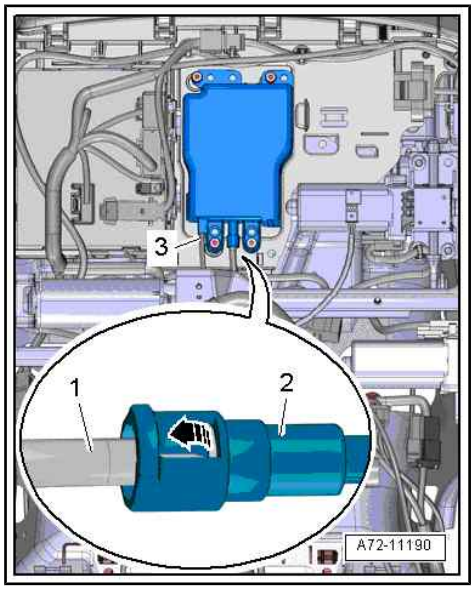
– Carefully release catch -arrow- and disconnect pneumatic lines -1- and -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying f
permitted unless authorised by A
with respect to the correctness

– Carefully release catch -arrow- and pull pneumatic line -1- off compressor -2-.

– Move clear pneumatic lines leading to backrest.



Note

Disregard -item 3-.

Multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards:

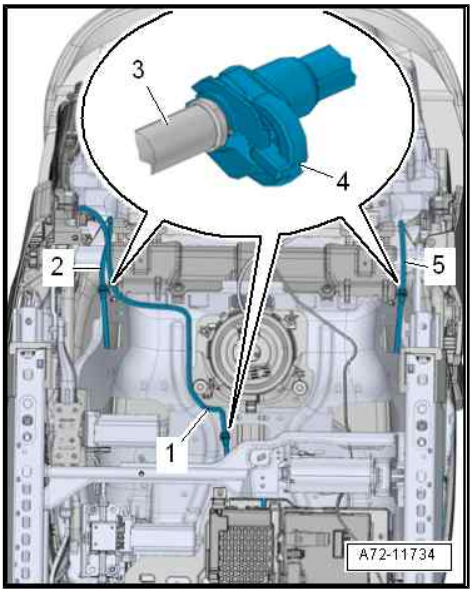
– Disconnect pneumatic lines -1, 2, 5-.

– To do so, press release mechanism -4- and disconnect pneumatic line -3- at the same time.

– Move clear pneumatic lines leading to backrest.

All seat versions (continued):

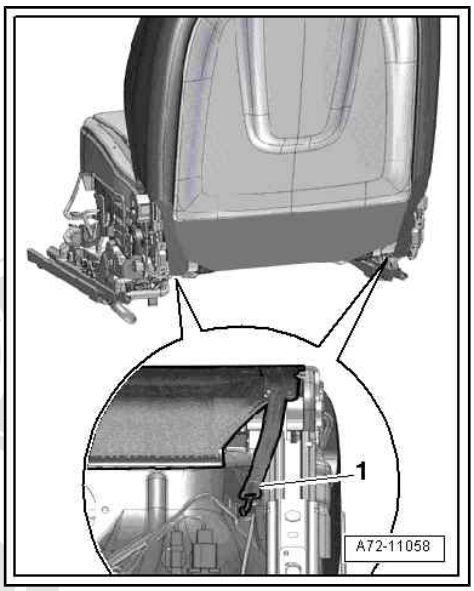
– Unplug electrical connectors of wiring harnesses going to backrest and move disconnected wiring harnesses clear ⇒ page 459 .



Note

There is a continuous wiring harness between the connector point and the side airbag.

– Disengage rubber strap -1- at bottom left and right of seat pan.

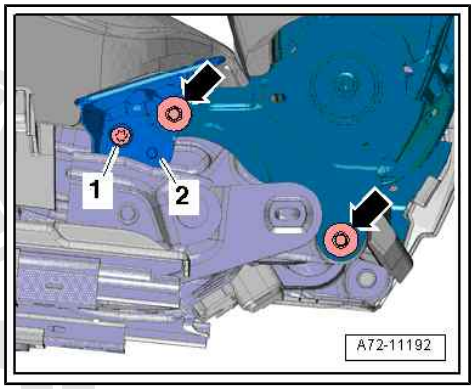


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolt -1- for belt guide -2-.

– Remove bolts -arrows- from backrest fitting (left and right).

– Detach backrest from seat pan. To do so, carefully pull wiring harness for side airbag and, depending on equipment version, all other wiring harnesses and pneumatic lines going to backrest out of seat pan.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Audi
Copyright by AUDI AG. Duplication, distribution and commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless AUDI AG has given its consent. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, multi-contour seat", page 379

2.12.3 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Protective gloves

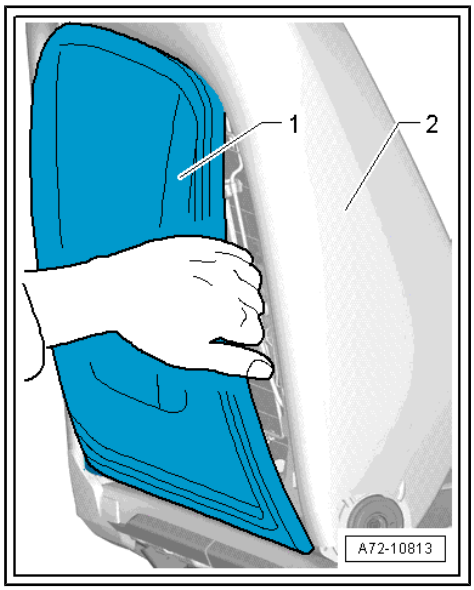
Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury from burr on backrest cover panel.

- *Wear protective gloves.*

– Reach behind right side of backrest cover panel -1- (as shown in illustration) and pull cover panel off outer backrest frame towards right side.



Note

If it is difficult to detach, release side retaining hooks with removal lever - 80 - 200- .

– Repeat procedure on opposite side.

– Pull off backrest cover panel further and bend it until retaining hooks (top) have disengaged from outer backrest frame.

– Lift backrest cover panel off backrest -2-.

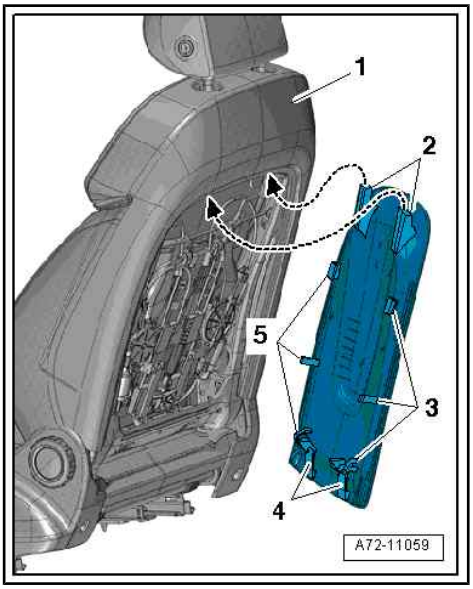
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert retaining hooks -2- of backrest cover panel in outer backrest frame (top) -1-.

– Swivel backrest cover panel down and engage side retaining tabs -3- and -5- and retaining hooks (bottom) -4-.

– Make sure that side retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame and that retaining hooks (bottom) are properly fitted over outer backrest frame.



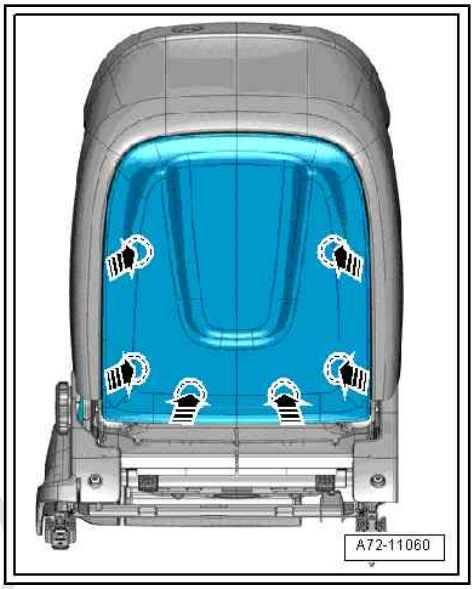
– Press backrest cover panel forcefully towards backrest in areas marked by -arrows- until retaining tabs and hooks engage audibly.

– Check whether backrest cover panel is properly engaged.

• It should not be possible to pull backrest cover panel (bottom) off.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

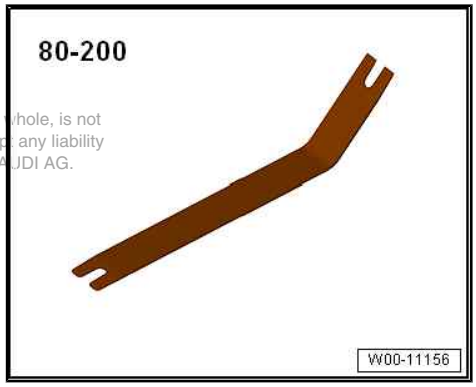
⇒ "2.3.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat", page 377



2.12.4 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - multi-contour seat

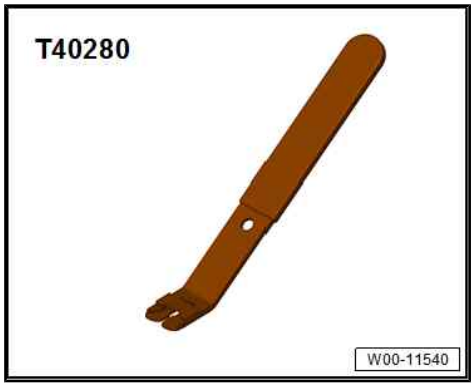
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

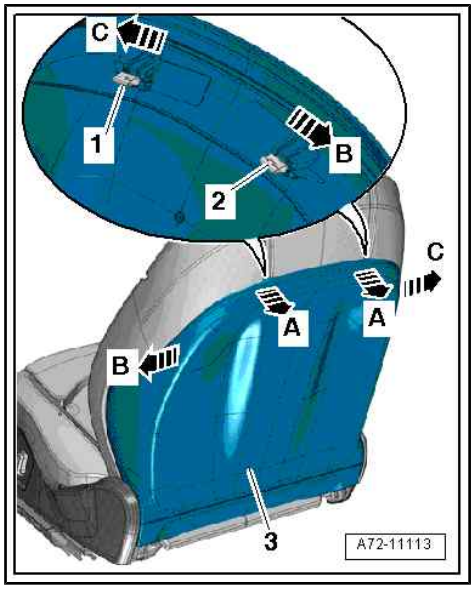
Note

The clips (with catches) -1- and -2- at the backrest frame can only be unfastened to the first stop.

– Release clips -1- and -2- using removal lever - 80 - 200- as far as first stop -arrows A-.

– To disengage clip (with catch) -1-, move backrest cover panel -3- in direction of -arrow C-; this causes clips to slide out of guide at backrest cover panel.

– Then move backrest cover panel in direction of -arrow B- to disengage clip (with catch) -2-; this causes clips to slide out of guide at backrest cover panel.

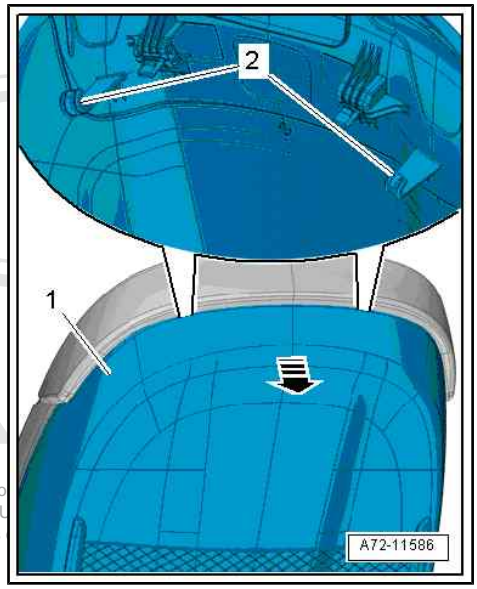


– Pull top section of backrest cover panel -1- as far as possible off backrest towards rear -arrow-.

– Press down hook -2- of backrest cover panel using a flat screwdriver and disengage it from outer backrest frame.

Note

Use a torch and mirror if necessary.



Protected by copyright. Copying fo
permitted unless authorised by AU
with respect to the correctness

– Disengage rubber strap -1- at bottom left and right of seat pan.

– Lift off backrest cover panel.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert retaining hooks of backrest cover panel in outer backrest frame (bottom).

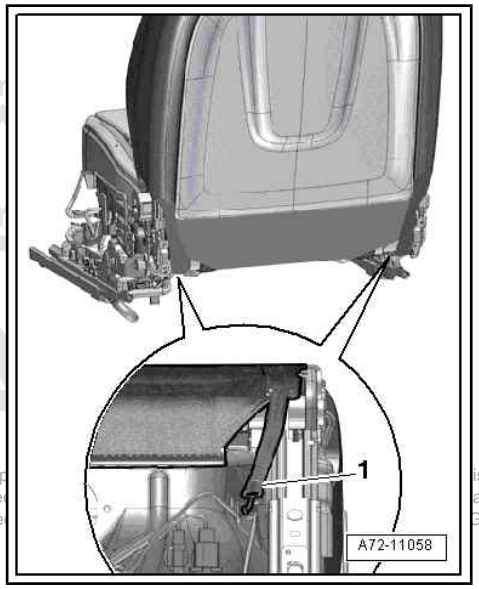
– Insert clips with catches in guides on backrest cover panel.

– Press backrest cover panel firmly towards backrest until clips engage audibly.

– Check whether backrest cover panel is properly engaged.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.3.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, multi-contour seat", page 379

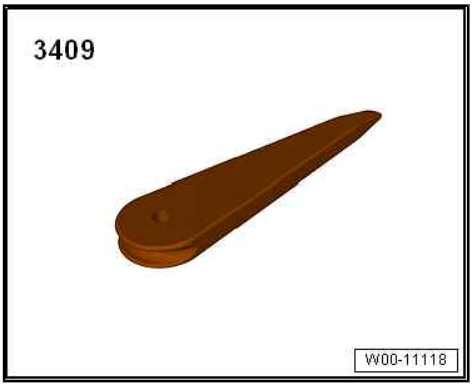


Protected by copyright. Cop
permitted unless authorised
with respect to the corre
is not
ability
G.

2.12.5 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - country-specific version

Special tools and workshop equipment required

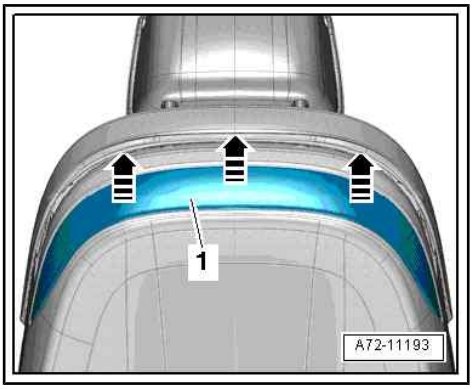
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Equipment version with Rear Seat Entertainment: Remove mounting for Rear Seat Entertainment ⇒ page 452 .

– Unclip trim -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and detach.

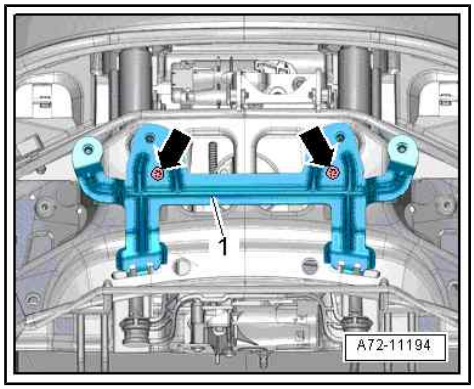


– Disengage rubber strap -1- at bottom left and right of seat pan.
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Lift off backrest cover panel.



Bracket for backrest cover panel

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach bracket for backrest cover panel -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press backrest cover panel firmly towards backrest until retaining clips engage audibly.
– Check whether backrest cover panel is properly engaged.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest, country-specific version", page 380

2.12.6 Removing and installing spring mat

Removing

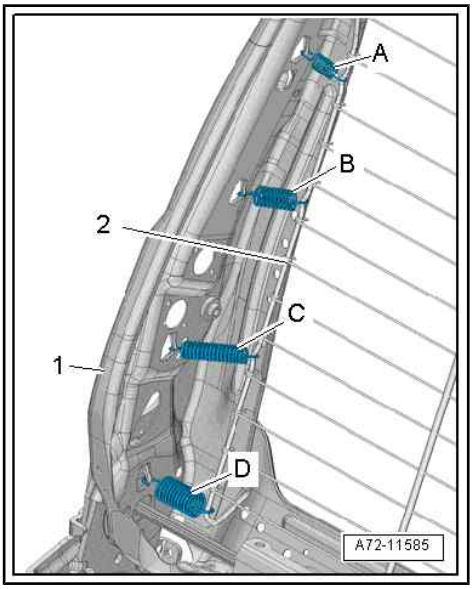
WARNING

...cted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 668 .

– Disengage extension springs -A ... D- at outer backrest frame -1-.



Note

You can also leave the extension springs -A ... D- attached to the outer backrest frame -1- and disengage the spring mat -2- directly at the extension springs.

– Swivel spring mat -2- forwards.

– Pull spring mat out of openings in outer backrest frame.

Installing

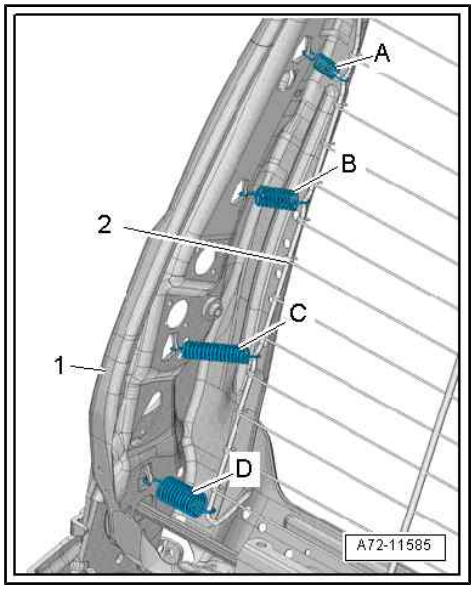
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Attach extension springs -A ... D- as shown in illustration.



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- ***Move selector lever to position P***
- ***Activate parking brake***
- ***Switch off ignition***
- ***Open bonnet***
- ***Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system***
- ***Switch on ignition***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

tected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not rmitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

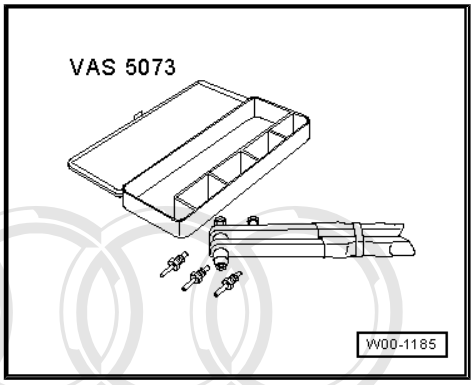
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.3.5 Exploded view - front seat backrest, spring mat", page 381

2.12.7 Removing and installing mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pop rivet nut pliers - VAS 5073-



- Drill
- Safety goggles
- Drill bit ∅ 13 mm

Removing

Note

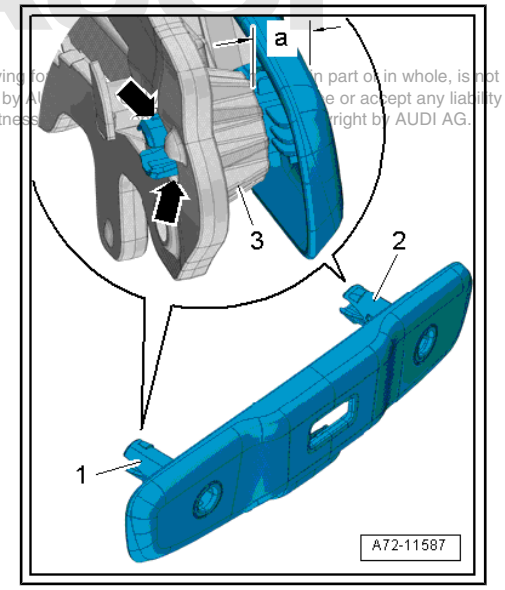
The mounting for Rear Seat Entertainment cannot be removed without damaging it irreparably.

WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- ***Put on safety goggles.***

– Drill out guides -1- and -2- for mounting for Rear Seat Entertainment with a drill (∅ 13 mm bit).

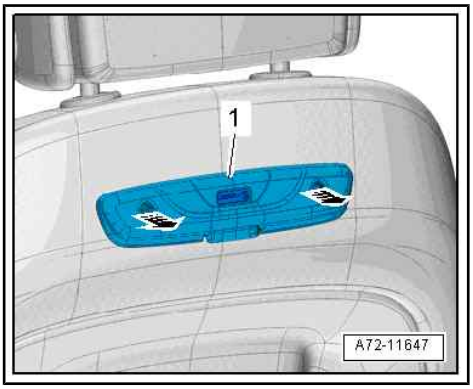


Caution

Danger of damaging backrest cover and padding irreparably.

- ***The guides are only held in position in the retainer on the outer backrest frame by the retaining tabs -arrows-.***
- ***Therefore only drill out up to retainer -3- (dimension -a-) to remove.***

– Pull mounting -1- for Rear Seat Entertainment off retainer on outer backrest frame -arrows-.

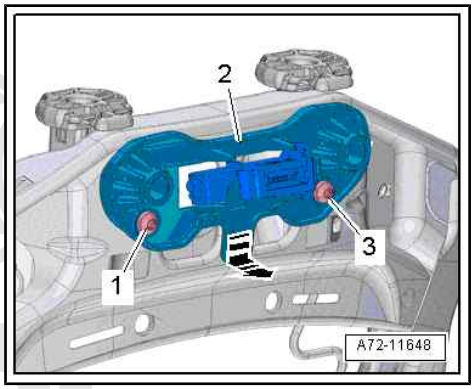


Note

Remove drilling chips from backrest.

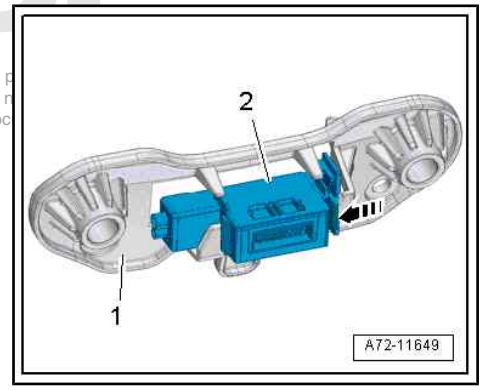
Protected by copyright. Copying for ... part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AU... or accept any liability with respect to the correctness ... right by AUDI AG.

– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 668 .
– Remove bolts -1- and -3-.
– Disengage retainer -2- for Rear Seat Entertainment from outer backrest frame -arrow-.



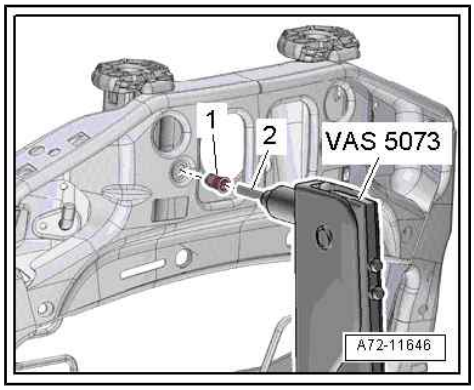
– Release catch -arrow- and disengage contact connector -2- from retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment.
– Detach retainer -1- for Rear Seat Entertainment.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n
with respect to the correctness of information in this doc



Riveting pop rivet nut

– Screw M6 threaded arbor -item 2- into pop rivet nut pliers - VAS 5073- and screw in pop rivet nut -1- as far as stop.
– Insert pop rivet nut with pop rivet nut pliers as far as possible into hole in outer backrest frame and squeeze pop rivet nut pliers.
– Unscrew threaded arbor again using pop rivet nut pliers.



Installing

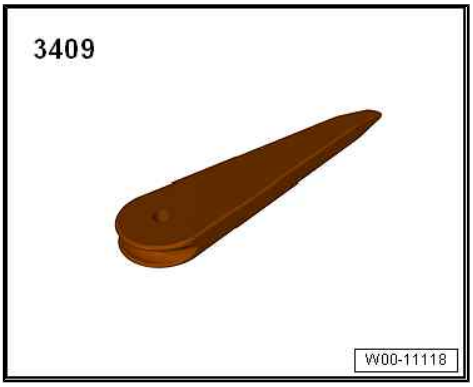
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3.8 Exploded view - front seat backrest, mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment", page 383

2.12.8 Removing and installing mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment - country-specific version

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

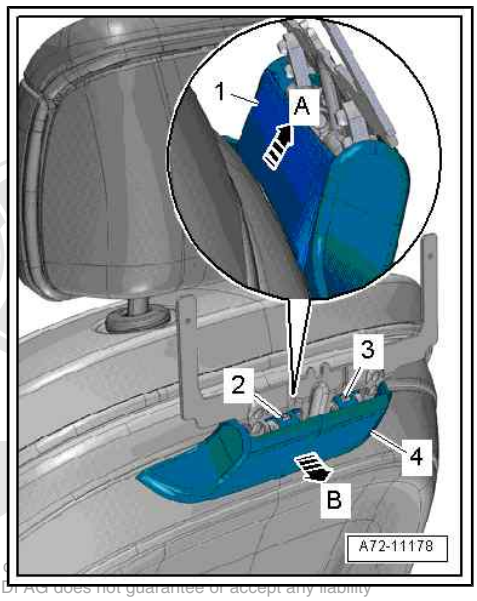


Removing

– Remove multimedia system display unit - Y22- / -Y23- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .

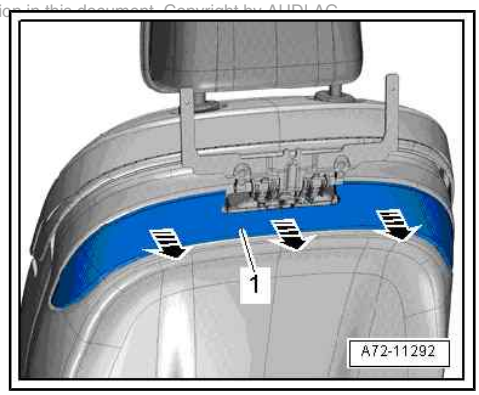
– Unclip cover (front) -1- for mounting upwards using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow A- and detach.

– Release fasteners -2 and 3-, unclip cover (rear) -4- for mounting using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow B- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

– Unclip trim -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and detach.



– Remove bolts -1, 2-.

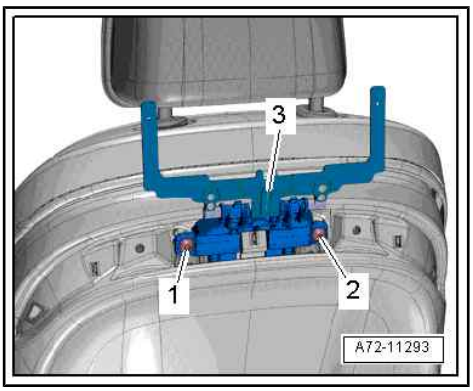
– Disengage mounting -3- at retainer and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

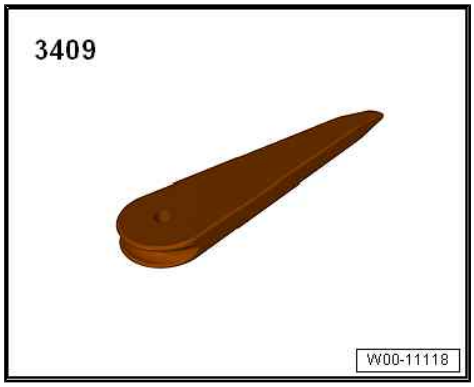
⇒ "2.3.8 Exploded view - front seat backrest, mounting/retainer for Rear Seat Entertainment", page 383



2.12.9 Removing and installing backrest fans (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

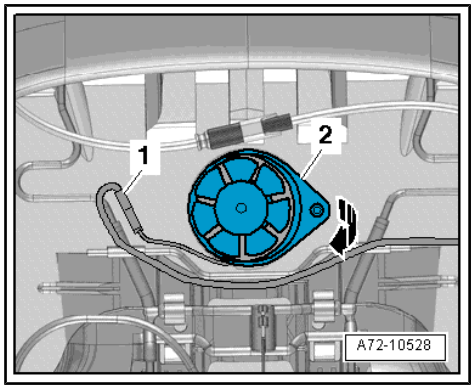
Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat:

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 444 .

Fan (top):

– Move clear and unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Carefully prise backrest fan -2- out of backrest padding -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .

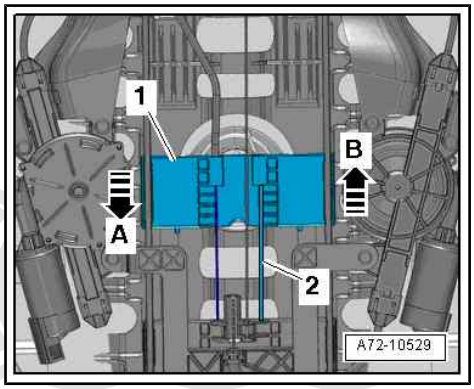


Fan (bottom):

– Move slider -1- downwards as far as it will go -arrow A- to set lumbar support to maximum curvature.

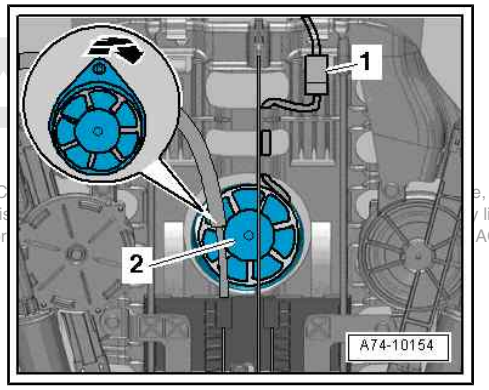
Note

Disregard -item 2-.



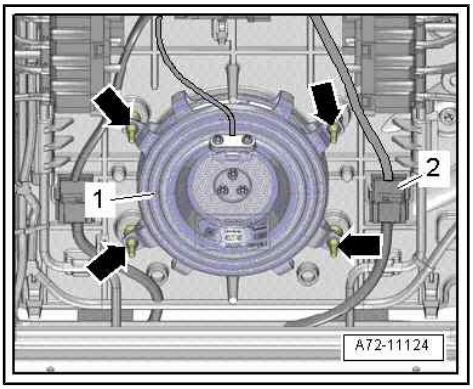
– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move clear.

– Carefully prise backrest fan -2- out of backrest padding -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .



Protected by copyright. C
permitted unless authoris
with respect to the cor
e, is not
liability
AG.

Multi-contour seat:



– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .
– Unplug electrical connector -2- and move clear.
– Spray silicone-free lubricant onto rubber studs -arrows- of flexible mounting for fan -1-.
– Disengage fan from rubber studs and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, seat ventilation fans", page 368

2.13 Removing and installing head restraint

Note

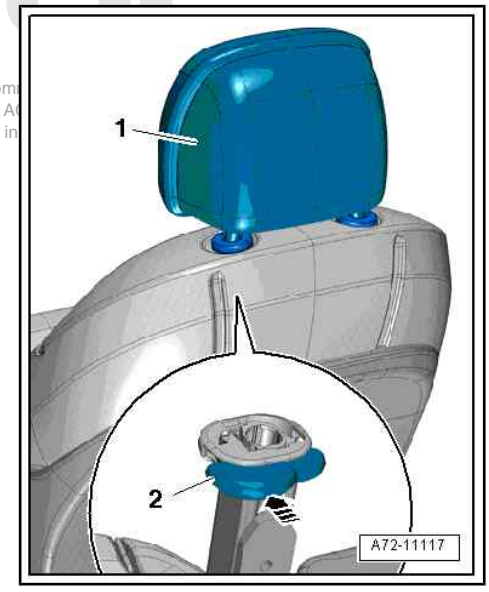
The head restraints can be removed with the front seats in position.

Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and down as possible and tilt backrest to approx. 45°.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information in

Basic equipment version:

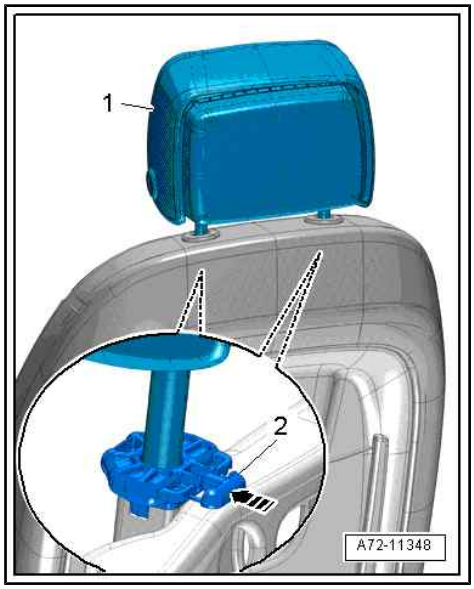


Note

The pressure point for release (release button) is located on the outer left of the driver seat and on the inner left of the front passenger seat (as seen in direction of travel).

– Locate pressure point of release button -2- underneath seat cover.
• The release button is located approx. 35 mm beneath the top edge of the backrest.
– Press release button -arrow- and at the same time pull out head restraint -1-.

Convenience equipment version:



Note

The pressure point for release (release button) is located on the head restraint guide (left and right).

– Locate pressure point of release button -2- underneath seat cover.

• The release button is located approx. 35 mm beneath the top edge of the backrest.

– Working alternately on both sides, pull head restraint -1- out of guides.

– To do so, press release button -arrow- and at the same time pull out head restraint.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.4 Exploded view - head restraint", page 386

2.14 Removing and installing head restraint guide

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

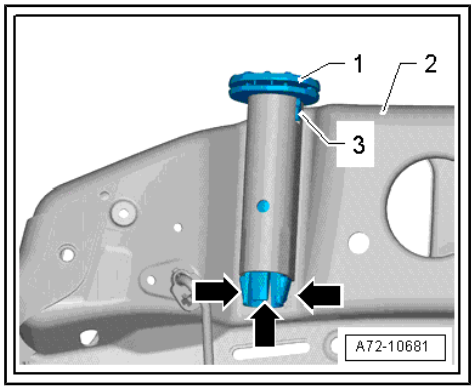
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

ected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 668 .

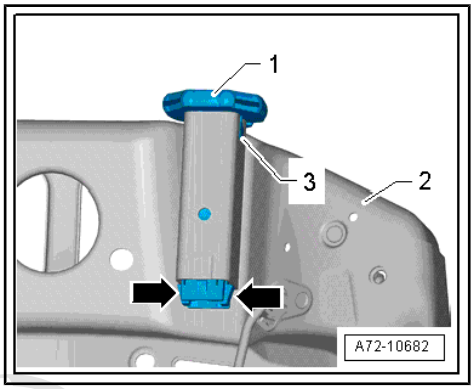
Head restraint guide (right-side):



– Press retaining tabs inwards -arrows- and at the same time pull head restraint guide -1- out of outer backrest frame -2-.

Head restraint guide (left-side):

– Press retaining tabs inwards -arrows- and at the same time pull head restraint guide -1- out of outer backrest frame -2-.



Installing

Note

- *The head restraint guide can only be installed in one position.*
- *The guide lug -3- of the head restraint guide must engage in the recess of the mounting for the head restraint guide.*
- *Make sure retaining tab(s) engage(s) properly with outer backrest frame.*

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 4*** .
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat*** ***⇒ page 415*** .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.4 Exploded view - head restraint", page 386

2.15 Dismantling and assembling seat pan

⇒ “2.15.1 Routing wiring at front seat”, page 459

⇒ “2.15.2 Removing and installing cover for seat rail”, page 460

⇒ “2.15.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat (with manual adjustment)”, page 461

⇒ “2.15.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat (with electric adjustment)”, page 464

⇒ “2.15.5 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side)/seat trim (front) - multi-contour seat”, page 465

⇒ “2.15.6 Removing and installing bracket for seat trim (front)/ compressor/control unit - multi-contour seat”, page 467

⇒ “2.15.7 Removing and installing seat side trim (tunnel side)”, page 469

⇒ “2.15.8 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle”, page 470

⇒ “2.15.9 Removing and installing Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment”, page 471

⇒ “2.15.10 Removing and installing lever and spring for engaging Bowden cable/seat longitudinal adjustment”, page 473

⇒ “2.15.11 Servicing seat longitudinal adjuster”, page 474

⇒ “2.15.12 Removing and installing lower seat pan frame/seat longitudinal adjustment motor”, page 478

⇒ “2.15.13 Renewing seat pan frame - front seat (with manual adjustment)”, page 480

⇒ “2.15.14 Removing and installing upper seat pan frame”, page 481

⇒ “2.15.15 Removing and installing torsion bar”, page 483

⇒ “2.15.16 Removing and installing storage compartment”, page 487

⇒ “2.15.17 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster - sports seat/super sports seat”, page 488

⇒ “2.15.18 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster - multi-contour seat”, page 492

⇒ “2.15.19 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit”, page 493

⇒ “2.15.20 Removing and installing control unit for seat ventilation (seat heating integrated)”, page 494

⇒ “2.15.21 Removing and installing seat/steering column adjustment control unit with memory function”, page 495

⇒ “2.15.22 Removing and installing retainer for control unit for front seat”, page 497

⇒ “2.15.23 Removing and installing seat cushion fan - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat”, page 498

⇒ “2.15.24 Removing and installing seat cushion fan - multi-contour seat”, page 499

⇒ “2.15.25 Removing and installing retainer for seat cushion fan - multi-contour seat”, page 500

⇒ “2.15.26 Removing and installing inertia safety latch”, page 501

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

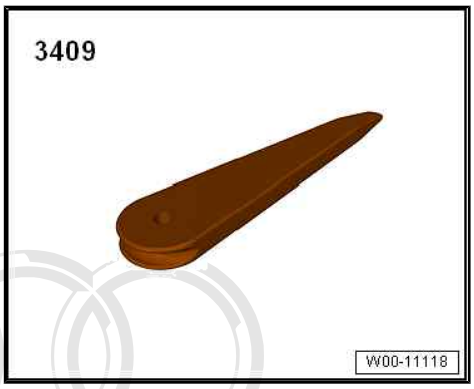
2.15.1 Routing wiring at front seat

Note

With the so-called modular wire routing, the electrical wires between the seat pan and the connector point are inserted in a two-shell corrugated tube.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



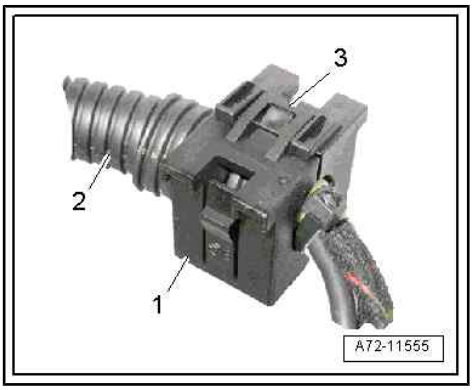
Opening corrugated tube and removing individual wire

WARNING

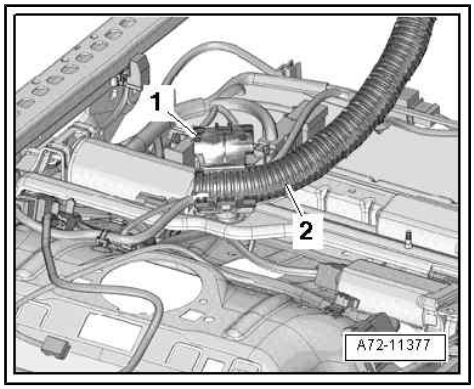
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Audi
...vate or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not ...AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Release retaining hook -3- and open cable retainer (front) -1- with removal wedge - 3409- .
– Detach cable retainer from corrugated tube -2-.



– Using a screwdriver, open cable retainer (rear) -1- for modular wire routing at lower seat pan frame and detach corrugated tube -2-.



Note

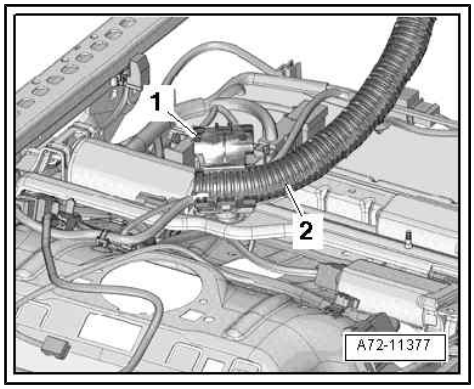
Corrugated tube must be opened up to renew a defective wire or the side airbag ⇒ page 156 .

Fitting individual wires and closing corrugated tube

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Take care not to twist any wires when bunching the individual wires and inserting them in the corrugated tube.

– Insert corrugated tube -2- in cable retainer -1- so that it is flush with end of cable retainer.



Note

- *Re-attach all cable ties, cable retainers and retaining clips at the same locations when installing.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .***

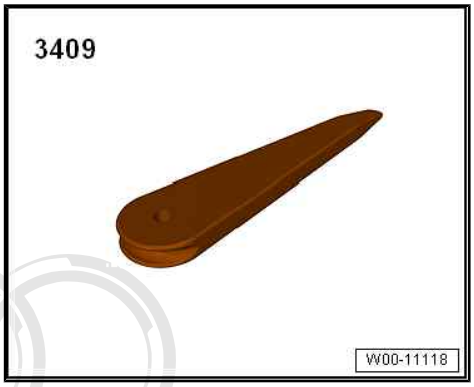
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.1 Exploded view - seat pan, modular wire routing", page 389

2.15.2 Removing and installing cover for seat rail

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Note

♦ *Proceed very carefully when removing and installing as the cover can be damaged quite easily.*

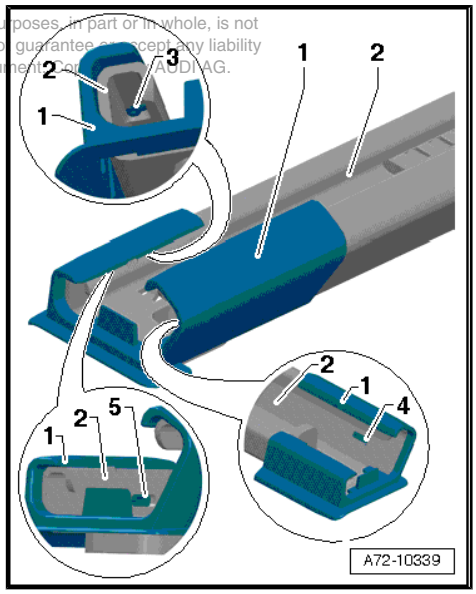
♦ *For greater clarity the surrounding area is not shown.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Using removal wedge - 3409-, unclip spindle cover from seat rail cover and bolt for seat rail.

– Pull cover -1- off seat rail -2-; to do so, carefully release retaining tabs -3-, -4- and -5- at seat rail using a screwdriver.



Installing

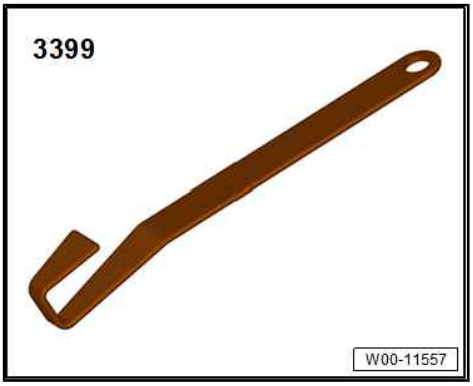
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - front seat", page 369

2.15.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat (with manual adjustment)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Assembly tool - 3399-



Removing

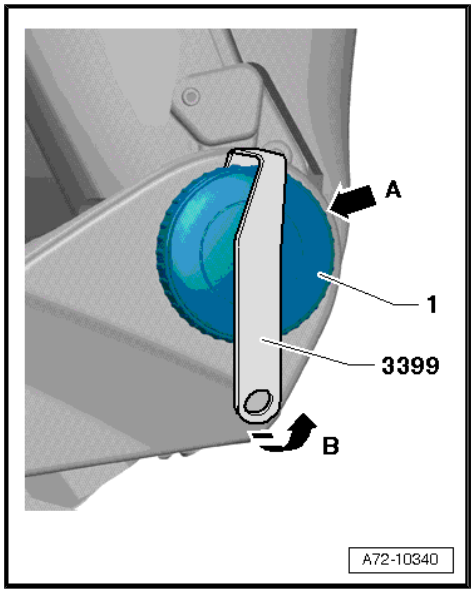
– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Turn backrest adjuster knob -1- until detent is visible from rear -arrow A-. Use torch if necessary.

– Hook assembly tool - 3399- into detent and prise off adjuster knob -arrow B-.

– Turn backrest adjuster knob a further 120 ° and repeat procedure.

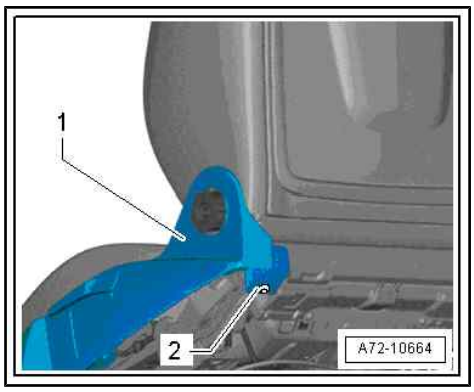
– Detach backrest adjuster knob.



– Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ page 426 .

– Remove spreader rivet -2- at trim (sill side) -1-.

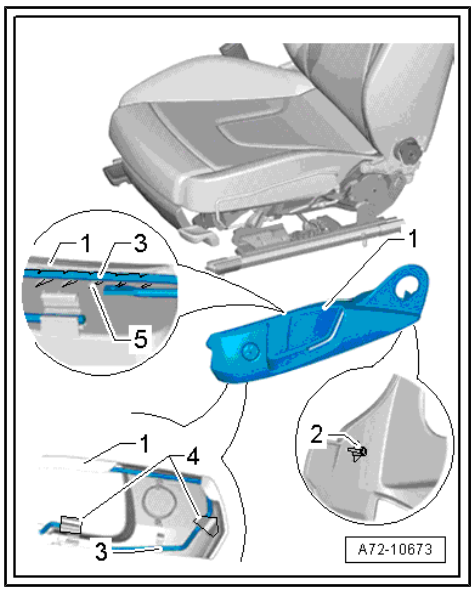
Reproduction or distribution of this document or any part of it, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Unfasten clips -4- at trim and disengage bracket -3-. To do so, carefully pull trim away from front seat slightly.

– Disengage trim (sill side) -1- at rear of backrest fitting and at seat frame.

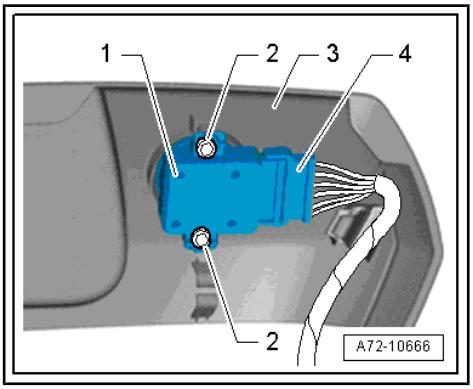
– Pull trim (sill side) slightly off bracket towards front and lift off.



Note

When detaching trim, take care not to damage mountings -5- and lug -2-.

– Equipment version with lumbar support: Unplug electrical connector -4- at lumbar support adjustment switch -1-.
– Detach trim (sill side) -3-.

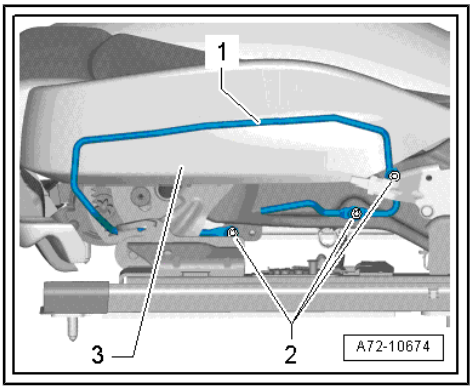


Note

Disregard -item 2-.

Removing bracket for seat side trim

– Remove bolts -2-.
– Detach bracket -1- from front seat -3-. Unfasten any cable ties from bracket.

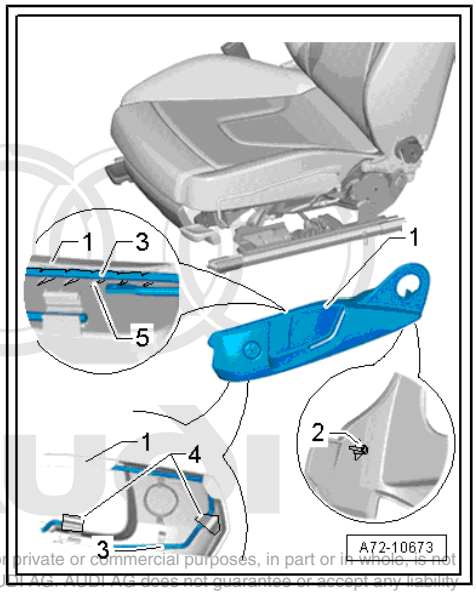


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure lug -2- is correctly positioned.*
- *Make sure trim -1- (sill side) is properly engaged at retaining bracket -3- and that lockable clips -4- are fastened.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side)”, page 390 ,
⇒ “2.5.3 Exploded view - seat pan, bracket for seat side trim (sill side)”, page 394

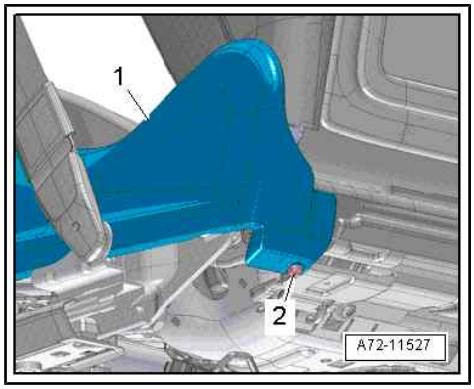
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.15.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat (with electric adjustment)

Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

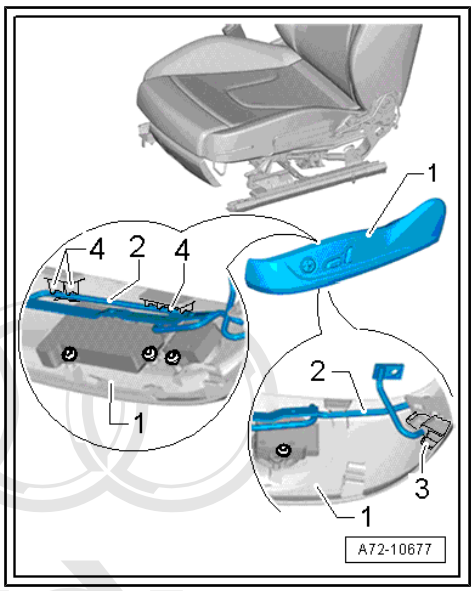
– Remove spreader rivet -2- at trim (sill side) -1-.



– Release clip -3- at trim.

– Disengage trim (sill side) -1- at rear of backrest fitting and at seat frame.

– Unclip trim (sill side) from bracket -2-; to do so, carefully pull trim slightly off front seat.

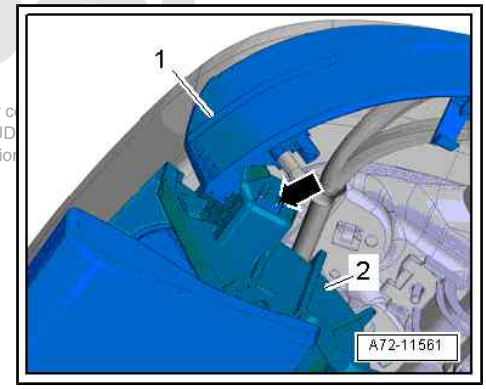


Note

When detaching trim, take care not to damage brackets -4-.

– Release catch -arrow- at storage compartment -2- and lift off trim (sill side) -1-.

– Pull trim (sill side) slightly off bracket towards front and lift off.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD
with respect to the correctness of informatio

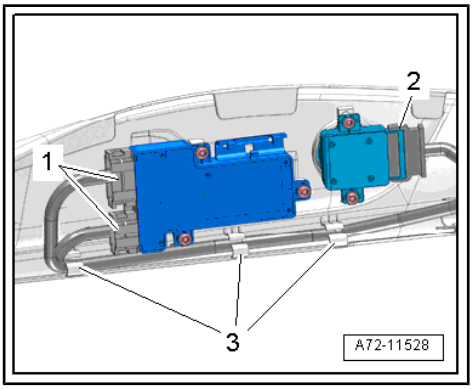
– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors:

1 - Seat adjustment operating unit -E470- / -E471-

2 - Lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

– Move electrical wiring clear at bracket -3-.

– Detach trim (sill side).



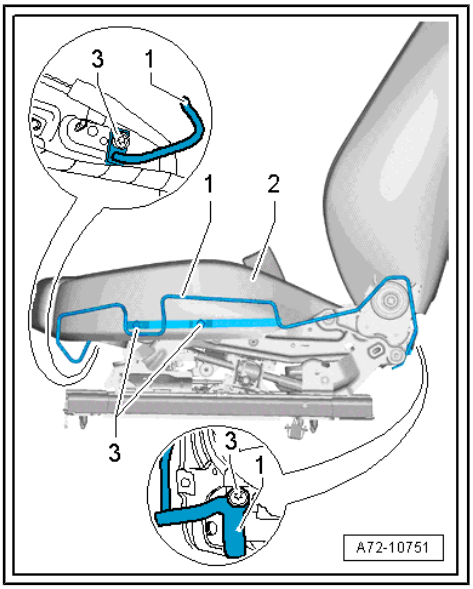
Removing bracket for seat side trim

– Remove bolts -3-.

– Detach bracket -1- from front seat -2-. Unfasten any cable ties from bracket.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Route electrical connectors and wires as shown in illustration.*
- *Make sure that trim (sill side) is properly engaged at bracket.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side)", page 390 ,
⇒ "2.5.3 Exploded view - seat pan, bracket for seat side trim (sill side)", page 394

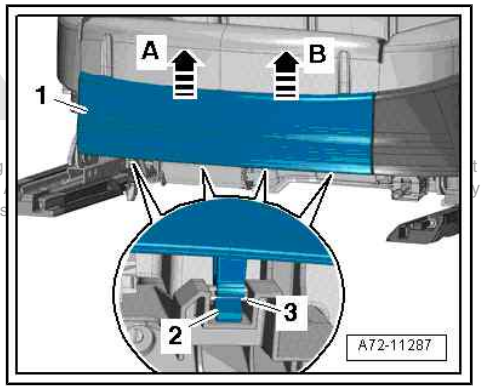
2.15.5 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side)/seat trim (front) - multi-contour seat

Removing

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

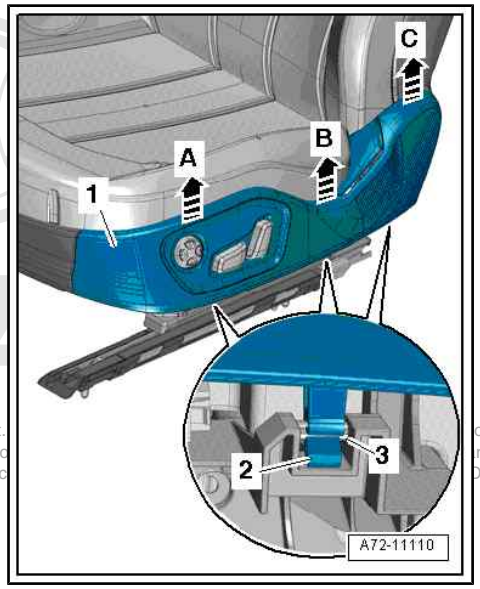
– Move seat depth adjustment to rear.

– Release retaining tabs -2- at bottom of bracket -3- and pull trim (front) -1- upwards -arrows A and B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by with respect to the correctnes

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 116 .
– Pull trim (sill side) -1- upwards and disengage at bracket -arrows A, B, C-. To do so, release retaining tabs -2- at bottom of bracket -3-.

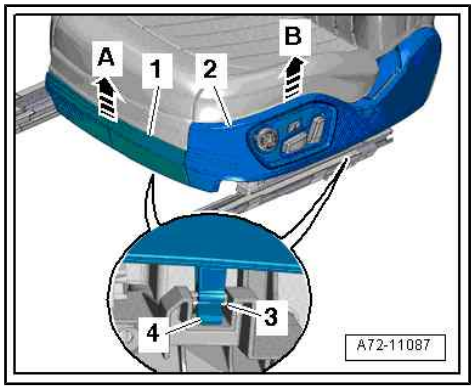


Protected by copyright. ole, is not
permitted unless autho ny liability
with respect to the c DI AG.

– Pull off trim (sill side) -2- with trim (front) -1- upwards -arrows A, B- and detach.

Note

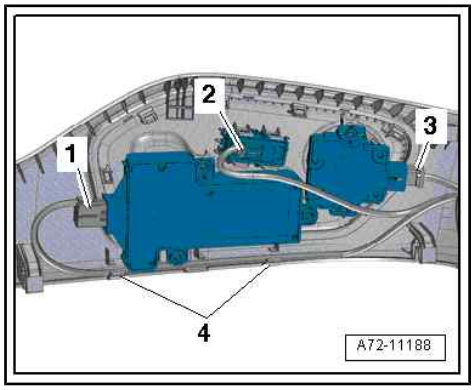
To avoid damage, make sure all retaining tabs -4- have been properly released at bracket -3-.



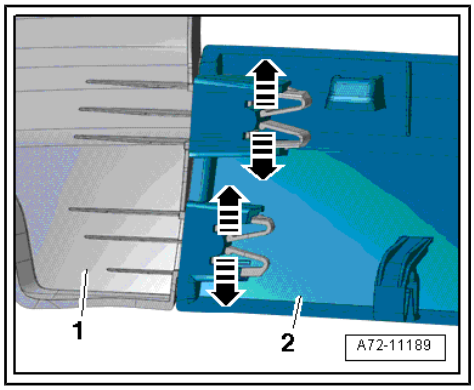
– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors:

1 - Switch module for front seat -E663- / -E664-
2 - Massage function button -E670- / -E671-
3 - Switch module 2 for front seat -E667- / -E668-

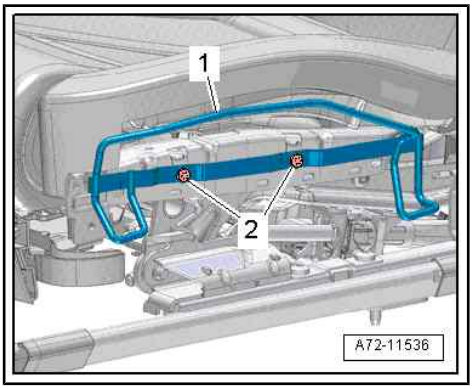
– Move electrical wiring clear at bracket -4-.



– Detach trim (sill side).
– Release retaining tabs -arrows- and separate trim (sill side) -1- from trim (front) -2-.



Removing bracket for seat side trim



– Disengage piping for seat cover (sill side) at seat pan ⇒ page 665 .

– Unscrew bolts -2- and detach bracket -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Route electrical connectors and wires as shown in illustration.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side)", page 390

2.15.6 Removing and installing bracket for seat trim (front)/compressor/control unit - multi-contour seat

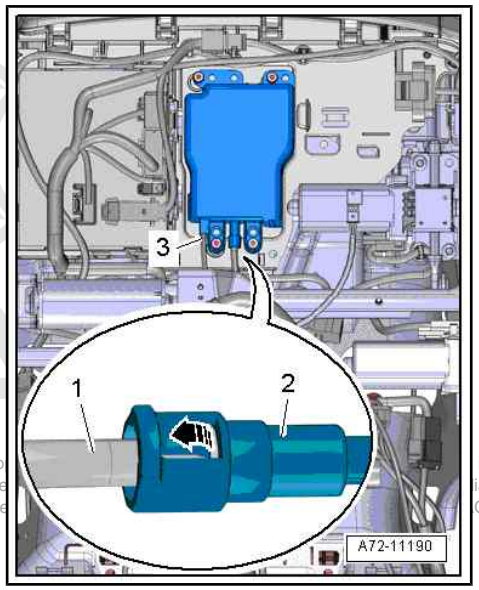
Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

Multi-contour seat up to 08.2012:



– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

– Carefully release catch -arrow- and pull pneumatic line -1- off compressor -2-.

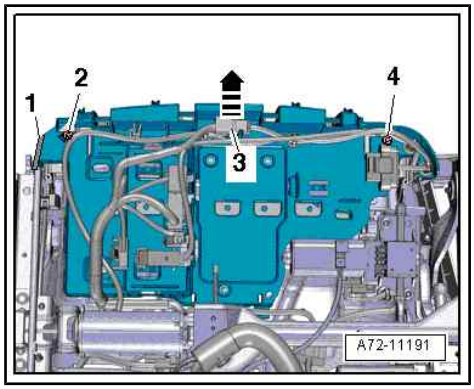
– Move clear pneumatic line leading to compressor.

– Remove seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function ⇒ page 495 .

– Remove trim (sill side) with trim (front) ⇒ page 465 .

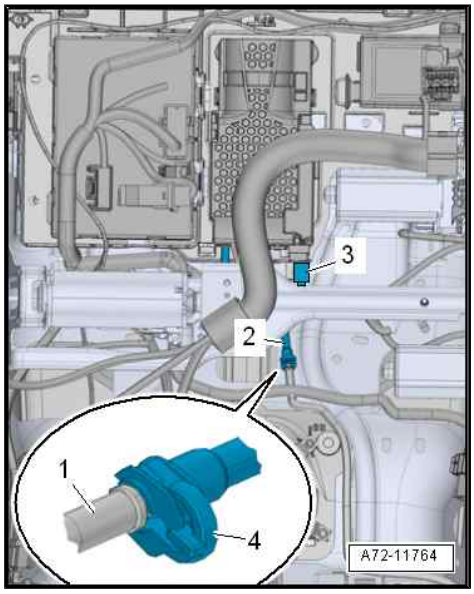
Protected by copyright. Co
permitted unless authorise
with respect to the corre
is not
iability
G.

– Disengage piping -1- for seat cover (tunnel side) at bracket ⇒ page 665 .
– Move electrical wiring -3- clear at bracket.
– Unscrew bolts -2- and -4- and detach bracket -arrow-.

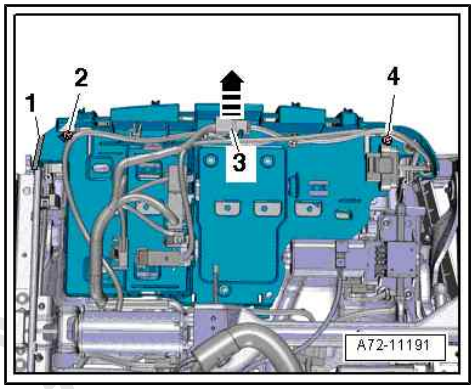


Multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards:

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Disconnect pneumatic line -1- from compressor.
– Remove seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function ⇒ page 495 .
– Remove trim (sill side) with trim (front) ⇒ page 465 .



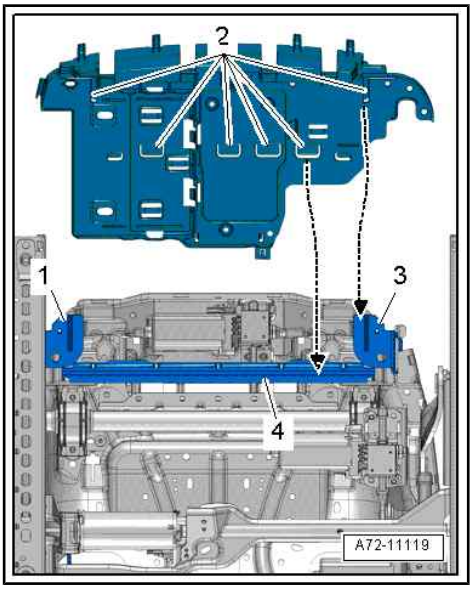
– Disengage piping -1- for seat cover (tunnel side) at bracket ⇒ page 665 .
– Move electrical wiring -3- clear at bracket.
– Unscrew bolts -2- and -4- and detach bracket -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

– Slide in bracket for trim (front) -arrows-, making sure that tabs -2- engage in retainers -1, 3, 4-.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side)", page 390

2.15.7 Removing and installing seat side trim (tunnel side)

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

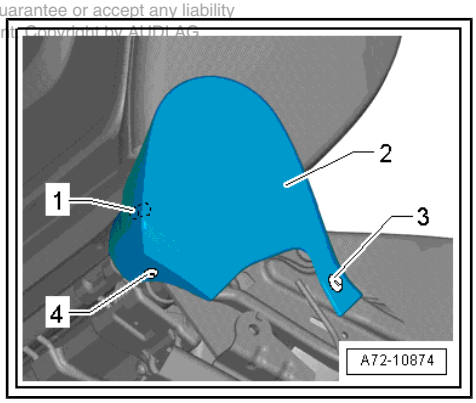
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat:

– Remove spreader rivets -3- and -4-.

– Disengage trim (tunnel side) -2- from backrest fitting and detach.



Note

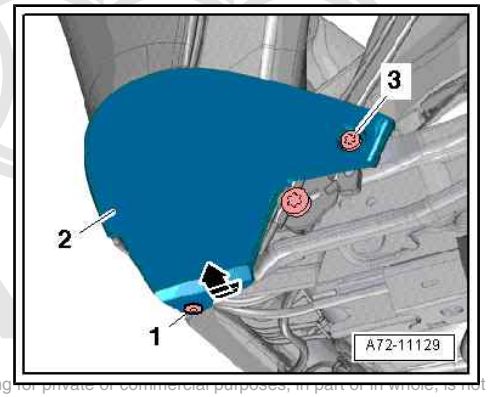
When detaching trim, take care not to damage lug -1-.

Multi-contour seat:

– Remove spreader rivet -1-.

– Remove bolt -3-.

– Disengage trim (tunnel side) -2- from trim for backrest fitting -arrow- and detach.



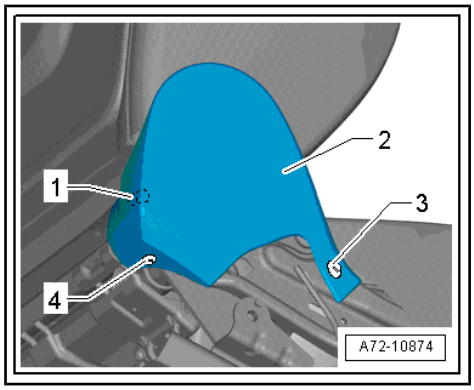
Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

- *Make sure lug -1- is correctly positioned.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side)", page 390

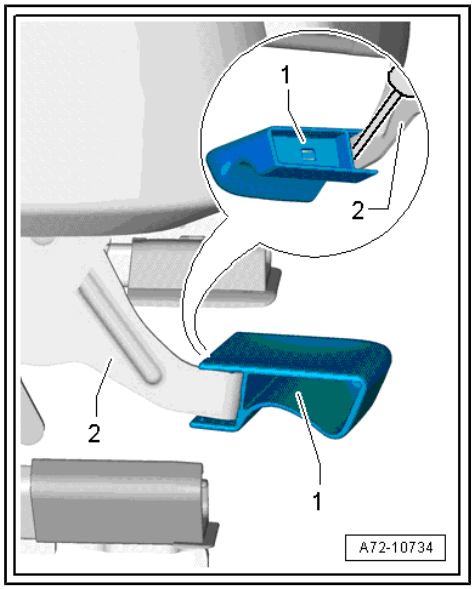
2.15.8 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle

Removing

– Move head restraint to lowest possible position.

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

– Lever handle -1- off seat longitudinal adjustment unit -2-; to do so, press down locking spring of clip with a screwdriver.



Note

If the handle cannot be pulled off as described, the storage compartment must be removed ⇒ page 65 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster", page 399

2.15.9 Removing and installing Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

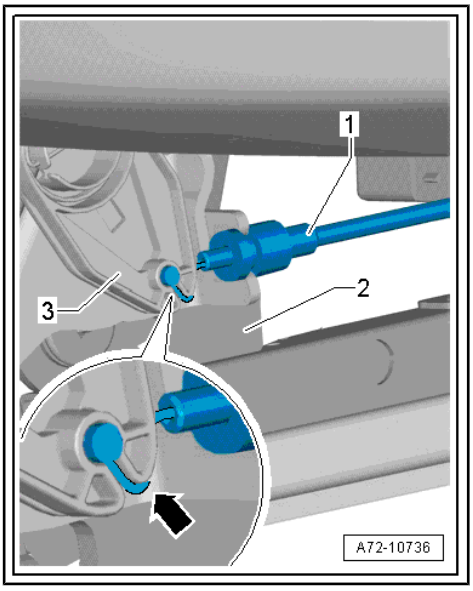
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Unfasten cable tie for Bowden cable or remove clip from seat pan.

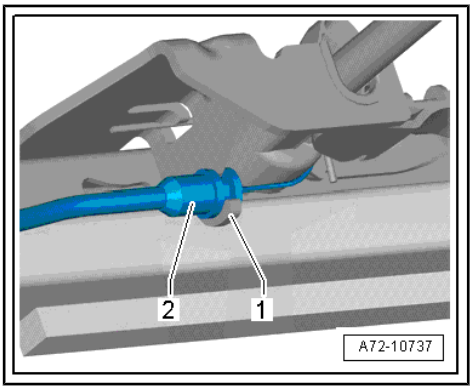
– Disengage support bracket for Bowden cable -1- at seat longitudinal adjuster -2-.

– Disengage Bowden cable end piece -arrow- at seat longitudinal adjustment lever -3-.

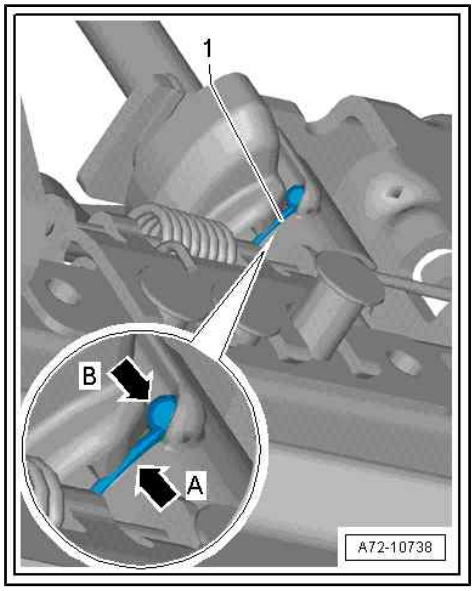
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Disengage support bracket for Bowden cable -2- at seat longitudinal adjuster -1-.



– Disengage Bowden cable -1- at mounting for Bowden cable -arrow A- for seat longitudinal adjustment.
– Disengage ball end of Bowden cable -arrow B- at seat longitudinal adjustment slot.
– Detach Bowden cable.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

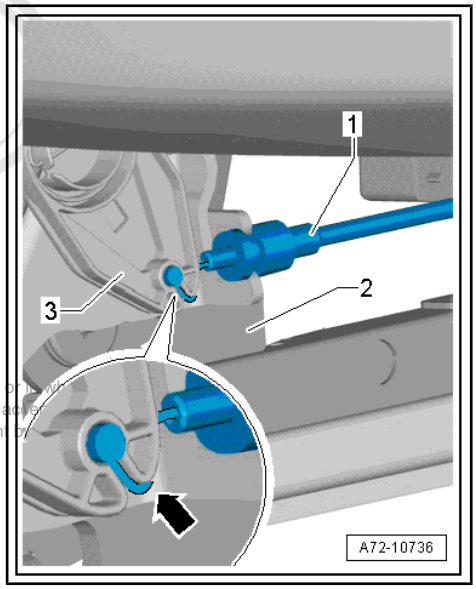
Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster", page 399

2.15.10 Removing and installing lever and spring for engaging Bowden cable/seat longitudinal adjustment

Removing



- Move head restraint to lowest possible position.
- Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
- Disengage support bracket for Bowden cable -1- at seat longitudinal adjuster -2-.
- Disengage Bowden cable end piece -arrow- at lever for engaging Bowden cable -3- for seat longitudinal adjustment.
- Turn lever for engaging Bowden cable forwards and detach it.
- Remove spring if necessary.

Installing

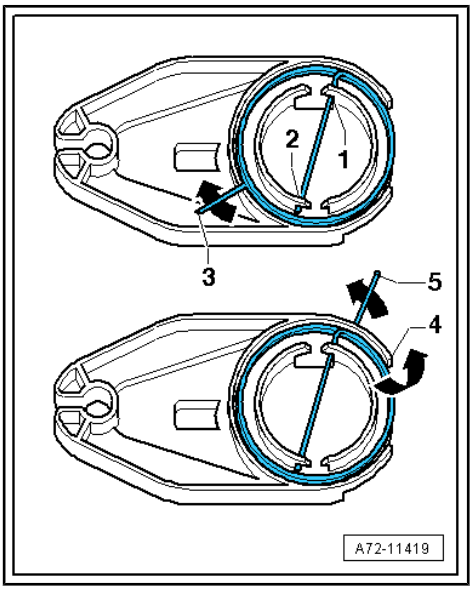
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with regard to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

The lever for engaging the Bowden cable is identical on the driver's and the front passenger's seats. The spring differs on the driver's and front passenger's seats.

Engaging Bowden cable with spring assembled (left seat):



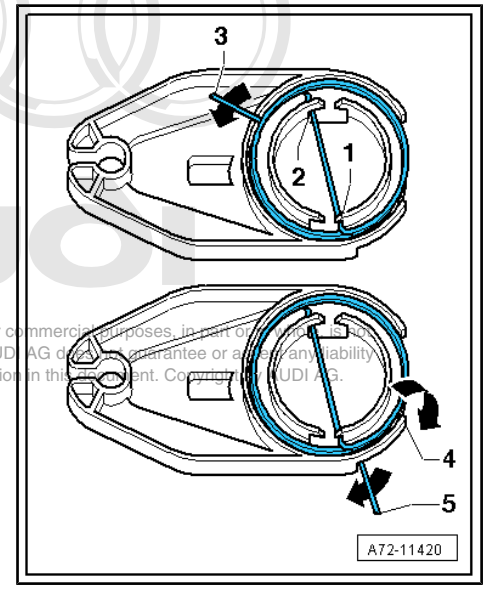
- Engage spring at locations marked -1- and -2-.
- Turn spring at lever -3- in clockwise direction.
- Guide spring around tab -4- and let it make contact at position -5-.

Engaging Bowden cable with spring assembled (right seat):

– Engage spring at locations marked -1- and -2-.

– Turn spring at lever -3- in anti-clockwise direction.

– Guide spring around tab -4- and let it make contact at position -5-.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.5.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster”, page 399

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.15.11 Servicing seat longitudinal adjuster

Note

A repair set is available for repairing the seat longitudinal adjuster ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

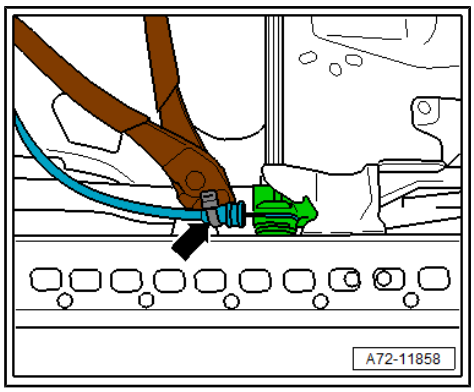
Procedure

• Front seat removed ⇒ page 415 and set down on a soft surface.

– Adjust seat height and rake to highest possible position.

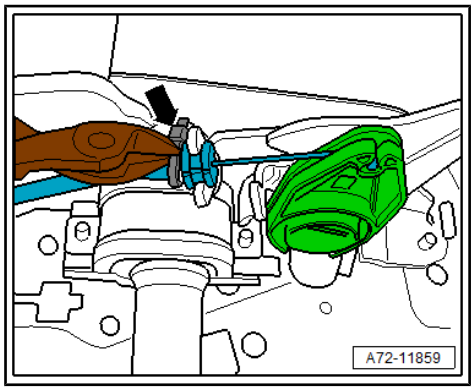
– Cut through cable tie -arrow- at support bracket for Bowden cable.

– Disengage Bowden cable from support bracket and from release lever for seat longitudinal adjuster.



– Cut through cable tie -arrow- at support bracket for Bowden cable.

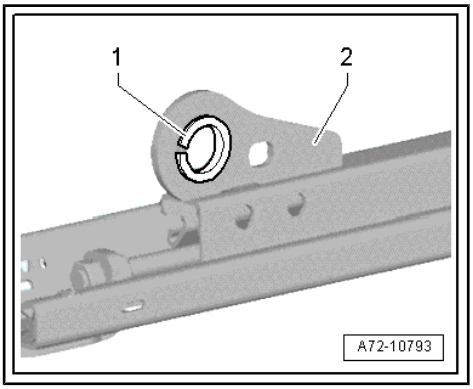
– Disengage Bowden cable from support bracket and from Bowden cable retainer for seat longitudinal adjuster.



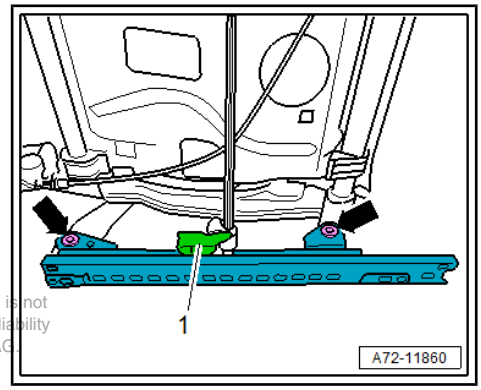
Caution

Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

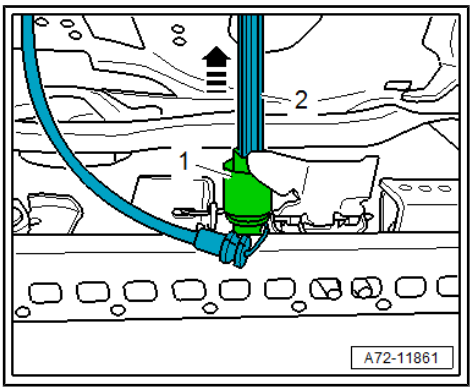


– Remove bolts -arrows- on inside of seat (tunnel side).
– Lift operating lever -1- for lock pin slightly and detach seat rail.

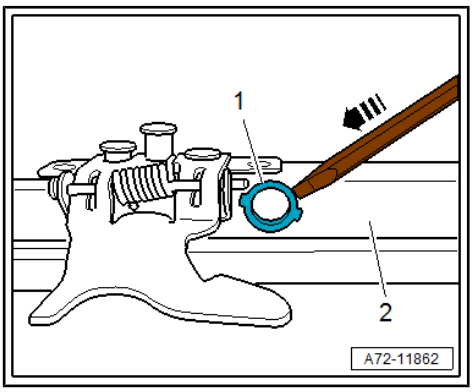


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull connecting rod -2- out of release lever -1- on outside of seat (sill side) -arrow-.
– Detach release lever together with spring.

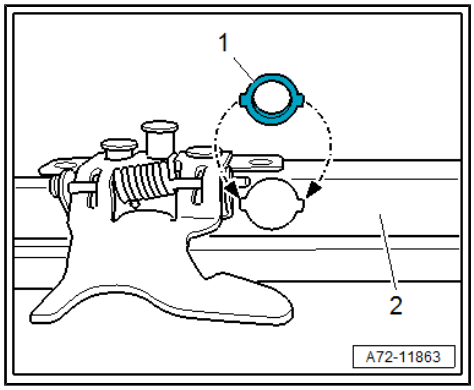


– Lever out bush -1- from both seat rails -2- -arrow-.



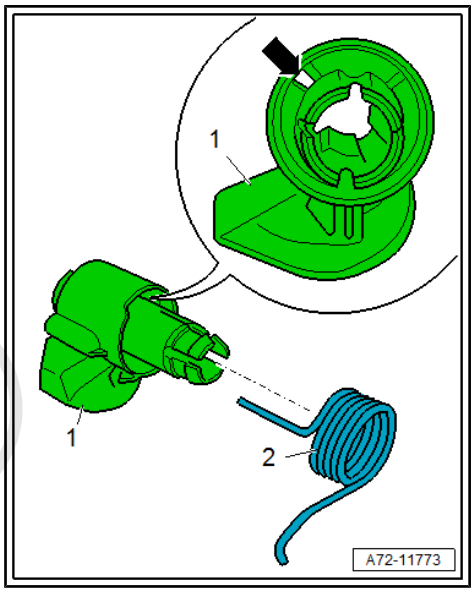
– Insert new bushes -1- in both seat rails -2- and press on.

• Lugs on bushes must face recesses in seat rails.



– Insert spring -2- into release lever -1- for outside of seat (sill side).

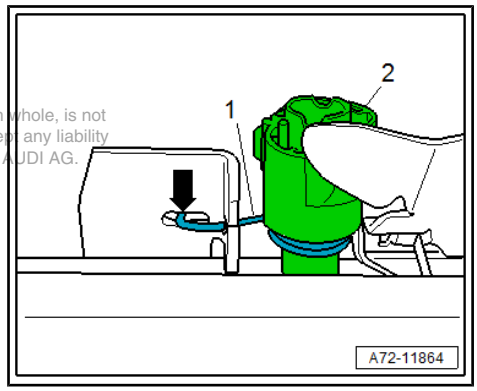
• Straight end of spring must engage in hole -arrow- on release lever.



– Insert release lever -2- for outside of seat (sill side) into bush in seat rail.

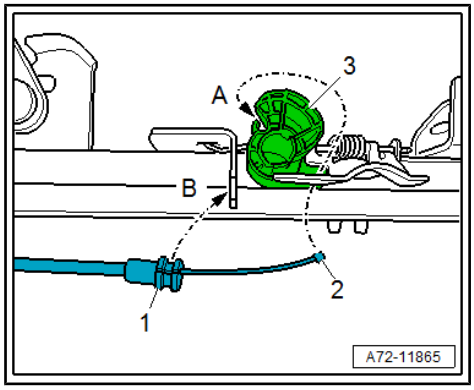
• Spring -1- must engage in recess -arrow- on outer seat rail.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Guide Bowden cable -2- for seat longitudinal adjuster around release lever -3- and engage nipple of Bowden cable in release lever -arrow A-.

– Engage Bowden cable sleeve -1- in support bracket -arrow B-.



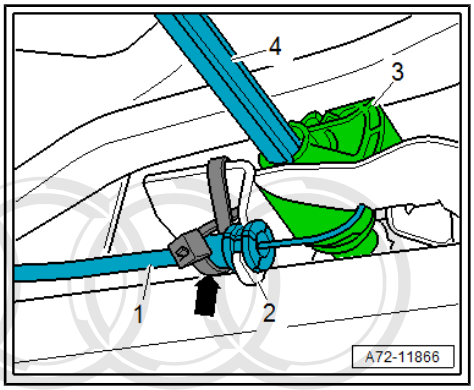
– Secure Bowden cable sleeve -1- with cable tie -arrow- in support bracket -2-.

• Cable tie must be guided in a figure of eight around Bowden cable sleeve and support bracket, as shown in illustration.

– Insert connecting rod -4- as far as it will go into release lever -3- on outer seat rail.

• Connecting rod only fits correctly in one position.

• If connecting rod is difficult to insert, remove burrs at ends of connecting rod.



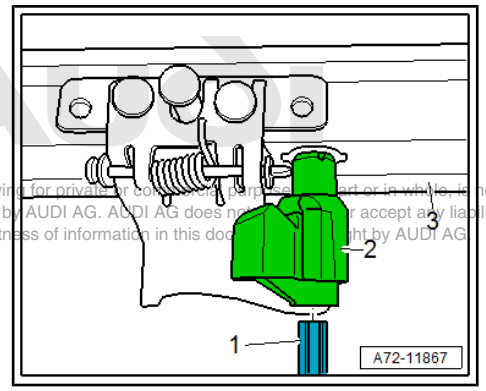
– Insert release lever -2- for inner seat rail (tunnel side) in seat rail -3-.

– Attach seat rail with release lever to connecting rod -1-.

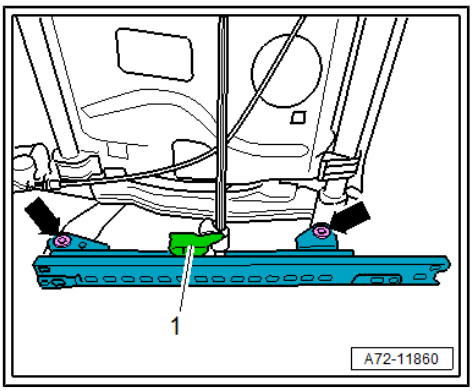
• Connecting rod only fits correctly in one position.

• If connecting rod is difficult to insert, remove burrs at ends of connecting rod.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Tighten bolts -arrows- on inside of seat (tunnel side) to 22 Nm.



Note

The Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment is guided forwards under the connecting rod to the lever for seat longitudinal adjustment.

– Engage nipple -4- on Bowden cable retainer for seat longitudinal adjuster -3-.

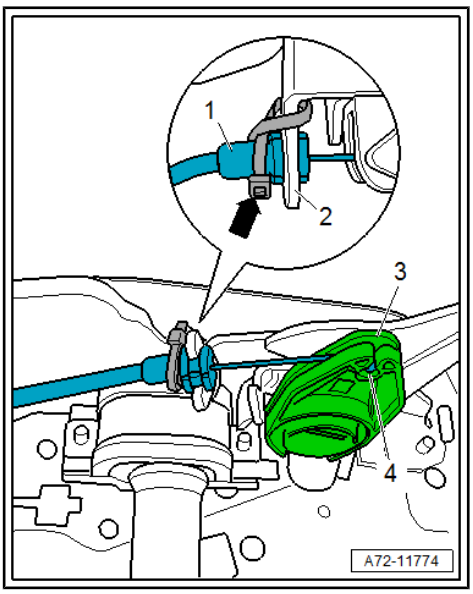
– Engage Bowden cable sleeve -1- in support bracket -2-.

– Attach Bowden cable sleeve to support bracket with cable tie -arrow-.

• Cable tie must be guided in a figure of eight around Bowden cable sleeve and support bracket, as shown in illustration.

– Install front seat ⇒ page 415 .

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



2.15.12 Removing and installing lower seat pan frame/seat longitudinal adjustment motor

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– If possible, move front seat to topmost position in order to minimise pre-tension of torsion bar.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Unbolt seat position sensor from lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 189 .

– Remove belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 119 .

– Unclip electrical wiring from lower seat pan frame and move to one side.

– Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.

– Unclip bracket for modular wire routing at lower seat pan frame.

Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

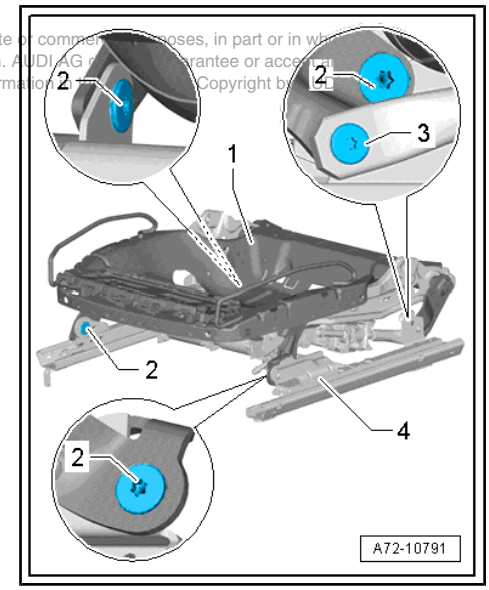
Caution

Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.*

Risk of damage to thread of bolt -3-.

- *Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.*

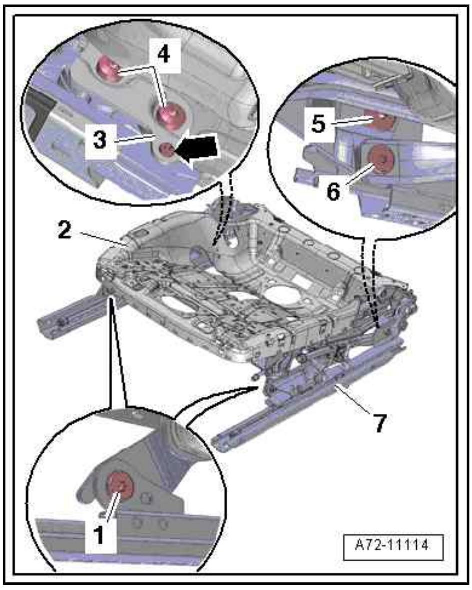


– Remove bolt -3-.

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Detach upper frame -1- from lower frame -4-.

Multi-contour seat:



> ⚠ Caution
>
> *Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).*
>
> - *A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.*
>
> *Risk of damage to thread of bolt -6-.*
>
> - *Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.*

– Remove bolt -6-.

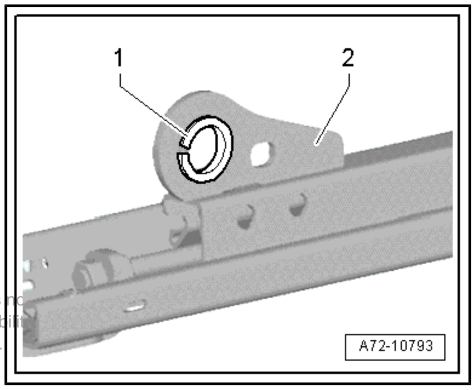
– Remove bolts -4-.

– Disengage retaining plate -3- at lower seat pan frame -arrow- and detach.

– Remove bolts -1, 5-.

– Detach upper frame -2- from lower frame -7-.

All seat versions (continued):



> ⚠ Caution
>
> *Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).*
>
> - *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
> - *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> - *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
> - *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
> - *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.5.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster”, page 399 ,
⇒ “2.5.13 Exploded view - seat pan, inertia safety latch”, page 415 ,
⇒ “2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster”, page 395

2.15.13 Renewing seat pan frame - front seat (with manual adjustment)

Note

On standard seat/sports seat (front, with manual adjustment), bottom part of seat should not be separated from top part of seat (seat pan).

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Caution

Move front seat to top position if possible. This reduces the spring force when removing and installing the seat height adjustment unit.

– Move front seat as far towards front as it will go and to highest position; then lower it by one stroke of the lever.
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 440 .
– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 659 .

Note

Remove wiring and components and install in new seat pan frame.

– Remove belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 119 .
– Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 487 .
– Remove seat height adjustment unit ⇒ page 427 .
– Detach electrical wiring harnesses and individual wires from seat pan frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Install all components and wires in new seat pan frame.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat", page 369 ,
⇒ "2.5.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster", page 399

2.15.14 Removing and installing upper seat pan frame

Note

The removal and installation procedures are described for a seat pan without seat depth adjustment. The procedures are similar for a seat pan with seat depth adjustment.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Caution

Move front seat to top position if possible. This will reduce the spring force when removing and installing the torsion bar and minimise the risk of damage to the bolt fittings between the seat pan upper and lower frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 440 .
– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 659 .
– Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.

– Unclip bracket for modular wire routing at lower seat pan frame.
– Unbolt seat position sensor from lower frame ⇒ page 189 .
– Unplug electrical connector for belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 119 .
– Unclip electrical wiring from lower seat pan frame and move to one side.

Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat:

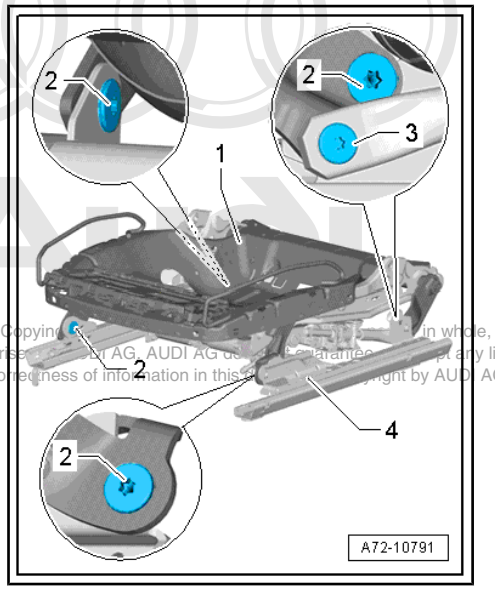
Caution

Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.*

Risk of damage to thread of bolt -3-.

- *Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.*



– Remove bolt -3-.
– Remove bolts -2- and detach upper seat pan frame -1- from lower frame -4-.

Multi-contour seat:

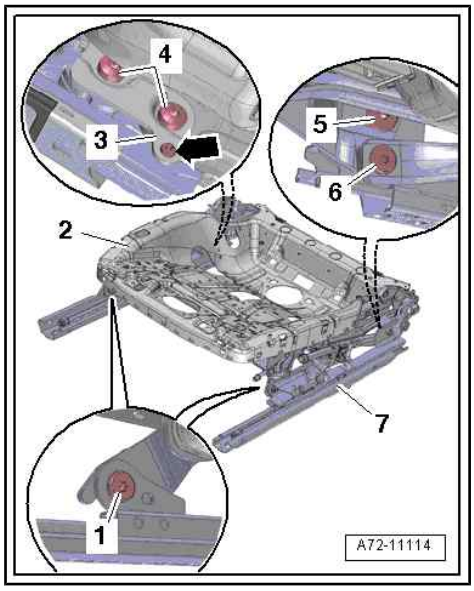
Caution

Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.*

Risk of damage to thread of bolt -6-.

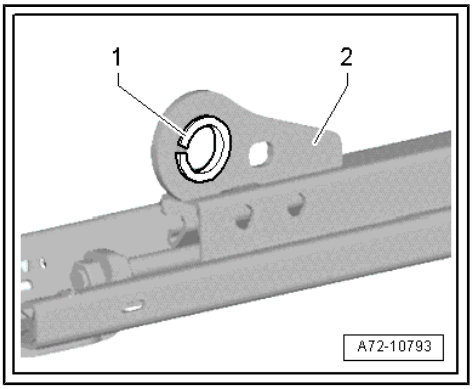
- *Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.*



– Remove bolt -6-.
– Remove bolts -4-.
– Disengage retaining plate -3- at lower seat pan frame -arrow- and detach.
– Remove bolts -1, 5- and detach upper seat pan frame -2- from lower frame -7-.
– Remove belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 119 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

All seat versions (continued):



Caution

Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

– Remove bracket with seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory -J136- / -J521- ⇒ page 497 .

– Equipment version with seat depth adjustment: Remove seat depth adjuster ⇒ page 492 .

– Equipment version with seat ventilation: Remove seat cushion fan ⇒ page 498 .

– Remove seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246- ⇒ page 430 .

– Remove seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244- ⇒ page 434 .

– Detach electrical wiring harnesses and individual wires from upper seat pan frame.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

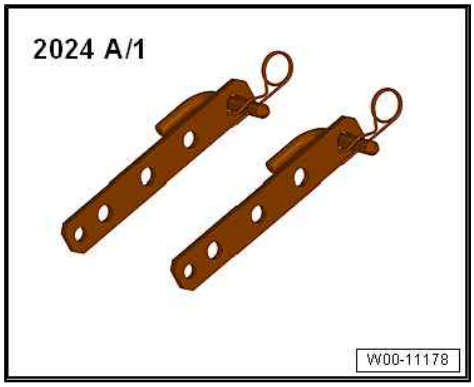
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster", page 399 ,
⇒ "2.5.13 Exploded view - seat pan, inertia safety latch", page 415 ,
⇒ "2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster", page 395

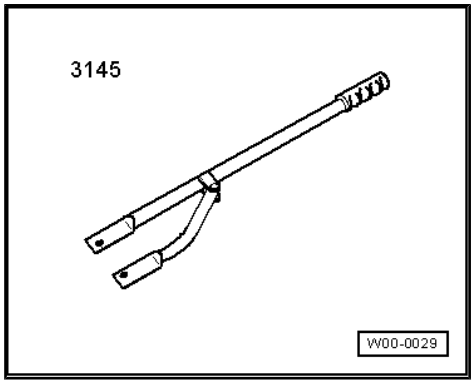
2.15.15 Removing and installing torsion bar

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Extension -2024 A /1-



- Counterhold tool - 3145-



- M10x30 bolt and nut

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

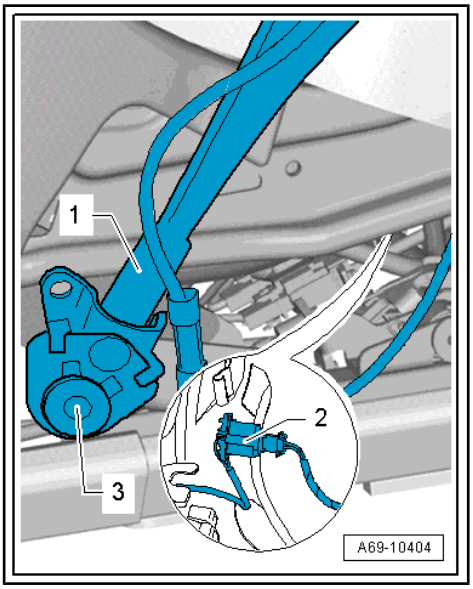
Caution

Move front seat to top position if possible. This will reduce the spring force when removing and installing the torsion bar and minimise the risk of damage to the bolt fittings between the seat pan upper and lower frame.

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 440 .

– Slacken bolt connection -3- for belt buckle (front) -1-.
– Swivel belt buckle (front) downwards.



Note

Disregard -item 2-.

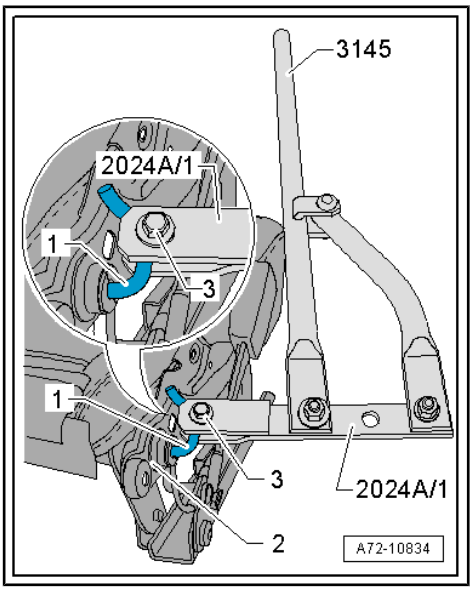
WARNING

The torsion bar exerts a considerable spring force. To avoid accidents, it is important that you observe the following points:

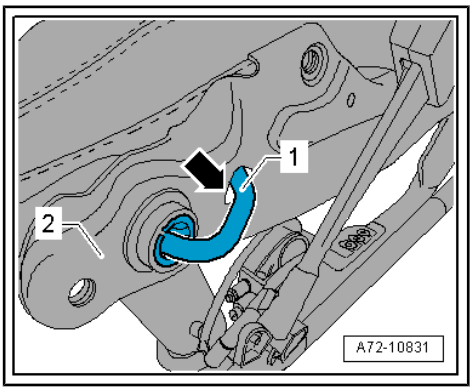
- ***Always remove and install the torsion bar in the sequence described, and use only the specified tools.***
- ***Never use pliers or other levering aids.***
- ***Do not stand directly in front of the torsion bar when removing and installing it, but off to the side.***

– Secure extension -2024 A /1- with M10x30 bolt -item 3- and nut to prevent the ends from spreading apart.
– Position counterhold tool - 3145- with extension -2024 A /1- at torsion bar -1-.

2 - Seat pan



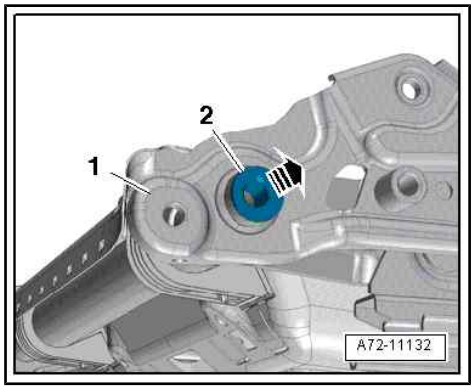
– Carefully turn torsion bar -1- until it can be disengaged from elongated hole -arrow- in seat pan with a screwdriver.
– Slacken off torsion bar and pull it out of seat pan -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Bearing for torsion bar:

– Using a flat screwdriver, prise bearing -2- out of guide at seat pan -1- -arrow-.



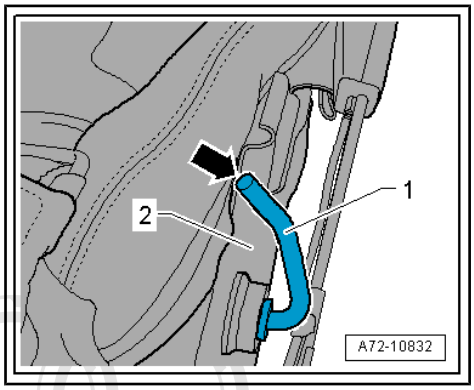
Installing

WARNING

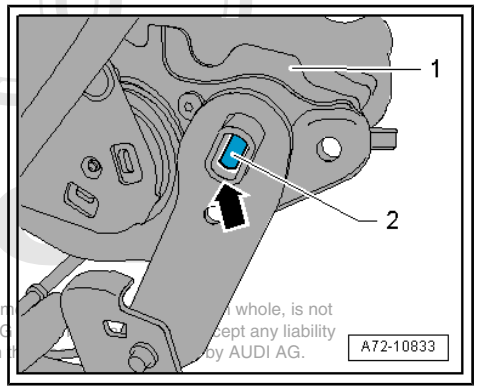
The torsion bar exerts a considerable spring force. To avoid accidents, it is important that you observe the following points:

- ***Always remove and install the torsion bar in the sequence described, and use only the specified tools.***
- ***Never use pliers or other levering aids.***
- ***Do not stand directly in front of the torsion bar when removing and installing it, but off to the side.***

– Push torsion bar -1- into mounting until end -arrow- makes contact with seat pan -2-.

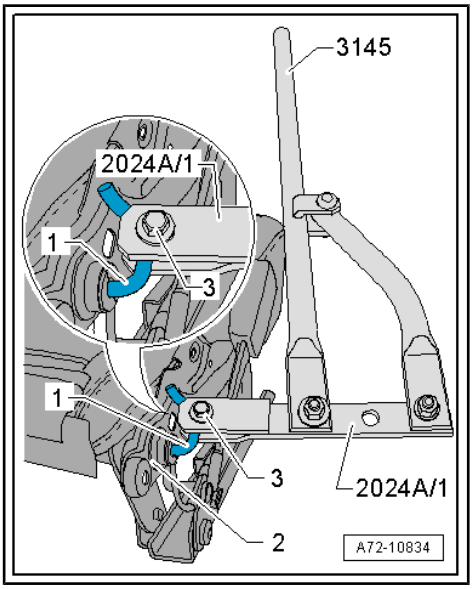


– Make sure torsion bar -2- is positioned correctly in support bracket -arrow- of seat pan -1-.

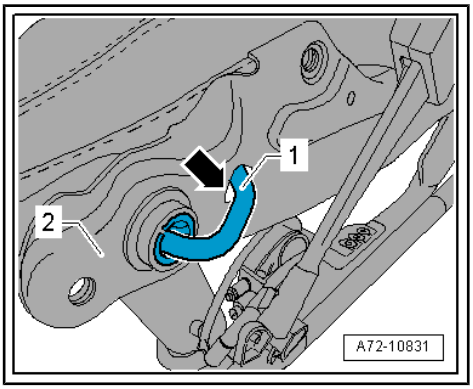


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG cept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in t by AUDI AG.

– Secure extension -2024 A /1- with M10x30 bolt -item 3- and nut to prevent the ends from spreading apart.
– Position counterhold tool - 3145- with extension -2024 A /1- at torsion bar -1-.



– Rotate torsion bar -1- and carefully push it until it can be engaged in elongated hole -arrow- in seat pan.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.5.8 Exploded view - seat pan, torsion bar", page 405

2.15.16 Removing and installing storage compartment

Removing

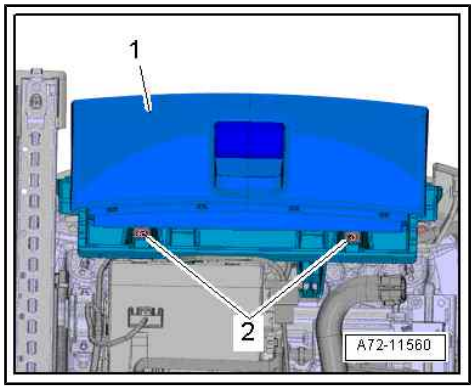
WARNING

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

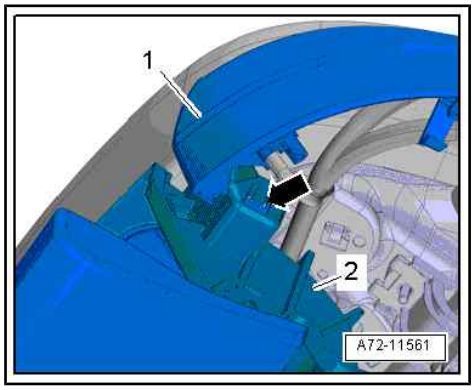
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Open storage compartment -1- and unscrew bolts -2-.

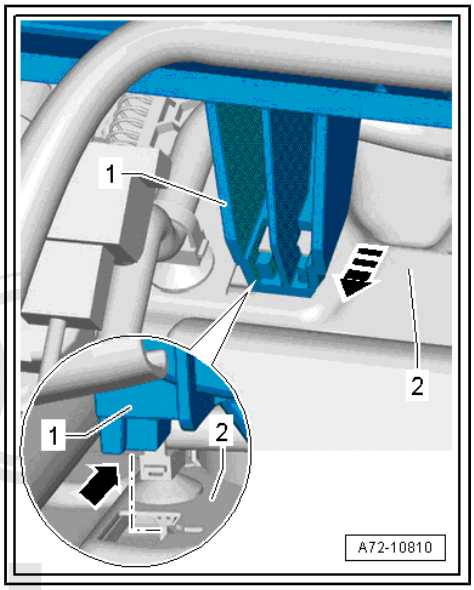


– Release fastener -arrow- at storage compartment -2- and pull storage compartment slightly downwards off trim (sill side) -1-.



– Push storage compartment -1- in direction of -arrow- and disengage catch -bottom arrow- of storage compartment from upper frame of seat pan -2-.

– Detach storage compartment from upper seat pan frame.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

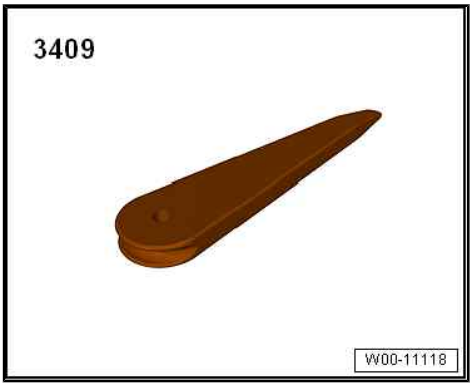
⇒ "2.5.10 Exploded view - seat pan, storage compartment", page 408

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.15.17 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster - sports seat/super sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

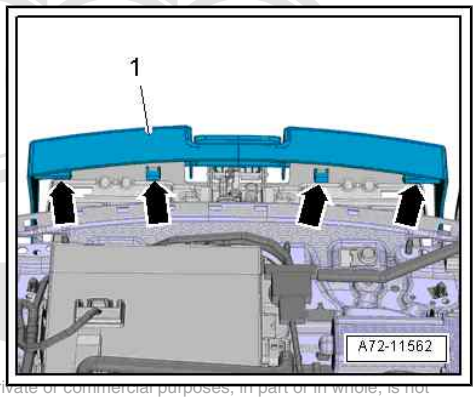
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 487 .

– Set seat depth adjuster as far forwards as it will go.

– Unclip retaining tabs -arrows- at trim -1- using removal wedge - 3409- .

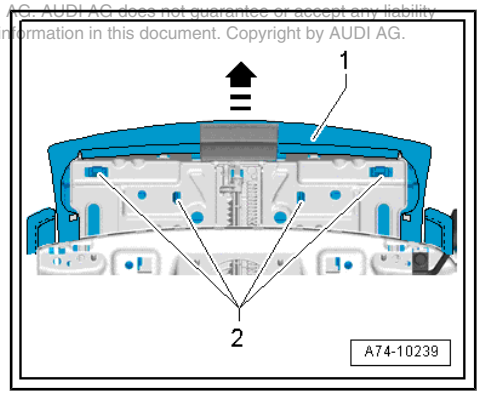
– Detach trim from seat depth adjuster.



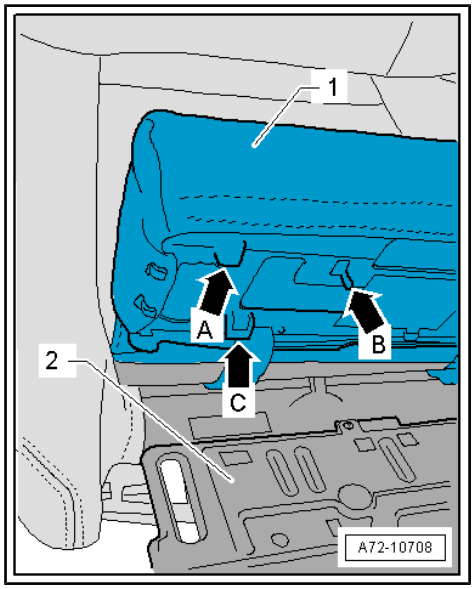
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move seat depth adjuster forwards as far as it will go -arrow-.

– Unclip fasteners -2- using removal wedge - 3409- .



– Swivel mounting bracket with padding and cover -1- for seat depth adjustment upwards so far that fasteners -arrow A- and -arrow B- remain disengaged.



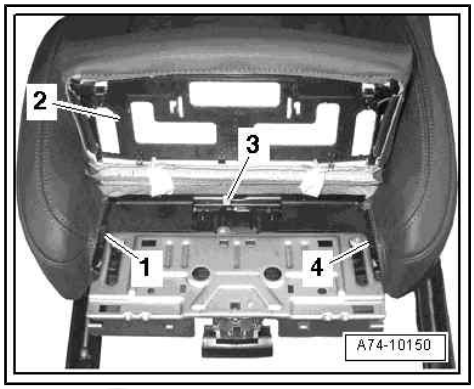
Note

For greater clarity, the padding is shown detached in the illustration.

– Pull off mounting bracket with padding and cover for seat depth adjuster at an angle (upwards towards front).

– Disengage lugs -arrow C- at seat depth adjuster -2- and fold up mounting bracket with padding and cover.

– Place mounting bracket -2- with padding and cover for seat depth adjustment on front seat.

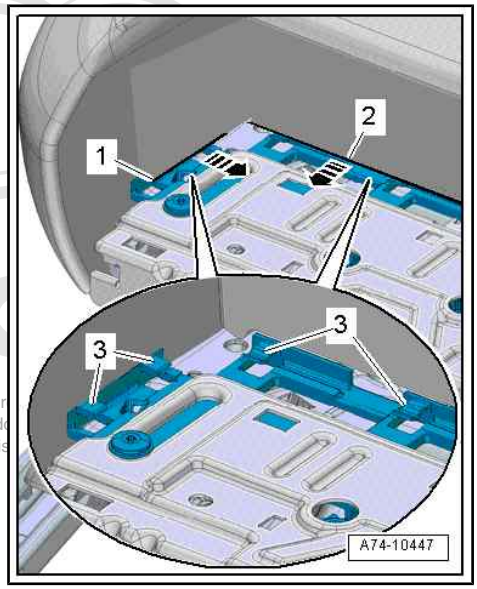


Note

For greater clarity the lower seat pan frame is not shown in the illustration.

– Remove fastening strips -1, 3, 4- on seat cover from seat depth adjustment unit (diagonally and to side).

– To do so, unclip fastening strips -1- and -2- from retaining tabs -3- in direction of -arrows-.

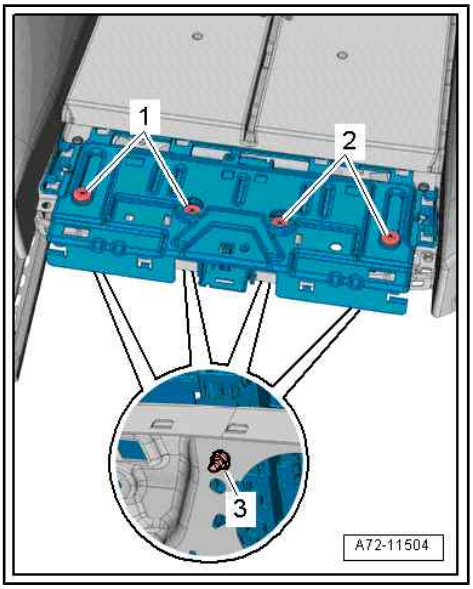


Note

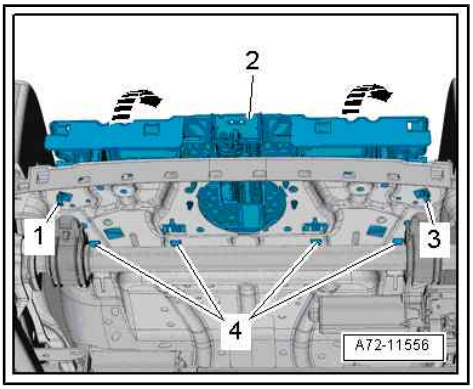
Proceed very carefully when removing and clipping in the component as the fasteners can be damaged quite easily.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d
with respect to the correctness of information in this

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- and nuts -3- at seat depth adjuster.



– Unclip retaining tabs -1- and -3- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Pull seat depth adjuster -2- off seat pan at an angle (upwards towards front) -arrows-.
– At the same time disengage lugs -4- from seat pan.
– Detach seat depth adjuster from front seat.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.7 Exploded view - seat pan, seat depth adjuster", page 403

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.15.18 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster - multi-contour seat

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Lower front seat as far as it will go at front and then raise by approx. 1/3 again.

– Extend seat depth adjuster towards front.

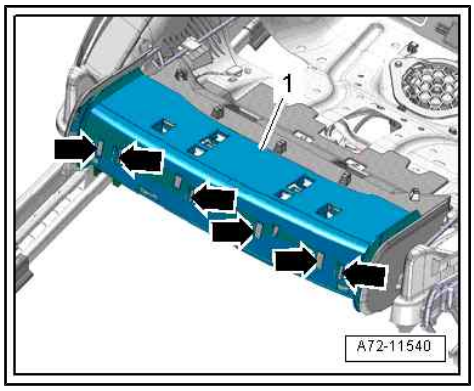
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

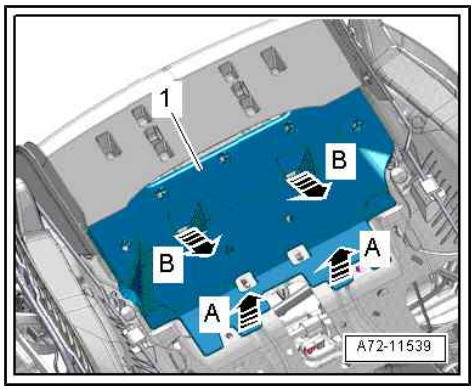
– Remove bracket for trim (front), compressor and control unit for multi-contour seat ⇒ page 467 .

– Remove seat cover and padding ⇒ page 665 .

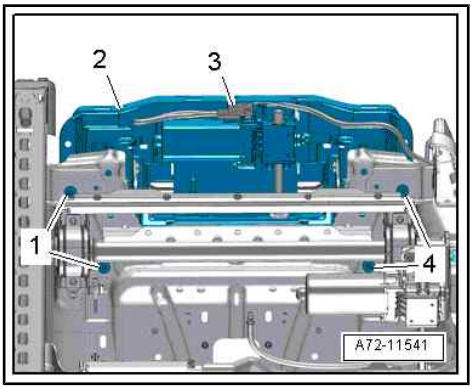
– Release catches -arrows- with a screwdriver and detach carrier -1- for seat depth adjustment motor.



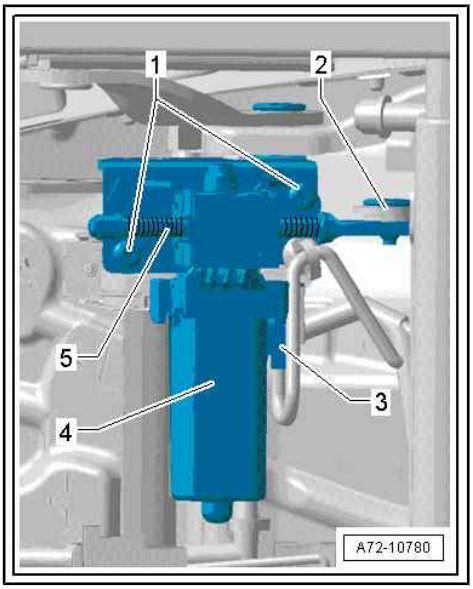
– Unclip cover -1- from seat pan -arrows A-, disengage at seat depth adjuster -arrows B- and detach.



– Unplug electrical connector -3- and move clear.
– Unscrew bolts -1- and -4- and detach seat depth adjustment motor -2-.



– If fitted, remove bolts -1- and swivel seat rake adjustment motor -4- to the side.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.7 Exploded view - seat pan, seat depth adjuster", page 403

2.15.19 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Carefully prise actuator -1- off fastener using removal wedge - 3409- .

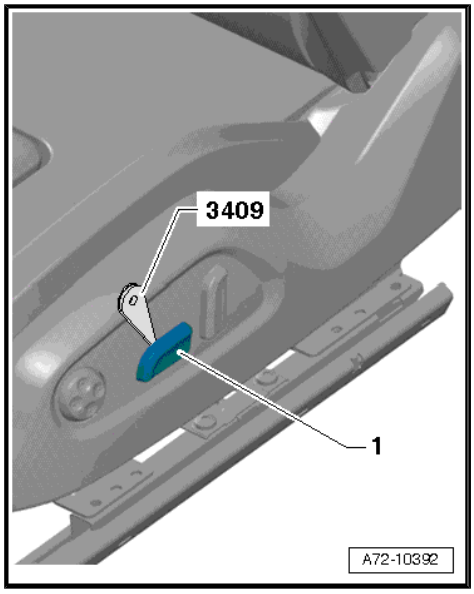
– Repeat procedure on opposite side of trim cover.

– Repeat procedure on second actuator.

– Remove trim (sill side):

♦ Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat ⇒ page 464

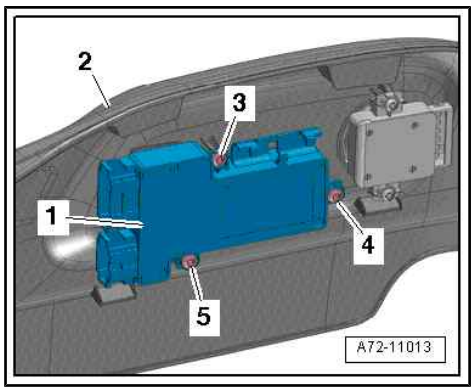
♦ Multi-contour seat ⇒ page 465



Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat:

– Remove bolts -3 ... 5-.

– Detach operating unit -1- from trim (sill side) -2-.



Multi-contour seat:

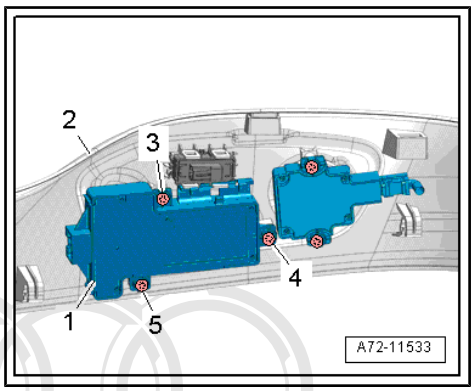
– Remove bolts -3 ... 5-.

– Detach switch module -1- from trim (sill side) -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.9 Exploded view - seat pan, seat adjustment actuators/ switches", page 405

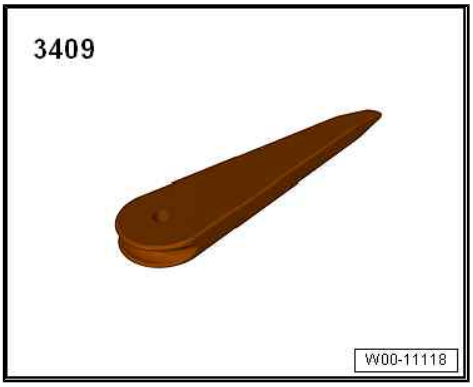


2.15.20 Removing and installing control unit for seat ventilation (seat heating integrated)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

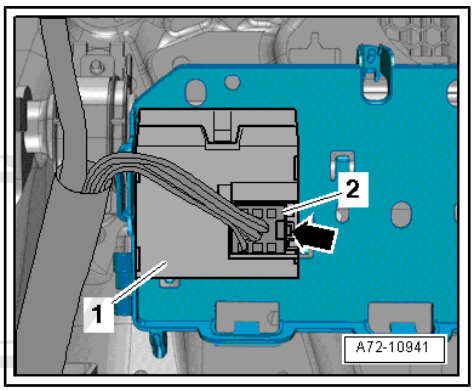
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

– Press release mechanism -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -2- at control unit for seat ventilation -1-.

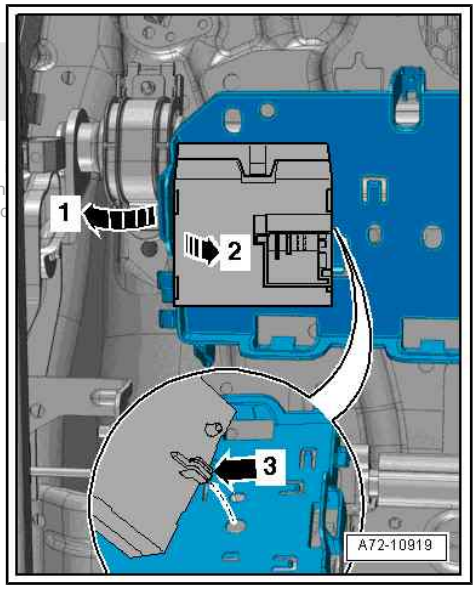


– Use removal wedge - 3409- to release retaining tab -arrow 1-.

– Swivel control unit for seat ventilation downwards -arrow 2-.

– Disengage hook -arrow 3- of control unit for seat ventilation at retainer and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co



Note

If the control unit for seat ventilation is not accessible, unbolt the front seat and fold it back *⇒ page 415* *.*

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Control unit for seat ventilation must engage audibly in retainer.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.5.11 Exploded view - seat pan, front seat control unit”, page 409

2.15.21 Removing and installing seat/steering column adjustment control unit with memory function

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

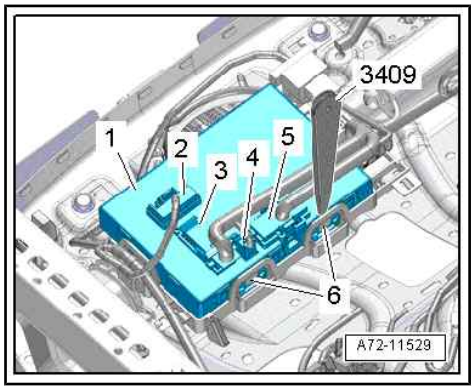
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Unclip cover using removal wedge - 3409- and detach.

– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors -2 ... 5- at control unit -1-.



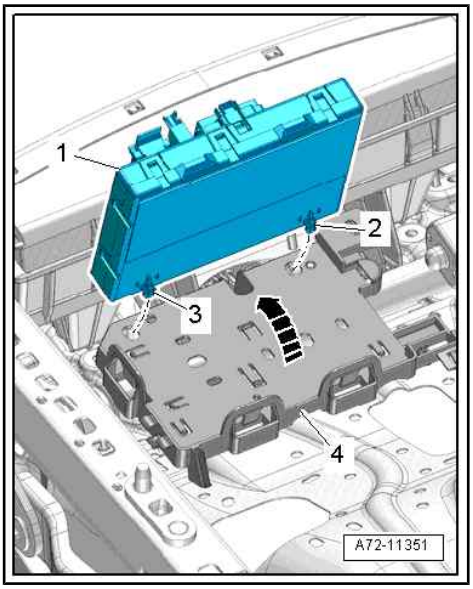
Note

The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment. The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.

– Unclip fasteners -6- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Carefully swivel control unit -1- out of fasteners -arrow-.

– Disengage hooks -2- and -3- at retainer -4- and detach control unit.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

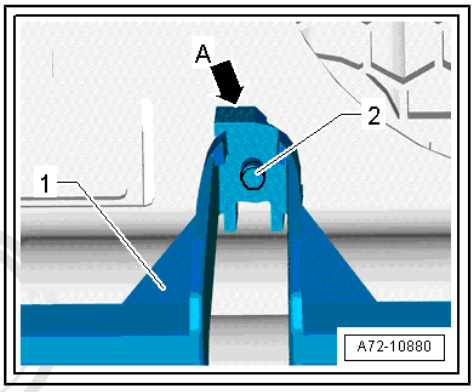
Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- The seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory must engage audibly in the retainer.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.11 Exploded view - seat pan, front seat control unit", page 409

2.15.22 Removing and installing retainer for control unit for front seat

Removing



– Remove control unit for front seat:

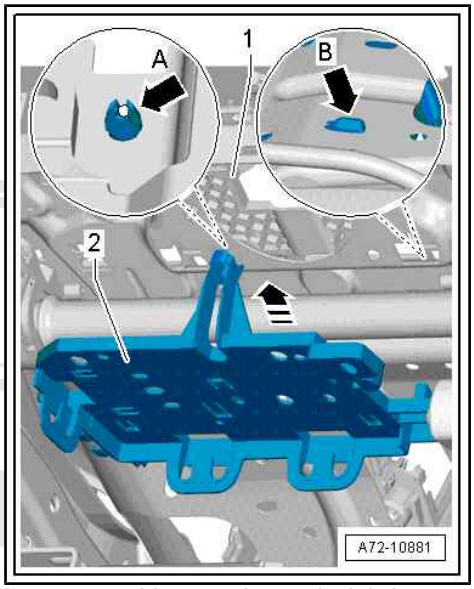
- Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function ⇒ page 495
- Control unit for seat ventilation (seat heating integrated) ⇒ page 494
- Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- - country-specific version ⇒ page 200

– Use e.g. an upholstery needle to press pin -2- towards padding and out of clip -arrow A- on retainer -1-.

– Remove pin (pressed out) from seat pan.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Detach support for retainer -2- from upper seat pan frame -1-; when doing so, unfasten clip -arrow A- from upper frame.
– Disengage retaining tabs -arrow B- on both sides.
– Carefully detach retainer from seat pan -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.11 Exploded view - seat pan, front seat control unit", page 409

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.15.23 Removing and installing seat cushion fan - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat

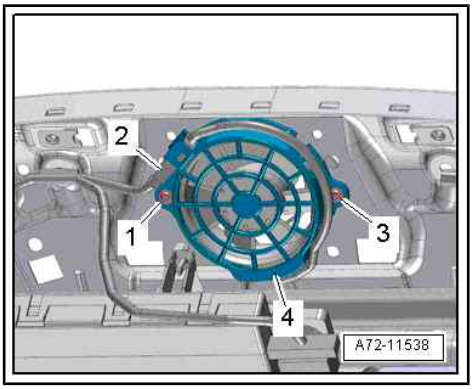
Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 440 .
– Detach padding from seat pan ⇒ page 659 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2- for seat cushion fan and move wiring clear.
– Remove bolts -1- and -3-.
– Turn cover grille -4- slightly (anti-clockwise) and detach fan.



Installing

> **WARNING**
>
> - *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
> - *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
> - *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fit seal for fan and install fan.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.12 Exploded view - seat pan, seat cushion fan", page 411

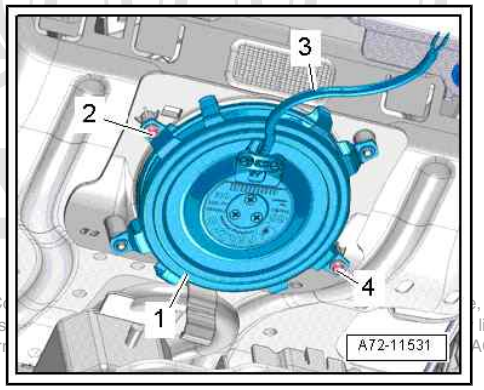
2.15.24 Removing and installing seat cushion fan - multi-contour seat

Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

Seat cushion fan up to 08.2012:

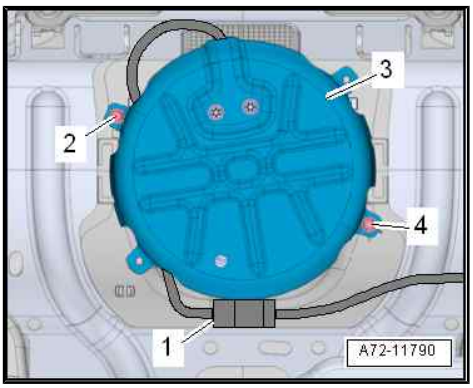
– Unplug electrical connector for seat cushion fan and move wiring -3- clear.
– Remove bolts -2- and -4- at retainer and detach seat cushion fan -1-.



Protected by copyright. Co
permitted unless authoris
with respect to the corr
, is not
liability
AG.

Seat cushion fan from 09.2012 onwards:

– Remove bolts -2, 4- and take off cover -3- and seat cushion fan.
– Unplug electrical connector -1- for seat cushion fan.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fit seal for fan and install fan.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.12 Exploded view - seat pan, seat cushion fan", page 411

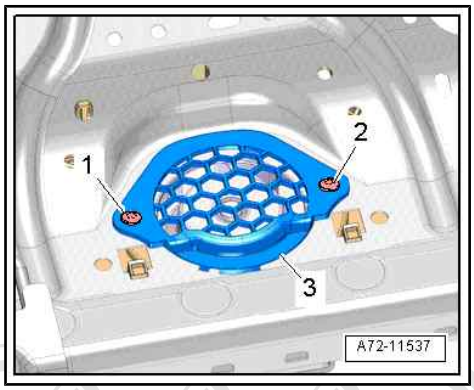
2.15.25 Removing and installing retainer for seat cushion fan - multi-contour seat

Removing

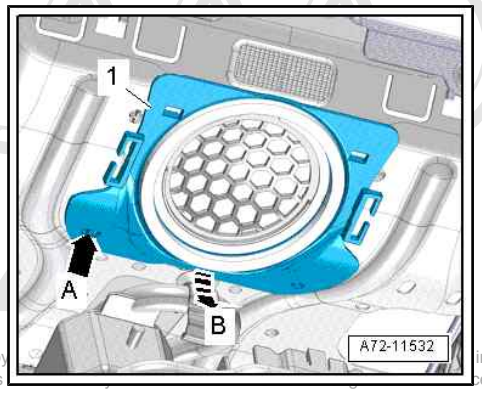
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 441 .
– Detach padding from seat pan at side and rear ⇒ page 665 .
– Remove seat cushion fan ⇒ page 499 .
– Remove bolts -1- and -2- and detach grille -3- for fan.



– Release fastener -arrow A-.
– Swivel retainer -1- down -arrow B-, disengage it from seat pan and detach.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.12 Exploded view - seat pan, seat cushion fan", page 411

Copyright by copy... in whole, is not permitted unless ...cept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

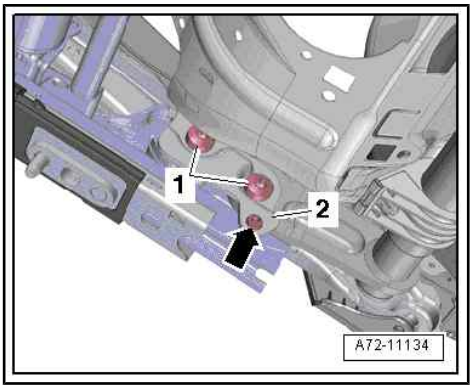
2.15.26 Removing and installing inertia safety latch

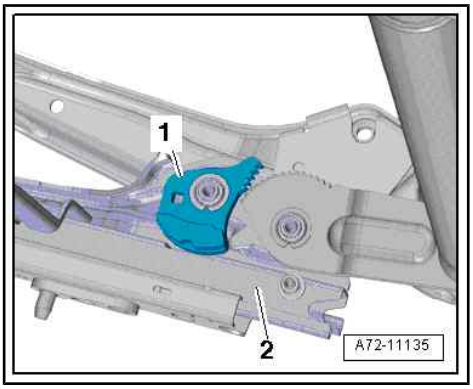
Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Disengage retaining plate -2- at lower seat pan frame -arrow- and detach.





Caution

Risk of damage to bush in pivot point (inertia safety latch).

- *The bush cannot be renewed using workshop equipment.*
- *The assembly element must be renewed if the bush is damaged.*

– Detach inertia safety latch -1- from pivot pin on lower seat pan frame -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Check whether spring is inserted in retaining plate.

– Insert inertia safety latch and secure to retaining plate.

Checking inertia safety latch for freedom of movement

Check must be performed in the following situations:

- Following installation work at inertia safety latch
- Following an accident even if front seat appears to be undamaged

Test sequence

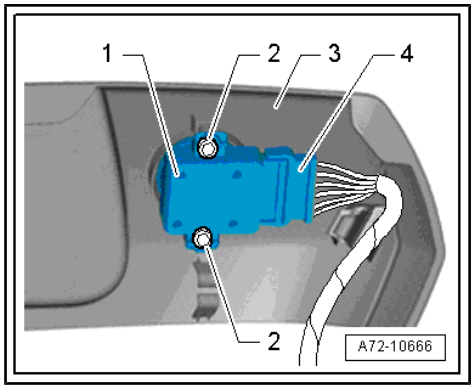
- The pendulum of the inertia safety latch must move freely.
- To check, deflect the pendulum by hand against the spring and release.
- The spring force must return the pendulum to its initial position and the catch at the opposing teeth must be completely open.
- The inertia safety latch and the spring must be renewed if the pendulum fails to return to its initial position even once over the course of at least five tests.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.5.13 Exploded view - seat pan, inertia safety latch”, page 415

2.16 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-



Removing

– Remove trim (sill side):

- Standard seat/sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ page 461
- Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat (with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 464

– Unplug electrical connector -4-.

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Detach switch -1- from trim -3-.

Installing

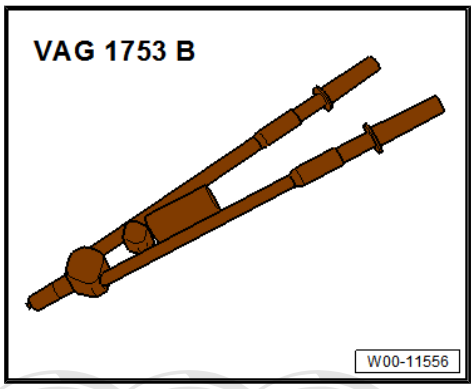
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.5.9 Exploded view - seat pan, seat adjustment actuators/ switches”, page 405

2.17 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor -V125- / -V126- / -V129- / -V130-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- Drill
- Safety goggles

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding:

♦ Standard seat/sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment) ⇒ page 668

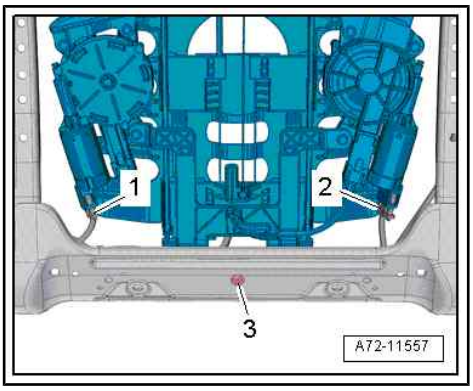
♦ Super sports seat ⇒ page 670

– Unplug electrical connectors -1- and -2- at longitudinal and height adjustment motors of lumbar support.

WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

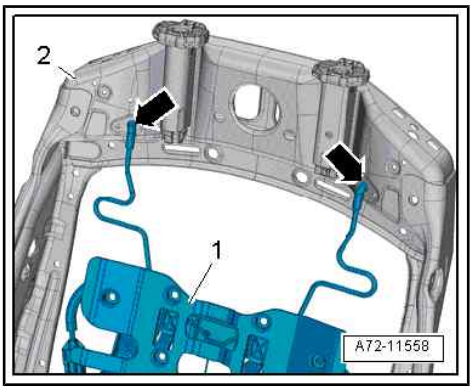
♦ *Put on safety goggles.*



– Drill out rivet -3-.

– Move electrical wiring harness clear at lumbar support.

– Swivel lumbar support -1- forwards at bottom, disengage from top of outer backrest frame -2- -arrows- and detach.

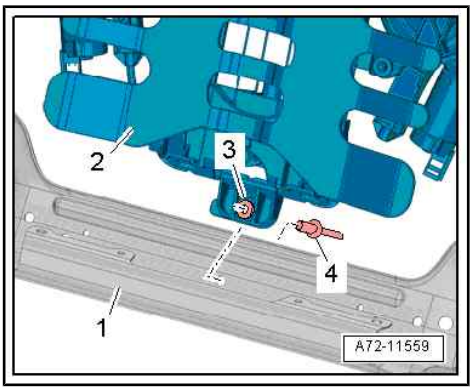


Installing

– Engage lumbar support -1- at top of outer backrest frame -2- -arrows- and swivel to rear at bottom.

– Before securing rivet -4-, check whether metal washer -3- has been inserted in lumbar support -2- from front.

– Rivet lumbar support to outer backrest frame.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

WARNING

♦ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

♦ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

♦ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3.6 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support", page 382

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

3 Rear seats

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 504

⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism”, page 509

⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide”, page 512

⇒ “3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest”, page 515

⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 522

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats”, page 531

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing centre storage compartment”, page 535

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing lock cylinder”, page 538

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 540

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 543

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 544

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism”, page 557

⇒ “3.13 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest”, page 559

⇒ “3.14 Removing and installing trim frame for load-through hatch”, page 562

⇒ “3.15 Removing and installing flap for load-through hatch”, page 563

⇒ “3.16 Removing and installing centre armrest”, page 564

3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats

⇒ “3.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components”, page 504

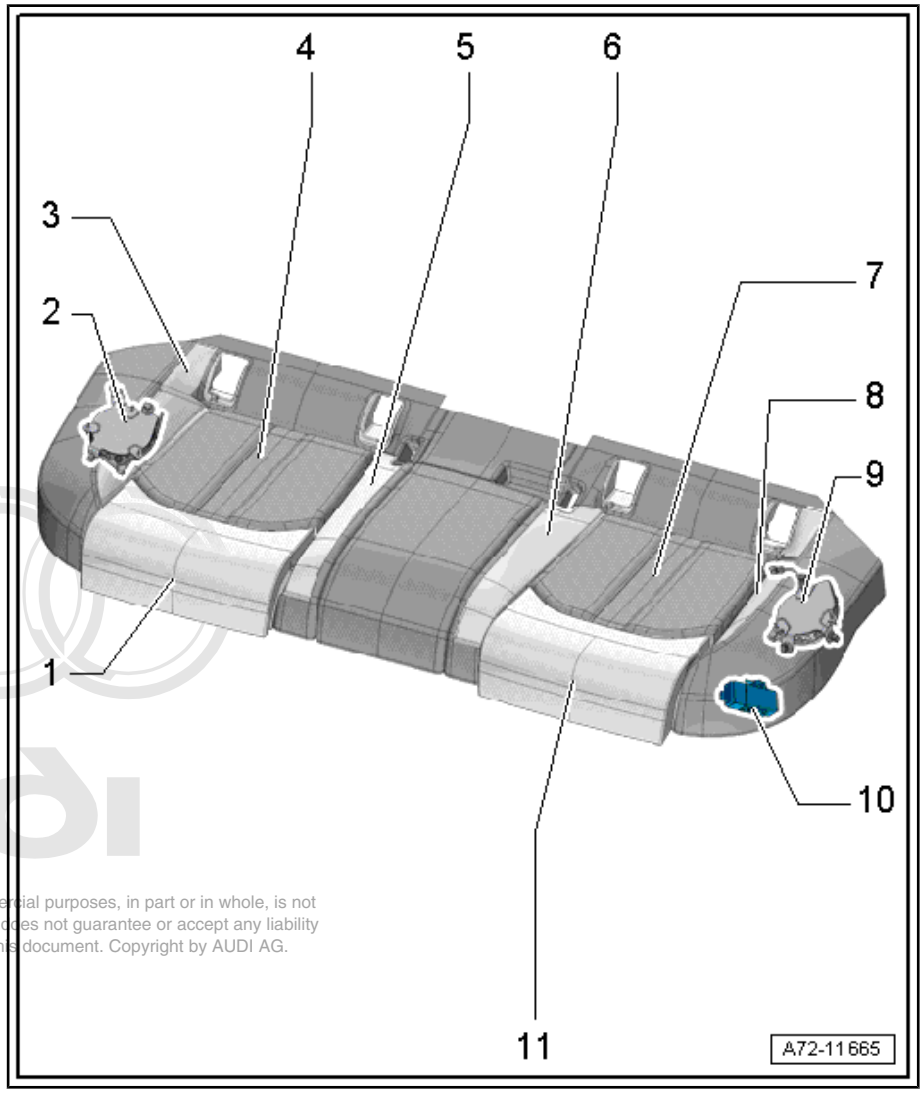
⇒ “3.1.2 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 506

⇒ “3.1.3 Exploded view - fans for seat bench/individual seats”, page 507

⇒ “3.1.4 Exploded view - fans for seat bench/individual seats, multi-contour seat”, page 508

3.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Heating element

- ❑ For leg support
- ❑ Bonded to seat padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 711

2 - Rear right seat fan - V270-

- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 534

3 - Right bolster heater for passenger side rear seat - Z89-

- ❑ Bonded to seat padding
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 711

4 - Heated bench seat cushion for rear right seat - Z12-

- ❑ Heating element stitched to seat cover; if defective, renew seat cover ⇒ “2.6 Detaching cover from padding”, page 708
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Left bolster heater for passenger side rear seat - Z88-

- ❑ Bonded to seat padding
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 711

6 - Right bolster heater for driver side rear seat - Z85-

- ❑ Bonded to seat padding
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 711

7 - Heated bench seat cushion for rear left seat - Z10-

- ❑ Heating element stitched to seat cover; if defective, renew seat cover ⇒ “2.6 Detaching cover from padding”, page 708
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

8 - Left bolster heater for driver side rear seat - Z84-

- ❑ Bonded to seat padding
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 711

9 - Rear left seat fan - V271-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 534

10 - Seat heating control unit - J882-

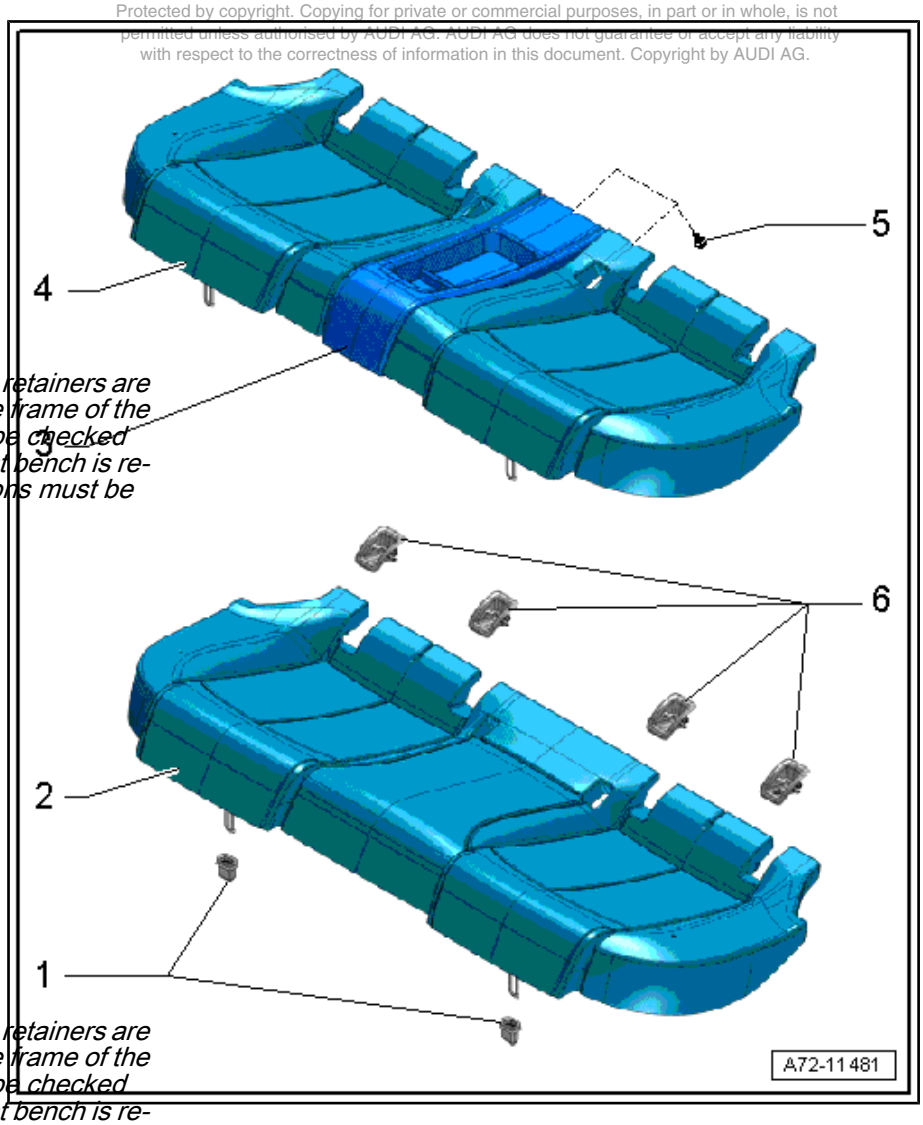
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 533

11 - Heating element

- ❑ For leg support
- ❑ Bonded to seat padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 711

3.1.2 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Retainers

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For securing rear seat bench
- ❑ Clipped into vehicle floor
- ❑ Always renew after removing rear seat bench

Note

The floor panel that the retainers are inserted in and the wire frame of the rear seat bench must be checked every time the rear seat bench is removed; any deformations must be corrected.

- ❑ Checking and correcting floor panel and wire frame ⇒ page 533

2 - Rear seat bench

- ❑ 3-seat rear seat bench (without storage compartment)
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 531

Note

The floor panel that the retainers are inserted in and the wire frame of the rear seat bench must be checked every time the rear seat bench is removed; any deformations must be corrected.

- ❑ Checking and correcting floor panel and wire frame ⇒ page 533

3 - Centre storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 535

4 - Rear seat bench - super sports seat

- ❑ 2-seat rear seat bench (with storage compartment)
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 531

Note

The floor panel that the retainers are inserted in and the wire frame of the rear seat bench must be checked every time the rear seat bench is removed; any deformations must be corrected.

- ❑ Checking and correcting floor panel and wire frame ⇒ page 533

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.8 Nm

6 - Guides

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ Clipped onto child seat anchor brackets (welded to vehicle floor)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1.3 Exploded view - fans for seat bench/individual seats

1 - Seat frame

- ❑ For rear seat bench

2 - Bracket

- ❑ For fan
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 534

3 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ Holds fan in place
- ❑ 3x

4 - Air mat

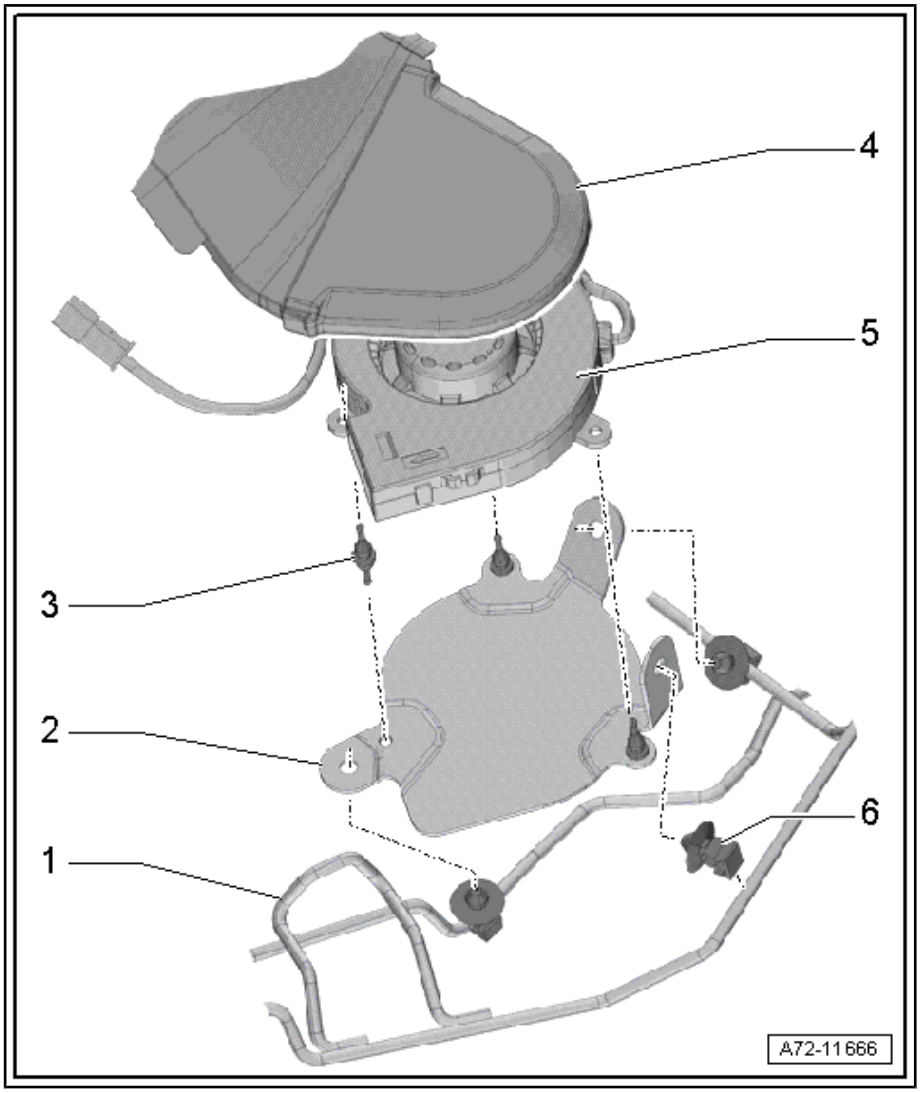
- ❑ Bonded to seat padding

5 - Rear right seat fan - V270- / rear left seat fan - V271-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 534
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

6 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Clipped in at frame



3.1.4 Exploded view - fans for seat bench/individual seats, multi-contour seat

1 - Module carrier with lumbar support air cushions

- ❑ Cannot be dismantled
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 641

2 - Backrest padding

3 - Air mat

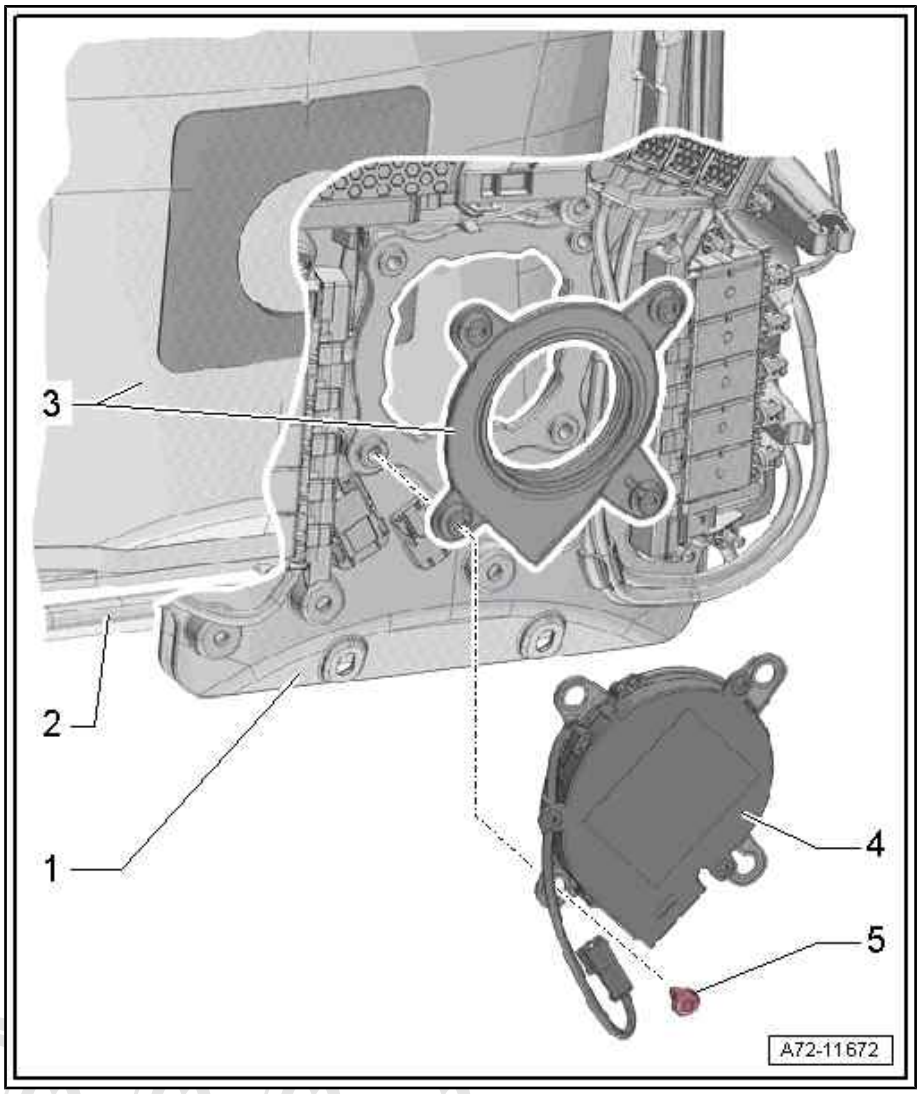
- ❑ Bonded to backrest padding
- ❑ Engage rubber collar in module carrier

4 - Rear left seat backrest fan - V273-

- ❑ Front passenger side: rear right seat backrest fan - V272-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 556

5 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 4x



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism

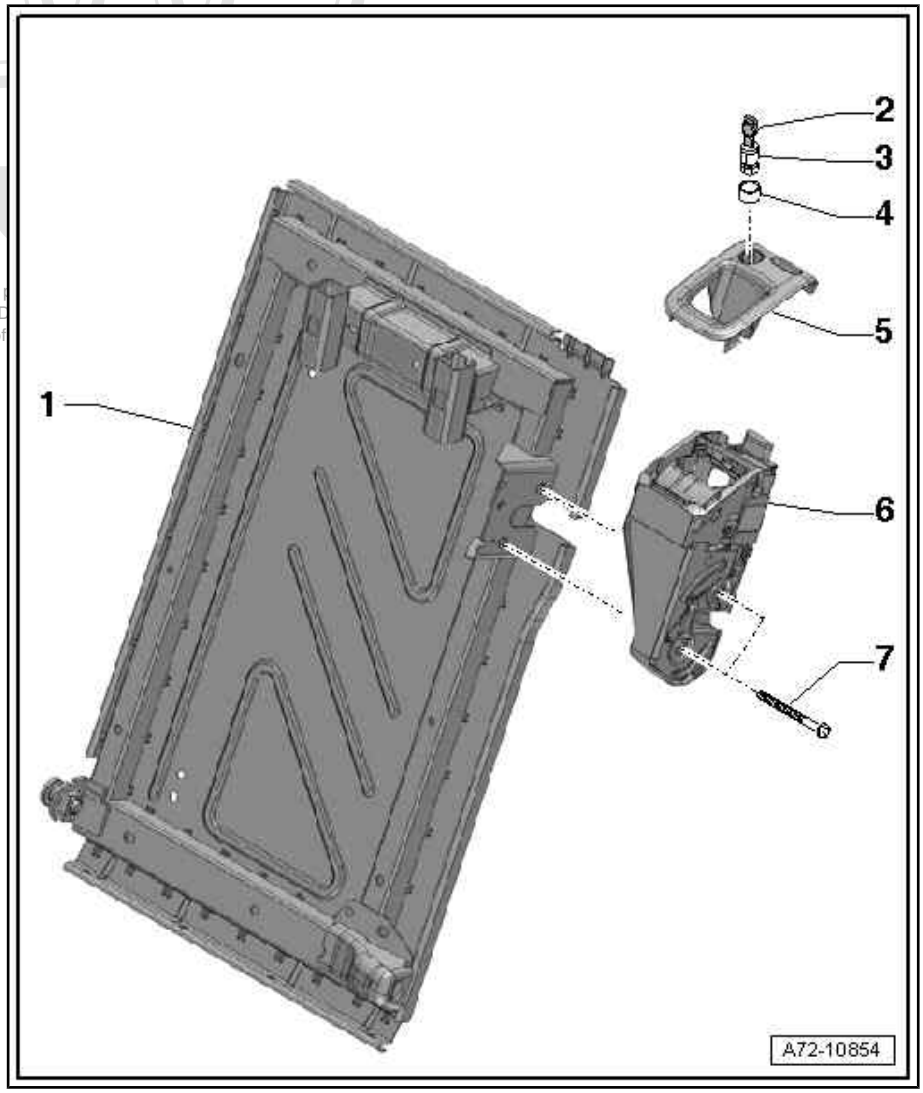
⇒ "3.2.1 Exploded view - locking mechanism, Saloon", page 509

⇒ "3.2.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism, Avant", page 510

3.2.1 Exploded view - locking mechanism, Saloon

Note

The exploded view refers to the locking mechanism for the 1/3 section (left-side) of the rear seat backrest. The locking mechanism for the 2/3 section (right-side) of the rear seat backrest is similar.



1 - Outer backrest frame of rear seat

2 - Key

3 - Lock cylinder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 538

Caution

Only remove and install lock cylinder with key properly inserted. Otherwise, tumblers and springs could drop out and lock cylinder will not function properly.

Observe correct installation position when installing lock cylinder. Backrest will not lock properly if installation position is incorrect.

4 - Protective cap

- ❑ For lock cylinder
- ❑ Detach before installing lock cylinder

Caution

Key must have been properly inserted in lock cylinder before detaching protective cap. Otherwise, tumblers and springs could drop out and lock will not function properly.

5 - Trim

- ❑ For locking mechanism and lock cylinder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 557
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Locking mechanism

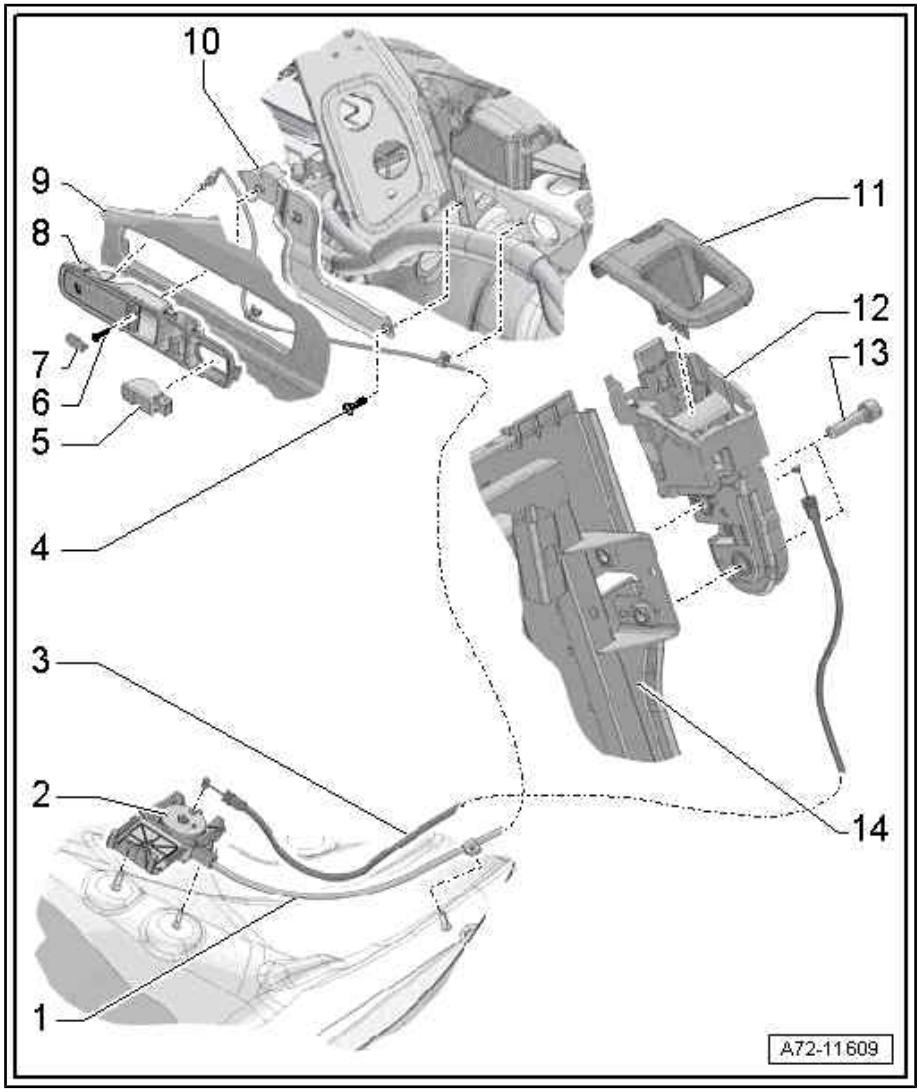
- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 559

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 25 Nm

3.2.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism, Avant

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction or copying, or copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For backrest remote release mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 561

2 - Connector point

- ❑ For Bowden cable
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 561
- ❑ Clipped into vehicle floor

3 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For locking mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.13.1 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest”, page 559

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5.2 Nm

5 - Luggage compartment light

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing luggage compartment light - W3-

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

7 - Cap

- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Release mechanism

- ❑ For backrest remote release mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 560
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

9 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 330

10 - Bracket

- ❑ For release mechanism for backrest remote release mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 562

11 - Trim

- ❑ For locking mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 557
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

12 - Locking mechanism

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 559

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 25 Nm

14 - Rear seat backrest

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide

⇒ “3.3.1 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, standard seat/sports seat”, page 512

⇒ “3.3.2 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, super sports seat”, page 513

⇒ “3.3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, multi-contour seat”, page 514

3.3.1 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, standard seat/ sports seat

1 - Rear seat backrest

2 - Head restraint guide

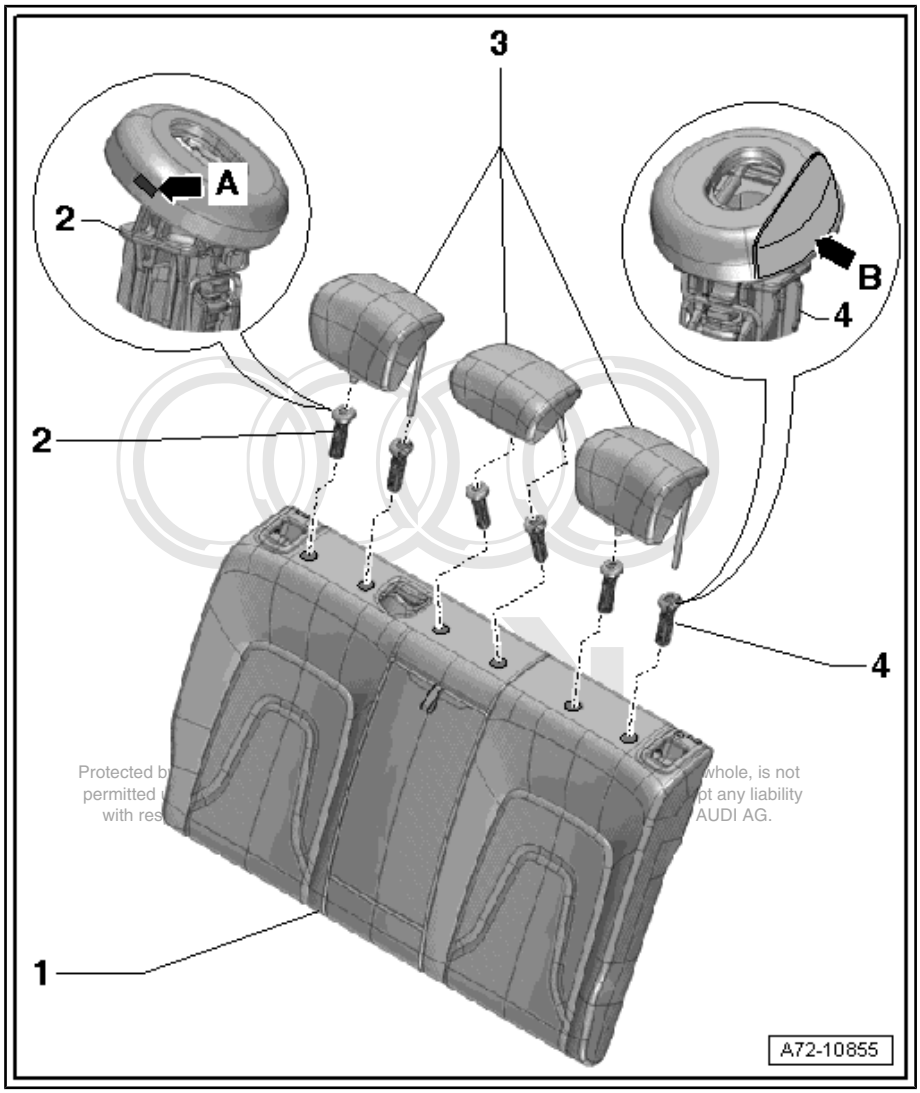
- ❑ With retaining clip -arrow A-
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 543

3 - Head restraints

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 540
- ❑ Must be locked in head restraint guides

4 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With button for head restraint height adjustment -arrow B-
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 543



Protected b
permitted
with res
whole, is not
pt any liability
AUDI AG.

3.3.2 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, super sports seat

1 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With retaining clip
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 543

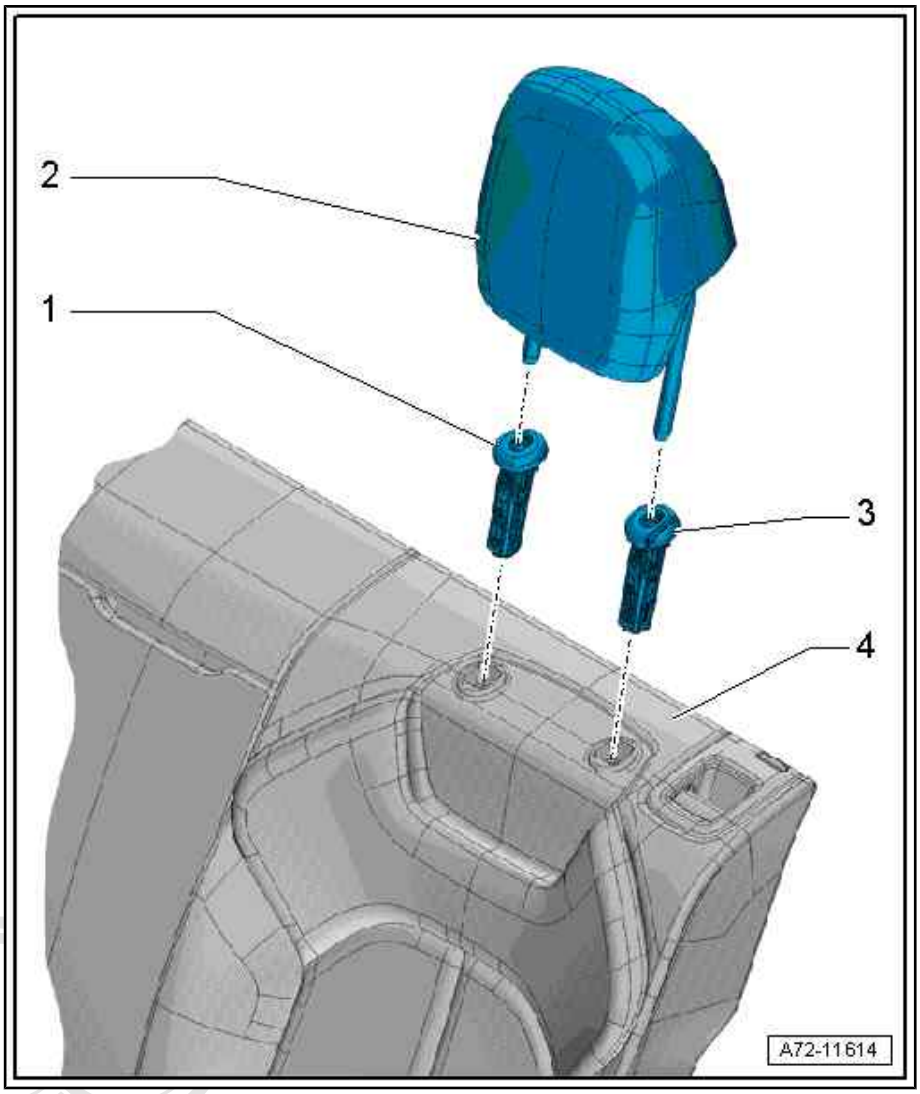
2 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 541
- ❑ Must be locked in head restraint guides

3 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 543

4 - Rear seat backrest



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, multi-contour seat

1 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 544

2 - Release button

- ❑ Behind cap -item 3-

3 - Cap

- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

4 - Head restraint

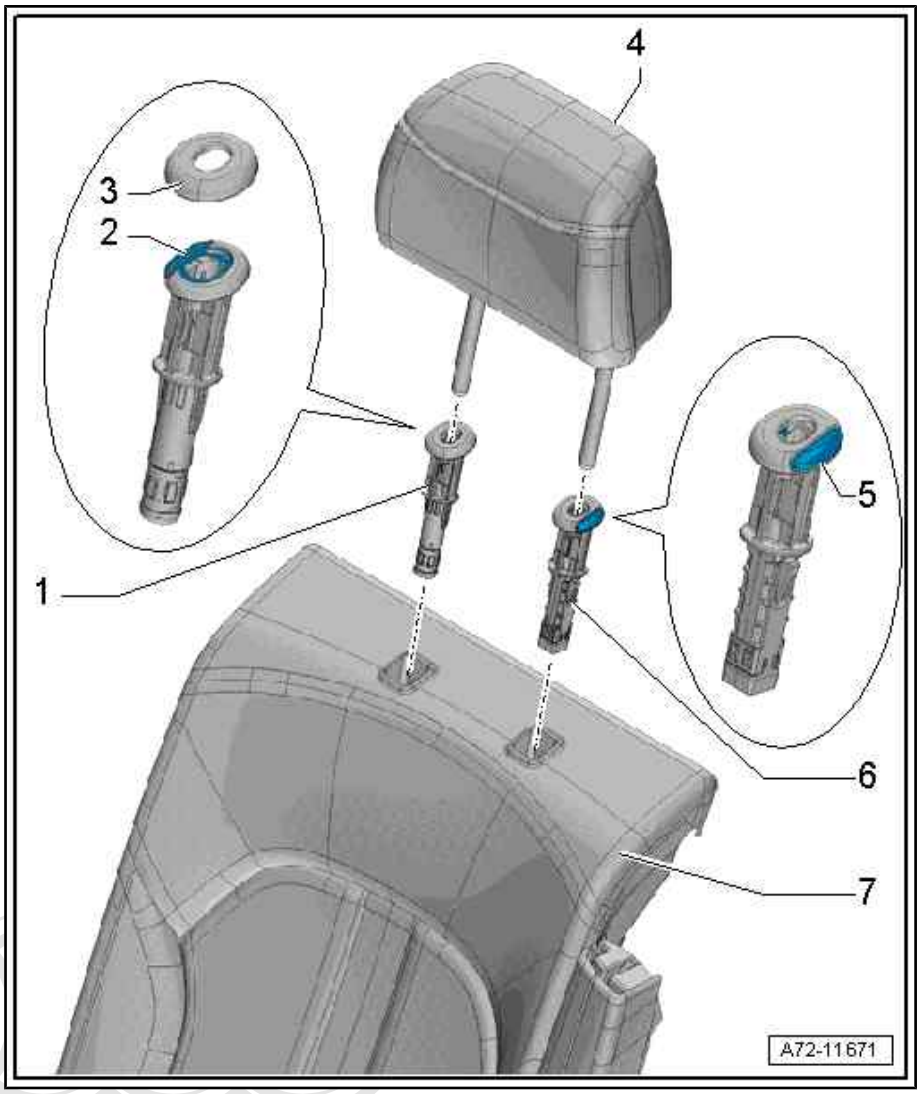
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 542

5 - Release button

6 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With button for adjusting height of head restraint
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 544

7 - Rear seat backrest



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest

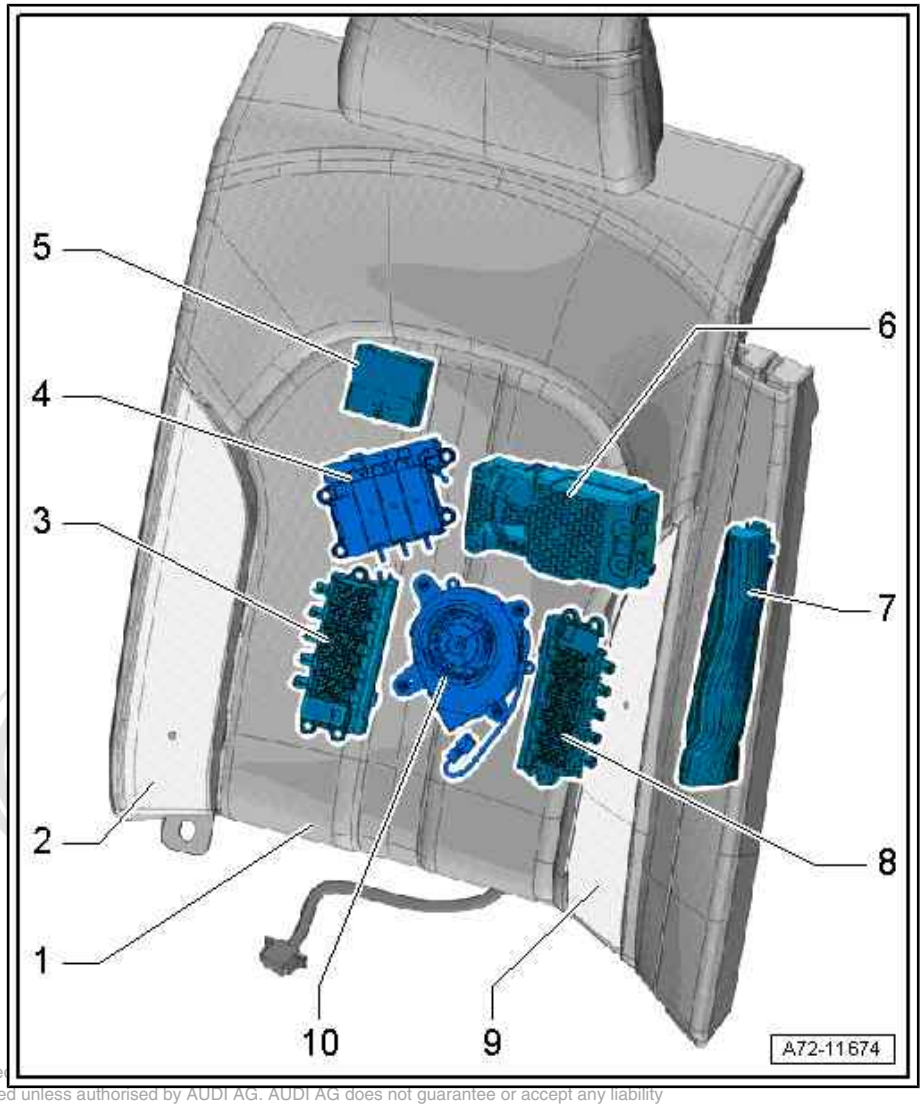
⇒ “3.4.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components”, page 515

⇒ “3.4.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat”, page 516

⇒ “3.4.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, super sports seat”, page 520

⇒ “3.4.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, multi-contour seat”, page 521

3.4.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components



1 - Heated backrest for rear left seat - Z11-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for rear right seat - Z13-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Heating element stitched to backrest cover; if defective, renew backrest cover ⇒ “2.6 Detaching cover from padding”, page 708

2 - Right bolster heater for driver side rear seat backrest - Z87-

- ❑ Passenger side: right bolster heater for passenger side rear seat backrest - Z91-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing heating element ⇒ page 714

3 - Valve block 3 in driver side rear seat - N525-

- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 3 in rear seat, passenger side - N526-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 644

4 - Valve block 1 in driver side rear seat - N479-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 1 in rear seat, passenger side - N481-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 640

5 - Control unit for rear seat adjustment, driver side - J876-

- ❑ Passenger side: control unit for rear seat adjustment, passenger side - J877-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 554
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Compressor for rear driver side multi-contour seat - V441- with integrated control unit -J875-

- ❑ Passenger side: compressor for rear passenger side multi-contour seat - V442- with integrated control unit -J874-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 638

7 - Side airbag (rear) with rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-

- ❑ Passenger side: Side airbag (rear) with rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202-

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 155

8 - Valve block 2 in driver side rear seat - N480-

- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 2 in rear seat, passenger side - N482-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 644

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Left bolster heater for driver side rear seat backrest - Z86-

- ❑ Passenger side: left bolster heater for passenger side rear seat backrest - Z90-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing heating element ⇒ page 714

10 - Rear left seat backrest fan - V273-

- ❑ Front passenger side: rear right seat backrest fan - V272-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 556

3.4.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat

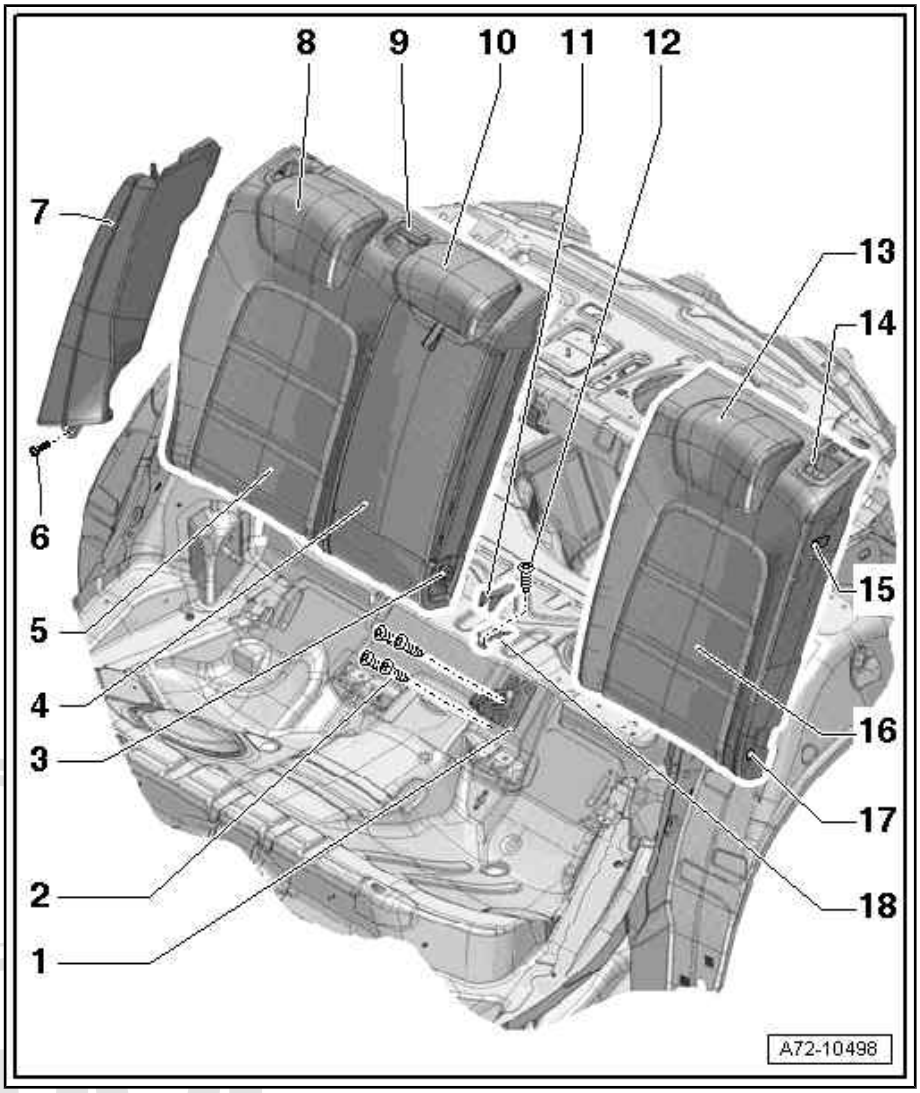
Split rear seat backrest ⇒ page 516

Fixed rear seat backrest ⇒ page 518

Split rear seat backrest

Note

The illustration shows the rear seat backrests in a saloon.



1 - Centre bracket

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 550

2 - Bolts

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 20 Nm

3 - Inner pivot pin

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 13.5 Nm
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 550

4 - Centre armrest (rear)

Equipment versions:

- ♦ With flap for load-through hatch
- ♦ With storage compartment
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 522

5 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Backrest remote release mechanism (Avant only)
- ♦ Backrest heating
- ♦ Load-through hatch
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 544

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm
- ❑ Tightening torque for equipment version with side airbag (rear) ⇒ page 154

7 - Side padding

Equipment version:

- ♦ Side airbag (rear)
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 552
  - ❑ First engage in belt guide (top)

8 - Head restraint (right-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 540

9 - Centre belt guide (rear)

- ❑ Only on equipment version with 3-seat rear seat
- ❑ Renew entire belt guide if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 114

10 - Head restraint (centre)

- ❑ Only on equipment version with 3-seat rear seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 540

11 - Cover

- ❑ For centre bracket
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

13 - Head restraint (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 540

14 - Trim

- ❑ For locking mechanism with lock cylinder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 557
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

15 - Locking mechanism

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 559

16 - 1/3 section of rear seat backrest (left-side)

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Backrest remote release mechanism (Avant only)
- ♦ Backrest heating
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 544

17 - Outer bearing sleeve

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 550
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

18 - Retaining clip

- ❑ For centre bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 544

Fixed rear seat backrest

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Fixed rear seat backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 548

2 - Head restraints

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 540

3 - Retainers

- ❑ Secured to body with rivets

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 30 Nm

5 - Back panel trim

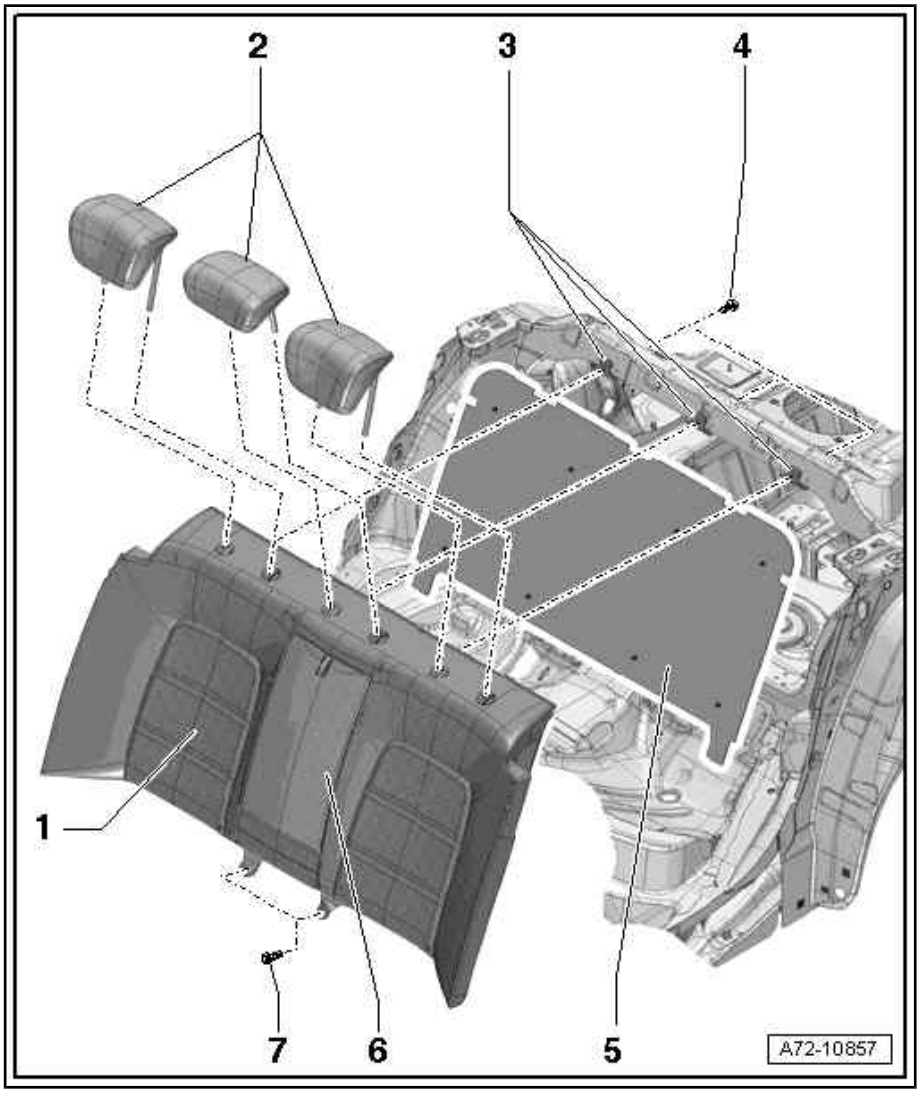
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 331

6 - Centre armrest (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 527

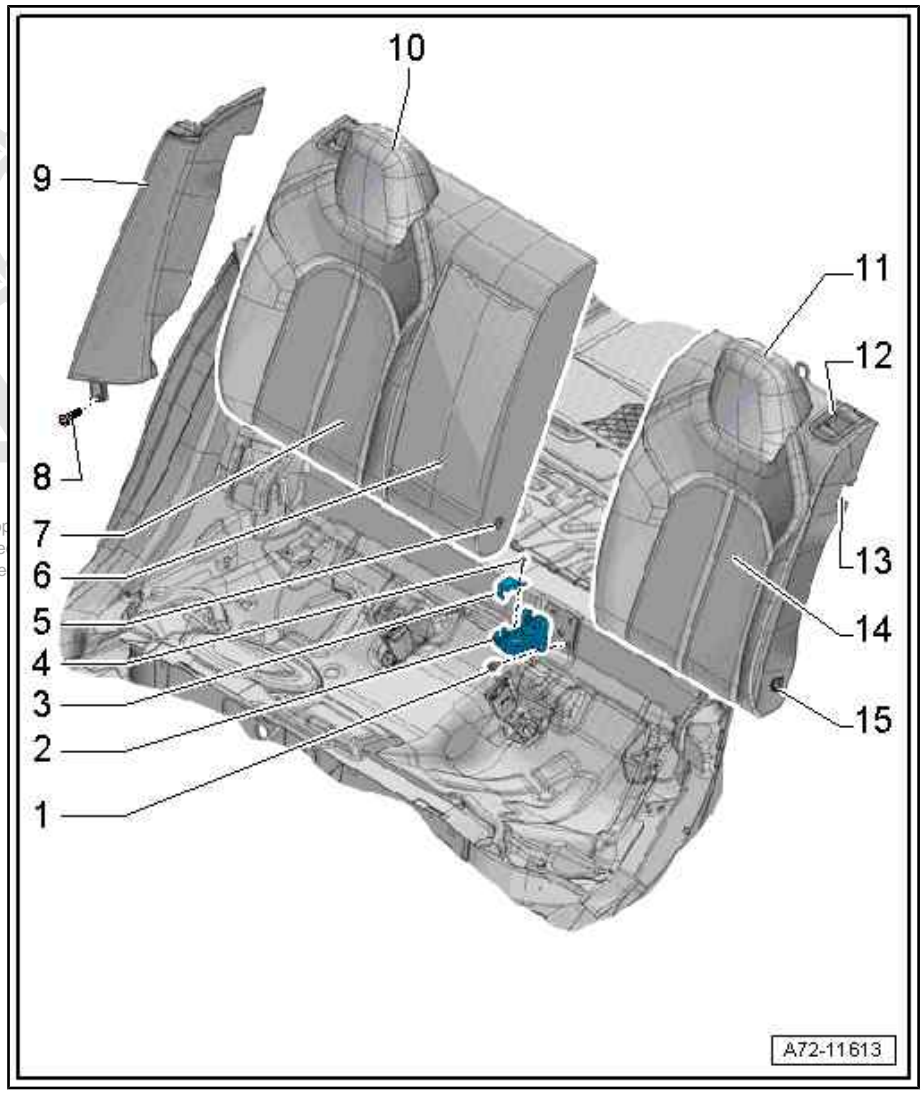
7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 33 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.4.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, super sports seat



1 - Bolts
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 20 Nm

2 - Centre bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 550

3 - Retaining clip
- ❑ For centre bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 544

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

5 - Inner pivot pin
- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 13.5 Nm
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 550

Protected by copyright. Cop
permitted unless authorise
with respect to the corre

6 - Centre armrest (rear)

Equipment versions:
- ♦ With flap for load-through hatch
- ♦ With storage compartment
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 522

7 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Backrest heating
- ♦ Load-through hatch
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 544

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 3 Nm
- ❑ Tightening torque for equipment version with side airbag (rear) ⇒ page 154

9 - Side padding

Equipment version:
- ♦ Side airbag (rear)
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 552
  - ❑ First engage in belt guide (top)

10 - Head restraint (right-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 541

11 - Head restraint (left-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 541

12 - Trim
- ❑ For locking mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 557

- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

13 - Locking mechanism

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 559

14 - 1/3 section of rear seat backrest (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 544

15 - Outer bearing sleeve

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 550
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3.4.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, multi-contour seat

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 45 Nm

2 - Multi-contour seat

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 548

3 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 542

4 - Rivet

- ❑ 20x
- ❑ Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-

5 - Bolt

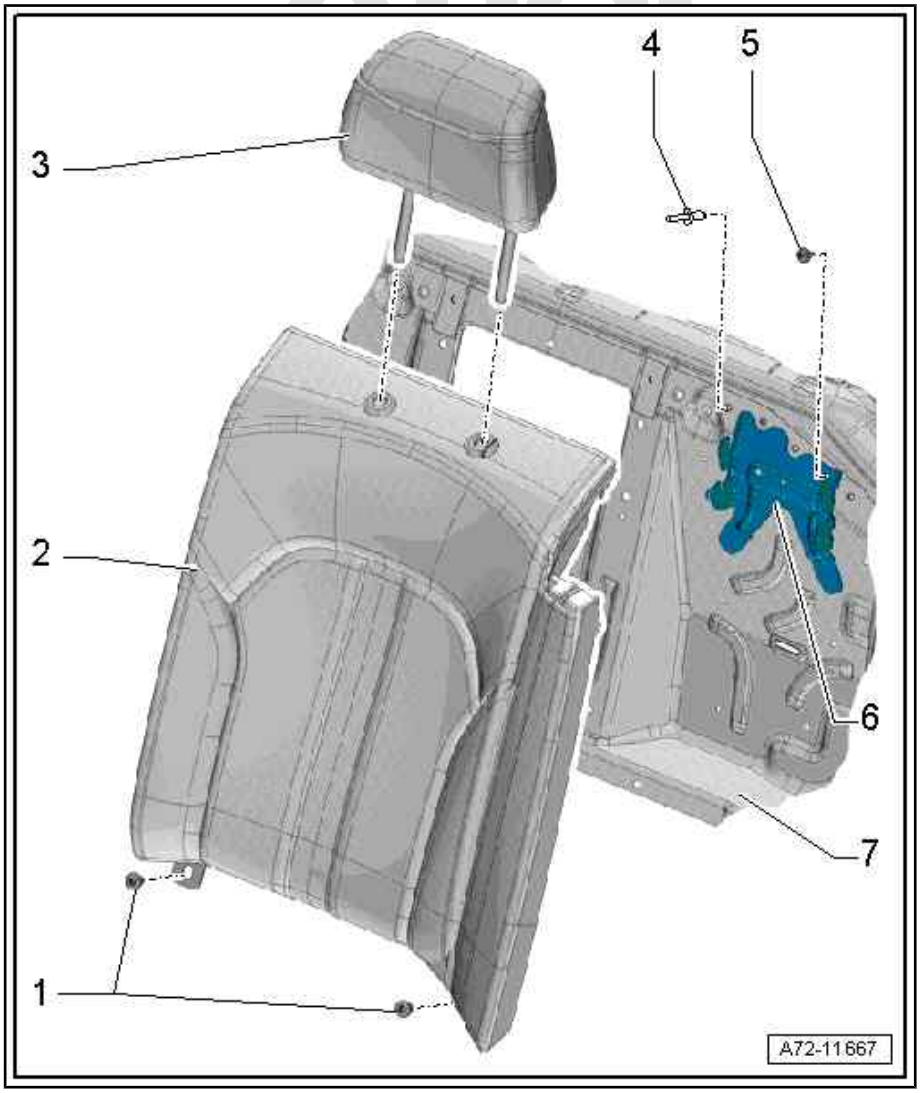
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Mounting bracket

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ Welded to back panel

7 - Back panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 555



3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest

⇒ “3.5.1 Exploded view - centre armrest, basic version”, page 522

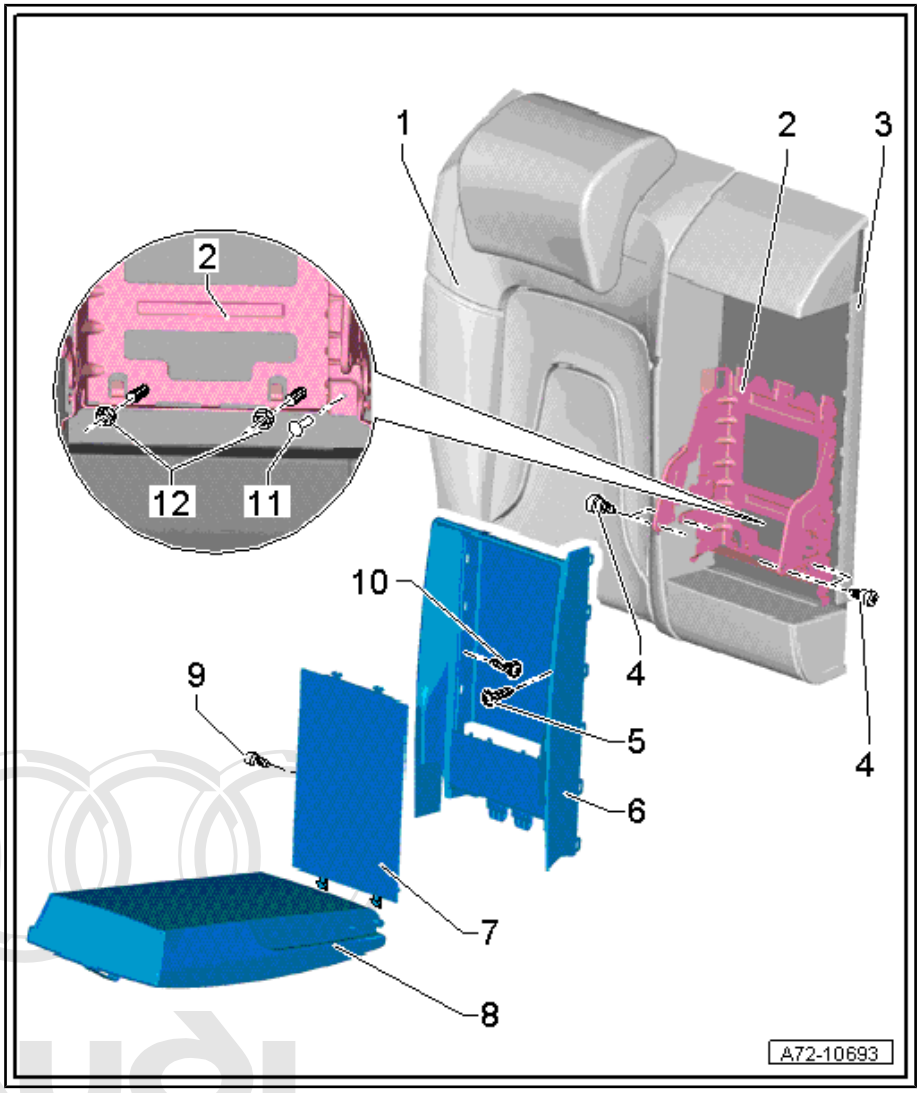
⇒ “3.5.2 Exploded view - centre armrest, storage compartment”, page 524

⇒ “3.5.3 Exploded view - centre armrest, backrest with load-through hatch”, page 525

⇒ “3.5.4 Exploded view - centre armrest, fixed rear seat backrest”, page 527

⇒ “3.5.5 Exploded view - centre armrest, country-specific version”, page 528

3.5.1 Exploded view - centre armrest, basic version



1 - 2/3 section of split rear seat backrest (right-side)

- ❑ Without load-through hatch
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

2 - Bracket for centre armrest

- ❑ With hinges
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 567

3 - Cover

- ❑ Clipped into trim for centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.7.2 Removing and installing centre storage compartment in rear seat backrest”, page 535
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

4 - Bolts

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 11 Nm

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

6 - Trim

- ❑ For centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.16.4 Removing and installing bracket/hinges for centre armrest - split rear seat backrest”, page 567
- ❑ Insert and press on until it engages audibly

7 - Trim

- ❑ For centre armrest

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ “3.16.4 Removing and installing bracket/hinges for centre armrest - split rear seat backrest”, page 567
- ❑ Check for damage in area of catches and renew if catches are damaged
- ❑ Insert and press on until it engages audibly

8 - Centre armrest (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 564

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 0.9 Nm

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

11 - Rivet

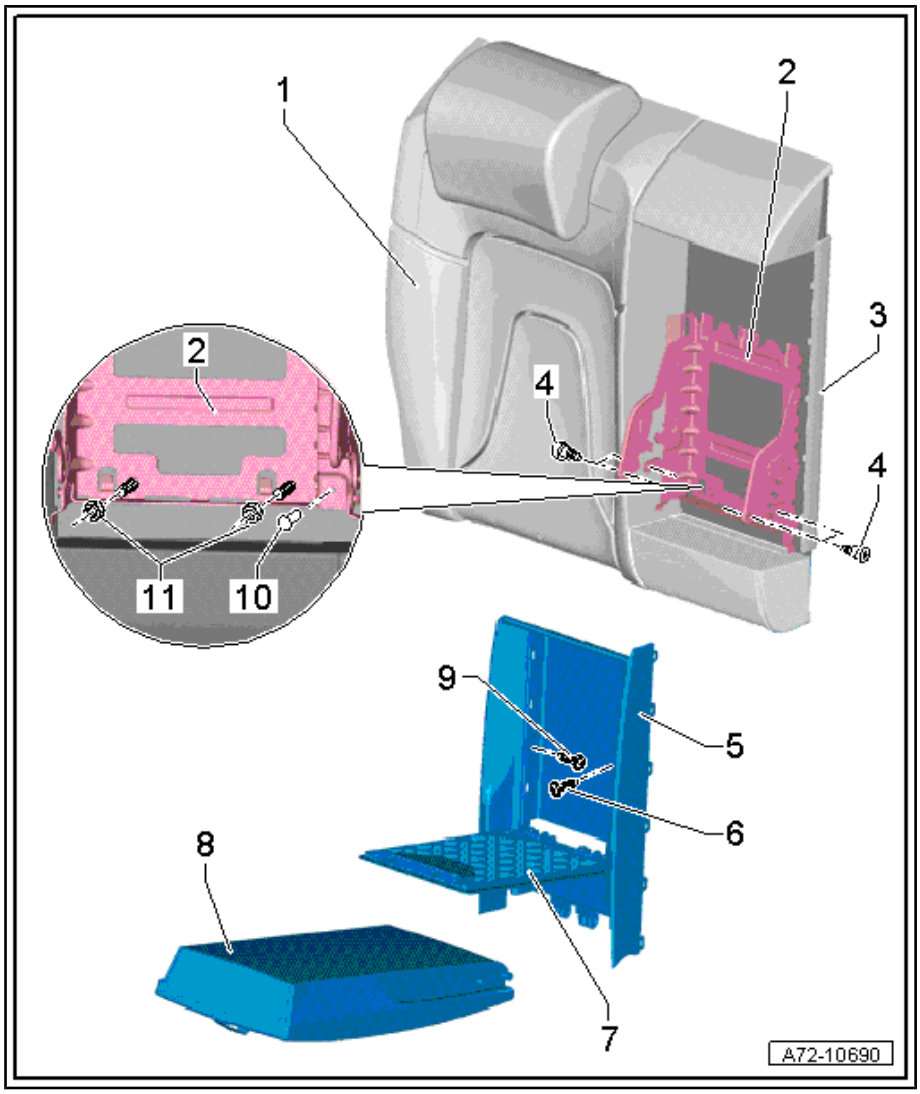
- ❑ Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-

12 - Nuts

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 8 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.5.2 Exploded view - centre armrest, storage compartment



1 - 2/3 section of split rear seat backrest (right-side)

- ❑ Without load-through hatch
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

2 - Bracket for centre armrest

- ❑ With hinges
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 567

3 - Cover

- ❑ Clipped into storage compartment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.7.2 Removing and installing centre storage compartment in rear seat backrest”, page 535
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

4 - Bolts

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 11 Nm

5 - Storage box

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 535
- ❑ Insert and press on until it engages audibly

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

7 - Lid

- ❑ For storage compartment
- ❑ Combined in one unit with storage compartment; cannot be renewed separately

8 - Centre armrest (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 564

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

10 - Rivet

- ❑ Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-

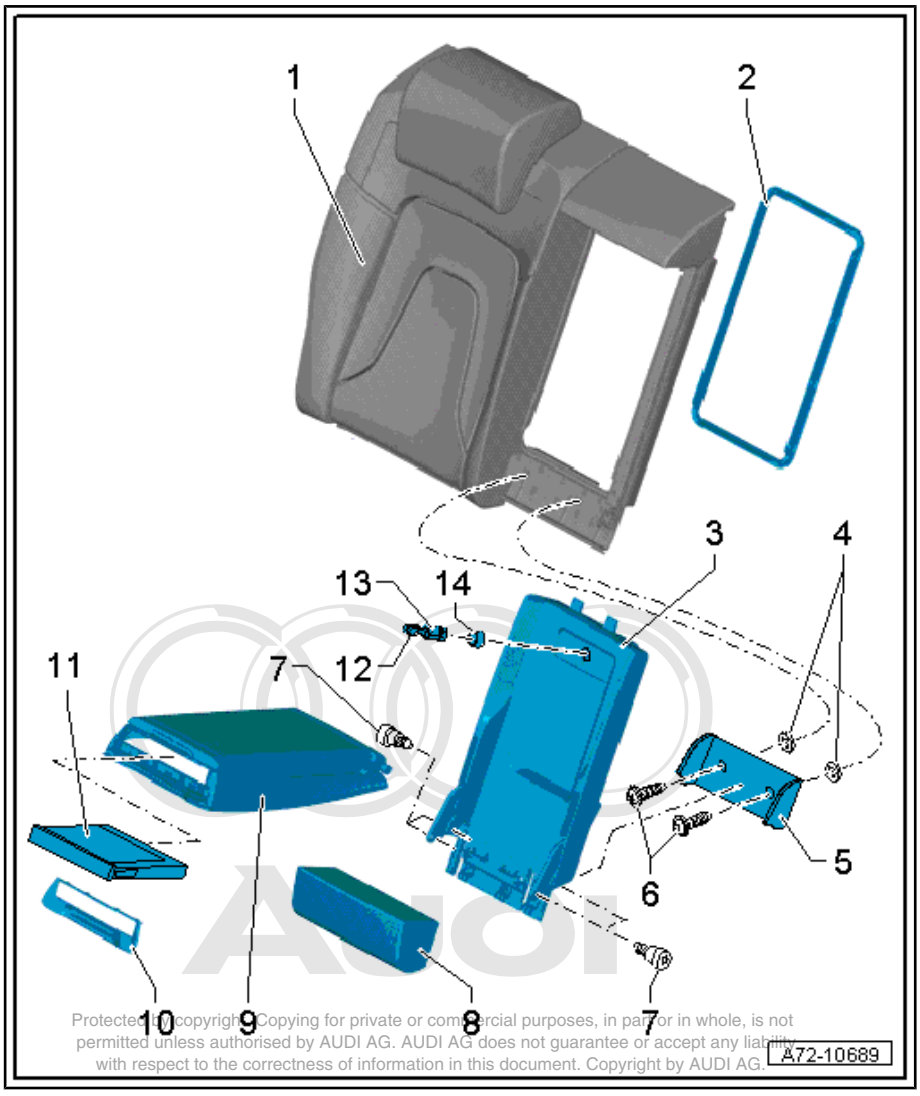
11 - Nuts

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

❑ 8 Nm

3.5.3 Exploded view - centre armrest, backrest with load-through hatch



1 - 2/3 section of split rear seat backrest (right-side)

- ❑ With load-through hatch
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

2 - Trim frame

- ❑ For load-through hatch
- ❑ Clipped into rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 562
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - Flap

- ❑ For load-through hatch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 563

4 - Securing clip

- ❑ For bolt -item 6-
- ❑ 2x

5 - Bracket

- ❑ For centre armrest
- ❑ Cannot be renewed separately

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 11 Nm

8 - Intermediate padding (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 707
- ❑ Engage padding at flap for load-through hatch and press on until it engages audibly

9 - Centre armrest (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 564

10 - Trim

- ❑ For cup holder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.16.3 Removing and installing cup holders”, page 566
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

11 - Cup holder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 566
- ❑ Insert and press on until it engages audibly

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Key

13 - Lock cylinder

- ❑ For flap for load-through hatch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 539

Caution

Only remove and install lock cylinder with key properly inserted. Otherwise, tumblers and springs could drop out and lock cylinder will not function properly.

Observe correct installation position when installing lock cylinder. Backrest will not lock properly if installation position is incorrect.

14 - Protective cap

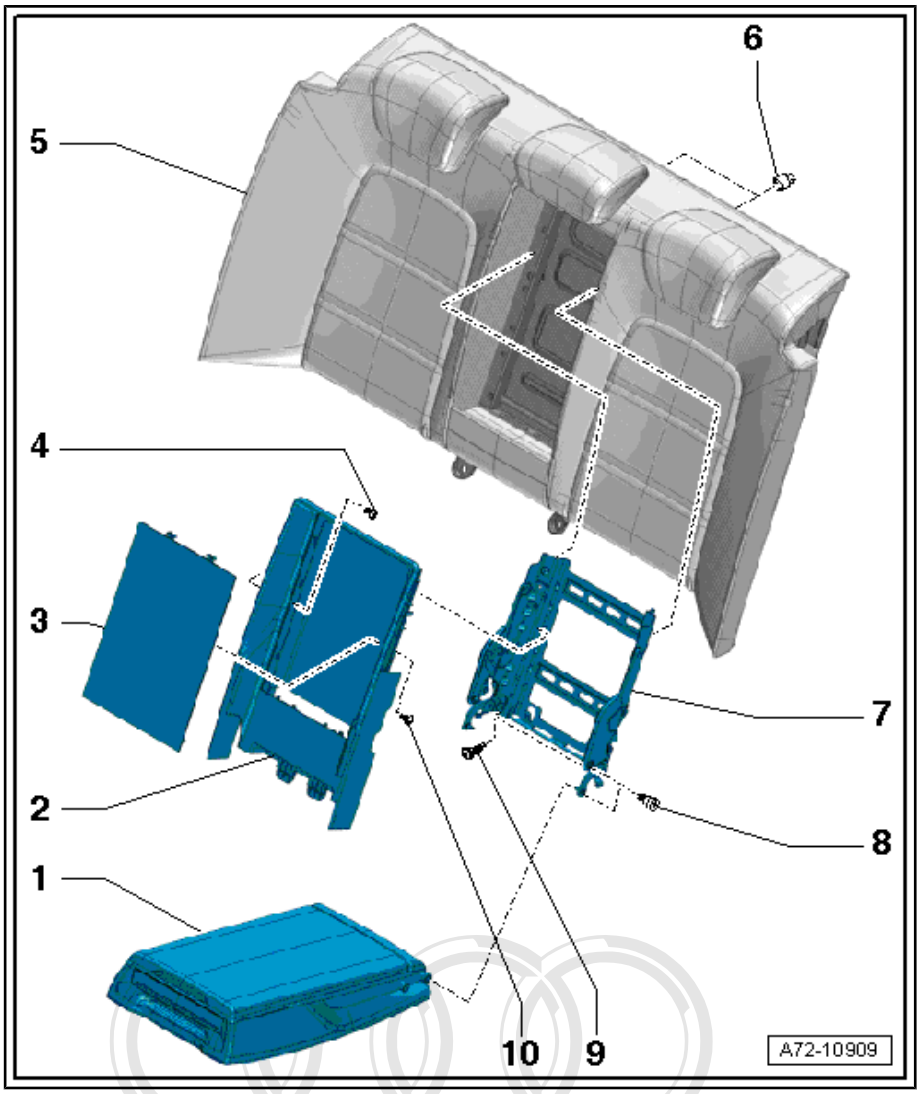
- ❑ For lock cylinder
- ❑ Detach before installing lock cylinder

Caution

Key must have been properly inserted in lock cylinder before detaching protective cap. Otherwise, tumblers and springs could drop out and lock cylinder will not function properly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.5.4 Exploded view - centre armrest, fixed rear seat backrest



1 - Centre armrest (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 564

Equipment version with cup holder:

- ❑ Removing and installing cup holder ⇒ page 566

2 - Trim

- ❑ For centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.16.5 Removing and installing bracket/hinges for centre armrest - fixed rear seat backrest”, page 571

3 - Trim

- ❑ For centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.16.5 Removing and installing bracket/hinges for centre armrest - fixed rear seat backrest”, page 571

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4 Nm

5 - Fixed rear seat backrest

- ❑ Depending on equipment version

6 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tighten evenly and alternately
- ❑ 5 Nm

7 - Bracket

- ❑ With hinges
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 571

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ 11 Nm

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 0.9 Nm

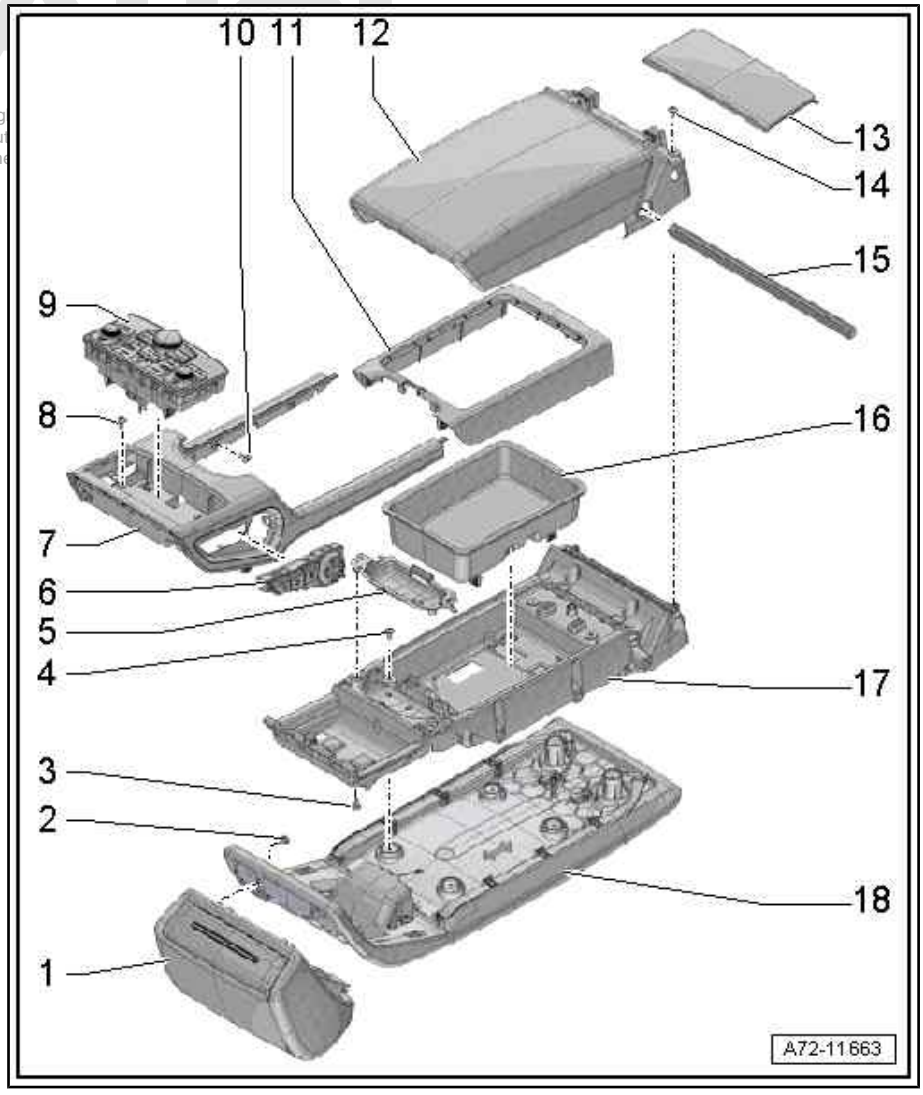
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.5.5 Exploded view - centre armrest, country-specific version

Centre armrest ⇒ page 528

Mounting for centre armrest ⇒ page 529

Centre armrest



1 - Padding

- ❑ For head restraint in centre armrest
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.5.3 Removing and installing padding for centre armrest (rear)”, page 708

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.6 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ 1.6 Nm

5 - Grip moulding

- ❑ In armrest (bottom section)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.5.3 Removing and installing padding for centre armrest (rear)”, page 708

6 - Switch for rear multi-contour seat, driver side - E660-

- ❑ Right side: switch for rear multi-contour seat, front passenger side - E661-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in centre console

7 - Trim

- ❑ For centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 573
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.8 Nm

9 - Multimedia system operating unit 2 - E499-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.8 Nm

11 - Trim

- ❑ For tray
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.7.3 Removing and installing centre storage compartment in centre armrest - country-specific version”, page 537
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

12 - Armrest (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 577

13 - Trim cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.16.8 Removing and installing mounting/centre armrest - country-specific version”, page 575

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2.4 Nm

15 - Shaft

16 - Tray

- ❑ For centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 537
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert and press on until it engages audibly

17 - Armrest (bottom section)

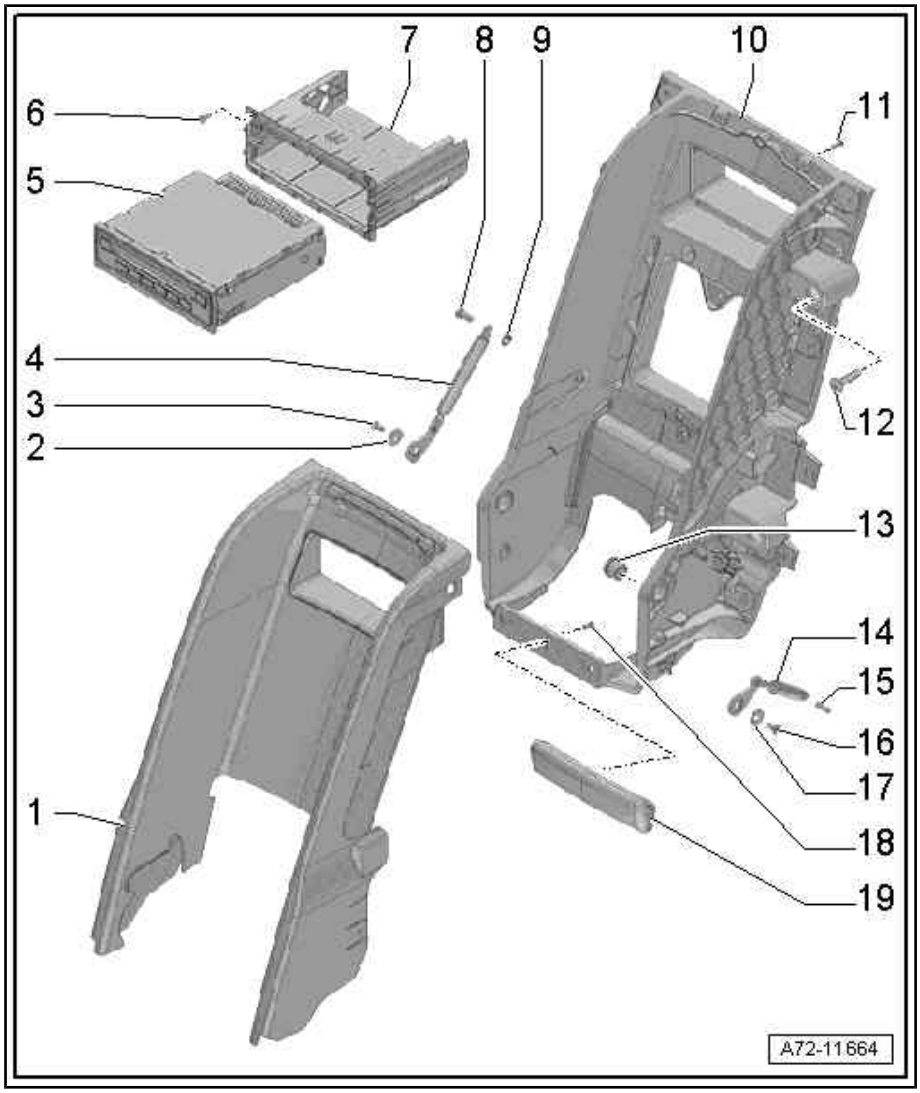
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 575

18 - Padding

- ❑ For armrest (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 708

Mounting for centre armrest

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Trim

- For mounting for centre armrest
- Removing and installing ⇒ “3.16.7 Removing and installing pressure damper/gas strut for centre armrest - country-specific version”, page 574
- Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Washer

- Note direction of installation: taped side must point towards outwards

3 - Bolt

- 4 Nm

4 - Gas strut (large)

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 574

5 - Control unit 2 for information electronics - J829-

- Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

6 - Bolt

- 4x
- Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

7 - Mounting

- For control unit 2 for information electronics - J829-
- Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

8 - Retaining pin

9 - Retaining clip

- For retaining pin

10 - Mounting

- For centre armrest (rear)
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 565

11 - Bolt

- 6x
- 1.8 Nm

12 - Bolt

- 8x
- 8 Nm

13 - Bush

- 2x

- ❑ For shaft

14 - Gas strut (small)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 574

15 - Retaining pin

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

17 - Washer

- ❑ Note direction of installation: taped side must point towards outwards

18 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 1.8 Nm

19 - Intermediate padding

- ❑ For centre armrest (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 707
- ❑ Insert and press on until it engages audibly

3.6 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats

⇒ “3.6.1 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats”, page 531

⇒ “3.6.2 Checking floor panel for retainers and wire frame of rear seat bench and correcting any deformations”, page 533

⇒ “3.6.3 Removing and installing seat heating control unit J882 ”, page 533

⇒ “3.6.4 Removing and installing rear seat fan”, page 534

3.6.1 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats

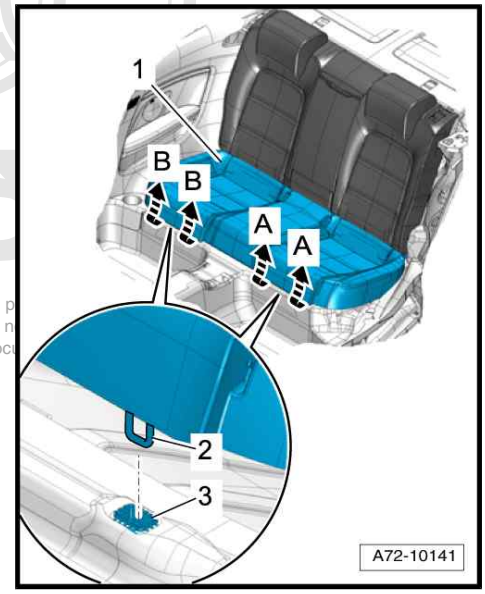
Removing

– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.

– Unclip guides for child seat anchor (4x) from anchors ⇒ page 126 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Reach beneath seat bench frame on one side with both hands.
– Using both hands, pull rear seat bench -1- firmly and abruptly upwards -arrows A- to disengage wire hook -2- for rear seat bench from retainer -3-.
– Repeat procedure on other side of rear seat bench -arrows B-.
– Equipment version with seat heating: Unplug electrical connector for seat heating.
– Equipment version with multi-contour seat: Unplug electrical connector for multi-contour seat.
– Take rear seat bench out of vehicle.

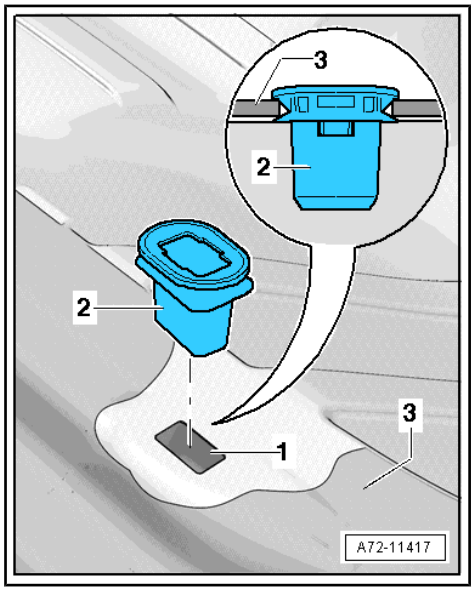


Copyright by AUDI AG. Commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n
with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Lift floor covering -3- and press new retainers into body cut-out -1- until they engage audibly.
– Fit floor covering around retainer, as illustrated.

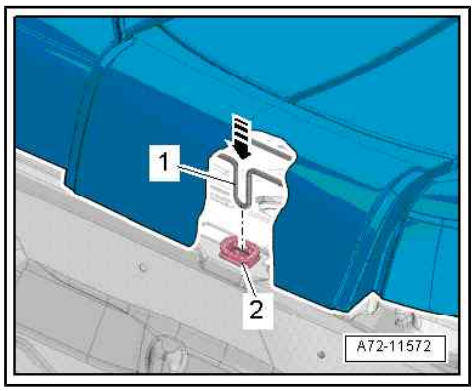


Note

- *The floor panel that the retainers are inserted in and the wire frame of the rear seat bench must be checked every time the rear seat bench is removed; any deformations must be corrected* *⇒ page 533* *.*
- *Floor covering -3- must not lie on top of retainer -2-.*
- *Make sure electrical connector for seat heating is pressed on as far as it will go and engages audibly.*

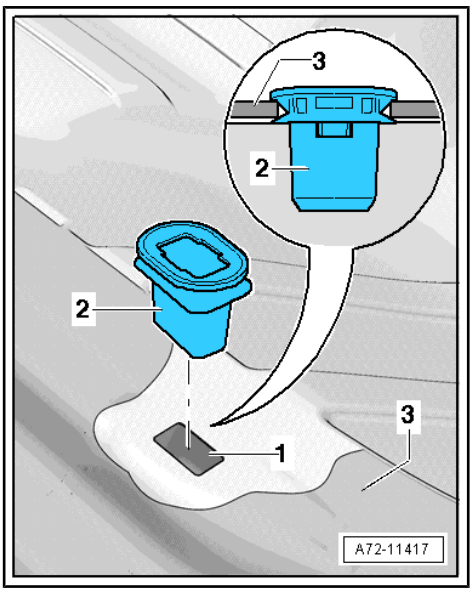
– Fit rear seat bench and press wire hooks -1- firmly into retainers -2- -arrow-.
– Make sure that wire hooks are properly engaged in retainers.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 504



3.6.2 Checking floor panel for retainers and wire frame of rear seat bench and correcting any deformations

Checking floor panel and correcting deformations



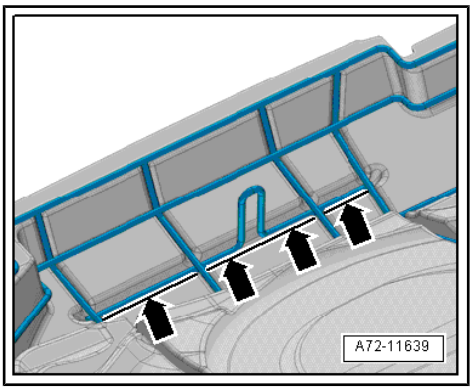
– Check body cut-outs -1- for deformation.

– If there are deformations, correct them by knocking back panel with a plastic hammer.

Note

Minor remaining deformations are permissible.

Checking wire frame of rear seat bench and correcting deformations

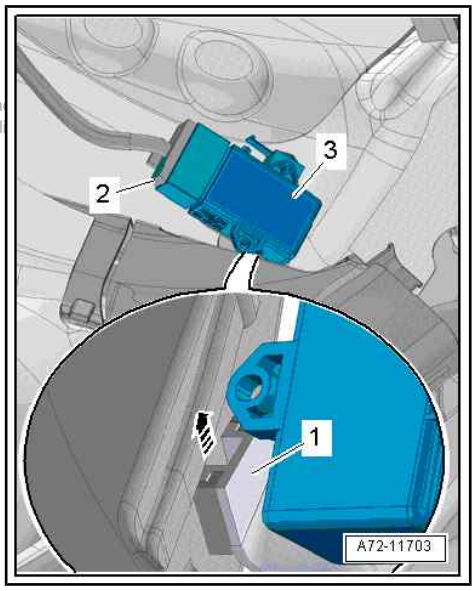


– Before installing rear seat bench, check whether wire frame is flush in area marked with -arrows-.

– If wire frame is bent, bend it back until it is flush again -arrows-.

3.6.3 Removing and installing seat heating control unit - J882-

Removing



– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .

– Lift sill panel trim slightly over control unit -3- and disengage retainer -1- at cable guide -arrow-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

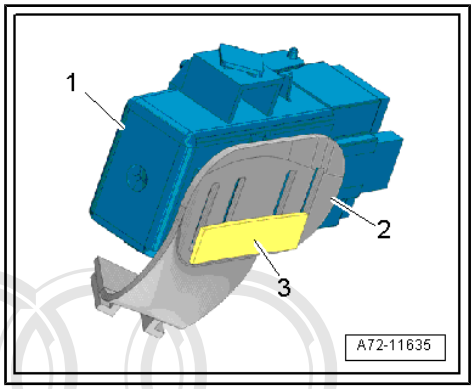
The retainer for the control unit is bonded onto the body additionally with an adhesive strip.

– Unplug electrical connector -2- and detach seat heating control unit.

Installing

– Clip control unit -1- into retainer -2- and peel protective film off adhesive strip -3-.

– Engage control unit with bracket into cable guide and press firmly onto body.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 504

3.6.4 Removing and installing rear seat fan

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



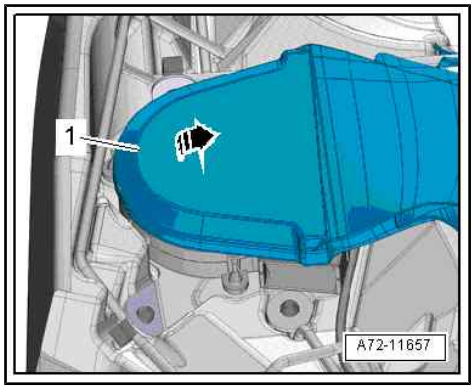
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .

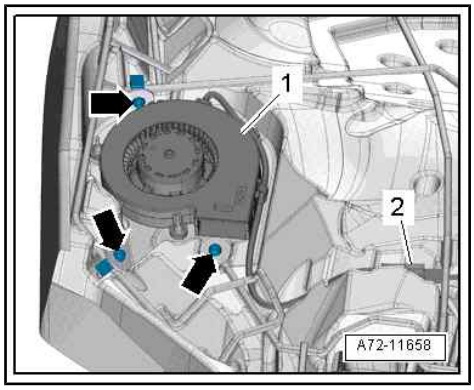
– Remove seat cover in area of fan for rear seat bench; to do so, remove staple from cover ⇒ page 700 .

– Unclip connecting piece -1- of air mat from fan for rear seat bench -arrow-.



– Unplug electrical connector -2- for fan.

– Release clips -arrows- and detach fan -1- for rear seat bench with retainer.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.1.3 Exploded view - fans for seat bench/individual seats”, page 507

3.7 Removing and installing centre storage compartment

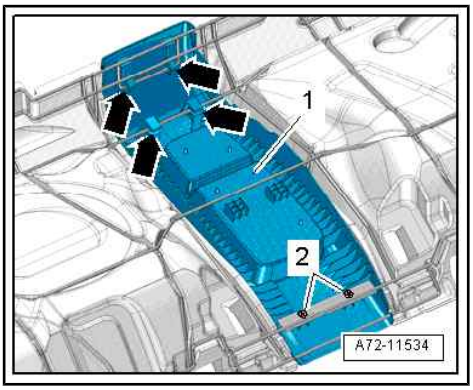
⇒ “3.7.1 Removing and installing centre storage compartment in seat bench”, page 535

⇒ “3.7.2 Removing and installing centre storage compartment in rear seat backrest”, page 535

⇒ “3.7.3 Removing and installing centre storage compartment in centre armrest - country-specific version”, page 537

3.7.1 Removing and installing centre storage compartment in seat bench

Removing



– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Unclip centre storage compartment -1- from seat frame -arrows-.
– Detach centre storage compartment from seat frame.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– When installing, make sure all lugs have been fitted to seat frame and that centre storage compartment is fully engaged.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

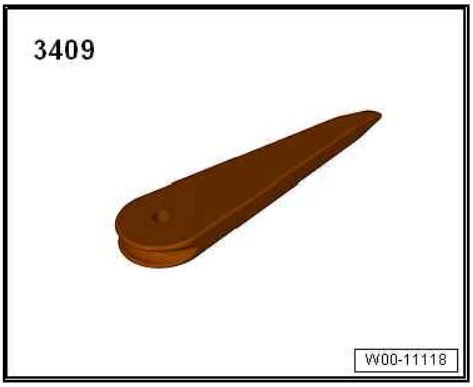
⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 504

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.7.2 Removing and installing centre storage compartment in rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

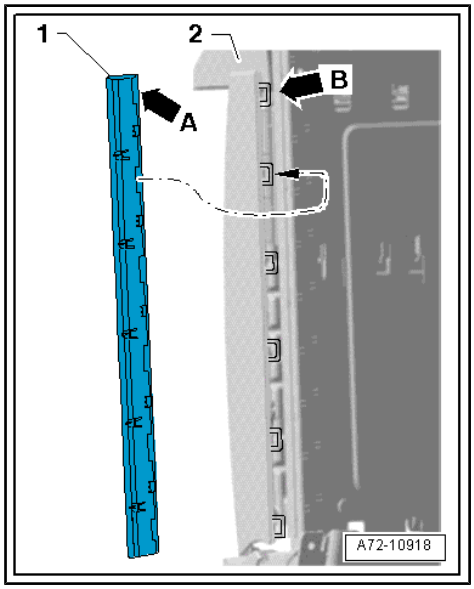


Removing

– Remove centre armrest (rear) ⇒ page 564 .

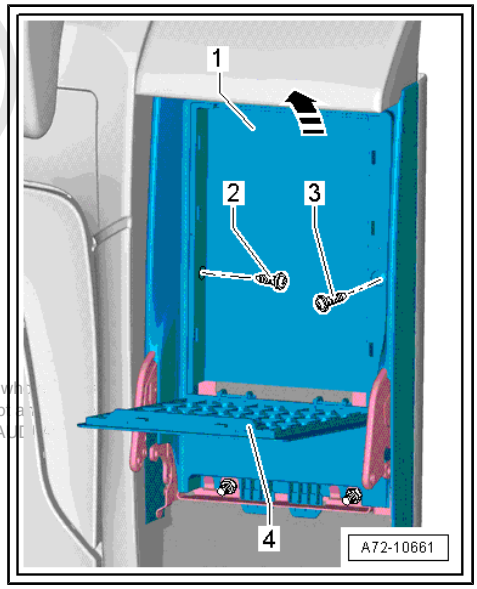
– Prise cover -1- off storage compartment -2- using removal wedge - 3409- ; to do so, unclip retaining tabs -arrow B- from lugs -arrow A-.

– Detach cover from storage compartment.



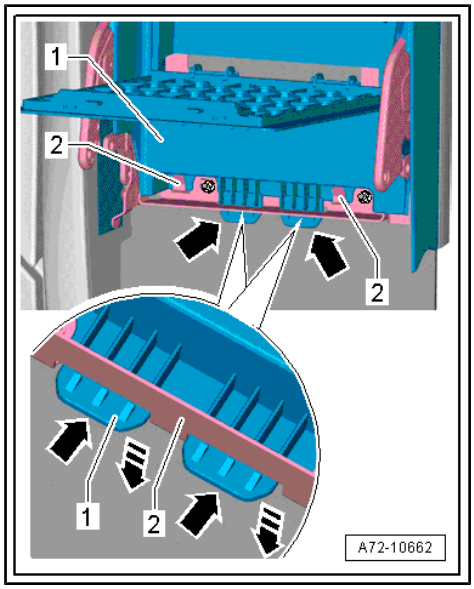
– Open lid -4- of storage compartment -1-.

– Remove bolts -2- and -3-.

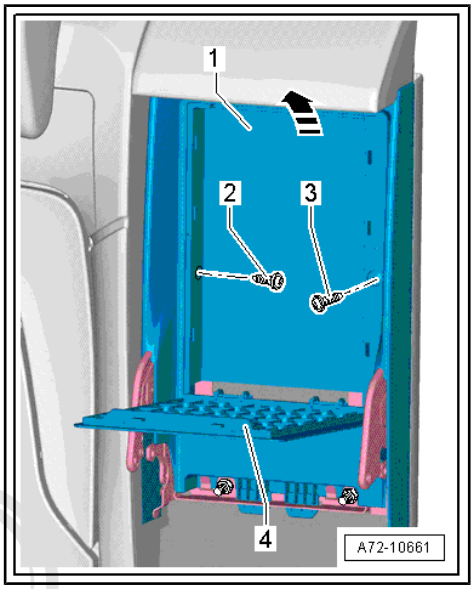


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

– Press lugs -arrows- of storage compartment -1- in direction of -arrow- until retaining tabs of lugs are disengaged at bracket -2- for centre armrest.



– Pull storage compartment -1- off bracket for centre armrest forwards and upwards at an angle -arrow-.



Installing

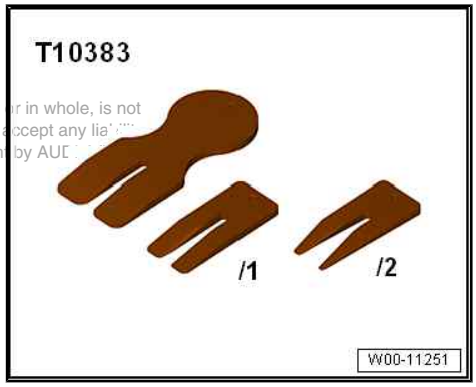
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.5.2 Exploded view - centre armrest, storage compartment", page 524

3.7.3 Removing and installing centre storage compartment in centre armrest - country-specific version

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



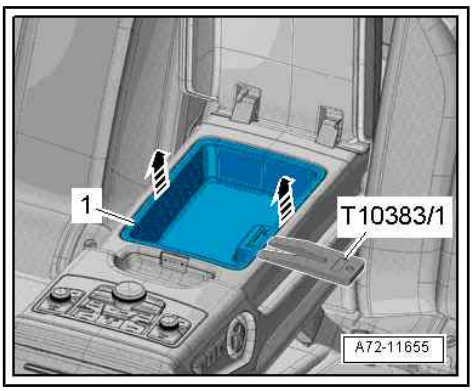
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

Removing

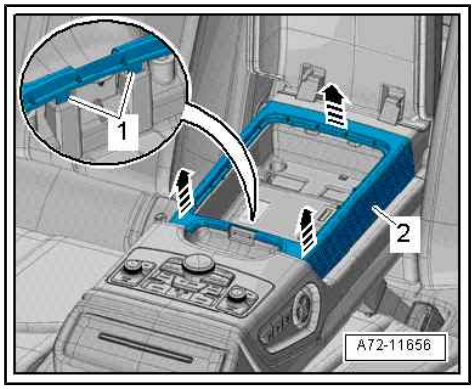
– Fold down centre armrest (rear) and open armrest.

– Unclip tray -1- from centre armrest -arrows- using wedge - T10383/1- .

– Detach tray.



Removing trim



– Release catches -1- and unclip trim -2- from centre armrest -arrows- using wedge -T10383/1- .

– Lift off trim.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “3.5.5 Exploded view - centre armrest, country-specific version”, page 528

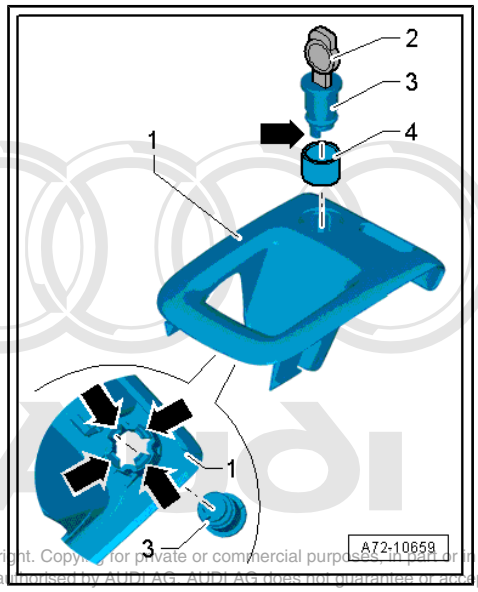
3.8 Removing and installing lock cylinder

⇒ “3.8.1 Removing and installing lock cylinder for rear seat backrest”, page 538

⇒ “3.8.2 Removing and installing lock cylinder for load-through hatch”, page 539

3.8.1 Removing and installing lock cylinder for rear seat backrest

Removing



– Remove trim for locking mechanism with lock cylinder ⇒ page 557 .

– Make sure indicator is in »top« position.

Caution

Only remove and install lock cylinder with key properly inserted. Otherwise, tumblers and springs could drop out and lock cylinder will not function properly.

– Release catches (4x) -bottom arrows- and press lock cylinder -3- with key -2- out of trim -1-.

Note

-Top arrow- can be ignored.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

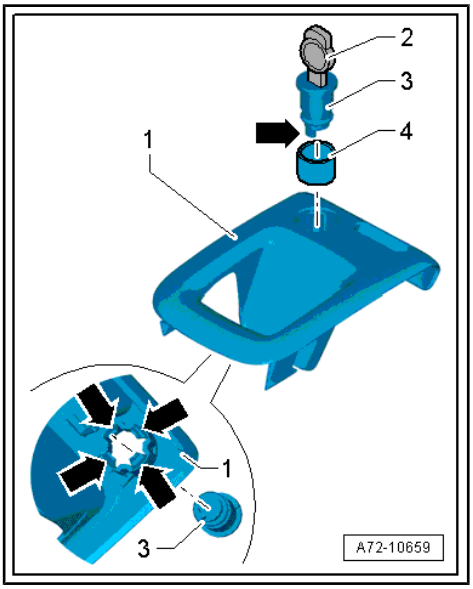
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Caution

- *Only remove and install lock cylinder with key properly inserted. Otherwise, tumblers and springs could drop out and lock cylinder will not function properly.*
- *Observe correct installation position when installing lock cylinder. Backrest will not lock properly if installation position is incorrect.*

– Properly insert key -2- in new lock cylinder.
– Detach protective cap -4- from new lock cylinder -3-.
– Insert lock cylinder -3- in trim -1-, observing correct installation position of lug -top arrow-.

- Trim for 1/3 section of rear seat backrest (left-side): Lug on lock cylinder faces towards rear (direction of travel).
- Trim for 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side): Lug on lock cylinder faces towards front (direction of travel).
- In addition, lock cylinder must engage properly with retaining tabs -bottom arrows-.



Note

Illustration shows trim with lock cylinder (left-side).

– Install trim with lock cylinder in rear seat backrest ⇒ page 557 .
– Turn key 90° (anti-clockwise).
– Lock backrest in position.

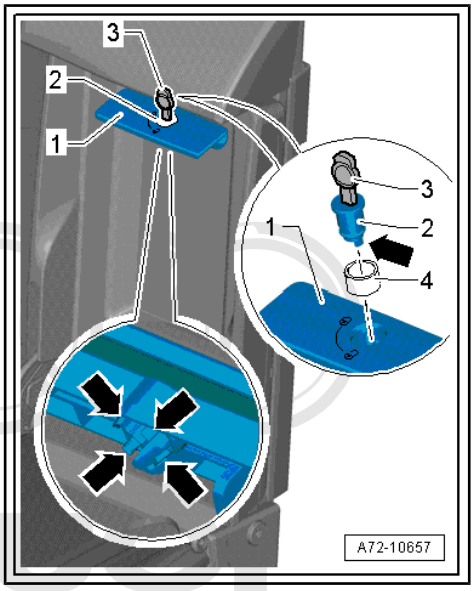
3.8.2 Removing and installing lock cylinder for load-through hatch

Removing

– Open centre armrest.

Caution

Only remove and install lock cylinder with key properly inserted. Otherwise, tumblers and springs could drop out and lock cylinder will not function properly.



– Properly insert key -3- in lock cylinder -2-.
– Turn key -3- 90° (anti-clockwise).
– Swivel handle of load-through flap -1- upwards as far as it will go.
– Release catches -arrows- and press lock cylinder -2- with key -3- out of handle.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

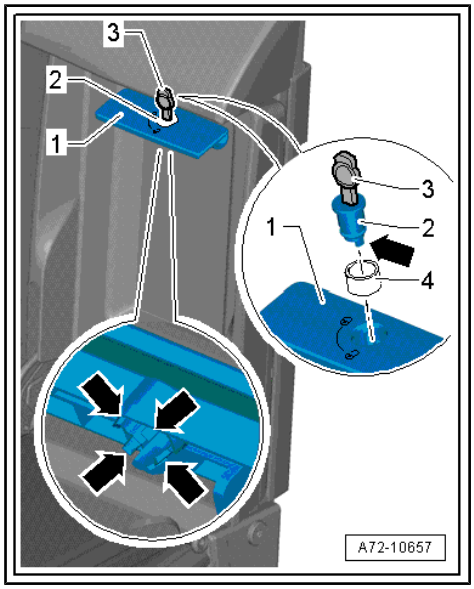
- ***Only remove and install lock cylinder with key properly inserted. Otherwise, tumblers and springs could drop out and lock cylinder will not function properly.***
- ***Observe correct installation position when installing lock cylinder. Backrest will not lock properly if installation position is incorrect.***

– Properly insert key -3- in new lock cylinder -2-.
– Pull protective cap -4- off new lock cylinder.
– Insert lock cylinder in handle of load-through flap -1-, observing correct installation position.
– Turn key 90° (clockwise).

• Installation position of lock cylinder: Slot for key must be vertical, and retaining tab -arrow- must face to the right (opposing direction of travel).

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “3.5.3 Exploded view - centre armrest, backrest with load-through hatch”, page 525



3.9 Removing and installing head restraint

⇒ “3.9.1 Removing and installing head restraint - standard seat/sports seat”, page 540

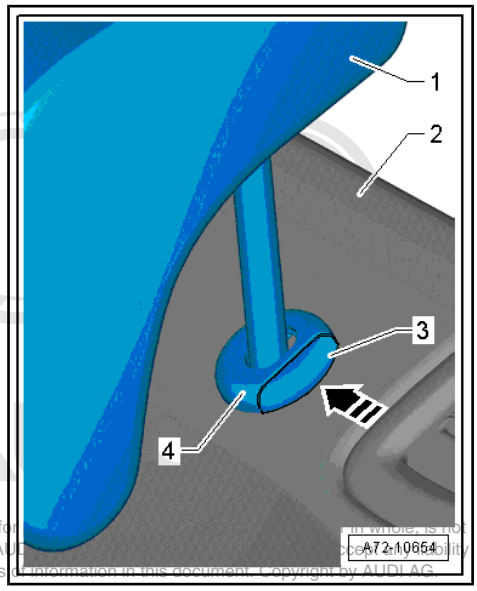
⇒ “3.9.2 Removing and installing head restraint - super sports seat”, page 541

⇒ “3.9.3 Removing and installing head restraint - multi-contour seat”, page 542

3.9.1 Removing and installing head restraint - standard seat/sports seat

Removing

– Press release button -3- for height adjustment at head restraint guide -4- in direction of -arrow- and at the same time pull head restraint -1- as far as possible out of rear seat backrest -2-.



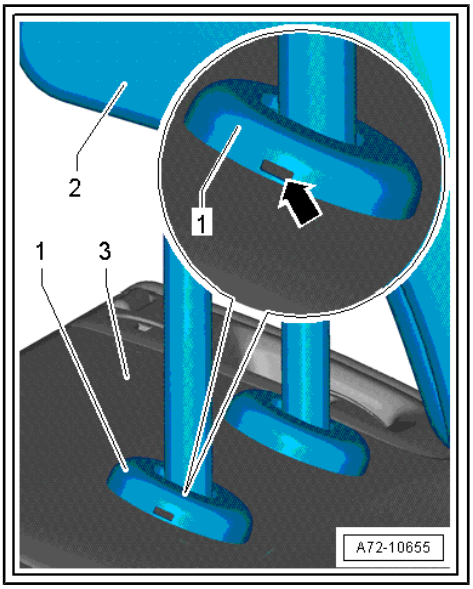
Protected by copyright. Copying for ... in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI ... Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Use a small flat screwdriver to press locking spring as far as it will go in opening -arrow- of head restraint guide -1-.
– At the same time, pull head restraint -2- out of rear seat backrest -3- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide", page 512



3.9.2 Removing and installing head restraint - super sports seat

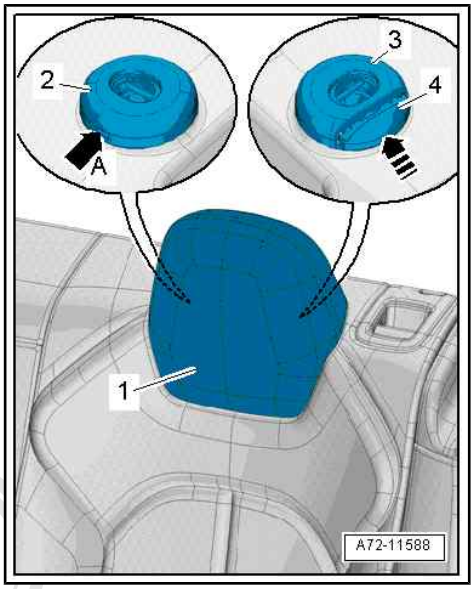
Removing

– Use a small flat screwdriver to press locking spring as far as it will go in opening -arrow A- of head restraint guide -2- and at the same time pull right side of head restraint out of catch.
– Make sure that head restraint does not engage again on released side.
– Press release button -4- of head restraint guide -3- in direction of -arrow-.
– At the same time, pull head restraint -1- out of rear seat backrest and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

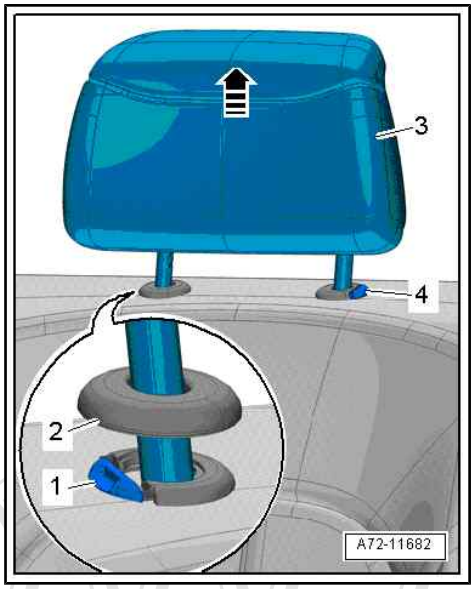
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.3.2 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, super sports seat", page 513



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.9.3 Removing and installing head restraint - multi-contour seat

Removing



– Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .
– Unclip cap -2- from head restraint guide on right side of backrest.
– Press release button -1- at head restraint guide and at the same time pull head restraint as far as possible out of rear seat backrest.
– Press release button -4- and at the same time pull out head restraint -3- -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, multi-contour seat", page 514

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.10 Removing and installing head restraint guide

⇒ “3.10.1 Removing and installing head restraint guide - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat”, page 543

⇒ “3.10.2 Removing and installing head restraint guide - multi-contour seat”, page 544

3.10.1 Removing and installing head restraint guide - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat

Removing

– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 540 .

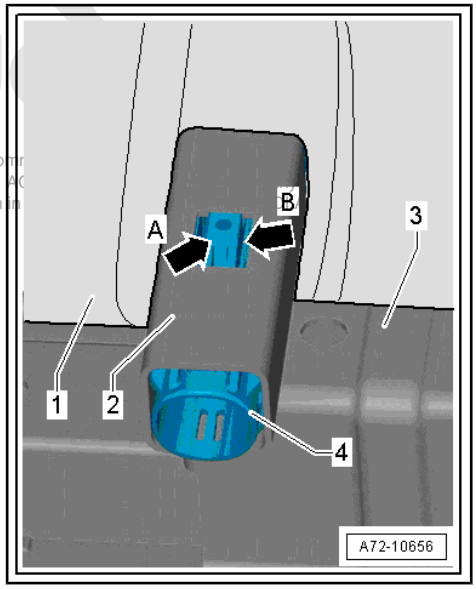
– Unfasten backrest cover with backrest padding from rear seat backrest frame:

◆ ⇒ “2.4.2 Removing and installing cover and padding - split rear seat backrest”, page 701 .

◆ ⇒ “2.4.3 Removing and installing cover and padding - fixed rear seat backrest”, page 704 .

– Fold backrest cover with padding -1- upwards until head restraint post -2- welded into rear seat backrest frame -3- with head restraint guide -4- is visible.

– Press down retaining tab -arrow A- of head restraint guide and at the same time pull head restraint guide out of rear seat backrest frame.



Note

-Arrow B- can be ignored.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

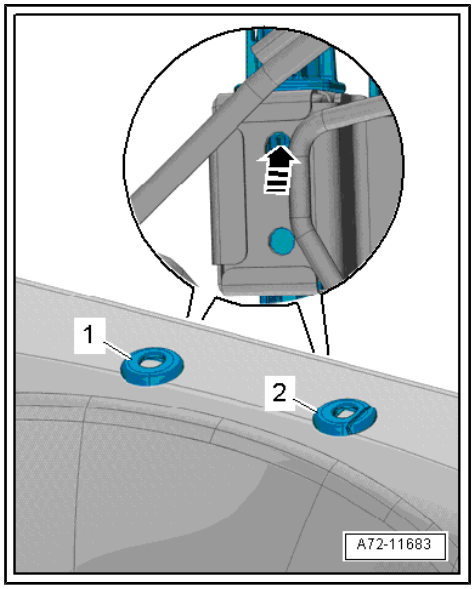
- Each head restraint guide can only be inserted in one position on one side of the backrest.
- Guide lug of head restraint guide must engage in recess of mounting for head restraint frame.

– Slide in head restraint guide until retaining tabs engage properly with rear seat backrest frame -arrow B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide”, page 512

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

3.10.2 Removing and installing head restraint guide - multi-contour seat



Removing

– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 542 .

– Insert a small screwdriver through opening and release retaining tab of head restraint guide -arrow-; at the same time pull head restraint guide -1-/-2- out of outer backrest frame.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Each head restraint guide can only be inserted in one position on one side of the backrest.
- Guide lug of head restraint guide must engage in recess of mounting for head restraint frame.

– Slide in head restraint guide until retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, multi-contour seat”, page 514

3.11 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

⇒ “3.11.1 Removing and installing split rear seat backrest”, page 544

⇒ “3.11.2 Removing and installing fixed rear seat backrest”, page 548

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “3.11.3 Removing and installing rear seat backrest - multi-contour seat”, page 548

⇒ “3.11.4 Removing and installing bearing/bearing sleeve/pivot pin on rear seat backrest”, page 550

⇒ “3.11.5 Removing and installing side padding”, page 552

⇒ “3.11.6 Removing and installing seat adjustment control unit - multi-contour seat”, page 554

⇒ “3.11.7 Removing and installing back panel/mounting for rear seat backrest - multi-contour seat”, page 555

⇒ “3.11.8 Removing and installing rear seat backrest fan”, page 556

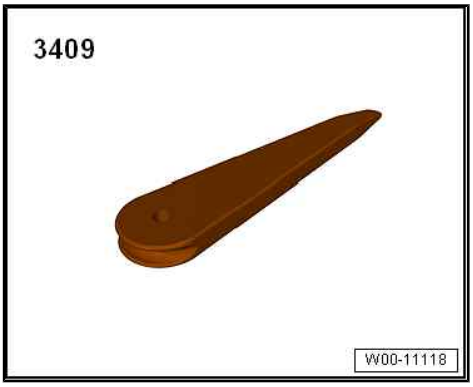
3.11.1 Removing and installing split rear seat backrest

Note

Removal and installation are described for the 2/3 section of the rear seat backrest (right-side). The procedures are similar for the 1/3 section of the rear seat backrest (left-side).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .

– Equipment version with 3-seat rear seat backrest, 2/3 section (right-side): Remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 121 .

Equipment version with 3-seat rear seat backrest, 2/3 section (right-side) - country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

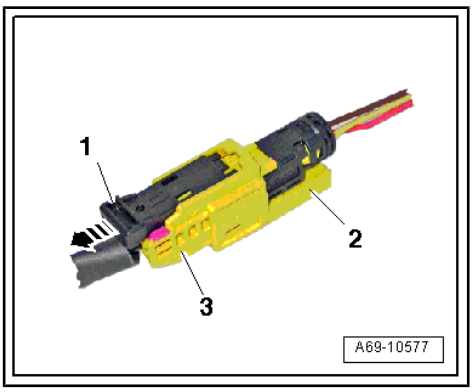
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

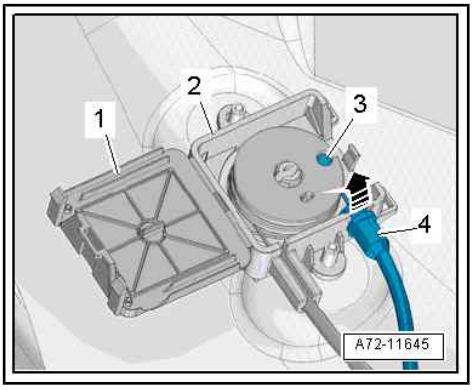
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Unplug electrical connector.

– To do so, pull catch -1- in direction of -arrow- and unplug electrical connectors -2- and -3-.

Equipment version with backrest remote release mechanism:



– Open cover -1- of connector point.

– Unclip Bowden cable -4- at connector point -2- for Bowden cable -arrow-.

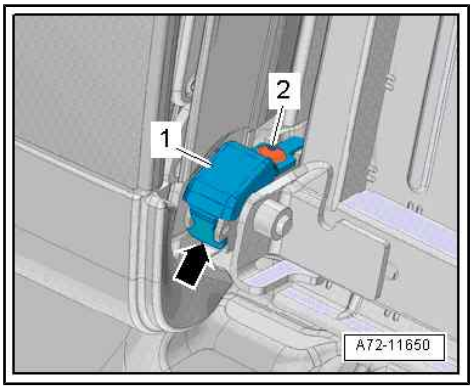
– Disengage nipple -3- of Bowden cable.

Continued for all vehicles:

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Remove bolt -2- for retaining clip.

– Disengage retaining clip -1- from centre bracket -arrow- and detach (on equipment version with flap for load-through hatch: Also open flap).



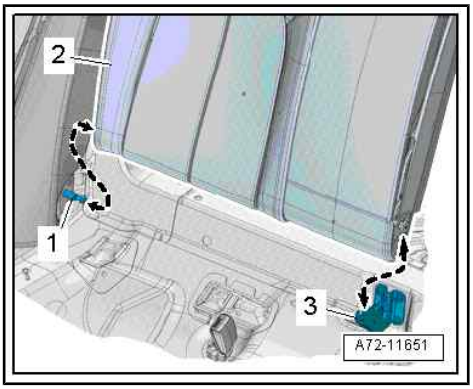
Note

For greater clarity the padding and cover are not shown in the illustration.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Lift rear seat backrest -2- out of centre bracket -3- and pull it out of outer mounting -1- towards centre of vehicle -arrows-.

– Take rear seat backrest out of vehicle.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side) - country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

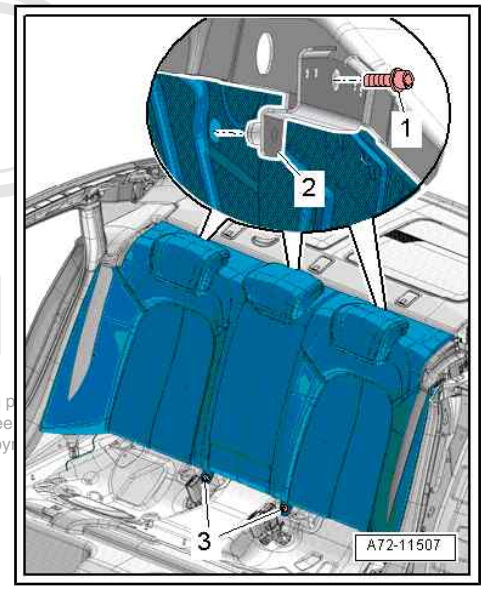
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 515

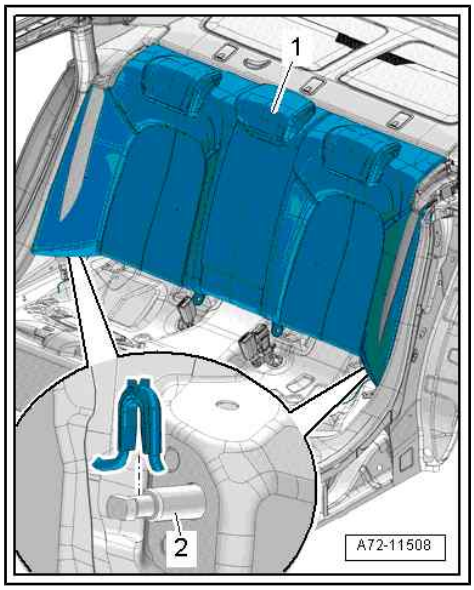
3.11.2 Removing and installing fixed rear seat backrest

Removing



- Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .
- Remove bolts -1- for rear seat backrest in luggage compartment.
- Remove bolts -3-.
- Equipment version with backrest heating: Unplug electrical connector for backrest heating.
- Pull rear seat backrest off retainers -2- at top.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy



- Disengage rear seat backrest -1- from side retaining pins -2- and take out of vehicle.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.4.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat", page 516

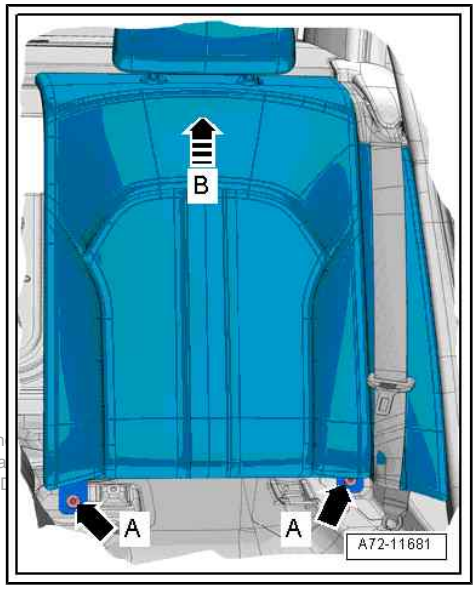
3.11.3 Removing and installing rear seat backrest - multi-contour seat

Removing

WARNING

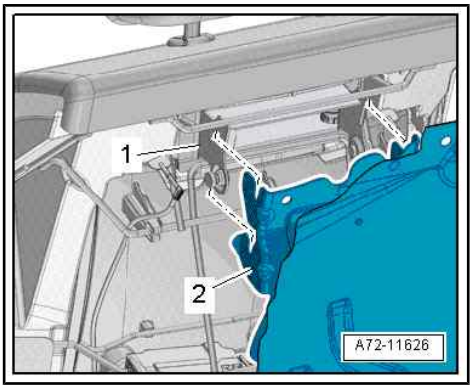
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .
– Remove bolts -arrows A- for rear seat backrest.
– Push rear seat backrest upwards -arrow B-.



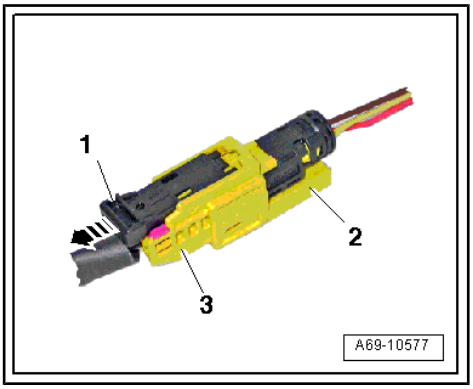
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUD

– Disengage outer backrest frame -1- at rear from mounting bracket -2- on back panel.
– Pull rear seat backrest as far forwards as possible.



WARNING

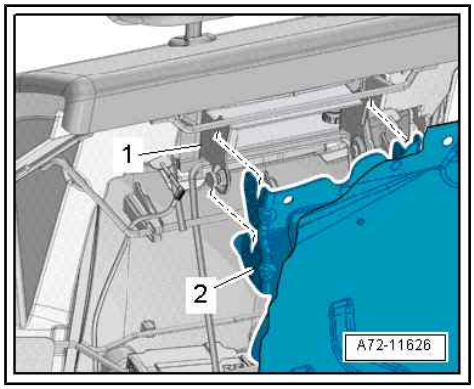
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Unplug electrical connector (yellow) for side airbag (rear).
– To do so, pull catch -1- in direction of -arrow- and unplug electrical connectors -2- and -3-.
– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 423 .
– Unplug electrical connector and take rear seat backrest out of vehicle.

Installing

– Insert rear seat backrest in vehicle and engage outer backrest frame -1- at mounting bracket -2-.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

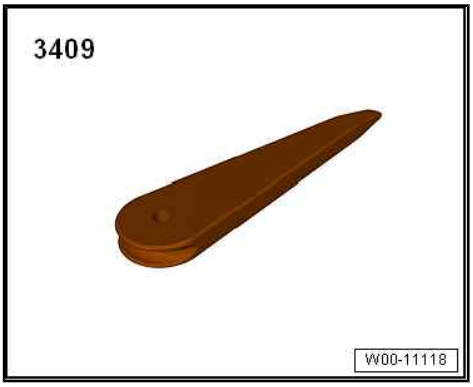
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "3.4.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, multi-contour seat", page 521

3.11.4 Removing and installing bearing/bearing sleeve/pivot pin on rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 544 .

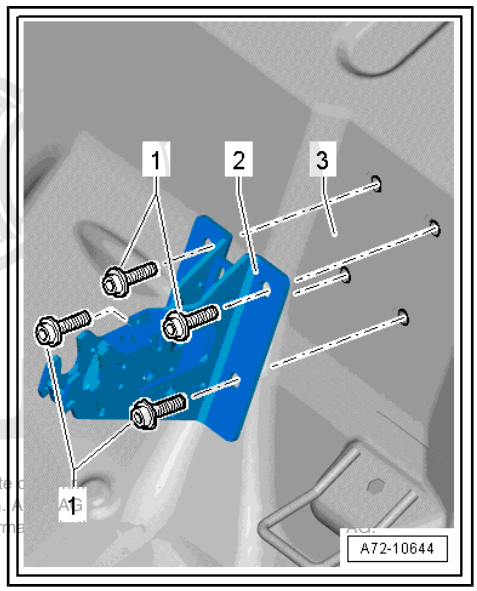
Removing centre bracket

Note

To remove and install centre bracket, rear seat backrest must only be disengaged from brackets.

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Detach centre bracket -2- from vehicle floor -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

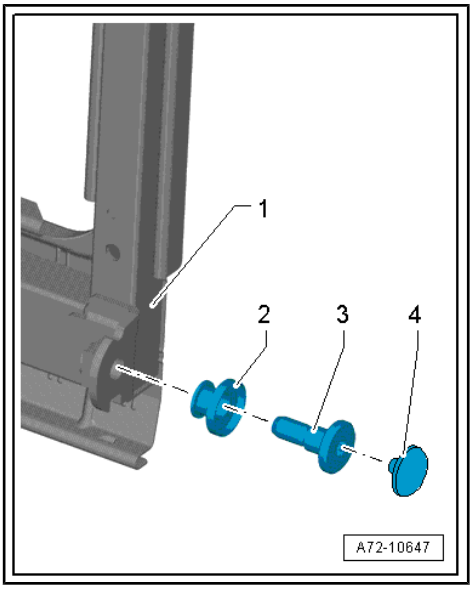
Removing inner pivot pin

– Detach abrasion guard -4- and remove pivot pin -3- from outer backrest frame -1- of rear seat.

Note

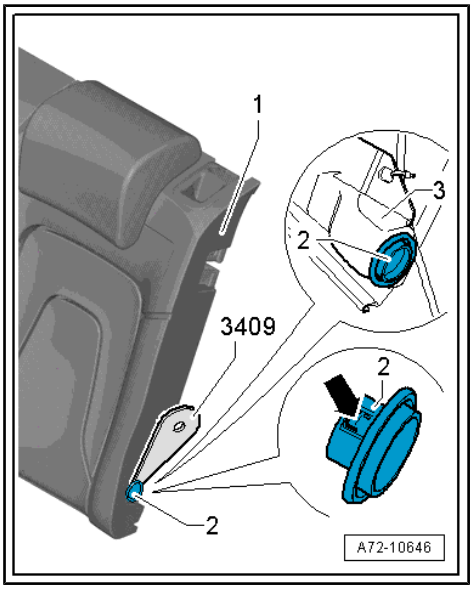
For greater clarity the padding and cover are not shown in the illustration.

– Detach bearing sleeve -2- from pivot pin.



Removing outer bearing sleeve

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , unclip bearing sleeve -2- from rear seat backrest frame -1- and detach.



Caution

Take care not to damage backrest cover when unclipping bearing sleeve.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure all retaining tabs -arrow- are fully engaged in bracket -3- of rear seat backrest frame -1-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 515

3.11.5 Removing and installing side padding

Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .

Equipment version with side airbag (rear):

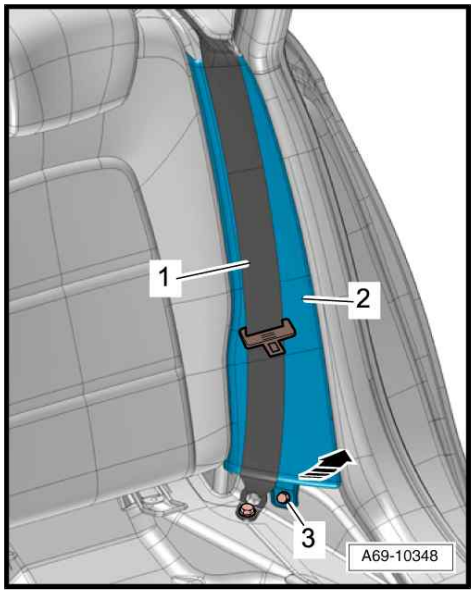
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

All equipment versions (continued):



– Remove bolt -3-.

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

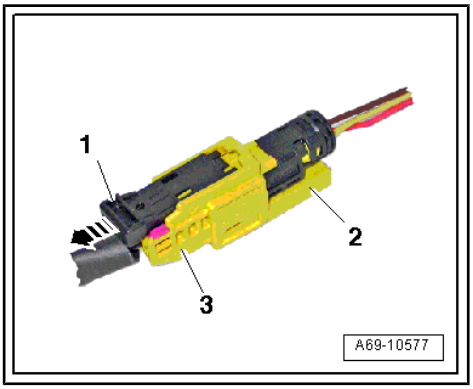
– Hold belt -1- to one side and pull side padding (bottom) -2- forwards -arrow-.

– Pull side padding downwards and take out of belt guide.

Equipment version with side airbag (rear):

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Unplug electrical connector (yellow) for side airbag (rear).
– To do so, pull catch -1- in direction of -arrow- and unplug electrical connectors -2- and -3-.
– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 423 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Equipment version with side airbag (rear):

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

DANGER!

When working on a vehicle with the ignition switched on or while the drive system is active, the engine can start unexpectedly and exhaust fumes can cause a health hazard in closed rooms. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body and/or clothing (safety hazard).

Before switching on the ignition, perform the following steps:

- *Move selector lever to position P*
- *Activate parking brake*
- *Switch off ignition*
- *Open bonnet*
- *Connect battery charger (e.g. battery charger - VAS 5095A-) to jump-start connections of 12 V electrical system*
- *Switch on ignition*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest”, page 515 , ⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)”, page 154

3.11.6 Removing and installing seat adjustment control unit - multi-contour seat

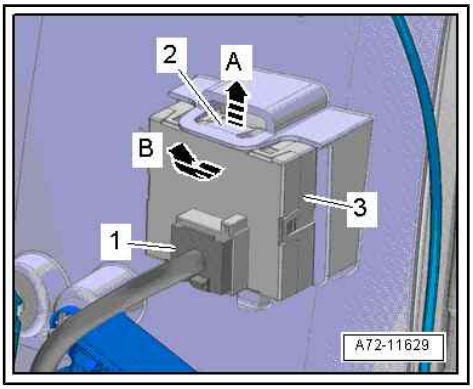
Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at control unit.
– Using a screwdriver, carefully unclip control unit at catch -2- -arrow A-.
– Swivel control unit -3- out towards rear -arrow B-, disengage hook at retainer and lift control unit off.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing a multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .*

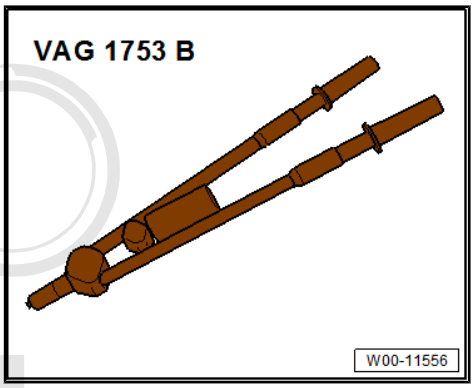
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.4.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components", page 515

3.11.7 Removing and installing back panel/ mounting for rear seat backrest - multi-contour seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- Drill
- Safety goggles

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

– Remove mounting for centre armrest (rear) ⇒ page 565 .

Note

Use plastic sheeting as protection against swarf.

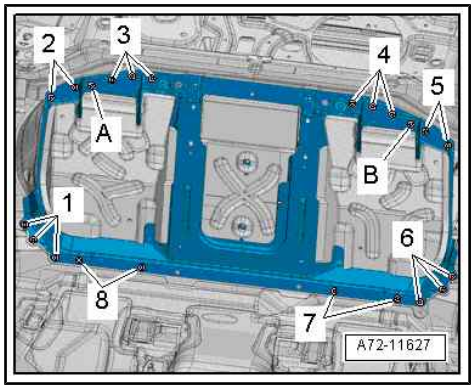
WARNING

Risk of injury!

- ***Put on safety goggles.***

– Drill out rivets -1 ... 8-.

– Remove bolts -A and B- and detach back panel.



Installing

– Insert back panel in vehicle, align holes with rivets and fasten rivets.

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the rear seat backrest ⇒ page 544 .***

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.4.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, multi-contour seat", page 521

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.11.8 Removing and installing rear seat backrest fan

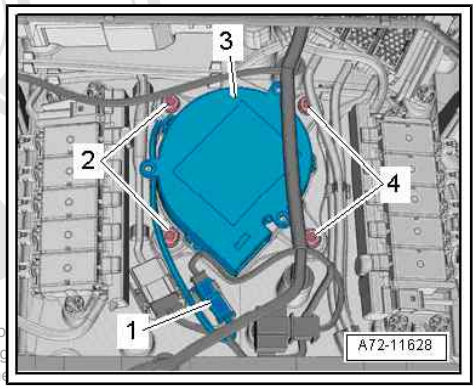
Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

– Move clear and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Remove bolts -2 and 4- for fan.
– Detach fan -3-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing a multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
ended unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
and respects the copyrights of information in this docume

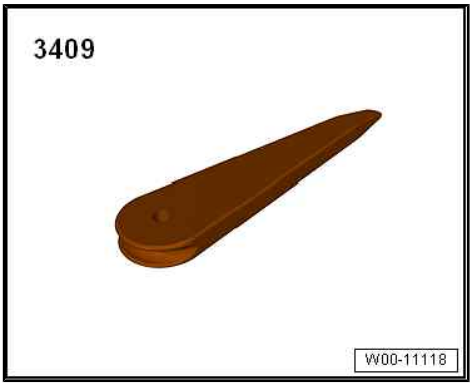
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.1.4 Exploded view - fans for seat bench/individual seats, multi-contour seat", page 508

3.12 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



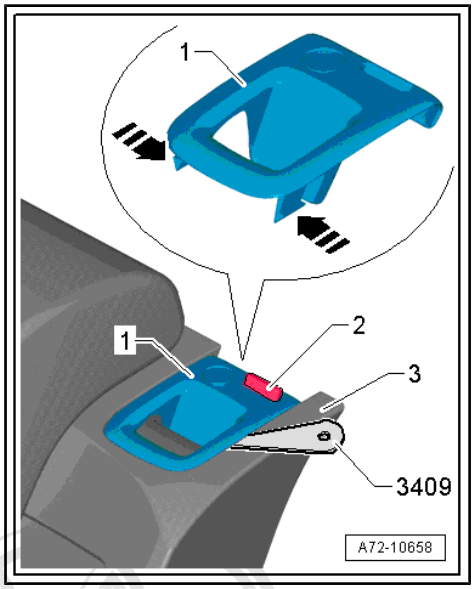
Removing

– Release rear seat backrest.

– Make sure button -2- (indicator) is in »top« position.

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , press fasteners in direction of -arrows- on both sides of trim.

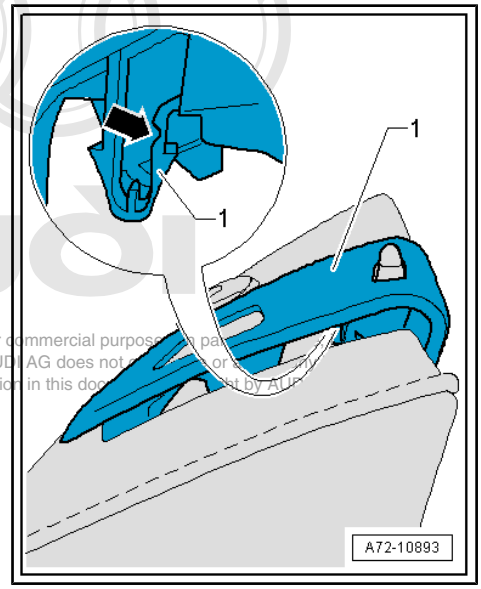
– At the same time lift trim -1- off rear seat backrest -3-.



– Lift trim -1- at front as far as possible off rear seat backrest.

– Use a flat screwdriver to prise catch -arrow- at rear of trim out of locking mechanism.

– Lift trim off rear seat backrest.



Note

After removing trim with lock cylinder, catch at predetermined breaking point -arrow- must be destroyed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure button moves freely after installing trim.

– When installing trim -1-, observe correct installation position of lock cylinder ⇒ page 539 .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “3.2.1 Exploded view - locking mechanism, Saloon”, page 509

3.13 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest

⇒ "3.13.1 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest", page 559

⇒ "3.13.2 Removing and installing remote release mechanism for rear seat backrest", page 560

⇒ "3.13.3 Removing and installing Bowden cable/connector point for rear seat backrest", page 561

⇒ "3.13.4 Removing and installing bracket for backrest remote release mechanism", page 562

3.13.1 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest

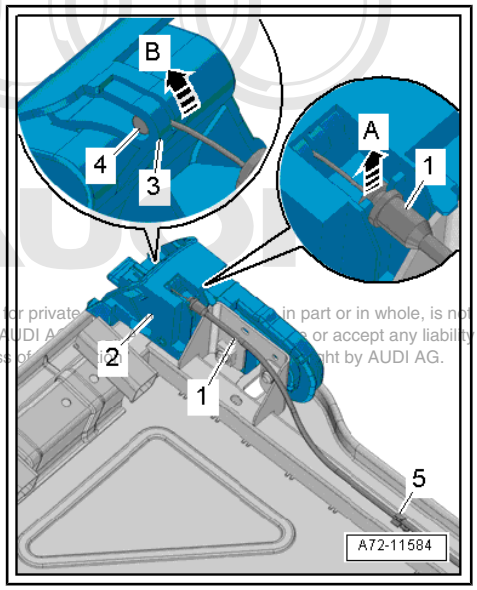
Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 544 .

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 540 .

– Remove padding from rear seat backrest in area of locking mechanism ⇒ page 701 .

Equipment version with backrest remote release mechanism:



Note

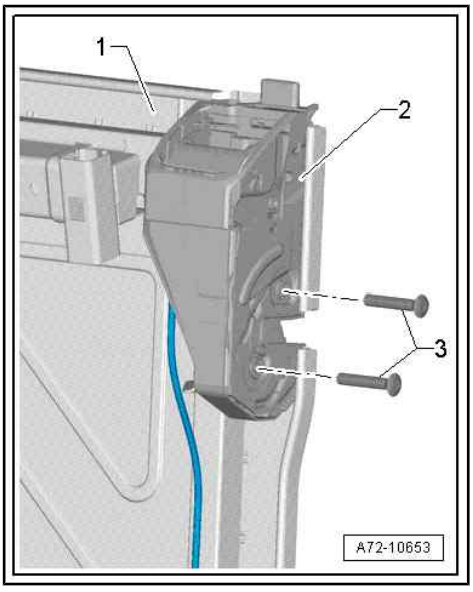
- *The removal and installation procedures for the Bowden cable are described for the locking mechanism (left-side) to the connector point.*
- *Bowden cable from locking mechanism to connector point can only be renewed after removing cover with padding.*

– Unclip retainer -5- for Bowden cable at rear seat backrest.

– Disengage Bowden cable -1- at release mechanism -2- -arrow A-.

– Disengage nipple -4- of Bowden cable from release handle -3- -arrow B- and detach Bowden cable.

All seat versions (continued):



– Remove bolts -3-.

– Detach locking mechanism -2- from outer backrest frame -1- of rear seat.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

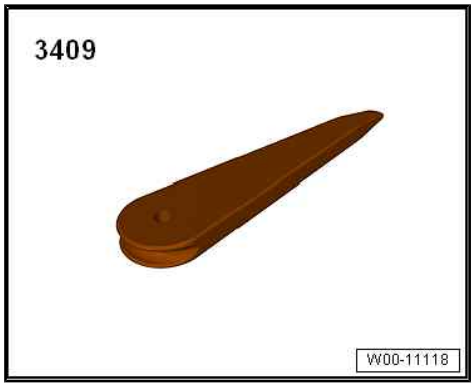
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism", page 509

Protected by copyright. Copying for private ... in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG ... or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of ... ght by AUDI AG.

3.13.2 Removing and installing remote release mechanism for rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



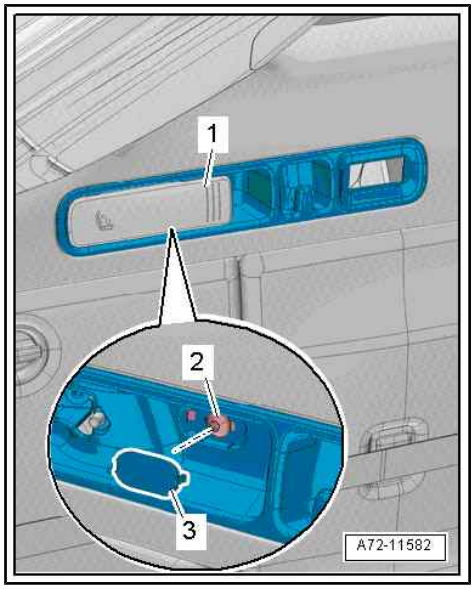
Removing

– Remove luggage compartment light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing luggage compartment light - W3- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document's contents.

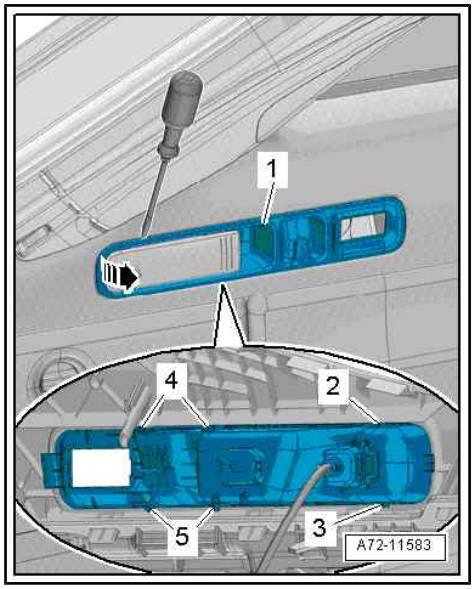
– Pull and hold release lever -1-, rear seat backrest will be released.

– Using screwdriver, prise off cap -3- and unscrew bolt -2- for release mechanism underneath cap.

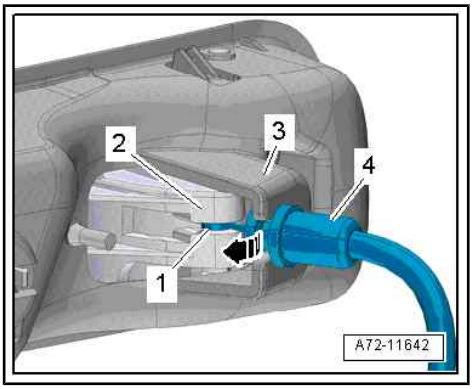


– Starting at rear, prise release mechanism -1- out of luggage compartment side trim -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– To do so, release retaining tabs -2 ... 5- using a screwdriver.



– Unclip Bowden cable -4- from release mechanism -3- for backrest remote release mechanism -arrow-.
– Disengage nipple -1- of Bowden cable from release lever -2- and detach release mechanism.



Installing

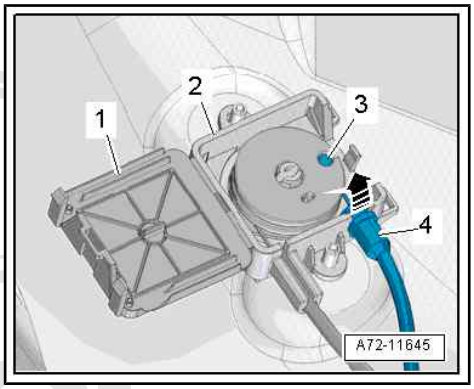
Install in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.2.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism, Avant", page 510

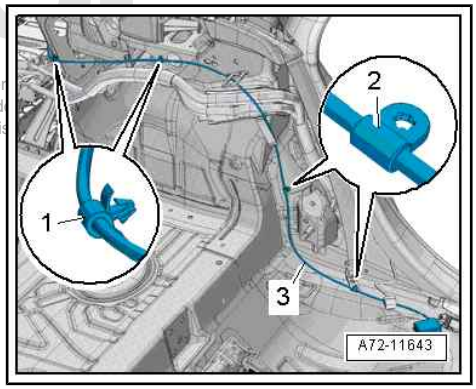
3.13.3 Removing and installing Bowden cable/ connector point for rear seat backrest

Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 330 .
– Open cover -1- of connector point.
– Unclip Bowden cable -4- at connector point -2- for Bowden cable -arrow-.
– Disengage nipple -3- of Bowden cable.
– Unclip connector point for Bowden cable from vehicle floor.



– Unclip retainers -1- and -2- for Bowden cable and detach Bowden cable -3- with connector point.



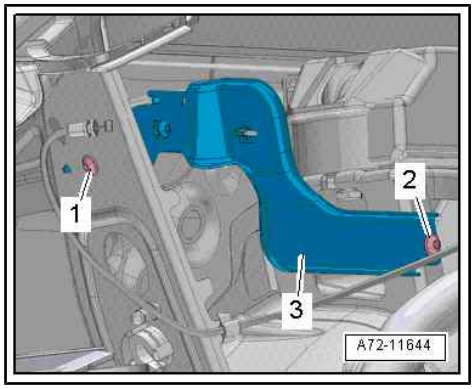
Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d
with respect to the correctness of information in this

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.2.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism, Avant", page 510

3.13.4 Removing and installing bracket for backrest remote release mechanism



Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 330 .

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- and detach bracket for release mechanism.

– Disengage bracket -3- for release mechanism and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fit bolt -1- first.

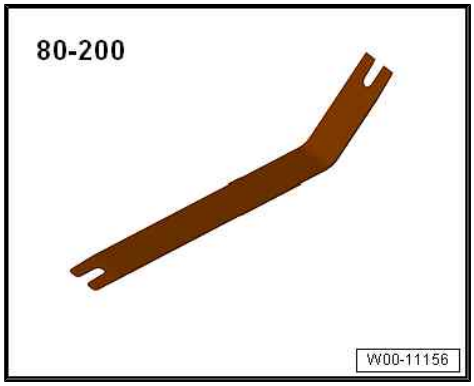
– Then tighten bolts in the sequence -2- and -1-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.2.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism, Avant”, page 510

3.14 Removing and installing trim frame for load-through hatch

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



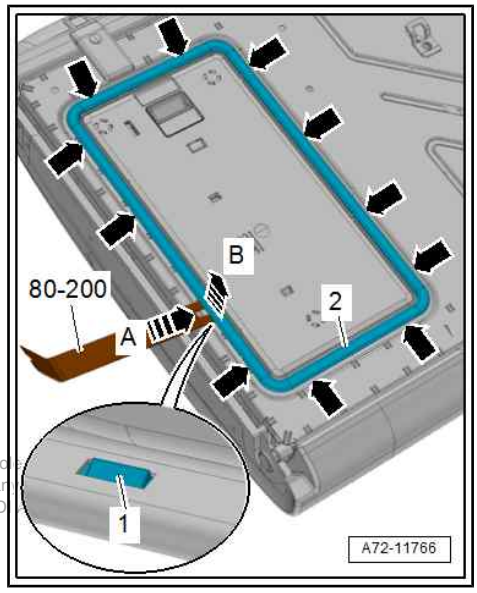
Removing

– Fold down centre armrest (rear) and open flap for load-through hatch.

– Press removal lever - 80 - 200- against trim frame -arrow A- to release retaining tab -1- for trim frame on rear seat backrest.

– At the same time, prise trim frame -2- off rear seat backrest -arrow B-.

– Repeat process for other retaining tabs -arrows-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

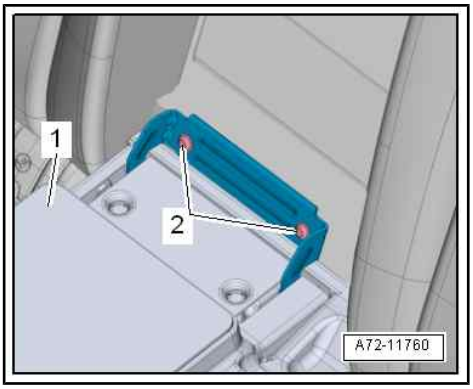
– Make sure trim frame engages fully in rear seat backrest.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.5.3 Exploded view - centre armrest, backrest with load-through hatch”, page 525

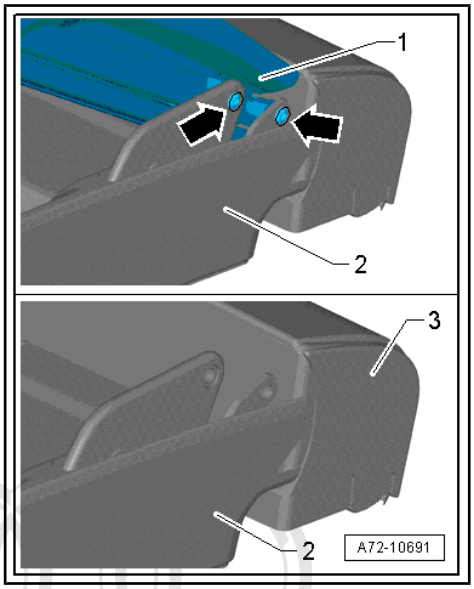
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept ar
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUD

3.15 Removing and installing flap for load-through hatch

Removing

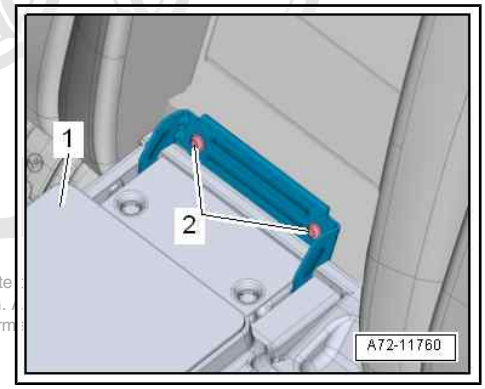


– Fold down centre armrest and open flap for load-through hatch.
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Detach centre armrest with flap -1- for load-through hatch.



– Fold up centre armrest (rear) -1- so that it is $^{2}/_{3}$ open.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach flap for load-through hatch -2- from centre armrest.
– Remove intermediate padding -3- at bottom ⇒ page 707 .

Installing



– Position flap -1- for load-through hatch with centre armrest and only hand-tighten bolts.
– Close and align flap for load-through hatch.
– Tighten bolts -2- at rear seat backrest.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.5.3 Exploded view - centre armrest, backrest with load-through hatch”, page 525

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
with respect to the correctness of inform

3.16 Removing and installing centre armrest

⇒ “3.16.1 Removing and installing centre armrest”, page 564

⇒ “3.16.2 Removing and installing centre armrest - country-specific version”, page 565

⇒ “3.16.3 Removing and installing cup holders”, page 566

⇒ “3.16.4 Removing and installing bracket/hinges for centre armrest - split rear seat backrest”, page 567

⇒ “3.16.5 Removing and installing bracket/hinges for centre armrest - fixed rear seat backrest”, page 571

⇒ “3.16.6 Removing and installing trim panel for centre armrest - country-specific version”, page 573

⇒ “3.16.7 Removing and installing pressure damper/gas strut for centre armrest - country-specific version”, page 574

⇒ “3.16.8 Removing and installing mounting/centre armrest - country-specific version”, page 575

⇒ “3.16.9 Removing and installing arm pad for centre armrest - country-specific version”, page 577

3.16.1 Removing and installing centre armrest

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

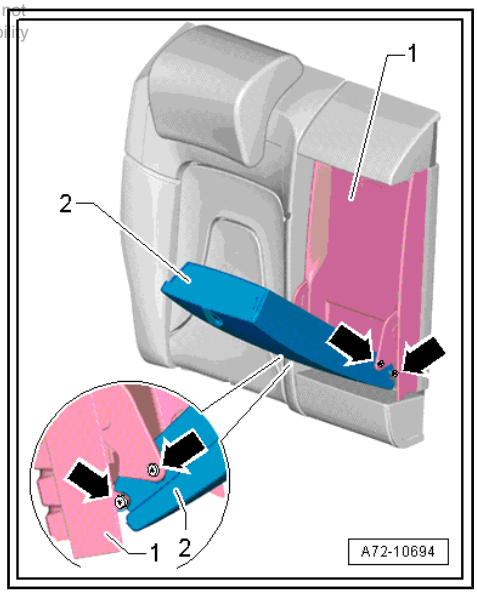
Removing

– Open centre armrest (rear) by $^{2}/_{3}$.

Equipment version without load-through hatch:

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

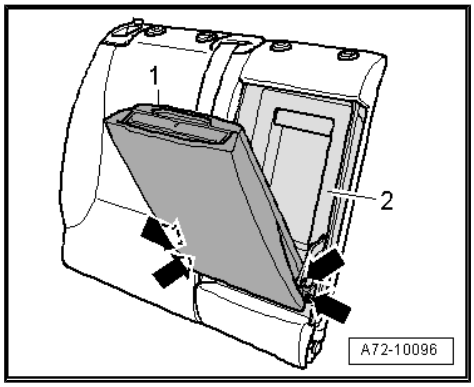
– Detach centre armrest (rear) -2- from bracket -1-.



Equipment version with load-through hatch:

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

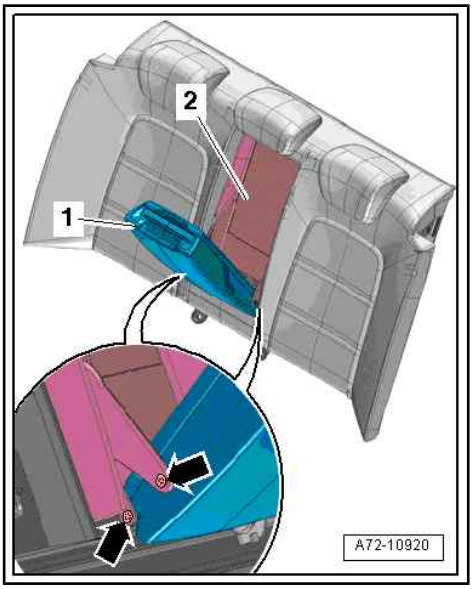
– Detach centre armrest (rear) -1- from flap of load-through hatch -2-.



Equipment version with fixed rear seat backrest:

– In area of screw connection, press armrest padding towards rear and remove bolts -arrows- (4x).

– Detach centre armrest (rear) -1- from bracket -2-.



Installing

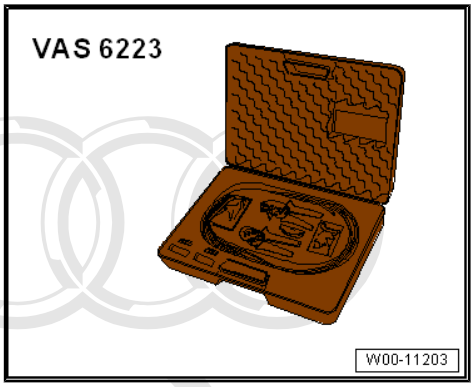
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest", page 522

3.16.2 Removing and installing centre armrest - country-specific version

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Protective cap for cable connector - VAS 6223/9- from fibre optic cable repair set - VAS 6223-



WARNING

♦ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components* *⇒ page 4* *.*

♦ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

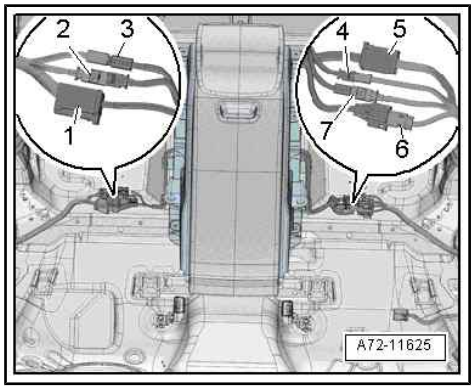
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

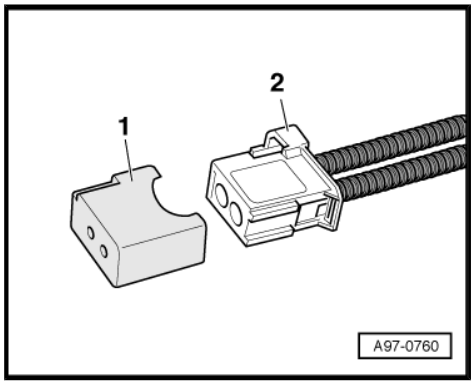
– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 548 .

– Unplug electrical connectors -3 and 6- and disconnect aerial wires -1, 2, 4 and 7-.

– Unplug connector -5- for fibre optic cable.



– Cover open wiring harness connector -2- of fibre optic cable with protective cap for cable connector - VAS 6223/9- -item 1-.



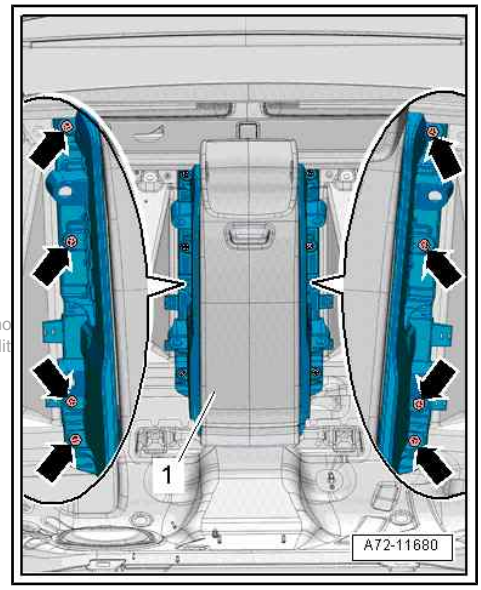
Note

The protective cap is designed to prevent the end face of the fibre optic from becoming soiled or damaged, as this would impair light transmission.

– Move clear wiring harness.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach mounting for centre armrest (rear) -1-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Audi

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.5.5 Exploded view - centre armrest, country-specific version", page 528

3.16.3 Removing and installing cup holders

Special tools and workshop equipment required

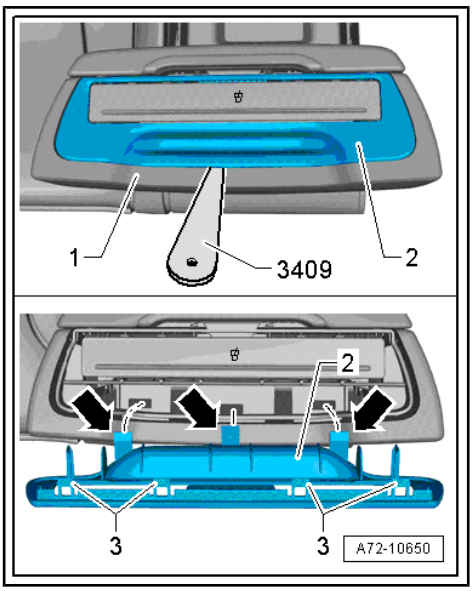
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Fold down centre armrest (rear).
– Prise off trim -2- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Starting at bottom edge, disengage retaining tabs -arrows-.
– Then disengage lugs -3-.
– Detach trim from centre armrest (rear).

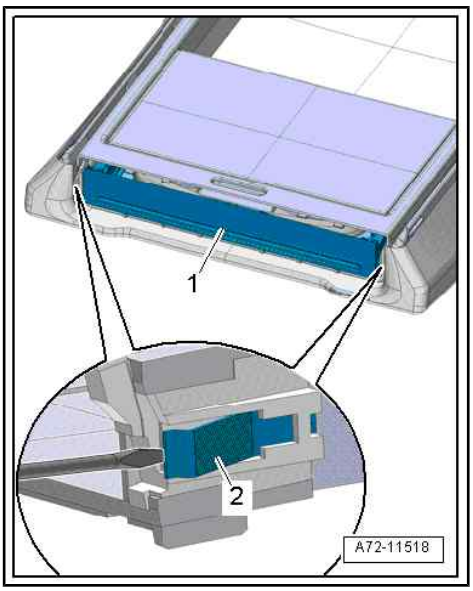


– Open cup holder flap -1-.
– Using a screwdriver, release each spring -2- and remove cup holder by carefully pulling alternately on both sides.

Installing

Install in reverse sequence.

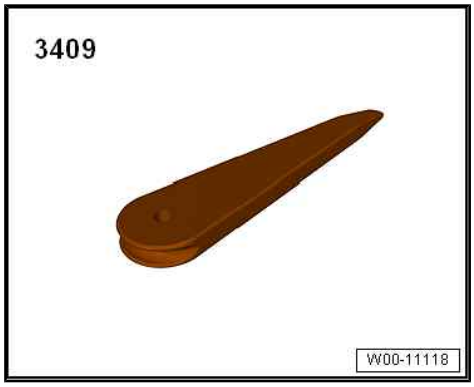
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 522



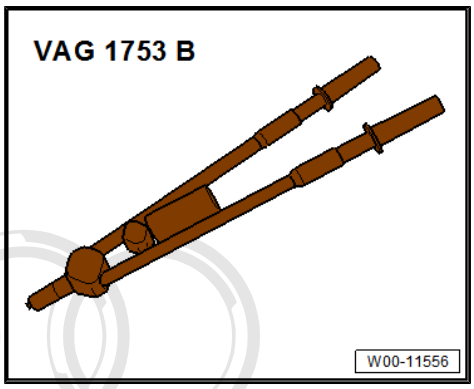
3.16.4 Removing and installing bracket/hinges for centre armrest - split rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



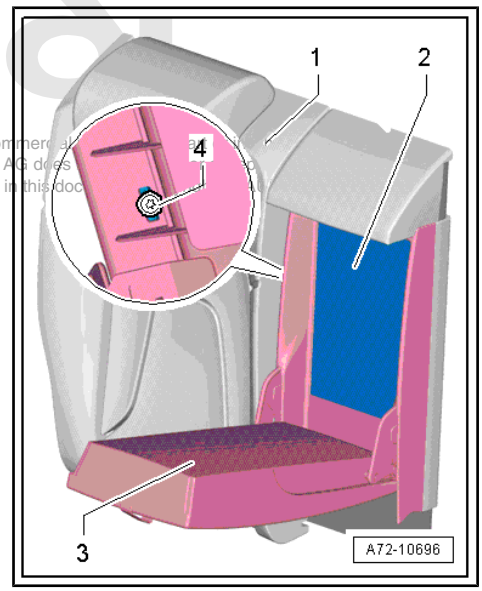
- Drill
- Safety goggles

Removing

Equipment version without storage box:

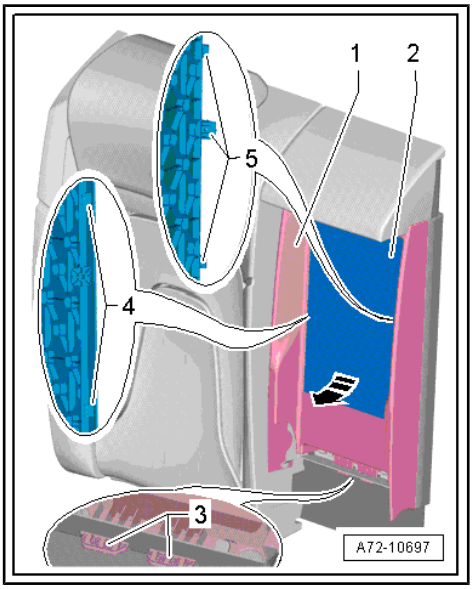
– Fold down centre armrest (rear) -3-.

– Press backrest padding with backrest cover -1- to the side and remove bolt -4- for trim panel -2- for centre armrest using 1/4 bit reversible ratchet.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Take hold of bottom edge of trim panel -2- for centre armrest and pull it as far as possible off trim for centre armrest -1- -arrow-.
– To do so, disengage retaining tabs -4- and -5-.



Note

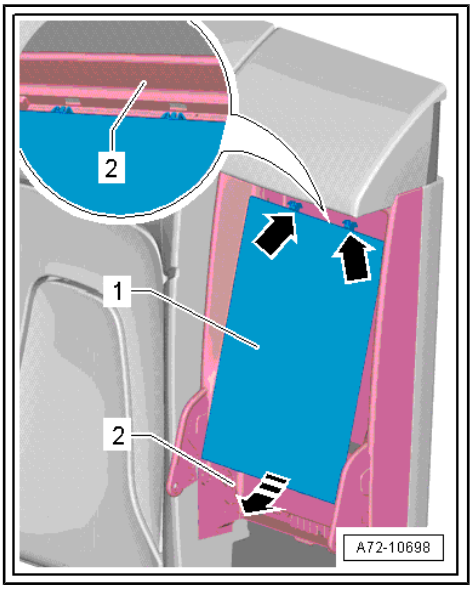
Disregard -item 3-.

– Detach trim panel -1- for centre armrest in direction of -arrow- from trim -2- for centre armrest and at the same time disengage catches -top arrows-.

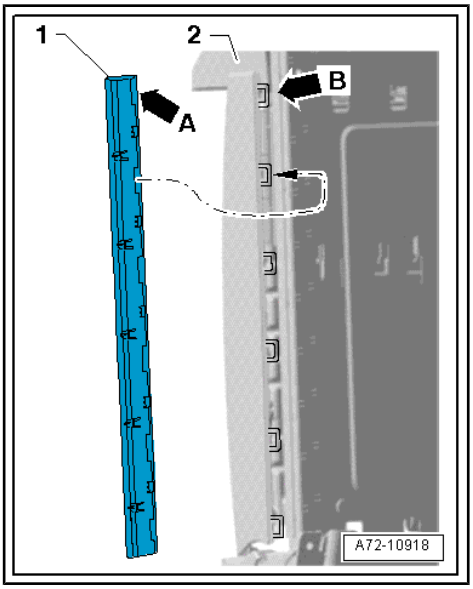
Caution

Catches on top of trim panel for centre armrest could be damaged during removal.

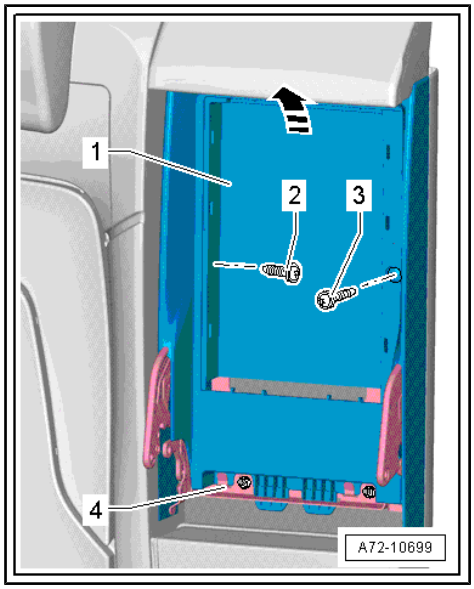
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



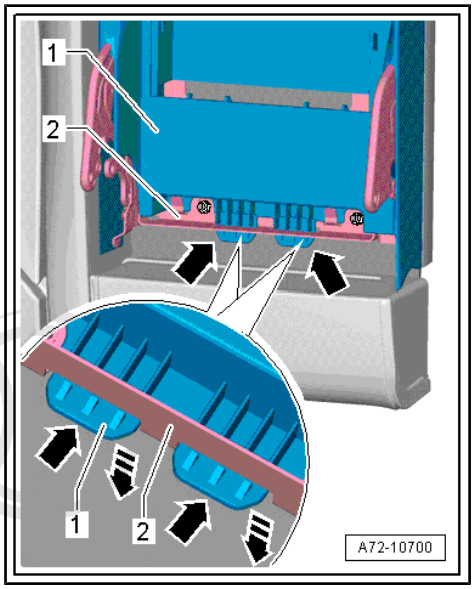
– Remove centre armrest (rear) ⇒ page 564 .
– Prise cover -1- off trim -2- for centre armrest using removal wedge - 3409- ; to do so, unclip retaining tabs -arrow B- from lugs -arrow A-.
– Pull cover off trim for centre armrest.



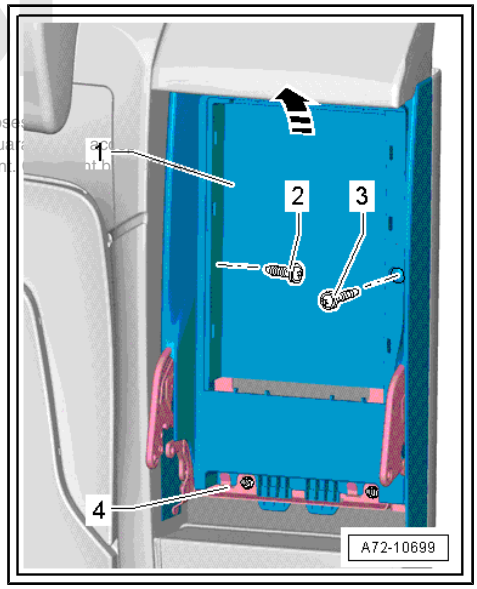
– Remove bolts -2- and -3- from trim -1- for centre armrest.



– Press lugs -arrows- in direction of -arrow- until retaining tabs of lugs for trim -1- for centre armrest are disengaged at bracket -2- for centre armrest.

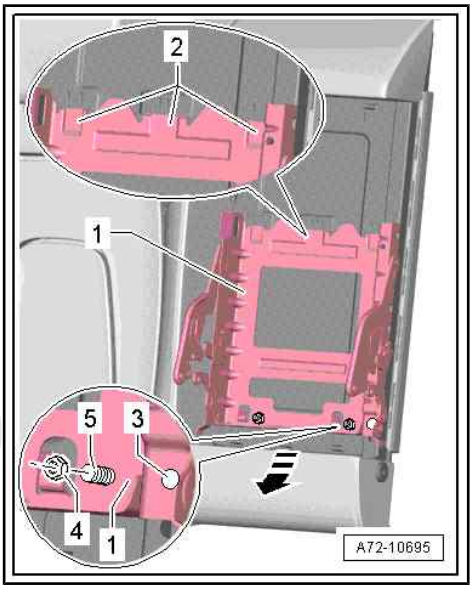


– Detach trim -1- for centre armrest towards front from bracket -4- for centre armrest upwards at an angle -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Equipment version with storage box: Remove storage box in centre console (rear) ⇒ page 535 .



Note

As protection against metal swarf, place plastic sheeting between backrest cover and outer backrest frame.

WARNING

Risk of injury!

- *Put on safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivet -3-.
– Remove the two nuts -4-.
– Detach bracket -1- for centre armrest from studs -5- and pull out of section -2- -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

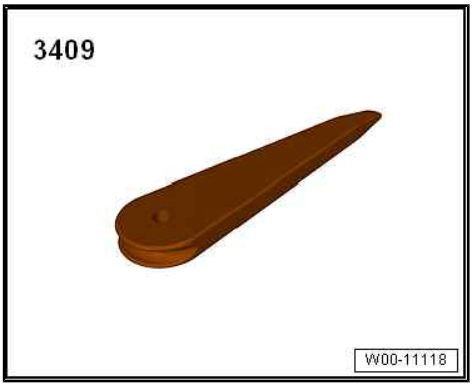
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest", page 522

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.16.5 Removing and installing bracket/hinges for centre armrest - fixed rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



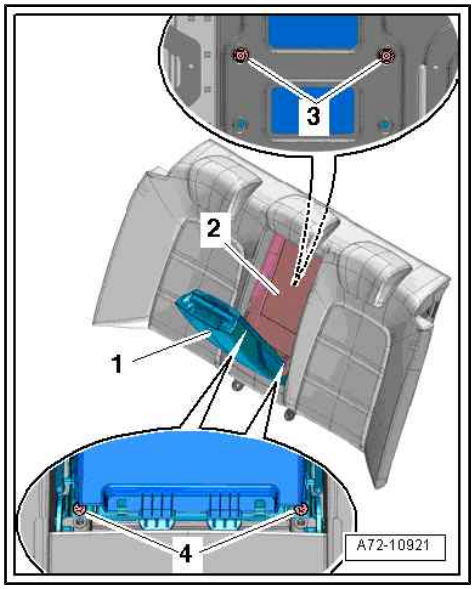
Removing

– Remove back panel trim ⇒ page 331 .

– Unscrew nuts (left and right) -3- for bracket evenly.

– Fold open centre armrest -1- so that it is $^{2}/_{3}$ open and remove bolts -4-.

– Detach bracket with centre armrest and hinges from rear seat backrest.



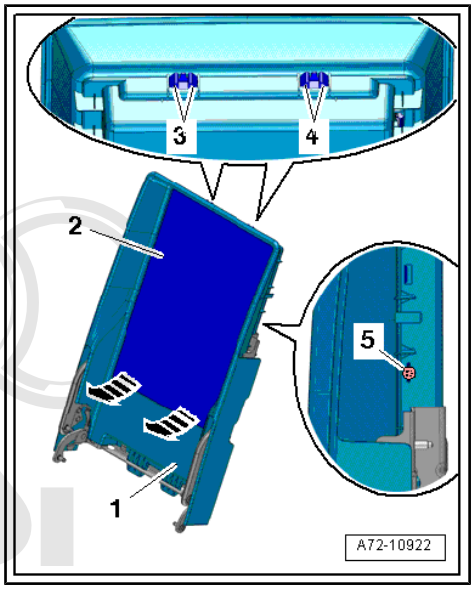
– Remove centre armrest from bracket and hinges ⇒ page 564 .

– Unscrew bolt -5- for trim panel for centre armrest.

– Release fasteners for trim panel for centre armrest -2- at bottom and sides of cover for centre armrest -1- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Pull trim panel for centre armrest off cover for centre armrest -arrows- and at the same time disengage catches -3- and -4-.

– Take out trim panel for centre armrest.



Caution

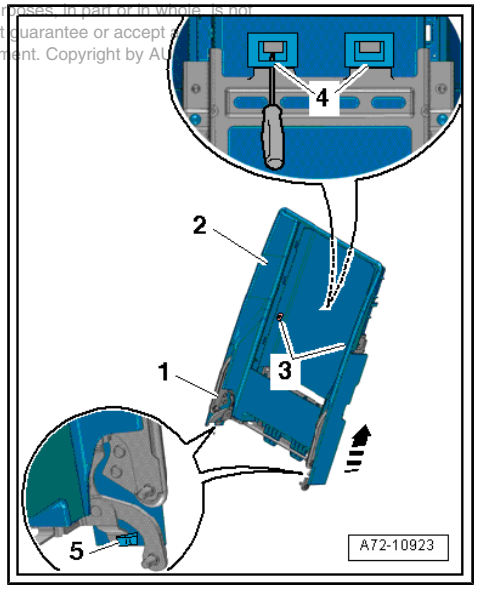
Catches on top of trim for backrest bracket could be damaged during removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -3-.

– Disengage lug -5- (bottom left and right) at bracket.

– Lift guides -4- with a screwdriver and at the same time pull cover for centre armrest -2- off bracket -1- upwards in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Check trim panel for centre armrest for damage in area of catches and renew if necessary.

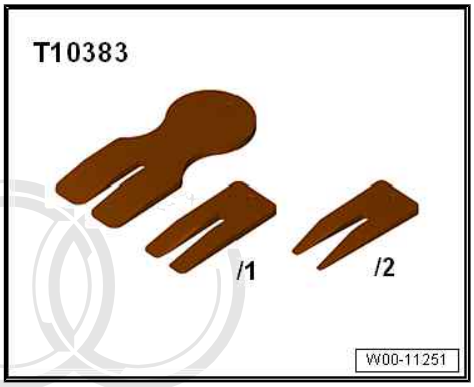
– Tighten nuts (left and right) for bracket evenly and alternately.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.5.4 Exploded view - centre armrest, fixed rear seat backrest", page 527

3.16.6 Removing and installing trim panel for centre armrest - country-specific version

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Fold down centre armrest (rear).

– Remove tray for centre armrest (rear) ⇒ page 537 .

– Open blind and remove lining mat.

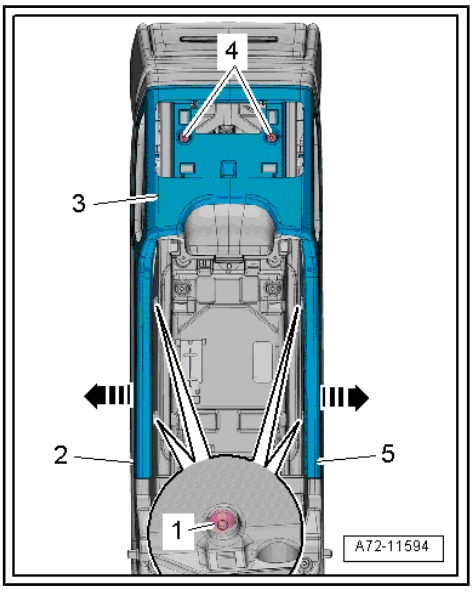
– Equipment version with rear seat massage function button: Remove rear seat massage function button ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in centre console .

– Equipment version with Rear Seat Entertainment: Remove multimedia system operating unit 2 - E499- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .

– Remove bolts -1, 4-.

– Unclip trim panel -3- using wedge -T10383/1- and pull side sections -2 and 5- slightly off armrest (bottom section) -arrows-.

– Detach trim panel for centre armrest.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

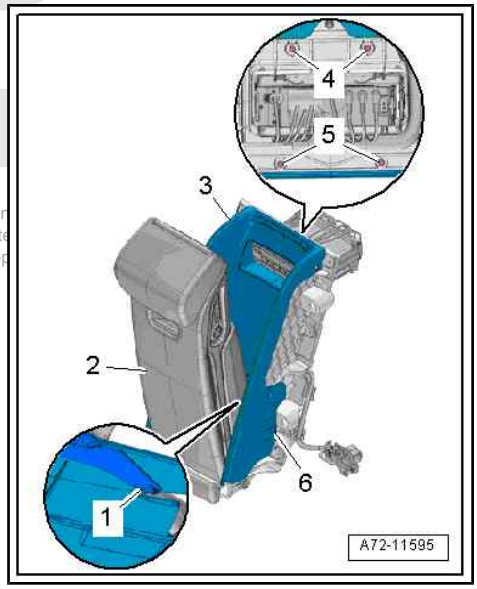
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.5.5 Exploded view - centre armrest, country-specific version", page 528

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.16.7 Removing and installing pressure damper/gas strut for centre armrest - country-specific version

Removing

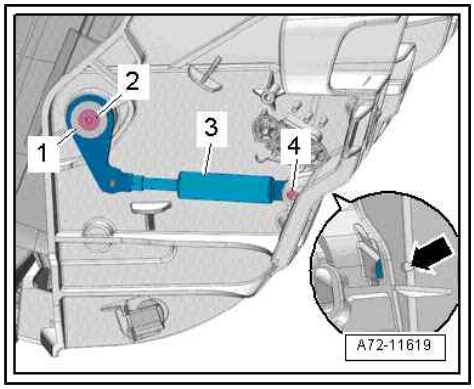
- Remove mounting for centre armrest (rear) ⇒ page 565 .
- Remove bolts -4, 5, 6-.
- Position armrest -2- as shown in illustration.
- Disengage trim -3- at top of centre armrest and release retaining hook -1- on both sides.
- Detach trim towards front.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop

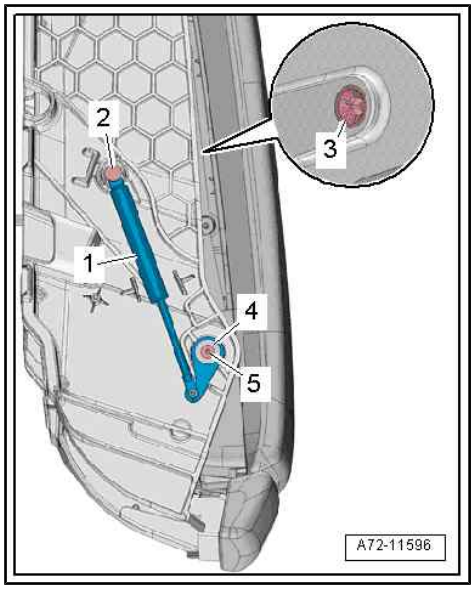
Pressure damper:

- Unscrew bolt -2- and detach washer -1-.
- Push out retaining pin -4- with a punch.
- Detach gas strut (small) -3-.



Gas strut:

- Unscrew bolt -5- and detach washer -4-.
- Open armrest.
- Press off retaining clip -3- and detach retaining pin -2- with gas strut (large) -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Close armrest.

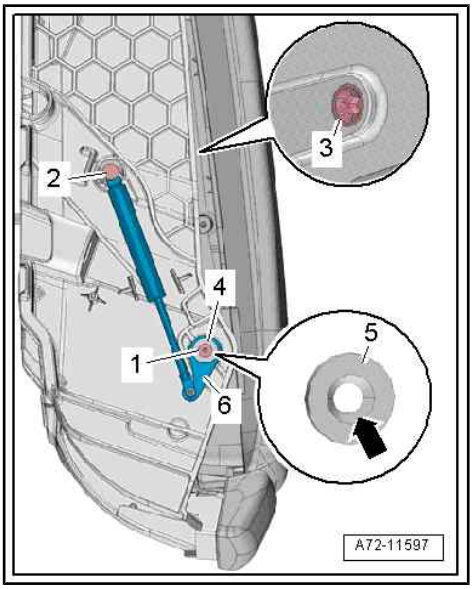
Gas strut:

– Relay lever -6- must be slid onto shaft as shown in illustration.

– Fit washer -5- and tighten bolt -1-.

• Cone -arrow- on washer must point outwards.

– Fit retaining pin -2- and secure with retaining clip -3-.



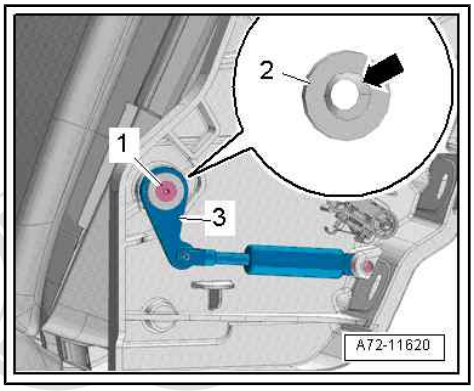
Pressure damper:

– The relay lever must be slid onto the shaft as shown in the illustration.

– Fit washer -2- and tighten bolt -1-.

• Cone -arrow- on washer must point outwards.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.5.5 Exploded view - centre armrest, country-specific version”, page 528



3.16.8 Removing and installing mounting/centre armrest - country-specific version

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. AUDI AG.

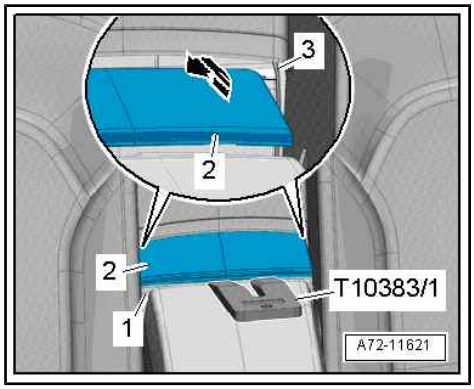


Removing

– Fold down centre armrest (rear).

– Press trim cover -2- off armrest (rear) -1- using wedge - T10383/1- .

– Guide trim cover out of guide rail -3- -arrow- and detach.



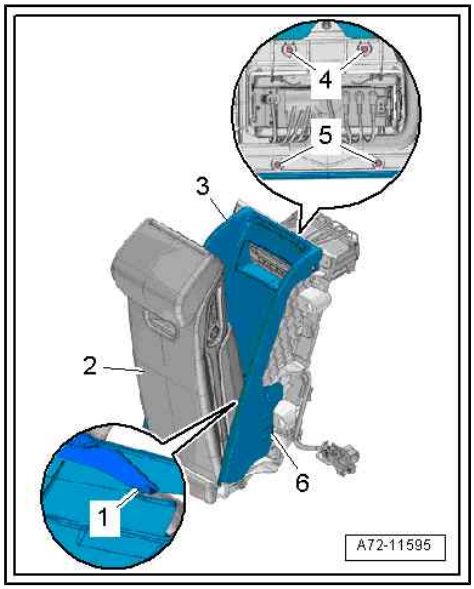
– Remove mounting for centre armrest (rear) ⇒ page 565 .

– Remove bolts -4, 5, 6-.

– Position armrest -2- as shown in illustration.

– Disengage trim -3- at top of centre armrest and release retaining hook -1- on both sides.

– Detach trim towards front.



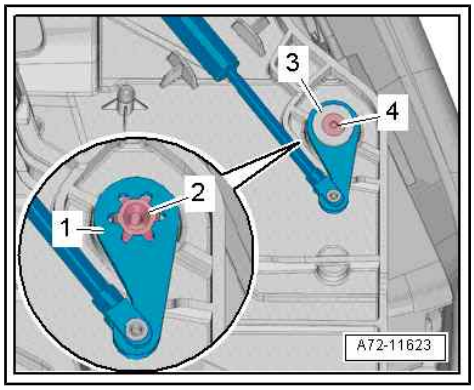
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move clear wiring harness at centre armrest.

– Unscrew bolt -4- at gas struts and detach washer -3-.

– Pull off relay lever -1- and press shaft -2- out to the side.

– Detach armrest from centre armrest.



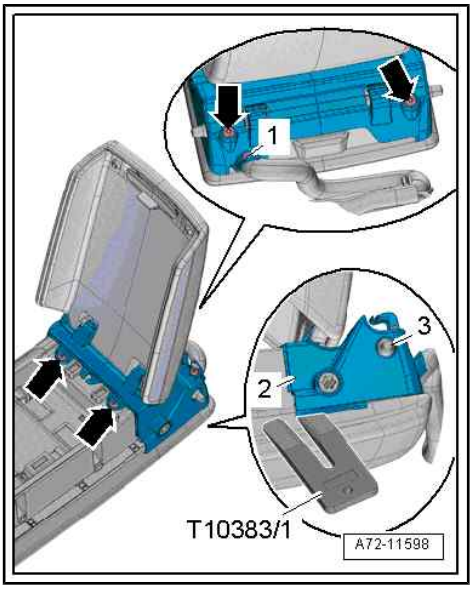
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “3.5.5 Exploded view - centre armrest, country-specific version”, page 528

3.16.9 Removing and installing arm pad for centre armrest - country-specific version



Removing

– Remove armrest (bottom section) ⇒ page 575 .

– Remove trim for tray ⇒ page 537 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Cut through cable tie -1-.

– Detach armrest from bottom section of armrest; to do so, release trim -2- from side using wedge -T10383/1- and compress spring bolts -3-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.5.5 Exploded view - centre armrest, country-specific version", page 528

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Front seat pneumatic system

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - pneumatic system”, page 578

⇒ “4.2 Connection diagram - pneumatic system”, page 581

⇒ “4.3 Exploded view - pneumatic system, compressor”, page 583

⇒ “4.4 Exploded view - pneumatic system, backrest”, page 585

⇒ “4.5 Exploded view - pneumatic system, massage mat”, page 587

⇒ “4.6 Exploded view - pneumatic system, seat/backrest bolster adjusters”, page 589

⇒ “4.7 Checking pneumatic system”, page 590

⇒ “4.8 Severing and connecting pneumatic lines”, page 607

⇒ “4.9 Servicing pneumatic lines”, page 608

⇒ “4.10 Removing and installing compressor/control unit for multi-contour seat”, page 609

⇒ “4.11 Removing and installing module carrier with lumbar support air cushions”, page 614

⇒ “4.12 Removing and installing switch module 2 for front seat E667 / E668 ”, page 616

⇒ “4.13 Removing and installing valve block for multi-contour seat”, page 618

⇒ “4.14 Removing and installing massage mat”, page 622

⇒ “4.15 Removing and installing massage function button E670 / E671 ”, page 624

⇒ “4.16 Removing and installing seat bolster adjuster”, page 624

⇒ “4.17 Removing and installing backrest bolster adjuster”, page 625

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.1 Exploded view - pneumatic system

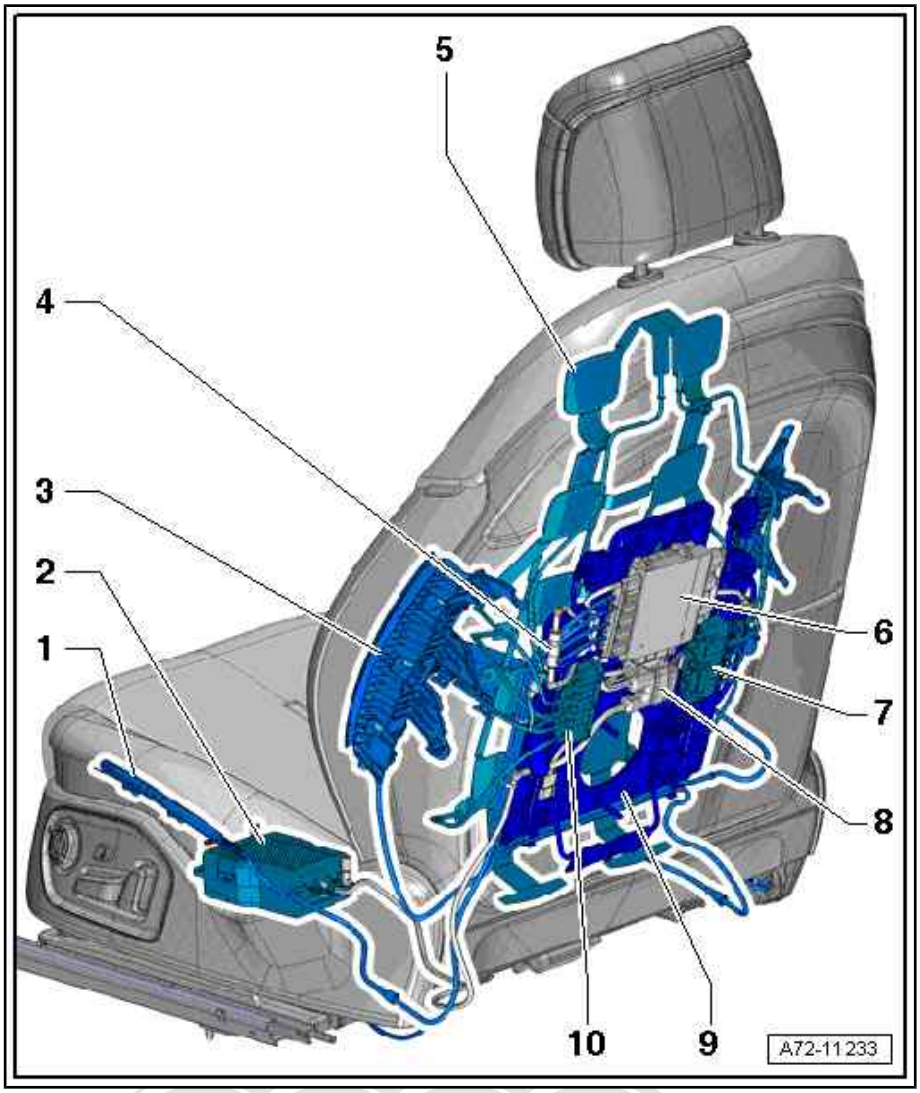
⇒ “4.1.1 Exploded view - pneumatic system, multi-contour seat up to 08.2012”, page 578

⇒ “4.1.2 Exploded view - pneumatic system, multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards”, page 580

4.1.1 Exploded view - pneumatic system, multi-contour seat up to 08.2012

Note

Repair specifications and test methods for pneumatic components ⇒ page 608



1 - Seat bolster adjuster

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 589

2 - Compressor for multi-contour driver seat - V439-

- ❑ Passenger side: compressor for multi-contour front passenger seat - V440-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 583

3 - Backrest bolster adjuster

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 589

4 - Non-return valve

- ❑ Separate component or integrated in control unit for multi-contour seat (depending on version)
- ❑ The separate non-return valve must be removed when installing a control unit for multi-contour seat; see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

5 - Massage mat

- ❑ Integrated into backrest padding; if defective, renew backrest padding ⇒ page 679
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 587

6 - Control unit for driver multi-contour seat - J873-

- ❑ Passenger side: control unit for front passenger multi-contour seat - J872-
- ❑ There is no restrictor connection on the Genuine replacement part with integrated non-return valve and restrictor ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ; in this case the separate non-return valve must be removed
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 585

7 - Valve block 1 in driver seat - N475-

- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 1 in front passenger seat - N477-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 587

8 - Pulsation damper

9 - Module carrier with lumbar support air cushion

- ❑ Cannot be dismantled
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 585

10 - Valve block 2 in driver seat - N476-

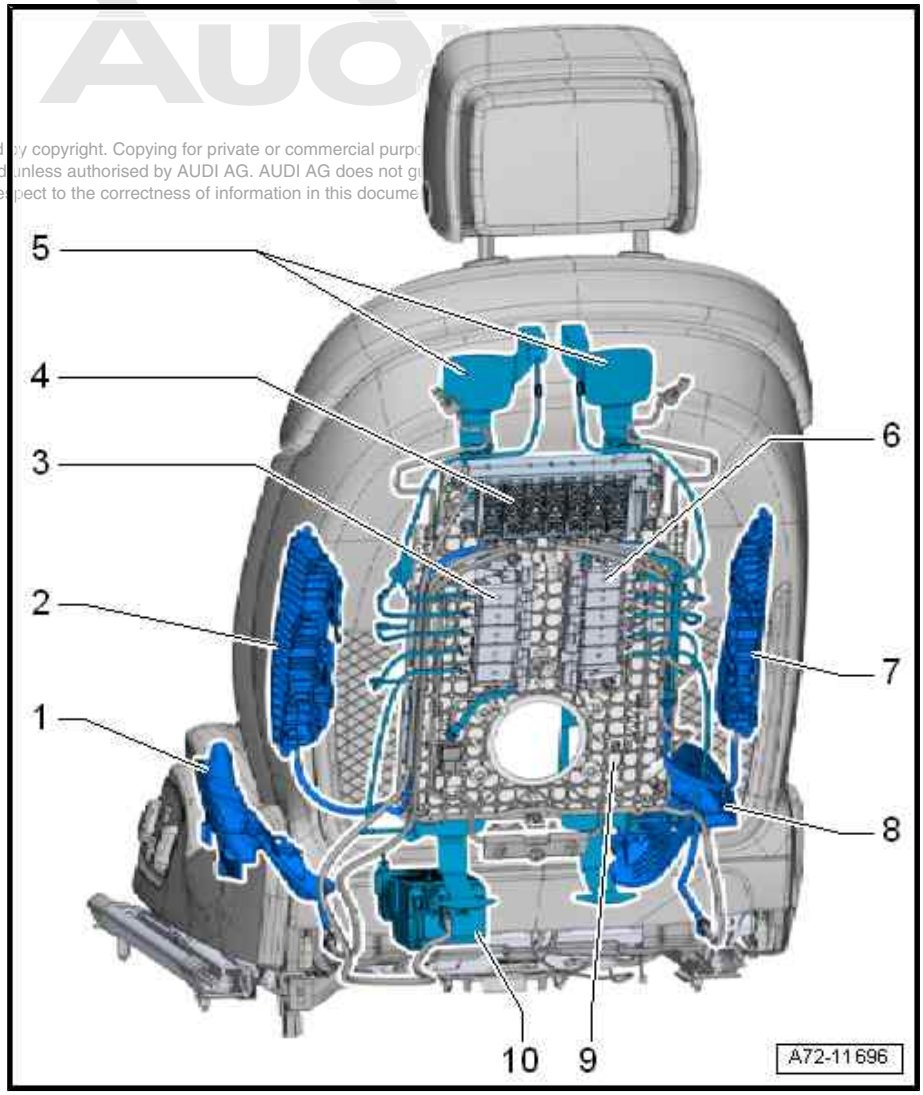
- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 2 in front passenger seat - N478-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 587

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.1.2 Exploded view - pneumatic system, multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards

Note

Repair specifications and test methods for pneumatic components ⇒ page 590



1 - Seat bolster adjuster (left-side)

- Exploded view ⇒ page 589

2 - Backrest bolster adjuster (left-side)

- Exploded view ⇒ page 589

3 - Valve block 2 in driver seat - N476-

- Passenger side: valve block 2 in front passenger seat - N478-
- For massage mat
- Exploded view ⇒ page 588

4 - Valve block 1 in driver seat - N475-

- Passenger side: valve block 1 in front passenger seat - N477-
- For lumbar support and seat bolster adjustment
- Exploded view ⇒ page 586

5 - Massage mat

- Exploded view ⇒ page 588

6 - Valve block 3 in driver seat - N523-

- Passenger side: valve block 3 in front passenger seat - N524-
- For massage mat
- Exploded view ⇒ page 588

7 - Backrest bolster adjuster (right-side)

- Exploded view ⇒ page 589

8 - Seat bolster adjuster (right-side)

- Exploded view ⇒ page 589

9 - Module carrier, lumbar support air cushions

- Exploded view ⇒ page 586

10 - Compressor for multi-contour driver seat - V439- with integrated control unit -J873-

- Passenger side: compressor for multi-contour passenger seat - V440- with integrated control unit -J872-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 584

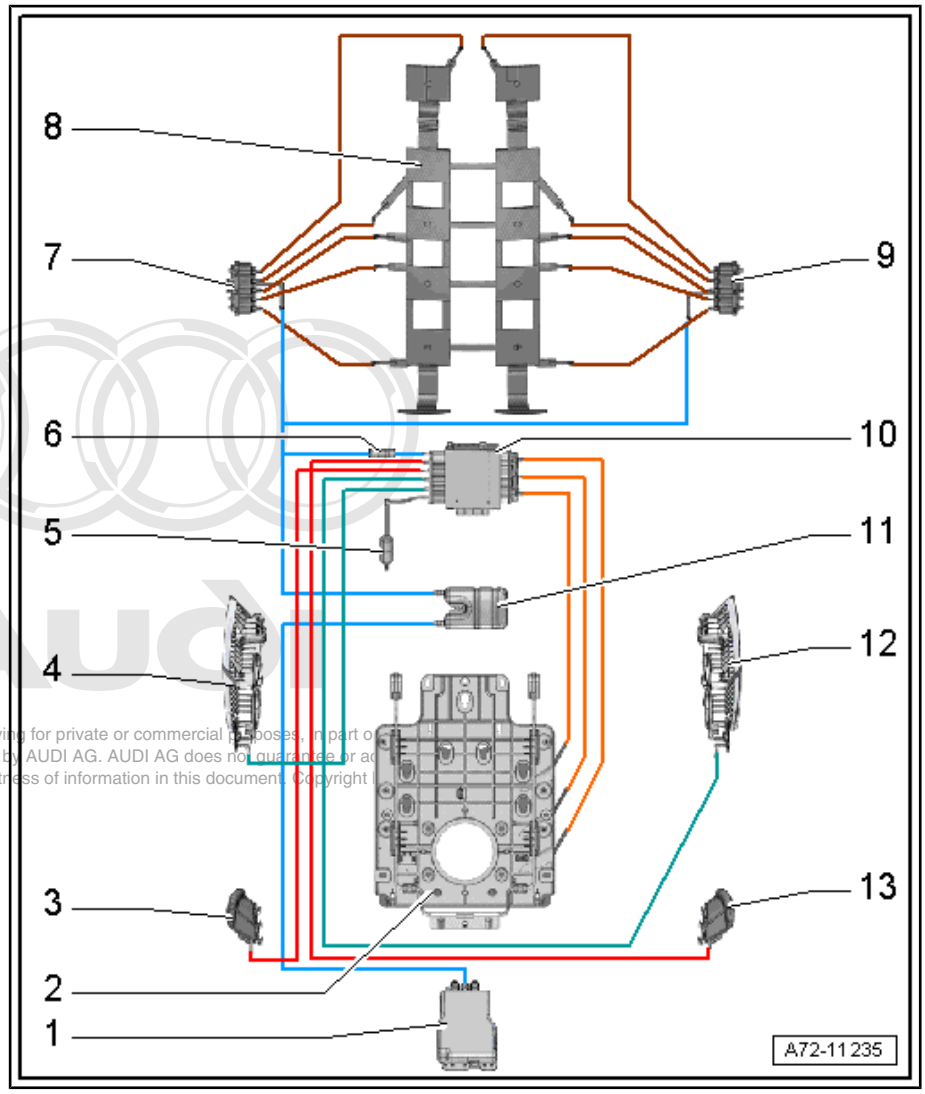
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

4.2 Connection diagram - pneumatic system

⇒ “4.2.1 Connection diagram - pneumatic system, multi-contour seat up to 08.2012”, page 581

⇒ “4.2.2 Connection diagram - pneumatic system, multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards”, page 582

4.2.1 Connection diagram - pneumatic system, multi-contour seat up to 08.2012



1 - Compressor for multi-contour driver seat - V439-

- ❑ Passenger side: compressor for multi-contour front passenger seat - V440-

2 - Module carrier with lumbar support air cushions

3 - Seat bolster adjuster (left-side)

4 - Backrest bolster adjuster (left-side)

5 - Restrictor

- ❑ For vented air
- ❑ Separate component or integrated in control unit for multi-contour seat (depending on version)
- ❑ There is no restrictor connection for installing a control unit for multi-contour seat with integrated restrictor; see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

6 - Non-return valve

- ❑ Separate component or integrated in control unit for multi-contour seat (depending on version)
- ❑ The separate non-return valve must be removed when installing a control unit for multi-contour seat; see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

7 - Valve block 2 in driver seat - N476-

- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 2 in front passenger seat - N478-

8 - Massage mat

9 - Valve block 1 in driver seat - N475-

- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 1 in front passenger seat - N477-

10 - Control unit for driver multi-contour seat - J873-

- ❑ Passenger side: control unit for front passenger multi-contour seat - J872-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or ... Reproduction not authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright ...

- ❑ There is no restrictor connection on the Genuine replacement part with integrated non-return valve and restrictor ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ; in this case the separate non-return valve must be removed

11 - Pulsation damper

12 - Backrest bolster adjuster (right-side)

13 - Seat bolster adjuster (right-side)

4.2.2 Connection diagram - pneumatic system, multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards

1 - Seat bolster adjuster (left-side)

2 - Backrest bolster adjuster (left-side)

3 - Compressor for multi-contour driver seat - V439- with integrated control unit -J873-

- ❑ Passenger side: compressor for multi-contour passenger seat - V440- with integrated control unit -J872-

4 - Valve block 2 in driver seat - N476-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 2 in front passenger seat - N478-
- ❑ For massage mat

5 - Massage mat

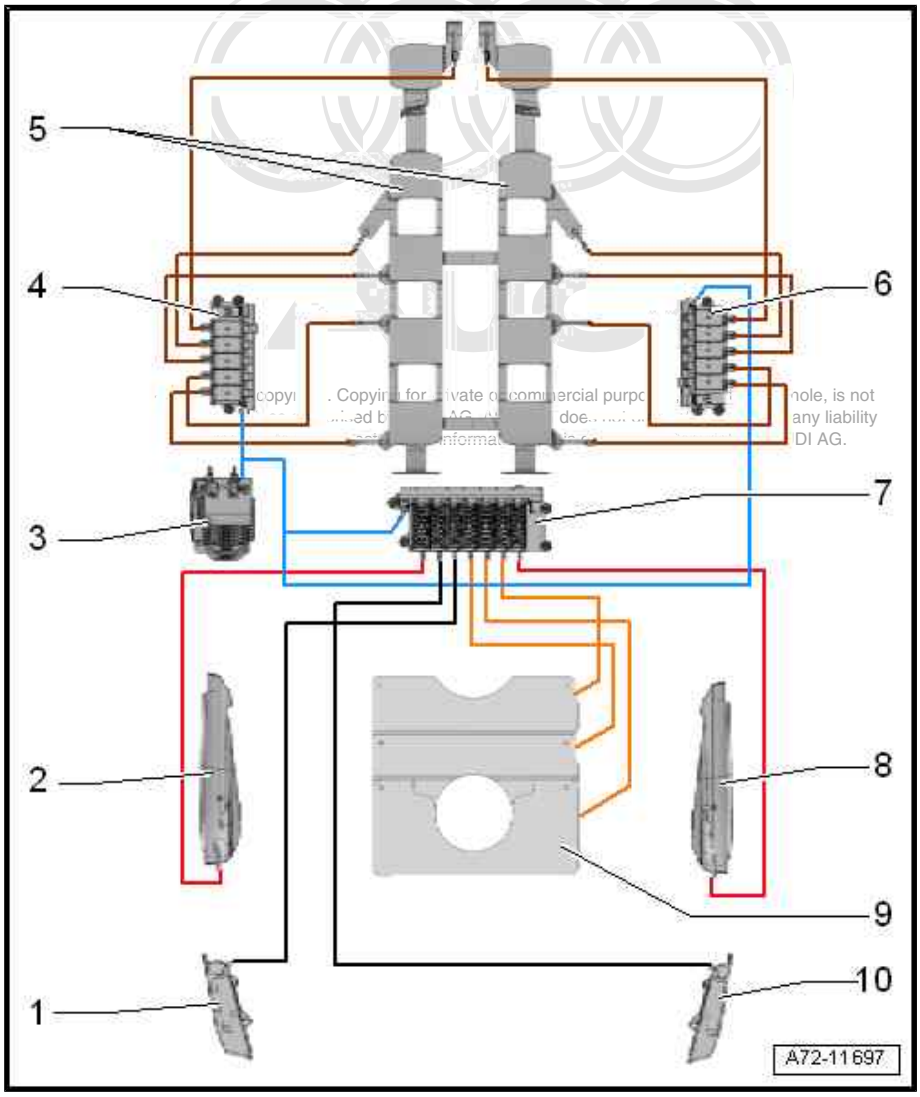
6 - Valve block 3 in driver seat - N523-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 3 in front passenger seat - N524-
- ❑ For massage mat

7 - Valve block 1 in driver seat - N475-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 1 in front passenger seat - N477-
- ❑ For lumbar support and seat bolster adjustment

8 - Backrest bolster adjuster (right-side)



9 - Module carrier with lumbar support air cushions

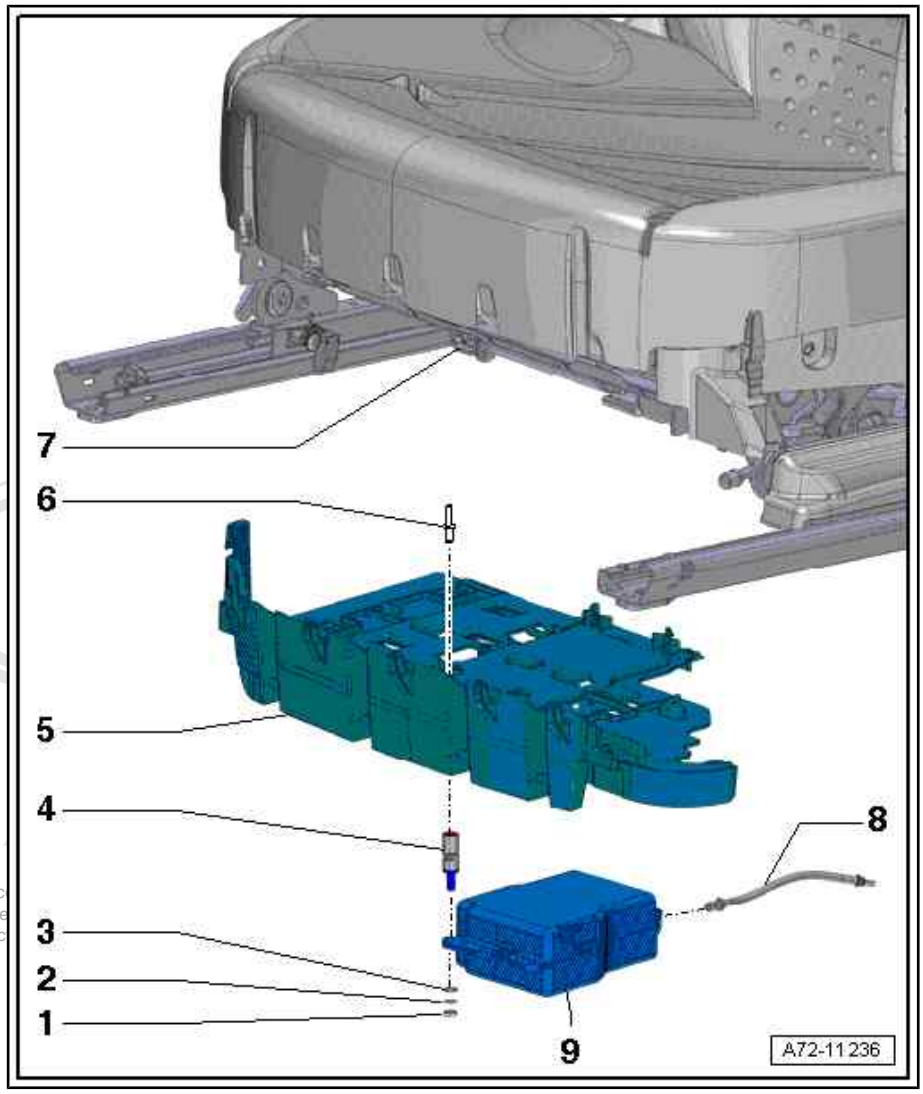
10 - Seat bolster adjuster (right-side)

4.3 Exploded view - pneumatic system, compressor

⇒ "4.3.1 Exploded view - compressor, multi-contour seat up to 08.2012", page 583

⇒ "4.3.2 Exploded view - compressor, multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards", page 584

4.3.1 Exploded view - compressor, multi-contour seat up to 08.2012



1 - Nut

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Counterhold at bonded rubber bush to tighten
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

2 - Spring washer

- ❑ 3x

3 - Washer

- ❑ 3x

4 - Bonded rubber bush

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 610
- ❑ Take care not to strain or twist when fitting

5 - Bracket

- ❑ For trim (front), compressor and control unit for multi-contour seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 467

6 - Rivet

- ❑ 3x

7 - Front seat

8 - Pneumatic line

Protected by c
permitted unle
with respec

9 - Compressor for multi-contour driver seat - V439-

- ❑ Passenger side: compressor for multi-contour front passenger seat - V440-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 609

4.3.2 Exploded view - compressor, multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards

1 - Compressor for multi-contour driver seat - V439- with integrated control unit -J873-

- ❑ Passenger side: compressor for multi-contour passenger seat - V440- with integrated control unit -J872-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 613

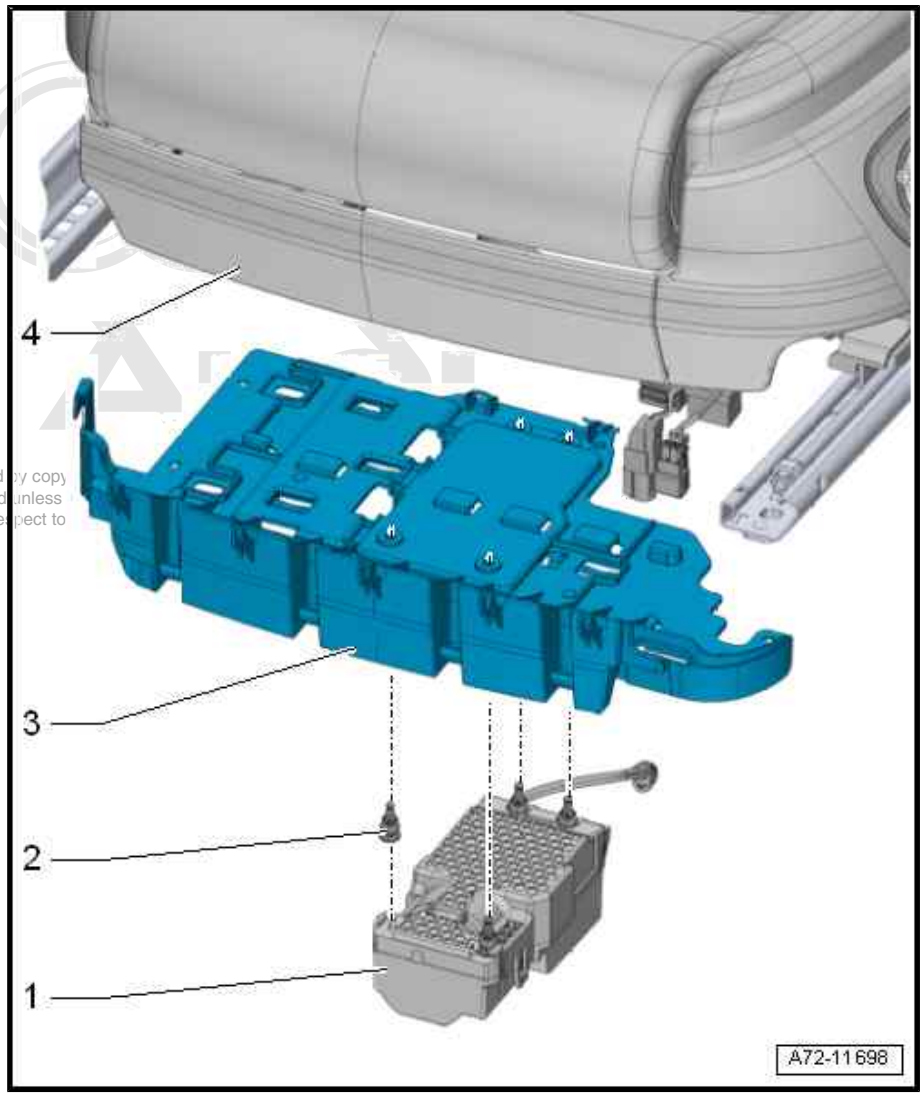
2 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ Retainer for compressor
- ❑ 4x

3 - Bracket

- ❑ For trim (front), compressor and control unit for multi-contour seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 467

4 - Front seat



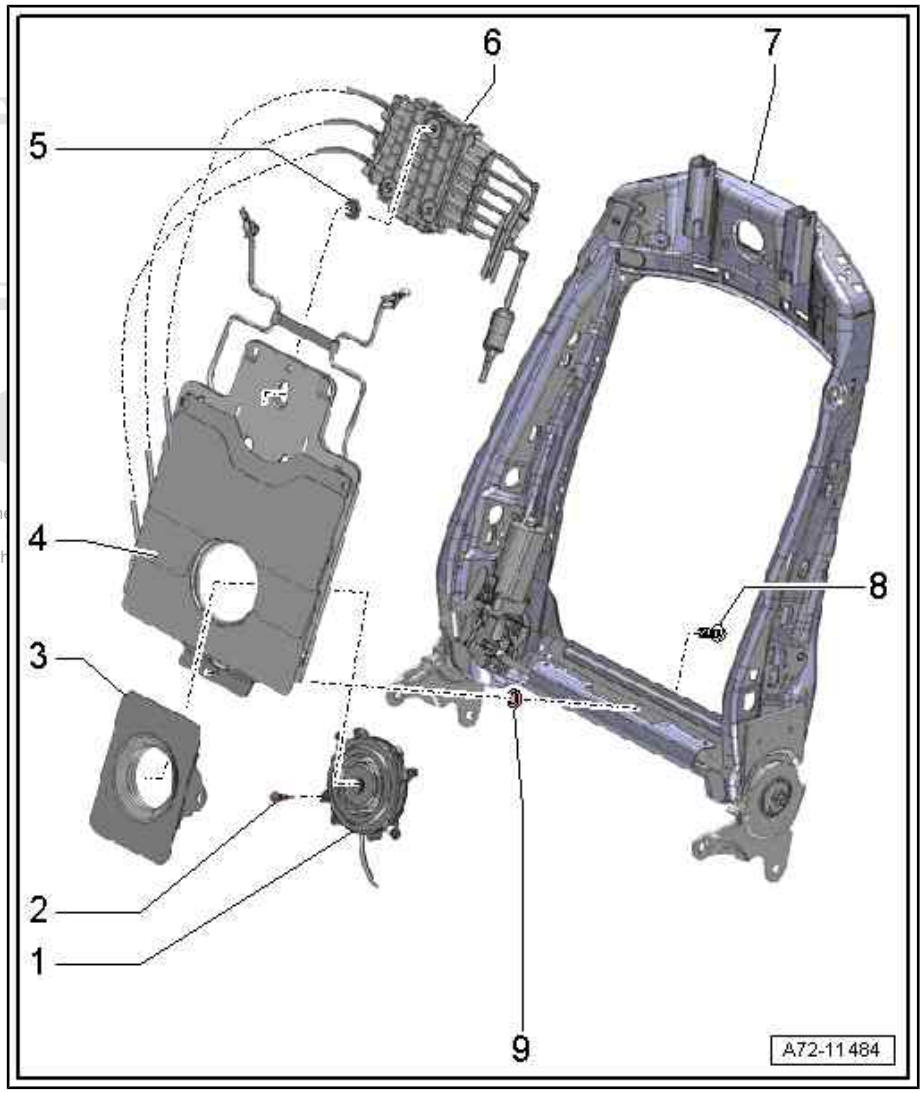
Protected by copyright. Copying permitted only with respect to

4.4 Exploded view - pneumatic system, backrest

⇒ “4.4.1 Exploded view - valve block/module carrier/lumbar support/fan, multi-contour seat up to 08.2012”, page 585

⇒ “4.4.2 Exploded view - valve block/module carrier/lumbar support/fan, multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards”, page 586

4.4.1 Exploded view - valve block/module carrier/lumbar support/fan, multi-contour seat up to 08.2012



1 - Driver seat backrest fan - V388-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest fan - V389-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 454

2 - Rubber retaining pin

- ❑ For fan
- ❑ 4x

3 - Bellows

- ❑ Bonded to backrest padding

4 - Module carrier

- ❑ With lumbar support air cushions
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 614
- ❑ Connecting severed pneumatic lines ⇒ page 607

5 - Rubber bush

- ❑ For control unit for multi-contour seat
- ❑ 3x

6 - Control unit for driver multi-contour seat - J873-

- ❑ Passenger side: control unit for front passenger multi-contour seat - J872-
- ❑ There is no restrictor connection on the Genuine replacement part with integrated non-return valve and restrictor ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ; in this case the separate non-return valve must be removed
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 611
- ❑ Connecting severed pneumatic lines ⇒ page 607

7 - Outer backrest frame

8 - Bolt

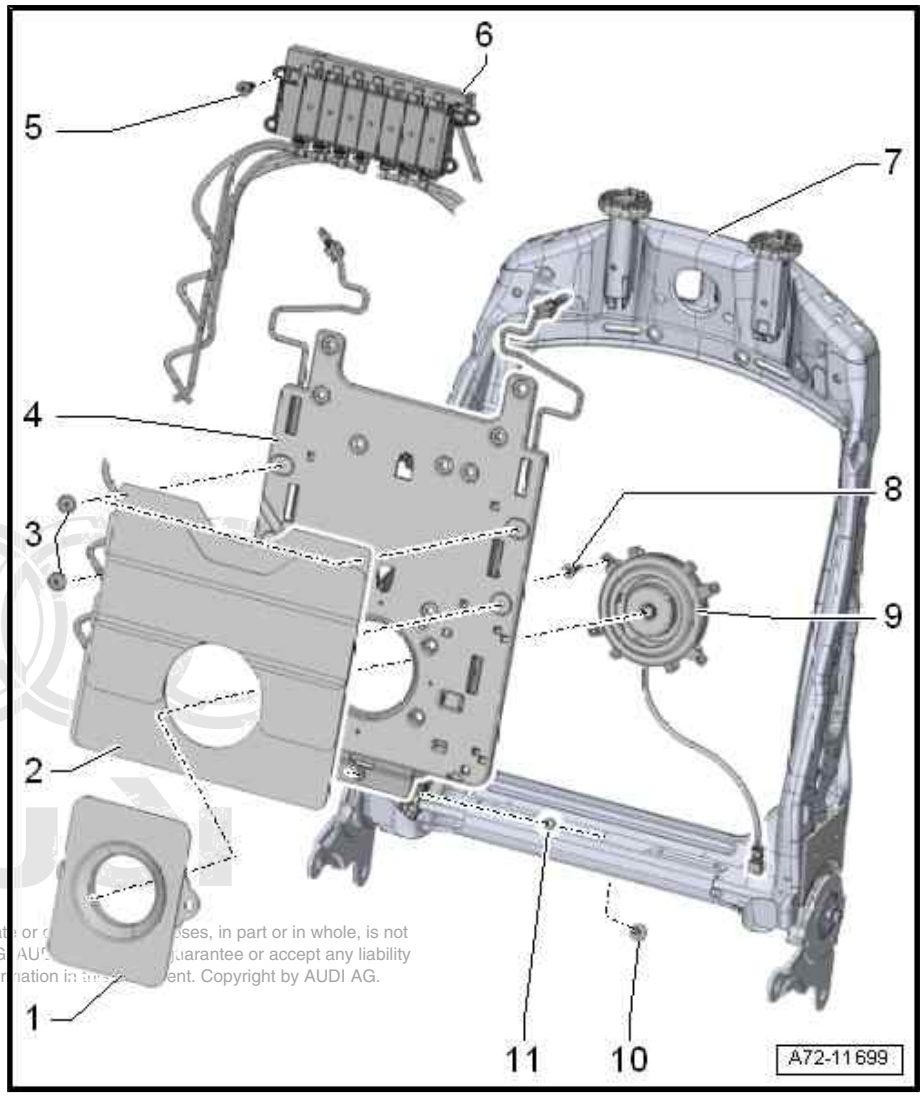
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

9 - Plastic washer

- ❑ Fit between lumbar support bracket and outer backrest frame before bolting on lumbar support

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

4.4.2 Exploded view - valve block/module carrier/lumbar support/fan, multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards



1 - Bellows

- ❑ Bonded to backrest padding

2 - Lumbar support air cushion

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 615
- ❑ Connecting severed pneumatic lines ⇒ page 607

3 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 4x

4 - Module carrier

- ❑ For lumbar support air cushion
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 615

5 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ Retainer for valve block
- ❑ 4x

6 - Valve block 1 in driver seat - N475-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 1 in front passenger seat - N477-
- ❑ For lumbar support and seat bolster adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 621
- ❑ Connecting severed pneumatic lines ⇒ page 607

7 - Outer backrest frame

8 - Rubber retaining pin

- ❑ For fan
- ❑ 4x

9 - Driver seat backrest fan - V388-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest fan - V389-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 454

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 6.5 Nm

11 - Plastic washer

- ❑ Fit between lumbar support bracket and outer backrest frame before bolting on lumbar support

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.5 Exploded view - pneumatic system, massage mat

⇒ "4.5.1 Exploded view - backrest padding/massage mat, multi-contour seat up to 08.2012", page 587

⇒ "4.5.2 Exploded view - backrest padding/massage mat, multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards", page 588

4.5.1 Exploded view - backrest padding/massage mat, multi-contour seat up to 08.2012

1 - Massage mat

- ❑ Integrated into backrest padding; if defective, renew backrest padding ⇒ page 679

2 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 679

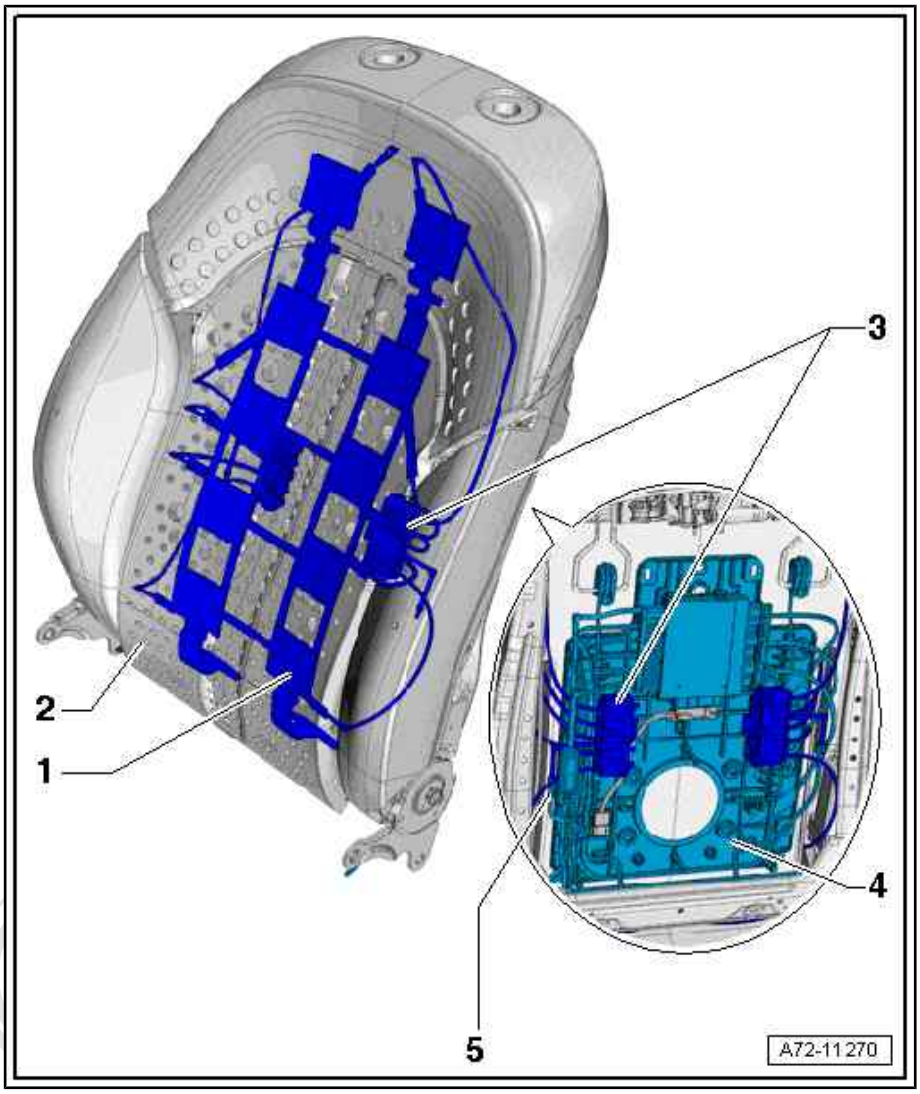
3 - Valve block 1 in driver seat - N475- / valve block 2 in driver seat - N476-

- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 1 in front passenger seat - N477- / valve block 2 in front passenger seat - N478-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 618
- ❑ Connecting severed pneumatic lines ⇒ page 607

4 - Module carrier for lumbar support

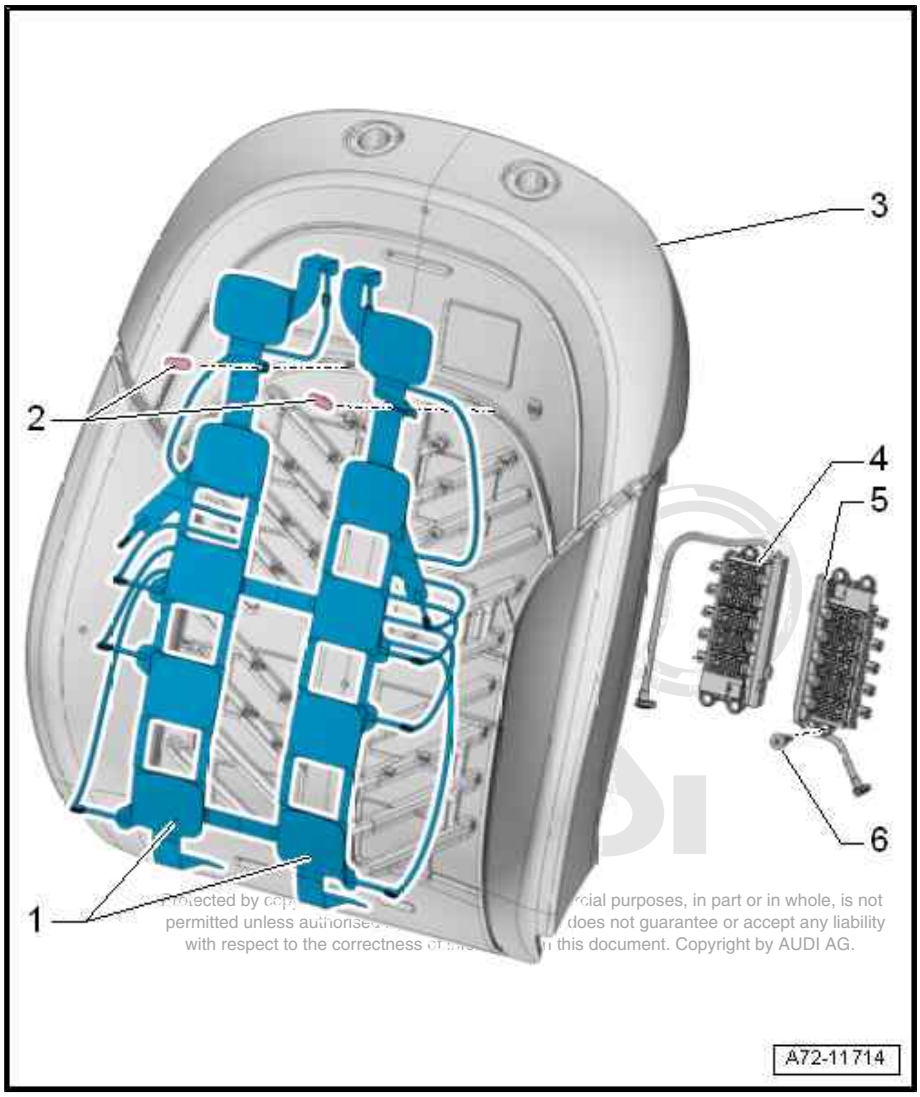
5 - Plug-in connector

- ❑ For pneumatic line
- ❑ Disconnecting ⇒ page 607



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.5.2 Exploded view - backrest padding/massage mat, multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards



1 - Massage mat

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 622
- ❑ Press pneumatic lines on until they engage audibly
- ❑ Pull lines to check that plug-in connectors are engaged properly

2 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew

3 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 679

4 - Valve block 3 in driver seat - N523-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 3 in front passenger seat - N524-
- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 619
- ❑ Connecting severed pneumatic lines ⇒ page 607

5 - Valve block 2 in driver seat - N476-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 2 in front passenger seat - N478-
- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 619
- ❑ Connecting severed pneumatic lines ⇒ page 607

6 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ Retainer for valve block
- ❑ 6x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.6 Exploded view - pneumatic system, seat/backrest bolster adjusters

1 - Multi-contour seat

2 - Seat bolster adjuster

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 624

3 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 2x

4 - Spreader rivet

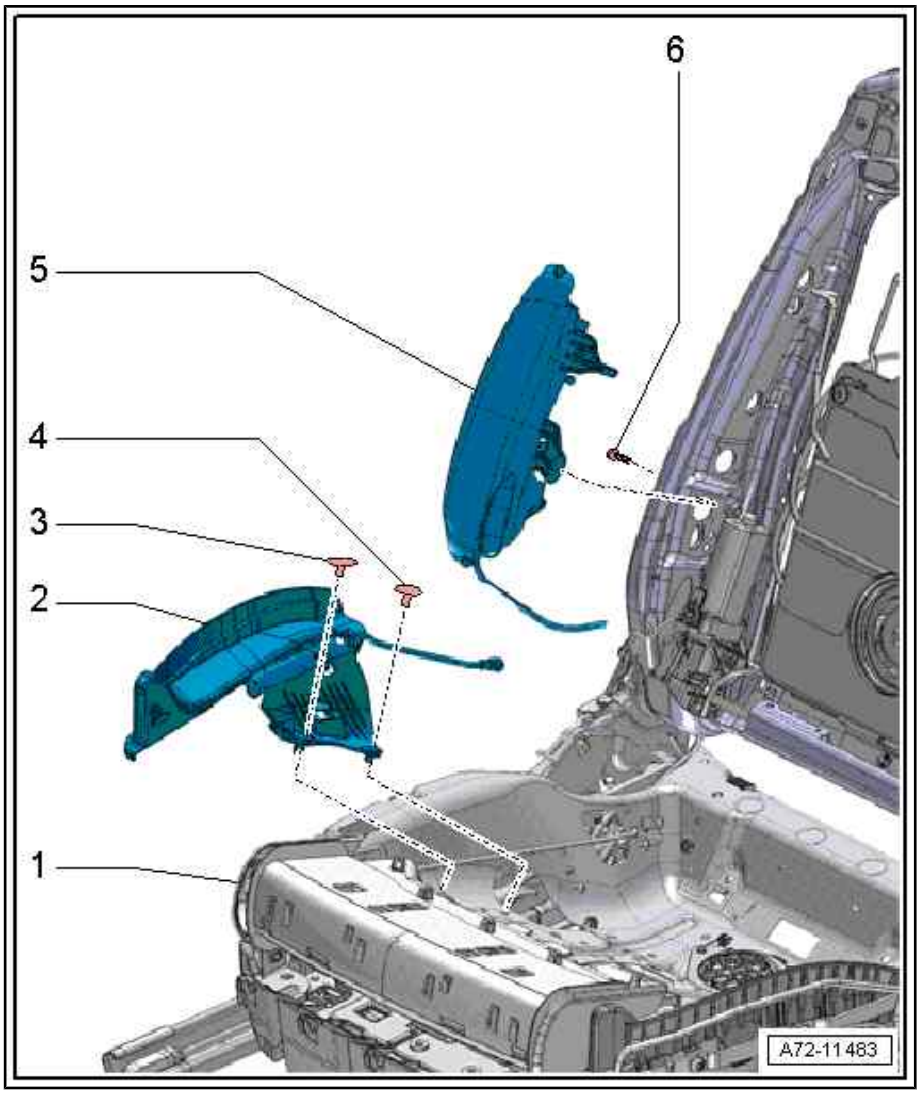
- ❑ 2x

5 - Backrest bolster adjuster

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 625
- ❑ Connecting severed pneumatic lines ⇒ page 607

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.1 Nm



4.7 Checking pneumatic system

⇒ “4.7.1 Preparation for leak test for seat bolster adjuster - up to 08.2012”, page 590

⇒ “4.7.2 Preparation for leak test for seat bolster adjuster - from 09.2012 onwards”, page 592

⇒ “4.7.3 Preparation for leak test for backrest bolster adjuster - up to 08.2012”, page 594

⇒ “4.7.4 Preparation for leak test for backrest bolster adjuster - from 09.2012 onwards”, page 595

⇒ “4.7.5 Preparation for leak test for massage mat air cushions - up to 08.2012”, page 596

⇒ “4.7.6 Preparation for leak test for massage mat air cushions - from 09.2012 onwards”, page 597

⇒ “4.7.7 Preparation for leak test for compressor and pressure line - up to 08.2012”, page 599

⇒ “4.7.8 Preparation for leak test for compressor and pressure line - from 09.2012 onwards”, page 603

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.7.1 Preparation for leak test for seat bolster adjuster - up to 08.2012

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A-
- Vehicle diagnostic tester

Note

- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the “Guided Fault Finding” routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the front seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 581*

Procedure

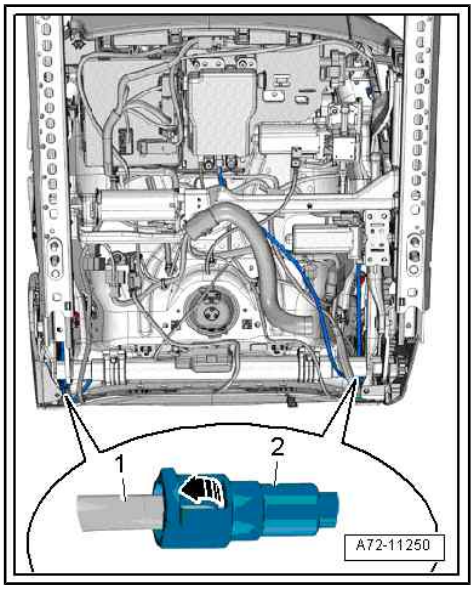
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Carefully release catch -arrow- and disconnect pneumatic lines -1- and -2-.

– To perform test in “Guided Fault Finding” mode, cross-connect connections of air cushions and valve blocks as follows:

Pneumatic line to:	To pneumatic line from multi-contour seat control unit for:
Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (right-side)	Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (left-side)
Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (left-side)	Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (right-side)



Note

To connect the pneumatic lines, make an improvised test hose from hose -VAS 6618/5- and connectors -VAS 6618/6- and -VAS 6618/7- .

In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to sever the pneumatic lines at the control unit for multi-contour seat -J872- / -J873- .

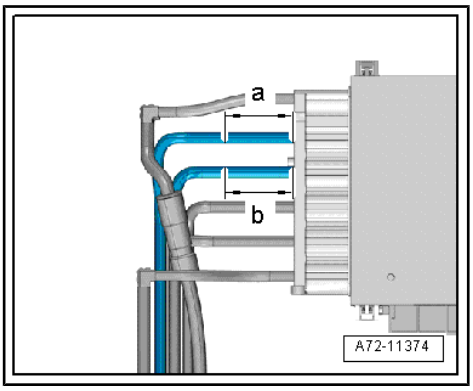
– Before severing pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Sever pneumatic lines leading to seat bolster adjuster air cushions at the following locations ⇒ page 607 :

a - 40 mm

b - 40 mm

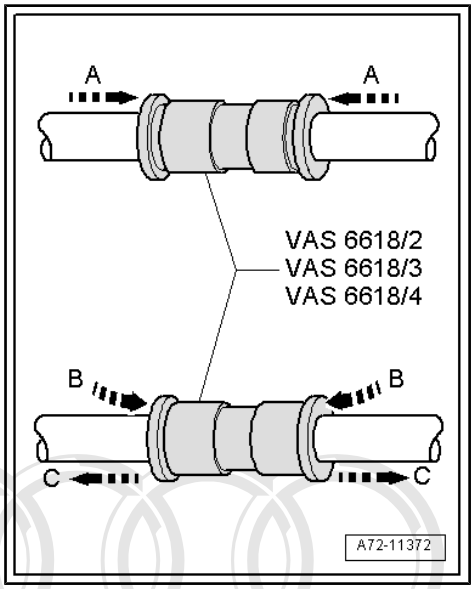
– To perform test in “Guided Fault Finding” mode, cross-connect connections of air cushions and valve blocks as follows:



Pneumatic line to:	To pneumatic line from multi-contour seat control unit for:
Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (right-side)	Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (left-side)
Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (left-side)	Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (right-side)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To connect pneumatic lines, attach connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/3- to pneumatic lines.



Note

- *To connect pneumatic lines, insert lines in connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/3- from both sides -arrows A-.*
- *Due to the risk of leaks, the connecting sleeves must not be in a hose bend.*
- *To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.*

– Connect pneumatic lines after completing leak test ⇒ page 607 .

4.7.2 Preparation for leak test for seat bolster adjuster - from 09.2012 onwards

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A-
- Vehicle diagnostic tester

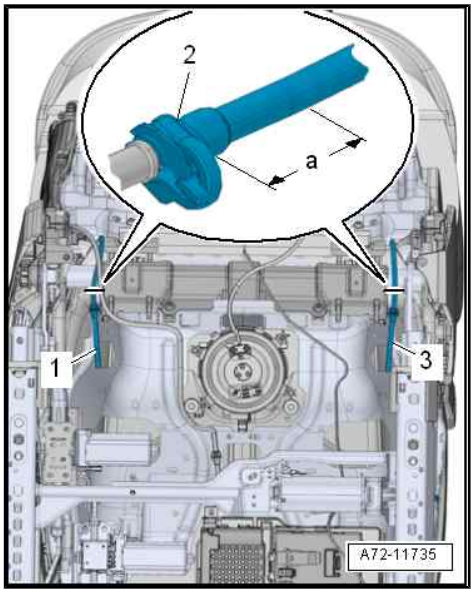
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the front seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 581*

Procedure

- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .
- Front seat in vehicle unbolted and tilted towards front with electrical connectors plugged in ⇒ page 415



Note

To perform the test, the pneumatic line to the seat bolster adjusters is not disconnected at the connection; instead it is severed according to the procedure described ⇒ page 607 .

– Sever pneumatic lines -1, 3- to all seat bolster adjuster air cushions at the following locations:

a - 30 mm

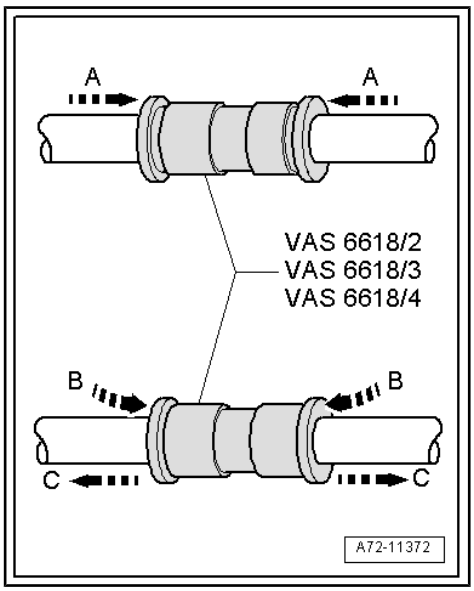
– To perform test in “Guided Fault Finding” mode, cross-connect connections of air cushions and valve blocks as follows:

Pneumatic line to:	To pneumatic line from valve block for:
Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (right-side)	Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (left-side)
Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (left-side)	Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (right-side)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

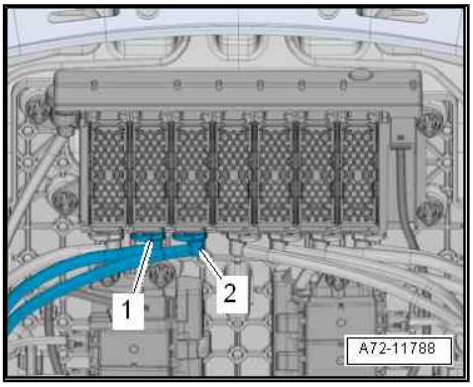
- *To connect the pneumatic lines, make an improvised test hose from the pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A- .*
- *To connect the pneumatic lines during the leak test, insert the lines in the connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/2- from both sides -arrows A-.*
- *To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.*



In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to disconnect the pneumatic lines at the valve block.

– Before disconnecting pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines to connections on valve block with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

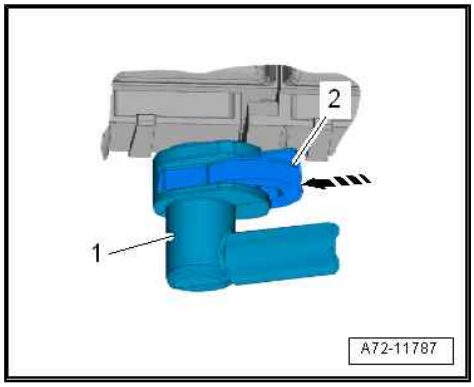
– Disconnect pneumatic lines -1, 2- to seat bolster adjuster air cushions.



– To do so, press release mechanism -2- -arrow- and disconnect pneumatic line -1- at the same time.

– To perform test in “Guided Fault Finding” mode, cross-connect connections of air cushions and valve blocks as follows:

Pneumatic line to:	To connection on valve block for:
Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (right-side)	Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (left-side)
Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (left-side)	Air cushion for seat bolster adjuster (right-side)



– Connect pneumatic lines and then pull lines to check that plug-in connector is engaged properly.

4.7.3 Preparation for leak test for backrest bolster adjuster - up to 08.2012

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A-
- Vehicle diagnostic tester

Note

- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the “Guided Fault Finding” routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the front seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 581*

Procedure

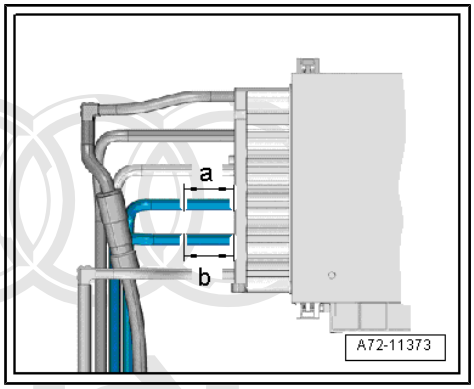
• Backrest cover panel removed ⇒ page 445

– Before severing pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Sever pneumatic lines leading to backrest bolster adjuster air cushions at the following locations ⇒ page 607 :

a - 40 mm

b - 40 mm

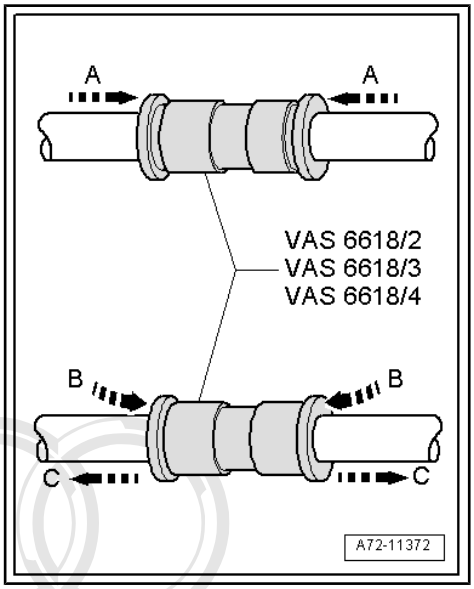


– To perform test in “Guided Fault Finding” mode, cross-connect connections of air cushions and valve blocks as follows:

Pneumatic line to:	To pneumatic line from multi-contour seat control unit for:
Air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (right-side)	Air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (left-side)
Air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (left-side)	Air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (right-side)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To connect pneumatic lines, attach connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/3- to pneumatic lines.



Note

- *To connect pneumatic lines, insert lines in connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/3- from both sides -arrows A-.*
- *Due to the risk of leaks, the connecting sleeves must not be in a hose bend.*
- *To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.*

– Connect pneumatic lines after completing leak test ⇒ page 607 .

4.7.4 Preparation for leak test for backrest bolster adjuster - from 09.2012 onwards

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

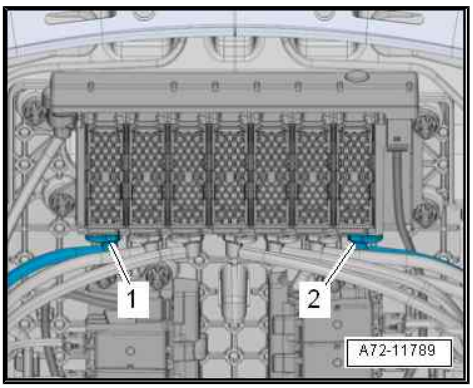
- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the front seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 581*

Procedure

• Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .

– Before disconnecting pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines to connections on valve block with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Disconnect pneumatic lines -1, 2- to backrest bolster adjuster air cushions.

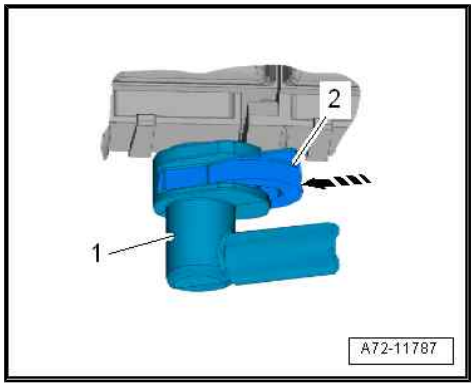


– To do so, press release mechanism -2- -arrow- and disconnect pneumatic line -1- at the same time.

– Move pneumatic lines clear.

– To perform test in “Guided Fault Finding” mode, cross-connect connections of air cushions and valve blocks as follows:

Pneumatic line to:	To connection on valve block for:
Air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (right-side)	Air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (left-side)
Air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (left-side)	Air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (right-side)



– Connect pneumatic lines and then pull lines to check that plug-in connector is engaged properly.

4.7.5 Preparation for leak test for massage mat air cushions - up to 08.2012

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A-
- Vehicle diagnostic tester

Note

- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the “Guided Fault Finding” routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the front seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 581*

Procedure

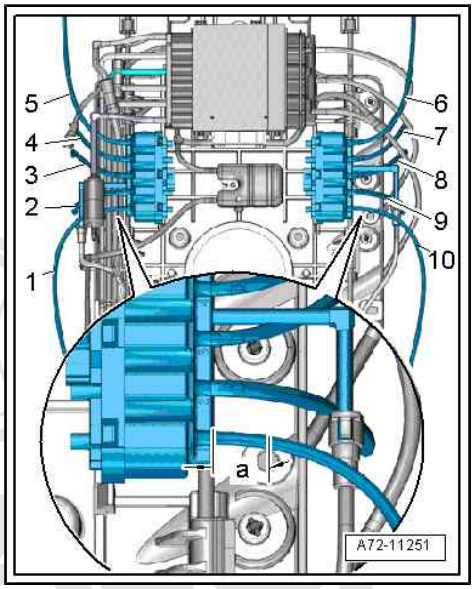
• Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .

– Before disconnecting pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Disconnect pneumatic lines -1 ... 10- from all massage mat air cushions at the following locations ⇒ page 607 :

a - 40 mm

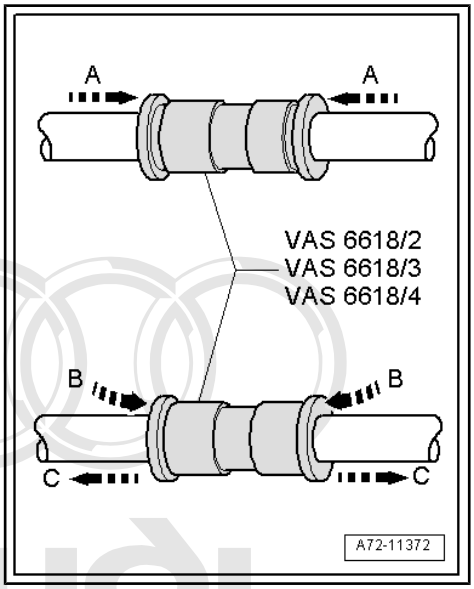
– To perform test in “Guided Fault Finding” mode, disengage both valve blocks at module carrier ⇒ page 618 and connect to pneumatic lines on opposite side.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To connect pneumatic lines, attach connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/4- to pneumatic lines.

– Plug in electrical connectors.



Note

- *To connect pneumatic lines, insert lines in connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/4- from both sides -arrows A-.*
- *To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.*

– In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to unplug the electrical connectors at the solenoid valve blocks and to cross-connect them. To do so, unfasten the solenoid valve blocks from the module carrier if necessary.

– Connect pneumatic lines after completing leak test ⇒ page 607 .

4.7.6 Preparation for leak test for massage mat air cushions - from 09.2012 on-wards

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A-
- Vehicle diagnostic tester

Note

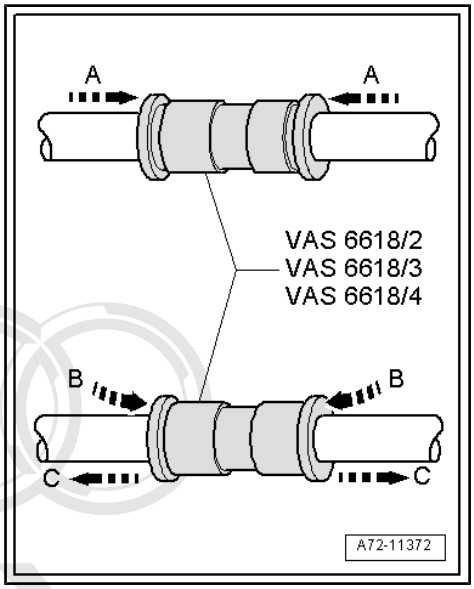
- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the “Guided Fault Finding” routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the front seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 581*

Procedure

• Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .

Note

- *To perform the test, the pneumatic line from the compressor is not disconnected at the connection; instead it is severed according to the procedure described ⇒ page 607 .*
- *To connect the pneumatic lines during the leak test, insert the lines in the connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/2- from both sides -arrows A-.*
- *To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.*

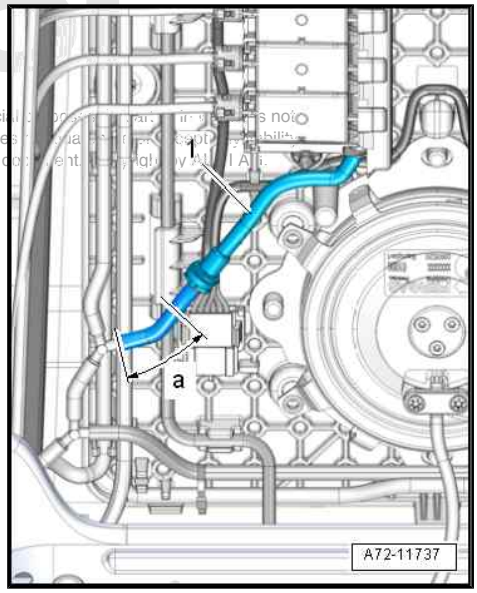


Driver side:

– Sever pneumatic line -1- from compressor at the following location:

a - 30 mm

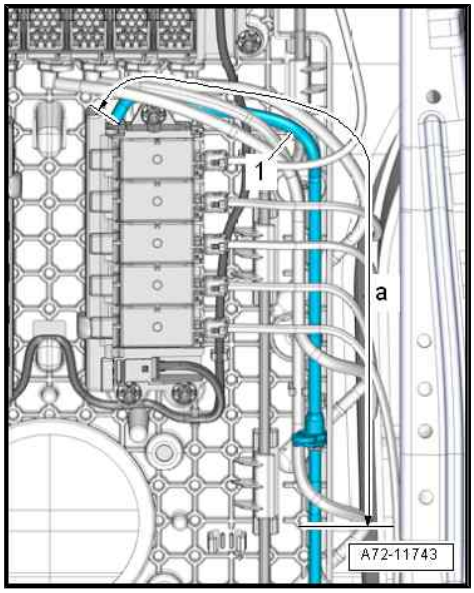
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Passenger side:

– Sever pneumatic line -1- from compressor at the following location:

a - 315 mm

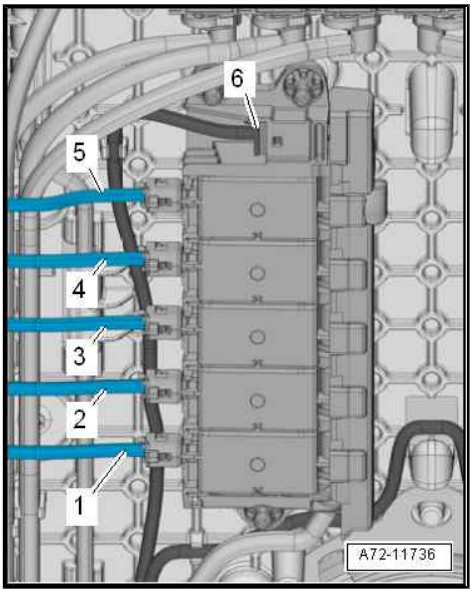


Continued:

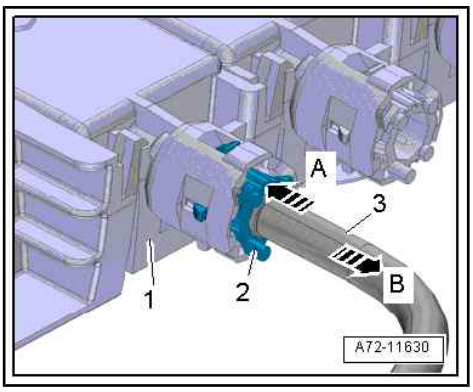
– Unplug electrical connector -6-.

– Before disconnecting pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines to connections on valve block with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Disconnect pneumatic lines -1 ... 5- to all massage mat air cushions.



– To do so, press release ring -2- towards valve block -1- -arrow A- and at the same time disconnect pneumatic line -3- -arrow B-.



– Repeat procedure on valve block on opposite side.

– To perform test in “Guided Fault Finding” mode, disengage both valve blocks at module carrier ⇒ page 618 and connect to pneumatic lines on opposite side.

– Plug in electrical connectors.

– In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to unplug the electrical connectors at the solenoid valve blocks and to cross-connect them. To do so, unfasten the solenoid valve blocks from the module carrier if necessary.

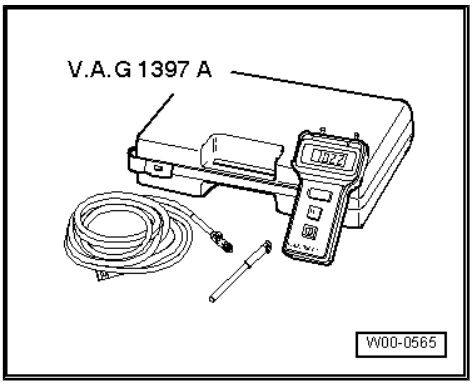
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Connect pneumatic lines and then pull lines to check that plug-in connector is engaged properly.

4.7.7 Preparation for leak test for compressor and pressure line - up to 08.2012

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A-



♦ Pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A-

♦ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Note

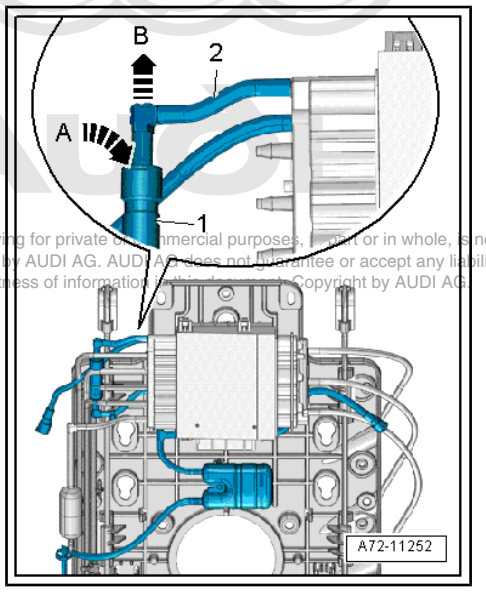
- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the front seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 581*

Procedure

- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .
- Front seat in vehicle unbolted and tilted towards front with electrical connectors plugged in ⇒ page 415

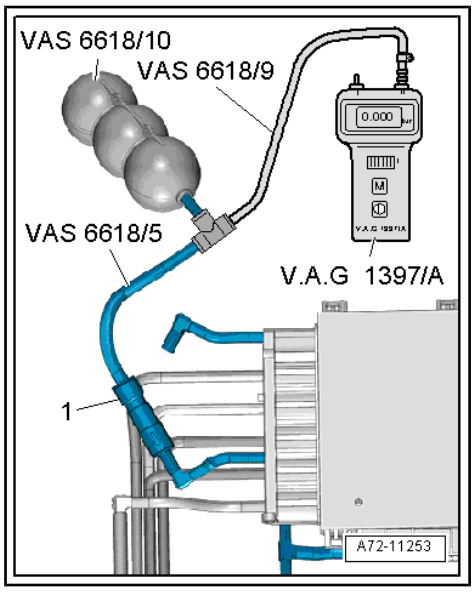
Version with separate non-return valve and restrictor on multi-contour seat control unit:

– Disconnect pneumatic line to control unit for multi-contour seat -J873- / -J872- . To do so, press release ring at non-return valve -1- -arrow A- and at the same time detach pneumatic line -2- -arrow B-.

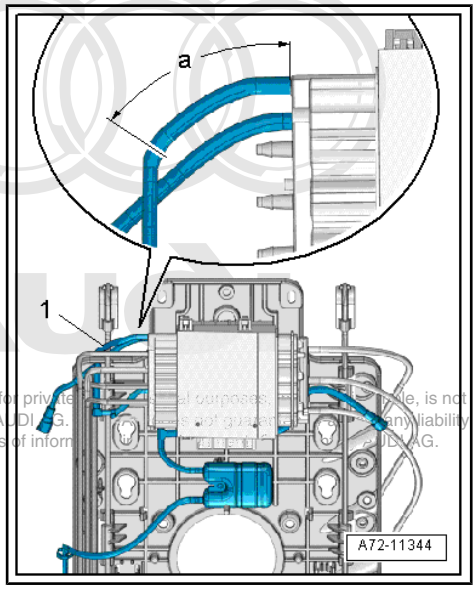


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line at non-return valve -1- from compressor using hose sections, adapters and pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .



Version with integrated non-return valve and restrictor in multi-contour seat control unit:



Note

The pneumatic line must be cut through on vehicles with multi-contour seat control unit with integrated non-return valve and restrictor ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

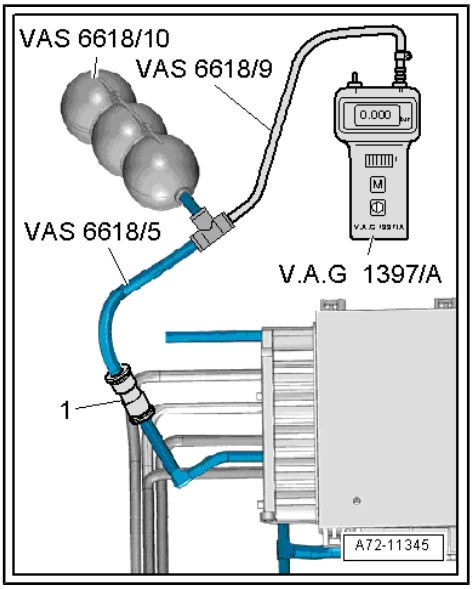
– Sever pneumatic line -1- to control unit for multi-contour seat -J873- / -J872- at the following point ⇒ page 607 :

a - 50 mm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. © AUDI AG.

– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line from compressor using hose sections, adapters and pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .

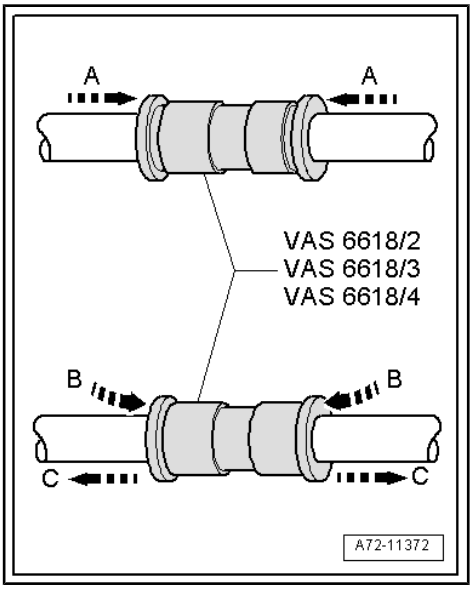
– To connect pneumatic line, attach connecting sleeve -VAS 6618/3- -item 1- to pneumatic line.



All versions (continued):

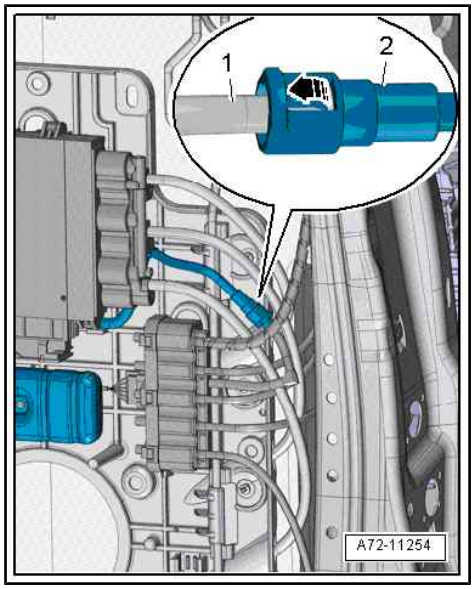
Note

- *To connect pneumatic lines, insert lines in connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/3- from both sides -arrows A-.*
- *To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.*



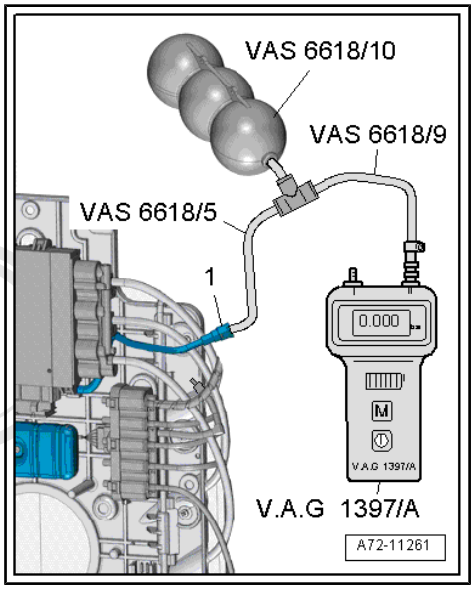
In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to the pneumatic line leading to the valve blocks -N475- / -N476- or -N477- / -N478- .

– Carefully release catch -arrow- and disconnect pneumatic lines -1- and -2-.



– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line -1- from compressor using hose sections, adapters and pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .

– Repeat test at pneumatic line from compressor on opposite valve block.

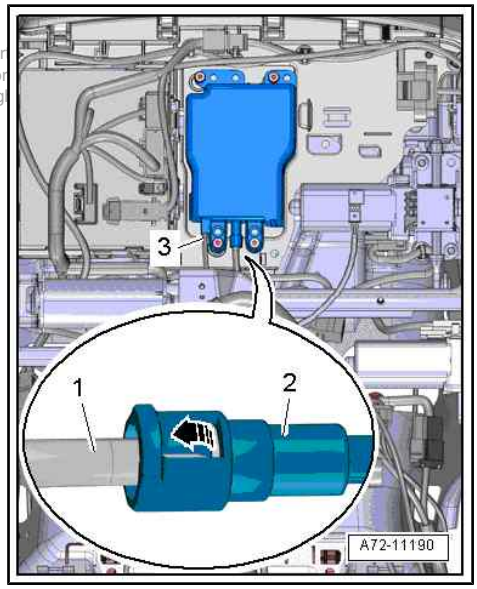


In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- directly to the compressor.

– Carefully release catch -arrow- and pull pneumatic line -1- off compressor -2-.

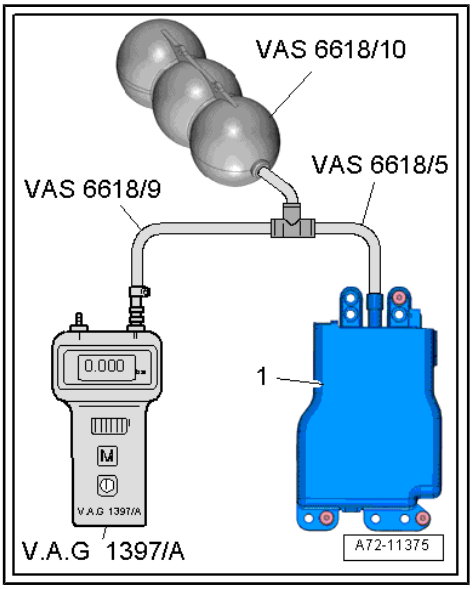
Note

Disregard -item 3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig

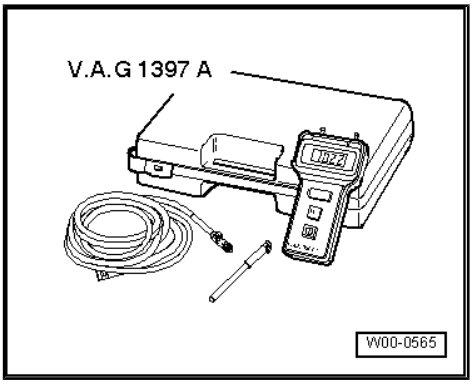
– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to compressor -1- using hose sections, adapters and pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .
– Connect pneumatic lines after completing leak test ⇒ page 607 .



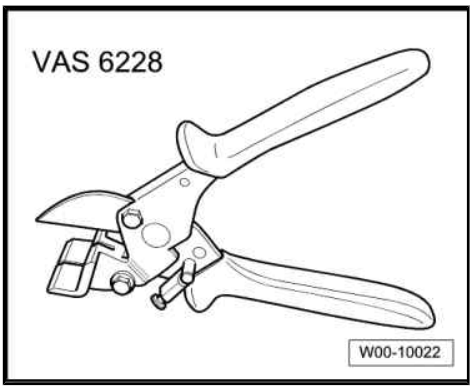
4.7.8 Preparation for leak test for compressor and pressure line - from 09.2012 on-wards

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A-



♦ Cutting pliers - VAS 6228-



♦ Pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A-
♦ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the front seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 581*

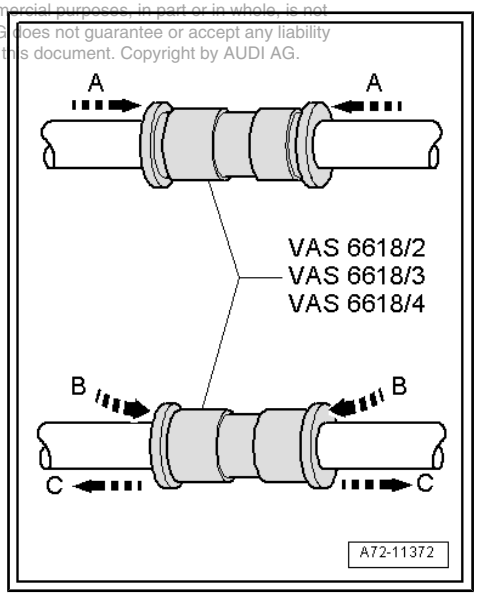
Procedure

- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .
- Front seat in vehicle unbolted and tilted towards front with electrical connectors plugged in ⇒ page 415

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

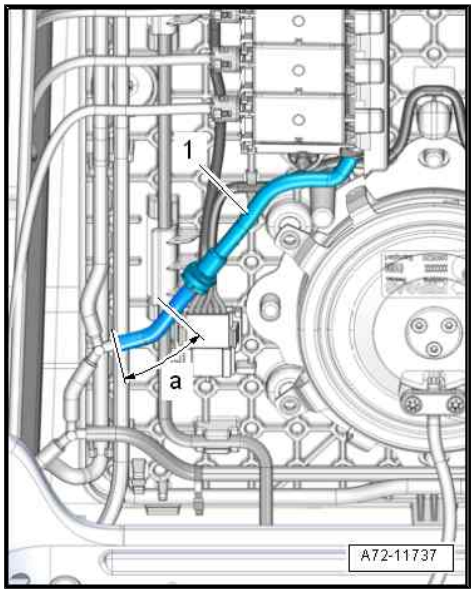
- *To perform the test, the pneumatic line from the compressor is not disconnected at the connection; instead it is severed according to the procedure described ⇒ page 607 .*
- *To connect the pneumatic lines during the leak test, insert the lines in the connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/2- from both sides -arrows A-.*
- *To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.*



In one of the test steps in the "Guided Fault Finding" routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to the pneumatic line leading to the valve block -N476- / -N478- .

– Disconnect pneumatic line -1- to valve block.

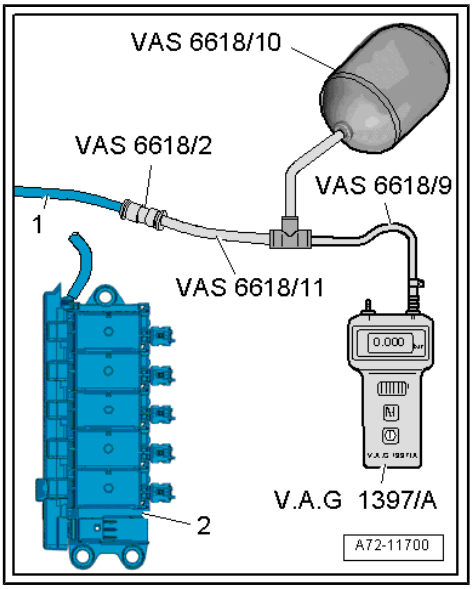
a - 30 mm



– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line -1- from compressor using hose sections and adapters from pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A- and pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .

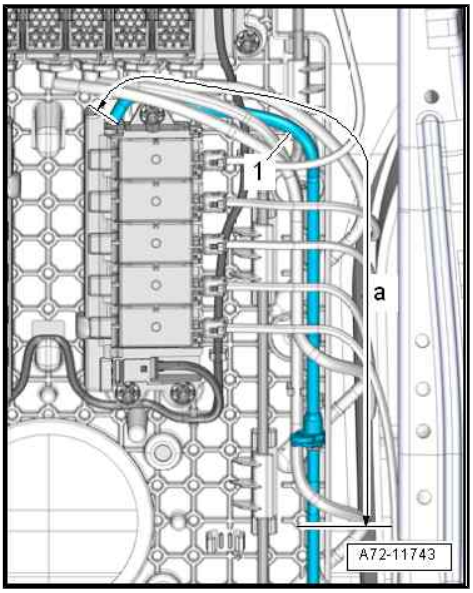
2 - Valve block -N476- / -N478-

In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to the pneumatic line leading to the valve block -N523- / -N524- .



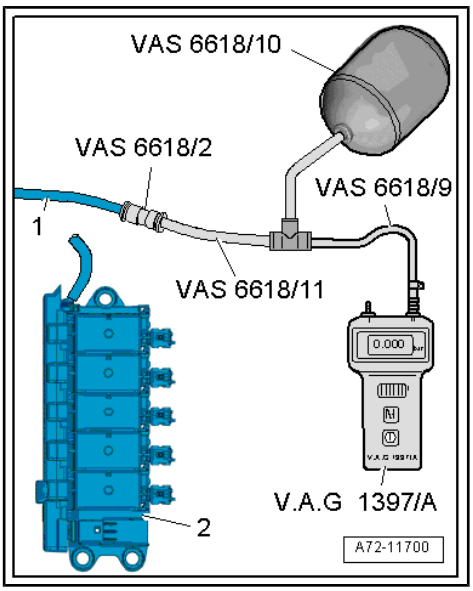
– Disconnect pneumatic line -1- to valve block.

a - 315 mm



– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line -1- from compressor using hose sections and adapters from pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A- and pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .

2 - Valve block -N523- / -N524-

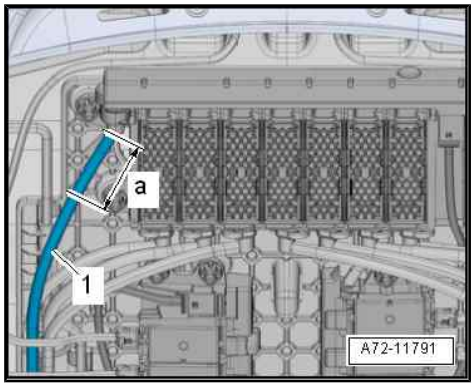


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to the pneumatic line leading to the valve block -N475- / -N477- .

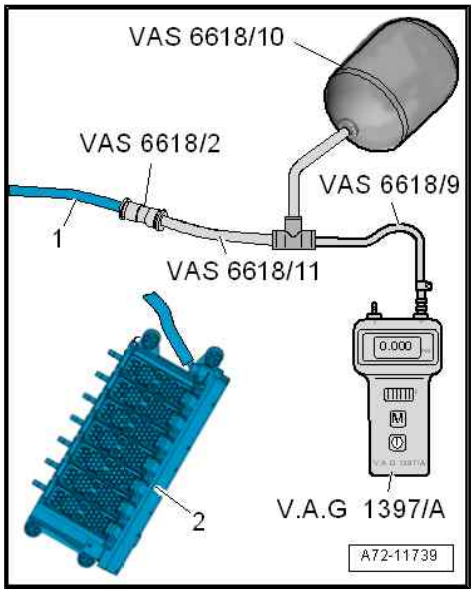
– Disconnect pneumatic line -1- to valve block.

a - 30 mm



– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line -1- from compressor using hose sections and adapters from pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A- and pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .

2 - Valve block -N475- / -N477-



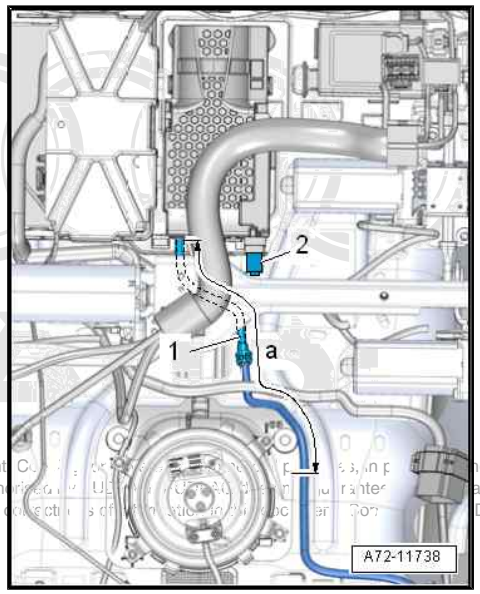
In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- directly to the compressor.

Note

To perform the test, the pneumatic line from the compressor is not disconnected at the connection; instead it is severed according to the procedure described *⇒ page 607* *.*

– Sever pneumatic line -1- from compressor at the following location:

a - 220 mm

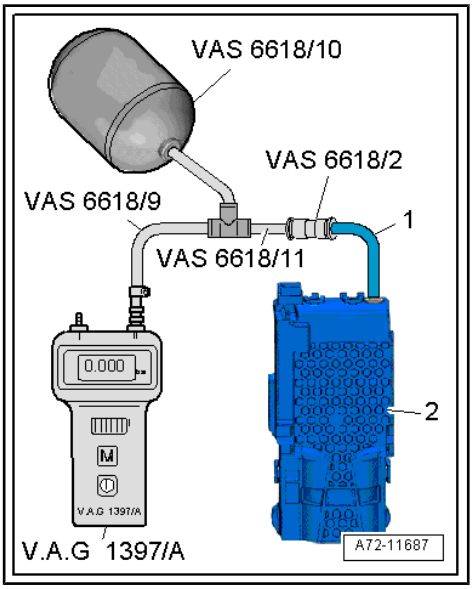


Note

Disregard -item 2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line -1- of compressor -2- using hose sections, adapters and pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .



Note

To connect the pneumatic lines, make an improvised test hose from the pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A- .

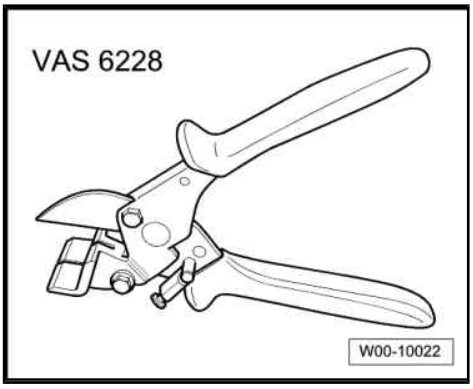
– Connect pneumatic lines and then pull lines to check that plug-in connector is engaged properly.

4.8 Severing and connecting pneumatic lines

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

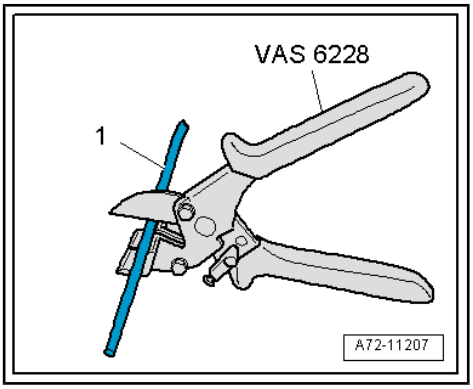
- Cutting pliers - VAS 6228-



- Pliers -VAS 6618/1- (2x)

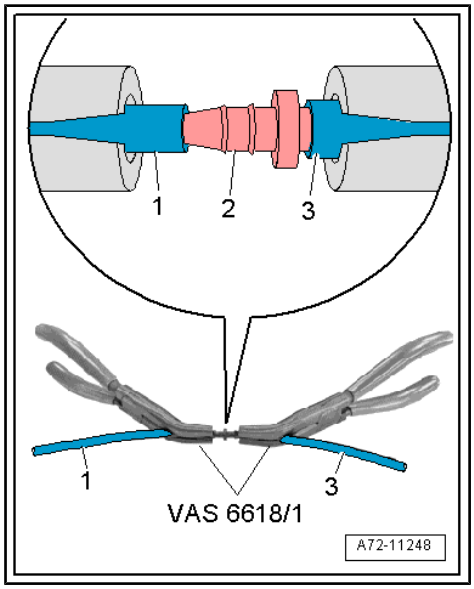
Severing pneumatic line

– Apply cutting pliers - VAS 6228- at right angle and cut through pneumatic line -1-.



Connecting pneumatic line

– Slide pneumatic lines -1- and -3- onto line connector -2- from both sides using pliers -VAS 6618/1- ; for line connector, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .



4.9 Servicing pneumatic lines

- A repair set containing pneumatic lines and line connectors is available for repairing pneumatic lines ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Pneumatic lines must not be detached directly at the components. Always separate and connect pneumatic lines as described in this manual.
- Genuine replacement parts are supplied with short line sections which are connected to the pneumatic lines with line connectors.
- Protect pneumatic lines and line connectors against contamination.
- It is NOT permissible to heat pneumatic lines when connecting them to the line connectors.
- It is NOT permissible to use lubricant when connecting the pneumatic lines to the line connectors.
- After the repair, the serviced pneumatic line should be just as long as the line was previously (tolerance: ± 10 mm).
- Contamination at the joints can lead to leaks. Therefore it is important to make sure that the pneumatic system and test instruments are clean when performing tests.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.10 Removing and installing compressor/ control unit for multi-contour seat

⇒ "4.10.1 Removing and installing compressor for multi-contour seat - up to 08.2012", page 609

⇒ "4.10.2 Removing and installing bonded rubber bushes for compressor for multi-contour seat - up to 08.2012", page 610

⇒ "4.10.3 Removing and installing control unit for front multi-contour seat - up to 08.2012", page 611

⇒ "4.10.4 Removing and installing compressor with integrated control unit for multi-contour seat - from 09.2012 onwards", page 613

4.10.1 Removing and installing compressor for multi-contour seat - up to 08.2012

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

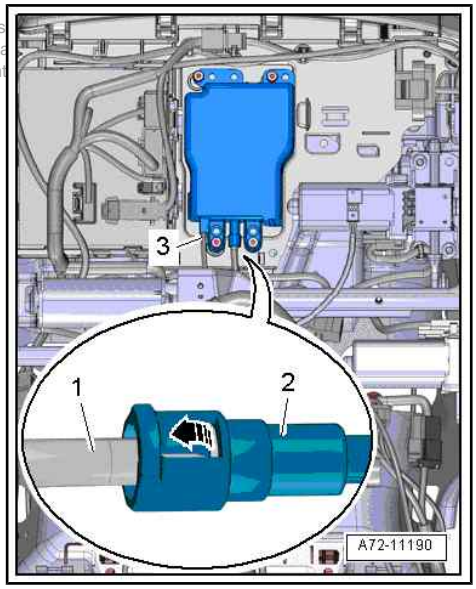
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

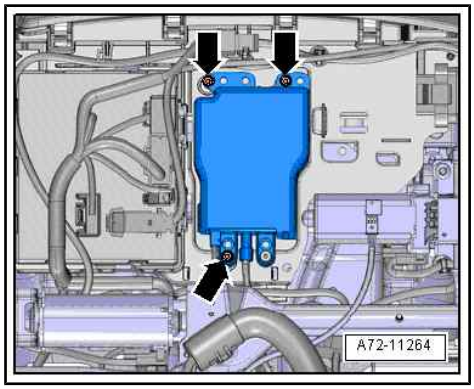
– Carefully release catch -arrow- and pull pneumatic line -1- off compressor -2-.

– Move clear pneumatic line leading to compressor.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Unscrew nuts -arrows- and detach compressor.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Take care not to strain or twist the bonded rubber bushes for the compressor when installing.*
- *Therefore always hold the metal plate of the bonded rubber bush with pliers while tightening the nut; make sure you do not damage the bonded rubber bush.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "4.3 Exploded view - pneumatic system, compressor", page 583

4.10.2 Removing and installing bonded rubber bushes for compressor for multi-contour seat - up to 08.2012

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Drill
- Safety goggles

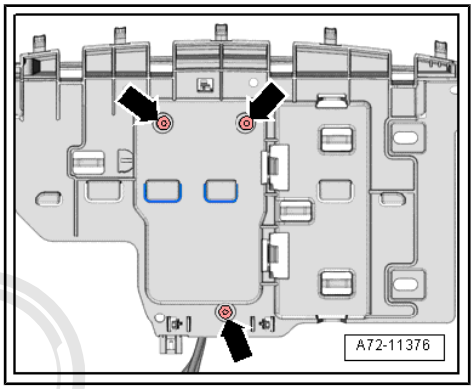
Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove bracket for trim (front), compressor and control unit for multi-contour seat ⇒ page 467 .

– Remove compressor ⇒ page 609 .



WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivets -arrows- and detach bonded rubber bushes for compressor for multi-contour seat.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Take care not to strain or twist the bonded rubber bushes for the compressor when installing.*
- *Therefore all bonded rubber bushes must be secured to the compressor ⇒ page 583 and then riveted on.*

4.10.3 Removing and installing control unit for front multi-contour seat - up to 08.2012

Removing

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .

– Mark pneumatic lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen at cutting point for re-installation.

Note

- *Depending on the version, the non-return valve is either a separate component or is integrated in the control unit for front multi-contour seat -J872- / -J873- .*
- *Genuine replacement parts are supplied with integrated non-return valve and restrictor (the restrictor connection is no longer fitted).*
- *The separate non-return valve must be removed when installing a control unit for multi-contour seat; see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *Genuine replacement parts are supplied with short line sections which are connected to the pneumatic lines with line connectors.*
- *Before disconnecting the pneumatic lines, transfer the length of the line sections from the genuine replacement part to the part to be removed and separate at exactly this location.*

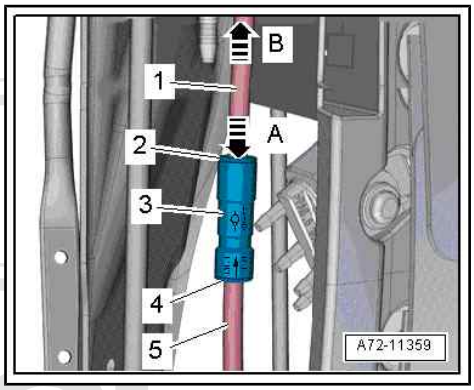
Note

Version with separate non-return valve:

– Press circlip -2- in direction of -arrow A- and at the same time disconnect pneumatic line -1- -arrow B-.

– Repeat procedure for circlip -4- and pneumatic line -5-.

– Detach non-return valve -3-.



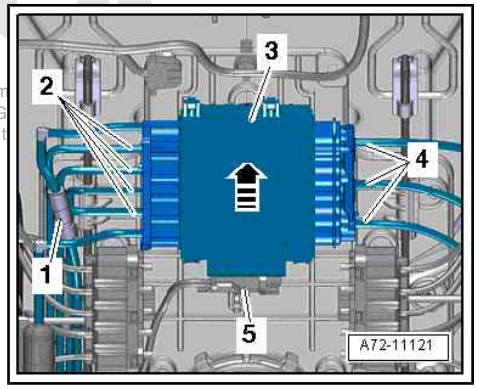
All versions (continued):

– Unplug electrical connector -5-.

– Version with integrated non-return valve: Sever pneumatic line ⇒ page 607 .

– Press control unit -3- for multi-contour seat (front) upwards slightly -arrow- and detach.

– Disconnect pneumatic lines -2 and 4- at control unit for front multi-contour seat ⇒ page 607 .



1 - Non-return valve (depending on version)

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “4.4 Exploded view - pneumatic system, backrest”, page 585

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
with respect to the correctness of information in t

4.10.4 Removing and installing compressor with integrated control unit for multi-contour seat - from 09.2012 onwards

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

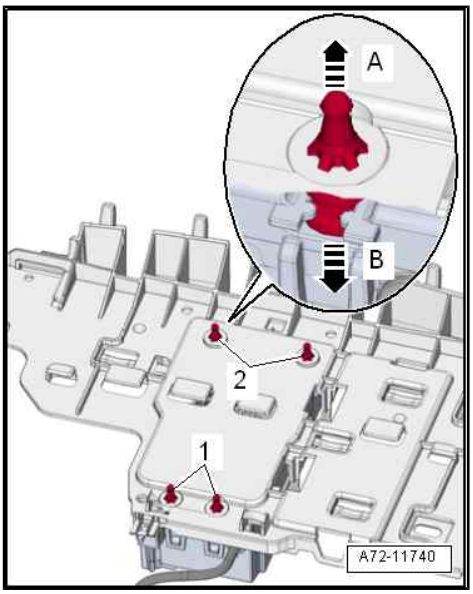
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Remove bracket for trim (front), compressor and control unit for multi-contour seat ⇒ page 467 .

– Pull rubber buffers -1, 2- for compressor off brackets.

– To do so, pull rubber buffers to lengthen them -arrow A-.

– At the same time, pull rubber buffers together with compressor off brackets -arrow B-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "4.3 Exploded view - pneumatic system, compressor", page 583

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.11 Removing and installing module carrier with lumbar support air cushions

⇒ “4.11.1 Removing and installing module carrier with lumbar support air cushions - up to 08.2012”, page 614

⇒ “4.11.2 Removing and installing module carrier with lumbar support air cushions - from 09.2012 onwards”, page 615

4.11.1 Removing and installing module carrier with lumbar support air cushions - up to 08.2012

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Drill
- Safety goggles

Removing

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .

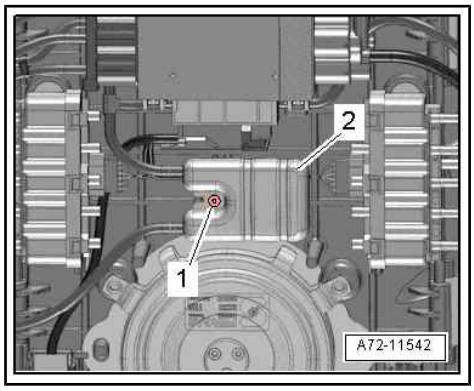
– Remove backrest fan ⇒ page 454 .

– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 672 .

WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

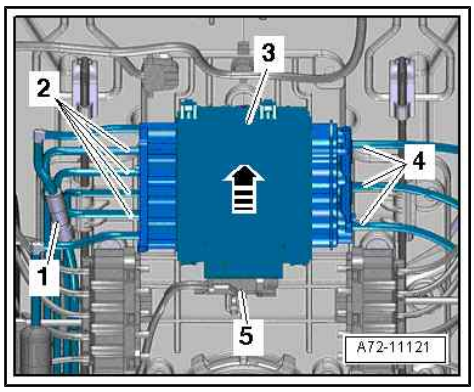


– Drill out rivet -1- for pulsation damper -2-.

– Unplug electrical connector -5- and move wiring clear at module carrier.

– Press control unit -3- for multi-contour seat (front) upwards slightly to disengage it from module carrier -arrow-.

– Disconnect pneumatic lines -4- to lumbar support air cushions.



Note

Disregard items -1 and 2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

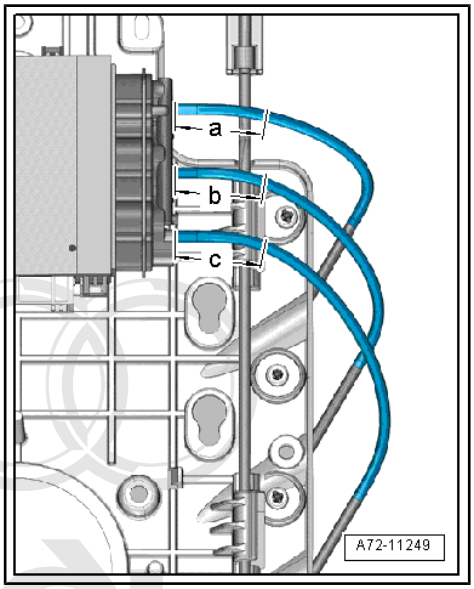
– Sever pneumatic lines leading to lumbar support air cushions at the following locations ⇒ page 607 :

a - 40 mm

b - 40 mm

c - 40 mm

– Move clear control unit for multi-contour seat (front) with remaining pneumatic lines still connected.



Note

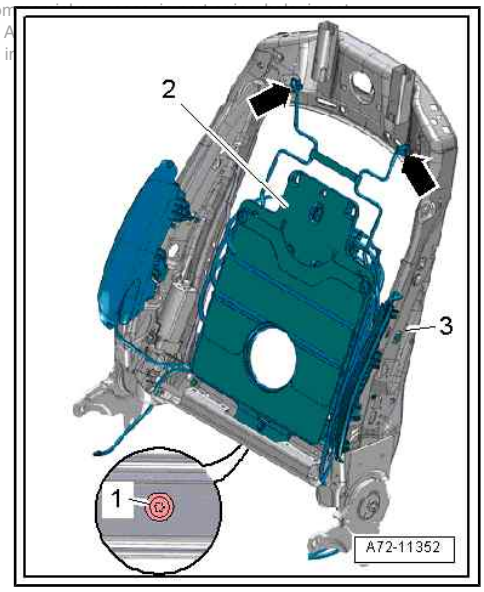
- *Genuine replacement parts are supplied with short line sections which are connected to the pneumatic lines with line connectors.*
- *Before cutting the pneumatic lines, transfer the length of the line sections from the genuine replacement part to the part to be removed and separate at exactly this location.*

– Cut through cable ties and move clear electrical wiring harness and pneumatic lines at lumbar support module carrier.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information in

– Remove bolt -1-.

– Swivel module carrier -2- with lumbar support air cushions forwards, disengage at outer backrest frame -3- -arrows- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "4.4 Exploded view - pneumatic system, backrest", page 585

4.11.2 Removing and installing module carrier with lumbar support air cushions - from 09.2012 onwards

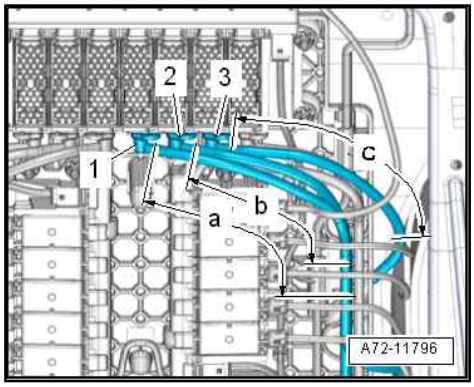
Removing

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .

– Remove backrest fan ⇒ page 454 .

– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 674 .

– Before severing pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines to connections on valve block with a waterproof felt-tip pen.



Note

To carry out repairs, the pneumatic lines are not disconnected at the connections; instead they are severed according to the procedure described ⇒ page 607 .

– Sever pneumatic lines -1, 2, 3- to lumbar support air cushions at the following locations:

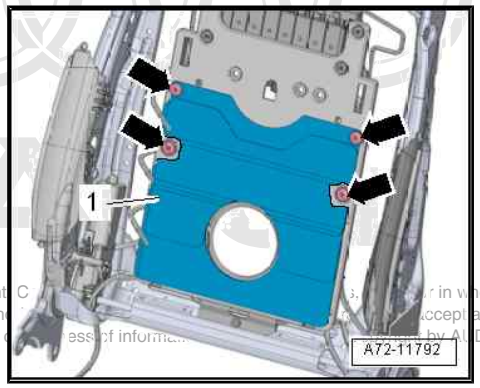
a - 120 mm

b - 120 mm

c - 120 mm

– Move pneumatic lines leading to lumbar support air cushions clear.

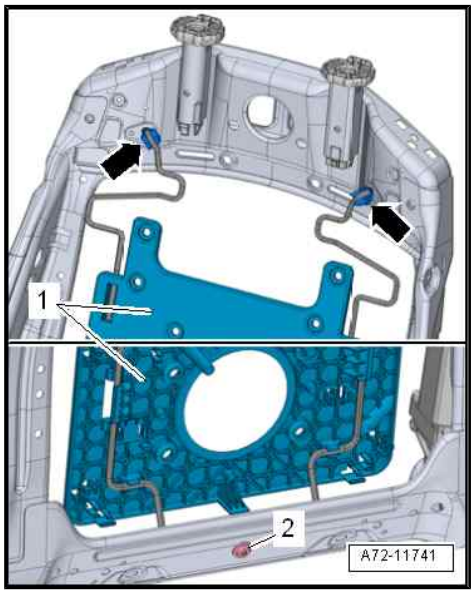
– Remove spreader rivets -arrows- and detach air cushion -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolt -2-.

– Swivel module carrier -1- for lumbar support air cushion forwards, disengage at outer backrest frame -arrows- and detach.



Installing

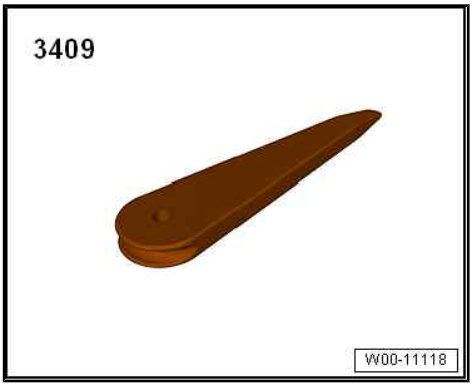
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "4.4 Exploded view - pneumatic system, backrest", page 585

4.12 Removing and installing switch module 2 for front seat -E667- / -E668-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

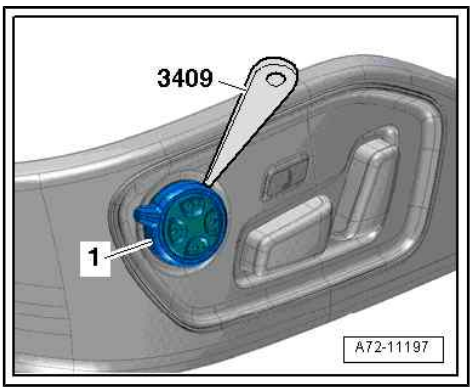
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



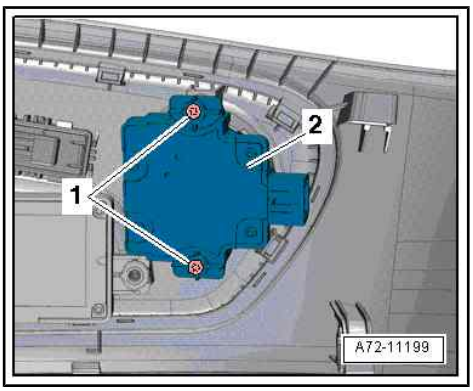
Removing

– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 465 .

– Carefully unclip rocker -1- from switch module using removal wedge - 3409- .



– Remove bolts -1- and detach switch module -2-.

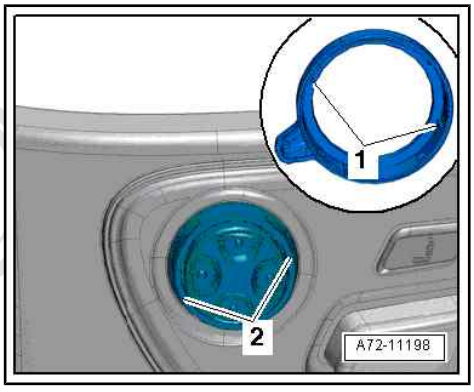


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert lugs -1- of trim in grooves -2- at switch module and press on until it engages audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.9 Exploded view - seat pan, seat adjustment actuators/ switches", page 405



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.13 Removing and installing valve block for multi-contour seat

⇒ “4.13.1 Removing and installing valve block for massage mat - up to 08.2012”, page 618

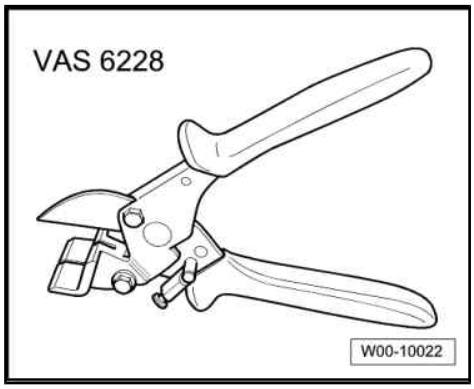
⇒ “4.13.2 Removing and installing valve block for massage mat - from 09.2012 onwards”, page 619

⇒ “4.13.3 Removing and installing valve block for lumbar support air cushions, seat and backrest bolster adjusters - from 09.2012 onwards”, page 621

4.13.1 Removing and installing valve block for massage mat - up to 08.2012

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Cutting pliers - VAS 6228-



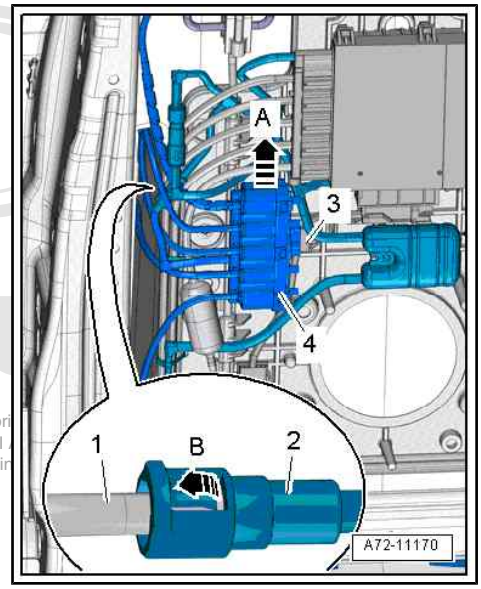
Removing

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

– Press valve block -4- for massage mat upwards slightly -arrow A- to disengage at module carrier.

– Carefully release catch -arrow B- and disconnect pneumatic lines -1- and -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for pri
permitted unless authorised by AUDI
with respect to the correctness of in

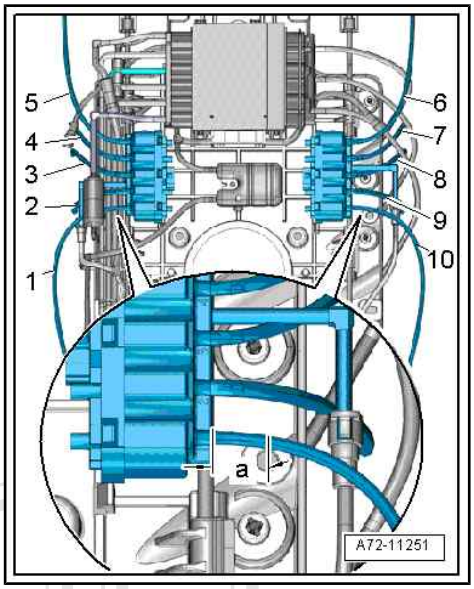
– Disconnect pneumatic lines leading to massage mat air cushions at the following locations ⇒ page 607 :

a - 40 mm

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "4.5 Exploded view - pneumatic system, massage mat", page 587



4.13.2 Removing and installing valve block for massage mat - from 09.2012 onwards

Removing

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .

Note

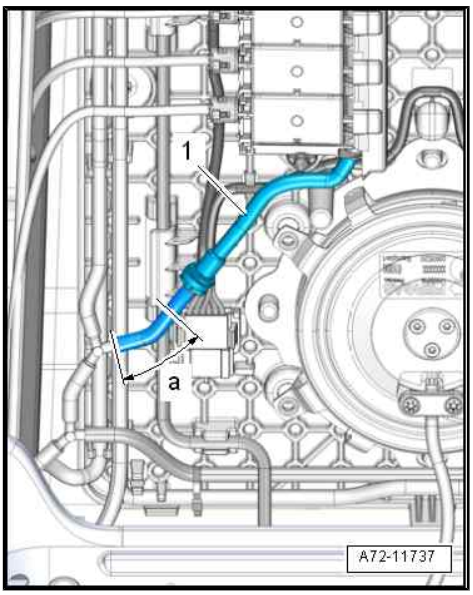
To carry out repairs, the pneumatic line from the compressor is not disconnected at the connection; instead it is severed according to the procedure described ⇒ page 607 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Driver side:

– Sever pneumatic line -1- from compressor at the following location:

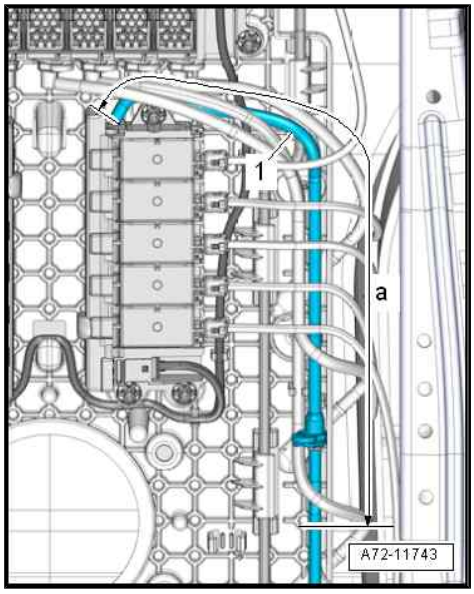
a - 30 mm



Passenger side:

– Sever pneumatic line -1- from compressor at the following location:

a - 315 mm

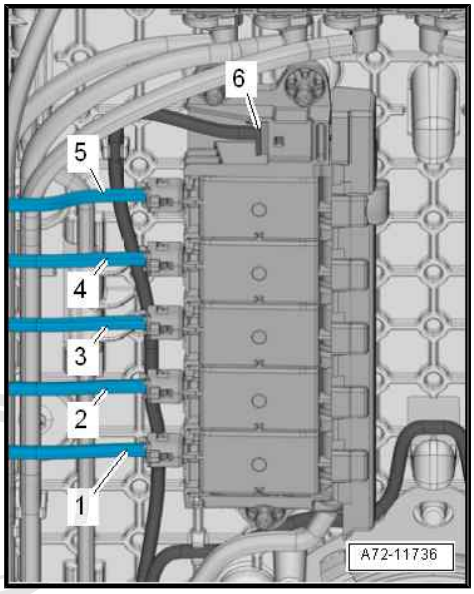


Both sides (continued):

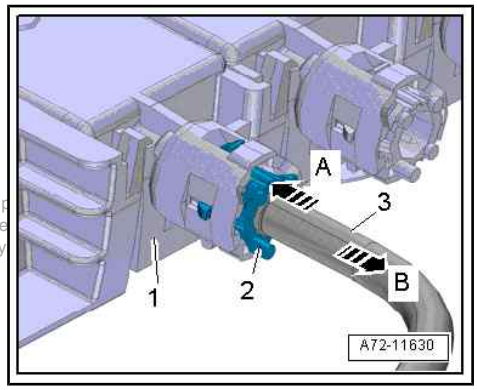
– Unplug electrical connector -6-.

– Before severing pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines to connections on valve block with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Disconnect pneumatic lines -1 ... 5- to all massage mat air cushions.



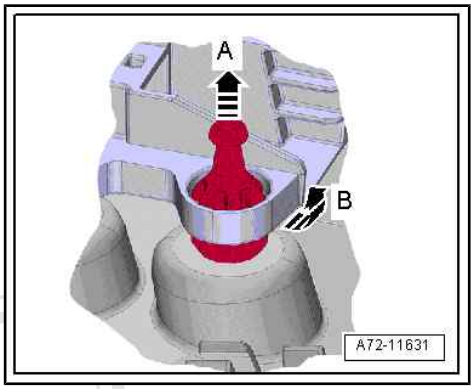
– To do so, press release ring -2- towards valve block -1- -arrow A- and at the same time disconnect pneumatic line -3- -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

– Pull rubber buffers to lengthen them -arrow A-.

– At the same time, pull valve block off rubber buffers -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press pneumatic lines on again and then pull lines to check that plug-in connectors are engaged properly.

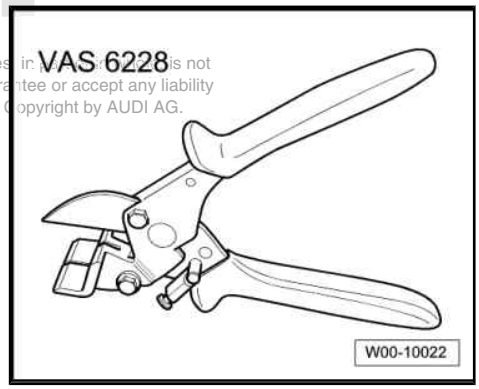
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "4.5 Exploded view - pneumatic system, massage mat", page 587

4.13.3 Removing and installing valve block for lumbar support air cushions, seat and backrest bolster adjusters - from 09.2012 onwards

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Cutting pliers - VAS 6228-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

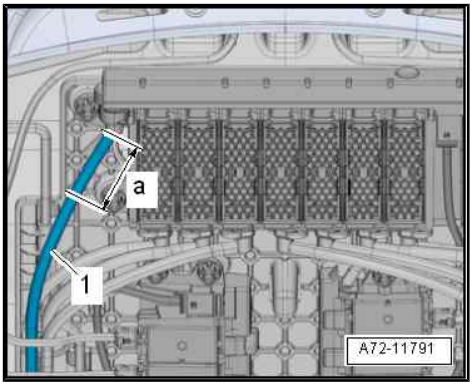
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .

Note

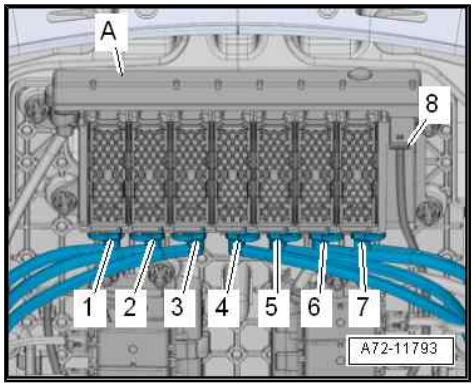
To carry out repairs, the pneumatic line from the compressor is not disconnected at the connection; instead it is severed according to the procedure described ⇒ page 607 .

– Sever pneumatic line -1- to valve block -N475- / -N477- at the following point:

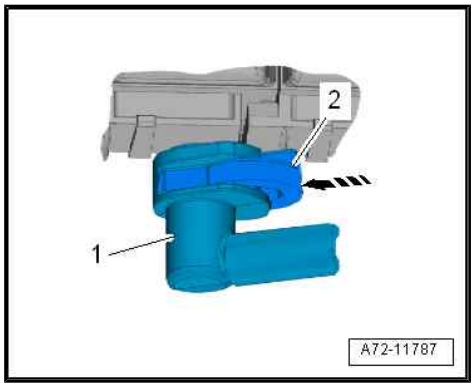
a - 30 mm



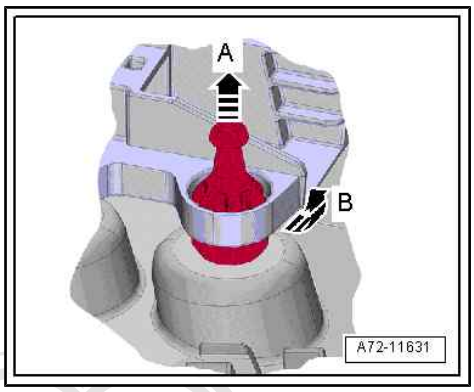
– Unplug electrical connector -8-.
– Before severing pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines to connections on valve block with a waterproof felt-tip pen.
– Disconnect pneumatic lines -1 ...7- at valve block -A-.



– To do so, press release mechanism -2- -arrow- and disconnect pneumatic line -1- at the same time.



– Pull rubber buffers to lengthen them -arrow A-.
– At the same time, pull valve block off rubber buffers -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Connect pneumatic line ⇒ page 607 .
– Press pneumatic lines on again and then pull lines to check that plug-in connectors are engaged properly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "4.4 Exploded view - pneumatic system, backrest", page 585

4.14 Removing and installing massage mat

Removing

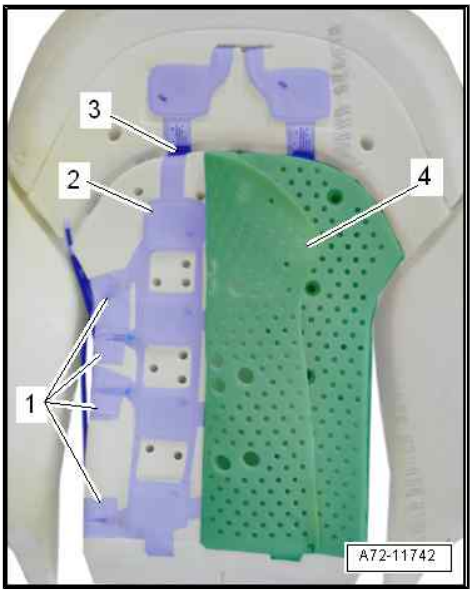
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 441 .

– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 674 .
– Separate backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 679 .
– Remove clip -3-.
– Fold back air mat -4-.
– Unfasten pneumatic lines from adhesive bonds -1- and move clear.
– Unfasten massage mat -2- from backrest padding.

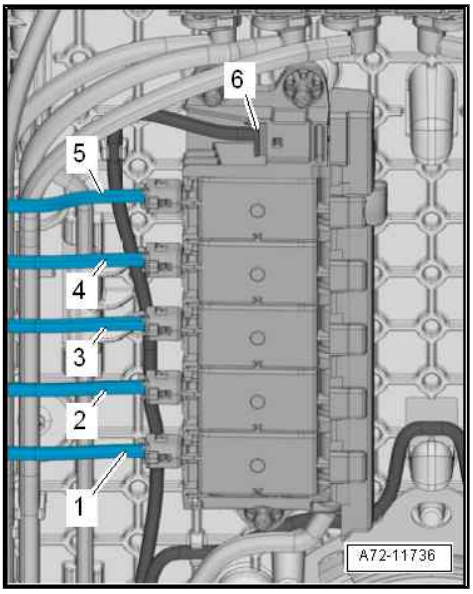


Installing

– Route pneumatic lines in backrest padding and connect to valve block.
– Press pneumatic lines on again and then pull lines to check that plug-in connectors are engaged properly.
– Attach double-sided adhesive tape in original locations of adhesive bonds, as found during removal.

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

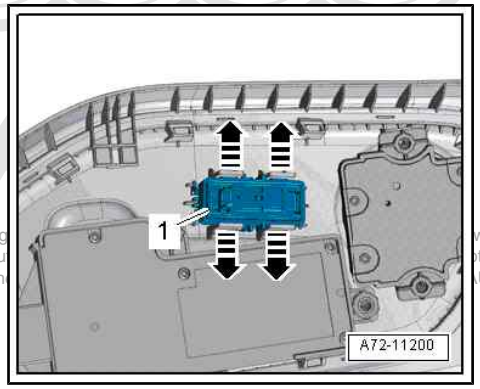


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "4.5 Exploded view - pneumatic system, massage mat", page 587

4.15 Removing and installing massage function button -E670- / -E671-



Removing

– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 465 .

– Press massage function button -1- out of trim and detach. To do so, release fasteners -arrows-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert massage function button and press on so that it engages audibly.

Protected by copyrig... whole, is not permitted unless au... t any liability with respect to th... AUDI AG.

4.16 Removing and installing seat bolster adjuster

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

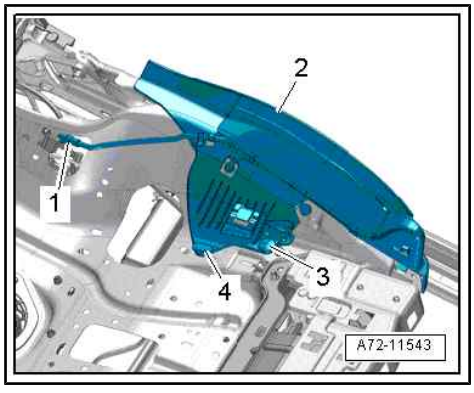
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 441 .

– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 665 .

– Remove spreader rivets -3- and -4-.

– Move clear pneumatic line -1-, disengage seat bolster adjuster -2- at seat pan and detach.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "4.6 Exploded view - pneumatic system, seat/backrest bolster adjusters", page 589

4.17 Removing and installing backrest bolster adjuster

⇒ “4.17.1 Removing and installing backrest bolster adjuster - up to 08.2012”, page 625

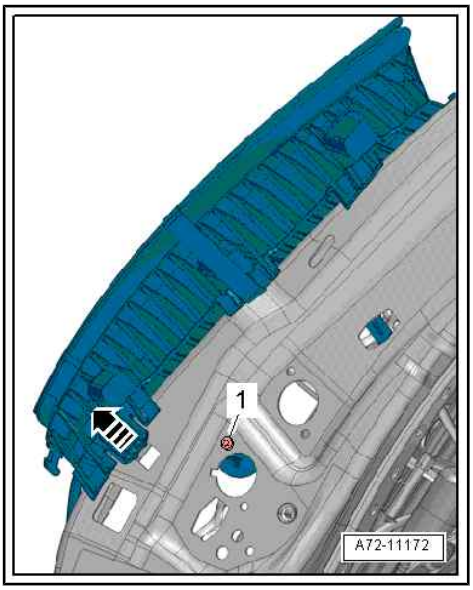
⇒ “4.17.2 Removing and installing backrest bolster adjuster - from 09.2012 onwards”, page 626

4.17.1 Removing and installing backrest bolster adjuster - up to 08.2012

Removing

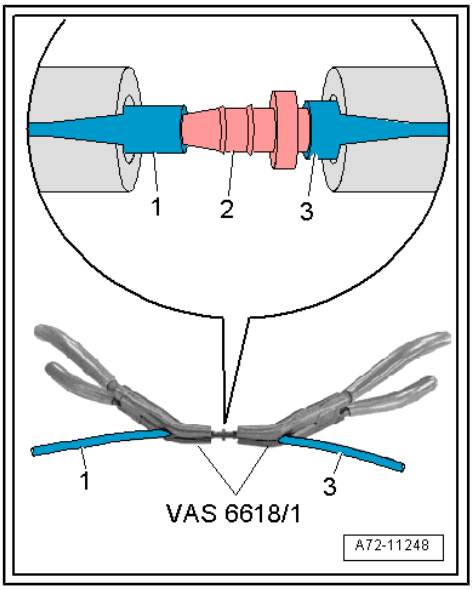
– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 672 .

– Unscrew bolt -1- and release catch -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disconnect pneumatic line -1- and -3- at line connector -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “4.6 Exploded view - pneumatic system, seat/backrest bolster adjusters”, page 589

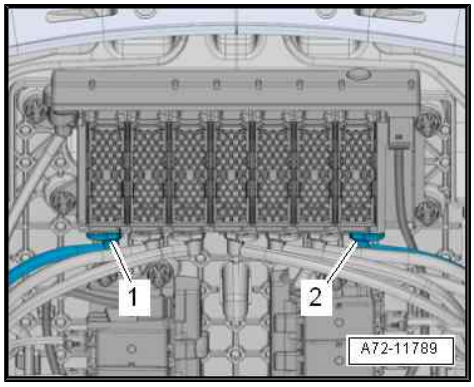
4.17.2 Removing and installing backrest bolster adjuster - from 09.2012 onwards

Removing

– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 674 .

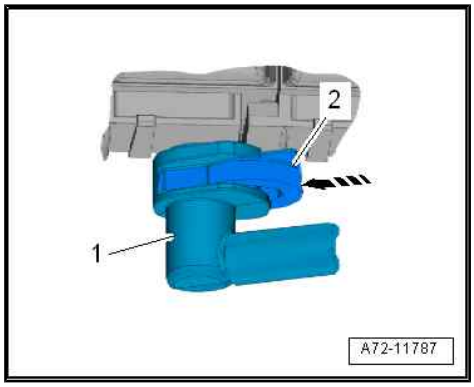
– Before disconnecting pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines to connections on valve block with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Disconnect pneumatic lines -1, 2- to backrest bolster adjuster air cushions.

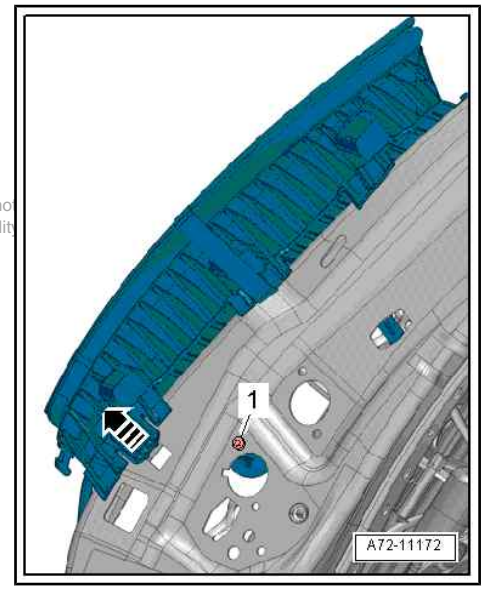


– To do so, press release mechanism -2- -arrow- and disconnect pneumatic line -1- at the same time.

– Move pneumatic lines leading to air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster clear.



– Unscrew bolt -1- and release catch -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "4.6 Exploded view - pneumatic system, seat/backrest bolster adjusters", page 589

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Rear seat pneumatic system

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - pneumatic system”, page 627

⇒ “5.2 Connection diagram - pneumatic system”, page 629

⇒ “5.3 Exploded view - pneumatic system, module carrier/air cushion/lumbar support”, page 630

⇒ “5.4 Exploded view - pneumatic system, massage mat”, page 631

⇒ “5.5 Checking pneumatic system”, page 631

⇒ “5.7 Servicing pneumatic lines”, page 637

⇒ “5.6 Severing and connecting pneumatic lines”, page 636

⇒ “5.8 Removing and installing compressor with control unit for multi-contour seat”, page 638

⇒ “5.9 Removing and installing air cushion for lumbar support”, page 639

⇒ “5.10 Removing and installing valve block 1 for lumbar support N479 / N481 ”, page 640

⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing module carrier”, page 641

⇒ “5.12 Removing and installing massage mat”, page 643

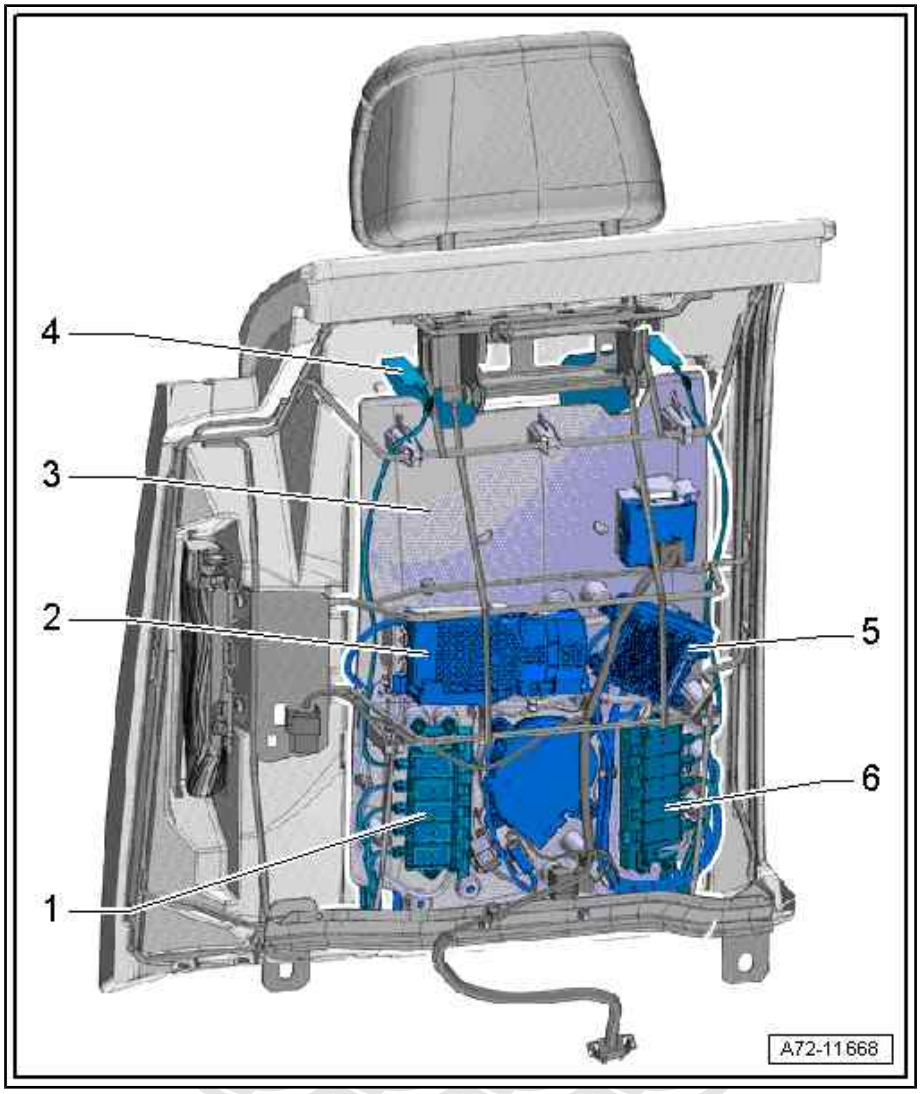
⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing valve block for massage mat”, page 644

5.1 Exploded view - pneumatic system

Note

Repair specifications and test methods for pneumatic components ⇒ page 631

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Valve block 2 in driver side rear seat - N480-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 2 in rear seat, passenger side - N482-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 644

2 - Compressor for rear driver side multi-contour seat - V441- with integrated control unit - J875-

- ❑ Passenger side: compressor for rear passenger side multi-contour seat - V442- with integrated control unit - J874-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 638

3 - Module carrier with lumbar support air cushions

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 630

4 - Massage mat

- ❑ In backrest padding
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 631

5 - Valve block 1 in driver side rear seat - N479-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 1 in rear seat, passenger side - N481-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 640

6 - Valve block 3 in driver side rear seat - N525-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 3 in rear seat, passenger side - N526-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 644

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2 Connection diagram - pneumatic system

1 - Lumbar support air cushion

2 - Compressor for rear driver side multi-contour seat - V441- with integrated control unit - J875-

- ❑ Passenger side: compressor for rear passenger side multi-contour seat - V442- with integrated control unit - J874-

3 - Valve block 1 in driver side rear seat - N479-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 1 in rear seat, passenger side - N481-

4 - Massage mat

- ❑ In backrest padding

5 - Massage mat

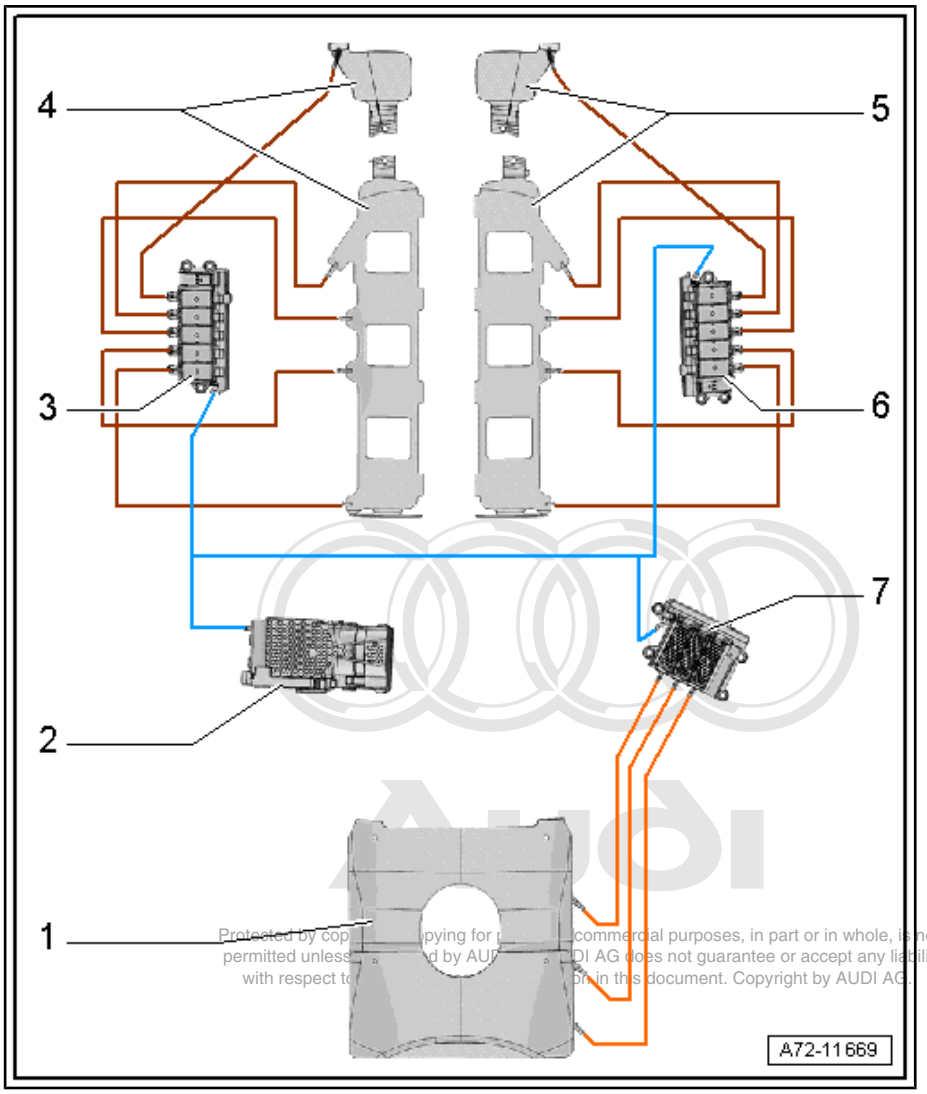
- ❑ In backrest padding

6 - Valve block 3 in driver side rear seat - N525-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 3 in rear seat, passenger side - N526-

7 - Valve block 2 in driver side rear seat - N480-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 2 in rear seat, passenger side - N482-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3 Exploded view - pneumatic system, module carrier/air cushion/lumbar support

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

2 - Lumbar support air cushion

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 639
- ❑ Connecting severed pneumatic lines ⇒ page 636

3 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 4x

4 - Module carrier

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 641

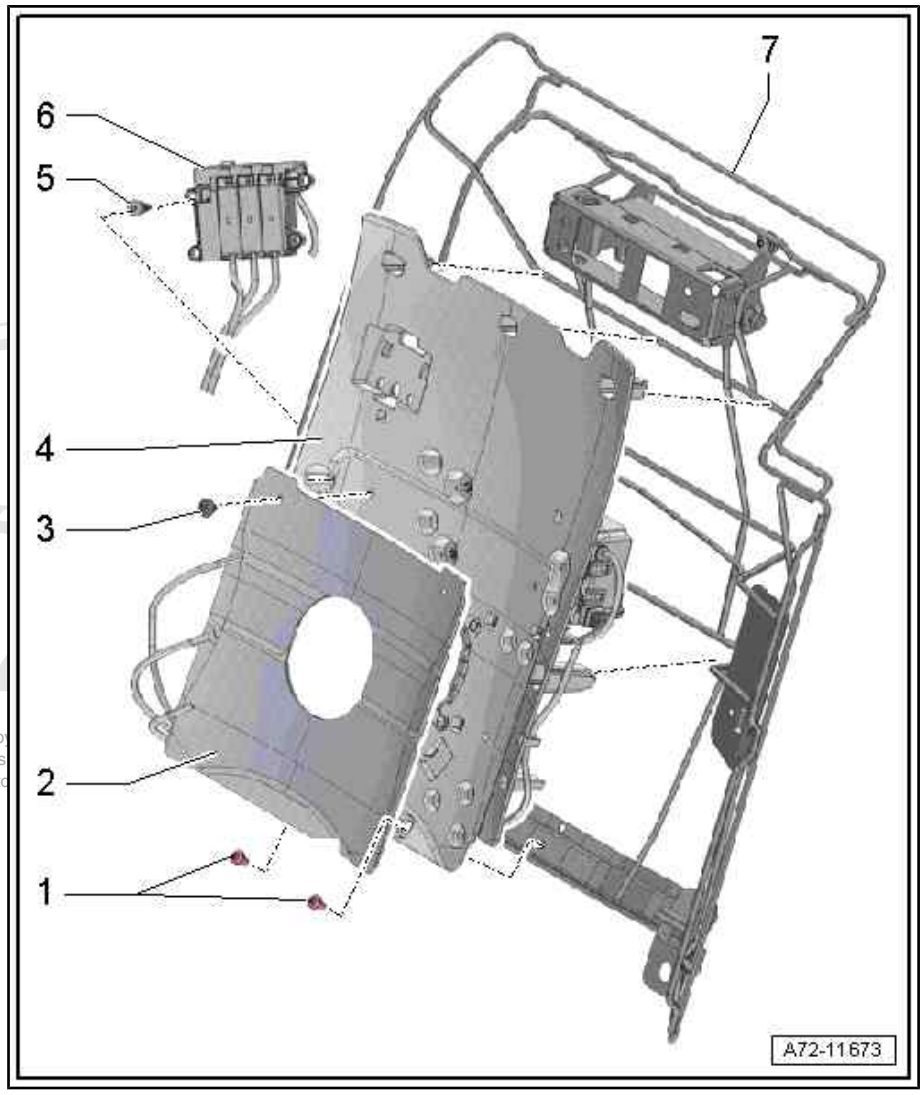
5 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ Hold solenoid valve block in place
- ❑ 4x

6 - Valve block 1 in driver side rear seat - N479-

- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 1 in rear seat, passenger side - N481-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 640
- ❑ Connecting severed pneumatic lines ⇒ page 636

7 - Seat frame



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.4 Exploded view - pneumatic system, massage mat

1 - Massage mat

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 643
- ❑ Press pneumatic lines on until they engage audibly
- ❑ Pull lines to check that plug-in connectors are engaged properly

2 - Clip

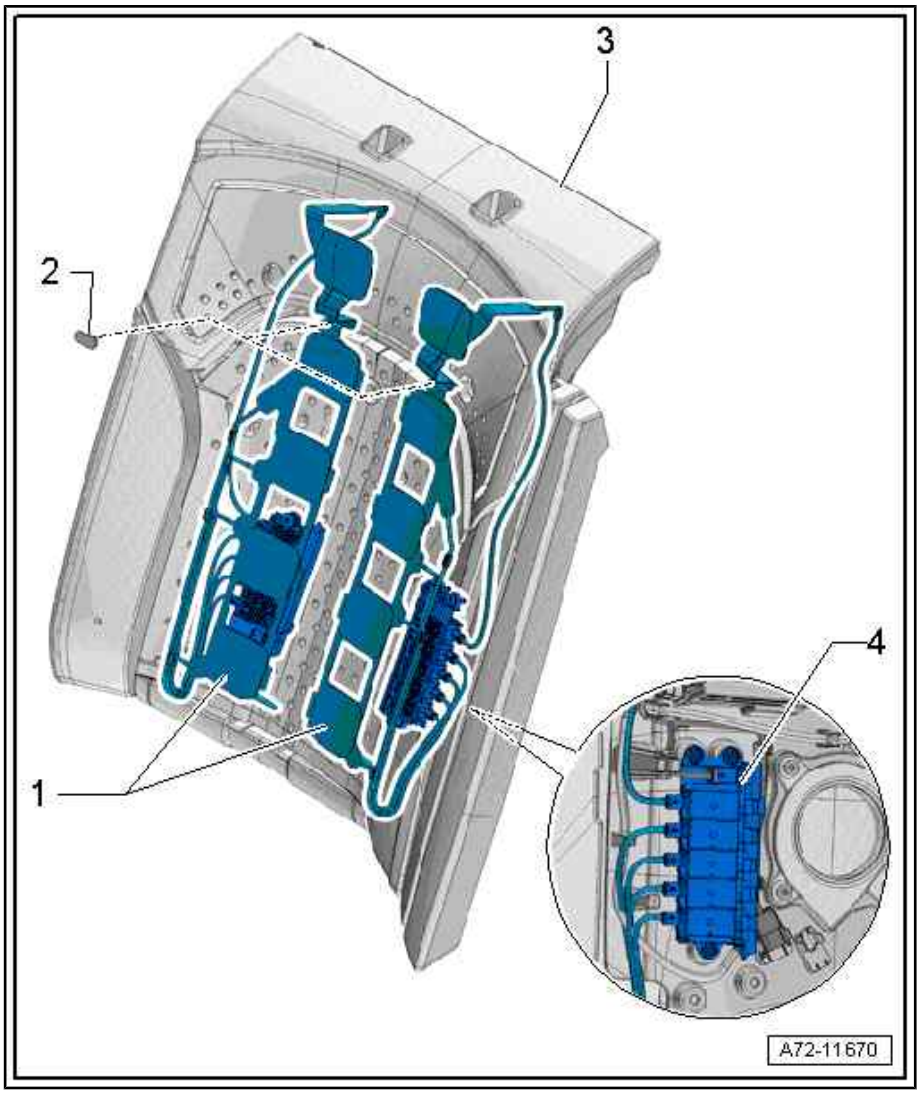
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew

3 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 708

4 - Valve block 2 in driver side rear seat - N480- / valve block 3 in driver side rear seat - N525-

- ❑ For massage mat
- ❑ Passenger side: valve block 2 in rear seat, passenger side - N482- / valve block 3 in rear seat, passenger side - N526-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 644
- ❑ Connecting severed pneumatic lines ⇒ page 636
- ❑ Press pneumatic lines on until they engage audibly
- ❑ Pull lines to check that plug-in connectors are engaged properly



5.5 Checking pneumatic system

⇒ "5.5.1 Preparation for leak test for lumbar support air cushions", page 631

⇒ "5.5.2 Preparation for leak test for massage mat air cushions", page 633

⇒ "5.5.3 Preparation for leak test for compressor and pressure line", page 634

5.5.1 Preparation for leak test for lumbar support air cushions

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A-
- ♦ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Note

- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the rear seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 629*

Procedure

- Multi-contour seat in vehicle unbolted and tilted towards front with electrical connectors plugged in ⇒ page 548

– Before severing pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

Note

If a fault is displayed for one air cushion only, it is sufficient to sever just two pneumatic lines at the locations indicated ⇒ page 632 .

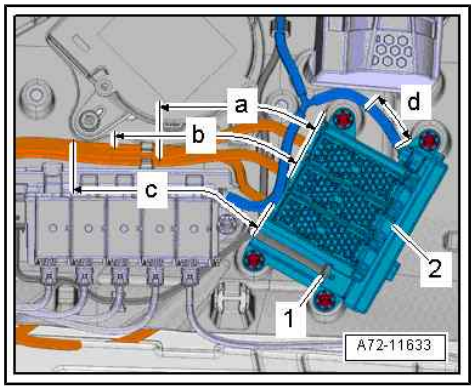
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Sever pneumatic lines leading to lumbar support air cushions at the following locations ⇒ page 636 :

a - 110 mm

b - 120 mm

c - 130 mm



Note

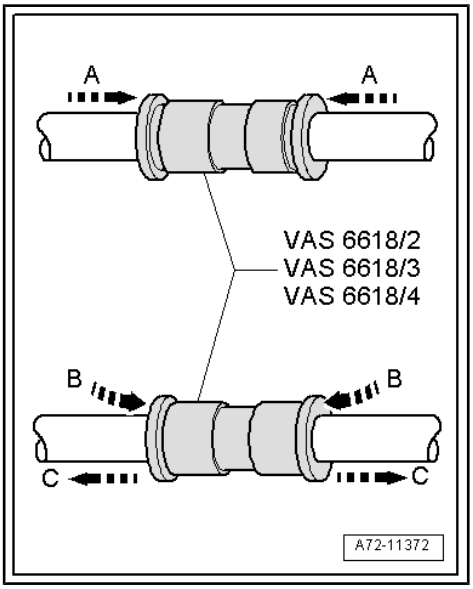
Ignore -items 1, 2 and d-.

– To perform test in "Guided Fault Finding" mode, cross-connect connections of air cushions and valve blocks as follows:

In the event of a fault in lumbar support air cushion (top or centre)	
Hose for:	**To connection on multi-contour seat control unit for:**
Lumbar support air cushion (top)	Lumbar support air cushion (centre)
Lumbar support air cushion (centre)	Lumbar support air cushion (top)

In the event of a fault in lumbar support air cushion (bottom)	
Hose for:	**To connection on multi-contour seat control unit for:**
Lumbar support air cushion (bottom)	Lumbar support air cushion (centre)
Lumbar support air cushion (centre)	Lumbar support air cushion (bottom)

– To connect pneumatic lines, attach connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/2- to pneumatic lines.



Note

- *To connect pneumatic lines, insert lines in connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/2- from both sides -arrows A-.*
- *To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.*

– Connect pneumatic lines after completing leak test ⇒ page 636 .

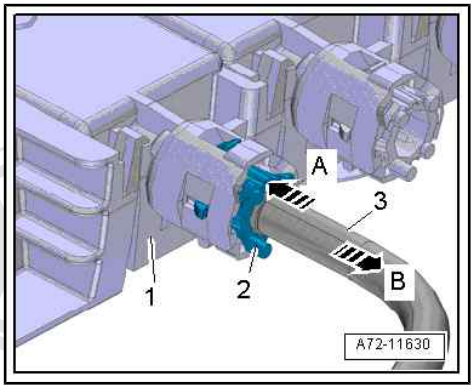
5.5.2 Preparation for leak test for massage mat air cushions

Note

- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the rear seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 629*

Procedure

• Multi-contour seat in vehicle unbolted and tilted towards front with electrical connectors plugged in ⇒ page 548



– Before disconnecting pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines to connections on valve block with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Disconnect pneumatic lines to all massage mat air cushions.

– To do so, press release ring -2- towards valve block -1- -arrow A- and at the same time disconnect pneumatic line -3- -arrow B-.

– To perform test in "Guided Fault Finding" mode, remove both valve blocks from module carrier ⇒ page 644 and re-install on opposite sides.

– Plug in electrical connectors.

– Connect pneumatic lines and then pull lines to check that plug-in connector is engaged properly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.5.3 Preparation for leak test for compressor and pressure line

Note

- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the rear seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 629*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

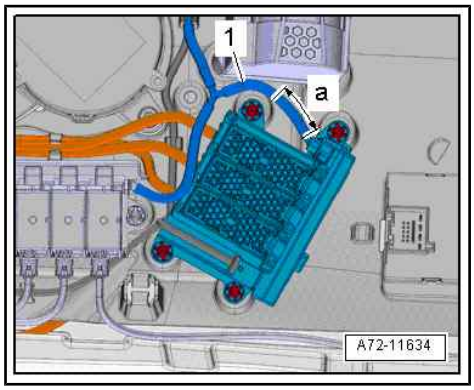
Procedure

- Multi-contour seat in vehicle unbolted and tilted towards front with electrical connectors plugged in ⇒ page 548

In one of the test steps in the "Guided Fault Finding" routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to the pneumatic line leading to the valve blocks -N480- / -N482- and -N525- / -N526- .

– Sever pneumatic line -1- to valve block -N479- / -N481- at the following point ⇒ page 636 :

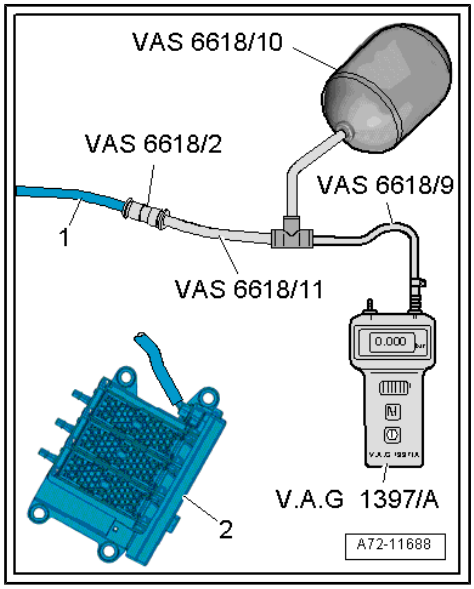
a - 30 mm



– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line -1- from compressor using hose sections, adapters and pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .

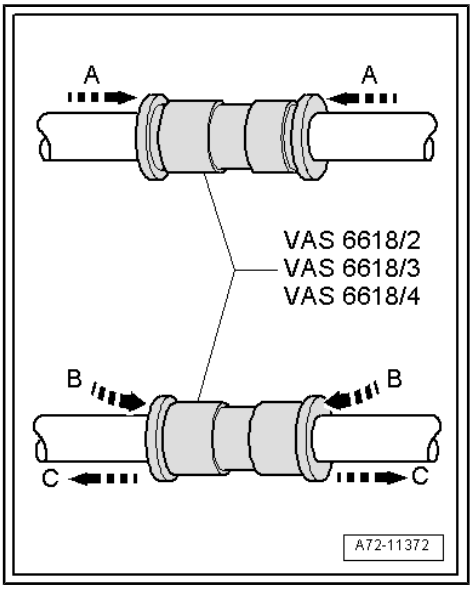
– To connect pneumatic line, attach connecting sleeve -VAS 6618/2- to pneumatic line.

2 - Valve block -N479- / -N481-



Note

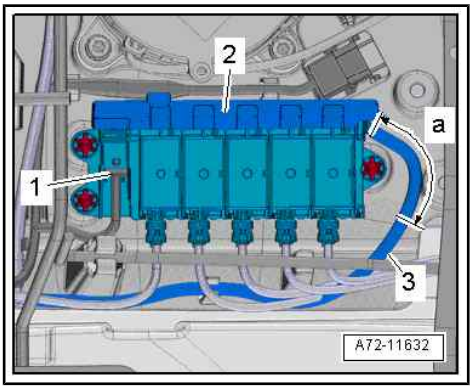
- *To connect pneumatic lines, insert lines in connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/2- from both sides -arrows A-.*
- *To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.*



In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to the pneumatic line leading to the valve blocks -N479- / -N481- and -N525- / -N526- or -N480- / -N482- .

– Disconnect pneumatic line -3- to valve block -N480- / -N482- or -N525- / -N526- -item 2- at the following point ⇒ page 636 :

a - 40 mm



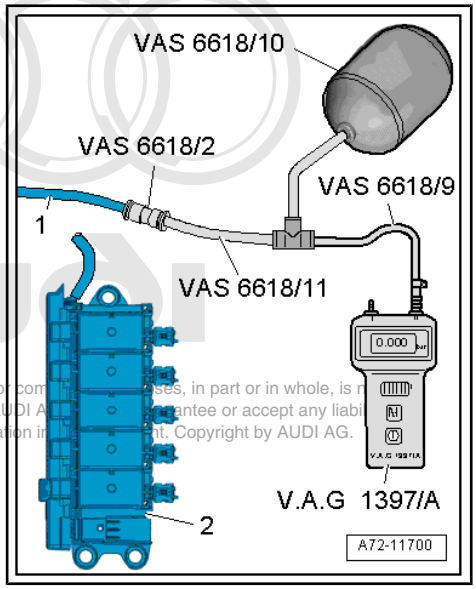
Note

Disregard -item 1-.

– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line -1- from compressor using hose sections, adapters and pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .

– Repeat test at pneumatic line from compressor on opposite valve block.

2 - Valve block -N480- / -N482- or -N525- / -N526-

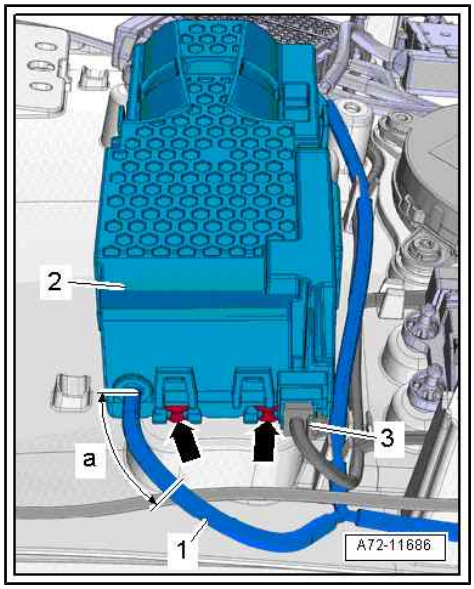


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com... uses, in part or in whole, is n... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A... antee or accept any liabi... with respect to the correctness of information in... ht. Copyright by AUDI AG.

In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- directly to the compressor.

– Sever pneumatic line -1- to compressor -2- at the following point ⇒ page 636 :

a - 50 mm

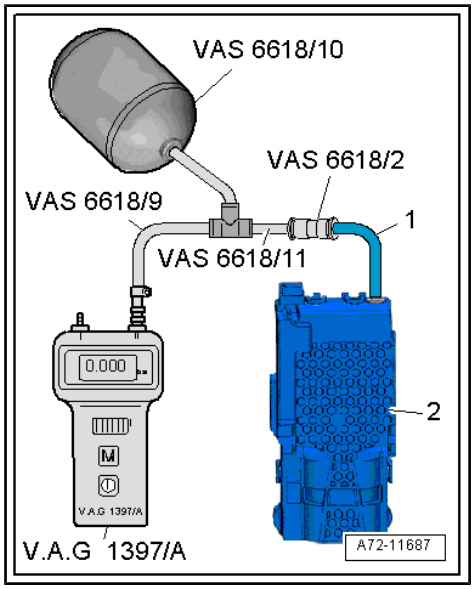


Note

Disregard -item 3 and arrows-.

– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line -1- of compressor -2- using hose sections, adapters and pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .

– Connect pneumatic lines after completing leak test ⇒ page 636 .

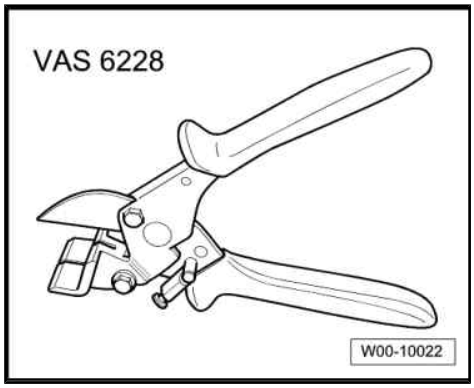


5.6 Severing and connecting pneumatic lines

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Cutting pliers - VAS 6228-

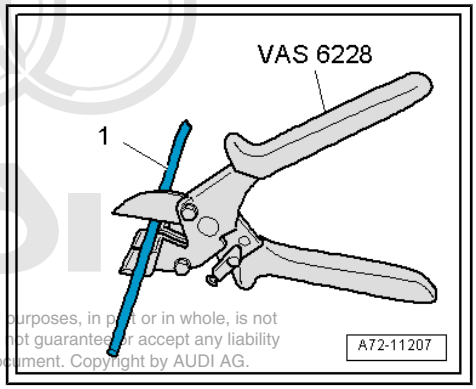
Reproduction or copying of this document in any form, for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



♦ Pliers -VAS 6618/1- (2x)

Severing pneumatic line

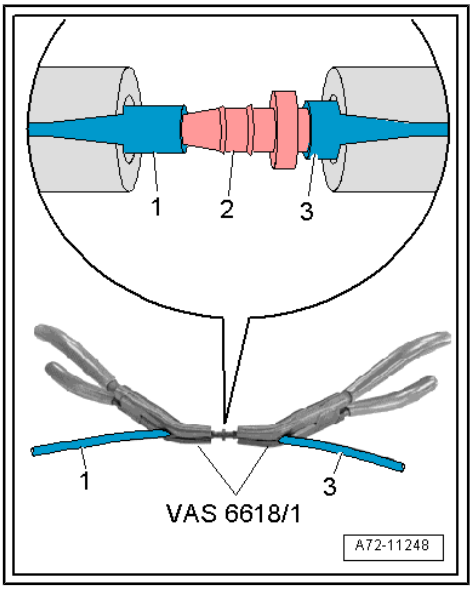
– Apply cutting pliers - VAS 6228- at right angle and cut through pneumatic line -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Connecting pneumatic line

– Slide pneumatic lines -1- and -3- onto line connector -2- from both sides using pliers -VAS 6618/1- ; for line connector, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .



5.7 Servicing pneumatic lines

- A repair set containing pneumatic lines and line connectors is available for repairing pneumatic lines ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Pneumatic lines must not be detached directly at the components. Always separate and connect pneumatic lines as described in this manual.
- Genuine replacement parts are supplied with short line sections which are connected to the pneumatic lines with line connectors.
- Protect pneumatic lines and line connectors against contamination.
- It is NOT permissible to heat pneumatic lines when connecting them to the line connectors.
- It is NOT permissible to use lubricant when connecting the pneumatic lines to the line connectors.
- After the repair, the serviced pneumatic line should be just as long as the line was previously (tolerance: ± 10 mm).
- Contamination at the joints can lead to leaks. Therefore it is important to make sure that the pneumatic system and test instruments are clean when performing tests.

5.8 Removing and installing compressor with control unit for multi-contour seat

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

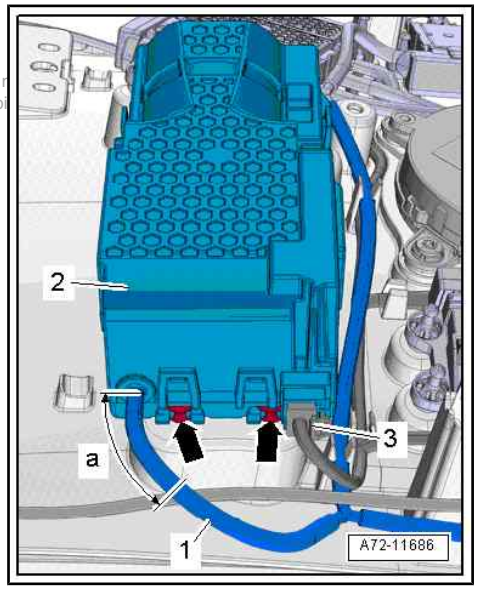
– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

– Slide compressor -2- to the side out of rubber buffers (4x) -arrows-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is n
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liabi
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Sever pneumatic line -1- to compressor at the following point ⇒ page 636 :

• a = 50 mm



Installing

– Cut off pneumatic line of new compressor using old compressor as a guide.

– Connect pneumatic line ⇒ page 636 .

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing a multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Take care not to strain or twist the rubber buffers for the compressor when installing.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.1 Exploded view - pneumatic system", page 627

5.9 Removing and installing air cushion for lumbar support

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

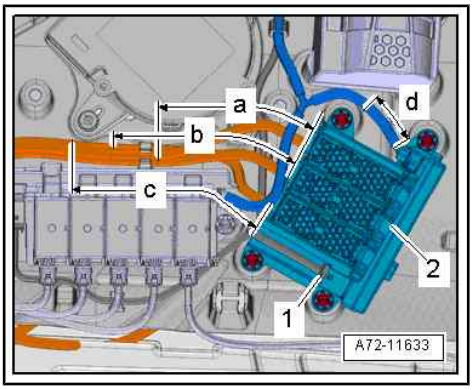
– Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

– Remove backrest padding with backrest cover ⇒ page 705 .

– Mark pneumatic line with a waterproof felt-tip pen at cutting point.

– Sever pneumatic lines leading to lumbar support air cushions at the following locations ⇒ page 636 :

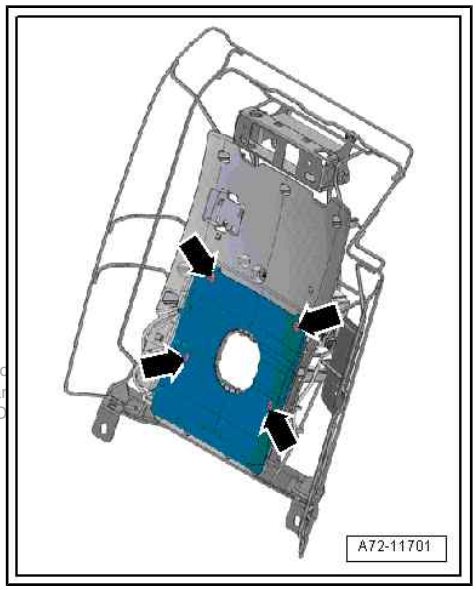
- a = 110 mm
- b = 120 mm
- c = 130 mm



Note

Ignore -items 1, 2 and d-.

– Remove spreader rivets -arrows- and detach air cushion.



Installing

– Cut off pneumatic lines of new air cushion using old air cushion as a guide.

– Connect pneumatic lines ⇒ page 636 .

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing a multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.3 Exploded view - pneumatic system, module carrier/air cushion/lumbar support", page 630

5.10 Removing and installing valve block 1 for lumbar support -N479- / -N481-

Removing

WARNING

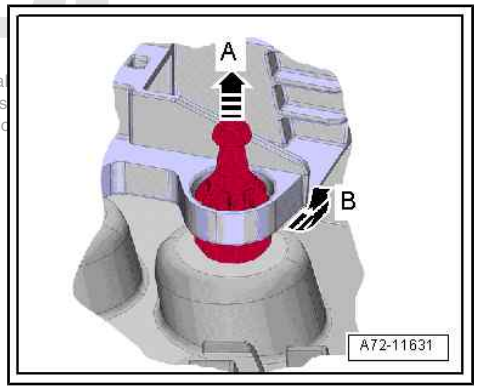
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

– Pull rubber buffers to lengthen them -arrow A-.

– At the same time, pull valve block off rubber buffers -arrow B-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this do



– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

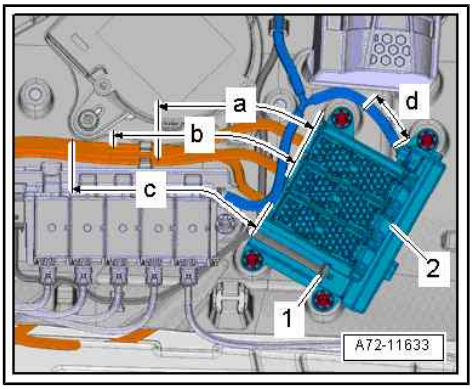
– Mark pneumatic lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen at cutting point for re-installation.

– Sever pneumatic lines leading to lumbar support air cushions at the following locations ⇒ page 636 :

- a = 110 mm
- b = 120 mm
- c = 130 mm

– Sever pneumatic line to compressor at the following point ⇒ page 636 :

- d = 30 mm



Installing

– Cut off pneumatic lines of new valve block using old valve block as a guide.

– Connect pneumatic lines ⇒ page 636 .

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing a multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .*

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.3 Exploded view - pneumatic system, module carrier/air cushion/lumbar support”, page 630

5.11 Removing and installing module carrier

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

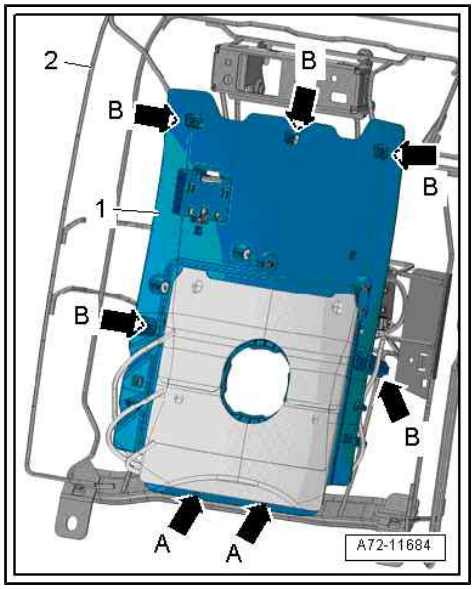
– Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

– Remove backrest padding with backrest cover ⇒ page 705 .

– Move clear wiring harness at seat frame.

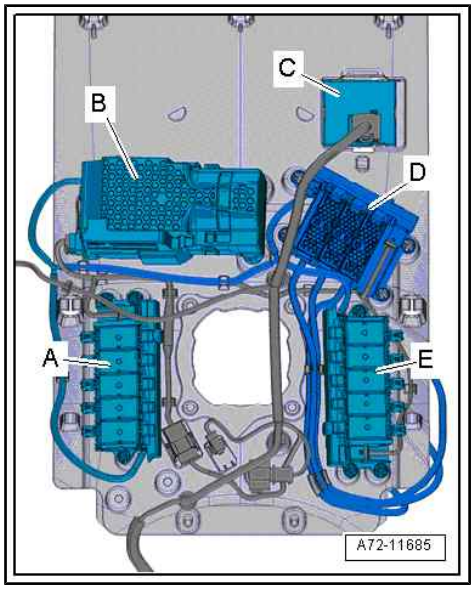
– Remove bolts -arrows A-.

– Unclip module carrier for lumbar support -1- from seat frame -2- -arrows B- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

If only the module carrier is being renewed, it is sufficient to convert the lumbar support air cushions with valve blocks and the control unit for multi-contour seat with pneumatic lines:



– Remove seat adjustment control unit -C- ⇒ page 554 .

– Unclip pneumatic lines and electrical wiring at module carrier for lumbar support and move clear.

– Remove valve block -D- with lumbar support air cushions ⇒ page 639 , ⇒ page 640 .

– Remove valve blocks -A and E- for massage mat ⇒ page 644 .

– Remove compressor -B- for multi-contour seat ⇒ page 638 .

Installing

– Route pneumatic lines and electrical wiring as shown in illustration.

– Press pneumatic lines on again and then pull lines to check that plug-in connectors are engaged properly.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing a multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .*

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.3 Exploded view - pneumatic system, module carrier/air cushion/lumbar support", page 630

5.12 Removing and installing massage mat

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

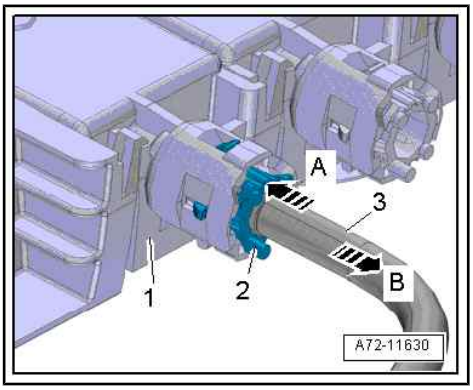
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

– Remove backrest padding with backrest cover ⇒ page 705 .

– Before disconnecting pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines to connections on valve block with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Release and disconnect pneumatic line -3-; to do so, press release ring -2- towards valve block -1- -arrow A- and at the same time pull off pneumatic line -arrow B-.

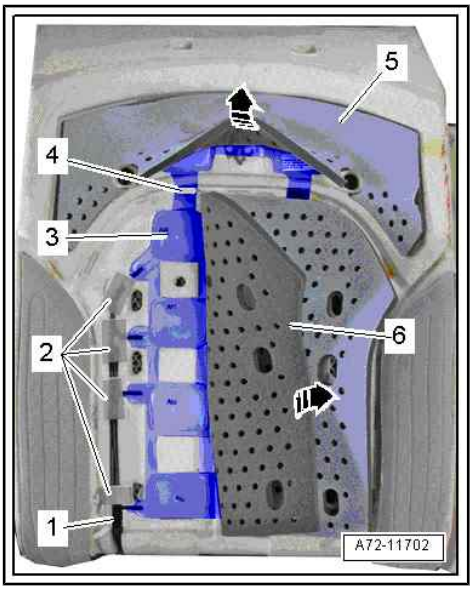


– Carefully release air mats -5 and 6- from adhesive bond and fold back -arrows-.

– Release clip -4-.

– Unfasten pneumatic lines -1- from adhesive bonds -2- and move clear.

– Unfasten massage mat -3- from backrest padding.

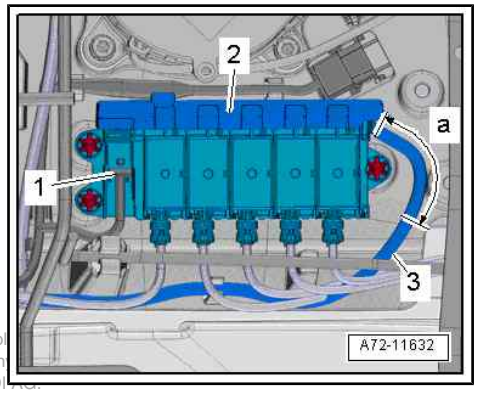


Installing

– Route pneumatic lines in backrest padding and connect to valve block.

– Press pneumatic lines on again and then pull lines to check that plug-in connectors are engaged properly.

– Attach double-sided adhesive tape in original locations of adhesive bonds, as found during removal.



WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing a multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.4 Exploded view - pneumatic system, massage mat", page 631

5.13 Removing and installing valve block for massage mat

Removing

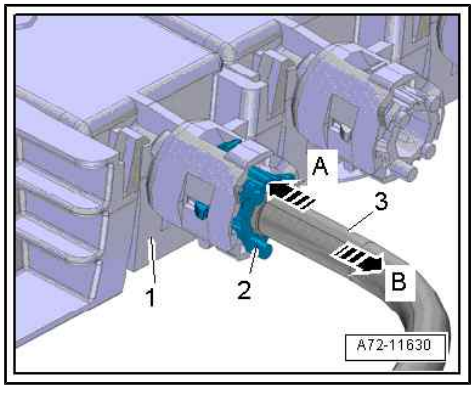
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

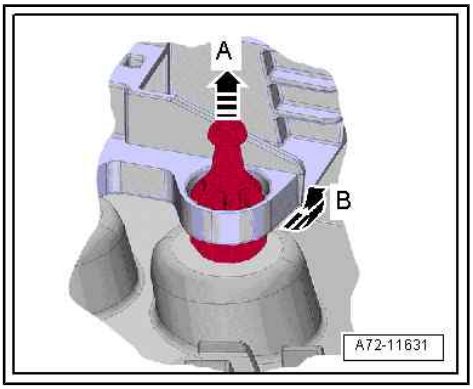
– Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

– Before disconnecting pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines to connections on valve block with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Release and disconnect pneumatic line -3-; to do so, press release ring -2- towards valve block -1- -arrow A- and at the same time pull off pneumatic line -arrow B-.



– Pull rubber buffers to lengthen them -arrow A-.
– At the same time, pull valve block off rubber buffers -arrow B-.

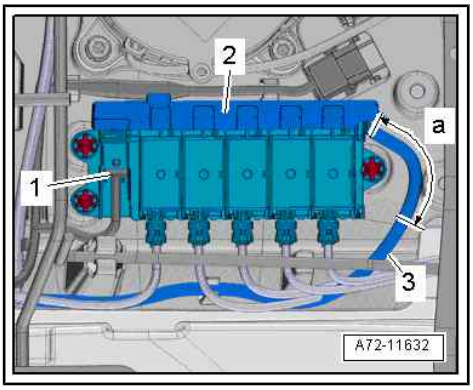


– Unplug electrical connector -1- at valve block -2-.
– Sever pneumatic line -3- to compressor at the following point ⇒ page 636 :

• a = 40 mm

Installing

– Cut off pneumatic line to compressor using old valve block as a guide.
– Connect pneumatic line ⇒ page 636 .
– Press pneumatic lines onto massage mat air cushions at valve block again and then pull lines to check that plug-in connectors are engaged properly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing a multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .*

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.4 Exploded view - pneumatic system, massage mat”, page 631

74 – Seat - padding, covers

1 Covers and padding on front seats

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding”, page 646

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding”, page 651

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding”, page 654

⇒ “1.4 Overview - seat heating elements”, page 655

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding”, page 659

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding”, page 668

⇒ “1.7 Separating seat pan cover and padding”, page 677

⇒ “1.8 Separating backrest cover and padding”, page 679

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding”, page 681

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 ”, page 683

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 ”, page 685

1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding

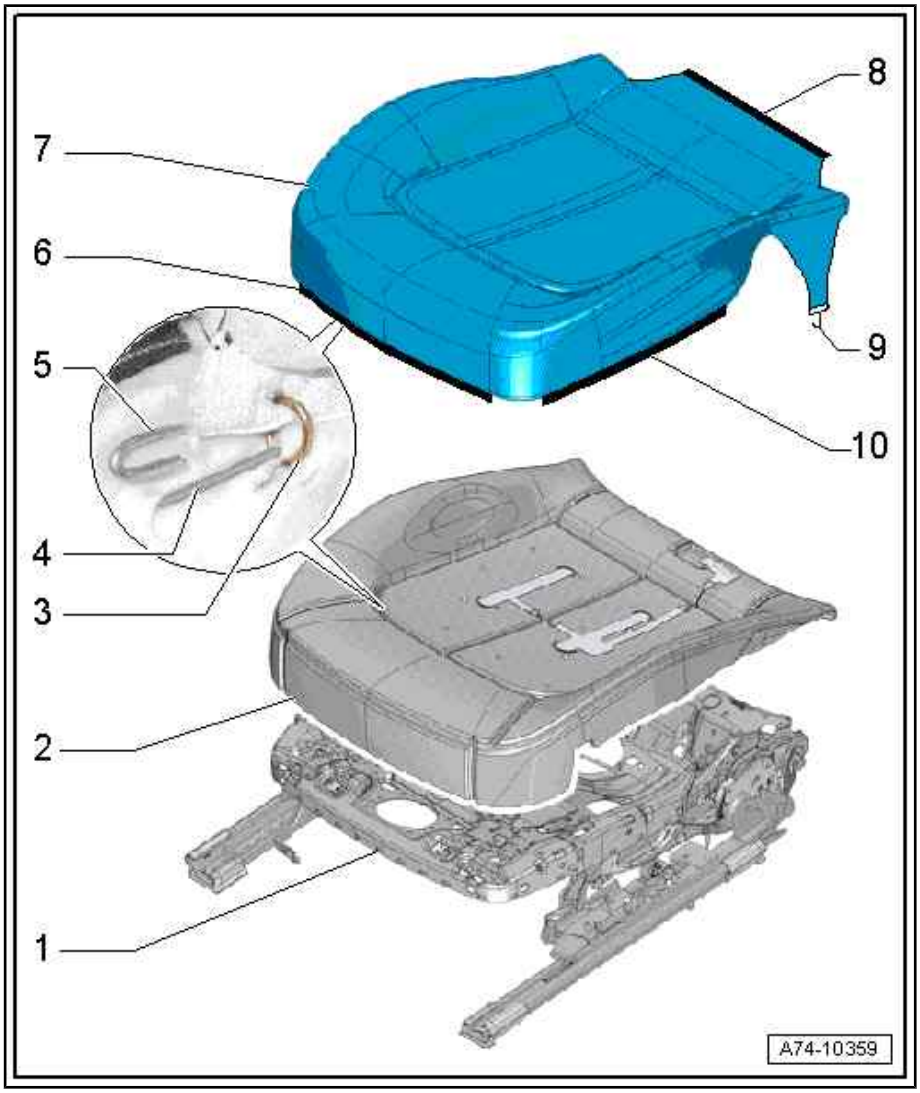
⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat”, page 646

⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat/ super sports seat”, page 648

⇒ “1.1.3 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, multi-contour seat”, page 649

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat



1 - Seat pan

2 - Seat padding

- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 659
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 677
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

4 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in seat padding
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

5 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted in pouch of seat cover
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

6 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

7 - Seat cover

- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 659
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 677
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

8 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

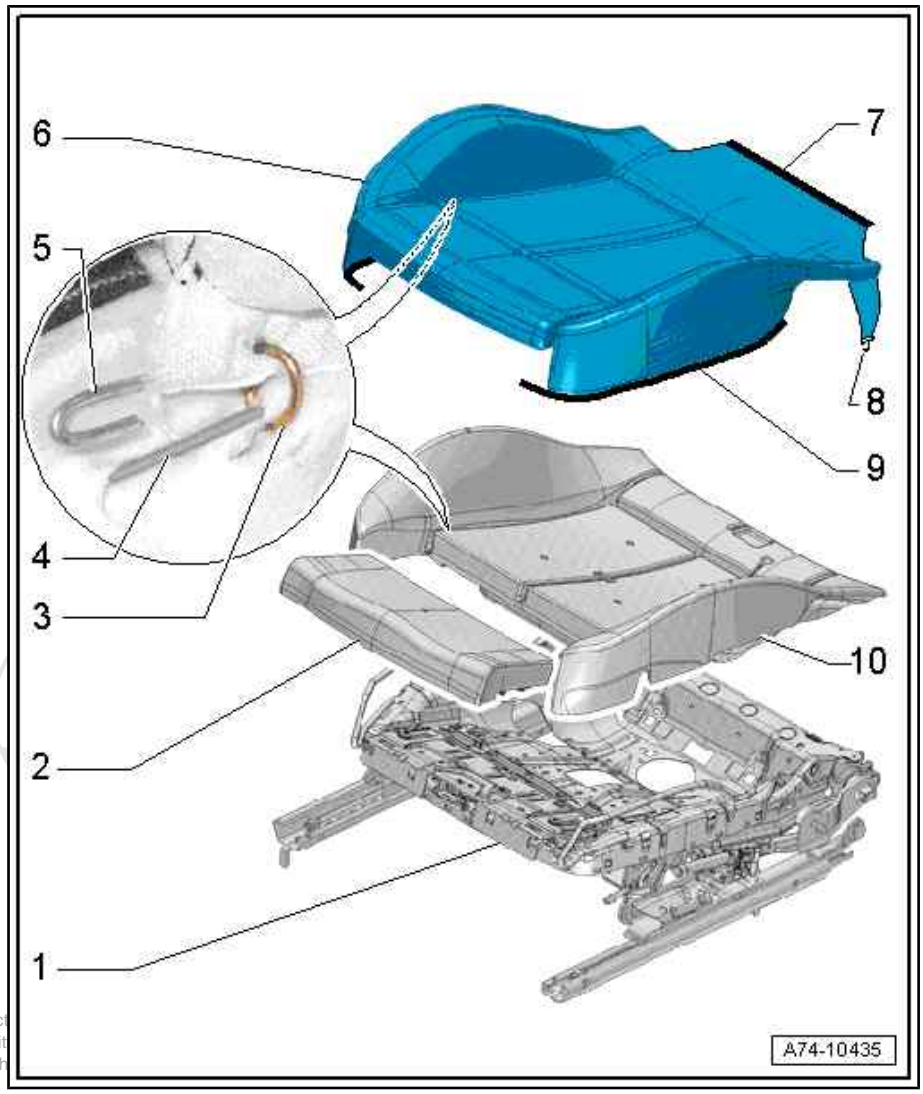
9 - Tab

- ❑ With hook
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame

10 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat/super sports seat



1 - Seat pan

2 - Seat padding

- For seat depth adjuster
- Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 661
- Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 677
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Upholstery clip

- For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- Renew
- Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

4 - Wire

- Foam-fitted in seat padding
- For attaching seat cover to seat padding

5 - Contour wire

- Inserted in pouch of seat cover
- For attaching seat cover to seat padding

6 - Seat cover

- Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 661
- Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 677
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- After installing, make sure there are no creases

7 - Piping

- Stitched to seat cover
- For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

8 - Tab

- With hook
- For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame

9 - Piping

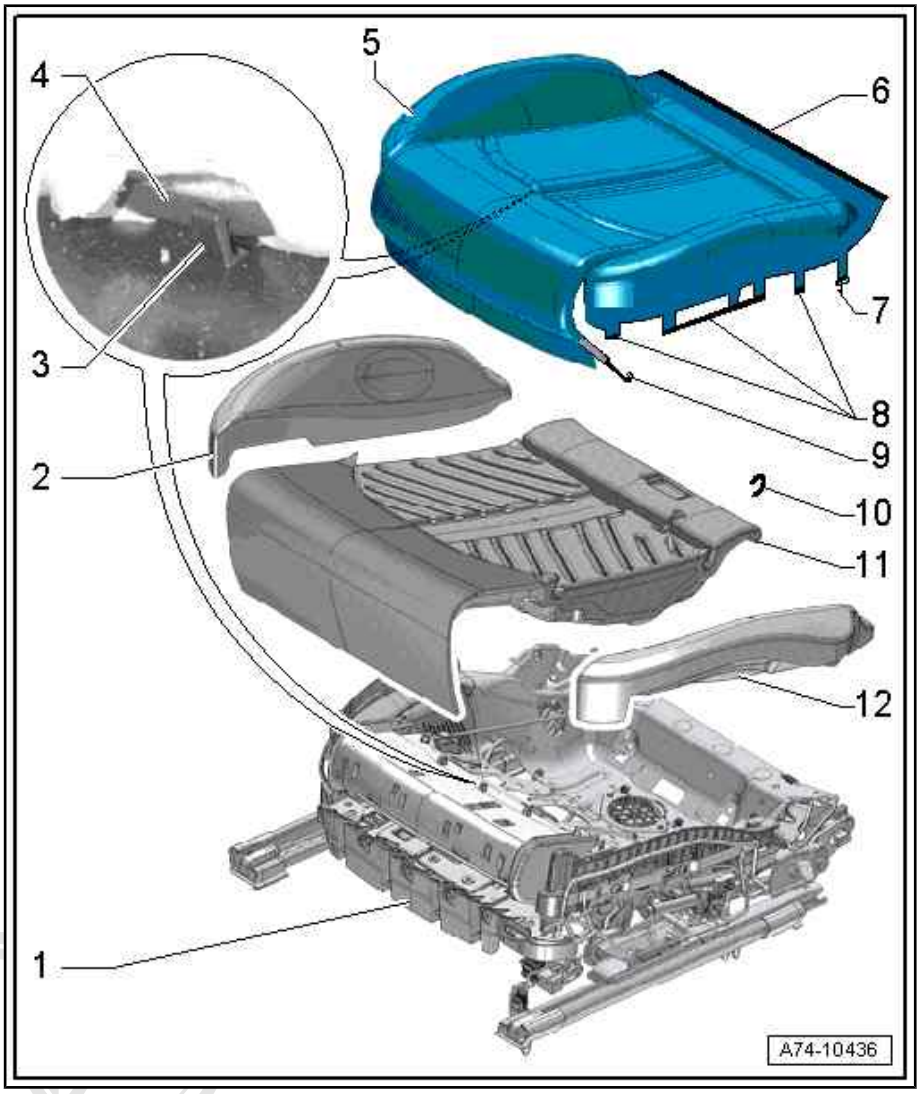
- Stitched to seat cover
- For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

10 - Seat padding

- Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 661

- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 677
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

1.1.3 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, multi-contour seat



1 - Seat pan

- ❑ With seat depth adjustment

2 - Seat bolster padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 663

3 - Retaining hook

- ❑ On cover for seat depth adjuster
- ❑ 4x

4 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For attaching seat cover and padding to cover for seat depth adjuster

5 - Seat cover

- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 665
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 679
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

6 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at rear of upper seat pan frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

7 - Tab

- ❑ With hook
- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at seat pan

8 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at side of upper seat pan frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

9 - Rubber strap

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Inserted in pouch of seat cover
- ❑ For engaging at upper seat pan frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

11 - Seat padding

- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 665
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 679
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

12 - Seat bolster padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 663

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

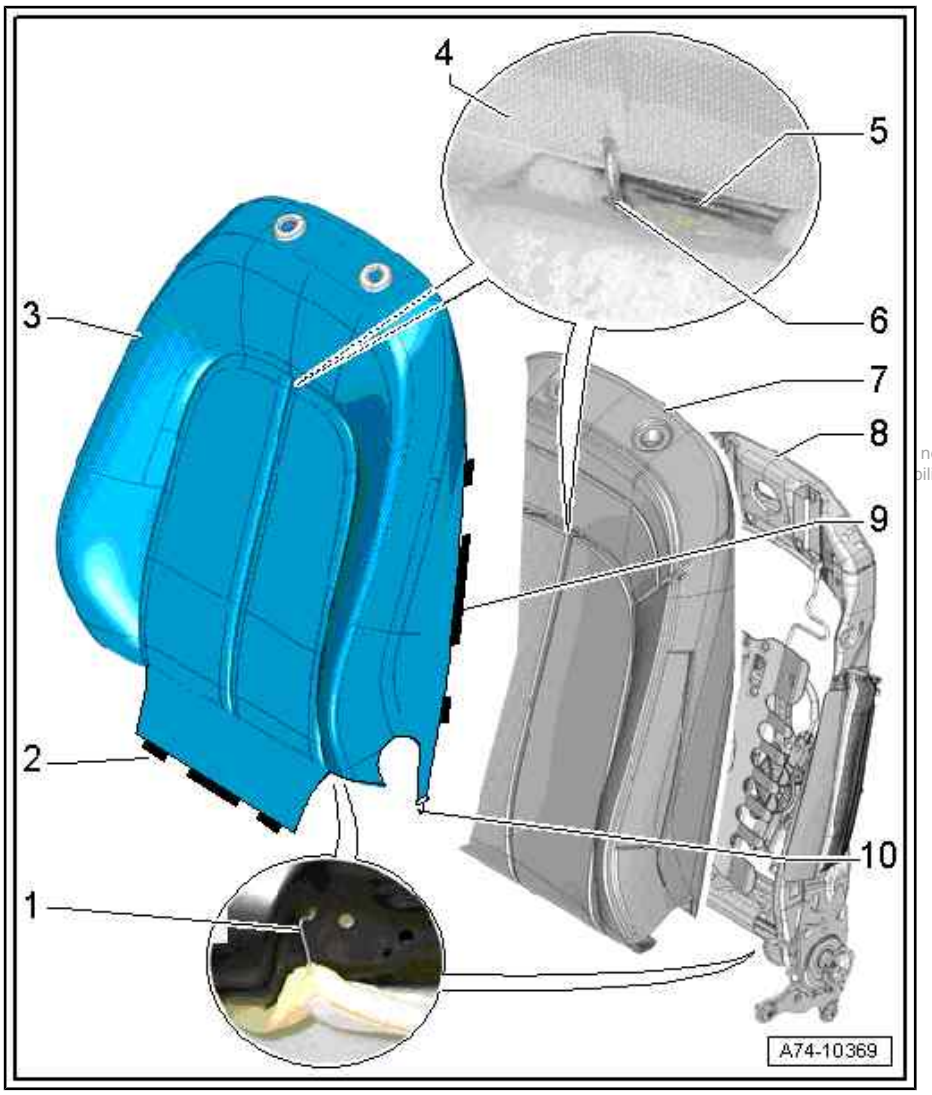
1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding

⇒ "1.2.1 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, standard seat/sports seat", page 651

⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat", page 652

⇒ "1.2.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, multi-contour seat", page 653

1.2.1 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, standard seat/sports seat



1 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame

2 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in outer backrest frame

3 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 668
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 679
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

4 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

5 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

6 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

7 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 668

- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 679
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

8 - Outer backrest frame

9 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in outer backrest frame

10 - Tab

- ❑ With hook
- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame

1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat

1 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in outer backrest frame

2 - Tab

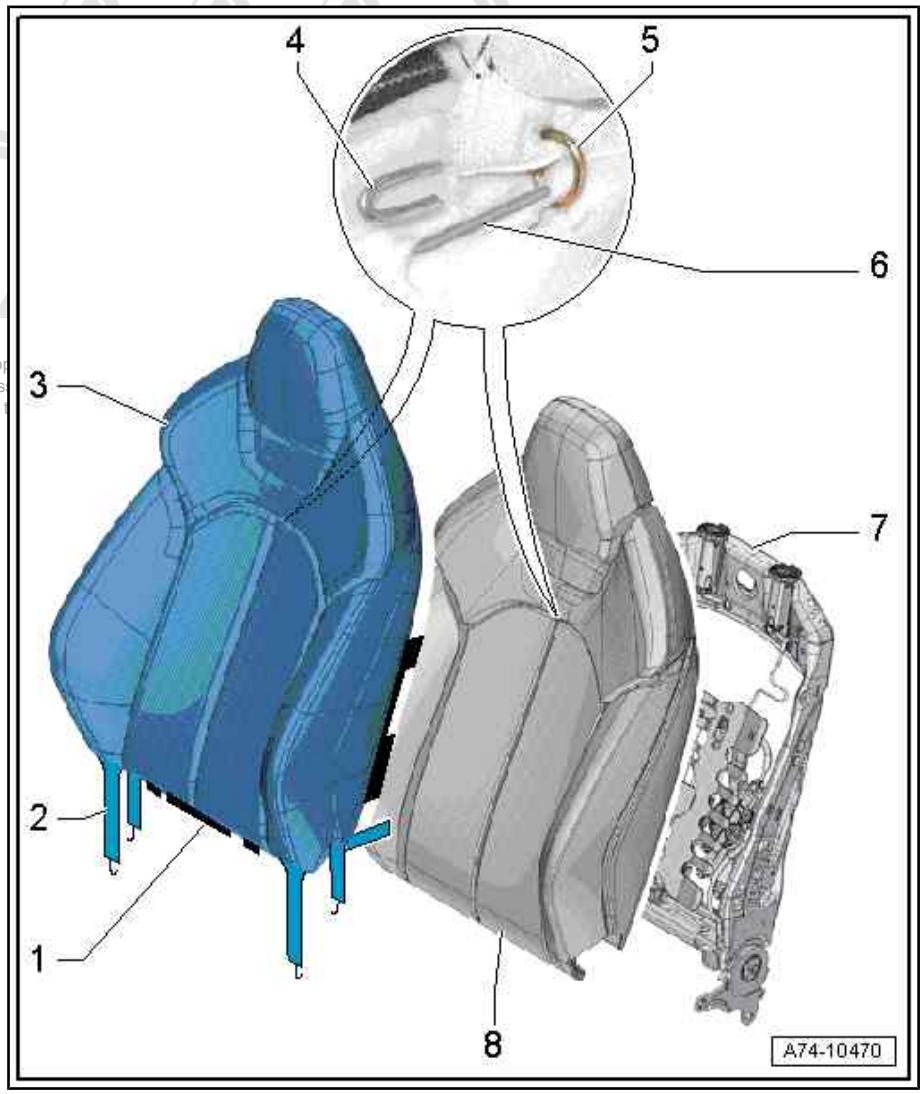
- ❑ With hook
- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame

3 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 670
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 679
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

4 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding



5 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

6 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

7 - Outer backrest frame

8 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 670
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 679
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

1.2.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, multi-contour seat

1 - Tab

- ❑ With hook
- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame

2 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 668
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 679
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

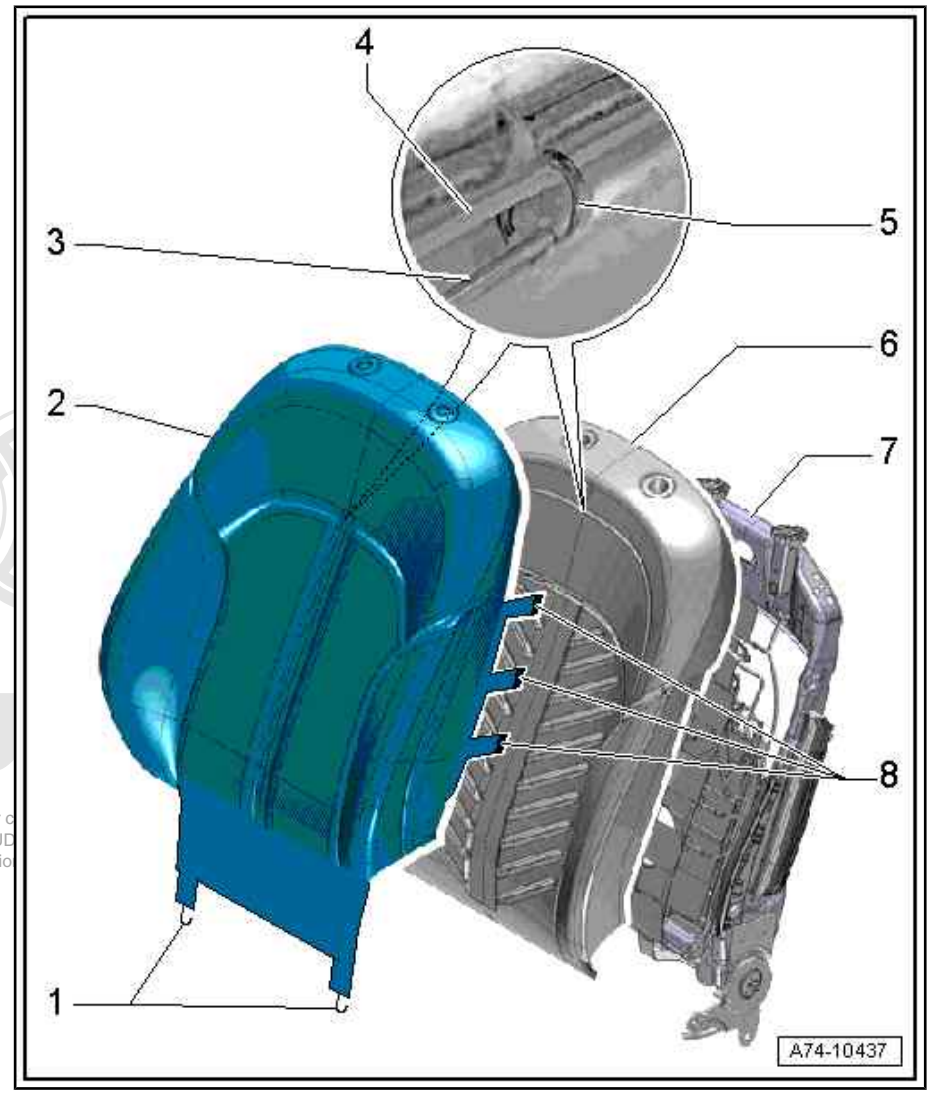
3 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD
no liability for the correctness of informatio

4 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ❑ For securing backrest cover and backrest padding



5 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

6 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 668
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 679
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

7 - Outer backrest frame

8 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in outer backrest frame

1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding

Note

- ♦ *The illustration shows the head restraint version with height adjustment and leather cover.*
- ♦ *The head restraint with height adjustment and fabric cover and the adjustable 4-position head restraint cannot be dismantled.*

1 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Flat strip and U-strip

2 - Cover

- ❑ Leather
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 681

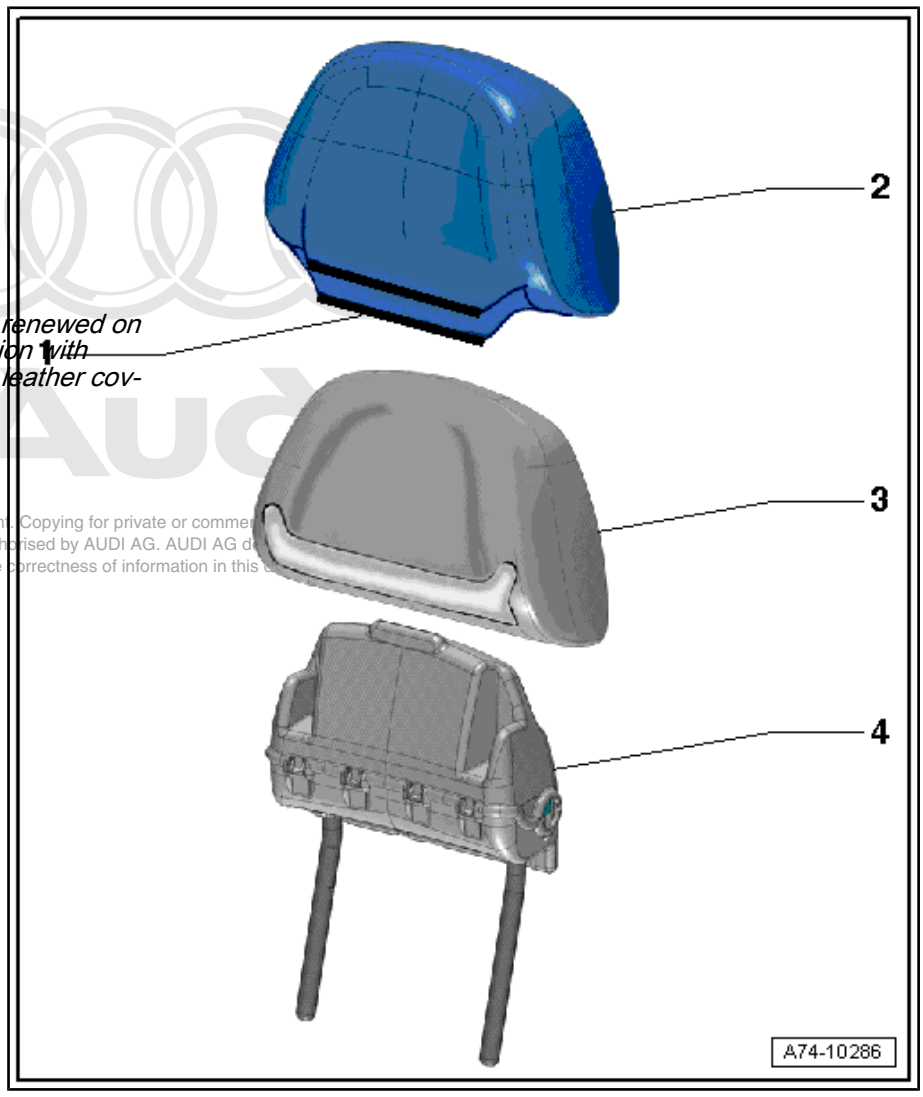
Note

The cover can only be renewed on the head restraint version with height adjustment and leather cover.

3 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 681

4 - Mounting bracket for head restraint



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d
with respect to the correctness of information in this

1.4 Overview - seat heating elements

⇒ “1.4.1 Overview - seat heating elements, standard seat/sports seat”, page 655

⇒ “1.4.2 Overview - seat heating elements, seat ventilation”, page 656

⇒ “1.4.3 Overview - seat heating elements, super sports seat”, page 657

⇒ “1.4.4 Overview - seat heating elements, multi-contour seat”, page 658

1.4.1 Overview - seat heating elements, standard seat/sports seat

1 - Seat padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 683
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

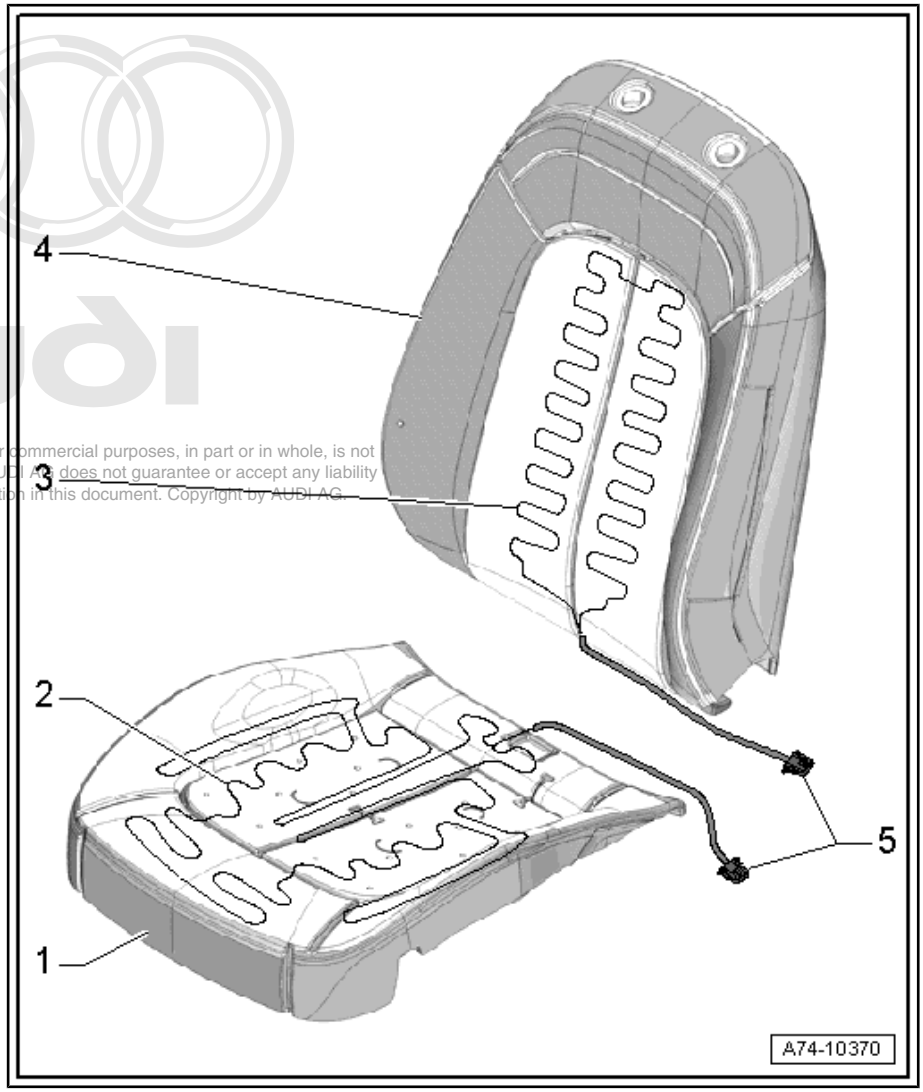
3 - Heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 685
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Backrest padding

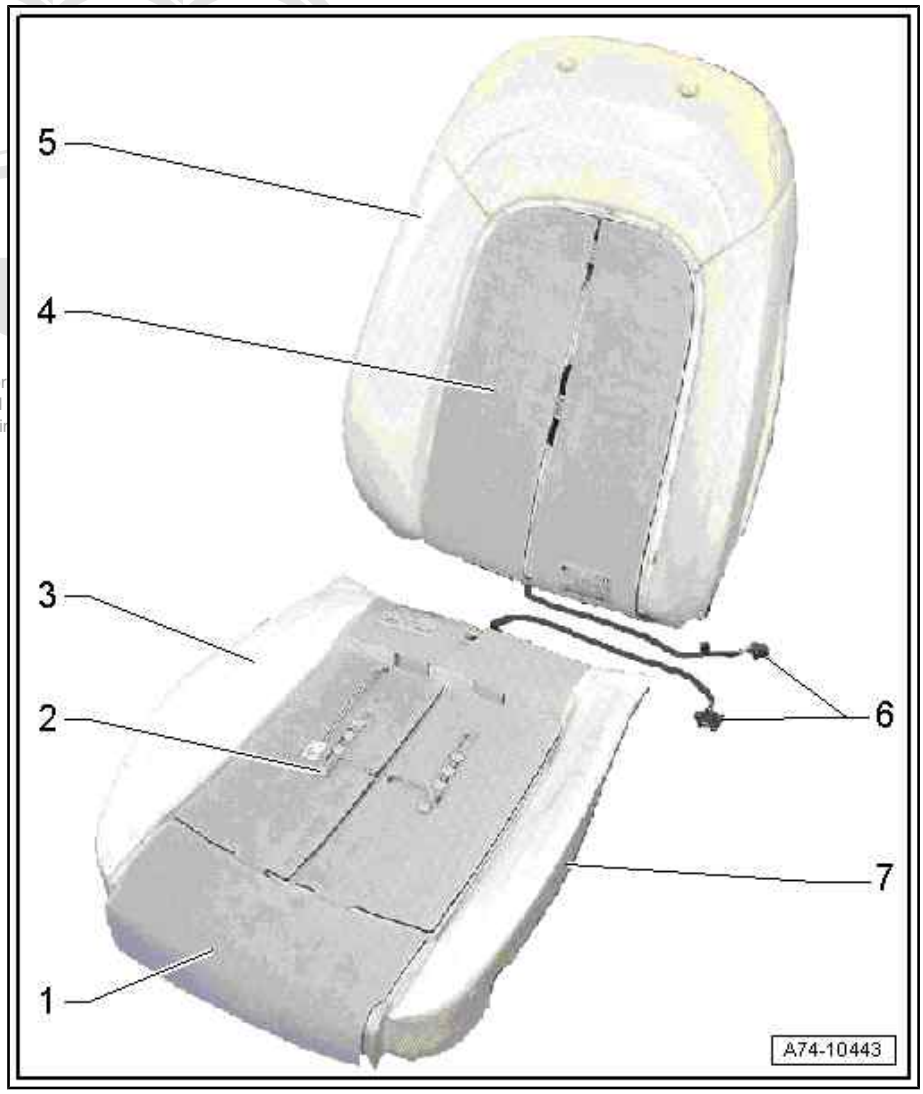
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Electrical wiring



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.2 Overview - seat heating elements, seat ventilation



1 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 683
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

Protected by copyright. Copying for pr
AUDI
s of i

- ❑ Country-specific version: pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452-
- ❑ Equipment version (passenger side only)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 193

3 - Bolster heating

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 685
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Backrest padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

6 - Electrical wire

7 - Seat padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

1.4.3 Overview - seat heating elements, super sports seat

1 - Seat padding

- ❑ For seat depth adjuster
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 683
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Backrest padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

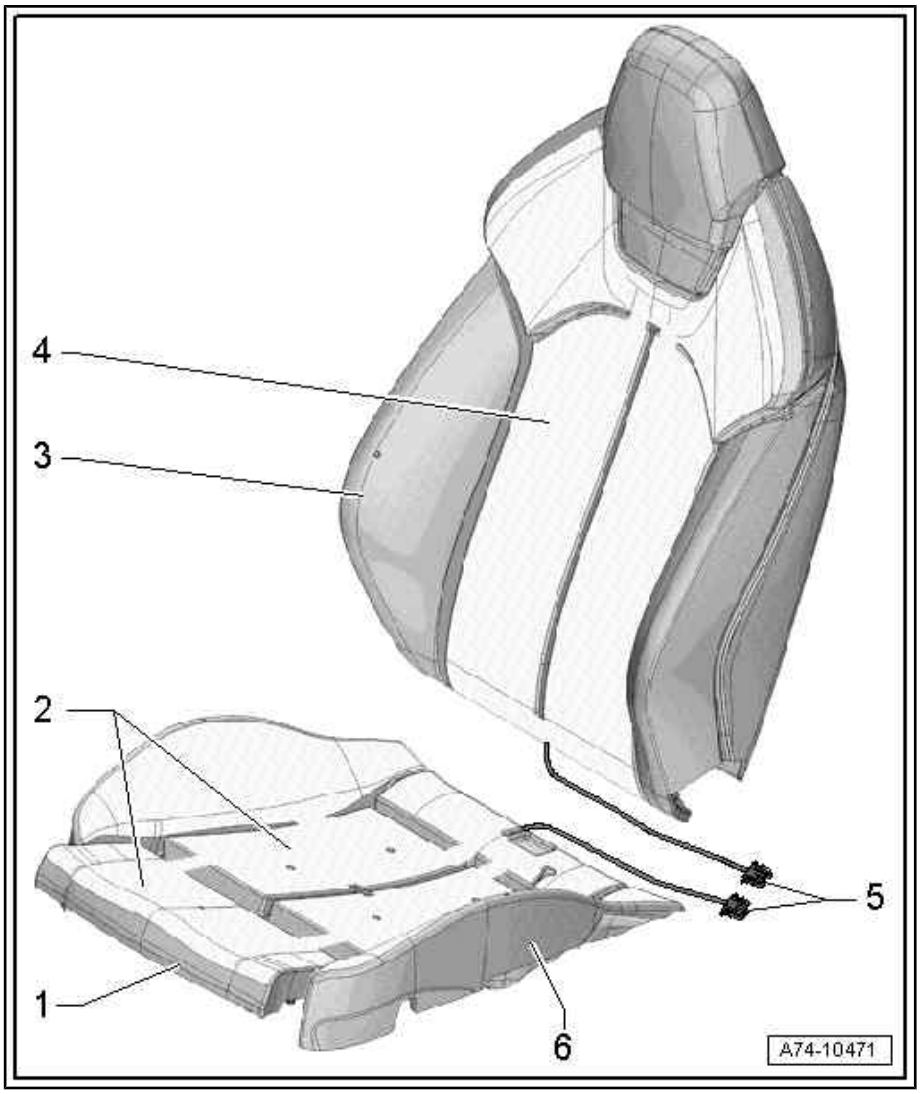
4 - Heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 685
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

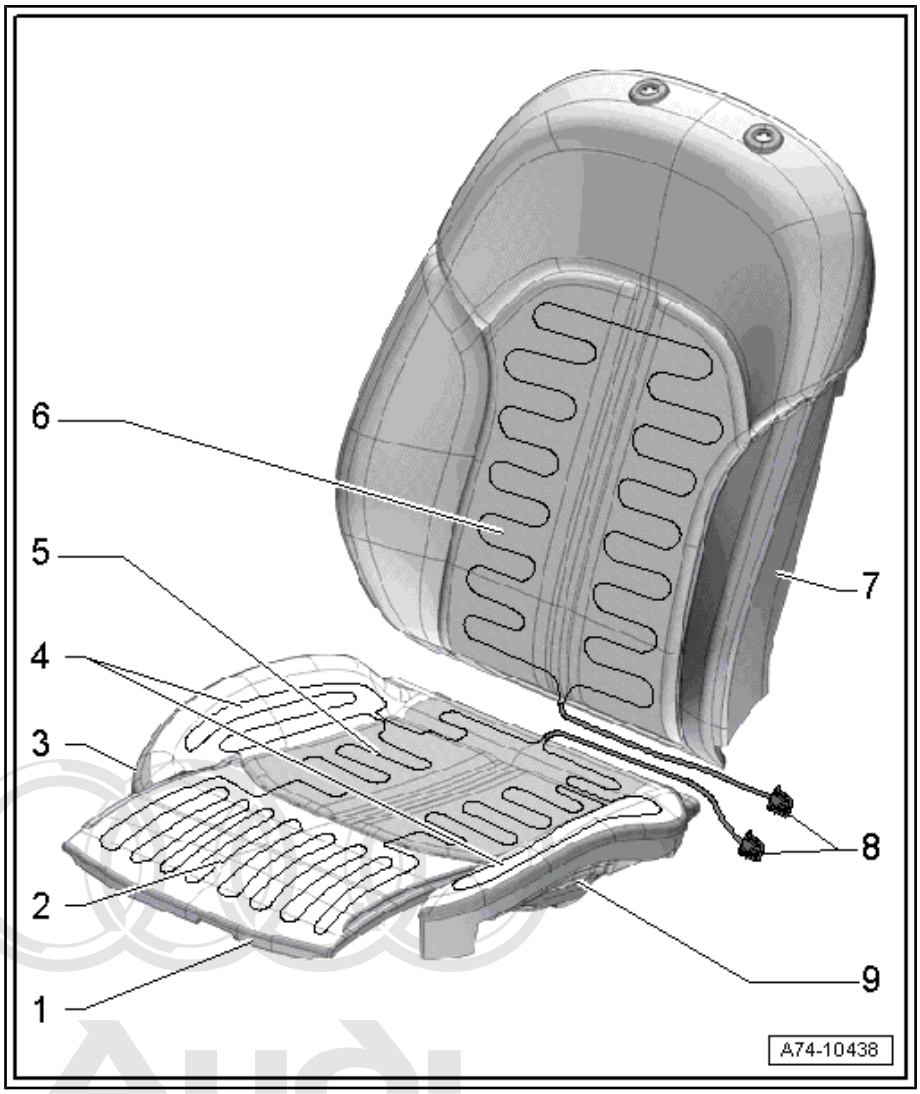
5 - Electrical wire

6 - Seat padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



1.4.4 Overview - seat heating elements, multi-contour seat



1 - Seat padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Heating element

- ❑ For leg support
- ❑ Bonded to seat padding and connected to heating element in seat cover; if defective, renew seat cover ⇒ page 679

3 - Seat bolster padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Driver seat cushion lateral support heater - Z31-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lateral support heater - Z33-
- ❑ Heating element bonded onto seat bolster padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.5.3 Removing and installing seat bolster padding on seat pan - multi-contour seat”, page 663
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ❑ Heating element stitched to seat cover; if defective, renew seat cover ⇒ “1.7.2 Separating seat pan cover and padding - multi-contour seat”, page 679
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ❑ Heating element stitched to backrest cover; if defective, renew backrest cover ⇒ “1.8 Separating backrest cover and padding”, page 679
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

7 - Backrest padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

8 - Electrical wire

9 - Seat bolster padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

1.5 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding

⇒ "1.5.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - standard seat", page 659

⇒ "1.5.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - sports seat/super sports seat", page 661

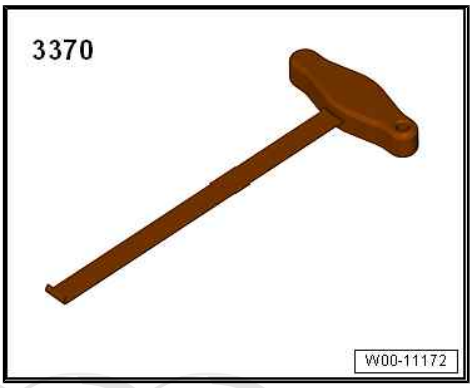
⇒ "1.5.3 Removing and installing seat bolster padding on seat pan - multi-contour seat", page 663

⇒ "1.5.4 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - multi-contour seat", page 665

1.5.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - standard seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front-end hook - 3370-



Removing

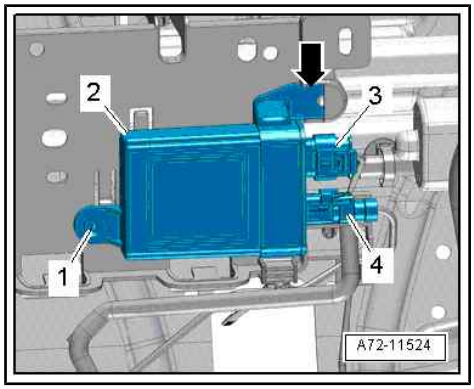
> **WARNING**
>
> - *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
> - *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 440 .
– Equipment version with front passenger seat with child seat anchor: Remove ISOFIX child seat anchor ⇒ page 126 .
– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 487 .
– Remove bracket for trim (sill side):

- Standard seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ page 461 .
- Standard seat (with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 464

Front passenger's seat - country-specific version with seat occupied recognition controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag:

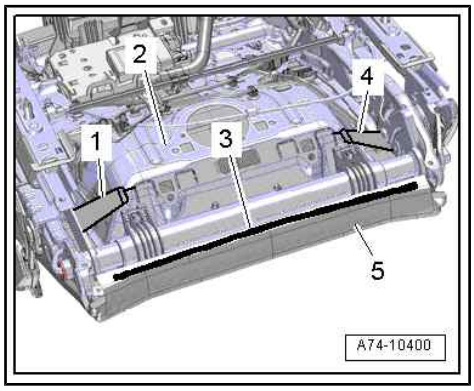


Caution

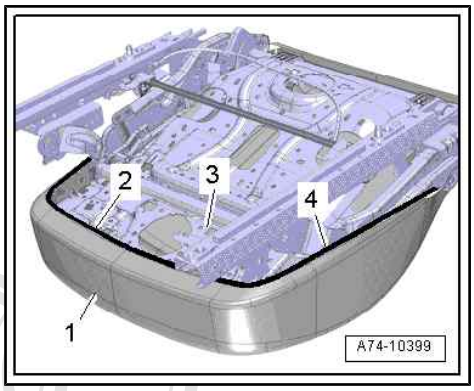
Do NOT unplug electrical connector -4- at seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .

- Unplug electrical connector -3- at control unit.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Disengage control unit -2- at retainer -arrow- and move control unit with wiring clear.

Driver's and front passenger's seat (continued):



- Disengage hooks of tabs -1- and -4- at seat pan -2-.
- Unplug electrical connectors and move clear.
- Disengage piping -3- of seat cover -5- using front-end hook - 3370- (rear section).



- Disengage piping -2, 4- of seat cover using front-end hook - 3370- (front and side sections).
- Detach seat cover -1- with padding from seat pan -3- and at the same time move clear wiring harness for seat heating and seat occupied sensor (if fitted).

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat", page 646

Copyright by AUDI AG.
Duplication or distribution for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - sports seat/super sports seat

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 440 .

– Equipment version with front passenger seat with ISOFIX child seat anchor: Remove ISOFIX child seat anchor ⇒ page 126 .

– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 487 .

– Remove bracket for trim (sill side):

♦ Sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ page 461 .

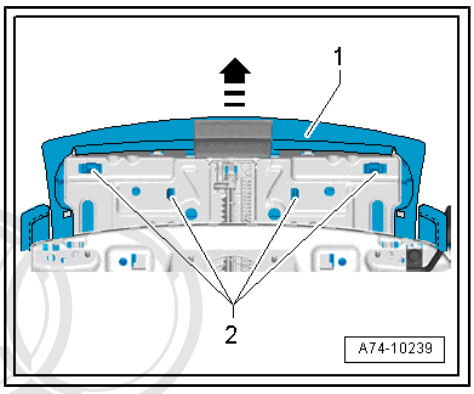
♦ Sports seat/super sports seat (with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 464

– Unplug electrical connectors and move clear.

– Pull out seat depth adjuster as far as it will go.

– Unclip fasteners -2-.

– Swivel mounting bracket with seat padding and cover -1- for seat depth adjustment upwards -arrow- so far that fasteners remain disengaged.



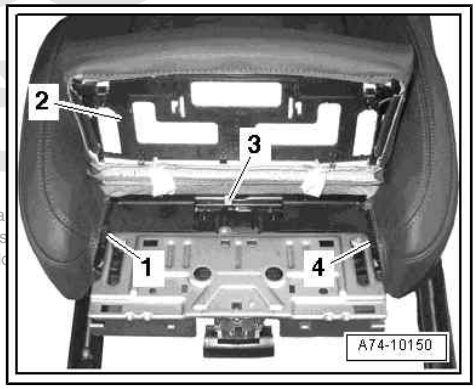
– Pull off mounting bracket -2- with padding and cover for seat depth adjustment at an angle (upwards towards front).

Note

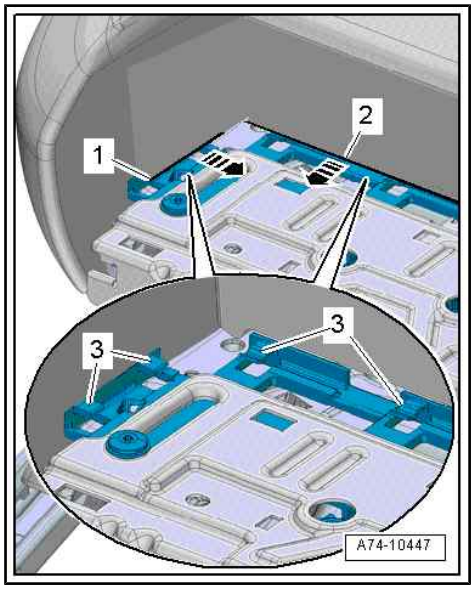
For greater clarity, lower seat pan frame is not shown in illustration.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this do

– Unclip fastening strips -1, 3, 4- on cover with padding from retaining tabs (at rear diagonally and to side).



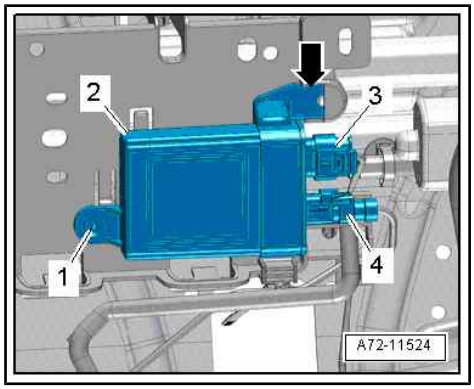
– To do so, unclip fastening strips -1- and -2- from retaining tabs -3- in direction of -arrows-.



Note

Proceed very carefully when removing and clipping in the component as the fasteners can be damaged quite easily.

Front passenger's seat - country-specific version with seat occupied recognition controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag:

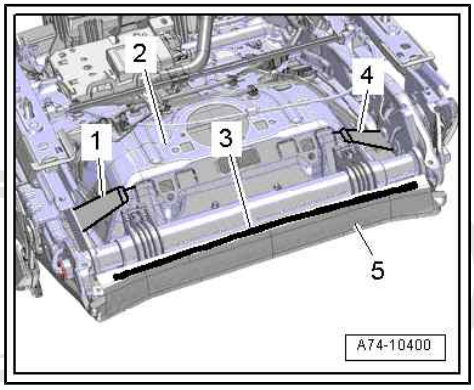


Caution

Do NOT unplug electrical connector -4- at seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .

– Unplug electrical connector -3- at control unit.
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Disengage control unit -2- at retainer -arrow- and move control unit with wiring clear.

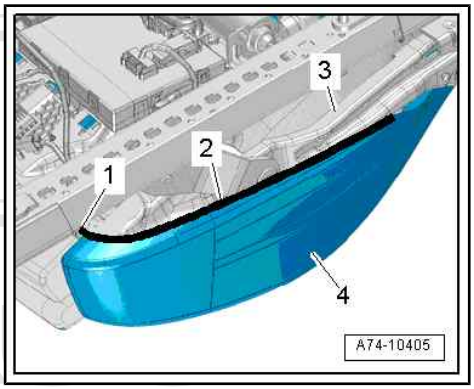
Driver's and front passenger's seat (continued):



– Disengage hooks of tabs -1- and -4- at seat pan -2-.
– Unplug electrical connectors and move clear.
– Disengage piping -3- of seat cover -5- using front-end hook - 3370- (rear section).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage piping -1, 2- of seat cover using front-end hook - 3370- (front and side sections).
– Detach seat cover -4- with padding from seat pan -3- and at the same time move clear wiring harness for seat heating and seat occupied sensor (if fitted).



Note

(Plastic) mounting bracket of seat depth adjuster remains on seat padding.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

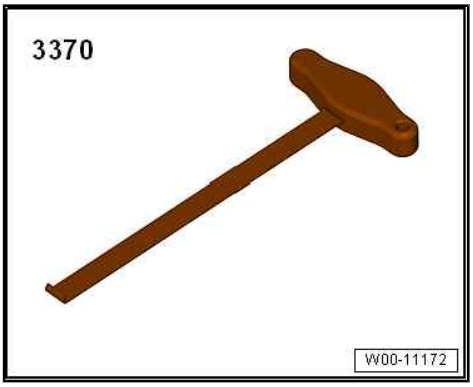
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat/ super sports seat", page 648

1.5.3 Removing and installing seat bolster padding on seat pan - multi-contour seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front-end hook - 3370-



Removing

WARNING

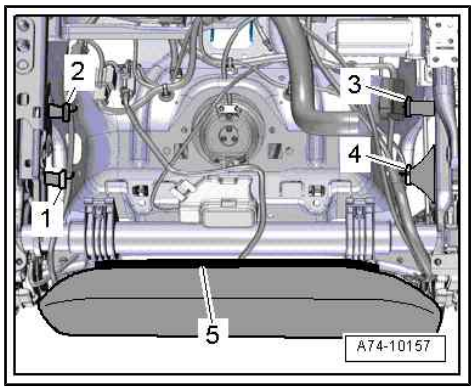
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 441 .

– Disengage piping -5- at rear of seat pan using front-end hook - 3370- .



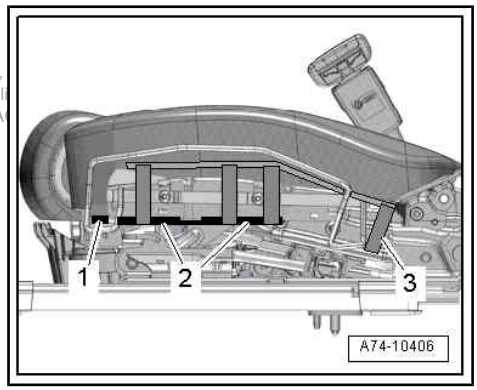
Note

Ignore -1 … 4-.

– Disengage piping of tab -3- at seat pan frame (sill side).

– Disengage piping -1- and -2- at seat pan frame (sill side).

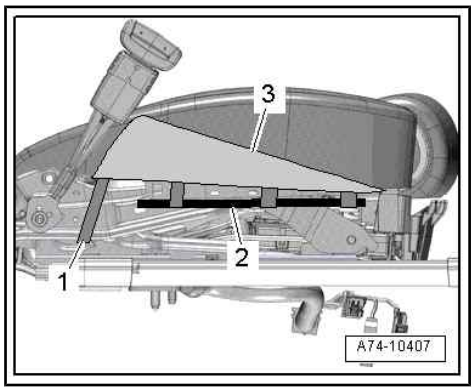
Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private and commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



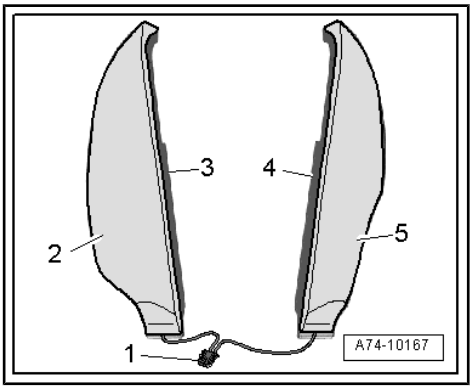
– Lift seat cover -3- (tunnel side).

– Disengage piping of tab -1- at seat pan frame (tunnel side).

– Disengage piping -2- at seat pan frame (tunnel side).



– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring for heating element clear.
– Remove seat bolster padding -3, 4-.



Note

Seat bolster padding -3, 4- only available with heating elements -2, 5-.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

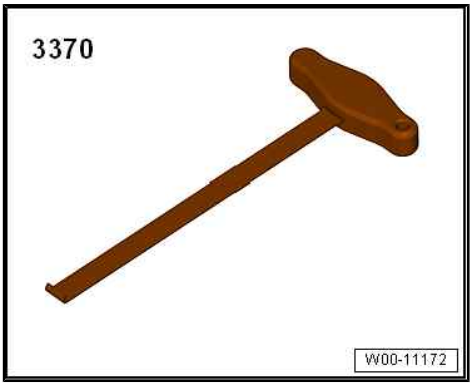
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.3 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, multi-contour seat", page 649

1.5.4 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - multi-contour seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front-end hook - 3370-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

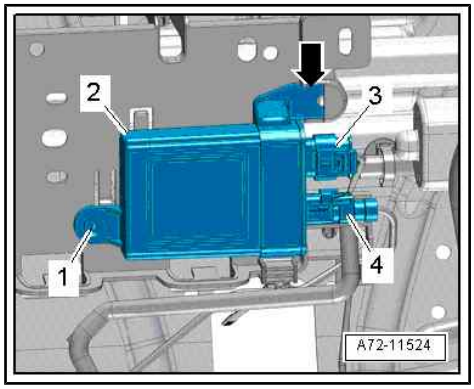
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 441 .

Front passenger's seat - country-specific version with seat occupied recognition controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag:

Caution

Do NOT unplug electrical connector -4- at seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .



– Unplug electrical connector -3- at control unit.

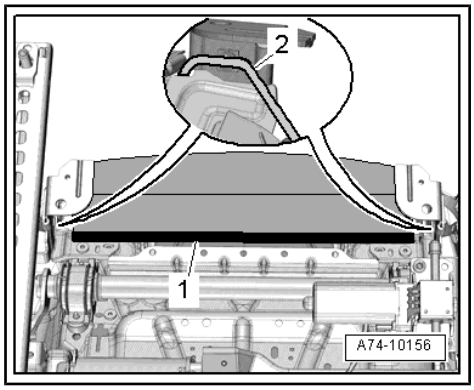
– Remove bolt -1-.

– Disengage control unit -2- at retainer -arrow- and move control unit with wiring clear.

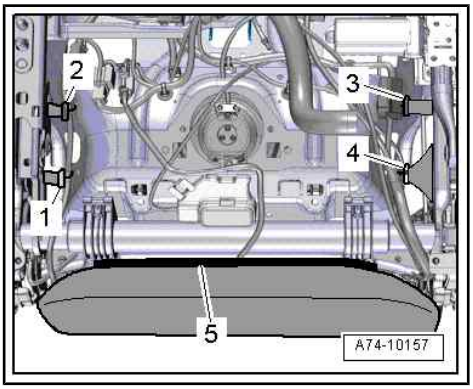
Driver's and front passenger's seat (continued):

– Remove bracket for trim (front), compressor and control unit for multi-contour seat ⇒ page 467 .

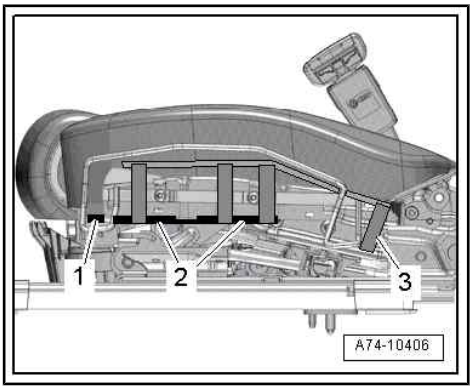
– Disengage rubber strap -2- and piping -1- from front of seat pan.



– Disengage hooks of tabs -1 ... 4- at bottom of seat pan.
– Disengage piping -5- at rear of seat pan using front-end hook - 3370- .

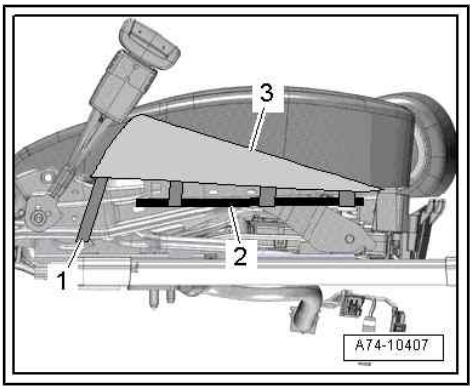


– Disengage piping of tab -3- at seat pan frame (sill side).
– Disengage piping -1- and -2- at seat pan frame (sill side).
– Move electrical wiring for heating element clear and detach seat bolster padding (sill side).

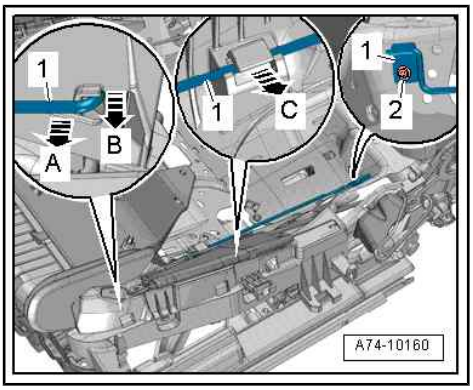


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

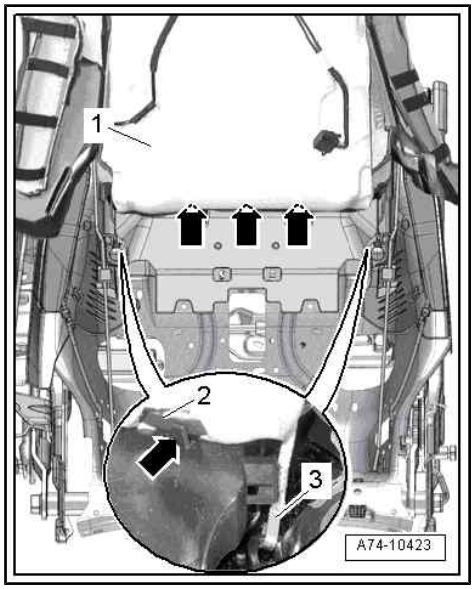
– Lift seat cover -3- (tunnel side).
– Disengage piping of tab -1- at seat pan frame (tunnel side).
– Disengage piping -2- at seat pan frame (tunnel side).
– Unplug electrical connector for heating element, move wiring clear and detach seat bolster padding (tunnel side).



– Detach spreader rivet -2- from upholstery wire -1-.
– Remove upholstery wire in centre of seat bolster -arrow C-.
– Push upholstery wire down at front -arrow A- and detach from seat bolster -arrow B-.
– Repeat procedure on opposite side.
– Unplug electrical connectors to seat padding and move unplugged wiring clear.



– Carefully lift seat cover with padding -1- at rear and disengage rubber strap -3- for seat cover at seat bolster.
– Unclip fastening strip -2- for seat cover from cover for seat depth adjuster -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Detach seat cover and padding.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.3 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, multi-contour seat", page 649

1.6 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

⇒ "1.6.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - standard seat/sports seat", page 668

⇒ "1.6.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat", page 670

⇒ "1.6.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - multi-contour seat up to 08.2012", page 672

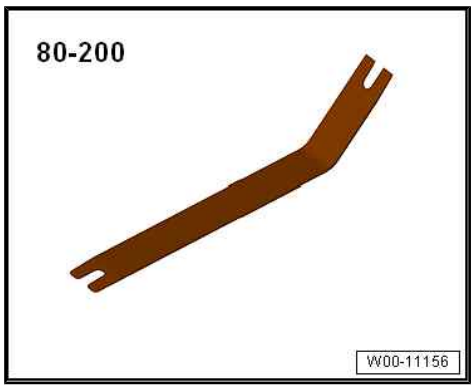
⇒ "1.6.4 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards", page 674

1.6.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - standard seat/sports seat

Reproduction or copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80 - 200-



Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 444 .

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 455 .

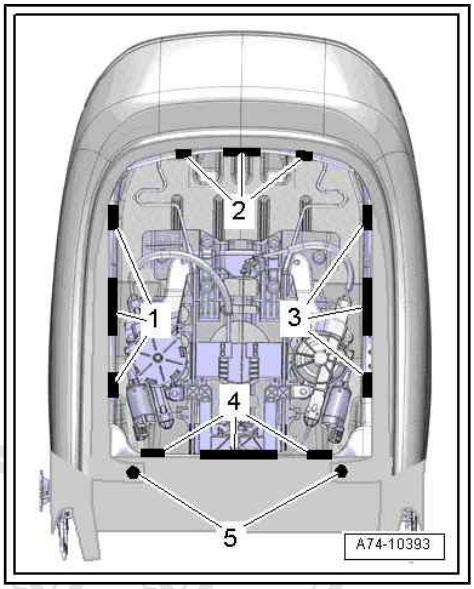
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 440 .

– Equipment version with Rear Seat Entertainment: Remove mounting for Rear Seat Entertainment ⇒ page 450 .

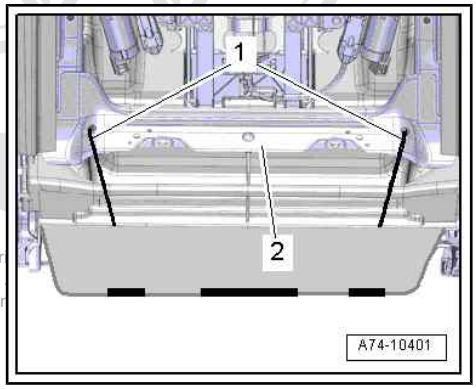
– Release clips -5- for backrest cover at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80 - 200- .

– Disengage piping -1 ... 4- on back of outer backrest frame.

– Equipment version with seat ventilation: Move clear and unplug electrical fan connectors.

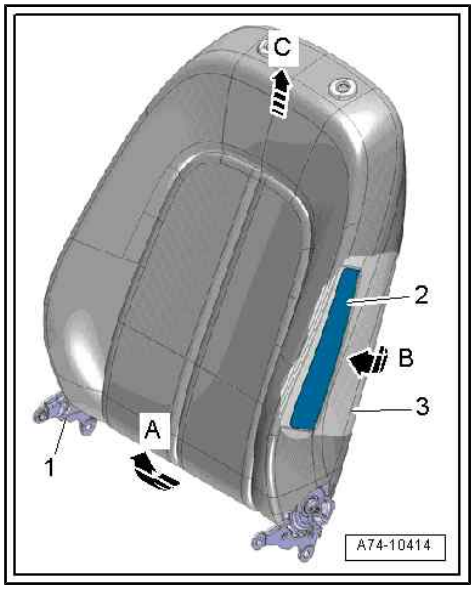


– Disengage contour wire -1- from back of outer backrest frame -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for pr
permitted unless authorised by AUDI
with respect to the correctness of in

– Detach backrest cover with padding (bottom) from outer backrest frame -1- towards front -arrow A-.
– In area of side airbag at side, carefully disengage backrest padding -3- from padding protection -2- -arrow B-.
– Take backrest cover and padding upwards off outer backrest frame -arrow C-, at the same time guiding out wiring harness for backrest heating and seat ventilation if necessary.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2.1 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, standard seat/sports seat", page 651

1.6.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

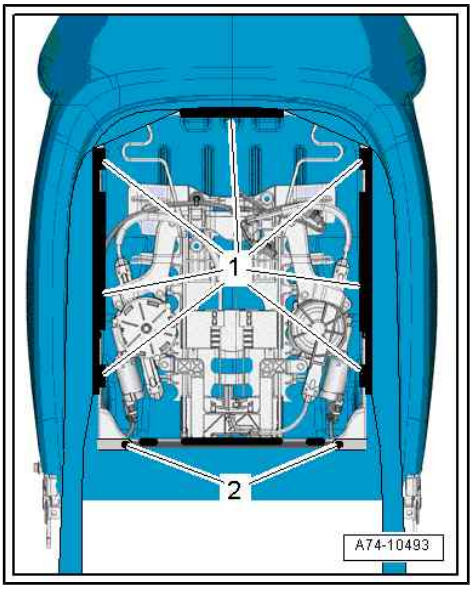
Removing

WARNING

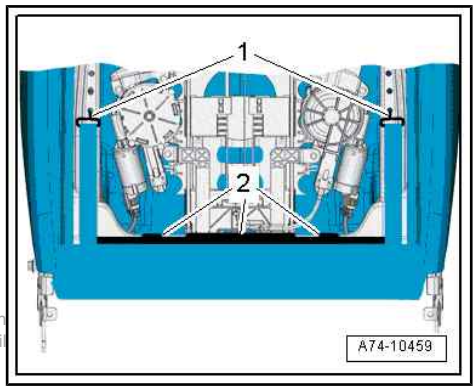
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 444 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 440 .
– Equipment version with Rear Seat Entertainment: Remove mounting for Rear Seat Entertainment ⇒ page 450 .
– Release clips -2- for backrest cover at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80 - 200- .
– Disengage piping -1- on back of outer backrest frame.

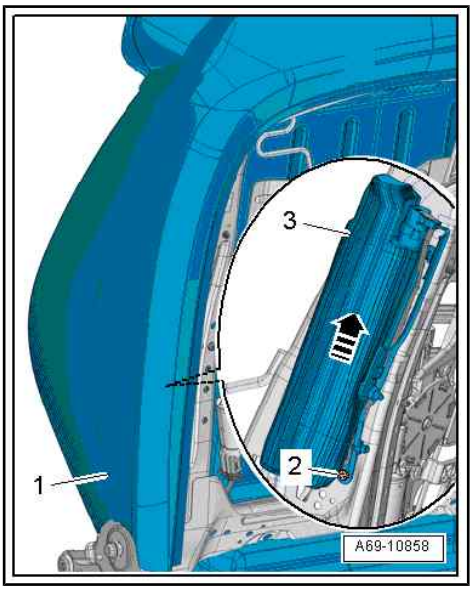


– Disengage rubber strap -1- on back of outer backrest frame.
– Disengage piping -2- on back of outer backrest frame.

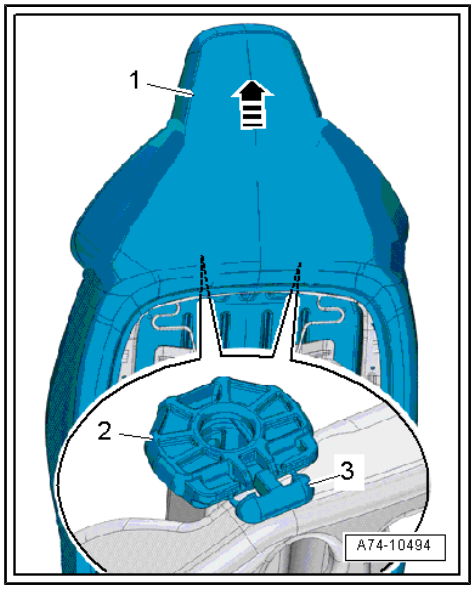


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is n
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liabil
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– In area of side airbag, carefully pull backrest cover with backrest padding -1- forwards as far as possible.
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Disengage side airbag -3- with hook from outer backrest frame -arrow-.
– Disengage side airbag at padding protection and re-engage in outer backrest frame.



– Working from rear of backrest, reach beneath backrest padding and locate release button -3-.
– Press and hold release button of head restraint -2-.
– With the help of a second mechanic, lift backrest padding and cover -1- with foam-fitted head restraint off outer backrest frame -arrow-.
– Take backrest cover and padding upwards off outer backrest frame, at the same time guiding out wiring harness of backrest heating.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat", page 652

1.6.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - multi-contour seat up to 08.2012

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

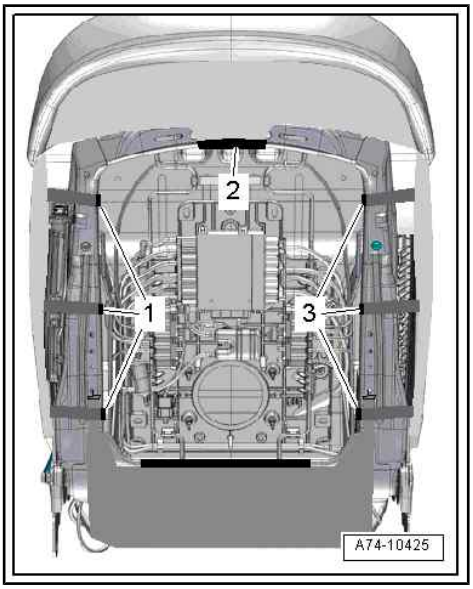
– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 455 .

WARNING

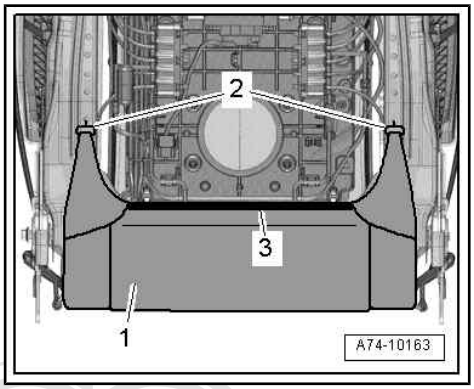
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Equipment version with Rear Seat Entertainment: Remove mounting for Rear Seat Entertainment ⇒ page 452 .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 445 .
– Remove backrest fan ⇒ page 454 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 441 .

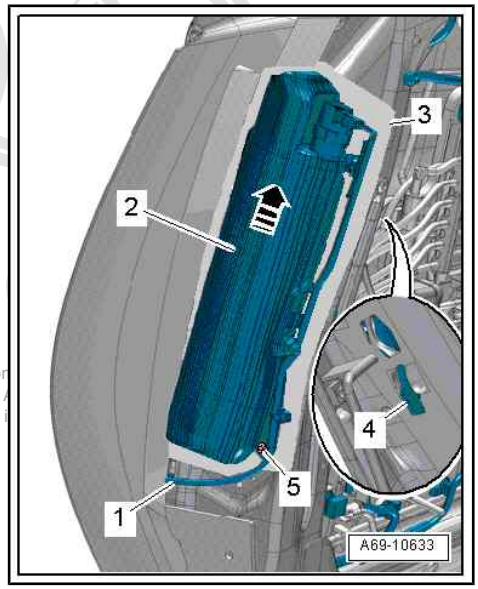
– Disengage piping -1, 2, 3- for backrest cover from outer backrest frame.



– Disengage hook -2- and piping -3- of backrest cover -1- from outer backrest frame.
– Unplug electrical connectors and move clear.

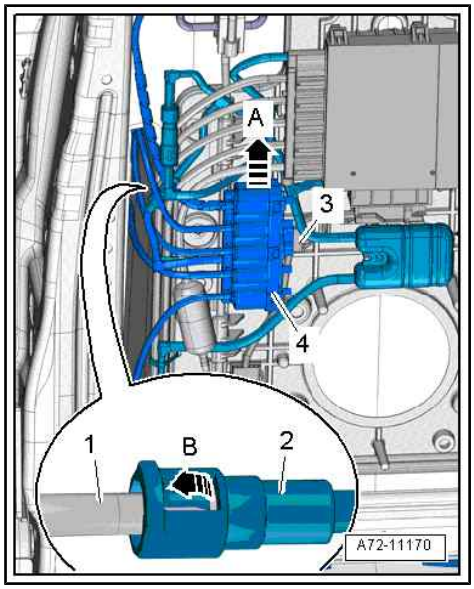


– Remove bolts -5-.
– Disengage side airbag -2- with hook -4- from outer backrest frame -arrow-.
– Disengage side airbag at padding protection -3- and re-engage in outer backrest frame.

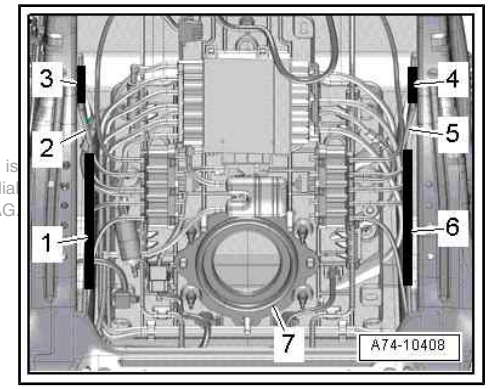


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information i

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.
– Press valve block -4- for massage mat upwards slightly -arrow A- to disengage at module carrier.
– Carefully release catch -arrow B- and disconnect pneumatic lines -1- and -2-.
– Repeat procedure on opposite side of backrest.



– Disengage piping -1, 3, 4, 6- at upholstery wires -2- and -5-.
– Move clear bellows -7- at lumbar support module carrier.
– Move clear valve block with connected pneumatic lines at outer backrest frame and detach backrest cover with backrest padding.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, multi-contour seat", page 653

1.6.4 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - multi-contour seat from 09.2012 onwards

Removing

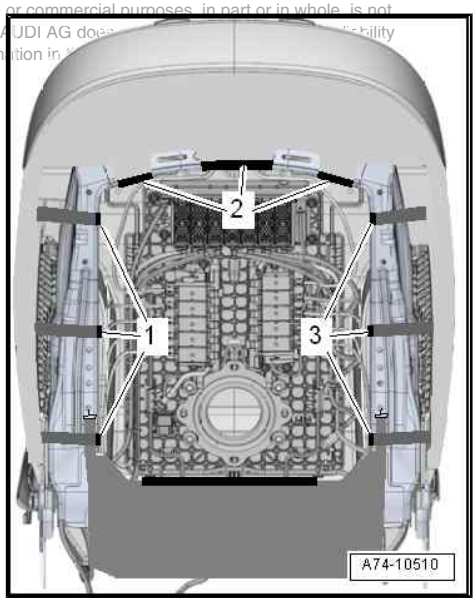
– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 455 .

WARNING

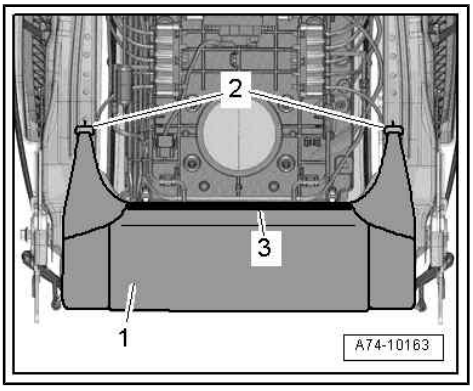
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 415 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 360 .
– Equipment version with Rear Seat Entertainment: Remove mounting for Rear Seat Entertainment ⇒ page 450 .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 440 .
– Remove backrest fan ⇒ page 454 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 441 .
– Disengage piping -1, 2, 3- for backrest cover from outer backrest frame.

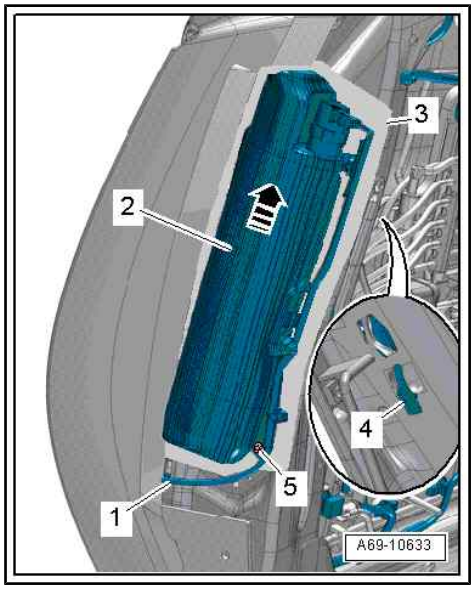
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
with respect to the correctness of information in



– Disengage hook -2- and piping -3- of backrest cover -1- from outer backrest frame.
– Unplug electrical connectors and move clear.



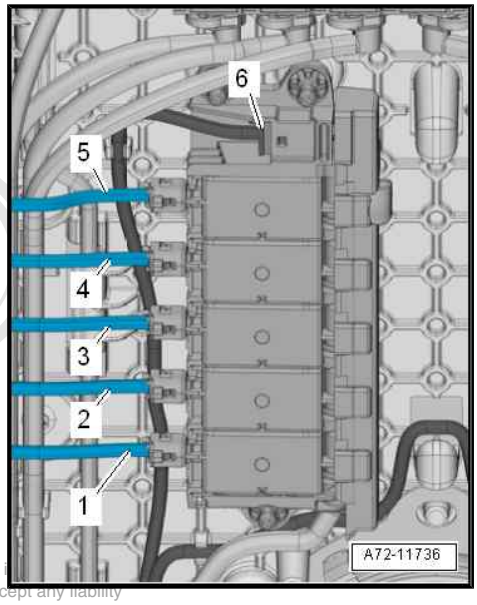
– Remove bolts -5-.
– Disengage side airbag -2- with hook -4- from outer backrest frame -arrow-.
– Remove side airbag downwards from pouch stitched into backrest cover.
– Re-engage side airbag in outer backrest frame.



– Before disconnecting pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines to connections on valve block with a waterproof felt-tip pen.
– Disconnect pneumatic lines -1 ... 5- to all massage mat air cushions.

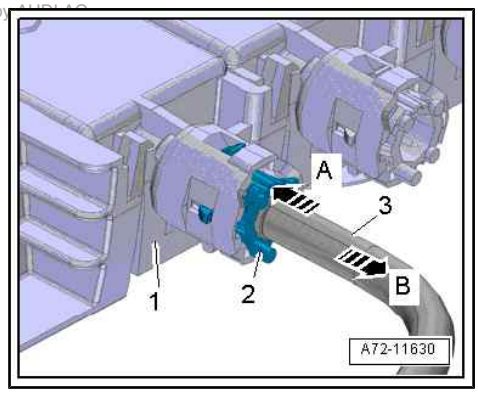
Note

Disregard -item 6-.

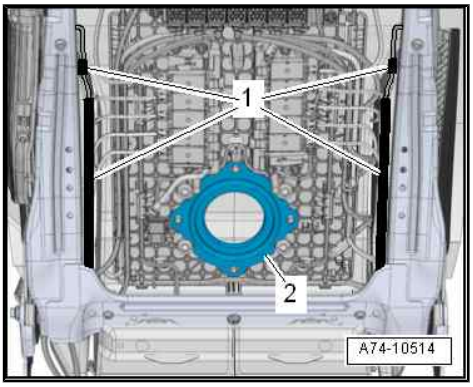


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

– To do so, press release ring -2- towards valve block -1- -arrow A- and at the same time disconnect pneumatic line -3- -arrow B-.
– Move clear pneumatic lines to all massage mat air cushions.
– Repeat procedure on valve block on opposite side.



– Disengage piping -1- at upholstery wire.
– Move clear bellows -2- at lumbar support module carrier.
– Detach backrest cover with backrest padding.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 415 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, multi-contour seat", page 653

1.7 Separating seat pan cover and padding

⇒ "1.7.1 Separating seat pan cover and padding", page 677

⇒ "1.7.2 Separating seat pan cover and padding - multi-contour seat", page 679

1.7.1 Separating seat pan cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-

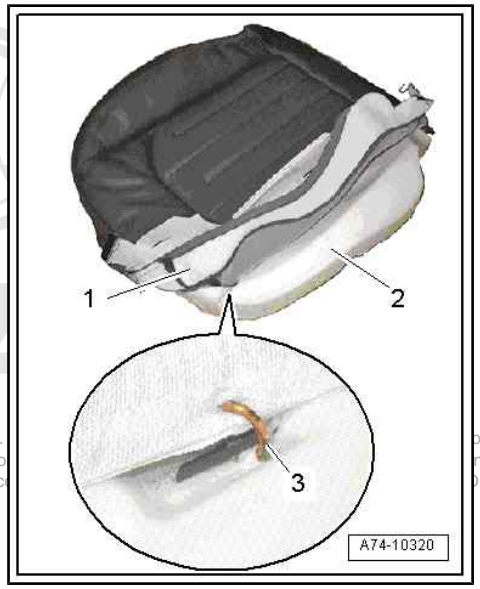


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove seat cover with padding for seat pan ⇒ page 659 .

– Detach seat cover -1- from rear and sides of seat padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -3- with pliers.



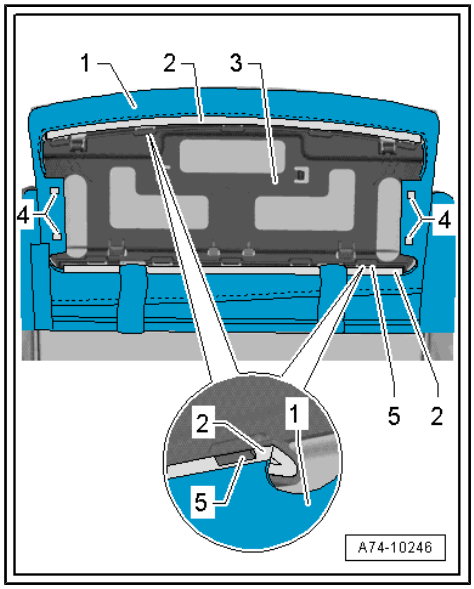
Protected by copyright. ble, is not
permitted unless autho ny liability
with respect to the c DI AG.

Equipment version with seat depth adjustment:

– Unclip fastening strips -2- from fasteners -5-.

– Disengage seat cover from tabs -4- on both sides.

– Pull mounting bracket -3- with seat padding for seat depth adjustment off seat cover -1-.

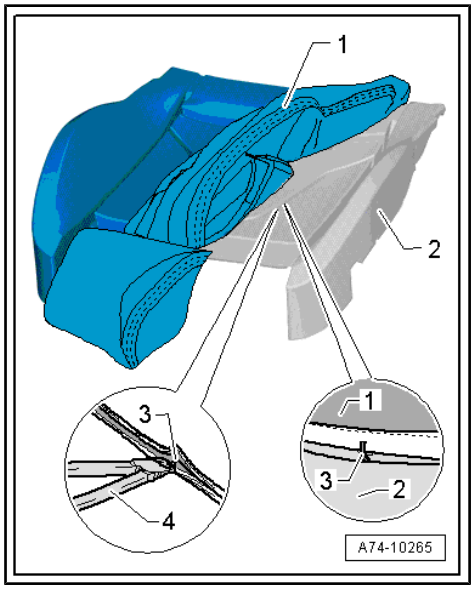


– Detach seat cover -1- from seat padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -3- with pliers -4-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat/ super sports seat”, page 648



1.7.2 Separating seat pan cover and padding - multi-contour seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



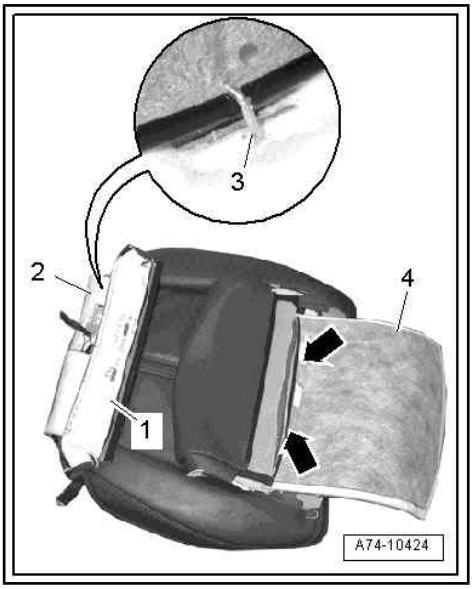
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove seat cover and padding ⇒ page 665 .

– Detach seat cover -1- from seat padding -2- and use pliers to cut through upholstery clips -3-.

– Cut through electrical wiring -arrows- between heating element on leg support -4- and seat cover.



Note

Leave old heating element on leg support and cover it with new heating element (component of seat cover).

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Align new heating element on leg support.

– Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating element exactly onto old heating element without any creases.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.3 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, multi-contour seat", page 649

1.8 Separating backrest cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 668 .

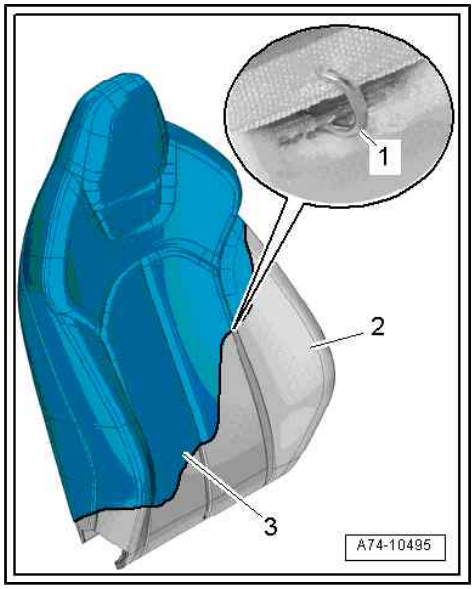
Standard seat/sports seat:

– Detach backrest cover -1- as far as possible from backrest padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -3- using pliers.



Super sports seat:

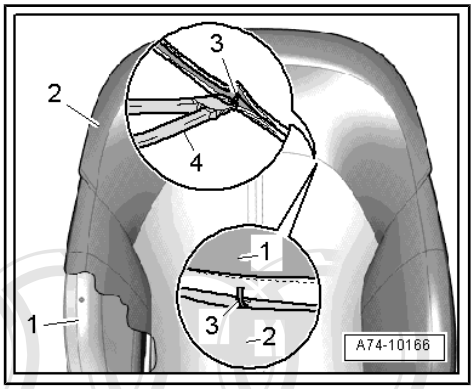
– Detach backrest cover -3- as far as possible from backrest padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -1- using pliers.



Multi-contour seat:

– Detach backrest cover -2- as far as possible from backrest padding -1- and cut through upholstery clips -3- using pliers -4-.

– Equipment version with backrest heating: Unplug electrical connector.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, multi-contour seat", page 653

1.9 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding

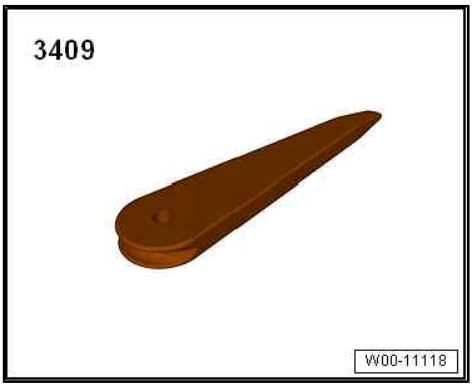
Note

- *The cover can only be renewed on the head restraint version with height adjustment and leather cover.*
- *The head restraint with height adjustment and fabric cover and the adjustable 4-position head restraint cannot be dismantled.*

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

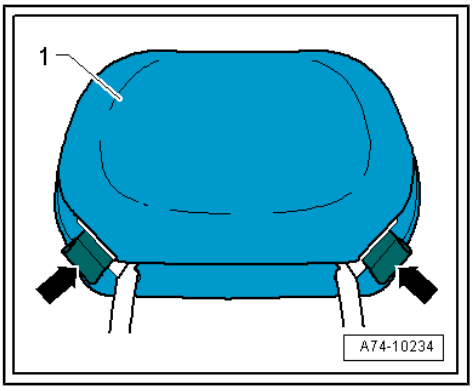
- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

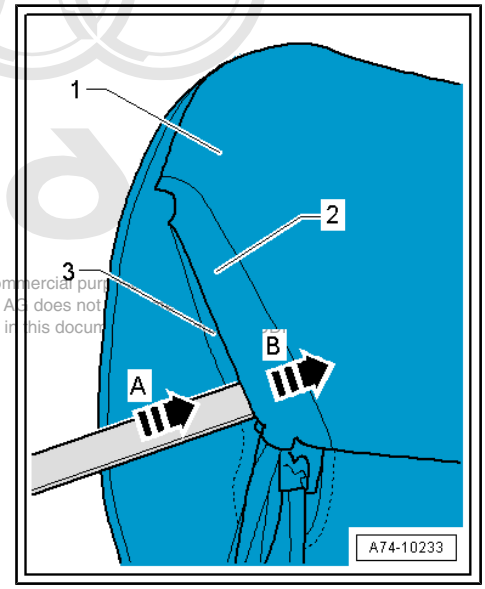
– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 455 .

– Open side fasteners -arrows- on cover -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– To do so, insert removal wedge - 3409- or a flat screwdriver in between fastening ring of cover -1- in direction of -arrow A-.
– Apply tension to bottom U-profile -3- in direction of -arrow B-.
– Pull upper side of cover with flat profile -2- out of U-profile.

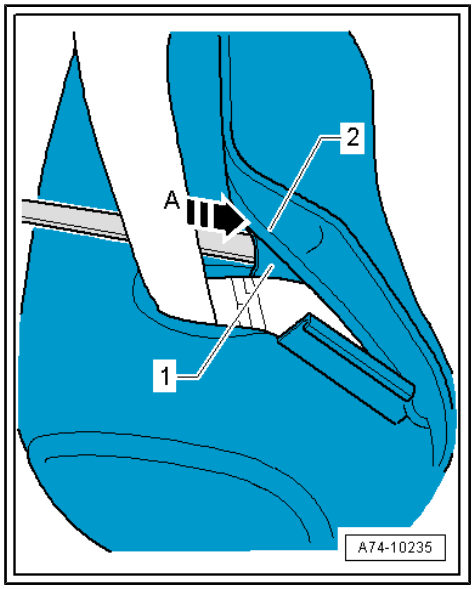


– Open main fastener by inserting removal wedge - 3409- or flat screwdriver in between fasteners for cover.
– Apply tension to bottom U-profile -1- in direction of -arrow A-.
– Pull upper side of cover with flat profile -2- out of U-profile -1-.

Note

To take out padding cover must be fully open.

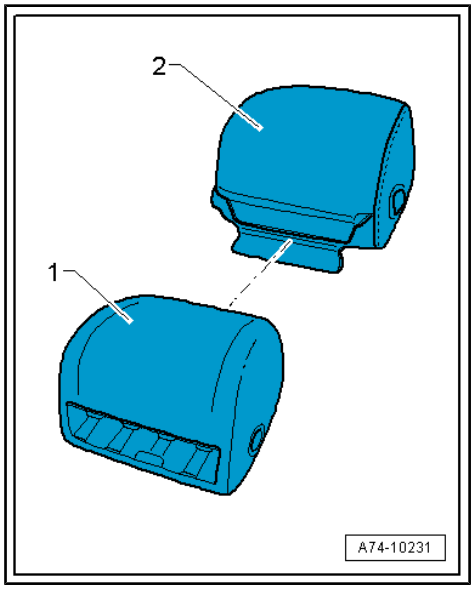
– Pull cover and padding upwards off head restraint mounting bracket and take out head restraint mounting bracket.



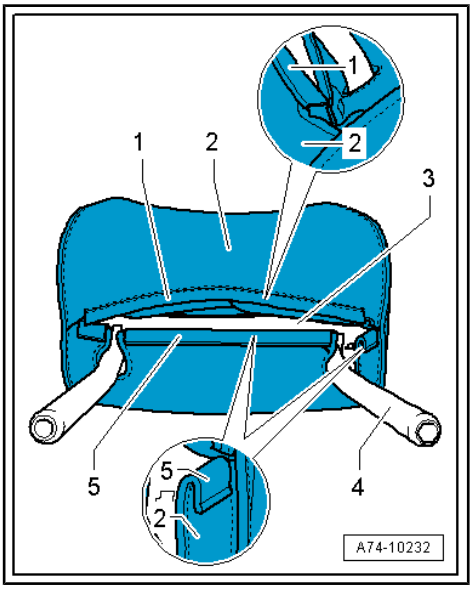
– Remove padding -1- from cover -2-.

Installing

– Insert padding -1- in cover -2-, making sure it is correctly aligned.
– Insert head restraint mounting bracket in padding with cover.



– Close main fastener by folding over upper flat profile -1- of cover -2-.
– Insert edge of fabric with flat profile into U-profile -5-.
– The procedure for closing the side fasteners is similar to that for closing the main fastener.
– After closing main fastener and side fasteners, use a needle or a pointed object to align cover and profiles.
– Make sure cover is positioned on padding -3- without creases or seam marks.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding", page 654

1.10 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8-

Note

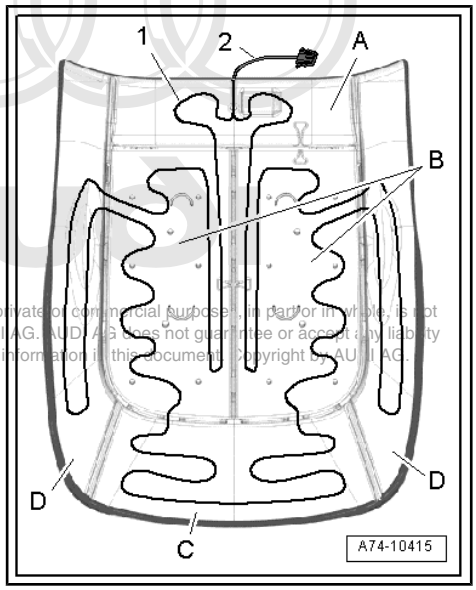
Multi-contour seat: The heating element is stitched to the seat cover. If defective, renew seat cover
⇒ "1.7.2 Separating seat pan cover and padding - multi-contour seat", page 679 .

Removing

– Separate seat cover and padding ⇒ page 677 .

Standard seat:

– Cut off electrical wire -2- directly at old heating element -1-.



Note

Old heating elements remain on padding; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

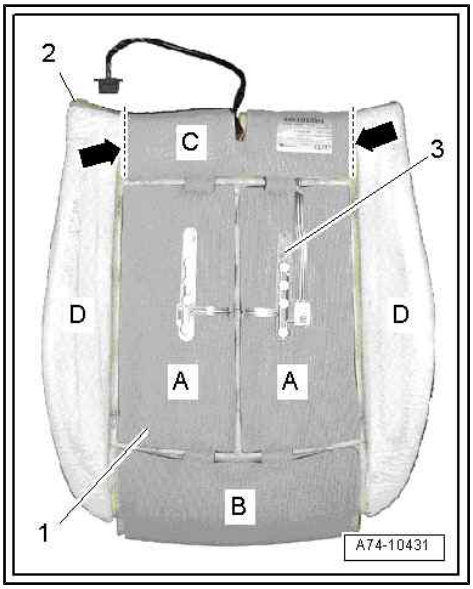
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Equipment version with seat ventilation:

– Equipment version with seat occupied sensor (front passenger side): Carefully disconnect seat occupied sensor -3- from heating element -1-.

– Carefully release heating elements -A-, -B- and -C- from adhesive bond and detach.

– Cut through connecting webs -arrows- and detach heating elements.

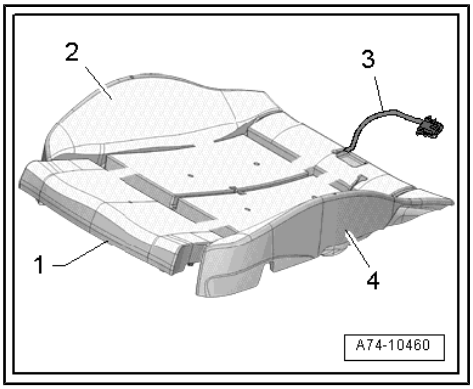


Note

Old heating elements -D- remain on padding -2-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

Sports seat/super sports seat:

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element -2-.



Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -1- and -4-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

Installing

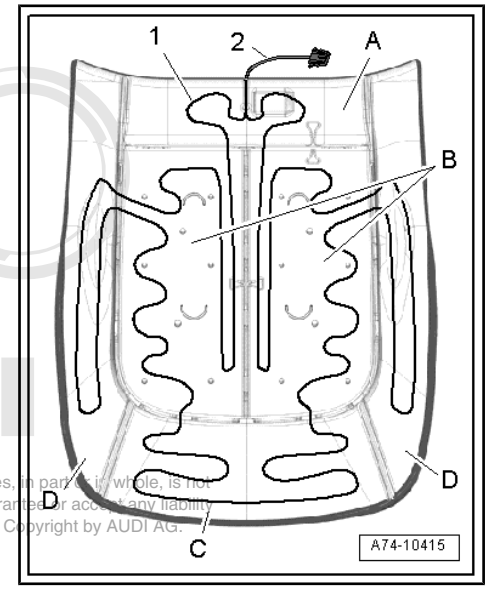
Standard seat:

– Align new heating elements on seat padding.

– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases in the sequence -B, C, D, A-.

– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

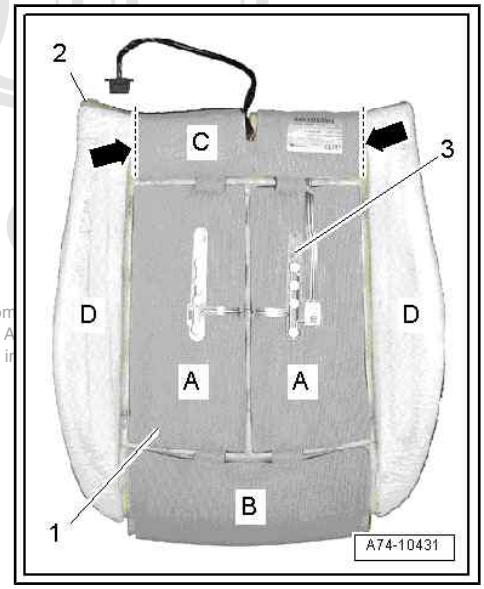
Equipment version with seat ventilation:

– Align new heating elements on seat padding.

– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.

– Bond on heating elements in the sequence -A ... D- without any creases.

– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information in

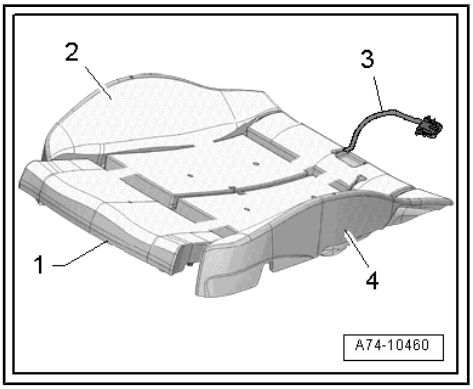
Sports seat/super sports seat:

– Align new heating elements on seat padding.

– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases.

– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.



All seat versions (continued):

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.4 Overview - seat heating elements”, page 655

1.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9-

Note

- *Multi-contour seat: The heating element is only available with seat bolster padding. If defective, renew seat bolster padding* ⇒ “1.5.3 Removing and installing seat bolster padding on seat pan - multi-contour seat”, page 663 .
- *Multi-contour seat: The heating element is stitched to the backrest cover. If defective, renew backrest cover* ⇒ “1.8 Separating backrest cover and padding”, page 679 .

Removing

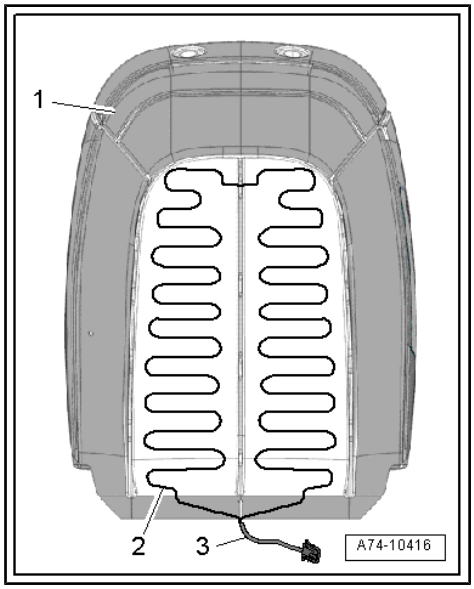
– Separate backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 679 .

Standard seat/sports seat:

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element -2-.

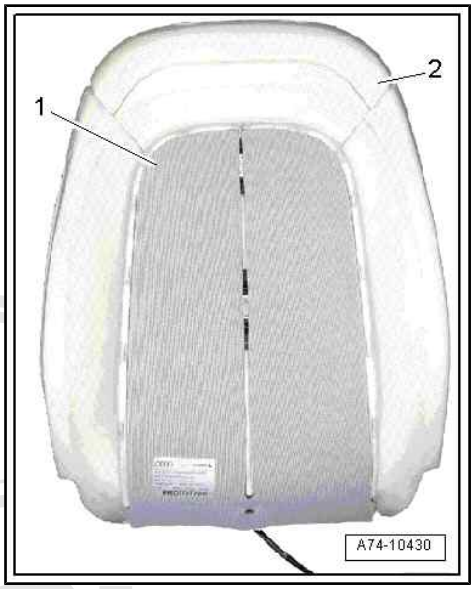
Note

Leave old heating element on backrest padding -1- and cover it with new heating element.



Equipment version with seat ventilation:

– Carefully release heating elements -1- from adhesive bond and detach.

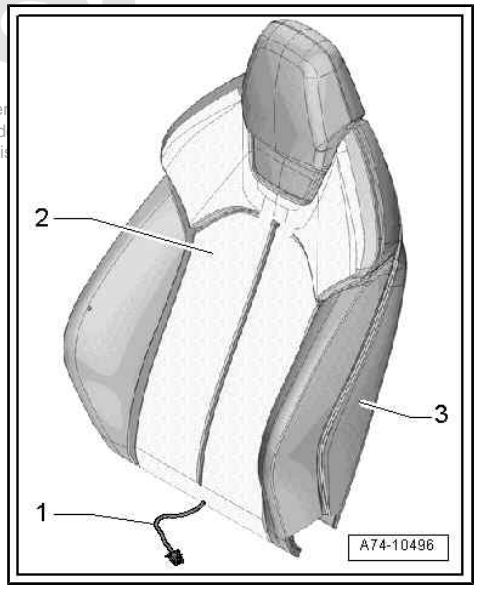


Super sports seat:

– Cut off electrical wire -1- directly at old heating element -2-.

Note

Leave old heating element on backrest padding -3- and cover it with new heating element.



Installing

– Align new heating element on backrest padding.

– Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating element exactly onto old heating element without any creases.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Overview - seat heating elements", page 655

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d
with respect to the correctness of information in thi

2 Covers and padding on rear seats

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding”, page 687

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding”, page 695

⇒ “2.3 Overview - seat heating elements”, page 696

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing cover and padding”, page 700

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing intermediate padding - backrest with load-through hatch”, page 707

⇒ “2.6 Detaching cover from padding”, page 708

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding”, page 710

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing seat heating elements”, page 711

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing backrest heating element”, page 713

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - seat cover and padding, 3-seat rear seat bench”, page 687

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - seat cover and padding, 2-seat rear seat bench”, page 689

⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, fixed rear seat backrest”, page 690

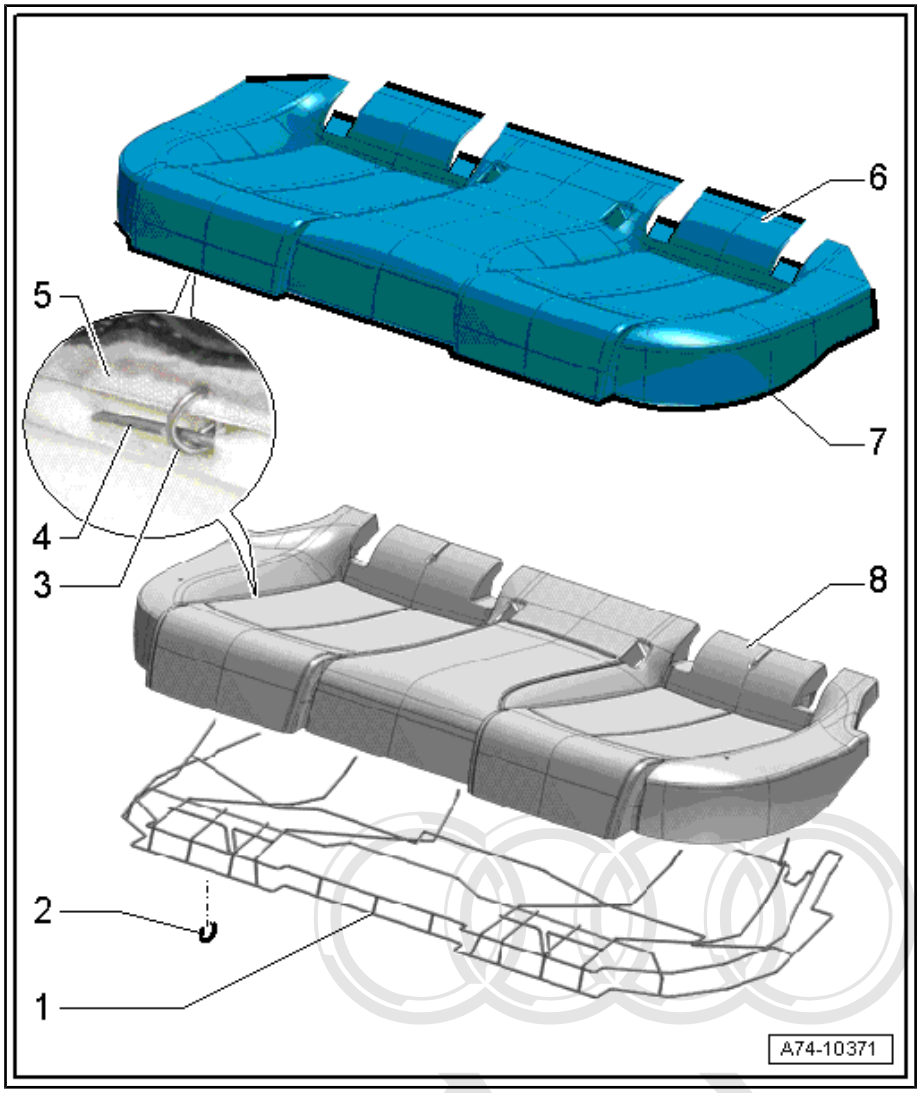
⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, split rear seat backrest”, page 691

⇒ “2.1.5 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, backrest with load-through hatch”, page 692

⇒ “2.1.6 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat”, page 693

⇒ “2.1.7 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, multi-contour seat”, page 694

2.1.1 Exploded view - seat cover and padding, 3-seat rear seat bench



1 - Seat frame

2 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing seat cover to seat frame
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

3 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

4 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in seat padding
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

5 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted in pouch of seat cover
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

6 - Seat cover

- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 700
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

7 - Piping

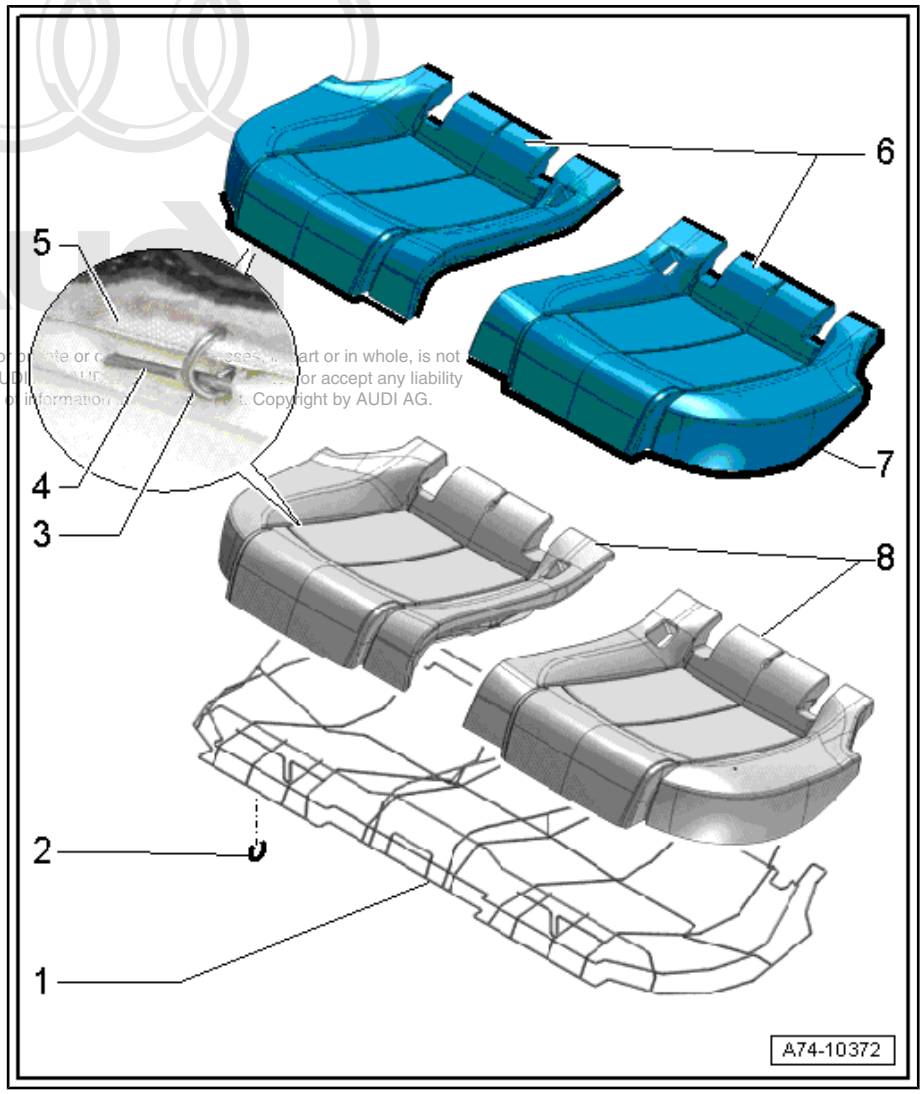
- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For securing seat cover to seat frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat frame

8 - Seat padding

- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 700
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.2 Exploded view - seat cover and padding, 2-seat rear seat bench



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Seat frame

2 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing seat cover to seat frame
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location when installing

3 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

4 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in seat padding
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

5 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted in pouch of seat cover
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

6 - Seat cover

- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 700
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

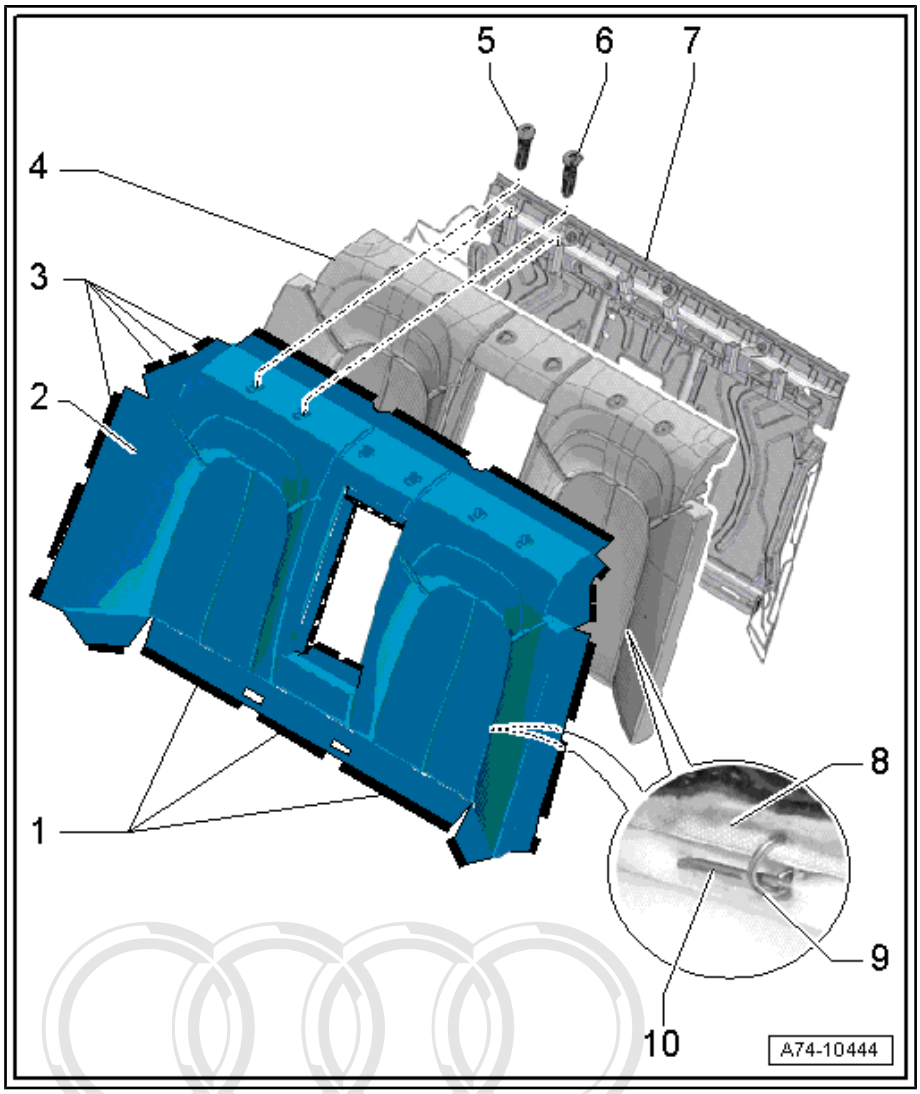
7 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For securing seat cover to seat frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat frame

8 - Seat padding

- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 700
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2.1.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, fixed rear seat backrest



1 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame

2 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 704
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708

3 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame

4 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 704
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708

5 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With retaining clip
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 543

6 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With button for adjusting height of head restraint
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 543

7 - Outer backrest frame

8 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

9 - Upholstery clip

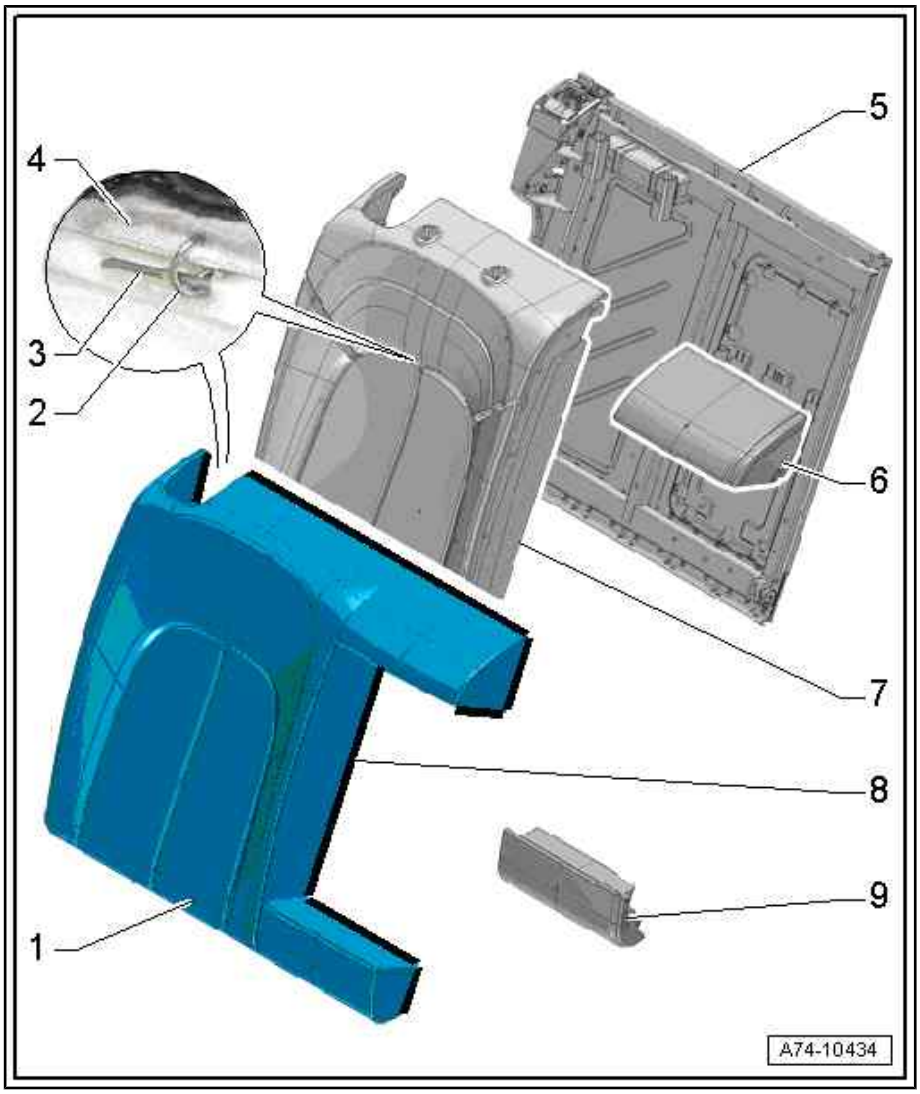
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

10 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.4 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, split rear seat backrest



1 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 701
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

2 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

3 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

4 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

5 - Outer backrest frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 701

6 - Intermediate padding (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 701

7 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 701
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

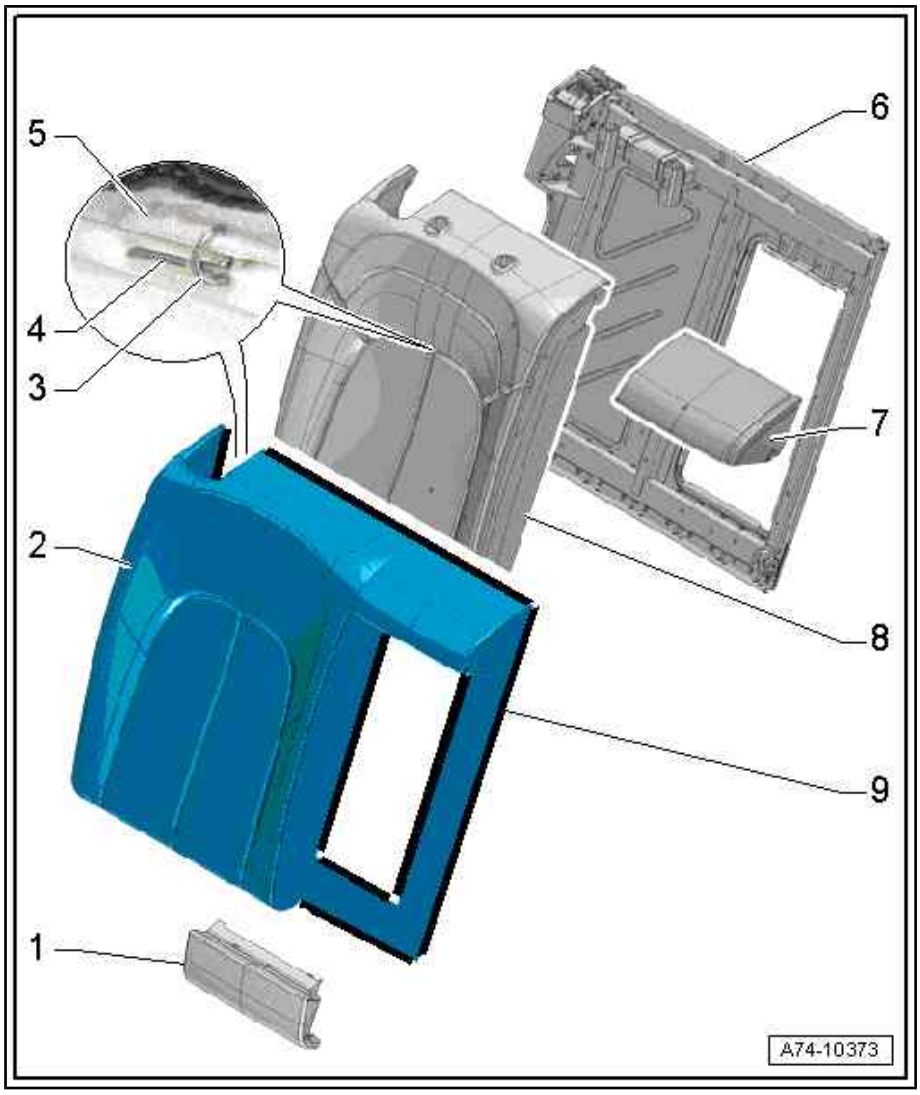
8 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in outer backrest frame

9 - Intermediate padding (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 701

2.1.5 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, backrest with load-through hatch



1 - Intermediate padding (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 707
- ❑ Engage padding at flap for load-through hatch and press on until it engages audibly

2 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 701
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

3 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

4 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

5 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

6 - Outer backrest frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 701

7 - Intermediate padding (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 701

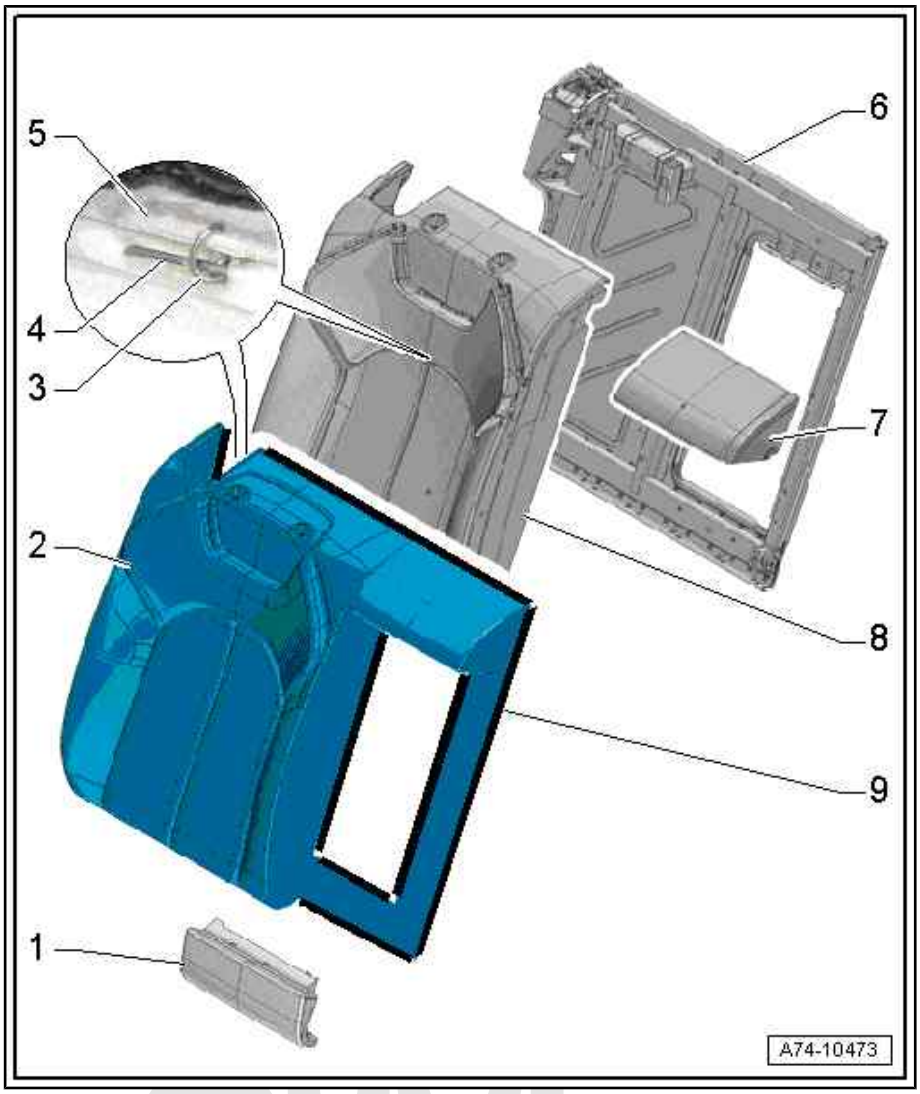
8 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 701
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

9 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame

2.1.6 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat



1 - Intermediate padding (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 707
- ❑ Engage padding at flap for load-through hatch and press on until it engages audibly

2 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 701
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

3 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

4 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

5 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

6 - Outer backrest frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 701

7 - Intermediate padding (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 701

8 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 701
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

9 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.7 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, multi-contour seat

1 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 705
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708

2 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

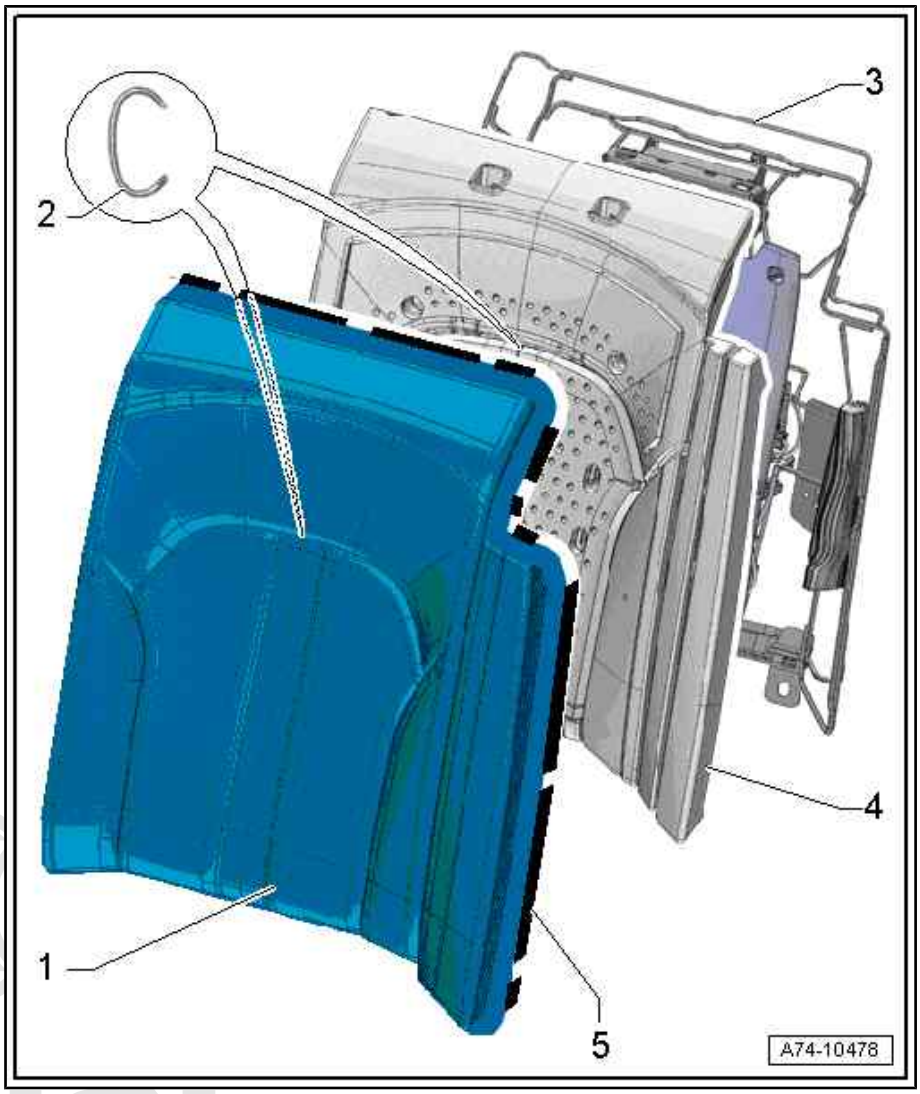
3 - Outer backrest frame

4 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 705
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 708

5 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding

1 - Mounting bracket for head restraint

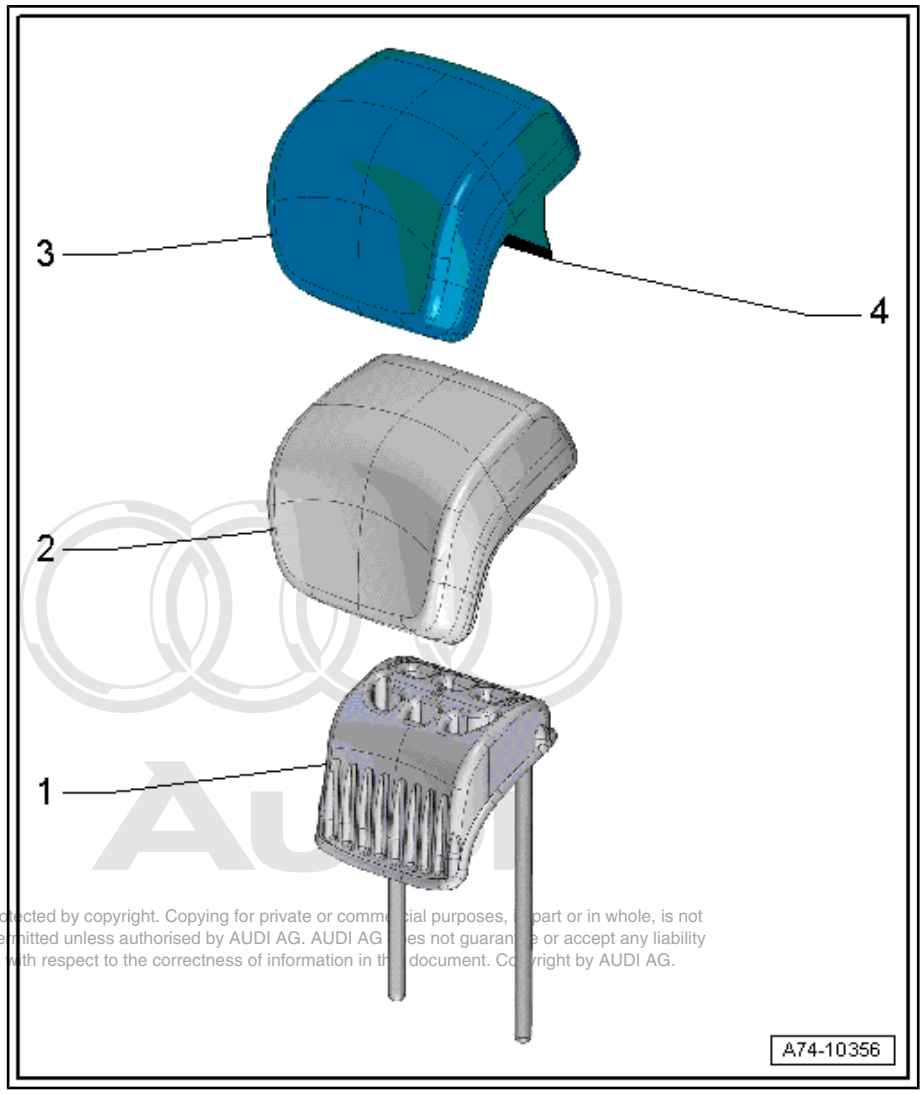
2 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 710

3 - Cover

- ❑ Cannot be separated from padding on convenience equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 710

4 - Fastening strip



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Overview - seat heating elements

⇒ “2.3.1 Overview - seat heating elements, standard seat/sports seat”, page 696

⇒ “2.3.2 Overview - seat heating elements, super sports seat”, page 697

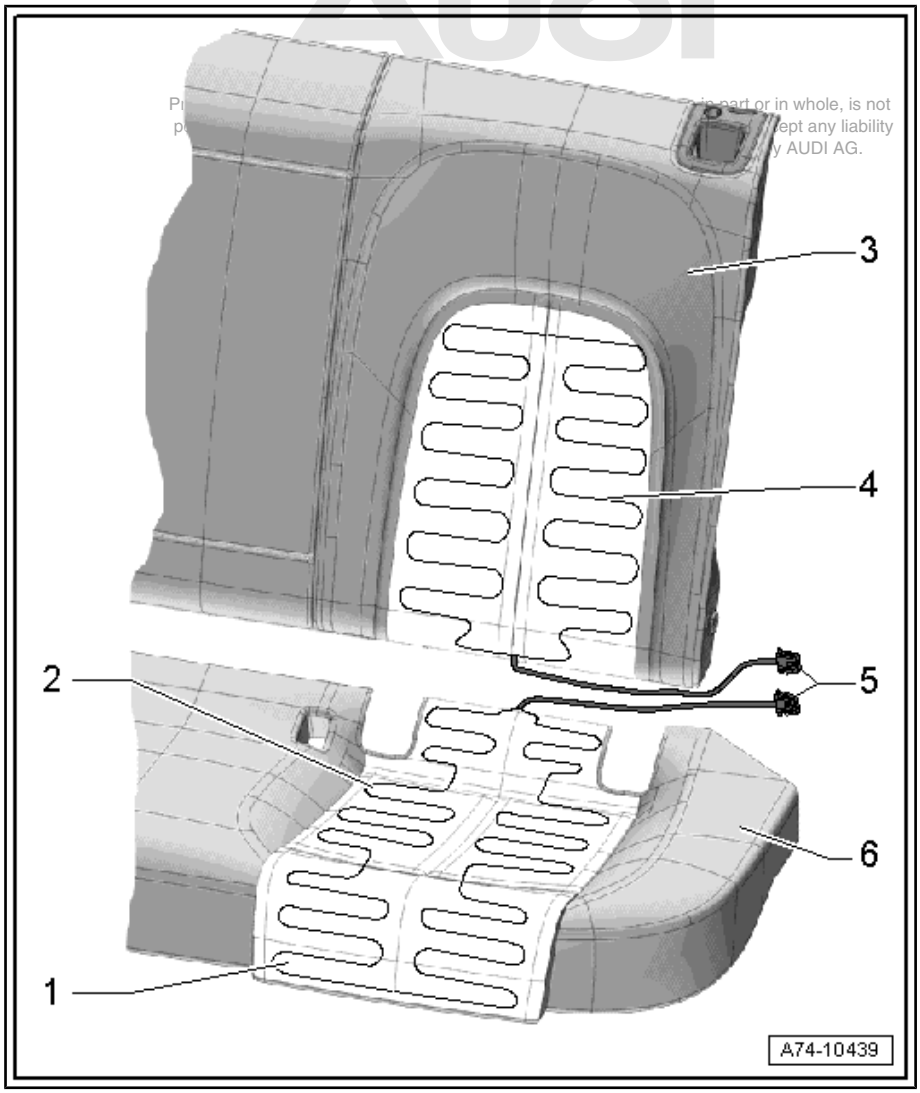
⇒ “2.3.3 Overview - seat heating elements, multi-contour seat”, page 698

⇒ “2.3.4 Overview - seat heating elements, country-specific version”, page 699

2.3.1 Overview - seat heating elements, standard seat/sports seat

Note

The illustration shows the equipment version with folding rear seat bench.



1 - Heating element

- ❑ For leg support
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 711
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Heated bench seat cushion for rear left seat - Z10-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated bench seat cushion for rear right seat - Z12-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 711
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Backrest padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Heated backrest for rear left seat - Z11-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for rear right seat - Z13-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 713
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Electrical wire

6 - Seat padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2.3.2 Overview - seat heating elements, super sports seat

1 - Heating element

- For leg support
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 711
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Heated bench seat cushion for rear left seat - Z10-

- Passenger side: heated bench seat cushion for rear right seat - Z12-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 711
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Protected by copyright. Copying for priv
permitted unless authorised by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of int

3 - Seat padding

- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

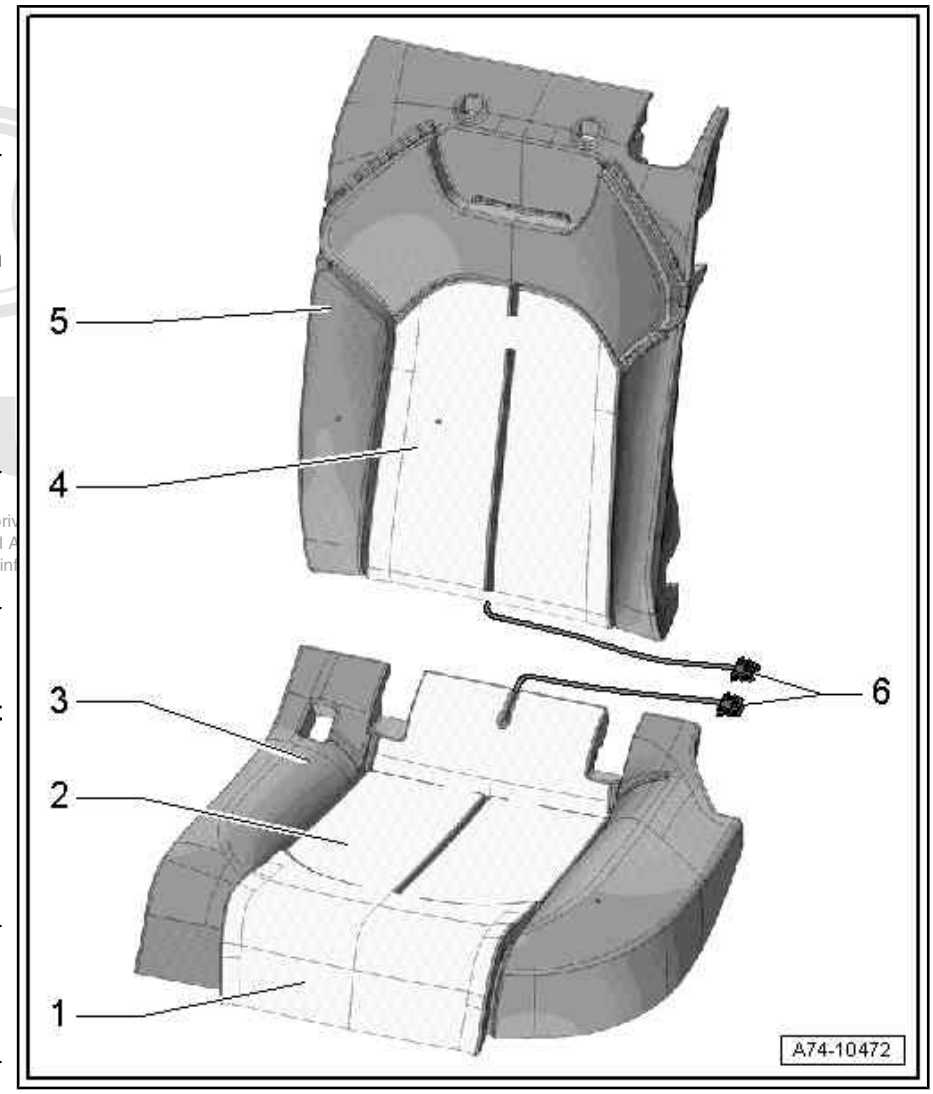
4 - Heated backrest for rear left seat - Z11-

- Passenger side: heated backrest for rear right seat - Z13-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 713
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

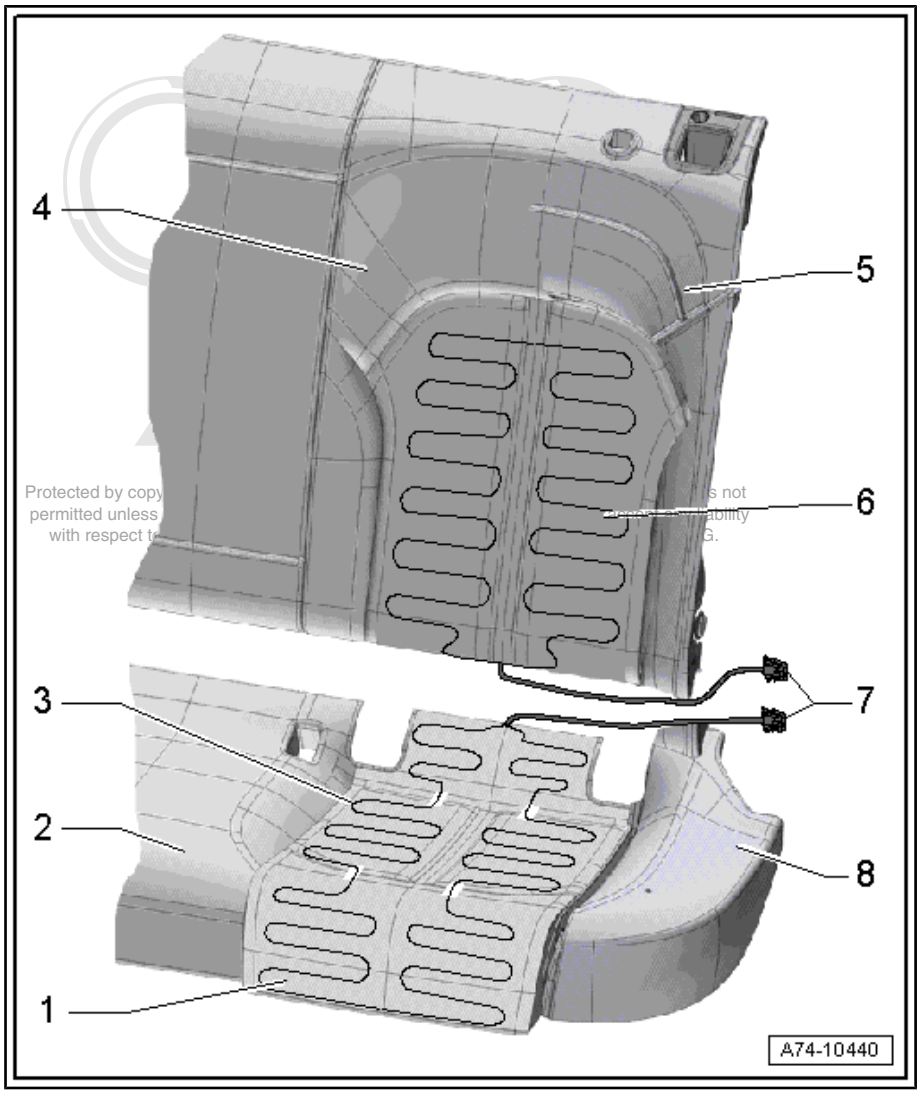
5 - Backrest padding

- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

6 - Electrical wire



2.3.3 Overview - seat heating elements, multi-contour seat



1 - Heating element

- ❑ For leg support
- ❑ Heating element stitched to seat cover; if defective, renew seat cover
  ⇒ “2.6 Detaching cover from padding”, page 708

2 - Seat cover

3 - Heated bench seat cushion for rear left seat - Z10-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated bench seat cushion for rear right seat - Z12-
- ❑ Heating element stitched to seat cover; if defective, renew seat cover
  ⇒ “2.6 Detaching cover from padding”, page 708

4 - Backrest cover

5 - Backrest padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

6 - Heated backrest for rear left seat - Z11-

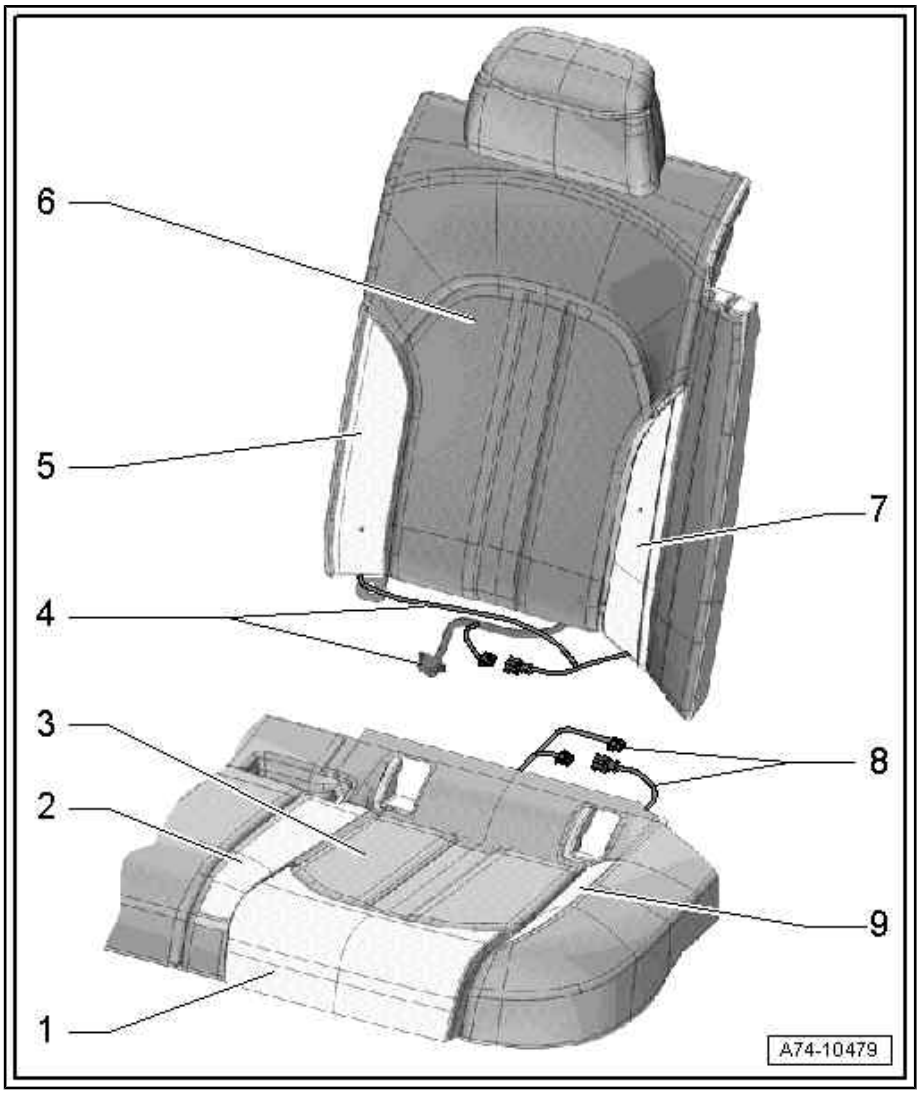
- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for rear right seat - Z13-
- ❑ Heating element stitched to backrest cover; if defective, renew backrest cover ⇒ “2.6 Detaching cover from padding”, page 708

7 - Electrical wire

8 - Seat padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2.3.4 Overview - seat heating elements, country-specific version



1 - Heating element

- For leg support
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 712

2 - Right bolster heater for driver side rear seat - Z85-

- Passenger side: right bolster heater for passenger side rear seat - Z89-
- Bonded to seat padding
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 712

3 - Heated bench seat cushion for rear left seat - Z10-

- Passenger side: heated bench seat cushion for rear right seat - Z12-
- Heating element stitched to seat cover; if defective, renew seat cover ⇒ “2.6 Detaching cover from padding”, page 708
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Electrical wire

5 - Right bolster heater for driver side rear seat backrest - Z87-

- Passenger side: right bolster heater for passenger side rear seat backrest - Z91-
- Bonded to seat padding
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 714

6 - Heated backrest for rear left seat - Z11-

- Passenger side: heated backrest for rear right seat - Z13-
- Heating element stitched to backrest cover; if defective, renew backrest cover ⇒ “2.6 Detaching cover from padding”, page 708
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

7 - Left bolster heater for driver side rear seat backrest - Z86-

- Passenger side: left bolster heater for passenger side rear seat backrest - Z90-
- Bonded to seat padding
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 714

8 - Electrical wire

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Left bolster heater for driver side rear seat - Z84-

- Passenger side: left bolster heater for passenger side rear seat - Z88-
- Bonded to seat padding
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 712

2.4 Removing and installing cover and padding

⇒ “2.4.1 Removing and installing cover and padding - rear seat bench”, page 700

⇒ “2.4.2 Removing and installing cover and padding - split rear seat backrest”, page 701

⇒ “2.4.3 Removing and installing cover and padding - fixed rear seat backrest”, page 704

⇒ “2.4.4 Removing and installing cover and padding - multi-contour seat”, page 705

2.4.1 Removing and installing cover and padding - rear seat bench

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-

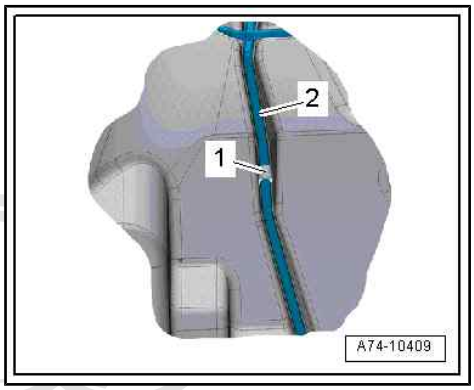


Removing

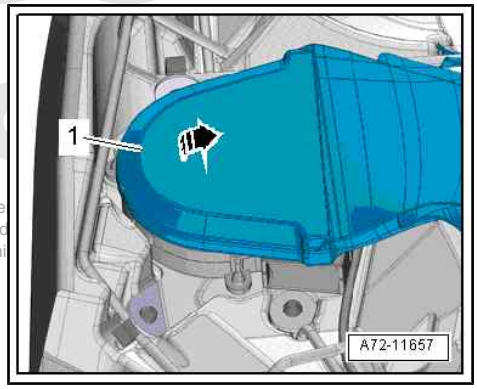
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 531 .

– 2-seat rear seat bench: Remove centre storage compartment ⇒ page 535 .

– Equipment version with multi-contour seat: Unclip seat padding clips -1- at seat frame -2-.

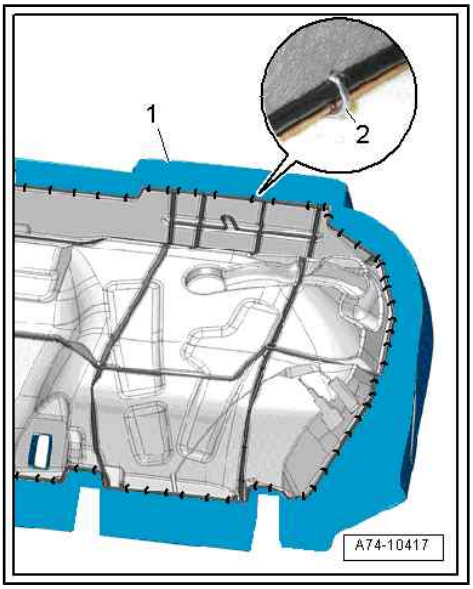


– Equipment version with rear seat backrest fan: Unclip connecting piece -1- of air mat from fan for rear seat bench -arrow-.



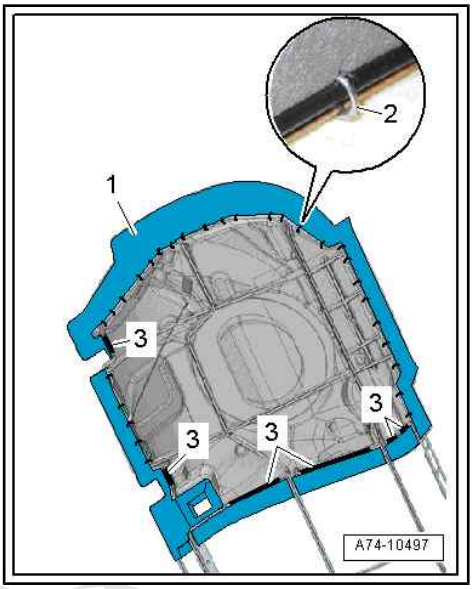
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d
with respect to the correctness of information in thi

– Pinch off upholstery clips -2- for seat cover all around seat frame with pliers.
– Detach seat cover -1- with seat padding from seat frame.



2-seat rear seat bench:

– Pinch off upholstery clips -2- for seat cover all around seat frame with pliers.
– Disengage piping -3- on seat frame.
– Detach seat cover -1- with padding from seat frame.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding", page 687

2.4.2 Removing and installing cover and padding - split rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

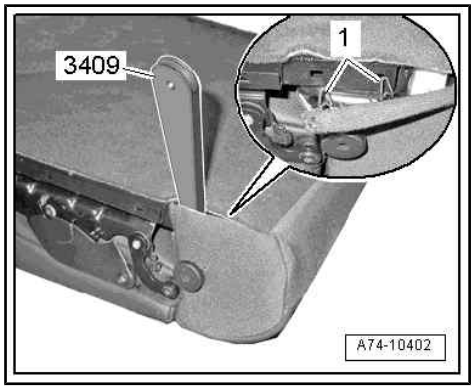
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

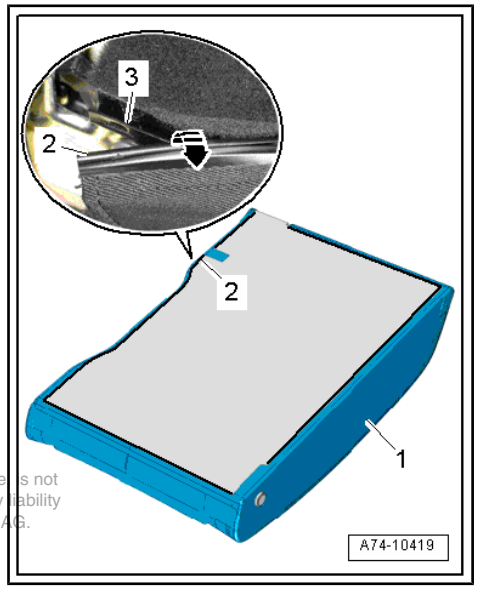
Removing

- Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 544 .
- Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 540 .
- Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ page 557 .
- Release clips -1- for backrest cover from outer backrest frame around inner pivot pin using removal lever - 3409- .



1/3 section of rear seat backrest (left-side):

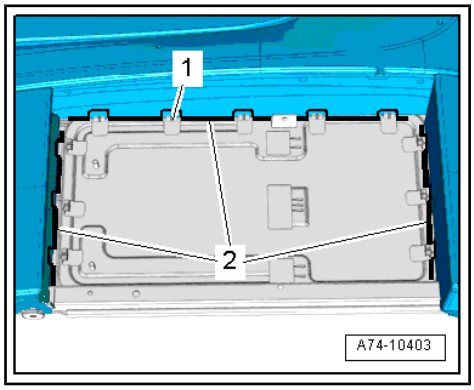
- Starting at locking mechanism, prise fastening strip -2- for backrest cover off outer backrest frame -3- all around -arrow- using a screwdriver.
- Equipment version with seat heating: Move clear electrical connector for seat heating.
- Remove head restraint guides (rear) ⇒ page 543 .
- Detach backrest cover -1- with backrest padding from outer backrest frame.



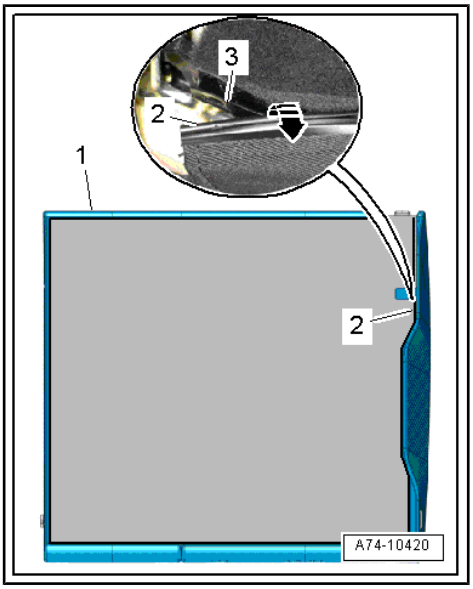
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2/3 section (right-side) of rear seat backrest without load-through hatch:

- Equipment version without storage box: Remove trim for centre armrest (rear) ⇒ page 567 .
- Equipment version with storage box: Remove storage box in centre console (rear) ⇒ page 535 .
- Equipment version with 3-seat rear seat backrest: Remove centre belt guide (rear) ⇒ page 114 .
- Disengage piping -2- for backrest cover in opening in backrest padding for centre armrest (rear) from hooks -1- of outer backrest frame.

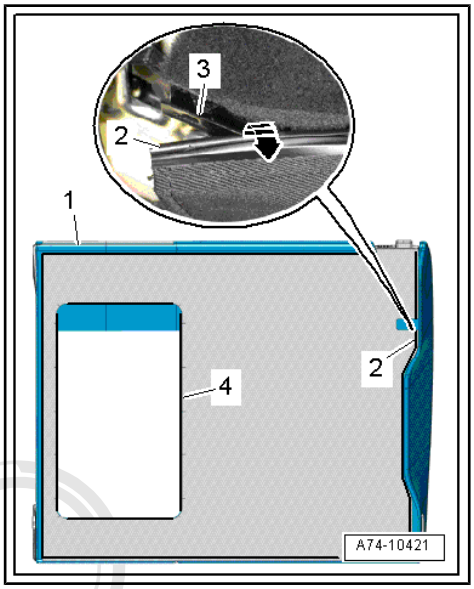


– Starting at locking mechanism, prise fastening strip -2- for backrest cover off outer backrest frame -3- all around -arrow- using a screwdriver.
– Equipment version with seat heating: Move clear electrical connector for seat heating.
– Remove head restraint guides (rear) ⇒ page 543 .
– Detach backrest cover -1- with backrest padding from outer backrest frame.



2/3 section (right-side) of rear seat backrest with load-through hatch:

– Remove centre armrest (rear) with flap for load-through hatch ⇒ page 563 .
– Remove trim frame for load-through hatch ⇒ page 562 .
– Starting at locking mechanism, prise fastening strip -2- for backrest cover off outer backrest frame -3- all around -arrow- using a screwdriver.
– Using a screwdriver, prise fastening strip -4- for backrest cover off load-through hatch all around.
– Equipment version with seat heating: Move clear electrical connector for seat heating.
– Remove head restraint guides (rear) ⇒ page 543 .
– Detach backrest cover -1- with backrest padding from outer backrest frame.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

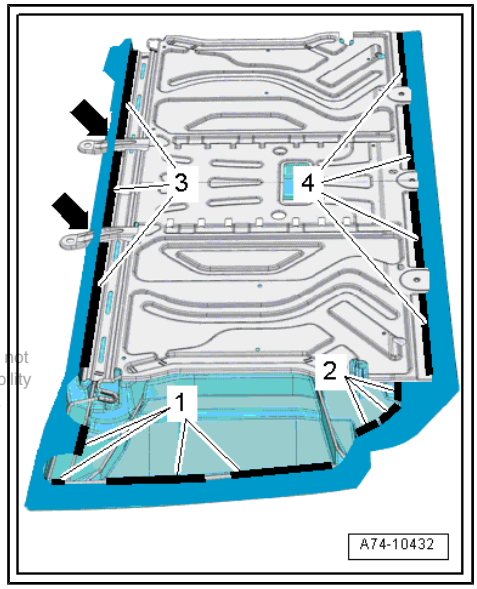
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding", page 687

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

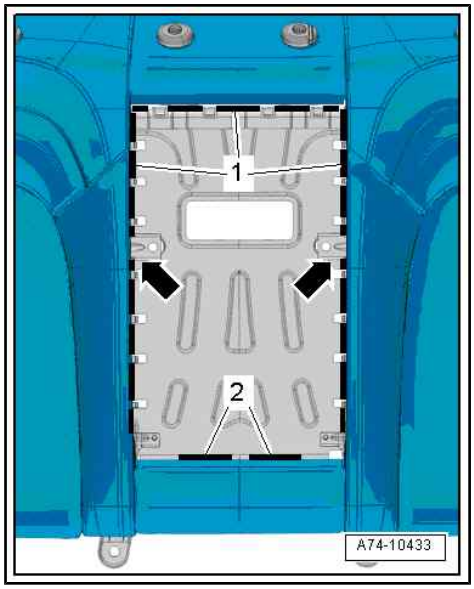
2.4.3 Removing and installing cover and padding - fixed rear seat backrest

Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 548 .
– Remove centre armrest with bracket and hinges ⇒ page 571 .
– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 540 .
– Disengage piping -1- and -2- on side of outer backrest frame.
– Repeat procedure on opposite side of rear seat backrest.
– Prise off fastening strip -4- at top of outer backrest frame.
– Prise off fastening strip -3- at bottom of outer backrest frame.
– Disengage backrest cover at bottom of outer backrest frame -arrows-.



– Disengage piping -2- for backrest cover in opening in backrest padding for centre armrest (rear) at outer backrest frame.
– Disengage piping -1- for backrest cover in opening in backrest padding for centre armrest (rear) from hooks of outer backrest frame.
– Disengage backrest cover from mountings -arrows- for centre armrest (rear).
– Remove head restraint guides (rear) ⇒ page 543 .
– Detach backrest cover with padding from outer backrest frame.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

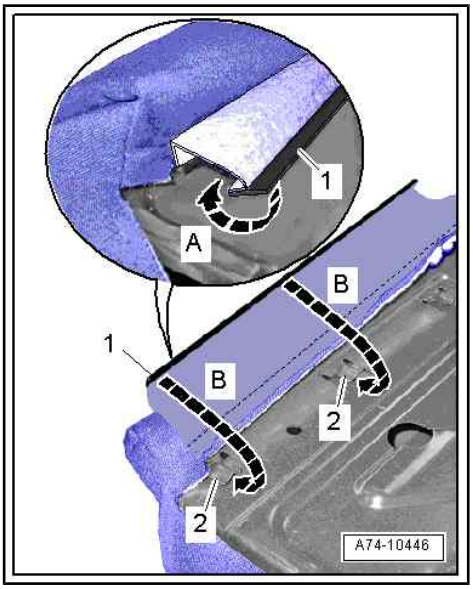
– First engage fastening strip at bottom of outer backrest frame, and then pull backrest cover up so it is taut.

– Fold fastening strip -1- around inwards -arrow A- by 180°.

– Engage fastening strip in metal tabs -2- on outer backrest frame -arrows B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.1.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, fixed rear seat backrest", page 690



2.4.4 Removing and installing cover and padding - multi-contour seat

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

– Remove multi-contour seat ⇒ page 548 .

– Remove side airbag (rear) ⇒ page 160 .

– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 542 .

– Remove head restraint guides (rear) ⇒ page 544 .

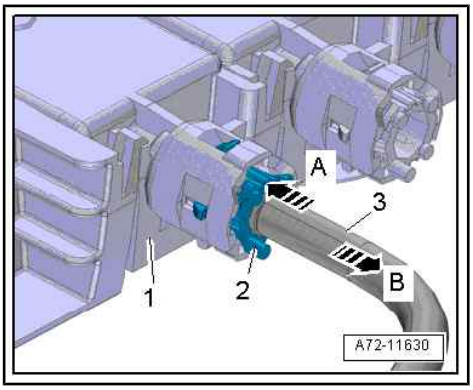
– Remove rear seat backrest fan ⇒ page 556 .

– Unplug electrical connectors for seat heating and move clear.

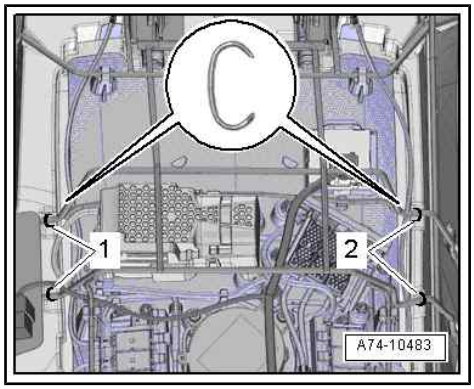
– Before disconnecting pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines to connections on valve block with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Disconnect pneumatic lines to all massage mat air cushions.

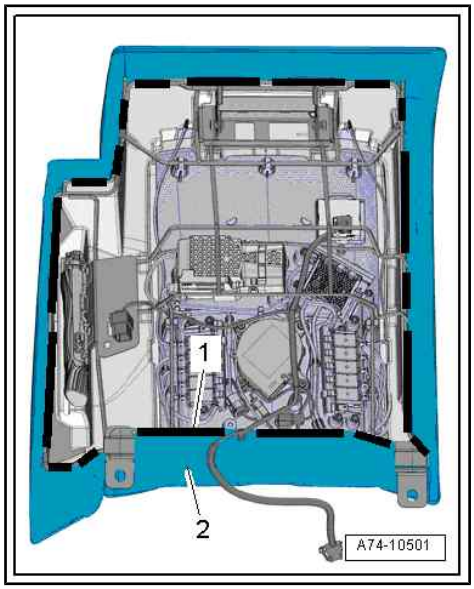
– To do so, press release ring -2- towards valve block -1- -arrow A- and at the same time disconnect pneumatic line -3- -arrow B-.



– Cut through upholstery clips -1 and 2- with pliers.

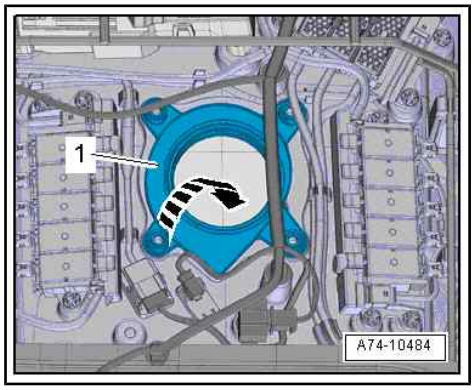


– Disengage piping -1- for backrest cover -2- all around outer backrest frame.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage rubber collar -1- for air mat at module carrier for lumbar support and push out towards front -arrow-.



– Detach backrest cover with padding from outer backrest frame.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Connect pneumatic lines and then pull lines to check that plug-in connector is engaged properly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.1.7 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, multi-contour seat”, page 694

2.5 Removing and installing intermediate padding - backrest with load-through hatch

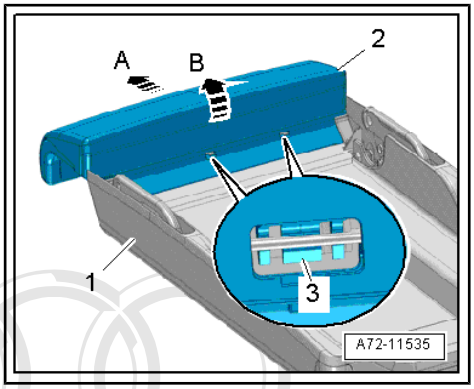
⇒ “2.5.1 Removing and installing intermediate padding (bottom)”, page 707

⇒ “2.5.2 Removing and installing intermediate padding for centre armrest - country-specific version”, page 707

⇒ “2.5.3 Removing and installing padding for centre armrest (rear)”, page 708

2.5.1 Removing and installing intermediate padding (bottom)

Removing



– Remove flap for load-through hatch ⇒ page 563 .

– Using a screwdriver, release retaining tabs -3- and at the same time press down intermediate padding -2- -arrow A-.

– Swivel intermediate padding up -arrow B-, disengage it from flap for load-through hatch (bottom) -1- and detach.

Installing

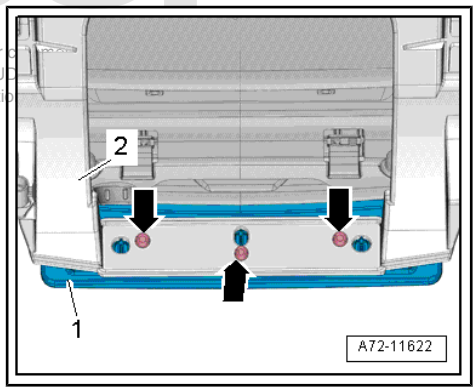
Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.5.3 Exploded view - centre armrest, backrest with load-through hatch”, page 525

2.5.2 Removing and installing intermediate padding for centre armrest - country-specific version

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU
with respect to the correctness of informatio



– Remove centre armrest (rear) ⇒ page 565 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach intermediate padding -1- towards front from centre armrest (rear) -2-.

Installing

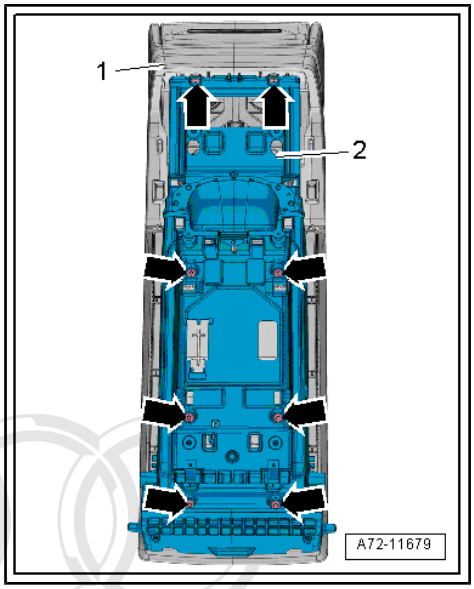
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.5.5 Exploded view - centre armrest, country-specific version”, page 528

2.5.3 Removing and installing padding for centre armrest (rear)

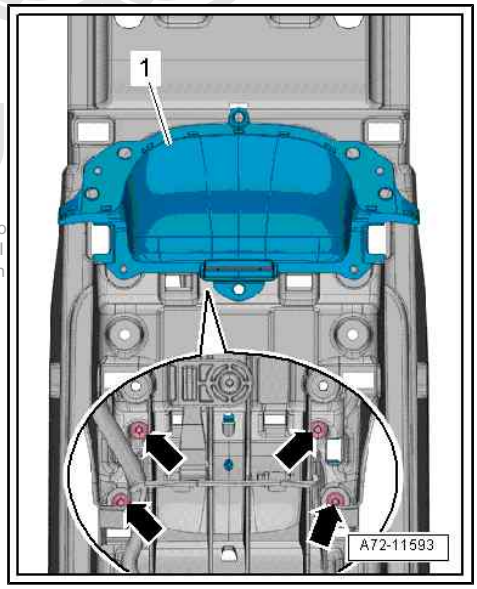
Removing

– Remove armrest (rear) ⇒ page 577 .
– Remove trim panel for centre armrest (rear) ⇒ page 573 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach padding -1- from armrest (bottom section) -2-.
– Unplug electrical connector for ambient lighting.



Removing grip moulding

– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Lift off grip moulding -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI
with respect to the correctness of information

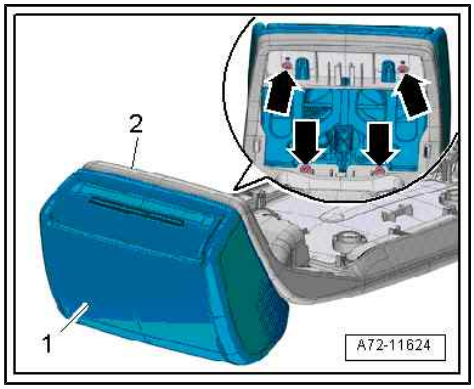
Removing head padding

– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Press padding -1- out of padding -2- for armrest (rear).

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.5.5 Exploded view - centre armrest, country-specific version", page 528



2.6 Detaching cover from padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Separating

– Remove seat cover and padding ⇒ page 700 .

Rear seat bench:

– Pinch off upholstery clips for seat cover all around seat frame with pliers ⇒ page 700 .

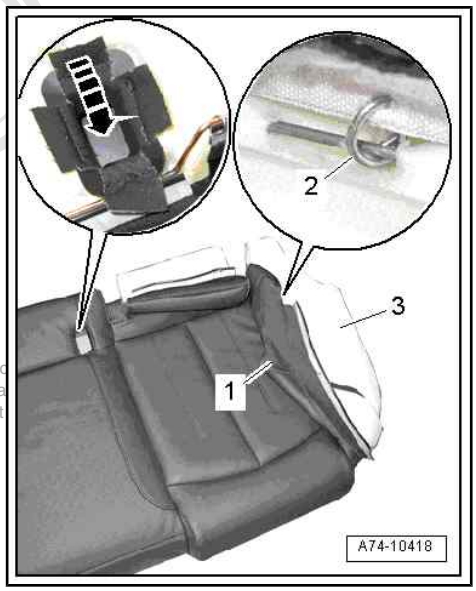
– Detach seat cover with seat padding from seat frame.

– Equipment version with seat heating: Move clear electrical connector for seat heating.

– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -3- and use pliers to cut through upholstery clips -2-.

– Disengage seat cover from opening for belt buckle in seat padding -arrow- and detach.

– Seat cover with heating elements: Carefully release heating elements from adhesive bond and detach.

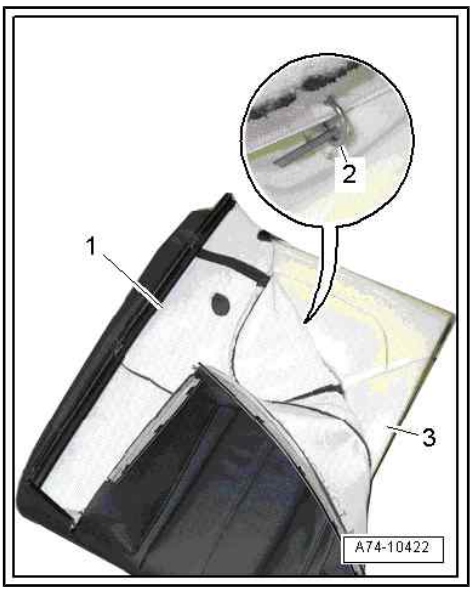


Note

The illustration shows the 3-seat rear seat bench.

Rear seat backrest:

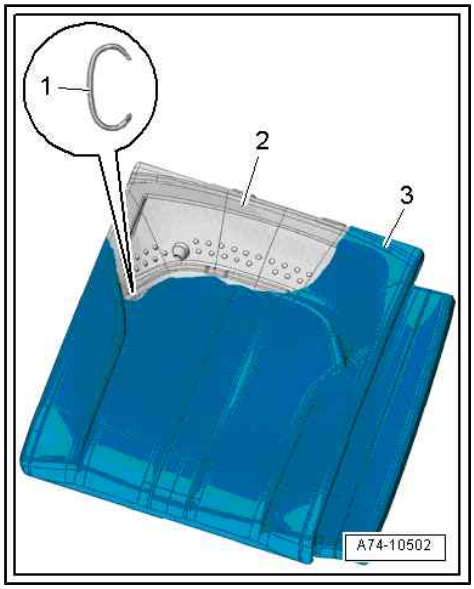
– Detach backrest cover -1- as far as possible from backrest padding -3- and cut through upholstery clips -2- using pliers.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Rear seat backrest (multi-contour seat):

- Detach backrest cover -3- as far as possible from backrest padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -1- using pliers.
- Equipment version with heating element stitched to backrest cover: Carefully release heating element from adhesive bond and detach.



Installing

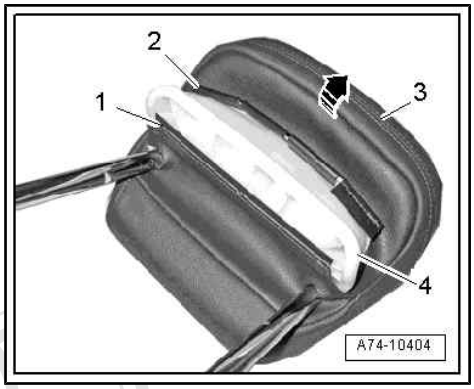
Install in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding", page 687

2.7 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding

Removing

- Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 540 .
- Open fastener; to do so, prise the upper side of cover with flat profile -1- out of head restraint mounting bracket with a screwdriver and detach.
- Prise lower side of cover with U-profile -2- out of head restraint mounting bracket and detach.
- Pull cover -3- and padding upwards off head restraint mounting bracket -4- -arrow- and take out head restraint mounting bracket.
- Remove padding from cover.



Installing

- Insert padding in cover, making sure it is correctly aligned.
- Insert head restraint mounting bracket in padding with cover.
- Close fastener; to do so, first clip upper U-profile of cover into head restraint mounting bracket.
- Clip edge of cover with bottom flat profile of cover into U-profile.
- After closing fastener, use a needle or a pointed object to align cover and profiles.
- Make sure cover is positioned on padding without creases or seam marks.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

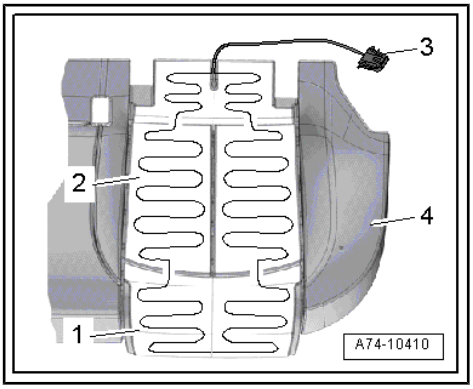
2.8 Removing and installing seat heating elements

⇒ “2.8.1 Removing and installing seat heating element - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat”, page 711

⇒ “2.8.2 Removing and installing seat heating element - multi-contour seat”, page 712

2.8.1 Removing and installing seat heating element - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat

Removing



– Separate seat cover and padding for rear seat bench ⇒ page 708 .

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element -2-.

Note

Old heating elements remain on padding; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

Installing

– Align new heating elements on seat padding.

– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases in the sequence -2- and -1-.

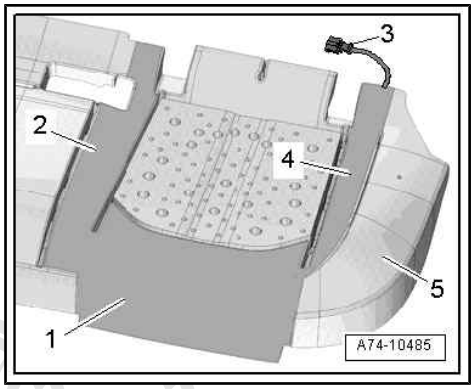
– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.3 Overview - seat heating elements”, page 696

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.8.2 Removing and installing seat heating element - multi-contour seat



Removing

– Separate seat cover and padding for rear seat bench ⇒ page 708 .

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element.

Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -5-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

Installing

– Align new heating elements on seat padding.

– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases in the sequence -1-, -2- and -4-.

– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.3 Overview - seat heating elements", page 696

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.9 Removing and installing backrest heating element

⇒ “2.9.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat”, page 713

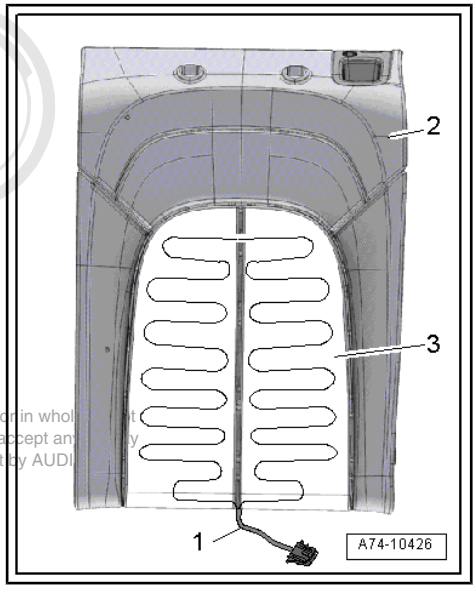
⇒ “2.9.2 Removing and installing backrest heating element - multi-contour seat”, page 714

2.9.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element - standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat

Removing

– Detach backrest cover from padding for rear seat backrest ⇒ page 708 .

– Cut off electrical wire -1- directly at old heating element -3-.



Note

- *Leave old heating element on backrest padding -2- and cover it with new heating element.*
- *The illustration shows the equipment version with folding rear seat bench.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

– Align new heating element on backrest padding.

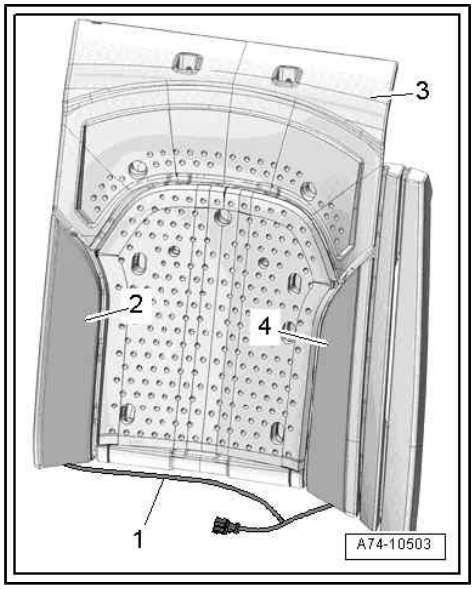
– Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating element exactly onto old heating element without any creases.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.3 Overview - seat heating elements”, page 696

2.9.2 Removing and installing backrest heating element - multi-contour seat



Removing

– Detach backrest cover and backrest padding for rear seat backrests ⇒ page 708 .

– Cut off electrical wire -1- directly at old heating elements -2 and 4-.

Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -3-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

Installing

– Align new heating elements on seat padding.

– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.3 Overview - seat heating elements", page 696

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.